

GLOBAL
EDITION



Finite Mathematics with Applications

in the Management, Natural, and Social Sciences

ELEVENTH EDITION

Margaret L. Lial • Thomas W. Hungerford • John P. Holcomb • Bernadette Mullins

ALWAYS LEARNING

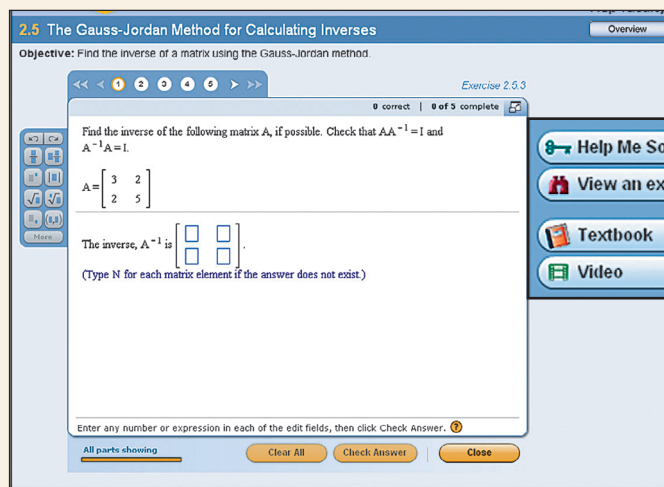
PEARSON

BREAKTHROUGH

To improving results

4 Reasons to Use MyMathLab[®] for Finite Mathematics

- 1 Thousands of high-quality exercises.** Algorithmic exercises of all types and difficulty levels are available to meet the needs of students with diverse mathematical backgrounds. We've also added even more conceptual exercises to the already abundant skill and application exercises.
- 2 Helps students help themselves.** Homework isn't effective if students don't do it. MyMathLab not only grades homework, but it also does the more subtle task of providing specific feedback and guidance along the way. As an instructor, you can control the amount of guidance students receive.



Breaks the problem into manageable steps. Students enter answers along the way.

Reviews a problem like the one assigned.

Links to the appropriate section in the textbook.

Features an instructor explaining the concept.

- 3 Addresses gaps in prerequisite skills.** Our *Getting Ready for Finite Mathematics* content addresses gaps in prerequisite skills that can impede student success. MyMathLab identifies precise areas of weakness, then automatically provides remediation for those skills.
- 4 Adaptive Study Plan.** MyMathLab's Adaptive Study Plan makes studying more efficient and effective. Each student's work and activity are assessed continually in real time. The data and analytics are used to provide personalized content to remediate any gaps in understanding.

Since 2001, more than 15 million students at more than 1,950 colleges have used MyMathLab. Users have reported significant increases in pass rates and retention. Why? Students do more work and get targeted help when they need it. See www.mymathlab.com/success_report.html for the latest information on how schools are successfully using MyMathLab.

Learn more at www.mymathlab.com

Finite Mathematics with Applications

IN THE MANAGEMENT, NATURAL, AND SOCIAL SCIENCES

Finite Mathematics with Applications

IN THE MANAGEMENT, NATURAL, AND SOCIAL SCIENCES

ELEVENTH EDITION

GLOBAL EDITION

Margaret L. Lial

American River College

Thomas W. Hungerford

Saint Louis University

John P. Holcomb, Jr.

Cleveland State University

Bernadette Mullins

Birmingham-Southern College

PEARSON

Boston Columbus Indianapolis New York San Francisco Upper Saddle River
Amsterdam Cape Town Dubai London Madrid Milan Munich Paris Montréal Toronto
Delhi Mexico City São Paulo Sydney Hong Kong Seoul Singapore Taipei Tokyo

Editor-in-Chief: Deirdre Lynch
Head of Learning Asset Acquisition, Global Edition: Laura Dent
Executive Editor: Jennifer Crum
Senior Content Editor: Chere Bemelmans
Editorial Assistant: Joanne Wendelken
Senior Managing Editor: Karen Wernholm
Associate Managing Editor: Tamela Ambush
Assistant Acquisitions Editor, Global Edition: Murchana Borthakur
Associate Project Editor, Global Edition: Uttaran Das Gupta
Production Project Managers: Sheila Spinney and Sherry Berg
Digital Assets Manager: Marianne Groth
Media Producer: Jean Choe
Software Development: Kristina Evans, MathXL; Marty Wright, TestGen

Executive Marketing Manager: Jeff Weidenaar
Marketing Assistant: Caitlin Crain
Senior Author Support/Technology Specialist: Joe Vetere
Rights and Permissions Liaison: Joseph Croscup
Image Manager: Rachel Youdelman
Senior Manufacturing Controller, Production, Global Edition:
Trudy Kimber
Senior Procurement Specialist: Carol Melville
Associate Design Director: Andrea Nix
Product Design Lead: Beth Paquin
Interior Design: Ellen Pettengel
Cover Design: Lumina Datamatics, Inc.
Cover Image: Francesco Dazzi/Shutterstock

The Pearson team would like to acknowledge Sheila Spinney and her many years of hard work and dedication to publishing. She was a joy to work with and a wonderful friend, and we will miss her greatly.

For permission to use copyrighted material, grateful acknowledgment is made to the copyright holders on page C-1, which is hereby made part of this copyright page.

Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this book, and Pearson Education was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been printed in initial caps or all caps.

MICROSOFT AND/OR ITS RESPECTIVE SUPPLIERS MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS ABOUT THE SUITABILITY OF THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THE DOCUMENTS AND RELATED GRAPHICS PUBLISHED AS PART OF THE SERVICES FOR ANY PURPOSE. ALL SUCH DOCUMENTS AND RELATED GRAPHICS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND. MICROSOFT AND/OR ITS RESPECTIVE SUPPLIERS HEREBY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH REGARD TO THIS INFORMATION, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL MICROSOFT AND/OR ITS RESPECTIVE SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF INFORMATION AVAILABLE FROM THE SERVICES. THE DOCUMENTS AND RELATED GRAPHICS CONTAINED HEREIN COULD INCLUDE TECHNICAL INACCURACIES OR TYPOGRAPHICAL ERRORS. CHANGES ARE PERIODICALLY ADDED TO THE INFORMATION HEREIN. MICROSOFT AND/OR ITS RESPECTIVE SUPPLIERS MAY MAKE IMPROVEMENTS AND/OR CHANGES IN THE PRODUCT(S) AND/OR THE PROGRAM(S) DESCRIBED HEREIN AT ANY TIME. PARTIAL SCREEN SHOTS MAY BE VIEWED IN FULL WITHIN THE SOFTWARE VERSION SPECIFIED.

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM 20 2JE
England

and Associated Companies throughout the world

Visit us on the World Wide Web at:
www.pearsonglobaleditions.com

© Pearson Education Limited 2015

The rights of Margaret L. Lial, Thomas W. Hungerford, John P. Holcomb, Jr., and Bernadette Mullins to be identified as the authors of this work have been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

*Authorized adaptation from the United States edition, entitled *Finite Mathematics with Applications in the Management, Natural, and Social Sciences 11th Edition*, ISBN 978-0-321-93106-1, by Margaret L. Lial, Thomas W. Hungerford, John P. Holcomb, Jr., and Bernadette Mullins, published by Pearson Education © 2014.*

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without either the prior written permission of the publisher or a license permitting restricted copying in the United Kingdom issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency Ltd, Saffron House, 6–10 Kirby Street, London EC1N 8TS.

All trademarks used herein are the property of their respective owners. The use of any trademark in this text does not vest in the author or publisher any trademark ownership rights in such trademarks, nor does the use of such trademarks imply any affiliation with or endorsement of this book by such owners.

ISBN 10: 1-292-05863-3
ISBN 13: 978-1-292-05863-4
British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
14 13 12 11

Typeset by Aptara[®], Inc. in ITC Garamond STD 10/12 pt.
Printed in China.

*To G.W. and R.H., without your support
this work would not be possible.*

Contents

Preface 9

To the Student 17

Prerequisite Skills Test 19

CHAPTER 1

Algebra and Equations 21

1.1 The Real Numbers 21

1.2 Polynomials 31

1.3 Factoring 38

1.4 Rational Expressions 44

1.5 Exponents and Radicals 51

1.6 First-Degree Equations 63

1.7 Quadratic Equations 72

Summary and Review 80

CASE STUDY 1 Consumers Often Need to
Just Do the Math 83

CHAPTER 2

Graphs, Lines, and Inequalities 85

2.1 Graphs 85

2.2 Equations of Lines 95

2.3 Linear Models 107

2.4 Linear Inequalities 115

2.5 Polynomial and Rational Inequalities 121

Summary and Review 129

CASE STUDY 2 Using Extrapolation and Interpolation
for Prediction 132

CHAPTER 3

Functions and Graphs 135

3.1 Functions 135

3.2 Graphs of Functions 143

3.3 Applications of Linear Functions 154

3.4 Quadratic Functions and Applications 165

3.5 Polynomial Functions 178

3.6 Rational Functions 188

Summary and Review 197

CASE STUDY 3 Architectural Arches 201

CHAPTER 4

Exponential and Logarithmic Functions 203

4.1 Exponential Functions 203

4.2 Applications of Exponential Functions 212

4.3 Logarithmic Functions 220

4.4 Logarithmic and Exponential Equations 229

Summary and Review 238

CASE STUDY 4 Gapminder.org 241

CHAPTER 5

Mathematics of Finance 245

5.1 Simple Interest and Discount 245

5.2 Compound Interest 252

5.3 Annuities, Future Value, and Sinking Funds 263

5.4 Annuities, Present Value, and Amortization 272

Summary and Review 283

CASE STUDY 5 Continuous Compounding 287

CHAPTER 6**Systems of Linear Equations and Matrices 290****6.1** Systems of Two Linear Equations in Two Variables 291**6.2** Larger Systems of Linear Equations 297**6.3** Applications of Systems of Linear Equations 309**6.4** Basic Matrix Operations 318**6.5** Matrix Products and Inverses 325**6.6** Applications of Matrices 337**Summary and Review 349****CASE STUDY 6** Matrix Operations and Airline Route Maps 354**CHAPTER 7****Linear Programming 357****7.1** Graphing Linear Inequalities in Two Variables 358**7.2** Linear Programming: The Graphical Method 366**7.3** Applications of Linear Programming 372**7.4** The Simplex Method: Maximization 379**7.5** Maximization Applications 391**7.6** The Simplex Method: Duality and Minimization 398**7.7** The Simplex Method: Nonstandard Problems 407**Summary and Review 419****CASE STUDY 7** Cooking with Linear Programming 423**CHAPTER 8****Sets and Probability 425****8.1** Sets 425**8.2** Applications of Venn Diagrams and Contingency Tables 434**8.3** Introduction to Probability 442**8.4** Basic Concepts of Probability 452**8.5** Conditional Probability and Independent Events 461**8.6** Bayes' Formula 473**Summary and Review 478****CASE STUDY 8** Medical Diagnosis 483**CHAPTER 9****Counting, Probability Distributions, and Further Topics in Probability 485****9.1** Probability Distributions and Expected Value 485**9.2** The Multiplication Principle, Permutations, and Combinations 495**9.3** Applications of Counting 507**9.4** Binomial Probability 513**9.5** Markov Chains 518**9.6** Decision Making 529**Summary and Review 533****CASE STUDY 9** Quick Draw[®] from the New York State Lottery 537**CHAPTER 10****Introduction to Statistics 539****10.1** Frequency Distributions 539**10.2** Measures of Center 548**10.3** Measures of Variation 557**10.4** Normal Distributions and Boxplots 565**10.5** Normal Approximation to the Binomial Distribution 577**Summary and Review 583****CASE STUDY 10** Standard Deviation as a Measure of Risk 586**Appendix A** Graphing Calculators 589**Appendix B** Tables 590

Table 1: Formulas from Geometry 590

Table 2: Areas under the Normal Curve 591

Appendix C Learning Objectives 593**Appendix D** Solutions to Prerequisite Skills Test 598**Answers to Selected Exercises A-1****Index of Companies, Products, and Agencies I-1****Index of Applications I-3****Subject Index I-7****Photo Credits C-1**

Preface

Finite Mathematics with Applications is an applications-centered text for students in business, management, and natural and social sciences. It covers the basics of college algebra, followed by topics in finite mathematics. The text can be used for a variety of different courses, and the only prerequisite is a basic course in algebra. Chapter 1 provides a thorough review of basic algebra for those students who need it. The newly added Prerequisite Skills Test (for Chapters 1–4) at the front of the text can help determine where remediation is needed for students with gaps in their basic algebra skills.

It has been our primary goal to present sound mathematics in an understandable manner, proceeding from the familiar to new material and from concrete examples to general rules and formulas. There is an ongoing focus on real-world problem solving, and almost every section includes relevant, contemporary applications.

New to This Edition






With each revision comes an opportunity to improve the presentation of the content in a variety of ways. This revision is no exception as we have revised and added content, updated and added new applications, fine-tuned pedagogical devices, and evaluated and enhanced the exercise sets. In addition, both the functionality of MyMathLab and the resources within it have been greatly improved and expanded for this revision. These improvements were incorporated after careful consideration and much feedback from those who teach this course regularly. Following is a list of some of the more substantive revisions made to this edition.

- **Prerequisite Diagnostic Test:** As a way to address the often weak algebra skills that students bring to this course, a diagnostic exam is provided just prior to Chapter 1. This diagnostic can be used in a variety of ways, depending on the expectations and goals of the course. The Prerequisite Skills Test assesses student understanding of the core skills students should have prior to starting Chapter 1. Solutions are provided in the back of the text so students can self-remediate as needed, saving valuable class time.
- **Additional Figures:** An additional six graphical figures were added to Section 2.2 to help illustrate slope as part of writing the equation of a line.
- **Quadratic Functions:** In the previous edition, there were two separate sections (3.4 and 3.5) for quadratic functions and applications of quadratic functions. These two sections have been consolidated into one section for ease of teaching.
- **Case Studies:** The popular culminating activities at the end of every chapter have been expanded to provide options for **extended projects** for individual students or more extensive **group work**. In addition, three of the case studies are completely new and one has been updated significantly.
- A careful and thorough review of the **correlation between examples and exercises** has been completed to ensure that students have examples to refer to when working homework exercises. A table at the start of the answers for the Review Exercises (in the Answers to Exercises section in the back of the book) tells students in which section each of the review exercises is covered.
- The **MyMathLab** course that accompanies this text has been markedly improved and expanded to include even greater coverage of the topics in this course through more exercises, videos, animations, and PowerPoint slides. In addition, answer tolerance

for exercises has been checked and adjusted when necessary, and prerequisite diagnostic tools are available for personalized assessment and remediation. See the Supplements portion of this preface for more details on MyMathLab.

- **Graphing Calculator** screen shots have been updated to represent the newest TI calculator, the TI-84+ C. These visuals often prove valuable even to students not using graphing calculators.
- The **exercises** are now better paired so that the even exercises require similar knowledge as the corresponding odd exercise. In addition, approximately 20 percent of the 3,734 exercises in the text are new or updated.
- Approximately 18 percent of the 493 **examples** in the text are new or updated. Many examples and exercises are based on real-world data.
- **Student Learning Objectives** for every section of the text are provided at the back of the text. These objectives describe what students should understand and be able to do after studying the section and completing the exercises.
- An **Index of Companies, Products, and Agencies** is provided to increase student interest and motivation.

Continued Pedagogical Support

- **Balanced Approach:** Multiple representations of a topic (symbolic, numerical, graphical, verbal) are given when appropriate. However, we do not believe that all representations are useful for all topics, so effective alternatives are discussed only when they are likely to increase student understanding.
- **Strong Algebra Foundation:** The text begins with four thorough chapters of college algebra that can be used in a variety of ways based on the needs of the students and the goals of the course. Take advantage of the content in these chapters as needed so students will be more successful with later topics and future courses.
- **Real-Data Examples and Explanations:** Real-data exercises have long been a popular and integral aspect of this book. A significant number of new real-data examples and exercises have also been introduced into the text. Applications are noted with the type of industry in which they fall so instructors or students can focus on applications that are in line with students' majors. (See pages 210–212.)
- **The Checkpoint Exercises** (marked with icons such as ) within the body of the text provide an opportunity for students to stop, check their understanding of the specific concept at hand, and move forward with confidence. Answers to Checkpoint Exercises are located at the end of the section to encourage students to work the problems before looking at the answers. (See pages 204 and 212.)
- **Cautions**  highlight common student difficulties or warn against frequently made mistakes. (See page 224.)
- **Exercises:** In addition to skill-based practice, conceptual, and application-based exercises, there are some specially marked exercises:
 - Writing Exercises  (see page 236)
 - Connection Exercises  that relate current topics to earlier sections (see pages 273 and 282)
 - Practice Exercises from previous CPA exams (see page 262), and
 - Technology Required Exercises  (see page 283).
- **Example/Exercise Connection:** Selected exercises include a reference back to related example(s) within the section (e.g., “See Examples 6 and 7”) to facilitate what students do naturally when they use a book—i.e., look for specific examples when they get

stuck on a problem. Later exercises leave this information out and provide opportunities for mixed skill practice.

- End-of-chapter materials are designed to help students prepare for exams and include a **List of Key Terms and Symbols** and **Summary of Key Concepts**, as well as a thorough set of **Chapter-Review Exercises**.
- **Case Studies** appear at the end of each chapter and offer contemporary real-world and up-to-date applications of some of the mathematics presented in the chapter. Not only do these provide an opportunity for students to see the mathematics they are learning in action, but they also provide at least a partial answer to the question, “What is this stuff good for?” These have been expanded to include options for longer-term projects if the instructor should choose to use them.


Technology

In our text, we choose to support a variety of different technologies in a way that provides greater understanding and encourages exploration of the tools students have at their disposal. The technology that is supported by this text includes graphing calculators, spreadsheets, and a variety of resources within MyMathLab.


MyMathLab: This text is not just supported by MyMathLab (MML), but rather it is enriched and expanded upon within MML. Fortunately, today’s students are well-equipped to take full advantage of resources beyond the text, and the MML course for this text is especially valuable to the typical student.

- Concepts that are difficult to describe in print can be shown dynamically through video or animation, providing a visual that students may otherwise miss.
- Topics that are particularly challenging to students can be practiced, assessed, reviewed, and practiced some more through algorithmically generated homework or videos.
- Prerequisite skills that students lack can be assessed and then addressed on an individual basis using quick, pre-built assessments and personalized homework.

Although use of MML with this text is completely optional, students stand a greater chance of success if they take advantage of the many resources available to them within MML. More details as to all that MML can do are provided in the Supplements portion of this preface.

Graphing Calculators and Spreadsheets: It is assumed that all students have a calculator that will handle exponential and logarithmic functions. Beyond that, however, graphing calculator and spreadsheet references are highlighted in the text so that those who use the technology can easily incorporate it and those who do not can easily omit it. Examples and exercises that require some sort of technology are marked with the icon , making it obvious where technology is being included.

Instructors who routinely use technology in their courses will find more than enough material to satisfy their needs. Here are some of the features they may want to incorporate into their courses:

- **Examples and Exercises marked with ** A number of examples show students how various features of graphing calculators and spreadsheets can be applied to the topics in this book. Exercises marked with the same icon give students a chance to practice particular skills using technology.
- **Technology Tips:** These are placed at appropriate points in the text to inform students of various features of their graphing calculator, spreadsheet, or other computer programs. Note that Technology Tips designed for TI-84+ C also apply to the TI-84+, TI-83, and TI-Nspire.
- **Appendix A: Graphing Calculators:** This appendix consists of a brief introduction to the relevant features of the latest TI-84+ C graphing calculator. An outline of the appendix is on page 589, and the full appendix is available online in MyMathLab.

- A **Graphing Calculator Manual** and **Excel Spreadsheet Manual** are also available within MyMathLab. These manuals provide students with the support they need to make use of the latest versions of graphing calculators and Excel 2013.

Course Flexibility

The content of the text is divided into two parts:

- College Algebra (Chapters 1–4)
- Finite Mathematics (Chapters 5–10)

This coverage of the material offers flexibility, making the book appropriate for a variety of courses, including:

- Finite Mathematics (one semester or two quarters). Use as much of Chapters 1–4 as needed, and then go into Chapters 5–10 as time permits and local needs require.
- College Algebra with Applications (one semester or quarter). Use Chapters 1–8, with Chapters 7 and 8 being optional.

Pearson regularly produces custom versions of this text (and its accompanying MyMathLab course) to address the needs of specific course sequences. Custom versions can be produced for even smaller-enrollment courses due to advances in digital printing. Please contact your local Pearson representative for more details.

Chapter interdependence is as follows:

<i>Chapter</i>	<i>Prerequisite</i>
1 Algebra and Equations	None
2 Graphs, Lines, and Inequalities	Chapter 1
3 Functions and Graphs	Chapters 1 and 2
4 Exponential and Logarithmic Functions	Chapter 3
5 Mathematics of Finance	Chapter 4
6 Systems of Linear Equations and Matrices	Chapters 1 and 2
7 Linear Programming	Chapters 3 and 6
8 Sets and Probability	None
9 Counting, Probability Distributions, and Further Topics in Probability	Chapter 8
10 Introduction to Statistics	Chapter 8

Student Supplements

Graphing Calculator Manual (downloadable)

- By Victoria Baker, Nicholls State University
- Contains detailed instruction for using the TI-83/TI-83+/TI-84+ C.
- Instructions are organized by topic.
- Available in MyMathLab.

Excel Spreadsheet Manual (downloadable)

- By Stela Pudar-Hozo, Indiana University—Northwest
- Contains detailed instructions for using Excel 2013.
- Instructions are organized by topic.
- Available in MyMathLab.

Instructor Supplements

Instructor's Solutions Manual (downloadable)

- By Salvatore Sciandra, Niagara County Community College
- This manual contains detailed solutions to all text exercises, suggested course outlines, and a chapter interdependence chart.
- Available through www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/Lial or in MyMathLab.

Printable Test Bank (downloadable)

- By David Bridge, University of Central Oklahoma
- This test bank includes four alternate tests per chapter that parallel the text's Chapter Tests.
- Available through www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/Lial or in MyMathLab.

Media Supplements

MyMathLab® Online Course (access code required)

MyMathLab delivers **proven results** in helping individual students succeed.

- MyMathLab has a consistently positive impact on the quality of learning in higher education math instruction. MyMathLab can be successfully implemented in any environment—lab-based, hybrid, fully online, traditional—and demonstrates the quantifiable difference that integrated usage has on student retention, subsequent success, and overall achievement.
- MyMathLab's comprehensive online gradebook automatically tracks your students' results on tests, quizzes, homework, and in the study plan. You can use the gradebook to quickly intervene if your students have trouble, or to provide positive feedback on a job well done. The data within MyMathLab is easily exported to a variety of spreadsheet programs, such as Microsoft Excel. You can determine which points of data you want to export, and then analyze the results to determine success.

MyMathLab provides **engaging experiences** that personalize, stimulate, and measure learning for each student.

- **Continuously Adaptive:** Adaptive learning functionality analyzes student work and points them toward resources that will maximize their learning.
- **Exercises:** The homework and practice exercises in MyMathLab are correlated to the exercises in the textbook, and they regenerate algorithmically to give students unlimited opportunity for practice and mastery. The software offers immediate, helpful feedback when students enter incorrect answers.
- **Chapter-Level, Just-in-Time Remediation:** Students receive remediation only for those skills that they have not yet mastered through *Getting Ready* diagnostics and content, and personalized homework.

- **Multimedia Learning Aids:** Exercises include guided solutions, sample problems, animations, videos, and eText clips for extra help at point-of-use.

And, MyMathLab comes from a **trusted partner** with educational expertise and an eye on the future.

- Knowing that you are using a Pearson product means knowing that you are using quality content. That means that our eTexts are accurate and our assessment tools work.
- Whether you are just getting started with MyMathLab, or have a question along the way, we're here to help you learn about our technologies and how to incorporate them into your course.

To learn more about how MyMathLab combines proven learning applications with powerful assessment, visit www.mymathlab.com or contact your Pearson representative.

New! Video Lectures with Optional Subtitles

The video lectures for this text are available in MyMathLab, making it easy and convenient for students to watch the videos from computers at home or on campus, or from their smart phones! The videos feature engaging chapter summaries and worked-out examples. The videos have **optional English subtitles**; they can easily be turned on or off for individual student needs.

PowerPoint® Lecture Slides

These slides present key concepts and definitions from the text. They are available in MyMathLab or at www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/Lial.

TestGen®

TestGen® (www.pearsoned.com/testgen) enables instructors to build, edit, print, and administer tests using a computerized bank of questions developed to cover all the objectives of the text. TestGen is algorithmically based, allowing instructors to create multiple but equivalent versions of the same question or test with the click of a button. Instructors can also modify test bank questions or add new questions. The software and testbank are available for download from Pearson Education's online catalog.

Acknowledgments

The authors wish to thank the following reviewers for their thoughtful feedback and helpful suggestions without which we could not continue to improve this text.

Hossein A. Abbasi, Bloomsburg University	Timothy Kohl, Boston University
Zachary J. Abernathy, Winthrop University	Ronald E. Kutz, Western Connecticut State University
Sasha Anderson, Fresno City College	Gregory L. Macklin, Delaware Technical Community College
Sviatoslav Archava, East Carolina University	Marna Mozeff, Drexel University
Peter Barendse, Boston University	Charles Odion, Houston Community College
Linda Estes Barton, Ball State University	Lindsay Packer, Metropolitan State University of Denver
Jaromir J. Becan, University of Texas at San Antonio	David Rangel, Northeast Texas Community College
Shari Beck, Navarro College	Aaron Rosenberg, Folsom Lake College
Elizabeth Bowman, The University of Alabama in Huntsville	Sharon M. Saxton, Cascadia Community College
Dwayne C. Brown, University of South Carolina Lancaster	Zachary Sharon, The University of Texas at San Antonio
Priscilla Chaffe-Stengel, California State University, Fresno	Robin Gayer Sirkis, Delaware Technical Community College
Michelle Cook, Stephen F. Austin State University	Pam Stogsdill, Bossier Parish Community College
Michael Dixon, Midland College	Karel Stroethoff, University of Montana
Edward D. Esparza, University of Texas at San Antonio	Frank Viviano, Bossier Parish Community College
Mark Goldstein, West Virginia Community College	Cassandra Wright, Stephen F. Austin State University
Ronald D. Hagan, The University of Tennessee	Cong-Cong Xing, Nicholls State University
Timothy Huber, University of Texas–Pan American	Xinyun Zhu, The University of Texas of the Permian Basin
Mary Jackson, Brookhaven College	
Patricia Kan, Cleveland State University	

A special thanks goes to Jason Stone for his help in developing the Prerequisite Skills Test. Additionally, we gratefully acknowledge Birmingham–Southern College and Cleveland State University for their whole-hearted support of the Eleventh Edition.

We also wish to thank our accuracy checkers, who did an excellent job of checking both text and exercise answers: Paul Lorczak and Douglas Ewert. Thanks also to the supplements authors: Salvatore Sciandra, David Bridge, Victoria Baker, and Stela Pudar-Hozo.

We want to thank the staff of Pearson Education for their assistance with, and contributions to, this book, particularly Greg Tobin, Deirdre Lynch, Jennifer Crum, Jeff Weidenaar, Sherry Berg, Sheila Spinney, Chere Bemelmans, Joanne Wendelken, Caitlin Crain, and Jean Choe. Finally, we wish to express our appreciation to Kelly Ricci of Aptara Corporation, who was a pleasure to work with.

Thomas W. Hungerford

John P. Holcomb, Jr.

Bernadette Mullins

Pearson would like to thank the following persons for their contribution to the Global Edition:

Contributor:

Basant Kumar Mishra, Ram Lal Anand College, University of Delhi

Reviewers:

Sumit Sourabh, ILLC, University of Amsterdam

B.R. Shankar, National Institute of Technology Karnataka, Surathkal

C.V. Vinay, JSS Academy of Technical Education, Bangalore


To the Student

The key to succeeding in this course is to remember that *mathematics is not a spectator sport*. You can't expect to learn mathematics without *doing* mathematics any more than you could learn to swim without getting wet. You must take an active role, making use of all the resources at your disposal: your instructor, your fellow students, this book, and the supplements that accompany it. Following are some general tips on how to be successful in the course, and some specific tips on how to get the most out of this text and supplementary resources.

Ask Questions! Remember the words of the great Hillel: “The bashful do not learn.” There is no such thing as a “dumb question” (assuming, of course, that you have read the book and your class notes and attempted the homework). Your instructor will welcome questions that arise from a serious effort on your part. So get your money's worth: Ask questions!

Read the Book Interactively! There is more to a math textbook than just the exercise sets. Each section introduces topics carefully with many examples—both mathematical and contextual. Take note of the “Caution” and “Note” comments, and bookmark pages with key definitions or formulas. After reading the example, try the **Checkpoint Exercise** that follows it in the margin to check your understanding of the concept. This will help you solidify your understanding or diagnose if you do not fully understand the concept. The answers to the Checkpoint exercises are right after the homework exercises in each section. Resist the temptation to flip to the answer until you've worked the problem completely!

Take Advantage of the Supplementary Material! Both within and outside the text, there are many resources at your disposal. Take the time to interact with them and determine which resources suit your learning style the best.

- If your instructor allows the use of graphing calculators and/or spreadsheets, work through the examples and exercises marked with the . Some instructors may make this material part of the course, whereas others will not require you to use technology. For those who use technology, there is a *Graphing Calculator Appendix* that covers the basics of calculator use and provides a number of helpful programs for working with some of the topics in the text. An outline of the appendix is on page 589, and the full appendix is available in MyMathLab. In addition, there are **Technology Tips** throughout the text that describe the proper menu or keys to use for various procedures on a graphing calculator. Note that Technology Tips for TI-84+ C also apply to TI-83+, TI-Nspire, and usually TI-83.
- MyMathLab has a variety of types of resources at your disposal including videos and PowerPoints for every section of the text, example-level videos, animations to help visualize difficult concepts, unlimited practice and assessment on newly learned or prerequisite skills, and access to the *Student Solutions Manual*, *Graphing Calculator Manual* and *Excel Spreadsheet Manual*, a variety of helpful reference cards, and links to useful websites like Texas Instruments.

Do Your Homework! Whether it is paper/pencil homework or assigned online, you must practice what you have learned. Remember, math is not a spectator sport! This is your opportunity to practice those essential skills needed for passing this course, and for applying in future courses or your career.

We wish you the best in your efforts with this course, in future courses, and beyond school.

Prerequisite Skills Test*

The following test is unlike your typical math test. Rather than testing your skills after you have worked on them, this test assesses skills that you should know from previous coursework and will use in this class. It is intended to diagnose any areas that you may need to remediate. Take advantage of the results of this test by checking your answers in Appendix D. The full solutions are included to remind you of the steps to answer the problem.

Find the most simplified answer for the given problems involving fractions:

1. $\frac{5}{2} - 6 =$

2. $\frac{1}{2} \div \frac{2}{5} =$

3. $\frac{1}{3} \div 3 =$

Simplify the given expression, keeping in mind the appropriate order of operations:

4. $7 + 2 - 3(2 \div 6) =$

5. $\frac{2 \times 3 + 12}{1 + 5} - 1 =$

Indicate whether each of the statements is true or false:

6. $\frac{4 + 3}{3} = 5$

7. $\frac{5}{7} + \frac{7}{5} = 1$

8. $\frac{3}{5} + 1 = \frac{6}{5}$

Translate each of the following written expressions into a corresponding mathematical statement. If possible, solve for the unknown value or values.

9. Alicia has n pairs of shoes. Manuel has two more pairs of shoes than Alicia. How many pairs of shoes does Manuel have?
10. David's age and Selina's age, when added together, equals 42. Selena is 6 years older than David. What are David's and Selina's ages?

Solve the following problem.

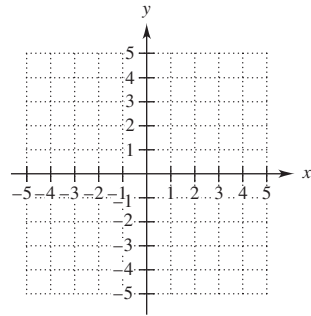
11. The price of a sweater, originally sold for \$72, is reduced by 20%. What is the new sale price of the sweater?

*Full Solutions to this test are provided in the back of the text.

Given the following rectangular coordinate system, graph and label the following points:

12. A: $(3, -2)$ B: $(4, 0)$ C: $(-2, -3)$

13. D: $(3, 5)$ E: $(-1, 4)$ F: $(-4, -5)$



Round the following values as indicated:

14. (a) 4.27659 to the nearest tenth

(b) 245.984 to the nearest unit (whole number)

15. (a) 16.38572 to the nearest hundredth

(b) 1,763,304.42 to the nearest thousand

Write the number that corresponds with the given numerical statement:

16. (a) The Company's liabilities totaled 34 million dollars.

(b) The total of investments was 2.2 thousand dollars.

17. (a) The population of a country is 17 hundred thousand.

(b) The cost of the new airport could run as high as three and a quarter billion dollars.

Answer the following. If there is no solution, indicate that there is no solution and provide a reason.

18. $\frac{5}{0} =$

19. A car is traveling 60 miles per hour. Is the car traveling at 1 mile per minute?

20. Which number is greater, -9 or -900 ?



Algebra and Equations

1

CHAPTER

CHAPTER OUTLINE

- 1.1 The Real Numbers
- 1.2 Polynomials
- 1.3 Factoring
- 1.4 Rational Expressions
- 1.5 Exponents and Radicals
- 1.6 First-Degree Equations
- 1.7 Quadratic Equations

CASE STUDY 1

Consumers Often Need to Just Do the Math

Mathematics is widely used in business, finance, and the biological, social, and physical sciences, from developing efficient production schedules for a factory to mapping the human genome. Mathematics also plays a role in determining interest on a loan from a bank, the growth of traffic on websites, and the study of falling objects. See Exercises 61 and 67 on page 71 and Exercise 83 on page 79.

Algebra and equations are the basic mathematical tools for handling many applications. Your success in this course will depend on your having the algebraic skills presented in this chapter.

1.1 The Real Numbers

Only real numbers will be used in this book.* The names of the most common types of real numbers are as follows.

The Real Numbers

Natural (counting) numbers	1, 2, 3, 4, . . .
Whole numbers	0, 1, 2, 3, 4, . . .

*Not all numbers are real numbers. For example, $\sqrt{-1}$ is a number that is *not* a real number.

Integers	$\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$
Rational numbers	All numbers that can be written in the form p/q , where p and q are integers and $q \neq 0$
Irrational numbers	Real numbers that are not rational

As you can see, every natural number is a whole number, and every whole number is an integer. Furthermore, every integer is a rational number. For instance, the integer 7 can be written as the fraction $\frac{7}{1}$ and is therefore a rational number.

One example of an irrational number is π , the ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter. The number π can be approximated as $\pi \approx 3.14159$ (\approx means “is approximately equal to”), but there is no rational number that is exactly equal to π .

Example 1

What kind of number is each of the following?

(a) 6

Solution The number 6 is a natural number, a whole number, an integer, a rational number, and a real number.

(b) $\frac{3}{4}$

Solution This number is rational and real.

(c) 3π

Solution Because π is not a rational number, 3π is irrational and real. 

 **Checkpoint 1**

Name all the types of numbers that apply to the following.

- (a) -2
 (b) $-5/8$
 (c) $\pi/5$

Answers to Checkpoint exercises are found at the end of the section.

All real numbers can be written in decimal form. A rational number, when written in decimal form, is either a terminating decimal, such as $.5$ or $.128$, or a repeating decimal, in which some block of digits eventually repeats forever, such as $1.3333\dots$ or $4.7234234234\dots$.[†] Irrational numbers are decimals that neither terminate nor repeat.

When a calculator is used for computations, the answers it produces are often decimal *approximations* of the actual answers; they are accurate enough for most applications. To ensure that your final answer is as accurate as possible,

you should not round off any numbers during long calculator computations.

It is usually OK to round off the final answer to a reasonable number of decimal places once the computation is finished.

The important basic properties of the real numbers are as follows.

Properties of the Real Numbers

For all real numbers, a , b , and c , the following properties hold true:

Commutative properties $a + b = b + a$ and $ab = ba$.

Associative properties $(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$ and $(ab)c = a(bc)$.

^{*}The use of Checkpoint exercises is explained in the “To the Student” section preceding this chapter.

[†]Some graphing calculators have a FRAC key that automatically converts some repeating decimals to fraction form.

Identity properties

There exists a unique real number 0, called the **additive identity**, such that

$$a + 0 = a \quad \text{and} \quad 0 + a = a.$$

There exists a unique real number 1, called the **multiplicative identity**, such that

$$a \cdot 1 = a \quad \text{and} \quad 1 \cdot a = a.$$

Inverse properties

For each real number a , there exists a unique real number $-a$, called the **additive inverse** of a , such that

$$a + (-a) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad (-a) + a = 0.$$

If $a \neq 0$, there exists a unique real number $1/a$, called the **multiplicative inverse** of a , such that

$$a \cdot \frac{1}{a} = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{a} \cdot a = 1.$$

Distributive property

$$a(b + c) = ab + ac \quad \text{and} \quad (b + c)a = ba + ca.$$

The next five examples illustrate the properties listed in the preceding box.

Example 2

The commutative property says that the order in which you add or multiply two quantities doesn't matter.

$$(a) \quad (6 + x) + 9 = 9 + (6 + x) = 9 + (x + 6) \quad (b) \quad 5 \cdot (9 \cdot 8) = (9 \cdot 8) \cdot 5$$

Example 3

When the associative property is used, the order of the numbers does not change, but the placement of parentheses does.

$$(a) \quad 4 + (9 + 8) = (4 + 9) + 8 \quad (b) \quad 3(9x) = (3 \cdot 9)x \quad \checkmark_2$$

Example 4

By the identity properties,

$$(a) \quad -8 + 0 = -8 \quad (b) \quad (-9) \cdot 1 = -9.$$



TECHNOLOGY TIP To enter -8 on a calculator, use the negation key (labeled $(-)$ or $+/-$), *not* the subtraction key. On most one-line scientific calculators, key in $8 +/-$. On graphing calculators or two-line scientific calculators, key in either $(-)$ 8 or $+/-$ 8.

Example 5

By the inverse properties, the statements in parts (a) through (d) are true.

$$(a) \quad 9 + (-9) = 0 \quad (b) \quad -15 + 15 = 0$$

$$(c) \quad -8 \cdot \left(\frac{1}{-8}\right) = 1 \quad (d) \quad \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \cdot \sqrt{5} = 1$$



NOTE There is no real number x such that $0 \cdot x = 1$, so 0 has no multiplicative inverse. \checkmark_3

Checkpoint 2

Name the property illustrated in each of the following examples.

- (a) $(2 + 3) + 9 = (3 + 2) + 9$
- (b) $(2 + 3) + 9 = 2 + (3 + 9)$
- (c) $(2 + 3) + 9 = 9 + (2 + 3)$
- (d) $(4 \cdot 6)p = (6 \cdot 4)p$
- (e) $4(6p) = (4 \cdot 6)p$

Checkpoint 3

Name the property illustrated in each of the following examples.

- (a) $2 + 0 = 2$
- (b) $-\frac{1}{4} \cdot (-4) = 1$
- (c) $-\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} = 0$
- (d) $1 \cdot \frac{2}{3} = \frac{2}{3}$


 **Checkpoint 4**

Use the distributive property to complete each of the following.

- (a) $4(-2 + 5)$
- (b) $2(a + b)$
- (c) $-3(p + 1)$
- (d) $(8 - k)m$
- (e) $5x + 3x$

Example 6

By the distributive property,

- (a) $9(6 + 4) = 9 \cdot 6 + 9 \cdot 4$
- (b) $3(x + y) = 3x + 3y$
- (c) $-8(m + 2) = (-8)(m) + (-8)(2) = -8m - 16$
- (d) $(5 + x)y = 5y + xy$. 

Order of Operations

Some complicated expressions may contain many sets of parentheses. To avoid ambiguity, the following procedure should be used.

Parentheses

Work separately above and below any fraction bar. Within each set of parentheses or square brackets, start with the innermost set and work outward.

Example 7

Simplify: $[(3 + 2) - 7]5 + 2[(6 \cdot 3) - 13]$.

Solution On each segment, work from the inside out:

$$\begin{aligned} & [(3 + 2) - 7]5 - 2[(6 \cdot 3) - 13] \\ &= [5 - 7]5 + 2(18 - 13) \\ &= [-2]5 + 2(5) \\ &= -10 + 10 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Does the expression $2 + 4 \times 3$ mean

$$(2 + 4) \times 3 = 6 \times 3 = 18?$$

Or does it mean

$$2 + (4 \times 3) = 2 + 12 = 14?$$

To avoid this ambiguity, mathematicians have adopted the following rules (which are also followed by almost all scientific and graphing calculators).

Order of Operations

1. Find all powers and roots, working from left to right.
2. Do any multiplications or divisions in the order in which they occur, working from left to right.
3. Finally, do any additions or subtractions in the order in which they occur, working from left to right.

If sets of parentheses or square brackets are present, use the rules in the preceding box within each set, working from the innermost set outward.

According to these rules, multiplication is done *before* addition, so $2 + 4 \times 3 = 2 + 12 = 14$. Here are some additional examples.

Example 8

Use the order of operations to evaluate each expression if $x = -2$, $y = 5$, and $z = -3$.

(a) $-4x^2 - 7y + 4z$

Solution Use parentheses when replacing letters with numbers:

$$\begin{aligned} -4x^2 - 7y + 4z &= -4(-2)^2 - 7(5) + 4(-3) \\ &= -4(4) - 7(5) + 4(-3) = -16 - 35 - 12 = -63. \end{aligned}$$

(b) $\frac{2(x - 5)^2 + 4y}{z + 4} = \frac{2(-2 - 5)^2 + 4(5)}{-3 + 4}$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{2(-7)^2 + 20}{1} \\ &= 2(49) + 20 = 118. \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 5

Evaluate the following if $m = -5$ and $n = 8$.

(a) $-2mn - 2m^2$

(b) $\frac{4(n - 5)^2 - m}{m + n}$

Example 9

Use a calculator to evaluate

$$\frac{-9(-3) + (-5)}{3(-4) - 5(2)}$$

Solution Use extra parentheses (shown here in blue) around the numerator and denominator when you enter the number in your calculator, and be careful to distinguish the negation key from the subtraction key.

$$\frac{(-9(-3) + (-5))}{(3(-4) - 5(2))}$$

↑ Numerator ↑ Denominator
↑ Negation key ↑ Subtraction key

If you don't get -1 as the answer, then you are entering something incorrectly.

✓ Checkpoint 6

Use a calculator to evaluate the following.

(a) $4^2 \div 8 + 3^2 \div 3$

(b) $[-7 + (-9)] \cdot (-4) - 8(3)$

(c) $\frac{-11 - (-12) - 4 \cdot 5}{4(-2) - (-6)(-5)}$

(d) $\frac{36 \div 4 \cdot 3 \div 9 + 1}{9 \div (-6) \cdot 8 - 4}$

**TECHNOLOGY TIP**

On one-line scientific calculators, $\sqrt{40}$ is entered as $40 \sqrt{}$. On graphing calculators and two-line scientific calculators, key in $\sqrt{40}$ ENTER (or EXE).

Square Roots

There are two numbers whose square is 16, namely, 4 and -4 . The positive one, 4, is called the **square root** of 16. Similarly, the square root of a nonnegative number d is defined to be the *nonnegative* number whose square is d ; this number is denoted \sqrt{d} . For instance,

$$\sqrt{36} = 6 \text{ because } 6^2 = 36, \quad \sqrt{0} = 0 \text{ because } 0^2 = 0, \text{ and}$$

$$\sqrt{1.44} = 1.2 \text{ because } (1.2)^2 = 1.44.$$

No negative number has a square root that is a real number. For instance, there is no real number whose square is -4 , so -4 has no square root.

Every nonnegative real number has a square root. Unless an integer is a perfect square (such as $64 = 8^2$), its square root is an irrational number. A calculator can be used to obtain a rational approximation of these square roots.

Example 10

Estimate each of the given quantities. Verify your estimates with a calculator.

(a) $\sqrt{40}$

Solution Since $6^2 = 36$ and $7^2 = 49$, $\sqrt{40}$ must be a number between 6 and 7. A typical calculator shows that $\sqrt{40} \approx 6.32455532$.

✓ Checkpoint 7

Estimate each of the following.

- (a) $\sqrt{73}$
 (b) $\sqrt{22} + 3$
 (c) Confirm your estimates in parts (a) and (b) with a calculator.

✓ Checkpoint 8

Draw a number line, and graph the numbers -4 , -1 , 0 , 1 , 2.5 , and $13/4$ on it.

(b) $5\sqrt{7}$

Solution $\sqrt{7}$ is between 2 and 3 because $2^2 = 4$ and $3^2 = 9$, so $5\sqrt{7}$ must be a number between $5 \cdot 2 = 10$ and $5 \cdot 3 = 15$. A calculator shows that $5\sqrt{7} \approx 13.22875656$. ✓₇

CAUTION If c and d are positive real numbers, then $\sqrt{c+d}$ is *not* equal to $\sqrt{c} + \sqrt{d}$. For example, $\sqrt{9+16} = \sqrt{25} = 5$, but $\sqrt{9} + \sqrt{16} = 3 + 4 = 7$.

The Number Line

The real numbers can be illustrated geometrically with a diagram called a **number line**. Each real number corresponds to exactly one point on the line and vice versa. A number line with several sample numbers located (or **graphed**) on it is shown in Figure 1.1. ✓₈

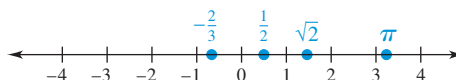


Figure 1.1

When comparing the sizes of two real numbers, the following symbols are used.

Symbol	Read	Meaning
$a < b$	a is less than b .	a lies to the <i>left</i> of b on the number line.
$b > a$	b is greater than a .	b lies to the <i>right</i> of a on the number line.

Note that $a < b$ means the same thing as $b > a$. The inequality symbols are sometimes joined with the equals sign, as follows.

Symbol	Read	Meaning
$a \leq b$	a is less than or equal to b .	either $a < b$ or $a = b$
$b \geq a$	b is greater than or equal to a .	either $b > a$ or $b = a$

TECHNOLOGY TIP

If your graphing calculator has inequality symbols (usually located on the TEST menu), you can key in statements such as “ $5 < 12$ ” or “ $-2 \geq 3$.” When you press ENTER, the calculator will display 1 if the statement is true and 0 if it is false.

✓ Checkpoint 9

Write *true* or *false* for the following.

- (a) $-9 \leq -2$
 (b) $8 > -3$
 (c) $-14 \leq -20$

Only one part of an “either . . . or” statement needs to be true for the entire statement to be considered true. So the statement $3 \leq 7$ is true because $3 < 7$, and the statement $3 \leq 3$ is true because $3 = 3$.

Example 11 Write *true* or *false* for each of the following.

(a) $8 < 12$

Solution This statement says that 8 is less than 12, which is true.

(b) $-6 > -3$

Solution The graph in Figure 1.2 shows that -6 is to the *left* of -3 . Thus, $-6 < -3$, and the given statement is false.

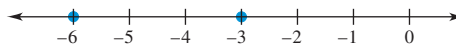



Figure 1.2

(c) $-2 \leq -2$

Solution Because $-2 = -2$, this statement is true. ✓₉

A number line can be used to draw the graph of a set of numbers, as shown in the next few examples.

Example 12 Graph all real numbers x such that $1 < x < 5$.

Solution This graph includes all the real numbers between 1 and 5, not just the integers. Graph these numbers by drawing a heavy line from 1 to 5 on the number line, as in Figure 1.3. Parentheses at 1 and 5 show that neither of these points belongs to the graph. 

✓ Checkpoint 10

Graph all real numbers x such that

- (a) $-5 < x < 1$
 (b) $4 < x < 7$.

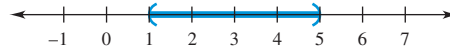


Figure 1.3


A set that consists of all the real numbers between two points, such as $1 < x < 5$ in Example 12, is called an **interval**. A special notation called **interval notation** is used to indicate an interval on the number line. For example, the interval including all numbers x such that $-2 < x < 3$ is written as $(-2, 3)$. The parentheses indicate that the numbers -2 and 3 are *not* included. If -2 and 3 are to be included in the interval, square brackets are used, as in $[-2, 3]$. The following chart shows several typical intervals, where $a < b$.

Intervals

Inequality	Interval Notation	Explanation
$a \leq x \leq b$	$[a, b]$	Both a and b are included.
$a \leq x < b$	$[a, b)$	a is included; b is not.
$a < x \leq b$	$(a, b]$	b is included; a is not.
$a < x < b$	(a, b)	Neither a nor b is included.

Interval notation is also used to describe sets such as the set of all numbers x such that $x \geq -2$. This interval is written $[-2, \infty)$. The set of all real numbers is written $(-\infty, \infty)$ in interval notation.

Example 13 Graph the interval $[-2, \infty)$.

Solution Start at -2 and draw a heavy line to the right, as in Figure 1.4. Use a square bracket at -2 to show that -2 itself is part of the graph. The symbol ∞ , read “infinity,” *does not* represent a number. This notation simply indicates that *all* numbers greater than -2 are in the interval. Similarly, the notation $(-\infty, 2)$ indicates the set of all numbers x such that $x < 2$. 

✓ Checkpoint 11

Graph all real numbers x in the given interval.

- (a) $(-\infty, 4]$
 (b) $[-2, 1]$

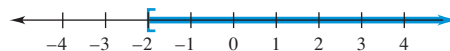


Figure 1.4

Absolute Value

The **absolute value** of a real number a is the distance from a to 0 on the number line and is written $|a|$. For example, Figure 1.5 shows that the distance from 9 to 0 on the number line is 9, so we have $|9| = 9$. The figure also shows that $|-9| = 9$, because the distance from -9 to 0 is also 9.



Figure 1.5

The facts that $|9| = 9$ and $|-9| = 9 = -(-9)$ suggest the following algebraic definition of absolute value.

Absolute Value

For any real number a ,

$$\begin{aligned} |a| &= a && \text{if } a \geq 0 \\ |a| &= -a && \text{if } a < 0. \end{aligned}$$

The first part of the definition shows that $|0| = 0$ (because $0 \geq 0$). It also shows that the absolute value of any positive number a is the number itself, so $|a|$ is positive in such cases. The second part of the definition says that the absolute value of a negative number a is the *negative* of a . For instance, if $a = -5$, then $|-5| = -(-5) = 5$. So $|-5|$ is positive. The same thing works for any negative number—that is, its absolute value (the negative of a negative number) is positive. Thus, we can state the following:

For every nonzero real number a , the number $|a|$ is positive.

✓ Checkpoint 12

Find the following.

- $|-6|$
- $-|7|$
- $-|-2|$
- $|-3 - 4|$
- $|2 - 7|$

Example 14 Evaluate $|8 - 9|$.

Solution First, simplify the expression within the absolute-value bars:

$$|8 - 9| = |-1| = 1. \quad \checkmark_{12}$$

1.1 Exercises

In Exercises 1 and 2, label the statement true or false. (See Example 1.)

- Every integer is a rational number.
- Every real number is an irrational number.
- The decimal expansion of the irrational number π begins 3.141592653589793 Use your calculator to determine which of the following rational numbers is the best approximation for the irrational number π :

$$\frac{22}{7}, \quad \frac{355}{113}, \quad \frac{103,993}{33,102}, \quad \frac{2,508,429,787}{798,458,000}.$$

Your calculator may tell you that some of these numbers are equal to π , but that just indicates that the number agrees with π for as many decimal places as your calculator can handle (usually 10–14). No rational number is exactly equal to π .

Identify the properties that are illustrated in each of the following. (See Examples 2–6.)

- $0 + (-7) = -7 + 0$
- $6(t + 4) = 6t + 6 \cdot 4$

$$6. \quad 3 + (-3) = (-3) + 3$$

$$7. \quad -5 + 0 = -5$$

$$8. \quad (-4) \cdot \left(\frac{-1}{4}\right) = 1$$

$$9. \quad 8 + (12 + 6) = (8 + 12) + 6$$

$$10. \quad 1 \cdot (-20) = -20$$

11. How is the additive inverse property related to the additive identity property? the multiplicative inverse property to the multiplicative identity property?

12. Explain the distinction between the commutative and associative properties.

Evaluate each of the following if $p = -2$, $q = 3$, and $r = -5$. (See Examples 7–9.)

$$13. \quad -3(p + 5q)$$

$$14. \quad 2(q - r)$$

$$15. \quad \frac{q + r}{q + p}$$

$$16. \quad \frac{3q}{3p - 2r}$$

Business The nominal annual percentage rate (APR) reported by lenders has the formula $APR = 12r$, where r is the monthly interest rate. Find the APR when

17. $r = 3.8$ 18. $r = 0.8$

Find the monthly interest rate r when

19. $APR = 11$ 20. $APR = 13.2$

Evaluate each expression, using the order of operations given in the text. (See Examples 7–9.)

21. $3 - 4 \cdot 5 + 5$ 22. $8 - (-4)^2 - (-12)$
 23. $(4 - 5) \cdot 6 + 6$ 24. $\frac{2(3 - 7) + 4(8)}{4(-3) + (-3)(-2)}$
 25. $8 - 4^2 - (-12)$
 26. $-(3 - 5) - [2 - (3^2 - 13)]$
 27. $\frac{2(-3) + 3/(-2) - 2/(-\sqrt{16})}{\sqrt{64} - 1}$
 28. $\frac{6^2 - 3\sqrt{25}}{\sqrt{6^2 + 13}}$

Use a calculator to help you list the given numbers in order from smallest to largest. (See Example 10.)

29. $\frac{189}{37}$, $\frac{4587}{691}$, $\sqrt{47}$, 6.735, $\sqrt{27}$, $\frac{2040}{523}$
 30. $\frac{385}{117}$, $\sqrt{10}$, $\frac{187}{63}$, π , $\sqrt{\sqrt{85}}$, 2.9884

Express each of the following statements in symbols, using $<$, $>$, \leq , or \geq .

31. 12 is less than 18.5.
 32. -2 is greater than -20 .
 33. x is greater than or equal to 5.7.
 34. y is less than or equal to -5 .
 35. z is at most 7.5.
 36. w is negative.

Fill in the blank with $<$, $=$, or $>$ so that the resulting statement is true.

37. -6 _____ -2 38. $3/4$ _____ $.75$
 39. 3.14 _____ π 40. $1/3$ _____ $.33$

Fill in the blank so as to produce two equivalent statements. For example, the arithmetic statement “ a is negative” is equivalent to the geometric statement “the point a lies to the left of the point 0.”

Arithmetic Statement	Geometric Statement
41. $a \geq b$	_____
42. _____	a lies c units to the right of b
43. _____	a lies between b and c , and to the right of c
44. a is positive	_____

Graph the given intervals on a number line. (See Examples 12 and 13.)

45. $(-8, -1)$ 46. $[-1, 10]$
 47. $(-2, 3]$ 48. $[-2, 2)$
 49. $(-2, \infty)$ 50. $(-\infty, -2]$

Evaluate each of the following expressions (see Example 14).

51. $|-9| - |-12|$
 52. $|8| - |-4|$
 53. $-|-4| - |-1 - 14|$
 54. $-|6| - |-12 - 4|$

In each of the following problems, fill in the blank with either $=$, $<$, or $>$, so that the resulting statement is true.

55. $|5|$ _____ $|-5|$
 56. $-|-4|$ _____ $|4|$
 57. $|10 - 3|$ _____ $|3 - 10|$
 58. $|6 - (-4)|$ _____ $|-4 - 6|$
 59. $|-2 + 8|$ _____ $|2 - 8|$
 60. $|3 \cdot |-5||$ _____ $|3(-5)|$
 61. $|3 - 5|$ _____ $|3| - |5|$
 62. $|-5 + 1|$ _____ $|-5| + |1|$

Write the expression without using absolute-value notation.

63. $|a - 7|$ if $a < 7$ 64. $|b - c|$ if $b \geq c$

65. If a and b are any real numbers, is it always true that $|a + b| = |a| + |b|$? Explain your answer.
 66. If a and b are any two real numbers, is it always true that $|a - b| = |b - a|$? Explain your answer.
 67. For which real numbers b does $|2 - b| = |2 + b|$? Explain your answer.

68. **Health** Data from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Study estimates that 95% of adult heights (inches) are in the following ranges for females and males. (Data from: www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhanes.htm.)

Females	63.5 ± 8.4
Males	68.9 ± 9.3

Express the ranges as an absolute-value inequality in which x is the height of the person.

Business The Consumer Price Index (CPI) tracks the cost of a typical sample of a consumer goods. The following table shows the percentage increase in the CPI for each year in a 10-year period.

Year	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007
% Increase in CPI	2.3	2.7	2.5	3.2	4.1
Year	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012
% Increase in CPI	0.1	2.7	1.5	3.0	1.7

1.2 Polynomials

Polynomials are the fundamental tools of algebra and will play a central role in this course. In order to do polynomial arithmetic, you must first understand exponents. So we begin with them. You are familiar with the usual notation for squares and cubes, such as:

$$5^2 = 5 \cdot 5 \quad \text{and} \quad 6^3 = 6 \cdot 6 \cdot 6.$$

We now extend this convenient notation to other cases.

If n is a natural number and a is any real number, then

a^n denotes the product $a \cdot a \cdot a \cdots a$ (n factors).

The number a is the **base**, and the number n is the **exponent**.

Example 1 4^6 , which is read “four to the sixth,” or “four to the sixth power,” is the number

$$4 \cdot 4 \cdot 4 \cdot 4 \cdot 4 \cdot 4 = 4096.$$

Similarly, $(-5)^3 = (-5)(-5)(-5) = -125$, and


$$\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^4 = \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \cdot \frac{3}{2} = \frac{81}{16}.$$

Example 2 Use a calculator to approximate the given expressions.

(a) $(1.2)^8$

Solution Key in 1.2 and then use the x^y key (labeled \wedge on some calculators); finally, key in the exponent 8. The calculator displays the (exact) answer 4.29981696.

(b) $\left(\frac{12}{7}\right)^{23}$

Solution Don't compute $12/7$ separately. Use parentheses and key in $(12/7)$, followed by the x^y key and the exponent 23 to obtain the approximate answer 242,054.822. 

✓ Checkpoint 1


Evaluate the following.

- (a) 6^3
- (b) 5^{12}
- (c) 1^9
- (d) $\left(\frac{7}{5}\right)^8$

✓ Checkpoint 2

Evaluate the following.

- (a) $3 \cdot 6^2$
- (b) $5 \cdot 4^3$
- (c) -3^6
- (d) $(-3)^6$
- (e) $-2 \cdot (-3)^5$

 **CAUTION** A common error in using exponents occurs with expressions such as $4 \cdot 3^2$. The exponent of 2 applies only to the base 3, so that

$$4 \cdot 3^2 = 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 3 = 36.$$

On the other hand,

$$(4 \cdot 3)^2 = (4 \cdot 3)(4 \cdot 3) = 12 \cdot 12 = 144,$$

so

$$4 \cdot 3^2 \neq (4 \cdot 3)^2.$$

Be careful to distinguish between expressions like -2^4 and $(-2)^4$:

$$-2^4 = -(2^4) = -(2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2) = -16$$

$$(-2)^4 = (-2)(-2)(-2)(-2) = 16,$$

so

$$-2^4 \neq (-2)^4. \quad \text{✓}_2$$

By the definition of an exponent,

$$3^4 \cdot 3^2 = (3 \cdot 3 \cdot 3 \cdot 3)(3 \cdot 3) = 3^6.$$

Since $6 = 4 + 2$, we can write the preceding equation as $3^4 \cdot 3^2 = 3^{4+2}$. This result suggests the following fact, which applies to any real number a and natural numbers m and n .

Multiplication with Exponents

To multiply a^m by a^n , *add* the exponents:

$$a^m \cdot a^n = a^{m+n}.$$

Example 3

Verify each of the following simplifications.

- (a) $7^4 \cdot 7^6 = 7^{4+6} = 7^{10}$
 (b) $(-2)^3 \cdot (-2)^5 = (-2)^{3+5} = (-2)^8$
 (c) $(3k)^2 \cdot (3k)^3 = (3k)^5$
 (d) $(m+n)^2 \cdot (m+n)^5 = (m+n)^7$ ✓₃

The multiplication property of exponents has a convenient consequence. By definition,

$$(5^2)^3 = 5^2 \cdot 5^2 \cdot 5^2 = 5^{2+2+2} = 5^6.$$

Note that $2 + 2 + 2$ is $3 \cdot 2 = 6$. This is an example of a more general fact about any real number a and natural numbers m and n .

Power of a Power

To find a power of a power, $(a^m)^n$, *multiply* the exponents:

$$(a^m)^n = a^{mn}.$$

Example 4

Verify the following computations.

- (a) $(x^3)^4 = x^{3 \cdot 4} = x^{12}$.
 (b) $[(-3)^5]^3 = (-3)^{5 \cdot 3} = (-3)^{15}$.
 (c) $[(6z)^4]^4 = (6z)^{4 \cdot 4} = (6z)^{16}$. ✓₄

It will be convenient to give a zero exponent a meaning. If the multiplication property of exponents is to remain valid, we should have, for example, $3^5 \cdot 3^0 = 3^{5+0} = 3^5$. But this will be true only when $3^0 = 1$. So we make the following definition.

Zero Exponent

If a is any nonzero real number, then

$$a^0 = 1.$$

For example, $6^0 = 1$ and $(-9)^0 = 1$. Note that 0^0 is *not* defined. ✓₅

✓ Checkpoint 3

Simplify the following.

- (a) $5^3 \cdot 5^6$
 (b) $(-3)^4 \cdot (-3)^{10}$
 (c) $(5p)^2 \cdot (5p)^8$

✓ Checkpoint 4

Compute the following.

- (a) $(6^3)^7$
 (b) $[(4k)^5]^6$

✓ Checkpoint 5

Evaluate the following.

- (a) 17^0
 (b) 30^0
 (c) $(-10)^0$
 (d) $-(12)^0$

Polynomials

A **polynomial** is an algebraic expression such as

$$5x^4 + 2x^3 + 6x, \quad 8m^3 + 9m^2 + \frac{3}{2}m + 3, \quad -10p, \quad \text{or} \quad 8.$$

The letter used is called a **variable**, and a polynomial is a sum of **terms** of the form

$$(\text{constant}) \times (\text{nonnegative integer power of the variable}).$$

We assume that $x^0 = 1$, $m^0 = 1$, etc., so terms such as 3 or 8 may be thought of as $3x^0$ and $8x^0$, respectively. The constants that appear in each term of a polynomial are called the **coefficients** of the polynomial. The coefficient of x^0 is called the **constant term**.

Example 5

Identify the coefficients and the constant term of the given polynomials.

(a) $5x^2 - x + 12$


Solution The coefficients are 5, -1 , and 12, and the constant term is 12.

(b) $7x^3 + 2x - 4$

Solution The coefficients are 7, 0, 2, and -4 , because the polynomial can be written $7x^3 + 0x^2 + 2x - 4$. The constant term is -4 .

A polynomial that consists only of a constant term, such as 15, is called a **constant polynomial**. The **zero polynomial** is the constant polynomial 0. The **degree** of a polynomial is the *exponent* of the highest power of x that appears with a *nonzero* coefficient, and the nonzero coefficient of this highest power of x is the **leading coefficient** of the polynomial. For example,

Polynomial	Degree	Leading Coefficient	Constant Term
$6x^7 + 4x^3 + 5x^2 - 7x + 10$	7	6	10
$-x^4 + 2x^3 + \frac{1}{2}$	4	-1	$\frac{1}{2}$
x^3	3	1	0
12	0	12	12

The degree of the zero polynomial is *not defined*, since no exponent of x occurs with nonzero coefficient. First-degree polynomials are often called **linear polynomials**. Second- and third-degree polynomials are called **quadratics** and **cubics**, respectively. 

Checkpoint 6

Find the degree of each polynomial.

- (a) $x^4 - x^2 + x + 5$
 (b) $7x^5 + 6x^3 - 3x^8 + 2$
 (c) 17
 (d) 0

Addition and Subtraction

Two terms having the same variable with the same exponent are called **like terms**; other terms are called **unlike terms**. Polynomials can be added or subtracted by using the distributive property to combine like terms. Only like terms can be combined. For example,

$$12y^4 + 6y^4 = (12 + 6)y^4 = 18y^4$$

and

$$-2m^2 + 8m^2 = (-2 + 8)m^2 = 6m^2.$$

The polynomial $8y^4 + 2y^5$ has unlike terms, so it cannot be further simplified.

In more complicated cases of addition, you may have to eliminate parentheses, use the commutative and associative laws to regroup like terms, and then combine them.

Example 6 Add the following polynomials.

(a) $(8x^3 - 4x^2 + 6x) + (3x^3 + 5x^2 - 9x + 8)$

Solution $8x^3 - 4x^2 + 6x + 3x^3 + 5x^2 - 9x + 8$ Eliminate parentheses.
 $= (8x^3 + 3x^3) + (-4x^2 + 5x^2) + (6x - 9x) + 8$ Group like terms.
 $= 11x^3 + x^2 - 3x + 8$ Combine like terms.

(b) $(-4x^4 + 6x^3 - 9x^2 - 12) + (-3x^3 + 8x^2 - 11x + 7)$

Solution $-4x^4 + 6x^3 - 9x^2 - 12 - 3x^3 + 8x^2 - 11x + 7$ Eliminate parentheses.
 $= -4x^4 + (6x^3 - 3x^3) + (-9x^2 + 8x^2) - 11x + (-12 + 7)$ Group like terms.
 $= -4x^4 + 3x^3 - x^2 - 11x - 5$ Combine like terms.

Care must be used when parentheses are preceded by a minus sign. For example, we know that

$$-(4 + 3) = -(7) = -7 = -4 - 3.$$

If you simply delete the parentheses in $-(4 + 3)$, you obtain $-4 + 3 = -1$, which is the wrong answer. This fact and the preceding examples illustrate the following rules.

Rules for Eliminating Parentheses

Parentheses preceded by a plus sign (or no sign) may be deleted.

Parentheses preceded by a minus sign may be deleted *provided that* the sign of every term within the parentheses is changed.

Example 7 Subtract: $(2x^2 - 11x + 8) - (7x^2 - 6x + 2)$.

Solution $2x^2 - 11x + 8 - 7x^2 + 6x - 2$ Eliminate parentheses.
 $= (2x^2 - 7x^2) + (-11x + 6x) + (8 - 2)$ Group like terms.
 $= -5x^2 - 5x + 6$ Combine like terms. ✓₇

✓ Checkpoint 7

Add or subtract as indicated.

- (a) $(-2x^2 + 7x + 9) + (3x^2 + 2x - 7)$
 (b) $(4x + 6) - (13x - 9)$
 (c) $(9x^3 - 8x^2 + 2x) - (9x^3 - 2x^2 - 10)$

Multiplication

The distributive property is also used to multiply polynomials. For example, the product of $8x$ and $6x - 4$ is found as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 8x(6x - 4) &= 8x(6x) - 8x(4) && \text{Distributive property} \\ &= 48x^2 - 32x && x \cdot x = x^2 \end{aligned}$$

Example 8 Use the distributive property to find each product.

(a) $2p^3(3p^2 - 2p + 5) = 2p^3(3p^2) + 2p^3(-2p) + 2p^3(5)$
 $= 6p^5 - 4p^4 + 10p^3$
 (b) $(3k - 2)(k^2 + 5k - 4) = 3k(k^2 + 5k - 4) - 2(k^2 + 5k - 4)$
 $= 3k^3 + 15k^2 - 12k - 2k^2 - 10k + 8$
 $= 3k^3 + 13k^2 - 22k + 8$ ✓₈

✓ Checkpoint 8

Find the following products.

- (a) $-6r(2r - 5)$
 (b) $(8m + 3) \cdot (m^4 - 2m^2 + 6m)$

Example 9 The product $(2x - 5)(3x + 4)$ can be found by using the distributive property twice:

$$\begin{aligned}(2x - 5)(3x + 4) &= 2x(3x + 4) - 5(3x + 4) \\ &= \underbrace{2x \cdot 3x} + \underbrace{2x \cdot 4} + \underbrace{(-5) \cdot 3x} + \underbrace{(-5) \cdot 4} \\ &= 6x^2 + 8x - 15x - 20 \\ &= 6x^2 - 7x - 20\end{aligned}$$

Observe the pattern in the second line of Example 9 and its relationship to the terms being multiplied:

$$\begin{array}{l} (2x - 5)(3x + 4) = 2x \cdot 3x + 2x \cdot 4 + (-5) \cdot 3x + (-5) \cdot 4 \\ \underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}} \text{First terms} \quad \underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}} \text{Outside terms} \\ (2x - 5)(3x + 4) \\ \underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}} \text{Inside terms} \\ (2x - 5)(3x + 4) \\ \underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}} \text{Last terms} \end{array}$$

This pattern is easy to remember by using the acronym **FOIL** (**F**irst, **O**utside, **I**nside, **L**ast). The FOIL method makes it easy to find products such as this one mentally, without the necessity of writing out the intermediate steps.

Example 10 Use FOIL to find the product of the given polynomials.

$$\text{(a)} \quad (3x + 2)(x + 5) = 3x^2 + 15x + 2x + 10 = 3x^2 + 17x + 10$$

\uparrow First \uparrow Outside \uparrow Inside \uparrow Last

$$\text{(b)} \quad (x + 3)^2 = (x + 3)(x + 3) = x^2 + 3x + 3x + 9 = x^2 + 6x + 9$$

$$\text{(c)} \quad (2x + 1)(2x - 1) = 4x^2 - 2x + 2x - 1 = 4x^2 - 1 \quad \checkmark_9$$

✓ Checkpoint 9

Use FOIL to find these products.

(a) $(5k - 1)(2k + 3)$

(b) $(7z - 3)(2z + 5)$

Applications

In business, the *revenue* from the sales of an item is given by

$$\text{Revenue} = (\text{price per item}) \times (\text{number of items sold}).$$

The *cost* to manufacture and sell these items is given by

$$\text{Cost} = \text{Fixed Costs} + \text{Variable Costs},$$

where the fixed costs include such things as buildings and machinery (which do not depend on how many items are made) and variable costs include such things as labor and materials (which vary, depending on how many items are made). Then

$$\text{Profit} = \text{Revenue} - \text{Cost}.$$

Example 11 Business A manufacturer of scientific calculators sells calculators for \$12 each (wholesale) and can produce a maximum of 150,000. The variable cost of producing x thousand calculators is $6995x - 7.2x^2$ dollars, and the fixed costs for the manufacturing operation are \$230,000. If x thousand calculators are manufactured and sold, find expressions for the revenue, cost, and profit.

Solution If x thousand calculators are sold at \$12 each, then

$$\text{Revenue} = (\text{price per item}) \times (\text{number of items sold})$$

$$R = 12 \times 1000x = 12,000x,$$

where $x \leq 150$ (because only 150,000 calculators can be made). The variable cost of making x thousand calculators is $6995x - 7.2x^2$, so that

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Cost} &= \text{Fixed Costs} + \text{Variable Costs}, \\ C &= 230,000 + (6995x - 7.2x^2) \quad (x \leq 150).\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the profit is given by

$$\begin{aligned}P &= R - C = 12,000x - (230,000 + 6995x - 7.2x^2) \\ &= 12,000x - 230,000 - 6995x + 7.2x^2 \\ P &= 7.2x^2 + 5005x - 230,000 \quad (x \leq 150).\end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 10

Suppose revenue is given by $7x^2 - 3x$, fixed costs are \$500, and variable costs are given by $3x^2 + 5x - 25$. Write an expression for

- (a) Cost
(b) Profit

1.2 Exercises

Use a calculator to approximate these numbers. (See Examples 1 and 2.)

1. 11.2^6 2. $(-6.54)^{11}$
3. $(-18/7)^6$ 4. $(5/9)^7$

5. Explain how the value of -3^2 differs from $(-3)^2$. Do -3^3 and $(-3)^3$ differ in the same way? Why or why not?
6. Describe the steps used to multiply 4^3 and 4^5 . Is the product of 4^3 and 3^4 found in the same way? Explain.

Simplify each of the given expressions. Leave your answers in exponential notation. (See Examples 3 and 4.)

7. $4^2 \cdot 4^3$ 8. $(-4)^4 \cdot (-4)^6$
9. $(-6)^2 \cdot (-6)^5$ 10. $(2z)^5 \cdot (2z)^6$
11. $[(5u^4)^7]$ 12. $(6y)^3 \cdot [(6y)^5]^4$

List the degree of the given polynomial, its coefficients, and its constant term. (See Example 5.)

13. $6.2x^4 - 5x^3 + 4x^2 - 3x + 3.7$
14. $6x^7 + 4x^6 - x^3 + x$

State the degree of the given polynomial.

15. $1 + x + 2x^2 + 3x^3$
16. $5x^4 - 4x^5 - 6x^3 + 7x^4 - 2x + 8$

Add or subtract as indicated. (See Examples 6 and 7.)

17. $(3x^3 + 2x^2 - 5x) + (-4x^3 - x^2 - 8x)$
18. $(-2p^3 - 5p + 7) + (-4p^2 + 8p + 2)$
19. $(-4y^2 - 3y + 8) - (2y^2 - 6y + 2)$
20. $(7b^2 + 2b - 5) - (3b^2 + 2b - 6)$
21. $(2x^3 + 2x^2 + 4x - 3) - (2x^3 + 8x^2 + 1)$
22. $(3y^3 + 9y^2 - 11y + 8) - (-4y^2 + 10y - 6)$

Find each of the given products. (See Examples 8–10.)

23. $-9m(2m^2 + 6m - 1)$
24. $2a(4a^2 - 6a + 8)$

25. $(3z + 5)(4z^2 - 2z + 1)$
26. $(2k + 3)(4k^3 - 3k^2 + k)$
27. $(6k - 1)(2k + 3)$
28. $(8r + 3)(r - 1)$
29. $(3y + 5)(2y + 1)$
30. $(5r - 3s)(5r - 4s)$
31. $(9k + q)(2k - q)$
32. $(.012x - .17)(.3x + .54)$
33. $(6.2m - 3.4)(.7m + 1.3)$
34. $2p - 3[4p - (8p + 1)]$
35. $5k - [k + (-3 + 5k)]$
36. $(3x - 1)(x + 2) - (2x + 5)^2$

Business Find expressions for the revenue, cost, and profit from selling x thousand items. (See Example 11.)

	Item Price	Fixed Costs	Variable Costs
37.	\$5.00	\$200,000	1800x
38.	\$8.50	\$225,000	4200x

39. **Business** Beauty Works sells its cologne wholesale for \$9.75 per bottle. The variable costs of producing x thousand bottles is $-3x^2 + 3480x - 325$ dollars, and the fixed costs of manufacturing are \$260,000. Find expressions for the revenue, cost, and profit from selling x thousand items.

40. **Business** A self-help guru sells her book *Be Happy in 45 Easy Steps* for \$23.50 per copy. Her fixed costs are \$145,000 and she estimates the variable cost of printing, binding, and distribution is given by $-4.2x^2 + 3220x - 425$ dollars. Find expressions for the revenue, cost, and profit from selling x thousand copies of the book.

Work these problems.

Business The accompanying bar graph shows the net earnings (in millions of dollars) of the Starbucks Corporation. The polynomial

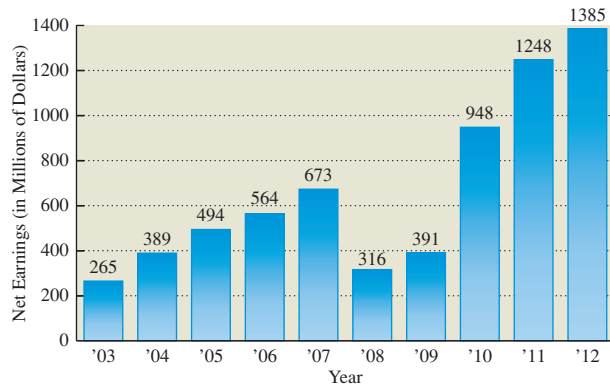
$$-1.48x^4 + 50.0x^3 - 576x^2 + 2731x - 4027$$

gives a good approximation of Starbucks's net earnings in year x , where $x = 3$ corresponds to 2003, $x = 4$ to 2004, and so on ($3 \leq x \leq 12$). For each of the given years,

- (a) use the bar graph to determine the net earnings;
(b) use the polynomial to determine the net earnings.

(Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

41. 2003 42. 2007
43. 2010 44. 2012



Assuming that the polynomial approximation in Exercises 41–44 remains accurate in later years, use it to estimate Starbucks's net earnings in each of the following years.

45. 2013 46. 2014 47. 2015

48. Do the estimates in Exercises 45–47 seem plausible? Explain.

Economics The percentage of persons living below the poverty line in the United States in year x is approximated by the polynomial $-0.0057x^4 + .157x^3 - 1.43x^2 + 5.14x + 6.3$, where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. Determine whether each of the given statements is true or false. (Data from: *U.S. Census Bureau, Current Population Survey, Annual Social and Economic Supplements.*)

49. The percentage living in poverty was higher than 13% in 2004.
50. The percentage living in poverty was higher than 14% in 2010.
51. The percentage living in poverty was higher in 2003 than 2006.
52. The percentage living in poverty was lower in 2009 than 2008.

Health According to data from a leading insurance company, if a person is 65 years old, the probability that he or she will live for another x years is approximated by the polynomial

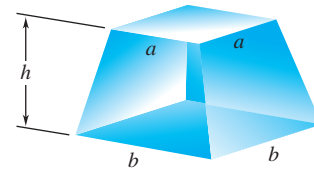
$$1 - .0058x - .00076x^2.$$

(Data from: *Ralph DeMarr, University of New Mexico.*)

Find the probability that a 65-year-old person will live to the following ages.

53. 75 (that is, 10 years past 65) 54. 80
55. 87 56. 95
57. **Physical Science** One of the most amazing formulas in all of ancient mathematics is the formula discovered by the

Egyptians to find the volume of the frustum of a square pyramid, as shown in the following figure:



The volume of this pyramid is given by

$$\frac{1}{3}h \cdot (a^2 + ab + b^2),$$

where b is the length of the base, a is the length of the top, and h is the height. (Data from: H. A. Freebury, *A History of Mathematics* [New York: MacMillan Company, 1968].)

- (a) When the Great Pyramid in Egypt was partially completed to a height h of 200 feet, b was 756 feet and a was 314 feet. Calculate its volume at this stage of construction.
(b) Try to visualize the figure if $a = b$. What is the resulting shape? Find its volume.
(c) Let $a = b$ in the Egyptian formula and simplify. Are the results the same?
58. **Physical Science** Refer to the formula and the discussion in Exercise 57.
(a) Use the expression $(1/3)h(a^2 + ab + b^2)$ to determine a formula for the volume of a pyramid with a square base b and height h by letting $a = 0$.
(b) The Great Pyramid in Egypt had a square base of length 756 feet and a height of 481 feet. Find the volume of the Great Pyramid. Compare it with the volume of the 273-foot-tall Louisiana Superdome, which has an approximate volume of 125 million cubic feet. (Data from: *Louisiana Superdome* [www.superdome.com].)
(c) The Superdome covers an area of 13 acres. How many acres does the Great Pyramid cover? (*Hint*: 1 acre = 43,560 ft².)
59. Suppose one polynomial has degree 3 and another also has degree 3. Find all possible values for the degree of their
(a) sum;
(b) difference;
(c) product.
60. What is the profit or loss (negative profit) when 25,000 calculators are sold? when 60,000 are sold? Explain these answers.
61. Approximately how many calculators must be sold in order for the company to make a profit?
62. What is the profit from selling 100,000 calculators? 150,000 calculators?

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) 216 (b) 244,140,625
(c) 1 (d) 14.75789056
2. (a) 108 (b) 320 (c) -729
(d) 729 (e) 486
3. (a) 5^9 (b) $(-3)^{14}$ (c) $(5p)^{10}$
4. (a) 6^{21} (b) $(4k)^{30}$
5. (a) 1 (b) 1 (c) 1 (d) -1
6. (a) 4 (b) 8 (c) 0 (d) Not defined
7. (a) $x^2 + 9x + 2$
(b) $-9x + 15$
(c) $-6x^2 + 2x + 10$
8. (a) $-12r^2 + 30r$
(b) $8m^5 + 3m^4 - 16m^3 + 42m^2 + 18m$
9. (a) $10k^2 + 13k - 3$ (b) $14z^2 + 29z - 15$
10. (a) $C = 3x^2 + 5x + 475$ (b) $P = 4x^2 - 8x - 475$

1.3 Factoring

The number 18 can be written as a product in several ways: $9 \cdot 2$, $(-3)(-6)$, $1 \cdot 18$, etc. The numbers in each product (9, 2, -3, etc.) are called **factors**, and the process of writing 18 as a product of factors is called **factoring**. Thus, factoring is the reverse of multiplication.

Factoring of polynomials is a means of simplifying many expressions and of solving certain types of equations. As is the usual custom, factoring of polynomials in this text will be restricted to finding factors with *integer* coefficients (otherwise there may be an infinite number of possible factors).

Greatest Common Factor

The algebraic expression $15m + 45$ is made up of two terms: $15m$ and 45. Each of these terms has 15 as a factor. In fact, $15m = 15 \cdot m$ and $45 = 15 \cdot 3$. By the distributive property,

$$15m + 45 = 15 \cdot m + 15 \cdot 3 = 15(m + 3).$$

Both 15 and $m + 3$ are factors of $15m + 45$. Since 15 divides evenly into all terms of $15m + 45$ and is the largest number that will do so, it is called the **greatest common factor** for the polynomial $15m + 45$. The process of writing $15m + 45$ as $15(m + 3)$ is called **factoring out** the greatest common factor.

Example 1

Factor out the greatest common factor.

(a) $12p - 18q$

Solution Both $12p$ and $18q$ are divisible by 6, and

$$\begin{aligned} 12p - 18q &= 6 \cdot 2p - 6 \cdot 3q \\ &= 6(2p - 3q). \end{aligned}$$

(b) $8x^3 - 9x^2 + 15x$

Solution Each of these terms is divisible by x :

$$\begin{aligned} 8x^3 - 9x^2 + 15x &= (8x^2) \cdot x - (9x) \cdot x + 15 \cdot x \\ &= x(8x^2 - 9x + 15). \end{aligned}$$

(c) $5(4x - 3)^3 + 2(4x - 3)^2$

Solution The quantity $(4x - 3)^2$ is a common factor. Factoring it out gives

$$\begin{aligned} 5(4x - 3)^3 + 2(4x - 3)^2 &= (4x - 3)^2[5(4x - 3) + 2] \\ &= (4x - 3)^2(20x - 15 + 2) \\ &= (4x - 3)^2(20x - 13). \end{aligned} \quad \checkmark_1$$

✓ Checkpoint 1

Factor out the greatest common factor.

- (a) $12r + 9k$
(b) $75m^2 + 100n^2$
(c) $6m^4 - 9m^3 + 12m^2$
(d) $3(2k + 1)^3 + 4(2k + 1)^4$

Factoring Quadratics

If we multiply two first-degree polynomials, the result is a quadratic. For instance, using FOIL, we see that $(x + 1)(x - 2) = x^2 - x - 2$. Since factoring is the reverse of multiplication, factoring quadratics requires using FOIL backward.

Example 2 Factor $x^2 + 9x + 18$.

Solution We must find integers b and d such that

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + 9x + 18 &= (x + b)(x + d) \\ &= x^2 + dx + bx + bd \\ x^2 + 9x + 18 &= x^2 + (b + d)x + bd. \end{aligned}$$

Since the constant coefficients on each side of the equation must be equal, we must have $bd = 18$; that is, b and d are factors of 18. Similarly, the coefficients of x must be the same, so that $b + d = 9$. The possibilities are summarized in this table:

Factors b, d of 18	Sum $b + d$
$18 \cdot 1$	$18 + 1 = 19$
$9 \cdot 2$	$9 + 2 = 11$
$6 \cdot 3$	$6 + 3 = 9$

There is no need to list negative factors, such as $(-3)(-6)$, because their sum is negative. The table suggests that 6 and 3 will work. Verify that

$$(x + 6)(x + 3) = x^2 + 9x + 18. \quad \checkmark_2$$

✓ Checkpoint 2

Factor the following.

- (a) $r^2 + 7r + 10$
- (b) $x^2 + 4x + 3$
- (c) $y^2 + 6y + 8$

Example 3 Factor $x^2 + 3x - 10$.

Solution As in Example 2, we must find factors b and d whose product is -10 (the constant term) and whose sum is 3 (the coefficient of x). The following table shows the possibilities.

Factors b, d of -10	Sum $b + d$
$1(-10)$	$1 + (-10) = -9$
$(-1)10$	$-1 + 10 = 9$
$2(-5)$	$2 + (-5) = -3$
$(-2)5$	$-2 + 5 = 3$

The only factors with product -10 and sum 3 are -2 and 5. So the correct factorization is

$$x^2 + 3x - 10 = (x - 2)(x + 5),$$

as you can readily verify.

It is usually not necessary to construct tables as was done in Examples 2 and 3—you can just mentally check the various possibilities. The approach used in Examples 2 and 3 (with minor modifications) also works for factoring quadratic polynomials whose leading coefficient is not 1.

Example 4 Factor $4y^2 - 11y + 6$.

Solution We must find integers a, b, c , and d such that

$$\begin{aligned} 4y^2 - 11y + 6 &= (ay + b)(cy + d) \\ &= acy^2 + ady + bcy + bd \\ 4y^2 - 11y + 6 &= acy^2 + (ad + bc)y + bd. \end{aligned}$$

Since the coefficients of y^2 must be the same on both sides, we see that $ac = 4$. Similarly, the constant terms show that $bd = 6$. The positive factors of 4 are 4 and 1 or 2 and 2. Since the middle term is negative, we consider only negative factors of 6. The possibilities are -2 and -3 or -1 and -6 . Now we try various arrangements of these factors until we find one that gives the correct coefficient of y :

$$(2y - 1)(2y - 6) = 4y^2 - 14y + 6 \quad \text{Incorrect}$$

$$(2y - 2)(2y - 3) = 4y^2 - 10y + 6 \quad \text{Incorrect}$$

$$(y - 2)(4y - 3) = 4y^2 - 11y + 6. \quad \text{Correct}$$

The last trial gives the correct factorization. 

✓ Checkpoint 3

Factor the following.

- (a) $x^2 - 4x + 3$
- (b) $2y^2 - 5y + 2$
- (c) $6z^2 - 13z + 6$

✓ Checkpoint 4

Factor the following.

- (a) $r^2 - 5r - 14$
- (b) $3m^2 + 5m - 2$
- (c) $6p^2 + 13pq - 5q^2$

Example 5


Factor $6p^2 - 7pq - 5q^2$.

Solution Again, we try various possibilities. The positive factors of 6 could be 2 and 3 or 1 and 6. As factors of -5 , we have only -1 and 5 or -5 and 1. Try different combinations of these factors until the correct one is found:

$$(2p - 5q)(3p + q) = 6p^2 - 13pq - 5q^2 \quad \text{Incorrect}$$

$$(3p - 5q)(2p + q) = 6p^2 - 7pq - 5q^2. \quad \text{Correct}$$

So $6p^2 - 7pq - 5q^2$ factors as $(3p - 5q)(2p + q)$. 

 **NOTE** In Examples 2–4, we chose positive factors of the positive first term. Of course, we could have used two negative factors, but the work is easier if positive factors are used.

Example 6

Factor $x^2 + x + 3$.

Solution There are only two ways to factor 3, namely, $3 = 1 \cdot 3$ and $3 = (-1)(-3)$. They lead to these products:

$$(x + 1)(x + 3) = x^2 + 4x + 3 \quad \text{Incorrect}$$

$$(x - 1)(x - 3) = x^2 - 4x + 3. \quad \text{Incorrect}$$

Therefore, this polynomial cannot be factored.

Factoring Patterns

In some cases, you can factor a polynomial with a minimum amount of guesswork by recognizing common patterns. The easiest pattern to recognize is the *difference of squares*.

$$x^2 - y^2 = (x + y)(x - y). \quad \text{Difference of squares}$$

To verify the accuracy of the preceding equation, multiply out the right side.

Example 7

Factor each of the following.

- (a) $4m^2 - 9$

Solution Notice that $4m^2 - 9$ is the difference of two squares, since $4m^2 = (2m)^2$ and $9 = 3^2$. Use the pattern for the difference of two squares, letting $2m$ replace x and 3 replace y . Then the pattern $x^2 - y^2 = (x + y)(x - y)$ becomes

$$\begin{aligned} 4m^2 - 9 &= (2m)^2 - 3^2 \\ &= (2m + 3)(2m - 3). \end{aligned}$$

(b) $128p^2 - 98q^2$

Solution First factor out the common factor of 2:

$$\begin{aligned} 128p^2 - 98q^2 &= 2(64p^2 - 49q^2) \\ &= 2[(8p)^2 - (7q)^2] \\ &= 2(8p + 7q)(8p - 7q). \end{aligned}$$

(c) $x^2 + 36$

Solution The *sum* of two squares cannot be factored. To convince yourself of this, check some possibilities:

$$\begin{aligned} (x + 6)(x + 6) &= (x + 6)^2 = x^2 + 12x + 36; \\ (x + 4)(x + 9) &= x^2 + 13x + 36. \end{aligned}$$

(d) $(x - 2)^2 - 49$

Solution Since $49 = 7^2$, this is a difference of two squares. So it factors as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} (x - 2)^2 - 49 &= (x - 2)^2 - 7^2 \\ &= [(x - 2) + 7][(x - 2) - 7] \\ &= (x + 5)(x - 9). \quad \checkmark_5 \end{aligned}$$

 **Checkpoint 5**

Factor the following.

(a) $9p^2 - 49$

(b) $y^2 + 100$

(c) $(x + 3)^2 - 64$

Another common pattern is the *perfect square*. Verify each of the following factorizations by multiplying out the right side.

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + 2xy + y^2 &= (x + y)^2 \\ x^2 - 2xy + y^2 &= (x - y)^2 \end{aligned} \quad \text{Perfect Squares}$$

Whenever you have a quadratic whose first and last terms are squares, it *may* factor as a perfect square. The key is to look at the middle term. To have a perfect square whose first and last terms are x^2 and y^2 , the middle term must be $\pm 2xy$. To avoid errors, always check this.**Example 8**

Factor each polynomial, if possible.

(a) $16p^2 - 40pq + 25q^2$

Solution The first and last terms are squares, namely, $16p^2 = (4p)^2$ and $25q^2 = (5q)^2$. So the second perfect-square pattern, with $x = 4p$ and $y = 5q$, might work. To have a perfect square, the middle term $-40pq$ must equal $-2(4p)(5q)$, which it does. So the polynomial factors as

$$16p^2 - 40pq + 25q^2 = (4p - 5q)(4p - 5q),$$

as you can easily verify.

(b) $9u^2 + 5u + 1$

Solution Again, the first and last terms are squares: $9u^2 = (3u)^2$ and $1 = 1^2$. The middle term is positive, so the first perfect-square pattern might work, with $x = 3u$ and $y = 1$. To have a perfect square, however, the middle term would have to be $2(3u) \cdot 1 = 6u$, which is *not* the middle term of the given polynomial. So it is not a perfect square—in fact, it cannot be factored.

✓ Checkpoint 6

Factor.

- (a) $4m^2 + 4m + 1$
 (b) $25z^2 - 80zt + 64t^2$
 (c) $9x^2 + 15x + 25$

(c) $169x^2 + 104xy^2 + 16y^4$

Solution This polynomial may be factored as $(13x + 4y^2)^2$, since $169x^2 = (13x)^2$, $16y^4 = (4y^2)^2$, and $2(13x)(4y^2) = 104xy^2$. ✓₆

Example 9

Factor each of the given polynomials.

(a) $12x^2 - 26x - 10$

Solution Look first for a greatest common factor. Here, the greatest common factor is 2: $12x^2 - 26x - 10 = 2(6x^2 - 13x - 5)$. Now try to factor $6x^2 - 13x - 5$. Possible factors of 6 are 3 and 2 or 6 and 1. The only factors of -5 are -5 and 1 or 5 and -1 . Try various combinations. You should find that the quadratic factors as $(3x + 1)(2x - 5)$. Thus,

$$12x^2 - 26x - 10 = 2(3x + 1)(2x - 5).$$

(b) $4z^2 + 12z + 9 - w^2$

Solution There is no common factor here, but notice that the first three terms can be factored as a perfect square:

$$4z^2 + 12z + 9 - w^2 = (2z + 3)^2 - w^2.$$

Written in this form, the expression is the difference of squares, which can be factored as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} (2z + 3)^2 - w^2 &= [(2z + 3) + w][(2z + 3) - w] \\ &= (2z + 3 + w)(2z + 3 - w). \end{aligned}$$

(c) $16a^2 - 100 - 48ac + 36c^2$

Solution Factor out the greatest common factor of 4 first:

$$\begin{aligned} 16a^2 - 100 - 48ac + 36c^2 &= 4[4a^2 - 25 - 12ac + 9c^2] \\ &= 4[(4a^2 - 12ac + 9c^2) - 25] && \text{Rearrange terms and group.} \\ &= 4[(2a - 3c)^2 - 25] && \text{Factor.} \\ &= 4(2a - 3c + 5)(2a - 3c - 5) && \text{Factor the difference of squares. } \checkmark_7 \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 7

Factor the following.

- (a) $6x^2 - 27x - 15$
 (b) $9r^2 + 12r + 4 - t^2$
 (c) $18 - 8xy - 2y^2 - 8x^2$

⚠ CAUTION Remember always to look first for a greatest common factor.

Higher Degree Polynomials

Polynomials of degree greater than 2 are often difficult to factor. However, factoring is relatively easy in two cases: *the difference and the sum of cubes*. By multiplying out the right side, you can readily verify each of the following factorizations.

$$\begin{aligned} x^3 - y^3 &= (x - y)(x^2 + xy + y^2) && \text{Difference of cubes} \\ x^3 + y^3 &= (x + y)(x^2 - xy + y^2) && \text{Sum of cubes} \end{aligned}$$

Example 10

Factor each of the following polynomials.

(a) $k^3 - 8$

Solution Since $8 = 2^3$, use the pattern for the difference of two cubes to obtain

$$k^3 - 8 = k^3 - 2^3 = (k - 2)(k^2 + 2k + 4).$$

✓ Checkpoint 8

Factor the following.

- (a) $a^3 + 1000$
 (b) $z^3 - 64$
 (c) $1000m^3 - 27z^3$

(b) $m^3 + 125$

Solution $m^3 + 125 = m^3 + 5^3 = (m + 5)(m^2 - 5m + 25)$

(c) $8k^3 - 27z^3$

Solution $8k^3 - 27z^3 = (2k)^3 - (3z)^3 = (2k - 3z)(4k^2 + 6kz + 9z^2)$ ✓₈

Substitution and appropriate factoring patterns can sometimes be used to factor higher degree expressions.

Example 11

Factor the following polynomials.

(a) $x^8 + 4x^4 + 3$

Solution The idea is to make a substitution that reduces the polynomial to a quadratic or cubic that we can deal with. Note that $x^8 = (x^4)^2$. Let $u = x^4$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} x^8 + 4x^4 + 3 &= (x^4)^2 + 4x^4 + 3 && \text{Power of a power} \\ &= u^2 + 4u + 3 && \text{Substitute } x^4 = u. \\ &= (u + 3)(u + 1) && \text{Factor} \\ &= (x^4 + 3)(x^4 + 1). && \text{Substitute } u = x^4. \end{aligned}$$

(b) $x^4 - y^4$

Solution Note that $x^4 = (x^2)^2$, and similarly for the y term. Let $u = x^2$ and $v = y^2$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} x^4 - y^4 &= (x^2)^2 - (y^2)^2 && \text{Power of a power} \\ &= u^2 - v^2 && \text{Substitute } x^2 = u \text{ and } y^2 = v. \\ &= (u + v)(u - v) && \text{Difference of squares} \\ &= (x^2 + y^2)(x^2 - y^2) && \text{Substitute } u = x^2 \text{ and } v = y^2. \\ &= (x^2 + y^2)(x + y)(x - y). && \text{Difference of squares } \checkmark_9 \end{aligned}$$

Once you understand Example 11, you can often factor without making explicit substitutions.

Example 12

Factor $256k^4 - 625m^4$.

Solution Use the difference of squares twice, as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 256k^4 - 625m^4 &= (16k^2)^2 - (25m^2)^2 \\ &= (16k^2 + 25m^2)(16k^2 - 25m^2) \\ &= (16k^2 + 25m^2)(4k + 5m)(4k - 5m). \end{aligned} \checkmark_{10}$$

✓ Checkpoint 9

Factor each of the following.

- (a) $2x^4 + 5x^2 + 2$
 (b) $3x^4 - x^2 - 2$

✓ Checkpoint 10

Factor $81x^4 - 16y^4$.

1.3 Exercises

Factor out the greatest common factor in each of the given polynomials. (See Example 1.)

- $12x^2 - 24x$
- $5y - 65xy$
- $r^3 - 5r^2 + r$
- $t^3 + 3t^2 + 8t$
- $6z^3 - 12z^2 + 18z$
- $5x^3 + 55x^2 + 10x$
- $3(2y - 1)^2 + 7(2y - 1)^3$
- $(3x + 7)^5 - 4(3x + 7)^3$
- $3(x + 5)^4 + (x + 5)^6$
- $3(x + 6)^2 + 6(x + 6)^4$

Factor the polynomial. (See Examples 2 and 3.)

- $x^2 + 5x + 4$
- $u^2 + 7u + 6$
- $x^2 + 7x + 12$
- $y^2 + 8y + 12$
- $x^2 + x - 6$
- $x^2 + 4x - 5$
- $x^2 + 2x - 3$
- $y^2 + y - 12$
- $x^2 - 3x - 4$
- $u^2 - 2u - 8$

21. $z^2 - 9z + 14$

22. $w^2 - 6w - 16$

23. $z^2 + 10z + 24$

24. $r^2 + 16r + 60$

Factor the polynomial. (See Examples 4–6.)

25. $2x^2 - 9x + 4$

26. $3w^2 - 8w + 4$

27. $15p^2 - 23p + 4$

28. $8x^2 - 14x + 3$

29. $4z^2 - 16z + 15$

30. $12y^2 - 29y + 15$

31. $6x^2 - 5x - 4$

32. $12z^2 + z - 1$

33. $10y^2 + 21y - 10$

34. $15u^2 + 4u - 4$

35. $6x^2 + 5x - 4$

36. $12y^2 + 7y - 10$

Factor each polynomial completely. Factor out the greatest common factor as necessary. (See Examples 2–9.)

37. $3a^2 + 2a - 5$

38. $6a^2 - 48a - 120$

39. $x^2 - 81$

40. $x^2 + 17xy + 72y^2$

41. $9p^2 - 12p + 4$

42. $3r^2 - r - 2$

43. $r^2 + 3rt - 10t^2$

44. $2a^2 + ab - 6b^2$

45. $m^2 - 8mn + 16n^2$

46. $8k^2 - 16k - 10$

47. $4u^2 + 12u + 9$

48. $9p^2 - 16$

49. $25p^2 - 10p + 4$

50. $10x^2 - 17x + 3$

51. $4r^2 - 9v^2$

52. $x^2 + 3xy - 28y^2$

53. $x^2 + 4xy + 4y^2$

54. $16u^2 + 12u - 18$

55. $3a^2 - 13a - 30$

56. $3k^2 + 2k - 8$

57. $21m^2 + 13mn + 2n^2$

58. $81y^2 - 100$

59. $y^2 - 4yz - 21z^2$

60. $49a^2 + 9$

61. $121x^2 - 64$

62. $4z^2 + 56zy + 196y^2$

Factor each of these polynomials. (See Example 10.)

63. $a^3 - 64$

64. $b^3 + 216$

65. $8r^3 - 27s^3$

66. $1000p^3 + 27q^3$

67. $64m^3 + 125$

68. $216y^3 - 343$

69. $1000y^3 - z^3$

70. $125p^3 + 8q^3$

Factor each of these polynomials. (See Examples 11 and 12.)

71. $x^4 + 5x^2 + 6$

72. $y^4 + 7y^2 + 10$

73. $b^4 - b^2$

74. $z^4 - 3z^2 - 4$

75. $x^4 - x^2 - 12$

76. $4x^4 + 27x^2 - 81$

77. $16a^4 - 81b^4$

78. $x^6 - y^6$

79. $x^8 + 8x^2$

80. $x^9 - 64x^3$

81. When asked to factor $6x^4 - 3x^2 - 3$ completely, a student gave the following result:

$$6x^4 - 3x^2 - 3 = (2x^2 + 1)(3x^2 - 3).$$

Is this answer correct? Explain why.

82. When can the sum of two squares be factored? Give examples.
83. Explain why $(x + 2)^3$ is not the correct factorization of $x^3 + 8$, and give the correct factorization.
84. Describe how factoring and multiplication are related. Give examples.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) $3(4r + 3k)$ (b) $25(3m^2 + 4n^2)$
 (c) $3m^2(2m^2 - 3m + 4)$ (d) $(2k + 1)^3(7 + 8k)$
2. (a) $(r + 2)(r + 5)$ (b) $(x + 3)(x + 1)$
 (c) $(y + 2)(y + 4)$
3. (a) $(x - 3)(x - 1)$ (b) $(2y - 1)(y - 2)$
 (c) $(3z - 2)(2z - 3)$
4. (a) $(r - 7)(r + 2)$ (b) $(3m - 1)(m + 2)$
 (c) $(2p + 5q)(3p - q)$
5. (a) $(3p + 7)(3p - 7)$ (b) Cannot be factored
 (c) $(x + 11)(x - 5)$
6. (a) $(2m + 1)^2$ (b) $(5z - 8t)^2$
 (c) Does not factor
7. (a) $3(2x + 1)(x - 5)$
 (b) $(3r + 2 + t)(3r + 2 - t)$
 (c) $2(3 - 2x - y)(3 + 2x + y)$
8. (a) $(a + 10)(a^2 - 10a + 100)$
 (b) $(z - 4)(z^2 + 4z + 16)$
 (c) $(10m - 3z)(100m^2 + 30mz + 9z^2)$
9. (a) $(2x^2 + 1)(x^2 + 2)$
 (b) $(3x^2 + 2)(x + 1)(x - 1)$
10. $(9x^2 + 4y^2)(3x + 2y)(3x - 2y)$

1.4 Rational Expressions

A **rational expression** is an expression that can be written as the quotient of two polynomials, such as

$$\frac{8}{x - 1}, \quad \frac{3x^2 + 4x}{5x - 6}, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{2y + 1}{y^4 + 8}.$$

✓ Checkpoint 1

What value of the variable makes each denominator equal 0?

(a) $\frac{5}{x-3}$

(b) $\frac{2x-3}{4x-1}$

(c) $\frac{x+2}{x}$

(d) Why do we need to determine these values?

It is sometimes important to know the values of the variable that make the denominator 0 (in which case the quotient is not defined). For example, 1 cannot be used as a replacement for x in the first expression above and $6/5$ cannot be used in the second one, since these values make the respective denominators equal 0. *Throughout this section, we assume that all denominators are nonzero*, which means that some replacement values for the variables may have to be excluded. ✓₁

Simplifying Rational Expressions

A key tool for simplification is the following fact.

For all expressions P , Q , R , and S , with $Q \neq 0$ and $S \neq 0$,

$$\frac{PS}{QS} = \frac{P}{Q} \quad \text{Cancellation Property}$$

Example 1

Write each of the following rational expressions in lowest terms (so that the numerator and denominator have no common factor with integer coefficients except 1 or -1).

(a) $\frac{12m}{-18}$

Solution Both $12m$ and -18 are divisible by 6. By the cancellation property,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{12m}{-18} &= \frac{2m \cdot 6}{-3 \cdot 6} \\ &= \frac{2m}{-3} \\ &= -\frac{2m}{3} \end{aligned}$$

(b) $\frac{8x+16}{4}$

Solution Factor the numerator and cancel:

$$\frac{8x+16}{4} = \frac{8(x+2)}{4} = \frac{4 \cdot 2(x+2)}{4} = \frac{2(x+2)}{1} = 2(x+2).$$

The answer could also be written as $2x+4$ if desired.

(c) $\frac{k^2+7k+12}{k^2+2k-3}$

Solution Factor the numerator and denominator and cancel:

$$\frac{k^2+7k+12}{k^2+2k-3} = \frac{(k+4)(k+3)}{(k-1)(k+3)} = \frac{k+4}{k-1} \quad \checkmark_2$$

✓ Checkpoint 2

Write each of the following in lowest terms.

(a) $\frac{12k+36}{18}$

(b) $\frac{15m+30m^2}{5m}$

(c) $\frac{2p^2+3p+1}{p^2+3p+2}$

Multiplication and Division

The rules for multiplying and dividing rational expressions are the same fraction rules you learned in arithmetic.

For all expressions P , Q , R , and S , with $Q \neq 0$ and $S \neq 0$,

$$\frac{P}{Q} \cdot \frac{R}{S} = \frac{PR}{QS} \quad \text{Multiplication Rule}$$

and

$$\frac{P}{Q} \div \frac{R}{S} = \frac{P}{Q} \cdot \frac{S}{R} \quad (R \neq 0). \quad \text{Division Rule}$$

Example 2

(a) Multiply $\frac{2}{3} \cdot \frac{y}{5}$.

Solution Use the multiplication rule. Multiply the numerators and then the denominators:

$$\frac{2}{3} \cdot \frac{y}{5} = \frac{2 \cdot y}{3 \cdot 5} = \frac{2y}{15}$$

The result, $2y/15$, is in lowest terms.

(b) Multiply $\frac{3y+9}{6} \cdot \frac{18}{5y+15}$.

Solution Factor where possible:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{3y+9}{6} \cdot \frac{18}{5y+15} &= \frac{3(y+3)}{6} \cdot \frac{18}{5(y+3)} \\ &= \frac{3 \cdot 18(y+3)}{6 \cdot 5(y+3)} && \text{Multiply numerators and denominators.} \\ &= \frac{3 \cdot 6 \cdot 3(y+3)}{6 \cdot 5(y+3)} && 18 = 6 \cdot 3 \\ &= \frac{3 \cdot 3}{5} && \text{Write in lowest terms.} \\ &= \frac{9}{5} \end{aligned}$$

(c) Multiply $\frac{m^2+5m+6}{m+3} \cdot \frac{m^2+m-6}{m^2+3m+2}$.

Solution Factor numerators and denominators:

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{(m+2)(m+3)}{m+3} \cdot \frac{(m-2)(m+3)}{(m+2)(m+1)} && \text{Factor.} \\ &= \frac{(m+2)(m+3)(m-2)(m+3)}{(m+3)(m+2)(m+1)} && \text{Multiply.} \\ &= \frac{(m-2)(m+3)}{m+1} && \text{Lowest terms} \\ &= \frac{m^2+m-6}{m+1} \quad \checkmark 3 \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 3

Multiply.

(a) $\frac{3r^2}{5} \cdot \frac{20}{9r}$

(b) $\frac{y-4}{y^2-2y-8} \cdot \frac{y^2-4}{3y}$

Example 3

(a) Divide $\frac{8x}{5} \div \frac{11x^2}{20}$.

Solution Invert the second expression and multiply (division rule):

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{8x}{5} \div \frac{11x^2}{20} &= \frac{8x}{5} \cdot \frac{20}{11x^2} && \text{Invert and multiply.} \\ &= \frac{8x \cdot 20}{5 \cdot 11x^2} && \text{Multiply.} \\ &= \frac{32}{11x}. && \text{Lowest terms} \end{aligned}$$

(b) Divide $\frac{9p - 36}{12} \div \frac{5(p - 4)}{18}$.

Solution We have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{9p - 36}{12} \cdot \frac{18}{5(p - 4)} &&& \text{Invert and multiply.} \\ = \frac{9(p - 4)}{12} \cdot \frac{18}{5(p - 4)} &&& \text{Factor.} \\ = \frac{27}{10}. &&& \text{Cancel, multiply, and write in lowest terms.} \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 4

Divide.

(a) $\frac{5m}{16} \div \frac{m^2}{10}$

(b) $\frac{2y - 8}{6} \div \frac{5y - 20}{3}$

(c) $\frac{m^2 - 2m - 3}{m(m + 1)} \div \frac{m + 4}{5m}$

Addition and Subtraction

As you know, when two numerical fractions have the same denominator, they can be added or subtracted. The same rules apply to rational expressions.

For all expressions P, Q, R , with $Q \neq 0$,

$$\frac{P}{Q} + \frac{R}{Q} = \frac{P + R}{Q} \quad \text{Addition Rule}$$

and

$$\frac{P}{Q} - \frac{R}{Q} = \frac{P - R}{Q}. \quad \text{Subtraction Rule}$$

Example 4

Add or subtract as indicated.

(a) $\frac{4}{5k} + \frac{11}{5k}$

Solution Since the denominators are the same, we add the numerators:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{4}{5k} + \frac{11}{5k} &= \frac{4 + 11}{5k} = \frac{15}{5k} && \text{Addition rule} \\ &= \frac{3}{k}. && \text{Lowest terms} \end{aligned}$$

$$(b) \frac{2x^2 + 3x + 1}{x^5 + 1} - \frac{x^2 - 7x}{x^5 + 1}$$

Solution The denominators are the same, so we subtract numerators, paying careful attention to parentheses:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{2x^2 + 3x + 1}{x^5 + 1} - \frac{x^2 - 7x}{x^5 + 1} &= \frac{(2x^2 + 3x + 1) - (x^2 - 7x)}{x^5 + 1} && \text{Subtraction rule} \\ &= \frac{2x^2 + 3x + 1 - x^2 - (-7x)}{x^5 + 1} && \text{Subtract numerators.} \\ &= \frac{2x^2 + 3x + 1 - x^2 + 7x}{x^5 + 1} \\ &= \frac{x^2 + 10x + 1}{x^5 + 1}. && \text{Simplify the numerator.} \end{aligned}$$

When fractions do not have the same denominator, you must first find a common denominator before you can add or subtract. A common denominator is a denominator that has each fraction's denominator as a factor.

Example 5 Add or subtract as indicated.

$$(a) \frac{7}{p^2} + \frac{9}{2p} + \frac{1}{3p^2}$$

Solution These three denominators are different, so we must find a common denominator that has each of p^2 , $2p$, and $3p^2$ as factors. Observe that $6p^2$ satisfies these requirements. Use the cancellation property to rewrite each fraction as one that has $6p^2$ as its denominator and then add them:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{7}{p^2} + \frac{9}{2p} + \frac{1}{3p^2} &= \frac{6 \cdot 7}{6 \cdot p^2} + \frac{3p \cdot 9}{3p \cdot 2p} + \frac{2 \cdot 1}{2 \cdot 3p^2} && \text{Cancellation property} \\ &= \frac{42}{6p^2} + \frac{27p}{6p^2} + \frac{2}{6p^2} \\ &= \frac{42 + 27p + 2}{6p^2} && \text{Addition rule} \\ &= \frac{27p + 44}{6p^2}. && \text{Simplify.} \end{aligned}$$

$$(b) \frac{k^2}{k^2 - 1} - \frac{2k^2 - k - 3}{k^2 + 3k + 2}$$

Solution Factor the denominators to find a common denominator:

$$\frac{k^2}{k^2 - 1} - \frac{2k^2 - k - 3}{k^2 + 3k + 2} = \frac{k^2}{(k + 1)(k - 1)} - \frac{2k^2 - k - 3}{(k + 1)(k + 2)}$$

A common denominator here is $(k + 1)(k - 1)(k + 2)$, because each of the preceding denominators is a factor of this common denominator. Write each fraction with the common denominator:

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{k^2}{(k+1)(k-1)} - \frac{2k^2 - k - 3}{(k+1)(k+2)} \\
 &= \frac{k^2(k+2)}{(k+1)(k-1)(k+2)} - \frac{(2k^2 - k - 3)(k-1)}{(k+1)(k-1)(k+2)} \\
 &= \frac{k^3 + 2k^2 - (2k^2 - k - 3)(k-1)}{(k+1)(k-1)(k+2)} && \text{Subtract fractions.} \\
 &= \frac{k^3 + 2k^2 - (2k^3 - 3k^2 - 2k + 3)}{(k+1)(k-1)(k+2)} && \text{Multiply } (2k^2 - k - 3)(k-1). \\
 &= \frac{k^3 + 2k^2 - 2k^3 + 3k^2 + 2k - 3}{(k+1)(k-1)(k+2)} && \text{Polynomial subtraction} \\
 &= \frac{-k^3 + 5k^2 + 2k - 3}{(k+1)(k-1)(k+2)}. && \text{Combine terms. } \checkmark 5
 \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 5

Add or subtract.

- (a) $\frac{3}{4r} + \frac{8}{3r}$
- (b) $\frac{1}{m-2} - \frac{3}{2(m-2)}$
- (c) $\frac{p+1}{p^2-p} - \frac{p^2-1}{p^2+p-2}$

Complex Fractions

Any quotient of rational expressions is called a **complex fraction**. Complex fractions are simplified as demonstrated in Example 6.

Example 6 Simplify the complex fraction

$$\frac{6 - \frac{5}{k}}{1 + \frac{5}{k}}$$

Solution Multiply both numerator and denominator by the common denominator k :

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{6 - \frac{5}{k}}{1 + \frac{5}{k}} &= \frac{k\left(6 - \frac{5}{k}\right)}{k\left(1 + \frac{5}{k}\right)} && \text{Multiply by } \frac{k}{k}. \\
 &= \frac{6k - k\left(\frac{5}{k}\right)}{k + k\left(\frac{5}{k}\right)} && \text{Distributive property} \\
 &= \frac{6k - 5}{k + 5}. && \text{Simplify.}
 \end{aligned}$$

1.4 Exercises

Write each of the given expressions in lowest terms. Factor as necessary. (See Example 1.)

1. $\frac{8x^2}{56x}$

2. $\frac{27m}{81m^3}$

3. $\frac{25p^2}{35p^3}$

4. $\frac{18y^4}{24y^2}$

5. $\frac{5m+15}{4m+12}$

6. $\frac{10z+5}{20z+10}$

7. $\frac{4(w-3)}{(w-3)(w+6)}$

9. $\frac{3y^2 - 12y}{9y^3}$

11. $\frac{m^2 - 4m + 4}{m^2 + m - 6}$

13. $\frac{x^2 + 2x - 3}{x^2 - 1}$

8. $\frac{-6(x+2)}{(x+4)(x+2)}$

10. $\frac{15k^2 + 45k}{9k^2}$

12. $\frac{r^2 - r - 6}{r^2 + r - 12}$

14. $\frac{z^2 + 4z + 4}{z^2 - 4}$

Multiply or divide as indicated in each of the exercises. Write all answers in lowest terms. (See Examples 2 and 3.)

15. $\frac{3a^2}{64} \cdot \frac{8}{2a^3}$

16. $\frac{2u^2}{8u^4} \cdot \frac{10u^3}{9u}$

17. $\frac{7x}{11} \div \frac{14x^3}{66y}$

18. $\frac{6x^2y}{2x} \div \frac{21xy}{y}$

19. $\frac{2a+b}{3c} \cdot \frac{15}{4(2a+b)}$

20. $\frac{4(x+2)}{w} \cdot \frac{3w^2}{8(x+2)}$

21. $\frac{15p-3}{6} \div \frac{10p-2}{3}$

22. $\frac{2k+8}{6} \div \frac{3k+12}{3}$

23. $\frac{9y-18}{6y+12} \cdot \frac{3y+6}{15y-30}$

24. $\frac{12r+24}{36r-36} \div \frac{6r+12}{8r-8}$

25. $\frac{4a+12}{2a-10} \div \frac{a^2-9}{a^2-a-20}$

26. $\frac{6r-18}{9r^2+6r-24} \cdot \frac{12r-16}{4r-12}$

27. $\frac{k^2-k-6}{k^2+k-12} \cdot \frac{k^2+3k-4}{k^2+2k-3}$

28. $\frac{n^2-n-6}{n^2-2n-8} \div \frac{n^2-9}{n^2+7n+12}$

29. In your own words, explain how to find the least common denominator of two fractions.

30. Describe the steps required to add three rational expressions. You may use an example to illustrate.

Add or subtract as indicated in each of the following. Write all answers in lowest terms. (See Example 4.)

31. $\frac{2}{7z} - \frac{1}{5z}$

32. $\frac{4}{3z} - \frac{5}{4z}$

33. $\frac{r+2}{3} - \frac{r-2}{3}$

34. $\frac{3y-1}{8} - \frac{3y+1}{8}$

35. $\frac{4}{x} + \frac{1}{5}$

36. $\frac{6}{r} - \frac{3}{4}$

37. $\frac{1}{m-1} + \frac{2}{m}$

38. $\frac{8}{y+2} - \frac{3}{y}$

39. $\frac{7}{b+2} + \frac{2}{5(b+2)}$

40. $\frac{4}{3(k+1)} + \frac{3}{k+1}$

41. $\frac{2}{5(k-2)} + \frac{5}{4(k-2)}$

42. $\frac{11}{3(p+4)} - \frac{5}{6(p+4)}$

43. $\frac{2}{x^2-4x+3} + \frac{5}{x^2-x-6}$

44. $\frac{3}{m^2-3m-10} + \frac{7}{m^2-m-20}$

45. $\frac{2y}{y^2+7y+12} - \frac{y}{y^2+5y+6}$

46. $\frac{-r}{r^2-10r+16} - \frac{3r}{r^2+2r-8}$

In each of the exercises in the next set, simplify the complex fraction. (See Example 6.)

47. $\frac{1 + \frac{1}{x}}{1 - \frac{1}{x}}$

48. $\frac{2 - \frac{2}{y}}{2 + \frac{2}{y}}$

49. $\frac{\frac{1}{x+h} - \frac{1}{x}}{h}$

50. $\frac{\frac{1}{(x+h)^2} - \frac{1}{x^2}}{h}$

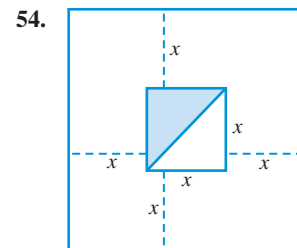
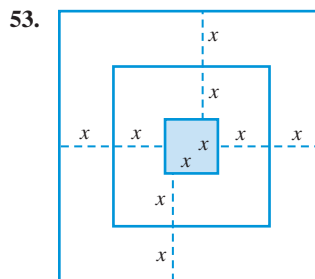
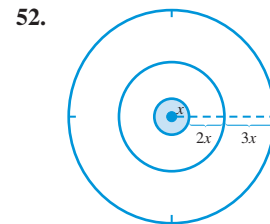
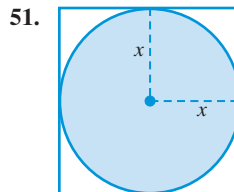
Work these problems.

Natural Science Each figure in the following exercises is a dartboard. The probability that a dart which hits the board lands in the shaded area is the fraction

$$\frac{\text{area of the shaded region}}{\text{area of the dartboard}}$$

(a) Express the probability as a rational expression in x . (Hint: Area formulas are given in Appendix B.)

(b) Then reduce the expression to lowest terms.



Business In Example 11 of Section 1.2, we saw that the cost C of producing x thousand calculators is given by

$$C = -7.2x^2 + 6995x + 230,000 \quad (x \leq 150).$$

55. Write a rational expression that gives the average cost per calculator when x thousand are produced. (Hint: The average cost is the total cost C divided by the number of calculators produced.)

56. Find the average cost per calculator for each of these production levels: 20,000, 50,000, and 125,000.

Business The cost (in millions of dollars) for a 30-second ad during the TV broadcast of the Superbowl can be approximated by

$$\frac{.314x^2 - 1.399x + 15.0}{x + 1}$$

where $x = 6$ corresponds to the year 2006. (Data from: forbes.com and espn.com.)

57. How much did an ad cost in 2010?
 58. How much did an ad cost in 2012?
 59. If this trend continues, will the cost of an ad reach \$5 million by 2018?
 60. If this trend continues, when will the cost of an ad reach \$6 million?

Health Economics The average company cost per hour of an employee's health insurance in year x is approximated by

$$\frac{.265x^2 + 1.47x + 3.63}{x + 2},$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics.)

61. What is the hourly health insurance cost in 2011?

62. What is the hourly health insurance cost in 2012?
 63. Assuming that this model remains accurate and that an employee works 2100 hours per year, what is the annual company cost of her health care insurance in 2015?
 64. Will annual costs reach \$10,000 by 2020?

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) 3 (b) $1/4$ (c) 0
 (d) Because division by 0 is undefined
 2. (a) $\frac{2(k+3)}{3}$ or $\frac{2k+6}{3}$
 (b) $3(1+2m)$ or $3+6m$ (c) $\frac{2p+1}{p+2}$
 3. (a) $\frac{4r}{3}$ (b) $\frac{y-2}{3y}$
 4. (a) $\frac{25}{8m}$ (b) $\frac{1}{5}$ (c) $\frac{5(m-3)}{m+4}$
 5. (a) $\frac{41}{12r}$ (b) $\frac{-1}{2(m-2)}$ (c) $\frac{-p^3+p^2+4p+2}{p(p-1)(p+2)}$

1.5 Exponents and Radicals

Exponents were introduced in Section 1.2. In this section, the definition of exponents will be extended to include negative exponents and rational-number exponents such as $1/2$ and $7/3$.

Integer Exponents

Positive-integer and zero exponents were defined in Section 1.2, where we noted that

$$a^m \cdot a^n = a^{m+n}$$

for nonnegative integers m and n . Now we develop an analogous property for quotients. By definition,

$$\frac{6^5}{6^2} = \frac{6 \cdot 6 \cdot 6 \cdot 6 \cdot 6}{6 \cdot 6} = 6 \cdot 6 \cdot 6 = 6^3.$$

Because there are 5 factors of 6 in the numerator and 2 factors of 6 in the denominator, the quotient has $5 - 2 = 3$ factors of 6. In general, we can make the following statement, which applies to any real number a and nonnegative integers m and n with $m > n$.

Division with Exponents

To divide a^m by a^n , subtract the exponents:

$$\frac{a^m}{a^n} = a^{m-n}.$$

Example 1

Compute each of the following.

- (a) $\frac{5^7}{5^4} = 5^{7-4} = 5^3.$
- (b) $\frac{(-8)^{10}}{(-8)^5} = (-8)^{10-5} = (-8)^5.$
- (c) $\frac{(3c)^9}{(3c)^3} = (3c)^{9-3} = (3c)^6. \quad \checkmark_1$

✓ Checkpoint 1

Evaluate each of the following.

- (a) $\frac{2^{14}}{2^5}$
- (b) $\frac{(-5)^9}{(-5)^5}$
- (c) $\frac{(xy)^{17}}{(xy)^{12}}$

When an exponent applies to the product of two numbers, such as $(7 \cdot 19)^3$, use the definitions carefully. For instance,

$$(7 \cdot 19)^3 = (7 \cdot 19)(7 \cdot 19)(7 \cdot 19) = 7 \cdot 7 \cdot 7 \cdot 19 \cdot 19 \cdot 19 = 7^3 \cdot 19^3.$$

In other words, $(7 \cdot 19)^3 = 7^3 \cdot 19^3$. This is an example of the following fact, which applies to any real numbers a and b and any nonnegative-integer exponent n .

Product to a Power

To find $(ab)^n$, apply the exponent to *every* term inside the parentheses:

$$(ab)^n = a^n b^n.$$

⚠ CAUTION A common mistake is to write an expression such as $(2x)^5$ as $2x^5$, rather than the correct answer $(2x)^5 = 2^5 x^5 = 32x^5$.

Analogous conclusions are valid for quotients (where a and b are any real numbers with $b \neq 0$ and n is a nonnegative-integer exponent).

Quotient to a Power

To find $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^n$, apply the exponent to both numerator and denominator:

$$\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^n = \frac{a^n}{b^n}.$$

Example 2

Compute each of the following.

- (a) $(5y)^3 = 5^3 y^3 = 125y^3$ Product to a power
- (b) $(c^2 d^3)^4 = (c^2)^4 (d^3)^4$ Product to a power
 $= c^8 d^{12}$ Power of a power
- (c) $\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^6 = \frac{x^6}{2^6} = \frac{x^6}{64}$ Quotient to a power
- (d) $\left(\frac{a^4}{b^3}\right)^3 = \frac{(a^4)^3}{(b^3)^3}$ Quotient to a power
 $= \frac{a^{12}}{b^9}$ Power of a power

$$(e) \left(\frac{(rs)^3}{r^4} \right)^2$$

Solution Use several of the preceding properties in succession:

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{(rs)^3}{r^4} \right)^2 &= \left(\frac{r^3 s^3}{r^4} \right)^2 && \text{Product to a power in numerator} \\ &= \left(\frac{s^3}{r} \right)^2 && \text{Cancel.} \\ &= \frac{(s^3)^2}{r^2} && \text{Quotient to a power} \\ &= \frac{s^6}{r^2}. && \text{Power of a power in numerator} \end{aligned}$$

As is often the case, there is another way to reach the last expression. You should be able to supply the reasons for each of the following steps:

$$\left(\frac{(rs)^3}{r^4} \right)^2 = \frac{[(rs)^3]^2}{(r^4)^2} = \frac{(rs)^6}{r^8} = \frac{r^6 s^6}{r^8} = \frac{s^6}{r^2}. \quad \checkmark_2$$

✓ Checkpoint 2

Compute each of the following.

- (a) $(3x)^4$
- (b) $(r^2 s^5)^6$
- (c) $\left(\frac{2}{z} \right)^5$
- (d) $\left(\frac{3a^5}{(ab)^3} \right)^2$

Negative Exponents

The next step is to define negative-integer exponents. If they are to be defined in such a way that the quotient rule for exponents remains valid, then we must have, for example,

$$\frac{3^2}{3^4} = 3^{2-4} = 3^{-2}.$$

However,

$$\frac{3^2}{3^4} = \frac{\mathbf{3} \cdot \mathbf{3}}{\mathbf{3} \cdot \mathbf{3} \cdot \mathbf{3} \cdot \mathbf{3}} = \frac{1}{3^2},$$

which suggests that 3^{-2} should be defined to be $1/3^2$. Thus, we have the following definition of a negative exponent.

Negative Exponent

If n is a natural number, and if $a \neq 0$, then

$$a^{-n} = \frac{1}{a^n}.$$

✓ Checkpoint 3

Evaluate the following.

- (a) 6^{-2}
- (b) -6^{-3}
- (c) -3^{-4}
- (d) $\left(\frac{5}{8} \right)^{-1}$

Example 3

Evaluate the following.

- (a) $3^{-2} = \frac{1}{3^2} = \frac{1}{9}$
- (b) $5^{-4} = \frac{1}{5^4} = \frac{1}{625}$
- (c) $x^{-1} = \frac{1}{x^1} = \frac{1}{x}$
- (d) $-4^{-2} = -\frac{1}{4^2} = -\frac{1}{16}$
- (e) $\left(\frac{3}{4} \right)^{-1} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{3}{4} \right)^1} = \frac{1}{\frac{3}{4}} = \frac{4}{3}. \quad \checkmark_3$

There is a useful property that makes it easy to raise a fraction to a negative exponent. Consider, for example,

$$\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^{-4} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^4} = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{2^4}{3^4}\right)} = 1 \cdot \frac{3^4}{2^4} = \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^4.$$

This example is easily generalized to the following property (in which a/b is a nonzero fraction and n a positive integer).


Inversion Property

$$\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^{-n} = \left(\frac{b}{a}\right)^n.$$

Example 4

Use the inversion property to compute each of the following.

(a) $\left(\frac{2}{5}\right)^{-3} = \left(\frac{5}{2}\right)^3 = \frac{5^3}{2^3} = \frac{125}{8}.$

(b) $\left(\frac{3}{x}\right)^{-5} = \left(\frac{x}{3}\right)^5 = \frac{x^5}{3^5} = \frac{x^5}{243}.$ 

✓ Checkpoint 4

Compute each of the following.

(a) $\left(\frac{5}{8}\right)^{-1}$

(b) $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{-5}$

(c) $\left(\frac{a^2}{b}\right)^{-3}$

When keying in negative exponents on a calculator, be sure to use the negation key (labeled $(-)$ or $+/-$), not the subtraction key. Calculators normally display answers as decimals, as shown in Figure 1.6. Some graphing calculators have a FRAC key that converts these decimals to fractions, as shown in Figure 1.7.

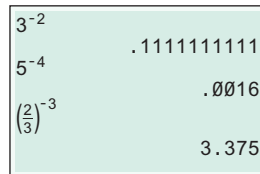


Figure 1.6

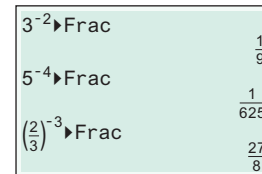


Figure 1.7

TECHNOLOGY TIP

The FRAC key is in the MATH menu of TI graphing calculators. A FRAC program for other graphing calculators is in the Program Appendix. Fractions can be displayed on some graphing calculators by changing the number display format (in the MODES menu) to “fraction” or “exact.”

Roots and Rational Exponents

There are two numbers whose square is 16: 4 and -4 . As we saw in Section 1.1, the positive one, 4, is called the *square root* (or second root) of 16. Similarly, there are two numbers whose fourth power is 16: 2 and -2 . We call 2 the **fourth root** of 16. This suggests the following generalization.

If n is even, the **n th root of a** is the positive real number whose n th power is a .

All nonnegative numbers have n th roots for every natural number n , but *no negative number has a real, even n th root*. For example, there is no real number whose square is -16 , so -16 has no square root.

We say that the **cube root** (or third root) of 8 is 2 because $2^3 = 8$. Similarly, since $(-2)^3 = -8$, we say that -2 is the cube root of -8 . Again, we can make the following generalization.

If n is odd, the n th root of a is the real number whose n th power is a .

Every real number has an n th root for every *odd* natural number n .

We can now define rational exponents. If they are to have the same properties as integer exponents, we want $a^{1/2}$ to be a number such that

$$(a^{1/2})^2 = a^{1/2} \cdot a^{1/2} = a^{1/2+1/2} = a^1 = a.$$


Thus, $a^{1/2}$ should be a number whose square is a , and it is reasonable to *define* $a^{1/2}$ to be the square root of a (if it exists). Similarly, $a^{1/3}$ is defined to be the cube root of a , and we have the following definition.

If a is a real number and n is a positive integer, then

$a^{1/n}$ is defined to be the n th root of a (if it exists).

Example 5

Examine the reasoning used to evaluate the following roots.

- (a) $36^{1/2} = 6$ because $6^2 = 36$.
- (b) $100^{1/2} = 10$ because $10^2 = 100$.
- (c) $-(225^{1/2}) = -15$ because $15^2 = 225$.
- (d) $625^{1/4} = 5$ because $5^4 = 625$.
- (e) $(-1296)^{1/4}$ is not a real number.
- (f) $-1296^{1/4} = -6$ because $6^4 = 1296$.
- (g) $(-27)^{1/3} = -3$ because $(-3)^3 = -27$.
- (h) $-32^{1/5} = -2$ because $2^5 = 32$. 

Checkpoint 5

Evaluate the following.

- (a) $16^{1/2}$
- (b) $16^{1/4}$
- (c) $-256^{1/2}$
- (d) $(-256)^{1/2}$
- (e) $-8^{1/3}$
- (f) $243^{1/5}$

A calculator can be used to evaluate expressions with fractional exponents. Whenever it is easy to do so, enter the fractional exponents in their equivalent decimal form. For instance, to find $625^{1/4}$, enter $625^{.25}$ into the calculator. When the decimal equivalent of a fraction is an infinitely repeating decimal, however, it is best to enter the fractional exponent directly. If you use a shortened decimal approximation (such as .333 for $1/3$), you will not get the correct answers. Compare the incorrect answers in Figure 1.9 with the correct ones in Figure 1.8.

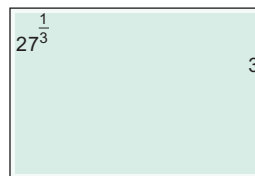


Figure 1.8

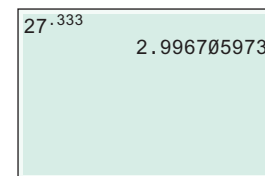


Figure 1.9

For other rational exponents, the symbol $a^{m/n}$ should be defined so that the properties for exponents still hold. For example, by the product property, we want

$$(a^{1/3})^2 = a^{1/3} \cdot a^{1/3} = a^{1/3+1/3} = a^{2/3}.$$

This result suggests the following definition.

For all integers m and all positive integers n , and for all real numbers a for which $a^{1/n}$ is a real number,

$$a^{m/n} = (a^{1/n})^m.$$

Example 6 Verify each of the following calculations.

- (a) $27^{2/3} = (27^{1/3})^2 = 3^2 = 9.$
 (b) $32^{2/5} = (32^{1/5})^2 = 2^2 = 4.$
 (c) $64^{4/3} = (64^{1/3})^4 = 4^4 = 256.$
 (d) $25^{3/2} = (25^{1/2})^3 = 5^3 = 125.$ ✓₆

✓ Checkpoint 6

Evaluate the following.

- (a) $16^{3/4}$
 (b) $25^{5/2}$
 (c) $32^{7/5}$
 (d) $100^{3/2}$

CAUTION When the base is negative, as in $(-8)^{2/3}$, some calculators produce an error message. On such calculators, you should first compute $(-8)^{1/3}$ and then square the result; that is, compute $[(-8)^{1/3}]^2$.

Since every terminating decimal is a rational number, decimal exponents now have a meaning. For instance, $5.24 = \frac{524}{100}$, so $3^{5.24} = 3^{524/100}$, which is easily approximated by a calculator (Figure 1.10).

Rational exponents were defined so that one of the familiar properties of exponents remains valid. In fact, it can be proved that *all* of the rules developed earlier for integer exponents are valid for rational exponents. The following box summarizes these rules, which are illustrated in Examples 7–9.

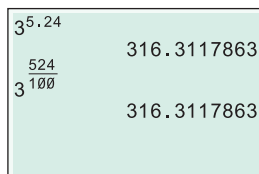


Figure 1.10

Properties of Exponents

For any rational numbers m and n , and for any real numbers a and b for which the following exist,

- (a) $a^m \cdot a^n = a^{m+n}$ Product property
 (b) $\frac{a^m}{a^n} = a^{m-n}$ Quotient property
 (c) $(a^m)^n = a^{mn}$ Power of a power
 (d) $(ab)^m = a^m \cdot b^m$ Product to a power
 (e) $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^m = \frac{a^m}{b^m}$ Quotient to a power
 (f) $a^0 = 1$ Zero exponent
 (g) $a^{-n} = \frac{1}{a^n}$ Negative exponent
 (h) $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^{-n} = \left(\frac{b}{a}\right)^n$ Inversion property

The power-of-a-power property provides another way to compute $a^{m/n}$ (when it exists):

$$a^{m/n} = a^{m(1/n)} = (a^m)^{1/n}. \quad (1)$$

For example, we can now find $4^{3/2}$ in two ways:

$$4^{3/2} = (4^{1/2})^3 = 2^3 = 8 \quad \text{or} \quad 4^{3/2} = (4^3)^{1/2} = 64^{1/2} = 8.$$

Definition of $a^{m/n}$ Statement (1)

Example 7

Simplify each of the following expressions.

(a) $7^{-4} \cdot 7^6 = 7^{-4+6} = 7^2 = 49.$ Product property

(b) $5x^{2/3} \cdot 2x^{1/4} = 10x^{2/3}x^{1/4}$
 $= 10x^{2/3+1/4}$ Product property
 $= 10x^{11/12}.$ $\frac{2}{3} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{8}{12} + \frac{3}{12} = \frac{11}{12}$

(c) $\frac{9^{14}}{9^{-6}} = 9^{14-(-6)} = 9^{20}.$ Quotient property

(d) $\frac{c^5}{2c^{4/3}} = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{c^5}{c^{4/3}}$
 $= \frac{1}{2}c^{5-4/3}$ Quotient property

$$= \frac{1}{2}c^{11/3} = \frac{c^{11/3}}{2}.$$
 $5 - \frac{4}{3} = \frac{15}{3} - \frac{4}{3} = \frac{11}{3}$

(e) $\frac{27^{1/3} \cdot 27^{5/3}}{27^3} = \frac{27^{1/3+5/3}}{27^3}$ Product property

$$= \frac{27^2}{27^3} = 27^{2-3}$$
 Quotient property

$$= 27^{-1} = \frac{1}{27}.$$
 Definition of negative exponent

✓ Checkpoint 7

Simplify each of the following.

(a) $9^7 \cdot 9^{-5}$

(b) $3x^{1/4} \cdot 5x^{5/4}$

(c) $\frac{8^7}{8^{-3}}$

(d) $\frac{5^{2/3} \cdot 5^{-4/3}}{5^2}$

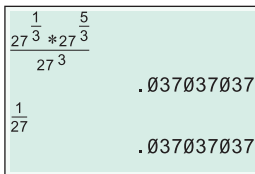


Figure 1.11

You can use a calculator to check numerical computations, such as those in Example 7, by computing the left and right sides separately and confirming that the answers are the same in each case. Figure 1.11 shows this technique for part (e) of Example 7.

Example 8

Perform the indicated operations.

(a) $(2^{-3})^{-4/7} = 2^{(-3)(-4/7)} = 2^{12/7}.$ Power of a power

(b) $\left(\frac{3m^{5/6}}{y^{3/4}}\right)^2 = \frac{(3m^{5/6})^2}{(y^{3/4})^2}$ Quotient to a power

$$= \frac{3^2(m^{5/6})^2}{(y^{3/4})^2}$$
 Product to a power

$$= \frac{9m^{(5/6)2}}{y^{(3/4)2}}$$
 Power of a power

$$= \frac{9m^{5/3}}{y^{3/2}}.$$
 $\frac{5}{6} \cdot 2 = \frac{10}{6} = \frac{5}{3}$ and $\frac{3}{4} \cdot 2 = \frac{3}{2}$

(c) $m^{2/3}(m^{7/3} + 2m^{1/3}) = m^{2/3}m^{7/3} + m^{2/3}2m^{1/3}$ Distributive property
 $= m^{2/3+7/3} + 2m^{2/3+1/3} = m^3 + 2m.$ Product rule

✓ Checkpoint 8

Simplify each of the following.

(a) $(7^{-4})^{-2} \cdot (7^4)^{-2}$

(b) $\frac{c^4c^{-1/2}}{c^{3/2}d^{1/2}}$

(c) $a^{5/8}(2a^{3/8} + a^{-1/8})$

Example 9

Simplify each expression in parts (a)–(c). Give answers with only positive exponents.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad \frac{(m^3)^{-2}}{m^4} &= \frac{m^{-6}}{m^4} = m^{-6-4} = m^{-10} = \frac{1}{m^{10}}. \\ \text{(b)} \quad 6y^{2/3} \cdot 2y^{-1/2} &= 12y^{2/3-1/2} = 12y^{1/6}. \\ \text{(c)} \quad \frac{x^{1/2}(x-2)^{-3}}{5(x-2)} &= \frac{x^{1/2}}{5} \cdot \frac{(x-2)^{-3}}{x-2} = \frac{x^{1/2}}{5} \cdot (x-2)^{-3-1} \\ &= \frac{x^{1/2}}{5} \cdot \frac{1}{(x-2)^4} = \frac{x^{1/2}}{5(x-2)^4}. \end{aligned}$$

(d) Write $a^{-1} + b^{-1}$ as a single quotient.

Solution Be careful here. $a^{-1} + b^{-1}$ does *not* equal $(a + b)^{-1}$; the exponent properties deal only with products and quotients, not with sums. However, using the definition of negative exponents and addition of fractions, we have

$$a^{-1} + b^{-1} = \frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b} = \frac{b + a}{ab}. \quad \checkmark_9$$

Checkpoint 9

Simplify the given expressions. Give answers with only positive exponents.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad &(3x^{2/3})(2x^{-1})(y^{-1/3})^2 \\ \text{(b)} \quad &\frac{(t^{-1})^2}{t^{-5}} \\ \text{(c)} \quad &\left(\frac{2k^{1/3}}{p^{5/4}}\right)^2 \cdot \left(\frac{4k^{-2}}{p^5}\right)^{3/2} \\ \text{(d)} \quad &x^{-1} - y^{-2} \end{aligned}$$

Checkpoint 10

Assuming the model from Example 10 remains accurate, find the number of students for 2015.

Checkpoint 11

Simplify.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad &\sqrt[3]{27} \\ \text{(b)} \quad &\sqrt[4]{625} \\ \text{(c)} \quad &\sqrt[6]{64} \\ \text{(d)} \quad &\sqrt[3]{\frac{64}{125}} \end{aligned}$$

We can use some functions of the form ax^b where both a and b are constants and b is also an exponent.

Example 10

Social Science The total number of students (in millions) attending institutes of higher education can be approximated by the function

$$5.8x^{0.357} \quad (x \geq 10),$$

where $x = 10$ corresponds to the year 1990. Find the approximate number of students enrolled in higher education in 2012. (Data from: U.S. National Center for Education Statistics.)

Solution Since 2012 is 22 years after 1990 and $x = 10$ corresponds to 1990, we have that $x = 22 + 10 = 32$ corresponds to 2012. We then obtain

$$5.8(32)^{0.357} \approx 20.0 \text{ million students.} \quad \checkmark_{10}$$

Radicals

Earlier, we denoted the n th root of a as $a^{1/n}$. An alternative notation for n th roots uses the radical symbol $\sqrt[n]{}$.

If n is an even natural number and $a \geq 0$, or if n is an odd natural number,

$$\sqrt[n]{a} = a^{1/n}.$$

In the radical expression $\sqrt[n]{a}$, a is called the *radicand* and n is called the *index*. When $n = 2$, the familiar square-root symbol \sqrt{a} is used instead of $\sqrt[2]{a}$.

Example 11

Simplify the following radicals.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad \sqrt[4]{16} &= 16^{1/4} = 2. & \text{(b)} \quad \sqrt[5]{-32} &= -2. \\ \text{(c)} \quad \sqrt[3]{1000} &= 10. & \text{(d)} \quad \sqrt[6]{\frac{64}{729}} &= \left(\frac{64}{729}\right)^{1/6} = \frac{64^{1/6}}{729^{1/6}} = \frac{2}{3}. \quad \checkmark_{11} \end{aligned}$$

Recall that $a^{m/n} = (a^{1/n})^m$ by definition and $a^{m/n} = (a^m)^{1/n}$ by statement (1) on page 56 (provided that all terms are defined). We translate these facts into radical notation as follows.

For all rational numbers m/n and all real numbers a for which $\sqrt[n]{a}$ exists,

$$a^{m/n} = (\sqrt[n]{a})^m \quad \text{or} \quad a^{m/n} = \sqrt[n]{a^m}.$$

Notice that $\sqrt[n]{x^n}$ cannot be written simply as x when n is even. For example, if $x = -5$, then

$$\sqrt{x^2} = \sqrt{(-5)^2} = \sqrt{25} = 5 \neq x.$$

However, $|-5| = 5$, so that $\sqrt{x^2} = |x|$ when x is -5 . This relationship is true in general.

For any real number a and any natural number n ,

$$\sqrt[n]{a^n} = |a| \quad \text{if } n \text{ is even}$$

and

$$\sqrt[n]{a^n} = a \quad \text{if } n \text{ is odd.}$$

To avoid the difficulty that $\sqrt[n]{a^n}$ is not necessarily equal to a , we shall assume that all variables in radicands represent only nonnegative numbers, as they usually do in applications.

The properties of exponents can be written with radicals as follows.

For all real numbers a and b , and for positive integers n for which all indicated roots exist,

(a) $\sqrt[n]{a} \cdot \sqrt[n]{b} = \sqrt[n]{ab}$ and

(b) $\frac{\sqrt[n]{a}}{\sqrt[n]{b}} = \sqrt[n]{\frac{a}{b}}$ ($b \neq 0$).

Example 12 Simplify the following expressions.

(a) $\sqrt{6} \cdot \sqrt{54} = \sqrt{6 \cdot 54} = \sqrt{324} = 18.$

Alternatively, simplify $\sqrt{54}$ first:

$$\begin{aligned} \sqrt{6} \cdot \sqrt{54} &= \sqrt{6} \cdot \sqrt{9 \cdot 6} \\ &= \sqrt{6} \cdot 3\sqrt{6} = 3 \cdot 6 = 18. \end{aligned}$$

(b) $\sqrt{\frac{7}{64}} = \frac{\sqrt{7}}{\sqrt{64}} = \frac{\sqrt{7}}{8}.$

(c) $\sqrt{75} - \sqrt{12}.$

Solution Note that $12 = 4 \cdot 3$ and that 4 is a perfect square. Similarly, $75 = 25 \cdot 3$ and 25 is a perfect square. Consequently,

$$\begin{aligned} \sqrt{75} - \sqrt{12} &= \sqrt{25 \cdot 3} - \sqrt{4 \cdot 3} && \text{Factor.} \\ &= \sqrt{25}\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{4}\sqrt{3} && \text{Property (a)} \\ &= 5\sqrt{3} - 2\sqrt{3} = 3\sqrt{3}. && \text{Simplify. } \checkmark_{12} \end{aligned}$$

 **Checkpoint 12**

Simplify.

(a) $\sqrt{3} \cdot \sqrt{27}$

(b) $\sqrt{\frac{3}{49}}$

(c) $\sqrt{50} + \sqrt{72}$

 **CAUTION** When a and b are nonzero real numbers,

$$\sqrt[n]{a + b} \text{ is NOT equal to } \sqrt[n]{a} + \sqrt[n]{b}.$$

For example,

$$\sqrt{9 + 16} = \sqrt{25} = 5, \text{ but } \sqrt{9} + \sqrt{16} = 3 + 4 = 7,$$

$$\text{so } \sqrt{9 + 16} \neq \sqrt{9} + \sqrt{16}.$$

Multiplying radical expressions is much like multiplying polynomials.

Example 13 Perform the following multiplications.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a)} \quad (\sqrt{2} + 3)(\sqrt{8} - 5) &= \sqrt{2}(\sqrt{8}) - \sqrt{2}(5) + 3\sqrt{8} - 3(5) && \text{FOIL} \\ &= \sqrt{16} - 5\sqrt{2} + 3(2\sqrt{2}) - 15 \\ &= 4 - 5\sqrt{2} + 6\sqrt{2} - 15 \\ &= -11 + \sqrt{2}. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(b)} \quad (\sqrt{7} - \sqrt{10})(\sqrt{7} + \sqrt{10}) &= (\sqrt{7})^2 - (\sqrt{10})^2 \\ &= 7 - 10 = -3. \end{aligned} \quad \checkmark_{13}$$

Checkpoint 13

Multiply.

$$\text{(a)} \quad (\sqrt{5} - \sqrt{2})(3 + \sqrt{2})$$

$$\text{(b)} \quad (\sqrt{3} + \sqrt{7})(\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{7})$$

Rationalizing Denominators and Numerators

Before the invention of calculators, it was customary to **rationalize the denominators** of fractions (that is, write equivalent fractions with no radicals in the denominator), because this made many computations easier. Although there is no longer a computational reason to do so, rationalization of denominators (and sometimes numerators) is still used today to simplify expressions and to derive useful formulas.

Example 14 Rationalize each denominator.

$$\text{(a)} \quad \frac{4}{\sqrt{3}}$$

Solution The key is to multiply by 1, with 1 written as a radical fraction:

$$\frac{4}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{4}{\sqrt{3}} \cdot 1 = \frac{4}{\sqrt{3}} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{4\sqrt{3}}{3}.$$

$$\text{(b)} \quad \frac{1}{3 - \sqrt{2}}$$

Solution The same technique works here, using $1 = \frac{3 + \sqrt{2}}{3 + \sqrt{2}}$:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{3 - \sqrt{2}} &= \frac{1}{3 - \sqrt{2}} \cdot 1 = \frac{1}{3 - \sqrt{2}} \cdot \frac{3 + \sqrt{2}}{3 + \sqrt{2}} = \frac{3 + \sqrt{2}}{(3 - \sqrt{2})(3 + \sqrt{2})} \\ &= \frac{3 + \sqrt{2}}{9 - 2} = \frac{3 + \sqrt{2}}{7}. \end{aligned} \quad \checkmark_{14}$$

Checkpoint 14

Rationalize the denominator.

$$\text{(a)} \quad \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}$$

$$\text{(b)} \quad \frac{1}{2 + \sqrt{3}}$$

Example 15 Rationalize the numerator of

$$\frac{2 + \sqrt{5}}{1 + \sqrt{3}}$$

Solution As in Example 14(b), we must write 1 as a suitable fraction. Since we want to rationalize the numerator here, we multiply by the fraction $1 = \frac{2 - \sqrt{5}}{2 - \sqrt{5}}$:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{2 + \sqrt{5}}{1 + \sqrt{3}} &= \frac{2 + \sqrt{5}}{1 + \sqrt{3}} \cdot \frac{2 - \sqrt{5}}{2 - \sqrt{5}} = \frac{4 - 5}{2 - \sqrt{5} + 2\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{3}\sqrt{5}} \\ &= \frac{-1}{2 - \sqrt{5} + 2\sqrt{3} - \sqrt{15}}.\end{aligned}$$

1.5 Exercises

Perform the indicated operations and simplify your answer. (See Examples 1 and 2.)

1. $\frac{7^5}{7^3}$
2. $\frac{(-6)^{14}}{(-6)^6}$
3. $(4c)^2$
4. $(-2x)^4$
5. $\left(\frac{2}{x}\right)^5$
6. $\left(\frac{5}{xy}\right)^3$
7. $(3u^2)^3(2u^3)^2$
8. $\frac{(5v^2)^3}{(2v)^4}$

Perform the indicated operations and simplify your answer, which should not have any negative exponents. (See Examples 3 and 4.)

9. 7^{-1}
10. 10^{-3}
11. -6^{-5}
12. $(-x)^{-4}$
13. $(-y)^{-3}$
14. $\left(\frac{1}{6}\right)^{-2}$
15. $\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)^{-2}$
16. $\left(\frac{x}{y^2}\right)^{-2}$
17. $\left(\frac{a}{b^3}\right)^{-1}$

18. Explain why $-2^{-4} = -1/16$, but $(-2)^{-4} = 1/16$.

Evaluate each expression. Write all answers without exponents. Round decimal answers to two places. (See Examples 5 and 6.)

19. $49^{1/2}$
20. $8^{1/3}$
21. $(5.71)^{1/4}$
22. $12^{5/2}$
23. $-64^{2/3}$
24. $-64^{3/2}$
25. $(8/27)^{-4/3}$
26. $(27/64)^{-1/3}$

Simplify each expression. Write all answers using only positive exponents. (See Example 7.)

27. $\frac{5^{-3}}{4^{-2}}$
28. $\frac{7^{-4}}{7^{-3}}$
29. $4^{-3} \cdot 4^6$
30. $9^{-9} \cdot 9^{10}$
31. $\frac{4^{10} \cdot 4^{-6}}{4^{-4}}$
32. $\frac{5^{-4} \cdot 5^6}{5^{-1}}$

Simplify each expression. Assume all variables represent positive real numbers. Write answers with only positive exponents. (See Examples 8 and 9.)

33. $\frac{z^6 \cdot z^2}{z^5}$
34. $\frac{k^6 \cdot k^9}{k^{12}}$

35. $\frac{3^{-1}(p^{-2})^3}{3p^{-7}}$
36. $\frac{(5x^3)^{-2}}{x^4}$
37. $(q^{-5}r^3)^{-1}$
38. $(2y^2z^{-2})^{-3}$
39. $(2p^{-1})^3 \cdot (5p^2)^{-2}$
40. $(4^{-1}x^3)^{-2} \cdot (3x^{-3})^4$
41. $(2p)^{1/2} \cdot (2p^3)^{1/3}$
42. $(5k^2)^{3/2} \cdot (5k^{1/3})^{3/4}$
43. $p^{2/3}(2p^{1/3} + 5p)$
44. $3x^{3/2}(2x^{-3/2} + x^{3/2})$
45. $\frac{(x^2)^{1/3}(y^2)^{2/3}}{3x^{2/3}y^2}$
46. $\frac{(c^{1/2})^3(d^3)^{1/2}}{(c^3)^{1/4}(d^{1/4})^3}$
47. $\frac{(7a)^2(5b)^{3/2}}{(5a)^{3/2}(7b)^4}$
48. $\frac{(4x)^{1/2}\sqrt{xy}}{x^{3/2}y^2}$
49. $x^{1/2}(x^{2/3} - x^{4/3})$
50. $x^{1/2}(3x^{3/2} + 2x^{-1/2})$
51. $(x^{1/2} + y^{1/2})(x^{1/2} - y^{1/2})$
52. $(x^{1/3} + y^{1/2})(2x^{1/3} - y^{3/2})$

Match the rational-exponent expression in Column I with the equivalent radical expression in Column II. Assume that x is not zero.

- | I | II |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| 53. $(-3x)^{1/3}$ | (a) $\frac{3}{\sqrt[3]{x}}$ |
| 54. $-3x^{1/3}$ | (b) $-3\sqrt[3]{x}$ |
| 55. $(-3x)^{-1/3}$ | (c) $\frac{1}{\sqrt[3]{3x}}$ |
| 56. $-3x^{-1/3}$ | (d) $\frac{-3}{\sqrt[3]{x}}$ |
| 57. $(3x)^{1/3}$ | (e) $3\sqrt[3]{x}$ |
| 58. $3x^{-1/3}$ | (f) $\sqrt[3]{-3x}$ |
| 59. $(3x)^{-1/3}$ | (g) $\sqrt[3]{3x}$ |
| 60. $3x^{1/3}$ | (h) $\frac{1}{\sqrt[3]{-3x}}$ |


Simplify each of the given radical expressions. (See Examples 11–13.)

61. $\sqrt[3]{125}$
62. $\sqrt[6]{64}$
63. $\sqrt[4]{625}$
64. $\sqrt{-128}$
65. $\sqrt{63}\sqrt{7}$
66. $\sqrt[3]{81} \cdot \sqrt[3]{9}$
67. $\sqrt{81 - 4}$
68. $\sqrt{49 - 16}$
69. $\sqrt{5}\sqrt{15}$
70. $\sqrt{8}\sqrt{96}$
71. $\sqrt{50} - \sqrt{72}$
72. $\sqrt{75} + \sqrt{192}$

73. $5\sqrt{20} - \sqrt{45} + 2\sqrt{80}$

74. $(\sqrt{3} + 2)(\sqrt{3} - 2)$

75. $(\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{2})(\sqrt{5} - \sqrt{2})$

 76. What is wrong with the statement $\sqrt[3]{4} \cdot \sqrt[3]{4} = 4$?

Rationalize the denominator of each of the given expressions. (See Example 14.)

77. $\frac{3}{1 - \sqrt{2}}$

78. $\frac{2}{1 + \sqrt{5}}$

79. $\frac{9 - \sqrt{3}}{3 - \sqrt{3}}$

80. $\frac{\sqrt{3} - 1}{\sqrt{3} - 2}$

Rationalize the numerator of each of the given expressions. (See Example 15.)

81. $\frac{3 - \sqrt{2}}{3 + \sqrt{2}}$

82. $\frac{1 + \sqrt{7}}{2 - \sqrt{3}}$

The following exercises are applications of exponentiation and radicals.

83. **Business** The theory of economic lot size shows that, under certain conditions, the number of units to order to minimize total cost is

$$x = \sqrt{\frac{kM}{f}},$$

where k is the cost to store one unit for one year, f is the (constant) setup cost to manufacture the product, and M is the total number of units produced annually. Find x for the following values of f , k , and M .

(a) $k = \$1, f = \$500, M = 100,000$

(b) $k = \$3, f = \$7, M = 16,700$

(c) $k = \$1, f = \$5, M = 16,800$

84. **Health** The threshold weight T for a person is the weight above which the risk of death increases greatly. One researcher found that the threshold weight in pounds for men aged 40–49 is related to height in inches by the equation $h = 12.3T^{1/3}$. What height corresponds to a threshold of 216 pounds for a man in this age group?

Business The annual domestic revenue (in billions of dollars) generated by the sale of movie tickets can be approximated by the function

$$8.19x^{0.096} \quad (x \geq 1),$$

where $x = 1$ corresponds to 2001. Assuming the model remains accurate, approximate the revenue in the following years. (Data from: www.the-numbers.com.)

85. 2010

86. 2013

87. 2015

88. 2018

Health The age-adjusted death rates per 100,000 people for diseases of the heart can be approximated by the function

$$262.5x^{-.156} \quad (x \geq 1),$$

where $x = 1$ corresponds to 2001. Assuming the model continues to be accurate, find the approximate age-adjusted death rate for

the following years. (Data from: U.S. National Center for Health Statistics.)

89. 2011

90. 2013

91. 2017

92. 2020

Social Science The number of students receiving financial aid from the federal government in the form of Pell Grants (in millions) can be approximated by the function

$$3.96x^{0.239} \quad (x \geq 1),$$

where $x = 1$ corresponds to the year 2001. Assuming the model remains accurate, find the number of students receiving a Pell Grant for the following years. (Data from: www.finaid.org.)

93. 2005

94. 2010

95. 2013

96. 2018

Health A function that approximates the number (in millions) of CT scans performed annually in the United States is

$$3.5x^{1.04} \quad (x \geq 5),$$

where $x = 5$ corresponds to 1995. Find the approximate number of CT scans performed in the following years. (Data from: *The Wall Street Journal*.)

97. 1998

98. 2005

99. 2012

100. 2013

Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) 2^9

(b) $(-5)^4$

(c) $(xy)^5$

2. (a) $81x^4$

(b) $r^{12}s^{30}$

(c) $\frac{32}{z^5}$

(d) $\frac{9a^4}{b^6}$

3. (a) $1/36$

(b) $-1/216$

(c) $-1/81$

(d) $8/5$

4. (a) $8/5$

(b) 32

(c) b^3/a^6

5. (a) 4

(b) 2

(c) -16

(d) Not a real number

(e) -2

(f) 3

6. (a) 8

(b) 3125

(c) 128

(d) 1000

7. (a) 81

(b) $15x^{3/2}$

(c) 8^{10}

(d) $5^{-8/3}$ or $1/5^{8/3}$

8. (a) 1

(b) $c^2/d^{1/2}$

(c) $2a + a^{1/2}$

9. (a) $\frac{6}{x^{1/3}y^{2/3}}$

(b) t^3

(c) $32/(p^{10}k^{7/3})$

(d) $\frac{y^2 - x}{xy^2}$

10. About 20.6 million

11. (a) 3

(b) 5

(c) 2

(d) $4/5$

12. (a) 9

(b) $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{7}$

(c) $11\sqrt{2}$

13. (a) $3\sqrt{5} + \sqrt{10} - 3\sqrt{2} - 2$

(b) -4

14. (a) $\frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}$

(b) $2 - \sqrt{3}$

1.6 First-Degree Equations

An **equation** is a statement that two mathematical expressions are equal; for example,

$$5x - 3 = 13, \quad 8y = 4, \quad \text{and} \quad -3p + 5 = 4p - 8$$


are equations.

The letter in each equation is called the variable. This section concentrates on **first-degree equations**, which are equations that involve only constants and the first power of the variable. All of the equations displayed above are first-degree equations, but neither of the following equations is of first degree:

$$\begin{array}{ll} 2x^2 = 5x + 6 & \text{(the variable has an exponent greater than 1);} \\ \sqrt{x + 2} = 4 & \text{(the variable is under the radical).} \end{array}$$

A **solution** of an equation is a number that can be substituted for the variable in the equation to produce a true statement. For example, substituting the number 9 for x in the equation $2x + 1 = 19$ gives

$$\begin{array}{ll} 2x + 1 = 19 & \\ 2(\mathbf{9}) + 1 \stackrel{?}{=} 19 & \text{Let } x = 9. \\ 18 + 1 = 19. & \text{True} \end{array}$$

This true statement indicates that 9 is a solution of $2x + 1 = 19$. 

The following properties are used to solve equations.

Checkpoint 1

Is -4 a solution of the equations in parts (a) and (b)?

- (a) $3x + 5 = -7$
- (b) $2x - 3 = 5$
- (c) Is there more than one solution of the equation in part (a)?

Properties of Equality

- The same number may be added to or subtracted from both sides of an equation:

$$\text{If } a = b, \text{ then } a + c = b + c \text{ and } a - c = b - c.$$

- Both sides of an equation may be multiplied or divided by the same nonzero number:

$$\text{If } a = b \text{ and } c \neq 0, \text{ then } ac = bc \text{ and } \frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{c}.$$

Example 1


Solve the equation $5x - 3 = 12$.

Solution Using the first property of equality, add 3 to both sides. This isolates the term containing the variable on one side of the equation:

$$\begin{array}{ll} 5x - 3 = 12 & \\ 5x - 3 + \mathbf{3} = 12 + \mathbf{3} & \text{Add 3 to both sides.} \\ 5x = 15. & \end{array}$$

Now arrange for the coefficient of x to be 1 by using the second property of equality:

$$\begin{array}{ll} 5x = 15 & \\ \frac{5x}{5} = \frac{15}{5} & \text{Divide both sides by 5.} \\ x = 3. & \end{array}$$

The solution of the original equation, $5x - 3 = 12$, is 3. Check the solution by substituting 3 for x in the original equation. 

Checkpoint 2

Solve the following.

- (a) $3p - 5 = 19$
- (b) $4y + 3 = -5$
- (c) $-2k + 6 = 2$

Example 2 Solve $2k + 3(k - 4) = 2(k - 3)$.

Solution First, simplify the equation by using the distributive property on the left-side term $3(k - 4)$ and right-side term $2(k - 3)$:

$$\begin{aligned} 2k + 3(k - 4) &= 2(k - 3) \\ 2k + 3k - 12 &= 2(k - 3) && \text{Distributive property} \\ 2k + 3k - 12 &= 2k - 6 && \text{Distributive property} \\ 5k - 12 &= 2k - 6. && \text{Collect like terms on left side.} \end{aligned}$$

One way to proceed is to add $-2k$ to both sides:

$$\begin{aligned} 5k - 12 + (-2k) &= 2k - 6 + (-2k) && \text{Add } -2k \text{ to both sides.} \\ 3k - 12 &= -6 \\ 3k - 12 + 12 &= -6 + 12 && \text{Add 12 to both sides.} \\ 3k &= 6 \\ \frac{1}{3}(3k) &= \frac{1}{3}(6) && \text{Multiply both sides by } \frac{1}{3}. \\ k &= 2. \end{aligned}$$

The solution is 2. Check this result by substituting 2 for k in the original equation. 

 **Checkpoint 3**

Solve the following.

- (a) $3(m - 6) + 2(m + 4)$
 $= 4m - 2$
- (b) $-2(y + 3) + 4y$
 $= 3(y + 1) - 6$

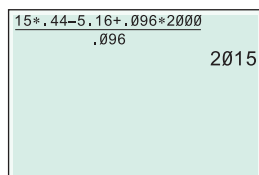


Figure 1.12

 **Checkpoint 4**

In Example 3, in what year will 48% of U.S. households own an IRA?


Example 3 **Business** The percentage y of U.S. households owning Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs) in year x is approximated by the equation

$$0.096(x - 2000) = 15y - 5.16.$$

Assuming this equation remains valid, use a calculator to determine when 44% of households will own an IRA. (Data from: ProQuest Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2013.)

Solution Since $44\% = .44$, let $y = .44$ in the equation and solve for x . To avoid any rounding errors in the intermediate steps, it is often a good idea to do all the algebra first, before using the calculator:

$$\begin{aligned} 0.096(x - 2000) &= 15y - 5.16 \\ 0.096(x - 2000) &= 15 \cdot .44 - 5.16 && \text{Substitute } y = .44 \\ .096x - .096 \cdot 2000 &= 15 \cdot .44 - 5.16 && \text{Distributive property} \\ .096x &= 15 \cdot .44 - 5.16 + .096 \cdot 2000 && \text{Add } .096 \cdot 2000 \text{ to both sides.} \\ x &= \frac{15 \cdot .44 - 5.16 + .096 \cdot 2000}{.096} && \text{Divide both sides by } .096 \end{aligned}$$

Now use a calculator to determine that $x = 2015$, as shown in Figure 1.12. So 44% of households will own an IRA in 2015. 

The next three examples show how to simplify the solution of first-degree equations involving fractions. We solve these equations by multiplying both sides of the equation by a *common denominator*. This step will eliminate the fractions.

Example 4 Solve

$$\frac{r}{10} - \frac{2}{15} = \frac{3r}{20} - \frac{1}{5}$$

Solution Here, the denominators are 10, 15, 20, and 5. Each of these numbers is a factor of 60; therefore, 60 is a common denominator. Multiply both sides of the equation by 60:

$$60\left(\frac{r}{10} - \frac{2}{15}\right) = 60\left(\frac{3r}{20} - \frac{1}{5}\right)$$

$$60\left(\frac{r}{10}\right) - 60\left(\frac{2}{15}\right) = 60\left(\frac{3r}{20}\right) - 60\left(\frac{1}{5}\right) \quad \text{Distributive property}$$

$$6r - 8 = 9r - 12$$

$$6r - 8 + (-6r) + 12 = 9r - 12 + (-6r) + 12 \quad \text{Add } -6r \text{ and } 12 \text{ to both sides.}$$

$$4 = 3r$$

$$r = \frac{4}{3} \quad \text{Multiply both sides by } 1/3.$$

✓ Checkpoint 5

Solve the following.

(a) $\frac{x}{2} - \frac{x}{4} = 6$

(b) $\frac{2x}{3} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{x}{4} - \frac{9}{2}$

Check this solution in the original equation. ✓₅

⚠ CAUTION Multiplying *both* sides of an equation by a number to eliminate fractions is valid. But multiplying a single fraction by a number to simplify it is not valid. For instance, multiplying $\frac{3x}{8}$ by 8 changes it to $3x$, which is *not equal* to $\frac{3x}{8}$.

The second property of equality (page 63) applies only to *nonzero* quantities. Multiplying or dividing both sides of an equation by a quantity involving the variable (which might be zero for some values) may lead to an **extraneous solution**—that is, a number that does not satisfy the original equation. To avoid errors in such situations, always *check your solutions in the original equation*.

Example 5 Solve

$$\frac{4}{3(k+2)} - \frac{k}{3(k+2)} = \frac{5}{3}$$

Solution Multiply both sides of the equation by the common denominator $3(k+2)$. Here, $k \neq -2$, since $k = -2$ would give a 0 denominator, making the fraction undefined. So, we have

$$3(k+2) \cdot \frac{4}{3(k+2)} - 3(k+2) \cdot \frac{k}{3(k+2)} = 3(k+2) \cdot \frac{5}{3}$$

Simplify each side and solve for k :

$$4 - k = 5(k+2)$$

$$4 - k = 5k + 10 \quad \text{Distributive property}$$

$$4 - k + k = 5k + 10 + k \quad \text{Add } k \text{ to both sides.}$$

$$4 = 6k + 10$$

$$4 + (-10) = 6k + 10 + (-10) \quad \text{Add } -10 \text{ to both sides.}$$

$$-6 = 6k$$

$$-1 = k \quad \text{Multiply both sides by } \frac{1}{6}.$$

The solution is -1 . Substitute -1 for k in the original equation as a check:

$$\frac{4}{3(-1+2)} - \frac{-1}{3(-1+2)} \stackrel{?}{=} \frac{5}{3}$$

$$\frac{4}{3} - \frac{-1}{3} \stackrel{?}{=} \frac{5}{3}$$

$$\frac{5}{3} = \frac{5}{3}$$

✓ Checkpoint 6

Solve the equation

$$\frac{5p+1}{3(p+1)} = \frac{3p-3}{3(p+1)} + \frac{9p-3}{3(p+1)}$$

The check shows that -1 is the solution. ✓₆

Example 6

Solve

$$\frac{3x - 4}{x - 2} = \frac{x}{x - 2}$$


Solution Multiplying both sides by $x - 2$ produces

$$3x - 4 = x$$

$$2x - 4 = 0 \quad \text{Subtract } x \text{ from both sides.}$$

$$2x = 4 \quad \text{Add 4 to both sides.}$$

$$x = 2. \quad \text{Divide both sides by 2.}$$

Substituting 2 for x in the original equation produces fractions with 0 denominators. Since division by 0 is not defined, $x = 2$ is an extraneous solution. So the original equation has no solution. 

Sometimes an equation with several variables must be solved for one of the variables. This process is called **solving for a specified variable**.

Example 7Solve for x : $3(ax - 5a) + 4b = 4x - 2$.**Solution** Use the distributive property to get

$$3ax - 15a + 4b = 4x - 2$$

Treat x as the variable and the other letters as constants. Get all terms with x on one side of the equation and all terms without x on the other side:


$$3ax - 4x = 15a - 4b - 2 \quad \text{Isolate terms with } x \text{ on the left.}$$

$$(3a - 4)x = 15a - 4b - 2 \quad \text{Distributive property}$$

$$x = \frac{15a - 4b - 2}{3a - 4} \quad \text{Multiply both sides by } \frac{1}{3a - 4}.$$

The final equation is solved for x , as required. 

Absolute-Value Equations

 Recall from Section 1.1 that the absolute value of a number a is either a or $-a$, whichever one is nonnegative. For instance, $|4| = 4$ and $|-7| = -(-7) = 7$.

Example 8Solve $|x| = 3$.**Solution** Since $|x|$ is either x or $-x$, the equation says that

$$x = 3 \quad \text{or} \quad -x = 3$$

$$x = -3.$$

The solutions of $|x| = 3$ are 3 and -3 .

Example 9Solve $|p - 4| = 2$.**Solution** Since $|p - 4|$ is either $p - 4$ or $-(p - 4)$, we have

$$p - 4 = 2 \quad \text{or} \quad -(p - 4) = 2$$

$$p = 6 \quad \quad \quad -p + 4 = 2$$

$$\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad -p = -2$$

$$\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad p = 2,$$

so that 6 and 2 are possible solutions. Checking them in the original equation shows that both are solutions. 

 **Checkpoint 7**

Solve each equation.

(a) $\frac{3p}{p+1} = 1 - \frac{3}{p+1}$

(b) $\frac{8y}{y-4} = \frac{32}{y-4} - 3$

 **Checkpoint 8**Solve for x .

(a) $2x - 7y = 3xk$

(b) $8(4 - x) + 6p = -5k - 11yx$

 **Checkpoint 9**

Solve each equation.

(a) $|y| = 9$

(b) $|r + 3| = 1$

(c) $|2k - 3| = 7$

Example 10 Solve $|4m - 3| = |m + 6|$.

Solution To satisfy the equation, the quantities in absolute-value bars must either be equal or be negatives of one another. That is,

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 4m - 3 = m + 6 & \text{or} & 4m - 3 = -(m + 6) \\ 3m = 9 & & 4m - 3 = -m - 6 \\ m = 3 & & 5m = -3 \\ & & m = -\frac{3}{5} \end{array}$$

Check that the solutions for the original equation are 3 and $-3/5$. 

 **Checkpoint 10**

Solve each equation.

- (a) $|r + 6| = |2r + 1|$
 (b) $|5k - 7| = |10k - 2|$

Applications

One of the main reasons for learning mathematics is to be able to use it to solve practical problems. There are no hard-and-fast rules for dealing with real-world applications, except perhaps to use common sense. However, you will find it much easier to deal with such problems if you do not try to do everything at once. After reading the problem carefully, attack it in stages, as suggested in the following guidelines.

Solving Applied Problems

- Step 1** Read the problem carefully, focusing on the facts you are given and the unknown values you are asked to find. Look up any words you do not understand. You may have to read the problem more than once, until you understand exactly what you are being asked to do.
- Step 2** Identify the unknown. (If there is more than one, choose one of them, and see Step 3 for what to do with the others.) Name the unknown with some variable that you *write down*. Many students try to skip this step. They are eager to get on with the writing of the equation. But this is an important step. If you do not know what the variable represents, how can you write a meaningful equation or interpret a result?
- Step 3** Decide on a variable expression to represent any other unknowns in the problem. For example, if x represents the width of a rectangle, and you know that the length is one more than twice the width, then *write down* the fact that the length is $1 + 2x$.
- Step 4** Draw a sketch or make a chart, if appropriate, showing the information given in the problem.
- Step 5** Using the results of Steps 1–4, write an equation that expresses a condition that must be satisfied.
- Step 6** Solve the equation.
- Step 7** Check the solution in the words of the *original problem*, not just in the equation you have written.

Example 11 **Finance** A financial manager has \$15,000 to invest for her company. She plans to invest part of the money in tax-free bonds at 5% interest and the remainder in taxable bonds at 8%. She wants to earn \$1020 per year in interest from the investments. Find the amount she should invest at each rate.

Solution

- Step 1** We are asked to find how much of the \$15,000 should be invested at 5% and how much at 8%, in order to earn the required interest.
- Step 2** Let x represent the amount to be invested at 5%.
- Step 3** After x dollars are invested, the remaining amount is $15,000 - x$ dollars, which is to be invested at 8%.
- Step 4** Interest for one year is given by rate \times amount invested. For instance, 5% of x dollars is $.05x$. The given information is summarized in the following chart.


Investment	Amount Invested	Interest Rate	Interest Earned in One Year
Tax-free bonds	x	5% = .05	$.05x$
Taxable bonds	$15,000 - x$	8% = .08	$.08(15,000 - x)$
Totals	15,000		1020

- Step 5** Because the total interest is to be \$1020, the last column of the table shows that
- $$.05x + .08(15,000 - x) = 1020.$$

- Step 6** Solve the preceding equation as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} .05x + .08(15,000 - x) &= 1020 \\ .05x + .08(15,000) - .08x &= 1020 \\ .05x + 1200 - .08x &= 1020 \\ -.03x &= -180 \\ x &= 6000. \end{aligned}$$

The manager should invest \$6000 at 5% and $\$15,000 - \$6000 = \$9000$ at 8%.

- Step 7** Check these results in the original problem. If \$6000 is invested at 5%, the interest is $.05(6000) = \$300$. If \$9000 is invested at 8%, the interest is $.08(9000) = \$720$. So the total interest is $\$300 + \$720 = \$1020$ as required 

 **Checkpoint 11**

An investor owns two pieces of property. One, worth twice as much as the other, returns 6% in annual interest, while the other returns 4%. Find the value of each piece of property if the total annual interest earned is \$8000.

Example 12 Business Spotify and Rhapsody are digital music streaming services. In 2012, *Time* magazine reported that Spotify acquired in 7 business quarters (a quarter is a 3-month period) the same number of users as Rhapsody acquired in 11 years (44 quarters). Spotify's average rate of user acquisition per quarter was 120,000 more than Rhapsody's average rate per quarter. Find the average rate of user acquisition per quarter for each company.

Solution

- Step 1** We must find Spotify's user acquisition rate and Rhapsody's user acquisition rate.
- Step 2** Let x represent Rhapsody's rate.
- Step 3** Since Spotify's rate is 120,000 users per quarter faster than Rhapsody's, its rate is $x + 120,000$.
- Step 4** In general, the number of users can be found by the formula:

$$\text{Number of users} = \text{number of quarters} \times \text{rate of users per quarter}$$

So, for Rhapsody, number of users = $44x$ and for Spotify, the number of users = $7(x + 120,000)$

We can collect these facts to make a chart, which organizes the information given in the problem.

	Quarters	Rate	Number of Users
Rhapsody	44	x	$44x$
Spotify	7	$x + 120,000$	$7(x + 120,000)$

Step 5 Because both companies obtained the *same number of users*, the equation is


$$44x = 7(x + 120,000).$$

Step 6 If we distribute the 7 through the quantity on the right side of the equation, we obtain

$$44x = 7x + 840,000$$

$$37x = 840,000 \quad \text{Add } -7x \text{ to each side.}$$

$$x \approx 22,703 \quad \text{Divide each side by 37.}$$

Step 7 Since x represents Rhapsody's rate, Rhapsody acquired, on average, 22,702 users per quarter. Spotify's rate is $x + 120,000$, or $22,702 + 120,000 = 142,702$ users per quarter. 

Checkpoint 12

In Example 12, suppose Spotify had taken 12 quarters and Rhapsody had taken 40 quarters to reach the same number of users. Assuming that Spotify acquired users at a rate 100,000 per quarter more than Rhapsody, find the average rate at which

- Rhapsody had acquired users.
- Spotify had acquired users.

Example 13 **Business** An oil company needs to fill orders for 89-octane gas, but has only 87- and 93-octane gas on hand. The octane rating is the percentage of isooctane in the standard fuel. How much of each type should be mixed together to produce 100,000 gallons of 89-octane gas?

Solution

Step 1 We must find how much 87-octane gas and how much 93-octane gas are needed for the 100,000 gallon mixture.

Step 2 Let x be the amount of 87-octane gas.

Step 3 Then $100,000 - x$ is the amount of 93-octane gas.

Step 4 We can summarize the relevant information in a chart.

Type of Gas	Quantity	% Isooctane	Amount of Isooctane
87-octane	x	87%	$.87x$
93-octane	$100,000 - x$	93%	$.93(100,000 - x)$
Mixture	100,000	89%	$.89(100,000)$

Step 5 The amount of isooctane satisfies this equation:

$$.87x + .93(100,000 - x) = .89(100,000).$$

Step 6 Solving this equation yields

$$.87x + 93,000 - .93x = .89(100,000) \quad \text{Distribute the left side.}$$

$$.87x + 93,000 - .93x = 89,000 \quad \text{Multiply on the right side.}$$

$$-.06x = -4000 \quad \text{Combine terms and add } -93,000 \text{ to each side.}$$


$$x = \frac{-4000}{-.06} \approx 66,667.$$

Step 7 So the distributor should mix 66,667 gallons of 87-octane gas with $100,000 - 66,667 = 33,333$ gallons of 93-octane gas. Then the amount of isooctane in the mixture is

$$.87(66,667) + .93(33,333)$$

$$\approx 58,000 + 31,000$$

$$= 89,000.$$

Hence, the octane rating of the mixture is $\frac{89,000}{100,000} = .89$ as required. 

Checkpoint 13

How much 89-octane gas and how much 94-octane gas are needed to produce 1500 gallons of 91-octane gas?

1.6 Exercises

Solve each equation. (See Examples 1–6.)

- $3x + 8 = 20$
- $4 - 5y = 19$
- $.6k - .3 = .5k + .4$
- $2.5 + 5.04m = 8.5 - .06m$
- $2a - 1 = 4(a + 1) + 7a + 5$
- $3(k - 2) - 6 = 4k - (3k - 1)$
- $2[x - (3 + 2x) + 9] = 3x - 8$
- $-2[4(k + 2) - 3(k + 1)] = 14 + 2k$
- $\frac{3x}{5} - \frac{4}{5}(x + 1) = 2 - \frac{3}{10}(3x - 4)$
- $\frac{4}{3}(x - 2) - \frac{1}{2} = 2\left(\frac{3}{4}x - 1\right)$
- $\frac{5y}{6} - 8 = 5 - \frac{2y}{3}$
- $\frac{x}{2} - 3 = \frac{3x}{5} + 1$
- $\frac{m}{2} - \frac{1}{m} = \frac{6m + 5}{12}$
- $-\frac{3k}{2} + \frac{9k - 5}{6} = \frac{11k + 8}{k}$
- $\frac{4}{x - 3} - \frac{8}{2x + 5} + \frac{3}{x - 3} = 0$
- $\frac{5}{2p + 3} - \frac{3}{p - 2} = \frac{4}{2p + 3}$
- $\frac{3}{2m + 4} = \frac{1}{m + 2} - 2$
- $\frac{8}{3k - 9} - \frac{5}{k - 3} = 4$

Use a calculator to solve each equation. Round your answer to the nearest hundredth. (See Example 3.)

- $9.06x + 3.59(8x - 5) = 12.07x + .5612$
- $-5.74(3.1 - 2.7p) = 1.09p + 5.2588$
- $\frac{2.63r - 8.99}{1.25} - \frac{3.90r - 1.77}{2.45} = r$
- $\frac{8.19m + 2.55}{4.34} - \frac{8.17m - 9.94}{1.04} = 4m$

Solve each equation for x . (See Example 7.)

- $4(a + x) = b - a + 2x$
- $(3a - b) - bx = a(x - 2) \quad (a \neq -b)$

$$25. 5(b - x) = 2b + ax \quad (a \neq -5)$$

$$26. bx - 2b = 2a - ax$$

Solve each equation for the specified variable. Assume that all denominators are nonzero. (See Example 7.)

- $PV = k$ for V
- $i = prt$ for p
- $V = V_0 + gt$ for g
- $S = S_0 + gt^2 + k$ for g
- $A = \frac{1}{2}(B + b)h$ for B
- $C = \frac{5}{9}(F - 32)$ for F

Solve each equation. (See Examples 8–10.)

- $|2h - 1| = 5$
- $|4m - 3| = 12$
- $|6 + 2p| = 10$
- $|-5x + 7| = 15$
- $\left|\frac{5}{r - 3}\right| = 10$
- $\left|\frac{3}{2h - 1}\right| = 4$

Solve the following applied problems.

Health According to the American Heart Association, the number y of brain neurons (in billions) that are lost in a stroke lasting x hours is given by $y = \frac{x}{8}$. Find the length of the stroke for the given number of neurons lost.

- 1,250,000,000
- 2,400,000,000

Natural Science The equation that relates Fahrenheit temperature F to Celsius temperature C is

$$C = \frac{5}{9}(F - 32).$$

Find the Fahrenheit temperature corresponding to these Celsius temperatures.

- 5
- 15
- 22
- 36

Finance The gross federal debt y (in trillions of dollars) in year x is approximated by

$$y = 1.16x + 1.76,$$

where x is the number of years after 2000. Assuming the trend continues, in what year will the federal debt be the given amount? (Data from: U.S. Office of Management and Budget.)

- \$13.36 trillion
- \$16.84 trillion
- \$19.16 trillion
- \$24.96 trillion

Health Economics The total health care expenditures E in the United States (in trillions of dollars) can be approximated by

$$E = .118x + 1.45,$$

where x is the number of years after 2000. Assuming the trend continues, determine the year in which health care expenditures

are at the given level. (Data from: U.S. Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services.)

49. \$2.63 trillion 50. \$2.866 trillion
51. \$3.338 trillion 52. \$3.574 trillion

Finance The percentage y (written as a decimal) of U.S. households who owned Roth Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs) in year x is given by the equation

$$.09(x - 2004) = 12y - 1.44.$$

Find the year in which the given percentage of U.S. households own a Roth IRA. (Data from: Proquest Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2013.)

53. 18.0% 54. 19.5%
55. 21% 56. 23.25%

Finance The total amount A (in millions of dollars) donated within a state for charitable contributions claimed on individual federal tax returns can be modeled by the function

$$A = 4.35x - 12$$

where x is the total number of returns filed (in thousands) for the state. For the given amounts A donated, determine the number of returns that were filed within the following states. (Data from: Proquest Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2013.)

57. California: $A = \$20,777$ million
58. New York: $A = \$13,732$ million
59. Texas: $A = \$13,360$ million
60. Florida: $A = \$9,596$ million

Business When a loan is paid off early, a portion of the finance charge must be returned to the borrower. By one method of calculating the finance charge (called the rule of 78), the amount of unearned interest (finance charge to be returned) is given by

$$u = f \cdot \frac{n(n+1)}{q(q+1)},$$

where u represents unearned interest, f is the original finance charge, n is the number of payments remaining when the loan is paid off, and q is the original number of payments. Find the amount of the unearned interest in each of the given cases.

61. Original finance charge = \$800, loan scheduled to run 36 months, paid off with 18 payments remaining
62. Original finance charge = \$1400, loan scheduled to run 48 months, paid off with 12 payments remaining

Business Solve the following investment problems. (See Example 11.)

63. Joe Gonzalez received \$52,000 profit from the sale of some land. He invested part at 5% interest and the rest at 4% interest. He earned a total of \$2290 interest per year. How much did he invest at 5%?
64. Weijen Luan invests \$20,000 received from an insurance settlement in two ways: some at 6% and some at 4%. Altogether, she makes \$1040 per year in interest. How much is invested at 4%?

65. Maria Martinelli bought two plots of land for a total of \$120,000. On the first plot, she made a profit of 15%. On the second, she lost 10%. Her total profit was \$5500. How much did she pay for each piece of land?
66. Suppose \$20,000 is invested at 5%. How much additional money must be invested at 4% to produce a yield of 4.8% on the entire amount invested?

Solve the given applied problems. (See Example 12.)

According to data from comScore.com, two social media sites, Tumblr.com and Pinterest.com, acquired the same number of unique visitors in 2012. Tumblr.com took 63 months to acquire these visitors while Pinterest.com took 30 months. Pinterest's rate of visitor growth was 450,000 more a month, on average, than Tumblr's average growth per month.

67. Find the average rate of growth of Tumblr.com.
68. Find the average rate of growth of Pinterest.com.
69. Approximately how many unique visitors did Tumblr.com acquire in 63 months?
70. Approximately how many unique visitors did Pinterest.com acquire in 30 months?

Natural Science Using the same assumptions about octane ratings as in Example 13, solve the following problems.

71. How many liters of 94-octane gasoline should be mixed with 200 liters of 99-octane gasoline to get a mixture that is 97-octane gasoline?
72. A service station has 92-octane and 98-octane gasoline. How many liters of each gasoline should be mixed to provide 12 liters of 96-octane gasoline for a chemistry experiment?

Solve the following applied problems.

73. **Business** A major car rental firm charges \$78 a day for a full-size car in Tampa, Florida, with unlimited mileage. Another firm offers a similar car for \$55 a day plus 22 cents per mile. How far must you drive in a day in order for the cost to be the same for both vehicles?
74. **Business** A car radiator contains 8.5 quarts of fluid, 35% of which is antifreeze. How much fluid should be drained and replaced with pure (100%) antifreeze in order that the new mixture be 65% antifreeze?

Business Massachusetts has a graduated fine system for speeding, meaning you can pay a base fine and then have more charges added on top. For example, the base fine for speeding is \$100. But that is just the start. If you are convicted of going more than 10 mph over the speed limit, add \$10 for each additional mph you were traveling over the speed limit plus 10 mph. Thus, the amount of the fine y (in dollars) for driving x miles over the speed limit (when the speed limit is 65 miles per hour) can be represented as

$$y = 10(x - 75) + 100, \quad x \geq 75.$$

(Data from: www.dmv.org.)

75. If Paul was fined \$180 for speeding, how fast was he going?
76. If Sarah was fined \$120 for speeding, how fast was she going?

Jack borrowed his father's luxury car and promised to return it with a full tank of premium gas, which costs \$3.80 per gallon. From experience, he knows that he needs 15.5 gallons. He has, however, only \$50 (and no credit card). He decides to get as much premium as possible and fill the remainder of the tank with regular gas, which costs \$3.10 per gallon.

77. How much of each type of gas should he get?

78. If he has \$53, how much of each type of gas should he get?

4. Early 2021 ($x = 2021.25$)

5. (a) 24 (b) -12

6. 1

7. Neither equation has a solution.

8. (a) $x = \frac{7y}{2 - 3k}$ (b) $x = \frac{5k + 32 + 6p}{8 - 11y}$

9. (a) 9, -9 (b) -2, -4 (c) 5, -2

10. (a) 5, -7/3 (b) -1, 3/5

11. 6% return: \$100,000; 4% return: \$50,000

12. (a) 42,857 per quarter

(b) 142,857 per quarter

13. 900 gallons of 89-octane gas; 600 gallons of 94-octane gas

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) Yes (b) No (c) No

2. (a) 8 (b) -2 (c) 2

3. (a) 8 (b) -3

1.7 Quadratic Equations

An equation that can be written in the form

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0,$$

where a , b , and c are real numbers with $a \neq 0$, is called a **quadratic equation**. For example, each of

$$2x^2 + 3x + 4 = 0, \quad x^2 = 6x - 9, \quad 3x^2 + x = 6, \quad \text{and} \quad x^2 = 5$$

is a quadratic equation. A solution of an equation that is a real number is said to be a **real solution** of the equation.

One method of solving quadratic equations is based on the following property of real numbers.

Zero-Factor Property

If a and b are real numbers, with $ab = 0$, then $a = 0$ or $b = 0$ or both.

Example 1

Solve the equation $(x - 4)(3x + 7) = 0$.

Solution By the zero-factor property, the product $(x - 4)(3x + 7)$ can equal 0 only if at least one of the factors equals 0. That is, the product equals zero only if $x - 4 = 0$ or $3x + 7 = 0$. Solving each of these equations separately will give the solutions of the original equation:

$$\begin{aligned} x - 4 = 0 & \quad \text{or} \quad 3x + 7 = 0 \\ x = 4 & \quad \text{or} \quad 3x = -7 \\ & & x = -\frac{7}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

The solutions of the equation $(x - 4)(3x + 7) = 0$ are 4 and $-7/3$. Check these solutions by substituting them into the original equation. ✓₁

✓ Checkpoint 1

Solve the following equations.

(a) $(y - 6)(y + 2) = 0$

(b) $(5k - 3)(k + 5) = 0$

(c) $(2r - 9)(3r + 5) \cdot (r + 3) = 0$

Example 2 Solve $6r^2 + 7r = 3$.**Solution** Rewrite the equation as

$$6r^2 + 7r - 3 = 0.$$

Now factor $6r^2 + 7r - 3$ to get


$$(3r - 1)(2r + 3) = 0.$$

By the zero-factor property, the product $(3r - 1)(2r + 3)$ can equal 0 only if

$$3r - 1 = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad 2r + 3 = 0.$$

Solving each of these equations separately gives the solutions of the original equation:

$$\begin{aligned} 3r &= 1 & \text{or} & & 2r &= -3 \\ r &= \frac{1}{3} & & & r &= -\frac{3}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

Verify that both $1/3$ and $-3/2$ are solutions by substituting them into the original equation. An equation such as $x^2 = 5$ has two solutions: $\sqrt{5}$ and $-\sqrt{5}$. This fact is true in general. **Checkpoint 2**

Solve each equation by factoring.

- (a) $y^2 + 3y = 10$
- (b) $2r^2 + 9r = 5$
- (c) $4k^2 = 9k$

Square-Root PropertyIf $b > 0$, then the solutions of $x^2 = b$ are \sqrt{b} and $-\sqrt{b}$.The two solutions are sometimes abbreviated $\pm\sqrt{b}$.**Example 3** Solve each equation.

(a) $m^2 = 17$

Solution By the square-root property, the solutions are $\sqrt{17}$ and $-\sqrt{17}$, abbreviated $\pm\sqrt{17}$.

(b) $(y - 4)^2 = 11$

Solution Use a generalization of the square-root property, we work as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} (y - 4)^2 &= 11 \\ y - 4 &= \sqrt{11} & \text{or} & & y - 4 &= -\sqrt{11} \\ y &= 4 + \sqrt{11} & & & y &= 4 - \sqrt{11}. \end{aligned}$$

Abbreviate the solutions as $4 \pm \sqrt{11}$. 

When a quadratic equation cannot be easily factored, it can be solved by using the following formula, which you should memorize.*

 **Checkpoint 3**

Solve each equation by using the square-root property.

- (a) $p^2 = 21$
- (b) $(m + 7)^2 = 15$
- (c) $(2k - 3)^2 = 5$

Quadratic FormulaThe solutions of the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, where $a \neq 0$, are given by

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}.$$

*A proof of the quadratic formula can be found in many College Algebra books.

CAUTION When using the quadratic formula, remember that the equation must be in the form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$. Also, notice that the fraction bar in the quadratic formula extends under *both* terms in the numerator. Be sure to add $-b$ to $\pm\sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}$ *before* dividing by $2a$.


Example 4 Solve $x^2 + 1 = 4x$.

Solution First add $-4x$ to both sides to get 0 alone on the right side:

$$x^2 - 4x + 1 = 0.$$

Now identify the values of a , b , and c . Here, $a = 1$, $b = -4$, and $c = 1$. Substitute these numbers into the quadratic formula to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{-(-4) \pm \sqrt{(-4)^2 - 4(1)(1)}}{2(1)} \\ &= \frac{4 \pm \sqrt{16 - 4}}{2} \\ &= \frac{4 \pm \sqrt{12}}{2} \\ &= \frac{4 \pm 2\sqrt{3}}{2} && \sqrt{12} = \sqrt{4 \cdot 3} = \sqrt{4} \cdot \sqrt{3} = 2\sqrt{3} \\ &= \frac{2(2 \pm \sqrt{3})}{2} && \text{Factor } 4 \pm 2\sqrt{3}. \\ x &= 2 \pm \sqrt{3}. && \text{Cancel 2.} \end{aligned}$$

The \pm sign represents the two solutions of the equation. First use $+$ and then use $-$ to find each of the solutions: $2 + \sqrt{3}$ and $2 - \sqrt{3}$. 

✓ Checkpoint 4

Use the quadratic formula to solve each equation.

- (a) $x^2 - 2x = 2$
 (b) $u^2 - 6u + 4 = 0$

$2 + \sqrt{3}$	3.732050808
$2 - \sqrt{3}$	.2679491924

Figure 1.13

Example 4 shows that the quadratic formula produces exact solutions. In many real-world applications, however, you must use a calculator to find decimal approximations of the solutions. The approximate solutions in Example 4 are

$$x = 2 + \sqrt{3} \approx 3.732050808 \quad \text{and} \quad x = 2 - \sqrt{3} \approx .2679491924,$$

as shown in Figure 1.13.

Example 5 **Business** Many companies in recent years saw their net earnings follow a parabolic pattern because of the recession that began in 2008. One such example is Motorola Corporation. The net earnings for Motorola Corporation E (in millions of dollars) can be approximated by the function

$$E = 545.9x^2 - 10,408x + 48,085 \quad (6 \leq x \leq 12),$$

where $x = 6$ corresponds to the year 2006. Use the quadratic formula and a calculator to find the year in which net earnings recovered to \$1799 million. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

Solution To find the year x , solve the equation above when $E = 1799$:

$$\begin{aligned} 545.9x^2 - 10,408x + 48,085 &= E \\ 545.9x^2 - 10,408x + 48,085 &= 1799 && \text{Substitute } E = 1799. \\ 545.9x^2 - 10,408x + 46,286 &= 0 && \text{Subtract 1799 from both sides.} \end{aligned}$$

To apply the quadratic formula, first compute the radical part:

$$\sqrt{b^2 - 4ac} = \sqrt{(10,408)^2 - 4(545.9)(46,286)} = \sqrt{7,256,354.4}.$$

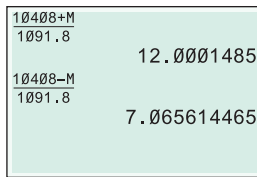


Figure 1.14

✓ Checkpoint 5

Use the equation of Example 5 to find the year in which net earnings were first $-\$140$ million dollars.

TECHNOLOGY TIP

You can approximate the solutions of quadratic equations on a graphing calculator by using a quadratic formula program (see the Program Appendix) or using a built-in quadratic equation solver if your calculator has one. Then you need only enter the values of the coefficients a , b , and c to obtain the approximate solutions.

✓ Checkpoint 6

Solve each equation.

- (a) $9k^2 - 6k + 1 = 0$
- (b) $4m^2 + 28m + 49 = 0$
- (c) $2x^2 - 5x + 5 = 0$

✓ Checkpoint 7

Use the discriminant to determine the number of real solutions of each equation.

- (a) $x^2 + 8x + 3 = 0$
- (b) $2x^2 + x + 3 = 0$
- (c) $x^2 - 194x + 9409 = 0$

Then store $\sqrt{7,256,354.4}$ (which we denote by M) in the calculator memory. (Check your instruction manual for how to store and recall numbers.) By the quadratic formula, the exact solutions of the equation are

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a} = \frac{-b \pm M}{2a} = \frac{-(-10,408) \pm M}{2(545.9)} = \frac{10,408 \pm M}{1091.8}.$$

Figure 1.14 shows that the approximate solutions are

$$\frac{10,408 + M}{1091.8} \approx 12.0 \quad \frac{10,408 - M}{1091.8} \approx 7.1.$$

Since we were told that net earnings had recovered, we use the solution later in time and $x = 12$ corresponds to 2012. ✓₅

Example 6 Solve $9x^2 - 30x + 25 = 0$.

Solution Applying the quadratic formula with $a = 9$, $b = -30$, and $c = 25$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{-(-30) \pm \sqrt{(-30)^2 - 4(9)(25)}}{2(9)} \\ &= \frac{30 \pm \sqrt{900 - 900}}{18} = \frac{30 \pm 0}{18} = \frac{30}{18} = \frac{5}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the given equation has only one real solution. The fact that the solution is a rational number indicates that this equation could have been solved by factoring.

Example 7 Solve $x^2 - 6x + 10 = 0$.

Solution Apply the quadratic formula with $a = 1$, $b = -6$, and $c = 10$:

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{-(-6) \pm \sqrt{(-6)^2 - 4(1)(10)}}{2(1)} \\ &= \frac{6 \pm \sqrt{36 - 40}}{2} \\ &= \frac{6 \pm \sqrt{-4}}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

Since no negative number has a square root in the real-number system, $\sqrt{-4}$ is not a real number. Hence, the equation has no real solutions. ✓₆

Examples 4–7 show that the number of solutions of the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ is determined by $b^2 - 4ac$, the quantity under the radical, which is called the **discriminant** of the equation. ✓₇

The Discriminant

The equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ has either two, one, or no real solutions.

If $b^2 - 4ac > 0$, there are two real solutions. (Examples 4 and 5)

If $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, there is one real solution. (Example 6)

If $b^2 - 4ac < 0$, there are no real solutions. (Example 7)

Applications

Quadratic equations arise in a variety of settings, as illustrated in the next set of examples. Example 8 depends on the following useful fact from geometry.

The Pythagorean Theorem

In a right triangle with legs of lengths a and b and hypotenuse of length c ,

$$a^2 + b^2 = c^2.$$

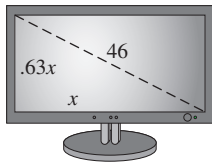
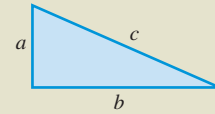


Figure 1.15

Example 8 Business The size of a flat screen television is the diagonal measurement of its screen. The height of the screen is approximately 63% of its width. Kathy claims that John's 39-inch flat screen has only half of the viewing area that her 46-inch flat screen television has. Is Kathy right?

Solution First, find the area of Kathy's screen. Let x be its width. Then its height is 63% of x (that is, $.63x$, as shown in Figure 1.15). By the Pythagorean theorem,

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + (.63x)^2 &= 46^2 \\ x^2 + .3969x^2 &= 2116 && \text{Expand } (.63x)^2 \text{ and } 46^2. \\ (1 + .3969)x^2 &= 2116 && \text{Distributive property} \\ 1.3969x^2 &= 2116 \\ x^2 &= 1514.78 && \text{Divide both sides by } 1.3969. \\ x &= \pm\sqrt{1514.78} && \text{Square-root property} \\ x &\approx \pm 38.9. \end{aligned}$$

We can ignore the negative solution, since x is a width. Thus, the width is 38.9 inches and the height is $.63x = .63(38.9) \approx 24.5$ inches, so the area is

$$\text{Area} = \text{width} \times \text{height} = 38.9 \times 24.5 = 953.1 \text{ square inches.}$$

Next we find the area of John's television in a similar manner. Let y be the width of John's television. Then its height is 63% of y . By the Pythagorean theorem,

$$\begin{aligned} y^2 + (.63y)^2 &= 39^2 \\ y^2 + .3969y^2 &= 1521 && \text{Expand } (.63y)^2 \text{ and } 39^2. \\ (1 + .3969)y^2 &= 1521 && \text{Distributive property} \\ 1.3969y^2 &= 1521 \\ y^2 &= 1088.84 && \text{Divide both sides by } 1.3969. \\ y &= \pm\sqrt{1088.84} && \text{Square-root property} \\ y &\approx \pm 33.0. \end{aligned}$$

Again, we can ignore the negative solution, since y is a width. Thus, the width is 33.0 inches and the height is $.63y = .63(33.0) \approx 20.8$ inches, so the area is

$$\text{Area} = \text{width} \times \text{height} = 33.0 \times 20.8 = 686.4 \text{ square inches.}$$

Since half of 953.1 square inches (the area of Kathy's television) is 476.55 square inches, Kathy is wrong because John's viewing area is 686.4 square inches. 8

✓ Checkpoint 8

If John's television was only a 26-inch flat screen television, would Kathy have been right?

Example 9 Business A landscape architect wants to make an exposed gravel border of uniform width around a small shed behind a company plant. The shed is 10 feet by 6 feet. He has enough gravel to cover 36 square feet. How wide should the border be?

Solution A sketch of the shed with border is given in Figure 1.16. Let x represent the width of the border. Then the width of the large rectangle is $6 + 2x$, and its length is $10 + 2x$.

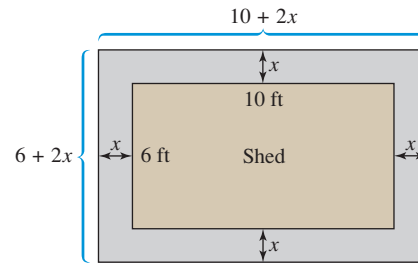


Figure 1.16

We must write an equation relating the given areas and dimensions. The area of the large rectangle is $(6 + 2x)(10 + 2x)$. The area occupied by the shed is $6 \cdot 10 = 60$. The area of the border is found by subtracting the area of the shed from the area of the large rectangle. This difference should be 36 square feet, giving the equation

$$(6 + 2x)(10 + 2x) - 60 = 36.$$

Solve this equation with the following sequence of steps:

$$\begin{aligned} 60 + 32x + 4x^2 - 60 &= 36 && \text{Multiply out left side.} \\ 4x^2 + 32x - 36 &= 0 && \text{Simplify.} \\ x^2 + 8x - 9 &= 0 && \text{Divide both sides by 4.} \\ (x + 9)(x - 1) &= 0 && \text{Factor.} \\ x + 9 = 0 &\quad \text{or} \quad x - 1 = 0 && \text{Zero-factor property.} \\ x = -9 &\quad \text{or} \quad x = 1. \end{aligned}$$

The number -9 cannot be the width of the border, so the solution is to make the border 1 foot wide. 9

Checkpoint 9

The length of a picture is 2 inches more than the width. It is mounted on a mat that extends 2 inches beyond the picture on all sides. What are the dimensions of the picture if the area of the mat is 99 square inches?

Example 10 Physical Science If an object is thrown upward, dropped, or thrown downward and travels in a straight line subject only to gravity (with wind resistance ignored), the height h of the object above the ground (in feet) after t seconds is given by

$$h = -16t^2 + v_0t + h_0,$$

where h_0 is the height of the object when $t = 0$ and v_0 is the initial velocity at time $t = 0$. The value of v_0 is taken to be positive if the object moves upward and negative if it moves downward. Suppose that a golf ball is thrown downward from the top of a 625-foot-high building with an initial velocity of 65 feet per second. How long does it take to reach the ground?

Solution In this case, $h_0 = 625$ (the height of the building) and $v_0 = -65$ (negative because the ball is thrown downward). The object is on the ground when $h = 0$, so we must solve the equation

$$\begin{aligned} h &= -16t^2 + v_0t + h_0 \\ 0 &= -16t^2 - 65t + 625. \quad \text{Let } h = 0, v_0 = -65, \text{ and } h_0 = 625. \end{aligned}$$

Using the quadratic formula and a calculator, we see that

$$t = \frac{-(-65) \pm \sqrt{(-65)^2 - 4(-16)(625)}}{2(-16)} = \frac{65 \pm \sqrt{44,225}}{-32} \approx \begin{cases} -8.60 \\ \text{or} \\ 4.54 \end{cases}$$

Only the positive answer makes sense in this case. So it takes about 4.54 seconds for the ball to reach the ground.

In some applications, it may be necessary to solve an equation in several variables for a specific variable.

Example 11 Solve $v = mx^2 + x$ for x . (Assume that m and v are positive.)

Solution The equation is quadratic in x because of the x^2 term. Before we use the quadratic formula, we write the equation in standard form:

$$v = mx^2 + x$$

$$0 = mx^2 + x - v.$$

Let $a = m$, $b = 1$, and $c = -v$. Then the quadratic formula gives

$$x = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{1^2 - 4(m)(-v)}}{2m}$$

$$x = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{1 + 4mv}}{2m}. \quad \checkmark_{10}$$

✓ Checkpoint 10

Solve each of the given equations for the indicated variable. Assume that all variables are positive.

(a) $k = mp^2 - bp$ for p

(b) $r = \frac{APk^2}{3}$ for k

1.7 Exercises

Use factoring to solve each equation. (See Examples 1 and 2.)

1. $(x + 4)(x - 14) = 0$
2. $(p - 16)(p - 5) = 0$
3. $x(x + 6) = 0$
4. $x^2 - 2x = 0$
5. $2z^2 = 4z$
6. $x^2 - 64 = 0$
7. $y^2 + 15y + 56 = 0$
8. $k^2 - 4k - 5 = 0$
9. $2x^2 = 7x - 3$
10. $2 = 15z^2 + z$
11. $6r^2 + r = 1$
12. $3y^2 = 16y - 5$
13. $2m^2 + 20 = 13m$
14. $6a^2 + 17a + 12 = 0$
15. $m(m + 7) = -10$
16. $z(2z + 7) = 4$
17. $9x^2 - 16 = 0$
18. $36y^2 - 49 = 0$
19. $16x^2 - 16x = 0$
20. $12y^2 - 48y = 0$

Solve each equation by using the square-root property. (See Example 3.)

21. $(r - 2)^2 = 7$
22. $(b + 4)^2 = 27$
23. $(4x - 1)^2 = 20$
24. $(3t + 5)^2 = 11$

Use the quadratic formula to solve each equation. If the solutions involve square roots, give both the exact and approximate solutions. (See Examples 4–7.)

25. $2x^2 + 7x + 1 = 0$
26. $3x^2 - x - 7 = 0$
27. $4k^2 + 2k = 1$
28. $r^2 = 3r + 5$
29. $5y^2 + 5y = 2$
30. $2z^2 + 3 = 8z$
31. $6x^2 + 6x + 4 = 0$
32. $3a^2 - 2a + 2 = 0$
33. $2r^2 + 3r - 5 = 0$
34. $8x^2 = 8x - 3$
35. $2x^2 - 7x + 30 = 0$
36. $3k^2 + k = 6$
37. $1 + \frac{7}{2a} = \frac{15}{2a^2}$
38. $5 - \frac{4}{k} - \frac{1}{k^2} = 0$

Use the discriminant to determine the number of real solutions of each equation. You need not solve the equations.

39. $25t^2 + 49 = 70t$
40. $9z^2 - 12z = 1$
41. $13x^2 + 24x - 5 = 0$
42. $20x^2 + 19x + 5 = 0$

Use a calculator and the quadratic formula to find approximate solutions of each equation. (See Example 5.)

43. $4.42x^2 - 10.14x + 3.79 = 0$
44. $3x^2 - 82.74x + 570.4923 = 0$
45. $7.63x^2 + 2.79x = 5.32$
46. $8.06x^2 + 25.8726x = 25.047256$

Solve the following problems. (See Example 3.)

47. **Physical Science** According to the Federal Aviation Administration, the maximum recommended taxiing speed x (in miles per hour) for a plane on a curved runway exit is given by $R = .5x^2$, where R is the radius of the curve (in feet). Find the maximum taxiing speed for planes on such exits when the radius of the exit is
 - (a) 450 ft
 - (b) 615 ft
 - (c) 970 ft
48. **Social Science** The enrollment E in public colleges and universities (in millions) is approximated by $E = .011x^2 + 10.7$ where x is the number of years since 1990. Find the year when enrollment is the following. (Data from: ProQuest Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2013.)
 - (a) 14.7 million
 - (b) 17.6 million
49. **Social Science** The number of traffic fatalities F (in thousands) where a driver involved in the crash had a blood alcohol level of .08 or higher can be approximated by the function

$$F = -.079x^2 + .46x + 13.3 \quad (0 \leq x \leq 10),$$
 where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. Determine in what year the number of fatalities is approximately the given number. (Data from: National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.)
 - (a) 12,600
 - (b) 11,000

50. **Finance** The total assets A of private and public pension funds (in trillions of dollars) can be approximated by the function

$$A = .237x^2 - 3.96x + 28.2 \quad (6 \leq x \leq 11),$$

where $x = 6$ corresponds to the year 2006. (Data from: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.)

- (a) What were the assets in 2008?
 (b) What year after 2008 produced \$12.3 trillion in assets?

51. **Finance** The assets A of public pension funds (in trillions of dollars) can be approximated by the function

$$A = .169x^2 - 2.85x + 19.6 \quad (6 \leq x \leq 11),$$

where $x = 6$ corresponds to the year 2006. (Data from: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.)

- (a) What were the assets in 2009?
 (b) What year before 2008 produced \$7.9 trillion in assets?

52. **Business** The net income for Apple A (in billions) can be approximated by the function

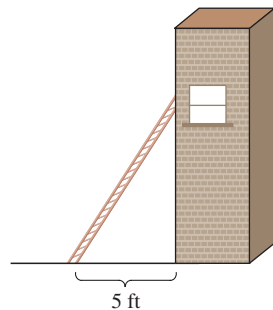
$$A = .877x^2 - 9.33x + 23.4 \quad (6 \leq x \leq 12),$$

where $x = 6$ corresponds to 2006. Find the year in which net income was the following. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

- (a) \$17.8 billion (b) \$37.7 billion

Solve the following problems. (See Examples 8 and 9).

53. **Physical Science** A 13-foot-long ladder leans on a wall, as shown in the accompanying figure. The bottom of the ladder is 5 feet from the wall. If the bottom is pulled out 2 feet farther from the wall, how far does the top of the ladder move down the wall? [Hint: Draw pictures of the right triangle formed by the ladder, the ground, and the wall before and after the ladder is moved. In each case, use the Pythagorean theorem to find the distance from the top of the ladder to the ground.]



54. **Physical Science** A 15-foot-long pole leans against a wall. The bottom is 9 feet from the wall. How much farther should the bottom be pulled away from the wall so that the top moves the same amount down the wall?
55. **Physical Science** Two trains leave the same city at the same time, one going north and the other east. The eastbound train travels 20 mph faster than the northbound one. After 5 hours, the trains are 300 miles apart. Determine the speed of each train, using the following steps.
- (a) Let x denote the speed of the northbound train. Express the speed of the eastbound train in terms of x .
 (b) Write expressions that give the distance traveled by each train after 5 hours.

- (c) Use part (b) and the fact that the trains are 300 miles apart after 5 hours to write an equation. (A diagram of the situation may help.)
 (d) Solve the equation and determine the speeds of the trains.

56. **Physical Science** Chris and Josh have received walkie-talkies for Christmas. If they leave from the same point at the same time, Chris walking north at 2.5 mph and Josh walking east at 3 mph, how long will they be able to talk to each other if the range of the walkie-talkies is 4 miles? Round your answer to the nearest minute.

57. **Physical Science** An ecology center wants to set up an experimental garden. It has 300 meters of fencing to enclose a rectangular area of 5000 square meters. Find the length and width of the rectangle as follows.

- (a) Let $x =$ the length and write an expression for the width.
 (b) Write an equation relating the length, width, and area, using the result of part (a).
 (c) Solve the problem.

58. **Business** A landscape architect has included a rectangular flower bed measuring 9 feet by 5 feet in her plans for a new building. She wants to use two colors of flowers in the bed, one in the center and the other for a border of the same width on all four sides. If she can get just enough plants to cover 24 square feet for the border, how wide can the border be?

59. **Physical Science** Joan wants to buy a rug for a room that is 12 feet by 15 feet. She wants to leave a uniform strip of floor around the rug. She can afford 108 square feet of carpeting. What dimensions should the rug have?

60. **Physical Science** In 2012, Dario Franchitti won the 500-mile Indianapolis 500 race. His speed (rate) was, on average, 92 miles per hour faster than that of the 1911 winner, Ray Harroun. Franchitti completed the race in 3.72 hours less time than Harroun. Find Harroun's and Franchitti's rates to the nearest tenth.

Physical Science Use the height formula in Example 10 to work the given problems. Note that an object that is dropped (rather than thrown downward) has initial velocity $v_0 = 0$.

61. How long does it take a baseball to reach the ground if it is dropped from the top of a 625-foot-high building? Compare the answer with that in Example 10.
62. After the baseball in Exercise 61 is dropped, how long does it take for the ball to fall 196 feet? (Hint: How high is the ball at that time?)
63. You are standing on a cliff that is 200 feet high. How long will it take a rock to reach the ground if
- (a) you drop it?
 (b) you throw it downward at an initial velocity of 40 feet per second?
 (c) How far does the rock fall in 2 seconds if you throw it downward with an initial velocity of 40 feet per second?
64. A rocket is fired straight up from ground level with an initial velocity of 800 feet per second.
- (a) How long does it take the rocket to rise 3200 feet?
 (b) When will the rocket hit the ground?

65. A ball is thrown upward from ground level with an initial velocity of 64 ft per second. In how many seconds will the ball reach the given height?

- (a) 64 ft (b) 39 ft
(c) Why are two answers possible in part (b)?

66. **Physical Science** A ball is thrown upward from ground level with an initial velocity of 100 feet per second. In how many seconds will the ball reach the given height?

- (a) 50 ft (b) 35 ft

Solve each of the given equations for the indicated variable. Assume that all denominators are nonzero and that all variables represent positive real numbers. (See Example 11.)

67. $S = \frac{1}{2}gt^2$ for t

68. $a = \pi r^2$ for r

69. $L = \frac{d^4k}{h^2}$ for h

70. $F = \frac{kMv^2}{r}$ for v

71. $P = \frac{E^2R}{(r + R)^2}$ for R

72. $S = 2\pi rh + 2\pi r^2$ for r

73. Solve the equation $z^4 - 2z^2 = 15$ as follows.

- (a) Let $x = z^2$ and write the equation in terms of x .
(b) Solve the new equation for x .
(c) Set z^2 equal to each positive answer in part (b) and solve the resulting equation.

Solve each of the given equations. (See Exercise 73.)

74. $6p^4 = p^2 + 2$ 75. $2q^4 + 3q^2 - 9 = 0$

76. $4a^4 = 2 - 7a^2$ 77. $z^4 - 3z^2 - 1 = 0$

78. $2r^4 - r^2 - 5 = 0$

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) 6, -2 (b) 3/5, -5 (c) 9/2, -5/3, -3
2. (a) 2, -5 (b) 1/2, -5 (c) 9/4, 0
3. (a) $\pm\sqrt{21}$ (b) $-7 \pm \sqrt{15}$ (c) $(3 \pm \sqrt{5})/2$
4. (a) $x = 1 + \sqrt{3}$ or $1 - \sqrt{3}$
(b) $u = 3 + \sqrt{5}$ or $3 - \sqrt{5}$
5. Late 2007
6. (a) 1/3 (b) -7/2 (c) No real solutions
7. (a) 2 (b) 0 (c) 1
8. Yes, area = 304.92 sq. in.
9. 5 inches by 7 inches
10. (a) $p = \frac{b \pm \sqrt{b^2 + 4mk}}{2m}$
(b) $k = \pm \sqrt{\frac{3r}{AP}}$ or $\frac{\pm \sqrt{3rAP}}{AP}$

CHAPTER 1 Summary and Review

Key Terms and Symbols

- 1.1** \approx is approximately equal to
 π pi
 $|a|$ absolute value of a
real number
natural (counting) number
whole number
integer
rational number
irrational number
properties of real numbers
order of operations
square roots
number line
interval
interval notation
absolute value
- 1.2** a^n a to the power n
exponent or power

- multiplication with exponents
power of a power rule
zero exponent
base
polynomial
variable
coefficient
term
constant term
degree of a polynomial
zero polynomial
leading coefficient
quadratics
cubics
like terms
FOIL
revenue
fixed cost

- variable cost
profit
- 1.3** factor
factoring
greatest common factor
difference of squares
perfect squares
sum and difference of cubes
- 1.4** rational expression
cancellation property
operations with rational expressions
complex fraction
- 1.5** $a^{1/n}$ n th root of a
 \sqrt{a} square root of a
 $\sqrt[n]{a}$ n th root of a
properties of exponents
radical
radicand

- index
rationalizing the denominator
rationalizing the numerator
- 1.6** first-degree equation
solution of an equation
properties of equality
extraneous solution
solving for a specified variable
absolute-value equations
solving applied problems
- 1.7** quadratic equation
real solution
zero-factor property
square-root property
quadratic formula
discriminant
Pythagorean theorem

Chapter 1 Key Concepts

Factoring

$$x^2 + 2xy + y^2 = (x + y)^2$$

$$x^3 - y^3 = (x - y)(x^2 + xy + y^2)$$

$$x^2 - 2xy + y^2 = (x - y)^2$$

$$x^3 + y^3 = (x + y)(x^2 - xy + y^2)$$

$$x^2 - y^2 = (x + y)(x - y)$$

Properties of Radicals

Let a and b be real numbers, n be a positive integer, and m be any integer for which the given relationships exist. Then

$$a^{m/n} = \sqrt[n]{a^m} = (\sqrt[n]{a})^m;$$

$$\sqrt[n]{a^n} = |a| \text{ if } n \text{ is even;}$$

$$\sqrt[n]{a^n} = a \text{ if } n \text{ is odd;}$$

$$\sqrt[n]{a} \cdot \sqrt[n]{b} = \sqrt[n]{ab};$$

$$\frac{\sqrt[n]{a}}{\sqrt[n]{b}} = \sqrt[n]{\frac{a}{b}} \quad (b \neq 0).$$

Properties of Exponents

Let a , b , r , and s be any real numbers for which the following exist. Then

$$a^{-r} = \frac{1}{a^r}$$

$$a^0 = 1$$

$$\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^r = \frac{a^r}{b^r}$$

$$a^r \cdot a^s = a^{r+s}$$

$$(a^r)^s = a^{rs}$$

$$a^{1/r} = \sqrt[r]{a}$$

$$\frac{a^r}{a^s} = a^{r-s}$$

$$(ab)^r = a^r b^r$$

$$\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^{-r} = \left(\frac{b}{a}\right)^r$$

Absolute Value

Assume that a and b are real numbers with $b > 0$.

The solutions of $|a| = b$ or $|a| = |b|$ are $a = b$ or $a = -b$.

Quadratic Equations

Facts needed to solve quadratic equations (in which a , b , and c are real numbers):

Factoring If $ab = 0$, then $a = 0$ or $b = 0$ or both.

Square-Root Property If $b > 0$, then the solutions of $x^2 = b$ are \sqrt{b} and $-\sqrt{b}$.

Quadratic Formula The solutions of $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ (with $a \neq 0$) are

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}.$$

Discriminant There are two real solutions of $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ if $b^2 - 4ac > 0$, one real solution if $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, and no real solutions if $b^2 - 4ac < 0$.

Chapter 1 Review Exercises

Name the numbers from the list -12 , -6 , $-9/10$, $-\sqrt{7}$, $-\sqrt{4}$, 0 , $1/8$, $\pi/4$, 6 , and $\sqrt{11}$ that are

- whole numbers
- integers
- rational numbers
- irrational numbers

Identify the properties of real numbers that are illustrated in each of the following expressions.

- $9[(-3)4] = 9[4(-3)]$
- $7(4 + 5) = (4 + 5)7$
- $6(x + y - 3) = 6x + 6y + 6(-3)$
- $11 + (5 + 3) = (11 + 5) + 3$

Express each statement in symbols.

- x is at least 9.
- x is the greatest integer function.

Write the following numbers in numerical order from smallest to largest.

- $|6 - 4|$, $-|-2|$, $|8 + 1|$, $-|3 - (-2)|$
- $\sqrt{7}$, $-\sqrt{8}$, $-|\sqrt{16}|$, $|\sqrt{12}|$

Write the following without absolute-value bars.

- $7 - |-8|$
- $|-3| - |-9 + 6|$

Graph each of the following on a number line.

- $x \geq -3$
- $-4 < x \leq 6$

Use the order of operations to simplify each of the following.

- $\frac{-9 + (-6)(-3) \div 9}{6 - (-3)}$
- $\frac{20 \div 4 \cdot 2 \div 5 - 1}{-9 - (-3) - 12 \div 3}$

Perform each of the indicated operations.

- $(3x^4 - x^2 + 5x) - (-x^4 + 3x^2 - 6x)$
- $(-8y^3 + 8y^2 - 5y) - (2y^3 + 4y^2 - 10)$
- $(5k - 2h)(5k + 2h)$
- $(2r - 5y)(2r + 5y)$
- $(3x + 4y)^2$
- $(2a - 5b)^2$

Factor each of the following as completely as possible.

- $2kh^2 - 4kh + 5k$
- $2m^2n^2 + 6mn^2 + 16n^2$
- $5a^4 + 12a^3 + 4a^2$
- $24x^3 + 4x^2 - 4x$
- $144p^2 - 169q^2$
- $\frac{x^2}{81} - \frac{y^2}{196}$
- $27y^3 - 1$
- $125a^3 + 216$

Perform each operation.

33. $\frac{3x}{5} \cdot \frac{45x}{12}$

34. $\frac{5k^2}{24} - \frac{70k}{36}$

35. $\frac{c^2 - 3c + 2}{2c(c - 1)} \div \frac{c - 2}{8c}$

36. $\frac{p^3 - 2p^2 - 8p}{3p(p^2 - 16)} \div \frac{p^2 + 4p + 4}{9p^2}$

37. $\frac{2m^2 - 4m + 2}{m^2 - 1} \div \frac{6m + 18}{m^2 + 2m - 3}$

38. $\frac{x^2 + 6x + 5}{4(x^2 + 1)} \cdot \frac{2x(x + 1)}{x^2 - 25}$

Simplify each of the given expressions. Write all answers without negative exponents. Assume that all variables represent positive real numbers.

39. 5^{-3}

40. 10^{-2}

41. -8^0

42. $\left(-\frac{5}{6}\right)^{-2}$

43. $4^6 \cdot 4^{-3}$

44. $7^{-5} \cdot 7^{-2}$

45. $\frac{8^{-5}}{8^{-4}}$

46. $\frac{6^{-3}}{6^4}$

47. $5^{-1} + 2^{-1}$

48. $5^{-2} + 5^{-1}$

49. $\frac{5^{1/3} \cdot 5^{1/2}}{5^{3/2}}$

50. $\frac{2^{3/4} \cdot 2^{-1/2}}{2^{1/4}}$

51. $(3a^2)^{1/2} \cdot (3^2a)^{3/2}$

52. $(4p)^{2/3} \cdot (2p^3)^{3/2}$

Simplify each of the following expressions.

53. $\sqrt[3]{27}$

54. $\sqrt[5]{-243}$

55. $\sqrt[3]{54p^3q^5}$

56. $\sqrt[4]{64a^5b^3}$

57. $3\sqrt{3} - 12\sqrt{12}$

58. $8\sqrt{7} + 2\sqrt{63}$

Rationalize each denominator.

59. $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{1 + \sqrt{2}}$

60. $\frac{4 + \sqrt{2}}{4 - \sqrt{5}}$

Solve each equation.

61. $3x - 4(x - 2) = 2x + 9$

62. $\frac{2k}{k^2 - 1} = 3 - \frac{3k}{k + 1}$

63. $\frac{2m}{m - 3} = \frac{6}{m - 3} + 4$

64. $\frac{15}{k + 5} = 4 - \frac{3k}{k + 5}$

Solve for x .

65. $8ax - 3 = 2x$

66. $b^2x - 2x = 4b^2$

Solve each equation.

67. $\left|\frac{2 - y}{5}\right| = 8$

68. $|4k + 1| = |6k - 3|$

Find all real solutions of each equation.

69. $(b + 7)^2 = 5$

70. $(2p + 1)^2 = 7$

71. $2p^2 + 3p = 2$

72. $2x^2 + 8x - 16 = 0$

73. $2q^2 - 11q = 21$

74. $3x^2 + 2x = 16$

75. $6k^4 + k^2 = 1$

76. $21p^4 = 2 + p^2$

Solve each equation for the specified variable.

77. $p = \frac{E^2R}{(r + R)^2}$ for r

78. $p = \frac{E^2R}{(r + R)^2}$ for E

79. $A = P\left(1 + \frac{R}{100}\right)^n$ for R

80. Find the expression $K = \frac{2.303}{t} \times \left(\frac{1}{1 - x}\right)$; for x

Work these problems.

81. **Physical Science** A ball is thrown directly upward from the edge of a cliff in such a way that t seconds later it is $s = -16t^2 + 96t + 144$ feet above the ground at the base of the cliff. How high is the cliff?

82. **Finance** The market value of a share changes from \$120 per share to \$190 per share in a year. What is the percentage change in the market value of the share?

83. **Business** The advertisement of an electronics shop says, "Get a discount of 25% on any item by making cash payments." Kim paid \$960 for a washing machine. What was the original price of the washing machine?

84. **Business** Business The price of sugar increases by 15% in one financial year (2013–2014). If one kilogram of sugar is priced at \$20 at the beginning of 2013, what will be its price at the end of the year?

85. **Finance** The amount of outlays O of the U.S. government per year (in trillions of dollars) can be approximated by the function

$$O = .2x + 1.5,$$

where $x = 6$ corresponds to the year 2006. Find the year in which the outlays are the following. (Data from: U.S. Office of Management and Budget.)

(a) \$3.3 trillion

(b) \$3.9 trillion

86. **Business** Estimated revenue R (in billions of dollars) from the general newspaper industry can be approximated by the function

$$R = -3.6x + 64.4,$$

where $x = 6$ corresponds to the year 2006. In what year was revenue \$28.4 billion? (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

87. **Business** Suppose the total cost (in dollars) of manufacturing q units of laptops is given by $C(q) = q^4 - 10q^2 + 300q + 800$.

(a) Compute the cost of manufacturing 25 units.

(b) Compute the cost of manufacturing the 25th unit.

88. **Business** The municipal corporation of a city has constructed a new parking zone. The charge for parking is \$50 per day. It also offers a monthly membership of \$500 at \$20 per day. A citizen parks his car for x days in the parking zone.

(a) Define the cost function for both the cases.

(b) If $x =$ one month, estimate the cost for a member, and for a nonmember.

(c) For what value of x is the membership plan better?

89. **Physical Science** A ball is tossed straight up at time $t = 0$, with an initial velocity of 128 feet per second. The velocity the ball will attain after t seconds is given by $v = 128 - 32t$.
- In what direction is the ball travelling after 5 seconds?
 - At what time will the ball attain its maximum height?
90. **Business** The part of its budget (in thousands of dollars) that a multinational corporation spends on a research and training program is expressed by $R = 4.023 \times x^{2.3}$; $x \geq 0$ where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2005.
- Find the amount that the multinational corporation spent in 2008.
 - Find the amount that the multinational corporation will spend in 2014.
91. **Health** The students of the University of Delhi conducted a survey on people suffering from cancer. According to it, the number of cancer patient in India increases significantly every year. The increase can be expressed by $c = 3.201 \times x^{1.05}$ million; where $x = 1$ corresponds to the year 2001.
- What will be the approximate number of cancer patient in India in the year 2005?
 - In which year it will touch the 50 million mark?
92. **Economics** The total number (in millions) of employees within the United States in the service-providing industry E can be approximated by
- $$E = 91.5x^{0.07},$$
- where $x = 10$ corresponds to the year 2000. Assume the trend continues indefinitely. (Data from: ProQuest Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2013.)
- How many employees will there be in the year 2015?
 - In what year will there be more than 115 million employees?
93. **Finance** Kinisha borrowed \$2000 from a credit union at 12% annual interest and borrowed \$500 from her aunt at 7% annual interest. What single rate of interest on \$2500 results in the same total amount of interest?
94. **Business** Frau Mann wants to invest \$100,000 in two mutual funds (one taxable and other tax-free). The taxable fund gives returns at 12% per annum whereas the tax-free fund returns 8% per annum. What amount should she invest in each fund to get \$9200 as an interest per year?
95. **Health** A study conducted in Beijing indicates that when the population is p million, the average daily level of carbon monoxide (L) in the air is given by the formula $L(p) = 0.7\sqrt{p^2} + 3$ particles per million. A second study predicts that t years from now, the population will be $p(t) = 10.02t^2$ million. Assuming these formulae to be correct, what level of air pollution should be expected in 4 years?
96. In a motor training school, a car travels on a straight track at a constant speed of 25 miles per hour. Then, it reverses direction and returns to its starting position, travelling at a constant speed of 35 miles per hour.
- What is the average velocity for the roundtrip?
 - What is the average speed for the roundtrip?
 - What is the total distance traveled by the car if the total trip took 12 hours?
97. **Business** A concrete mixer needs to know how wide to make a walk around a rectangular fountain that is 10 by 15 feet. She has enough concrete to cover 200 square feet. To the nearest tenth of a foot, how wide should the walk be in order to use up all the concrete?
98. **Business** A vegetable vendor purchased onions from the wholesale market and sold it at the daily market at a 35% profit. If the selling price was \$5 per kilogram, what was his cost? Assume that the vendor can buy vegetables in multiples of 100 kilograms at the wholesale market.
99. **Physical Science** A projectile is launched from the ground vertically upward at a rate of 150 feet per second. How many seconds will it take for the projectile to be 200 feet from the ground on its downward trip?
100. **Physical Science** Suppose a tennis ball is thrown downward from the top of a 700-foot-high building with an initial velocity of 55 feet per second. How long does it take to reach the ground?

Case Study 1 Consumers Often Need to Just Do the Math

In the late 1960s and early 1970s researchers conducted a series of famous experiments in which children were tested regarding their ability for delayed gratification.* In these experiments, a child

*Mischel, Walter, Ebbe B. Ebbesen, and Antonette Raskoff Zeiss. (1972). "Cognitive and attentional mechanisms in delay of gratification." *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, pp. 204–218.

would be offered a marshmallow, cookie, or pretzel and told that if they did not eat the treat, they could have two of the treats when the researcher returned (after about 15 minutes). Of course, some children would eat the treat immediately, and others would wait and receive two of the treats.



Similar studies occur in studying consumer behavior among adults. Often when making purchases, consumers will purchase an appliance that initially costs less, but in the long run costs more money when one accounts for the operating expense. Imagine trying to decide whether to buy a new furnace for \$4500 that is 80% efficient versus a new furnace that is 90% efficient that costs \$5700. Each furnace is expected to last at least 20 years. The furnace with the 90% efficiency is estimated to cost \$1800 a year to operate, while the 80% efficiency furnace is estimated to cost \$2100 a year to operate—a difference of \$300 a year. Thus, the original price differential of \$1200 would be made up in four years. Over the course of 16 additional years, the 90% efficiency furnace would end up saving the buyer \$4800.

For other appliances, the difference in total expenditures may not be as dramatic, but can still be substantial. The energy guide tags that often accompany new appliances help make it easier for consumers “to do the math” by communicating the yearly operating costs of an appliance. For example, a Kenmore new side-by-side 25.4 cubic foot refrigerator retails for \$1128. The energy guide estimates the cost of operation for a year to be \$72. A similarly sized new Frigidaire refrigerator retails for \$1305, and the energy guide information estimates the annual cost to be \$43. Over 10 years, which refrigerator costs the consumer more money?

We can write mathematical expressions to answer this question. With an initial cost of \$1128, and an annual operating cost of \$72, for x years of operation the cost C for the Kenmore refrigerator is

$$C = 1128 + 72x$$

For 10 years, the Kenmore would cost $C = 1128 + 72(10) = \$1848$. For the Frigidaire model, the cost is

$$C = 1305 + 43x.$$

For 10 years, the Frigidaire would cost $C = 1305 + 43(10) = \$1735$.

Thus, the Frigidaire refrigerator costs \$113 less in total costs over 10 years.

Behavior when a consumer seeks the up-front savings sounds very similar to the delayed gratification studies among children. These kinds of behavior are of interest to both psychologists and

economists. The implications are also very important in the marketing of energy-efficient appliances that often do have a higher initial cost, but save consumers money over the lifetime of the product.

One tool to help consumers make the best choice in the long run is simply to take the time to “just do the math,” as the common expression goes. The techniques of this chapter can be applied to do just that!

Exercises

1. On the homedepot.com website, a General Electric 40-gallon electric hot water tank retails for \$218 and the estimated annual cost of operation is \$508. Write an expression for the cost to buy and run the hot water tank for x years.
2. On the homedepot.com website, a General Electric 40-gallon gas hot water tank retails for \$328 and the estimated annual cost of operation is \$309. Write an expression for the cost to buy and run the hot water tank for x years.
3. Over ten years, does the electric or gas hot water tank cost more? By how much?
4. In how many years will the total for the two hot water tanks be equal?
5. On the Lowes website, a Maytag 25-cubic-foot refrigerator was advertised for \$1529.10 with an estimated cost per month in electricity of \$50 a year. Write an expression for the cost to buy and run the refrigerator for x years.
6. On the HomeDepot website, an LG Electronics 25-cubic-foot refrigerator was advertised for \$1618.20 with an estimated cost per month in electricity of \$44 a year. Write an expression for the cost to buy and run the refrigerator for x years.
7. Over ten years, which refrigerator (the Maytag or the LG) costs the most? By how much?
8. In how many years will the total for the two refrigerators be equal.

Extended Project

A high-end real estate developer needs to install 50 new washing machines in a building she leases to tenants (with utilities included in the monthly rent). She knows that energy-efficient front loaders cost less per year to run, but they can be much more expensive than traditional top loaders. Investigate by visiting an appliance store or using the Internet, the prices and energy efficiency of two comparable front-loading and top-loading washing machines.

1. Estimate how many years it will take for the total expenditure (including purchase and cost of use) for the 50 front-loading

machines to equal the total expenditure for the 50 top-loading machines.

2. The energy guide ratings use data that is often several years old. If the owner believes that current energy costs are 20% higher than what is indicated with the energy guide, redo the calculations for (1) above and determine if it will take less time for the two total expenditures to be equal.



Graphs, Lines, and Inequalities

2

CHAPTER

CHAPTER OUTLINE

- 2.1 Graphs
- 2.2 Equations of Lines
- 2.3 Linear Models
- 2.4 Linear Inequalities
- 2.5 Polynomial and Rational Inequalities

CASE STUDY 2

Using Extrapolation for Prediction

Data from current and past events is often a useful tool in business and in the social and health sciences. Gathering data is the first step in developing mathematical models that can be used to analyze a situation and predict future performance. For examples of linear models in transportation, business, and health see Exercises 15, 16, and 21 on page 114.

Graphical representations of data are commonly used in business and in the health and social sciences. Lines, equations, and inequalities play an important role in developing mathematical models from such data. This chapter presents both algebraic and graphical methods for dealing with these topics.

2.1 Graphs

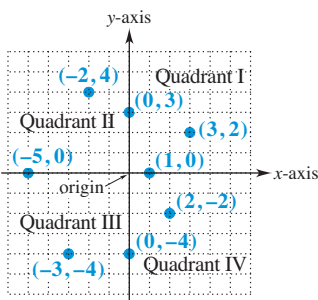


Figure 2.1

Just as the number line associates the points on a line with real numbers, a similar construction in two dimensions associates points in a plane with *ordered pairs* of real numbers. A **Cartesian coordinate system**, as shown in Figure 2.1, consists of a horizontal number line (usually called the **x-axis**) and a vertical number line (usually called the **y-axis**). The point where the number lines meet is called the **origin**. Each point in a Cartesian coordinate system is labeled with an **ordered pair** of real numbers, such as $(-2, 4)$ or $(3, 2)$. Several points and their corresponding ordered pairs are shown in Figure 2.1.

For the point labeled $(-2, 4)$, for example, -2 is the **x-coordinate** and 4 is the **y-coordinate**. You can think of these coordinates as directions telling you how to move to this point from the origin: You go 2 horizontal units to the left (x -coordinate) and 4 vertical

✓ Checkpoint 1

Locate $(-1, 6)$, $(-3, -5)$, $(4, -3)$, $(0, 2)$, and $(-5, 0)$ on a coordinate system.

Answers to Checkpoint exercises are found at the end of the section.

units upward (y -coordinate). From now on, instead of referring to “the point labeled by the ordered pair $(-2, 4)$,” we will say “the point $(-2, 4)$.” ✓₁

The x -axis and the y -axis divide the plane into four parts, or **quadrants**, which are numbered as shown in Figure 2.1. The points on the coordinate axes belong to no quadrant.

Equations and Graphs

A **solution of an equation** in two variables, such as

$$y = -2x + 3$$

or

$$y = x^2 + 7x - 2,$$

is an ordered pair of numbers such that the substitution of the first number for x and the second number for y produces a true statement.

Example 1

Which of the following are solutions of $y = -2x + 3$?

- (a) $(2, -1)$

Solution This is a solution of $y = -2x + 3$ because “ $-1 = -2 \cdot 2 + 3$ ” is a true statement.

- (b) $(4, 7)$

Solution Since $-2 \cdot 4 + 3 = -5$, and not 7, the ordered pair $(4, 7)$ is not a solution of $y = -2x + 3$. ✓₂

✓ Checkpoint 2

Which of the following are solutions of

$$y = x^2 + 5x - 3?$$

- (a) $(1, 3)$
 (b) $(-2, -3)$
 (c) $(-1, -7)$

Equations in two variables, such as $y = -2x + 3$, typically have an infinite number of solutions. To find one, choose a number for x and then compute the value of y that produces a solution. For instance, if $x = 5$, then $y = -2 \cdot 5 + 3 = -7$, so that the pair $(5, -7)$ is a solution of $y = -2x + 3$. Similarly, if $x = 0$, then $y = -2 \cdot 0 + 3 = 3$, so that $(0, 3)$ is also a solution.

The **graph** of an equation in two variables is the set of points in the plane whose coordinates (ordered pairs) are solutions of the equation. Thus, the graph of an equation is a picture of its solutions. Since a typical equation has infinitely many solutions, its graph has infinitely many points.

Example 2

Sketch the graph of $y = -2x + 5$.

Solution Since we cannot plot infinitely many points, we construct a table of y -values for a reasonable number of x -values, plot the corresponding points, and make an “educated guess” about the rest. The table of values and points in Figure 2.2 suggests that the graph is a straight line, as shown in Figure 2.3. ✓₃

✓ Checkpoint 3

Graph $x = 5y$.

x	$-2x + 5$
-1	7
0	5
2	1
4	-3
5	-5

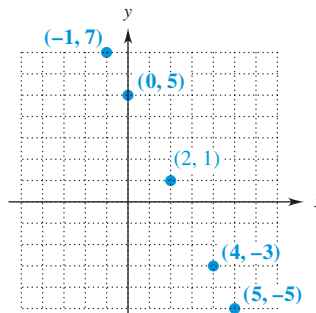


Figure 2.2

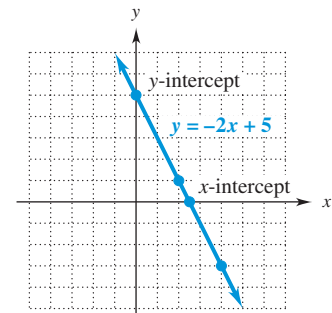



Figure 2.3

An **x-intercept** of a graph is the x -coordinate of a point where the graph intersects the x -axis. The y -coordinate of this point is 0, since it is on the axis. Consequently, to find the x -intercepts of the graph of an equation, set $y = 0$ and solve for x . For instance, in Example 2, the x -intercept of the graph of $y = -2x + 5$ (see Figure 2.3) is found by setting $y = 0$ and solving for x :

$$\begin{aligned}0 &= -2x + 5 \\2x &= 5 \\x &= \frac{5}{2}.\end{aligned}$$

Similarly, a **y-intercept** of a graph is the y -coordinate of a point where the graph intersects the y -axis. The x -coordinate of this point is 0. The y -intercepts are found by setting $x = 0$ and solving for y . For example, the graph of $y = -2x + 5$ in Figure 2.3 has y -intercept 5. 

Checkpoint 4

Find the x - and y -intercepts of the graphs of these equations.

- (a) $3x + 4y = 12$
(b) $5x - 2y = 8$

Example 3

Find the x - and y -intercepts of the graph of $y = x^2 - 2x - 8$, and sketch the graph.

Solution To find the y -intercept, set $x = 0$ and solve for y :

$$y = x^2 - 2x - 8 = 0^2 - 2 \cdot 0 - 8 = -8.$$

The y -intercept is -8 . To find the x -intercept, set $y = 0$ and solve for x .

$$\begin{aligned}x^2 - 2x - 8 &= y \\x^2 - 2x - 8 &= 0 && \text{Set } y = 0. \\(x + 2)(x - 4) &= 0 && \text{Factor.} \\x + 2 = 0 & \text{ or } & x - 4 = 0 && \text{Zero-factor property} \\x = -2 & \text{ or } & x = 4\end{aligned}$$

The x -intercepts are -2 and 4 . Now make a table, using both positive and negative values for x , and plot the corresponding points, as in Figure 2.4. These points suggest that the entire graph looks like Figure 2.5.

x	$x^2 - 2x - 8$
-3	7
-2	0
-1	-5
0	-8
1	-9
3	-5
4	0
5	7

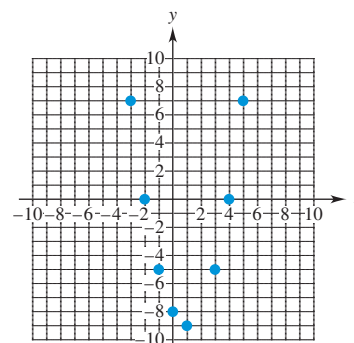


Figure 2.4

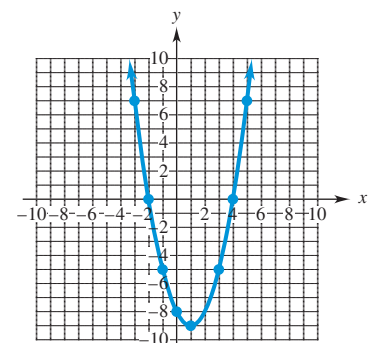


Figure 2.5

Example 4

Sketch the graph of $y = \sqrt{x + 2}$.

Solution Notice that $\sqrt{x + 2}$ is a real number only when $x + 2 \geq 0$ —that is, when $x \geq -2$. Furthermore, $y = \sqrt{x + 2}$ is always nonnegative. Hence, all points on the graph lie on or above the x -axis and on or to the right of $x = -2$. Computing some typical values, we obtain the graph in Figure 2.6.

x	$\sqrt{x + 2}$
-2	0
0	$\sqrt{2} \approx 1.414$
2	2
5	$\sqrt{7} \approx 2.646$
7	3
9	$\sqrt{11} \approx 3.317$

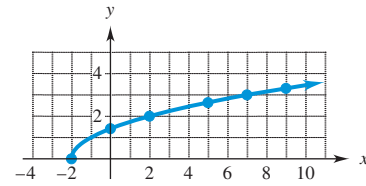


Figure 2.6

Example 2 shows that the solution of the equation $-2x + 5 = 0$ is the x -intercept of the graph of $y = -2x + 5$. Example 3 shows that the solutions of the equation $x^2 - 2x - 8 = 0$ are the x -intercepts of the graph $y = x^2 - 2x - 8$. Similar facts hold in the general case.

Intercepts and Equations

The real solutions of a one-variable equation of the form

$$\text{expression in } x = 0$$

are the x -intercepts of the graph of

$$y = \text{same expression in } x.$$

Graph Reading

Information is often given in graphical form, so you must be able to read and interpret graphs—that is, translate graphical information into statements in English.

Example 5 Finance Newspapers and websites summarize activity of the S&P 500 Index in graphical form. The results for the 20 trading days for the month of December, 2012 are displayed in Figure 2.7. The first coordinate of each point on the graph is the trading day in December, and the second coordinate represents the closing price of the S&P 500 on that day. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

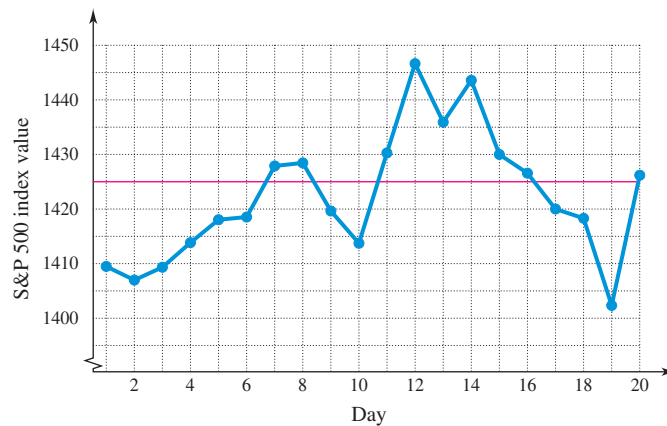


Figure 2.7

(a) What was the value of the S&P 500 Index on day 11 and day 17?

Solution The point (11, 1430) is on the graph, which means that the value of the index was 1430. The point (17, 1420) is on the graph, which means that the value of the index was 1420 on that day.

✓ Checkpoint 5

From Figure 2.7 determine when the S&P 500 had its highest point and its lowest point. What were the index values on those days?

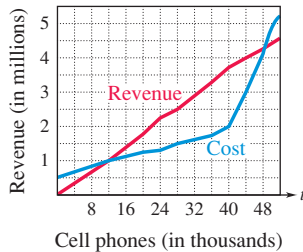


Figure 2.8

✓ Checkpoint 6

In Example 6, find the profit from making

- 32,000 phones;
- 4000 phones.

(b) On what days was the value of the index above 1425?

Solution Look for points whose second coordinates are greater than 1425—that is, points that lie above the horizontal line through 1425 (shown in red in Figure 2.7). The first coordinates of these points are the days when the index value was above 1425. We see these days occurred on days 7, 8, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, and 20. ✓₅

The next example deals with the basic business relationship that was introduced in Section 1.2:

$$\text{Profit} = \text{Revenue} - \text{Cost}.$$

Example 6 Business Monthly revenue and costs for the Webster Cell Phone Company are determined by the number t of phones produced and sold, as shown in Figure 2.8.

(a) How many phones should be produced each month if the company is to make a profit (assuming that all phones produced are sold)?

Solution Profit is revenue minus cost, so the company makes a profit whenever revenue is greater than cost—that is, when the revenue graph is above the cost graph. Figure 2.8 shows that this occurs between $t = 12$ and $t = 48$ —that is, when 12,000 to 48,000 phones are produced. If the company makes fewer than 12,000 phones, it will lose money (because costs will be greater than revenue.) It also loses money by making more than 48,000 phones. (One reason might be that high production levels require large amounts of overtime pay, which drives costs up too much.)

(b) Is it more profitable to make 40,000 or 44,000 phones?

Solution On the revenue graph, the point with first coordinate 40 has second coordinate of approximately 3.7, meaning that the revenue from 40,000 phones is about 3.7 million dollars. The point with first coordinate 40 on the cost graph is $(40, 2)$, meaning that the cost of producing 40,000 phones is 2 million dollars. Therefore, the profit on 40,000 phones is about $3.7 - 2 = 1.7$ million dollars. For 44,000 phones, we have the approximate points $(44, 4)$ on the revenue graph and $(44, 3)$ on the cost graph. So the profit on 44,000 phones is $4 - 3 = 1$ million dollars. Consequently, it is more profitable to make 40,000 phones. ✓₆

➤ Technology and Graphs

A graphing calculator or computer graphing program follows essentially the same procedure used when graphing by hand: The calculator selects a large number of x -values (95 or more), equally spaced along the x -axis, and plots the corresponding points, simultaneously connecting them with line segments. Calculator-generated graphs are generally quite accurate, although they may not appear as smooth as hand-drawn ones. The next example illustrates the basics of graphing on a graphing calculator. (Computer graphing software operates similarly.)

Example 7 Use a graphing calculator to sketch the graph of the equation

$$2x^3 - 2y - 10x + 2 = 0.$$

Solution First, set the *viewing window*—the portion of the coordinate plane that will appear on the screen. Press the WINDOW key (labeled RANGE or PLOT-SETUP on some calculators) and enter the appropriate numbers, as in Figure 2.9 (which shows the screen from a TI-84+; other calculators are similar). Then the calculator will display the portion of the plane inside the dashed lines shown in Figure 2.10—that is, the points (x, y) with $-9 \leq x \leq 9$ and $-6 \leq y \leq 6$.

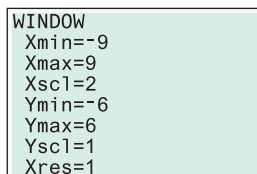


Figure 2.9

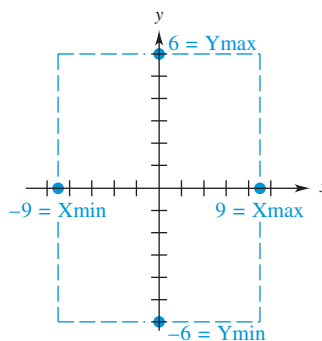


Figure 2.10

In Figure 2.9, we have set $Xscl = 2$ and $Yscl = 1$, which means the **tick marks** on the x -axis are two units apart and the tick marks on the y -axis are one unit apart (as shown in Figure 2.10).

Second, enter the equation to be graphed in the equation memory. To do this, you must first solve the equation for y (because a calculator accepts only equations of the form $y = \text{expression in } x$):

$$2y = 2x^3 - 10x + 2$$

$$y = x^3 - 5x + 1.$$

Now press the $Y =$ key (labeled SYMB on some calculators) and enter the equation, using the “variable key” for x . (This key is labeled X , T , θ , n or X , θ , T or x -VAR, depending on the calculator.) Figure 2.11 shows the equation entered on a TI-84+; other calculators are similar. Now press GRAPH (or PLOT or DRW on some calculators), and obtain Figure 2.12.

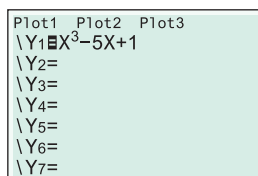


Figure 2.11

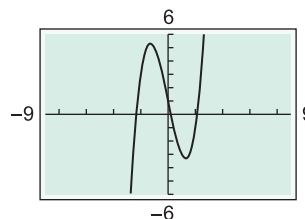



Figure 2.12

Finally, if necessary, change the viewing window to obtain a more readable graph. It is difficult to see the y -intercept in Figure 2.12, so press WINDOW and change the viewing window (Figure 2.13); then press GRAPH to obtain Figure 2.14, in which the y -intercept at $y = 1$ is clearly shown. (It isn't necessary to reenter the equation.) 

Checkpoint 7

Use a graphing calculator to graph $y = 18x - 3x^3$ in the following viewing windows:

- (a) $-10 \leq x \leq 10$ and $-10 \leq y \leq 10$ with $Xscl = 1$, $Yscl = 1$;
- (b) $-5 \leq x \leq 5$ and $-20 \leq y \leq 20$ with $Xscl = 1$, $Yscl = 5$.

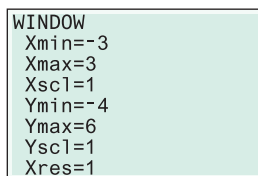


Figure 2.13

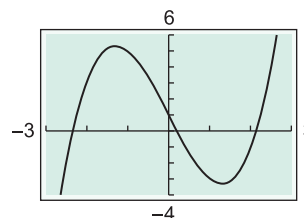


Figure 2.14

Technology Tools

In addition to graphing equations, graphing calculators (and graphing software) provide convenient tools for solving equations and reading graphs. For example, when you have graphed an equation, you can readily determine the points the calculator plotted. Press **trace** (a cursor

will appear on the graph), and use the left and right arrow keys to move the cursor along the graph. The coordinates of the point the cursor is on appear at the bottom of the screen.

Recall that the solutions of an equation, such as $x^3 - 5x + 1 = 0$, are the x -intercepts of the graph of $y = x^3 - 5x + 1$. (See the box on page 88.) A **graphical root finder** enables you to find these x -intercepts and thus to solve the equation.

Example 8 Use a graphical root finder to solve $x^3 - 5x + 1 = 0$.

Solution First, graph $y = x^3 - 5x + 1$. The x -intercepts of this graph are the solutions of the equation. To find these intercepts, look for “root” or “zero” in the appropriate menu.* Check your instruction manual for the proper syntax. A typical root finder (see Figure 2.15) shows that two of the solutions (x -intercepts) are $x \approx .2016$ and $x \approx 2.1284$. For the third solution, see Checkpoint 8. ✓₈

✓ **Checkpoint 8**

Use a graphical root finder to approximate the third solution of the equation in Example 8.

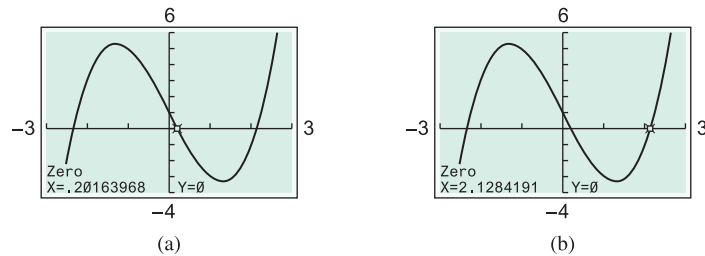


Figure 2.15

Many graphs have peaks and valleys (for instance, the graphs in Figure 2.15). A **maximum/minimum finder** provides accurate approximations of the locations of the “tops” of the peaks and the “bottoms” of the valleys.

Example 9 Business The net income (in millions of dollars) for Marriott International, Inc. can be approximated by

$$6.159x^3 - 130.9x^2 + 783.4x - 749,$$

where $x = 2$ corresponds to the year 2002. In what year was the net income the highest? What was the net income that year? (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

Solution The graph of $y = 6.159x^3 - 130.9x^2 + 783.4x - 749$ is shown in Figure 2.16. The highest net income corresponds to the highest point on this graph. To find this point, look for “maximum” or “max” or “extremum” in the same menu as the graphical root finder. Check your instruction manual for the proper syntax. A typical maximum finder (Figure 2.17) shows that the highest point has approximate coordinates (4.29, 688.96). The first coordinate is the year and the second is the net income (in millions). So the largest net income occurred in 2004 and the net income was approximately \$689 million. ✓₉

✓ **Checkpoint 9**

Use a minimum finder to locate the approximate coordinates of the lowest point on the graph in Figure 2.16.

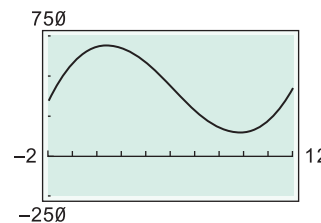


Figure 2.16

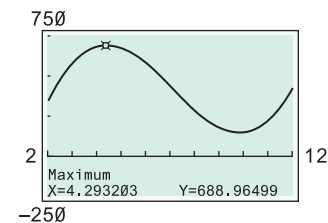


Figure 2.17

*CALC on TI-84+, GRAPH MATH on TI-86, G-SOLV on Casio.

2.1 Exercises

State the quadrant in which each point lies.

- $(1, -2), (-2, 1), (3, 4), (-5, -6)$
- $(\pi, 2), (3, -\sqrt{2}), (4, 0), (-\sqrt{3}, \sqrt{3})$

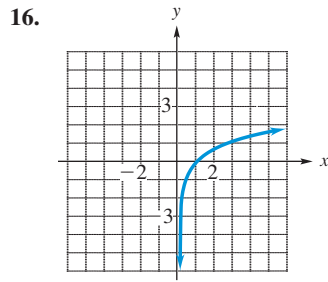
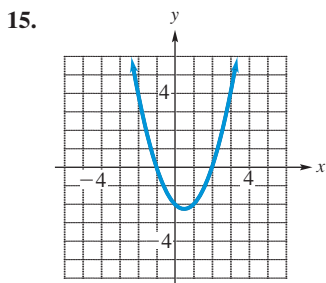
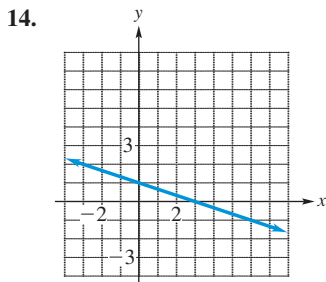
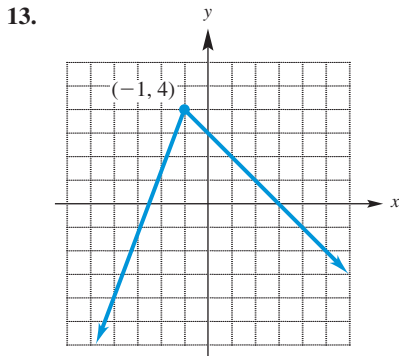
Determine whether the given ordered pair is a solution of the given equation. (See Example 1.)

- $(1, -3); 3x - y - 6 = 0$
- $(2, -1); x^2 + y^2 - 6x + 8y = -15$
- $(3, 4); (x - 2)^2 + (y + 2)^2 = 6$
- $(1, -1); \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{y^2}{3} = -4$

Sketch the graph of each of these equations. (See Example 2.)

- $4y + 3x = 12$
- $2x + 7y = 14$
- $8x + 3y = 12$
- $9y - 4x = 12$
- $x = 2y + 3$
- $x - 3y = 0$

List the x -intercepts and y -intercepts of each graph.



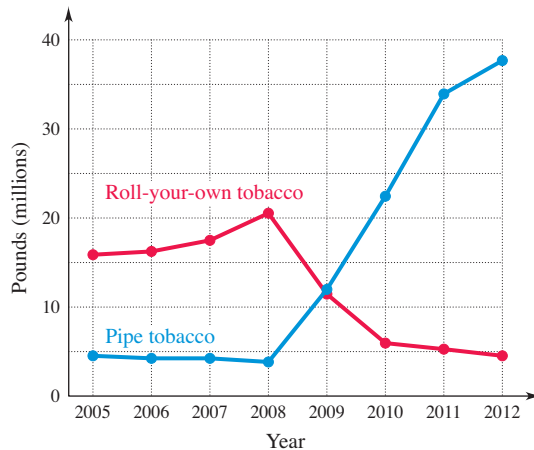
Find the x -intercepts and y -intercepts of the graph of each equation. You need not sketch the graph. (See Example 3.)

- $3x + 4y = 12$
- $x - 2y = 5$
- $2x - 3y = 24$
- $3x + y = 4$
- $y = x^2 - 9$
- $y = x^2 + 4$
- $y = x^2 + x - 20$
- $y = 5x^2 + 6x + 1$
- $y = 2x^2 - 5x + 7$
- $y = 3x^2 + 4x - 4$

Sketch the graph of the equation. (See Examples 2–4.)

- $y = x^2$
- $y = x^2 + 2$
- $y = x^2 - 3$
- $y = 2x^2$
- $y = x^2 - 6x + 5$
- $y = x^2 + 2x - 3$
- $y = x^3$
- $y = x^3 - 3$
- $y = x^3 + 1$
- $y = x^3/2$
- $y = \sqrt{x + 4}$
- $y = \sqrt{x - 2}$
- $y = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$
- $y = \sqrt{9 - x^2}$

Business An article in the *Wall Street Journal* on March 17, 2012 spoke of the increase in production of pipe tobacco as stores and consumers found that pipe tobacco is often not subject to the same taxes as cigarette tobacco. The graph below shows the production of pipe tobacco (in millions of pounds) and of roll-your-own tobacco (in millions of pounds). (Data from: Alcohol and Tobacco Tax and Trade Bureau.) (See Examples 5 and 6.)

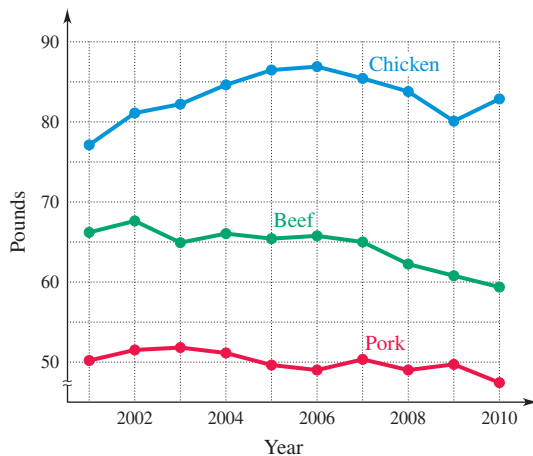


41. In what year did roll-your-own tobacco hit its peak of production? What was that peak production?
42. In what year did both roll-your-own tobacco and pipe tobacco have approximately the same level of production? How much was produced for each?
43. In what year did pipe tobacco production exceed roll-your-own tobacco by at least 25 million pounds?
44. In what years did roll-your-own tobacco production exceed pipe tobacco production by less than 10 million pounds?

Business Use the revenue and cost graphs for the Webster Cell Phone Company in Example 6 to do Exercises 45–48.

45. Find the approximate cost of manufacturing the given number of phones.
 - (a) 20,000
 - (b) 36,000
 - (c) 48,000
46. Find the approximate revenue from selling the given number of phones.
 - (a) 12,000
 - (b) 24,000
 - (c) 36,000
47. Find the approximate profit from manufacturing the given number of phones.
 - (a) 20,000
 - (b) 28,000
 - (c) 36,000
48. The company must replace its aging machinery with better, but much more expensive, machines. In addition, raw material prices increase, so that monthly costs go up by \$250,000. Owing to competitive pressure, phone prices cannot be increased, so revenue remains the same. Under these new circumstances, find the approximate profit from manufacturing the given number of phones.
 - (a) 20,000
 - (b) 36,000
 - (c) 40,000

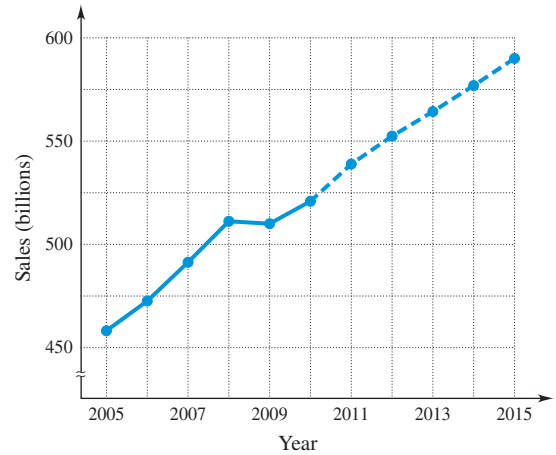
Business The graph below gives the annual per-person retail availability of beef, chicken, and pork (in pounds) from 2001 to 2010. Use the graph to answer the following questions. (Data from: U.S. Department of Agriculture.)



49. What is the approximate annual per-person retail availability of beef, chicken, and pork in 2010?
50. In what year was annual availability of beef the highest?
51. In what year was annual availability of chicken the lowest?

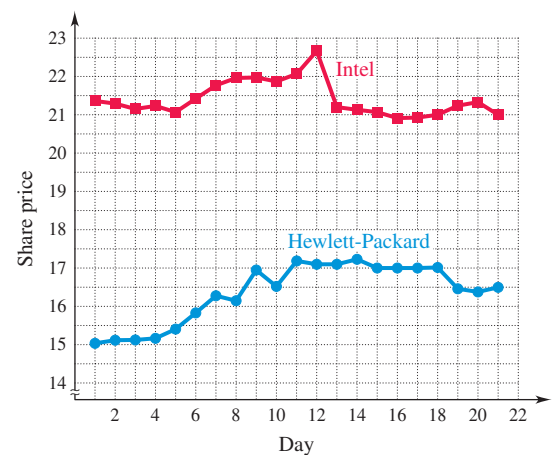
52. How much did the annual availability of beef decrease from 2001 to 2010?

Business The graph below gives the total sales (in billions of dollars) at grocery stores within the United States from 2005 to 2015. (Years 2011–2015 are projections.) Use the graph to answer the following questions. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)



53. What were the total sales at grocery stores in 2008?
54. In what years are total sales below \$525 billion (including projections)?
55. In what years are total sales above \$500 billion (including projections)?
56. How much are grocery sales projected to increase from 2010 to 2015?

Business The graph below shows the closing share prices (in dollars) for Hewlett-Packard Corporation and Intel Corporation on the 21 trading days of the month of January, 2013. Use this graph to answer the following questions.



57. What was the approximate closing share price for Hewlett-Packard on day 21? for Intel?
58. What was the approximate closing share price for Hewlett-Packard on day 9? for Intel?
59. What was the highest closing share price for Hewlett-Packard and on what day did this occur?

- 60. What was the highest closing share price for Intel and on what day did this occur?
- 61. Was the difference in share price between the two companies ever more than \$7.00?
- 62. Over the course of the month, what was the gain in share price for Hewlett-Packard?

Use a graphing calculator to find the graph of the equation. (See Example 7.)

- 63. $y = x^2 + x + 1$
- 64. $y = 2 - x - x^2$
- 65. $y = (x - 3)^3$
- 66. $y = x^3 + 2x^2 + 2$
- 67. $y = x^3 - 3x^2 + x - 1$
- 68. $y = x^4 - 5x^2 - 2$

Use a graphing calculator for Exercises 69–70.

- 69. Graph $y = x^4 - 2x^3 + 2x$ in a window with $-3 \leq x \leq 3$. Is the “flat” part of the graph near $x = 1$ really a horizontal line segment? (Hint: Use the trace feature to move along the “flat” part and watch the y-coordinates. Do they remain the same [as they should on a horizontal segment]?)
- 70. (a) Graph $y = x^4 - 2x^3 + 2x$ in the **standard window** (the one with $-10 \leq x \leq 10$ and $-10 \leq y \leq 10$). Use the trace feature to approximate the coordinates of the lowest point on the graph.
 (b) Use a minimum finder to obtain an accurate approximation of the lowest point. How does this compare with your answer in part (a)?

Use a graphing calculator to approximate all real solutions of the equation. (See Example 8.)

- 71. $x^3 - 3x^2 + 5 = 0$
- 72. $x^3 + x - 1 = 0$
- 73. $2x^3 - 4x^2 + x - 3 = 0$
- 74. $6x^3 - 5x^2 + 3x - 2 = 0$
- 75. $x^5 - 6x + 6 = 0$
- 76. $x^3 - 3x^2 + x - 1 = 0$

Use a graphing calculator to work Exercises 77–80. (See Examples 8 and 9.)

Finance The financial assets of the mutual fund industry (in trillions of dollars) can be approximated by

$$y = .0556x^3 - 1.286x^2 + 9.76x - 17.4,$$

where $x = 5$ corresponds to 2005. (Data from: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.)

- 77. Find the maximum value of the total assets between 2005 and 2008.
- 78. Find the minimum value of the total assets between 2008 and 2011.

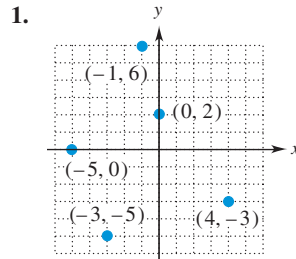
Finance The financial assets of households (in trillions of dollars) can be approximated by

$$y = .328x^3 - 7.75x^2 + 59.03x - 97.1,$$

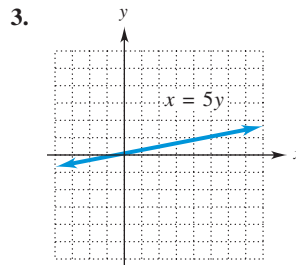
where $x = 5$ corresponds to 2005. (Data from: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.)

- 79. Find the minimum value of the household assets between 2007 and 2011.
- 80. Find the maximum value of the household assets between 2005 and 2008.

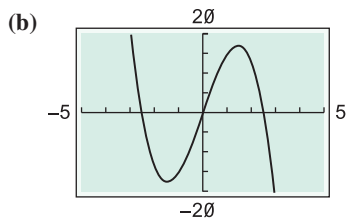
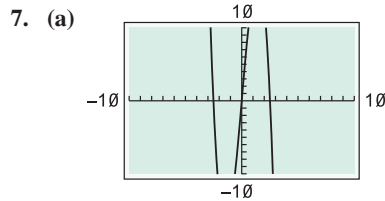
Checkpoint Answers



2. (a) and (c)



- 4. (a) x-intercept 4, y-intercept 3
 (b) x-intercept 8/5, y-intercept -4
- 5. The highest was 1446 on day 12
 The lowest was 1407 on day 11
- 6. (a) About \$1,200,000 (rounded)
 (b) About -\$500,000
 (that is, a loss of \$500,000)



- 8. $x \approx -2.330059$
- 9. (9.88, 153.19)

2.2 Equations of Lines

Straight lines, which are the simplest graphs, play an important role in a wide variety of applications. They are considered here from both a geometric and an algebraic point of view.

The key geometric feature of a nonvertical straight line is how steeply it rises or falls as you move from left to right. The “steepness” of a line can be represented numerically by a number called the *slope* of the line.

To see how the slope is defined, start with Figure 2.18, which shows a line passing through the two different points $(x_1, y_1) = (-5, 6)$ and $(x_2, y_2) = (4, -7)$. The difference in the two x -values,

$$x_2 - x_1 = 4 - (-5) = 9,$$

is called the **change in x** . Similarly, the **change in y** is the difference in the two y -values:

$$y_2 - y_1 = -7 - 6 = -13.$$

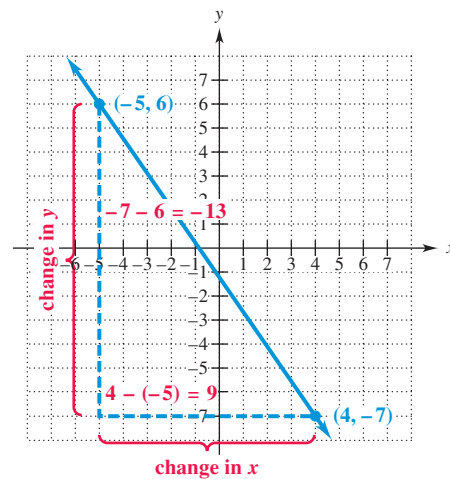


Figure 2.18

The **slope** of the line through the two points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) , where $x_1 \neq x_2$, is defined as the quotient of the change in y and the change in x :

$$\text{slope} = \frac{\text{change in } y}{\text{change in } x} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}.$$

The slope of the line in Figure 2.18 is

$$\text{slope} = \frac{-7 - 6}{4 - (-5)} = -\frac{13}{9}.$$

Using similar triangles from geometry, we can show that the slope is independent of the choice of points on the line. That is, the same value of the slope will be obtained for *any* choice of two different points on the line.

Example 1 Find the slope of the line through the points $(-6, 8)$ and $(5, 4)$.

Solution Let $(x_1, y_1) = (-6, 8)$ and $(x_2, y_2) = (5, 4)$. Use the definition of slope as follows:

$$\text{slope} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} = \frac{4 - 8}{5 - (-6)} = \frac{-4}{11} = -\frac{4}{11}.$$

The slope can also be found by letting $(x_1, y_1) = (5, 4)$ and $(x_2, y_2) = (-6, 8)$. In that case,

$$\text{slope} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} = \frac{8 - 4}{-6 - 5} = \frac{4}{-11} = -\frac{4}{11},$$

which is the same answer. ✓₁

✓ **Checkpoint 1**

Find the slope of the line through the following pairs of points.

- (a) $(5, 9), (-5, -3)$
- (b) $(-4, 2), (-2, -7)$

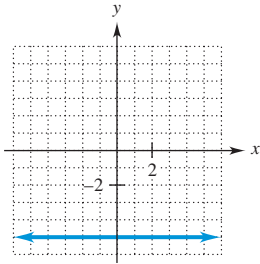


Figure 2.19

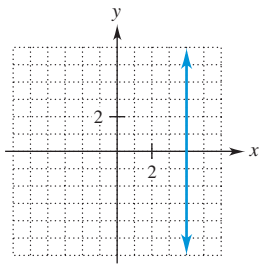


Figure 2.20

CAUTION When finding the slope of a line, be careful to subtract the x -values and the y -values in the same order. For example, with the points $(4, 3)$ and $(2, 9)$, if you use $9 - 3$ for the numerator, you must use $2 - 4$ (not $4 - 2$) for the denominator.

Example 2 Find the slope of the horizontal line in Figure 2.19.

Solution Every point on the line has the same y -coordinate, -5 . Choose any two of them to compute the slope, say, $(x_1, y_1) = (-3, -5)$ and $(x_2, y_2) = (2, -5)$:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{slope} &= \frac{-5 - (-5)}{2 - (-3)} \\ &= \frac{0}{5} \\ &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Example 3 What is the slope of the vertical line in Figure 2.20?

Solution Every point on the line has the same x -coordinate, 4 . If we attempt to compute the slope with two of these points, say, $(x_1, y_1) = (4, -2)$ and $(x_2, y_2) = (4, 1)$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \text{slope} &= \frac{1 - (-2)}{4 - 4} \\ &= \frac{3}{0}. \end{aligned}$$

Division by 0 is not defined, so the slope of this line is undefined.

The arguments used in Examples 2 and 3 work in the general case and lead to the following conclusion.

The slope of every horizontal line is 0.
The slope of every vertical line is undefined.

Slope-Intercept Form

The slope can be used to develop an algebraic description of nonvertical straight lines. Assume that a line with slope m has y -intercept b , so that it goes through the point $(0, b)$. (See Figure 2.21.) Let (x, y) be any point on the line other than $(0, b)$. Using the definition of slope with the points $(0, b)$ and (x, y) gives

$$m = \frac{y - b}{x - 0}$$

$$m = \frac{y - b}{x}$$

$$mx = y - b \quad \text{Multiply both sides by } x.$$

$$y = mx + b. \quad \text{Add } b \text{ to both sides. Reverse the equation.}$$

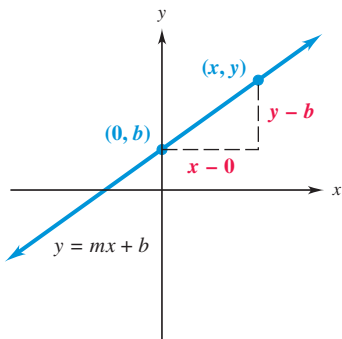


Figure 2.21

In other words, the coordinates of any point on the line satisfy the equation $y = mx + b$.

Slope–Intercept Form

If a line has slope m and y -intercept b , then it is the graph of the equation

$$y = mx + b.$$

This equation is called the **slope–intercept form** of the equation of the line.

✓ Checkpoint 2

Find an equation for the line with

- (a) y -intercept -3 and slope $2/3$;
 (b) y -intercept $1/4$ and slope $-3/2$.

Example 4

Find an equation for the line with y -intercept $7/2$ and slope $-5/2$.

Solution Use the slope–intercept form with $b = 7/2$ and $m = -5/2$:

$$y = mx + b$$

$$y = -\frac{5}{2}x + \frac{7}{2} \quad \checkmark_2$$

Example 5

Find the equation of the horizontal line with y -intercept 3 .

Solution The slope of the line is 0 (why?) and its y -intercept is 3 , so its equation is

$$y = mx + b$$

$$y = 0x + 3$$

$$y = 3.$$

The argument in Example 5 also works in the general case.

If k is a constant, then the graph of the equation $y = k$ is the horizontal line with y -intercept k .

Example 6

Find the slope and y -intercept for each of the following lines.

(a) $5x - 3y = 1$

Solution Solve for y :

$$5x - 3y = 1$$

$$-3y = -5x + 1 \quad \text{Subtract } 5x \text{ from both sides.}$$

$$y = \frac{5}{3}x - \frac{1}{3}. \quad \text{Divide both sides by } -3.$$

This equation is in the form $y = mx + b$, with $m = 5/3$ and $b = -1/3$. So the slope is $5/3$ and the y -intercept is $-1/3$.

(b) $-9x + 6y = 2$

Solution Solve for y :

$$-9x + 6y = 2$$

$$6y = 9x + 2 \quad \text{Add } 9x \text{ to both sides.}$$

$$y = \frac{3}{2}x + \frac{1}{3}. \quad \text{Divide both sides by } 6.$$

The slope is $3/2$ (the coefficient of x), and the y -intercept is $1/3$. \checkmark_3

✓ Checkpoint 3

Find the slope and y -intercept of

- (a) $x + 4y = 6$;
 (b) $3x - 2y = 1$.

The slope–intercept form can be used to show how the slope measures the steepness of a line. Consider the straight lines A , B , C , and D given by the following equations, where each has y -intercept 0 and slope as indicated:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} A: y = .5x; & B: y = x; & C: y = 3x; & D: y = 7x. \\ \text{Slope } .5 & \text{Slope } 1 & \text{Slope } 3 & \text{Slope } 7 \end{array}$$

For these lines, Figure 2.22 shows that the bigger the slope, the more steeply the line rises from left to right. ✓₄

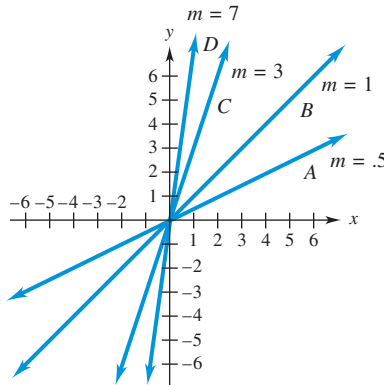


Figure 2.22

The preceding discussion and Checkpoint 4 may be summarized as follows.

Direction of Line (moving from left to right)	Slope
Upward	Positive (larger for steeper lines)
Horizontal	0
Downward	Negative (larger in absolute value for steeper lines)
Vertical	Undefined

Example 7 Sketch the graph of $x + 2y = 5$, and label the intercepts.

Solution Find the x -intercept by setting $y = 0$ and solving for x :

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2 \cdot 0 &= 5 \\ x &= 5. \end{aligned}$$

The x -intercept is 5, and $(5, 0)$ is on the graph. The y -intercept is found similarly, by setting $x = 0$ and solving for y :

$$\begin{aligned} 0 + 2y &= 5 \\ y &= 5/2. \end{aligned}$$

The y -intercept is $5/2$, and $(0, 5/2)$ is on the graph. The points $(5, 0)$ and $(0, 5/2)$ can be used to sketch the graph, as shown on the following page (Figure 2.23). ✓₅

✓ **Checkpoint 4**

- (a) List the slopes of the following lines:
 $E: y = -.3x$; $F: y = -x$;
 $G: y = -2x$; $H: y = -5x$.
- (b) Graph all four lines on the same set of axes.
- (c) How are the slopes of the lines related to their steepness?

✓ **Checkpoint 5**

Graph the given lines and label the intercepts.

- (a) $3x + 4y = 12$
- (b) $5x - 2y = 8$

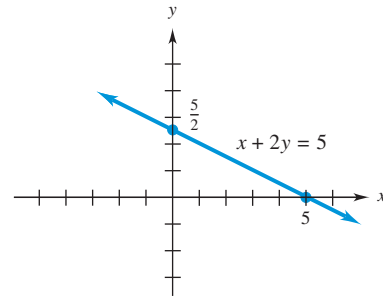


Figure 2.23

TECHNOLOGY TIP To graph a linear equation on a graphing calculator, you must first put the equation in slope–intercept form $y = mx + b$ so that it can be entered in the equation memory (called the Y = list on some calculators). Vertical lines cannot be graphed on most calculators.

Slopes of Parallel and Perpendicular Lines

We shall assume the following facts without proof. The first one is a consequence of the fact that the slope measures steepness and that parallel lines have the same steepness.

Two nonvertical lines are **parallel** whenever they have the same slope.

Two nonvertical lines are **perpendicular** whenever the product of their slopes is -1 .

Example 8

Determine whether each of the given pairs of lines are *parallel*, *perpendicular*, or *neither*.

(a) $2x + 3y = 5$ and $4x + 5 = -6y$.

Solution Put each equation in slope–intercept form by solving for y :

$$\begin{aligned} 3y &= -2x + 5 & -6y &= 4x + 5 \\ y &= -\frac{2}{3}x + \frac{5}{3} & y &= -\frac{2}{3}x - \frac{5}{6} \end{aligned}$$

In each case, the slope (the coefficient of x) is $-2/3$, so the lines are parallel. See Figure 2.24(a).

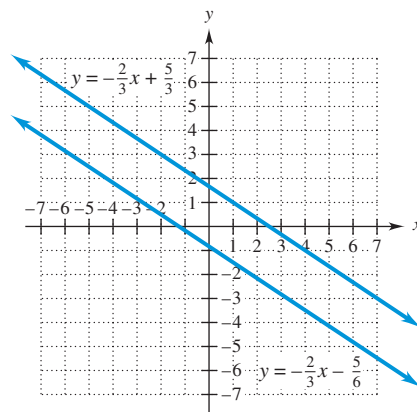


Figure 2.24(a)

(b) $3x = y + 7$ and $x + 3y = 4$.

Solution Put each equation in slope–intercept form to determine the slope of the associated line:

$$\begin{array}{ll} 3x = y + 7 & 3y = -x + 4 \\ y = 3x - 7 & y = -\frac{1}{3}x + \frac{4}{3} \\ \text{slope } 3 & \text{slope } -1/3. \end{array}$$

Since $3(-1/3) = -1$, these lines are perpendicular. See Figure 2.24(b).

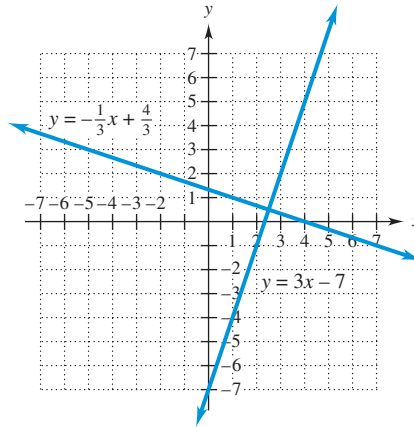



Figure 2.24(b)

(c) $x + y = 4$ and $x - 2y = 3$.

Solution Verify that the slope of the first line is -1 and the slope of the second is $1/2$. The slopes are not equal and their product is not -1 , so the lines are neither parallel nor perpendicular. See Figure 2.24(c). 

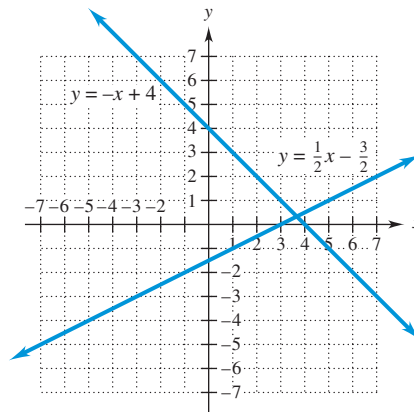



Figure 2.24(c)

Checkpoint 6

Tell whether the lines in each of the following pairs are *parallel*, *perpendicular*, or *neither*.

- (a) $x - 2y = 6$ and $2x + y = 5$
 (b) $3x + 4y = 8$ and $x + 3y = 2$
 (c) $2x - y = 7$ and $2y = 4x - 5$

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** Perpendicular lines may not appear perpendicular on a graphing calculator unless you use a *square window*—a window in which a one-unit segment on the y-axis is the same length as a one-unit segment on the x-axis. To obtain such a window on most calculators, use a viewing window in which the y-axis is about two-thirds as long as the x-axis. The SQUARE (or ZSQUARE) key in the ZOOM menu will change the current window to a square window by automatically adjusting the length of one of the axes.

Point-Slope Form

The slope–intercept form of the equation of a line is usually the most convenient for graphing and for understanding how slopes and lines are related. However, it is not always the best way to *find* the equation of a line. In many situations (particularly in calculus), the slope and a point on the line are known and you must find the equation of the line. In such cases, the best method is to use the *point–slope form*, which we now explain.

Suppose that a line has slope m and that (x_1, y_1) is a point on the line. Let (x, y) represent any other point on the line. Since m is the slope, then, by the definition of slope,

$$\frac{y - y_1}{x - x_1} = m.$$

Multiplying both sides by $x - x_1$ yields

$$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1).$$

Point–Slope Form

If a line has slope m and passes through the point (x_1, y_1) , then

$$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$$

is the **point–slope form** of the equation of the line.

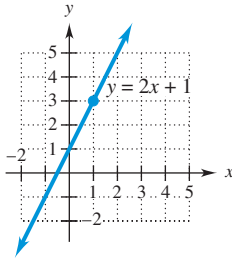


Figure 2.25

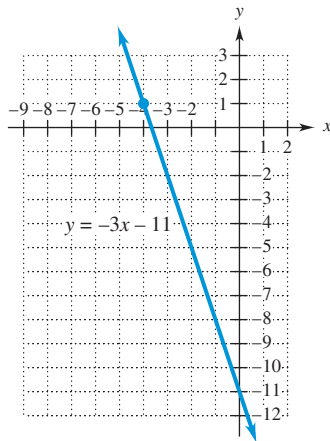


Figure 2.26

✓ Checkpoint 7

Find both the point–slope and the slope–intercept form of the equation of the line having the given slope and passing through the given point.

- (a) $m = -3/5$, $(5, -2)$
 (b) $m = 1/3$, $(6, 8)$

Example 9

Find the equation of the line satisfying the given conditions.

- (a) Slope 2; the point $(1, 3)$ is on the line.

Solution Use the point–slope form with $m = 2$ and $(x_1, y_1) = (1, 3)$. Substitute $x_1 = 1$, $y_1 = 3$, and $m = 2$ into the point–slope form of the equation.

$$\begin{aligned} y - y_1 &= m(x - x_1) \\ y - 3 &= 2(x - 1). \quad \text{Point-slope form} \end{aligned}$$

For some purposes, this form of the equation is fine; in other cases, you may want to rewrite it in the slope–intercept form.

Using algebra, we obtain the slope–intercept form of this equation:

$$\begin{aligned} y - 3 &= 2(x - 1) \\ y - 3 &= 2x - 2 \quad \text{Distributive property} \\ y &= 2x + 1 \quad \text{Add 3 to each side to obtain slope-intercept form.} \end{aligned}$$

See Figure 2.25 for the graph.

- (b) Slope -3 ; the point $(-4, 1)$ is on the line.

Solution Use the point–slope form with $m = -3$ and $(x_1, y_1) = (-4, 1)$:

$$\begin{aligned} y - y_1 &= m(x - x_1) \\ y - 1 &= -3[x - (-4)]. \quad \text{Point-slope form} \end{aligned}$$

Using algebra, we obtain the slope–intercept form of this equation:

$$\begin{aligned} y - 1 &= -3(x + 4) \\ y - 1 &= -3x - 12 \quad \text{Distributive property} \\ y &= -3x - 11. \quad \text{Slope-intercept form} \end{aligned}$$

See Figure 2.26. ✓₇

The point–slope form can also be used to find an equation of a line, given two different points on the line. The procedure is shown in the next example.

Example 10 Find an equation of the line through $(5, 4)$ and $(-10, -2)$.

Solution Begin by using the definition of the slope to find the slope of the line that passes through the two points:

$$\text{slope} = m = \frac{-2 - 4}{-10 - 5} = \frac{-6}{-15} = \frac{2}{5}$$


Use $m = 2/5$ and either of the given points in the point–slope form. If $(x_1, y_1) = (5, 4)$, then

$$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$$

$$y - 4 = \frac{2}{5}(x - 5) \quad \text{Let } y_1 = 4, m = \frac{2}{5}, \text{ and } x_1 = 5.$$

$$y - 4 = \frac{2}{5}x - \frac{10}{5} \quad \text{Distributive property}$$

$$y = \frac{2}{5}x + 2 \quad \text{Add 4 to both sides and simplify.}$$

See Figure 2.27. Check that the results are the same when $(x_1, y_1) = (-10, -2)$. 

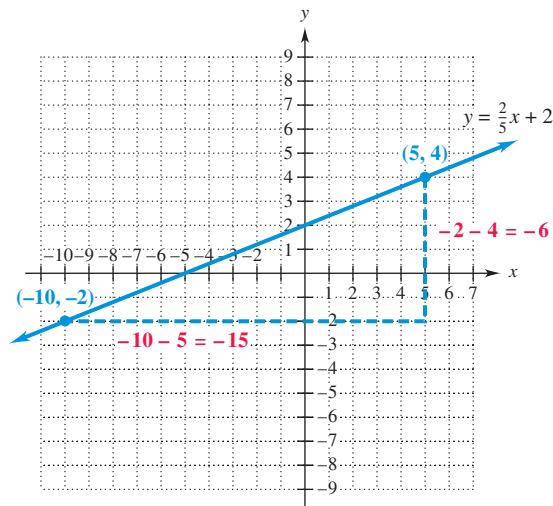


Figure 2.27

Checkpoint 8

Find an equation of the line through

- (a) $(2, 3)$ and $(-4, 6)$;
 (b) $(-8, 2)$ and $(3, -6)$.

Vertical Lines

The equation forms we just developed do not apply to vertical lines, because the slope is not defined for such lines. However, vertical lines can easily be described as graphs of equations.

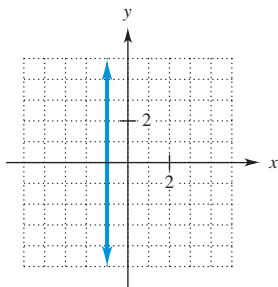


Figure 2.28

Example 11 Find the equation whose graph is the vertical line in Figure 2.28.

Solution Every point on the line has x -coordinate -1 and hence has the form $(-1, y)$. Thus, every point is a solution of the equation $x + 0y = -1$, which is usually written simply as $x = -1$. Note that -1 is the x -intercept of the line.

The argument in Example 11 also works in the general case.

If k is a constant, then the graph of the equation $x = k$ is the vertical line with x -intercept k .

Linear Equations

An equation in two variables whose graph is a straight line is called a **linear equation**. Linear equations have a variety of forms, as summarized in the following table.

Equation	Description
$x = k$	Vertical line , x -intercept k , no y -intercept, undefined slope
$y = k$	Horizontal line , y -intercept k , no x -intercept, slope 0
$y = mx + b$	Slope–intercept form , slope m , y -intercept b
$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$	Point–slope form , slope m , the line passes through (x_1, y_1)
$ax + by = c$	General form . If $a \neq 0$ and $b \neq 0$, the line has x -intercept c/a , y -intercept c/b , and slope $-a/b$.

Note that every linear equation can be written in general form. For example, $y = 4x - 5$ can be written in general form as $4x - y = 5$, and $x = 6$ can be written in general form as $x + 0y = 6$.

Applications

Many relationships are linear or almost linear, so that they can be approximated by linear equations.

Example 12 Business The world-wide sales (in billions of dollars) of men's razor blades can be approximated by the linear equation

$$y = .76x + 4.44,$$

where $x = 6$ corresponds to the year 2006. The graph appears in Figure 2.29. (Data from: *Wall Street Journal*, April 12, 2012.)

(a) What were the approximate razor sales in 2011?

Solution Substitute $x = 11$ in the equation and use a calculator to compute y :

$$\begin{aligned} y &= .76x + 4.44 \\ y &= .76(11) + 4.44 = 12.80. \end{aligned}$$

The approximate sales in 2011 were \$12.8 billion.

(b) In what year did sales reach \$10.5 billion?

Solution Substitute $y = 10.5$ into the equation and solve for x :

$$\begin{aligned} 10.5 &= .76x + 4.44 \\ 10.5 - 4.44 &= .76x && \text{Subtract 4.44 from each side.} \\ x &= \frac{10.5 - 4.44}{.76} && \text{Divide each side by .76 and reverse the equation.} \\ x &= 8.0. \end{aligned}$$

The year was 2008.

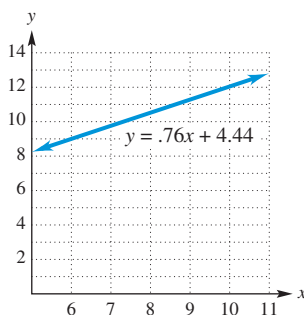


Figure 2.29

Example 13

Education According to the National Center for Education Statistics, the average cost of tuition and fees at public four-year universities was \$3768 in the year 2000 and grew in an approximately linear fashion to \$8751 in the year 2011.

(a) Find a linear equation for these data.

Solution Measure time along the x -axis and cost along the y -axis. Then the x -coordinate of each point is a year and the y -coordinate is the average cost of tuition and fees in that year. For convenience, let $x = 0$ correspond to 2000, and so $x = 11$ is 2011. Then the given data points are $(0, 3768)$ and $(11, 8751)$. The slope of the line joining these two points is

$$\frac{8751 - 3768}{11 - 0} = \frac{4983}{11} = 453.$$

Since we already know the y -intercept $b = 3768$ and the slope $m = 453$, we can write the equation as

$$y = mx + b = 453x + 3768.$$

We could also use the point-slope form with the point $(11, 8751)$, to obtain the equation of the line:

$$\begin{aligned} y - 8751 &= 453(x - 11) && \text{Point-slope form} \\ y - 8751 &= 453x - 4983 && \text{Distributive property} \\ y &= 453x + 3768. && \text{Add 8751 to both sides.} \end{aligned}$$

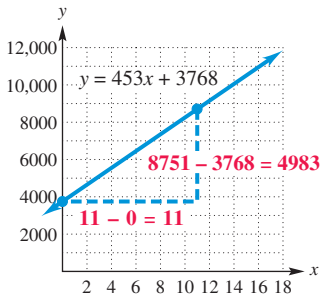


Figure 2.30

✓ Checkpoint 9

The average cost of tuition and fees at private four-year universities was \$19,307 in 2000 and \$34,805 in 2011.

- (a) Let $x = 0$ correspond to 2000, and find a linear equation for the given data. (*Hint: Round the slope to the nearest integer.*)
- (b) Assuming that your equation remains accurate, estimate the average cost in 2017.

Figure 2.30 shows the derived equation.

(b) Use this equation to estimate the average cost of tuition and fees in the fall of 2009.

Solution Since 2009 corresponds to $x = 9$, let $x = 9$ in the equation part of (a). Then

$$y = 453(9) + 3768 = \$7845.$$

(c) Assuming the equation remains valid beyond the fall of 2011, estimate the average cost of tuition and fees in the fall of 2018.

Solution The year 2018 corresponds to $x = 18$, so the average cost is

$$y = 453(18) + 3768 = \$11,922. \quad \checkmark_9$$

2.2 Exercises

Find the slope of the given line, if it is defined. (See Examples 1–3.)

- The line through $(2, 5)$ and $(0, 8)$
- The line through $(9, 0)$ and $(12, 12)$
- The line through $(-4, 14)$ and $(3, 0)$
- The line through $(-5, -2)$ and $(-4, 11)$
- The line through the origin and $(-4, 10)$
- The line through the origin and $(8, -2)$
- The line through $(-1, 4)$ and $(-1, 6)$
- The line through $(-3, 5)$ and $(2, 5)$

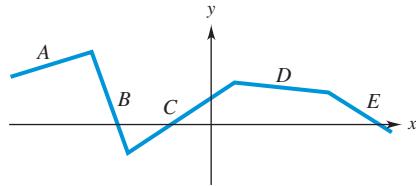
Find an equation of the line with the given y -intercept and slope m . (See Examples 4 and 5.)

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 9. $5, m = 4$ | 10. $-3, m = -7$ |
| 11. $1.5, m = -2.3$ | 12. $-4.5, m = 2.5$ |
| 13. $4, m = -3/4$ | 14. $-3, m = 4/3$ |

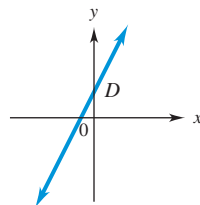
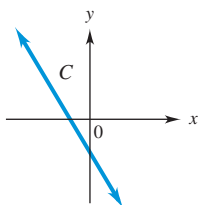
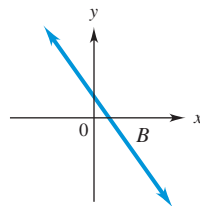
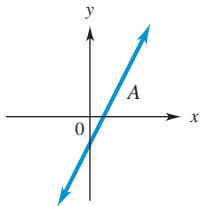
Find the slope m and the y -intercept b of the line whose equation is given. (See Example 6.)

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 15. $2x - y = 9$ | 16. $x + 2y = 7$ |
| 17. $6x = 2y + 4$ | 18. $4x + 3y = 24$ |

19. $6x - 9y = 16$ 20. $4x + 2y = 0$
 21. $2x - 3y = 0$ 22. $y = 7$
 23. $x = y - 5$
 24. On one graph, sketch six straight lines that meet at a single point and satisfy this condition: one line has slope 0, two lines have positive slope, two lines have negative slope, and one line has undefined slope.
 25. For which of the line segments in the figure is the slope
 (a) largest? (b) smallest?
 (c) largest in absolute value? (d) closest to 0?



26. Match each equation with the line that most closely resembles its graph. (*Hint: Consider the signs of m and b in the slope-intercept form.*)
 (a) $y = 3x + 2$ (b) $y = -3x + 2$
 (c) $y = 3x - 2$ (d) $y = -3x - 2$



Sketch the graph of the given equation and label its intercepts. (See Example 7.)

27. $2x - y = -2$ 28. $2y + x = 4$
 29. $2x + 3y = 4$ 30. $-5x + 4y = 3$
 31. $4x - 5y = 2$ 32. $3x + 2y = 8$

Determine whether each pair of lines is parallel, perpendicular, or neither. (See Example 8.)

33. $4x - 3y = 6$ and $3x + 4y = 8$
 34. $2x - 5y = 7$ and $15y - 5 = 6x$
 35. $3x + 2y = 8$ and $6y = 5 - 9x$
 36. $x - 3y = 4$ and $y = 1 - 3x$

37. $4x = 2y + 3$ and $2y = 2x + 3$
 38. $2x - y = 6$ and $x - 2y = 4$
 39. (a) Find the slope of each side of the triangle with vertices $(9, 6)$, $(-1, 2)$, and $(1, -3)$.
 (b) Is this triangle a right triangle? (*Hint: Are two sides perpendicular?*)
 40. (a) Find the slope of each side of the quadrilateral with vertices $(-5, -2)$, $(-3, 1)$, $(3, 0)$, and $(1, -3)$.
 (b) Is this quadrilateral a parallelogram? (*Hint: Are opposite sides parallel?*)

Find an equation of the line with slope m that passes through the given point. Put the answer in slope-intercept form. (See Example 10.)

41. $(-3, 2)$, $m = -2/3$ 42. $(-5, -2)$, $m = 4/5$
 43. $(2, 3)$, $m = 3$ 44. $(3, -4)$, $m = -1/4$
 45. $(10, 1)$, $m = 0$ 46. $(-3, -9)$, $m = 0$
 47. $(-2, 12)$, undefined slope 48. $(1, 1)$, undefined slope

Find an equation of the line that passes through the given points. (See Example 10.)

49. $(-1, 1)$ and $(2, 7)$ 50. $(2, 5)$ and $(0, 6)$
 51. $(1, 2)$ and $(3, 9)$ 52. $(-1, -2)$ and $(2, -1)$

Find an equation of the line satisfying the given conditions.

53. Through the origin with slope 5
 54. Through the origin and horizontal
 55. Through $(6, 8)$ and vertical
 56. Through $(7, 9)$ and parallel to $y = 6$
 57. Through $(3, 4)$ and parallel to $4x - 2y = 5$
 58. Through $(6, 8)$ and perpendicular to $y = 2x - 3$
 59. x -intercept 6; y -intercept -6
 60. Through $(-5, 2)$ and parallel to the line through $(1, 2)$ and $(4, 3)$
 61. Through $(-1, 3)$ and perpendicular to the line through $(0, 1)$ and $(2, 3)$
 62. y -intercept 3 and perpendicular to $2x - y + 6 = 0$

Business The lost value of equipment over a period of time is called depreciation. The simplest method for calculating depreciation is straight-line depreciation. The annual straight-line depreciation D of an item that cost x dollars with a useful life of n years is $D = (1/n)x$. Find the depreciation for items with the given characteristics.

63. Cost: \$15,965; life 12 yr
 64. Cost: \$41,762; life 15 yr
 65. Cost: \$201,457; life 30 yr

- 66. Business** Ral Corp. has an incentive compensation plan under which a branch manager receives 10% of the branch's income after deduction of the bonus, but before deduction of income tax. The income of a particular branch before the bonus and income tax was \$165,000. The tax rate was 30%. The bonus amounted to

- (a) \$12,600 (b) \$15,000
(c) \$16,500 (d) \$18,000

- 67. Business** According to data from the U.S. Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services, the sales (in billions of dollars) from drug prescriptions can be approximated by

$$y = 13.69x + 133.6,$$

where $x = 1$ corresponds to the year 2001. Find the approximate sales from prescription drugs in the following years.

- (a) 2005
(b) 2010
(c) Assuming this model remains accurate, in what year will the prescriptions be \$340 billion?

- 68. Business** The total revenue generated from hospital care (in billions of dollars) can be approximated by

$$y = 40.89x + 405.3,$$

where $x = 1$ corresponds to the year 2001. (Data from: U.S. Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services.)

- (a) What was the approximate revenue generated from hospital stays in 2010?
(b) Assuming the model remains accurate, in what year will revenue be approximately \$1 trillion?
69. Business The number of employees (in thousands) working in the motion picture and sound recording industries can be approximated by

$$y = -1.8x + 384.6,$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics.)

- (a) What was the number of employees in the year 2000?
(b) What was the number of employees in the year 2010?
(c) Assuming the model remains accurate, in what year will the number of employees be 350,000?
70. Business The number of golf facilities in the United States has been declining and can be approximated with the equation

$$y = -42.1x + 16,288,$$

where $x = 5$ corresponds to the year 2005. (Data from: National Golf Association.)

- (a) How many golf facilities were there in 2010?
(b) If the trend continues to hold, in what year will there be 15,500 golf facilities?
71. Business In the United States, total sales related to lawn care were approximately \$35.1 billion in 2005 and \$29.7 billion in 2011. (Data from: The National Gardening Association.)
(a) Let the x -axis denote time and the y -axis denote the sales related to lawn care (in billions of dollars). Let $x = 5$ correspond to 2005. Fill in the blanks. The given data is represented by the points (_____, \$35.1) and (11, _____).

- (b) Find the linear equation determined by the two points in part (a).
(c) Use the equation in part (b) to estimate the sales produced in 2009.
(d) If the model remains accurate, when will lawn care sales reach \$25 billion?

- 72. Business** According to the Bureau of Labor Statistics, there were approximately 16.3 million union workers in the year 2000 and 14.9 million union workers in the year 2010.

- (a) Consider the change in union workers to be linear and write an equation expressing the number y of union workers in terms of the number x of years since 2000.
(b) Assuming that the equation in part (a) remains accurate, use it to predict the number of union workers in 2015.

- 73. Business** The demand for chicken legs in the chicken industry has increased. According to the U.S. Department of Agriculture, in the year 2002, the average price per pound of chicken legs was \$.40 a pound, while in 2012, the price had risen to \$.75 a pound.

- (a) Write an equation assuming a linear trend expressing the price per pound of leg meat y in terms of the number x of years since 2002.
(b) Assuming the future accuracy of the equation you found in part (a), predict the price per pound of chicken legs in 2014.

- 74. Business** Similar to Exercise 73, the price per pound of chicken thighs was \$.60 a pound in the year 2002 and \$1.25 in 2012.

- (a) If the price of thigh meat is linear, express the price per pound of thigh meat y in terms of the number x of years since the year 2002.
(b) Use your expression from (a) to find the price of thigh meat in the year 2010.

- 75. Social Science** According to data from the U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration, there were 36,845 federal drug arrests in the year 2000 and 27,200 in the year 2010.

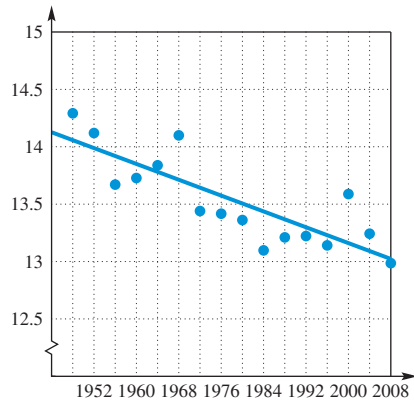
- (a) Write a linear equation expressing the number of federal drug arrests y in terms of the number x of years since 2000.
(b) Using the equation you found in (a), find the number of federal drug arrests in 2006.

- 76. Social Science** According to data from the U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration, the total seizure of drugs (in millions of pounds) was 1.5 in the year 2000 and 4.5 in the year 2010.

- (a) Write a linear equation expressing the weight in pounds from the seizure of drugs y in terms of the number x of years since 2000.
(b) How much was seized in 2007?
(c) If the trend continues, in what year will the total of seized drugs be 5.7 million pounds?

- 77. Physical Science** The accompanying graph shows the winning time (in minutes) at the Olympic Games from 1952 to 2008 for the men's 5000-meter run, together with a linear

approximation of the data. (Data from: *The World Almanac and Book of Facts*: 2009.)

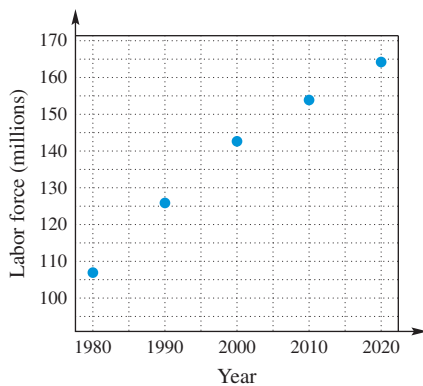


- (a) The equation for the linear approximation is $y = -.01723x + 47.61$.

What does the slope of this line represent? Why is the slope negative?

- (b) Use the approximation to estimate the winning time in the 2012 Olympics. If possible, check this estimate against the actual time.

78. **Business** The accompanying graph shows the number of civilians in the U.S. labor force (in millions) in selected years (with the year 2020 projected). (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics.)

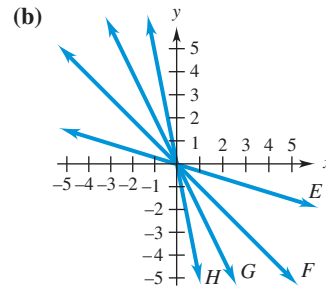


- (a) Use the data points (1980, 106.9) and (2010, 153.9) to estimate the slope of the line shown. Interpret this number.

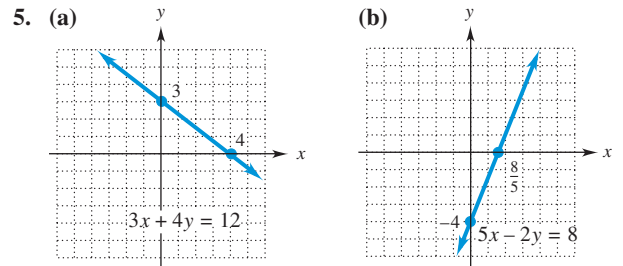
- (b) Use part (a) and the point (2010, 153.9) to approximate the civilian labor force in 2015.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- (a) $6/5$ (b) $-9/2$
- (a) $y = \frac{2}{3}x - 3$ (b) $y = -\frac{3}{2}x + \frac{1}{4}$
- (a) Slope $-1/4$; y-intercept $3/2$
(b) Slope $3/2$; y-intercept $-1/2$
- (a) Slope of $E = -.3$; slope of $F = -1$; slope of $G = -2$; slope of $H = -5$.



- (c) The larger the slope in absolute value, the more steeply the line falls from left to right.



- (a) Perpendicular (b) Neither (c) Parallel
- (a) $y + 2 = -\frac{3}{5}(x - 5)$; $y = -\frac{3}{5}x + 1$
(b) $y - 8 = \frac{1}{3}(x - 6)$; $y = \frac{1}{3}x + 6$
- (a) $2y = -x + 8$ (b) $11y = -8x - 42$
- (a) $y = 1409x + 19,307$ (b) \$43,260

2.3 Linear Models

In business and science, it is often necessary to make judgments on the basis of data from the past. For instance, a stock analyst might use a company's profits in previous years to estimate the next year's profits. Or a life insurance company might look at life expectancies of people born in various years to predict how much money it should expect to pay out in the next year.

In such situations, the available data is used to construct a mathematical model, such as an equation or a graph, which is used to approximate the likely outcome in cases where complete data is not available. In this section, we consider applications in which the data can be modeled by a linear equation.

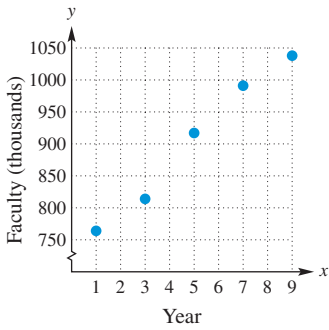


Figure 2.31

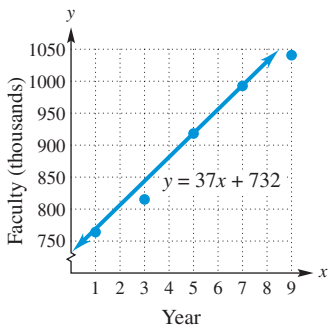


Figure 2.32

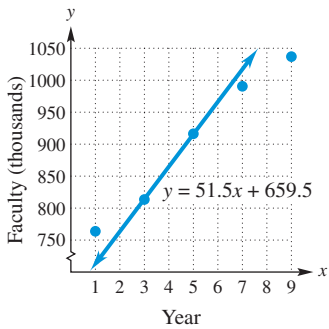


Figure 2.33

The simplest way to construct a linear model is to use the line determined by two of the data points, as illustrated in the following example.

Example 1 Social Science The number of full-time faculty at four-year colleges and universities (in thousands) in selected years is shown in the following table. (Data from: U.S. National Center for Education Statistics.)

Year	2001	2003	2005	2007	2009
Number of Faculty	764	814	917	991	1038

(a) Let $x = 1$ correspond to 2001, and plot the points (x, y) , where x is the year and y is the number of full-time faculty at four-year colleges and universities.

Solution The data points are $(1, 764)$, $(3, 814)$, $(5, 917)$, $(7, 991)$, and $(9, 1038)$, as shown in Figure 2.31.

(b) Use the data points $(5, 917)$ and $(9, 991)$ to find a line that models the data.

Solution The slope of the line through $(5, 917)$ and $(7, 991)$ is $\frac{991 - 917}{7 - 5} = \frac{74}{2} = 37$.

Using the point $(5, 917)$ and the slope 37, we find that the equation of this line is

$$\begin{aligned}
 y - 917 &= 37(x - 5) && \text{Point-slope form for the equation of a line} \\
 y - 917 &= 37x - 185 && \text{Distributive property} \\
 y &= 37x + 732 && \text{Slope-intercept form}
 \end{aligned}$$

The line and the data points are shown in Figure 2.32. Although the line fits the two points we used to calculate the slope perfectly, it overestimates the remaining three data points.

(c) Use the points $(3, 814)$ and $(5, 917)$ to find another line that models the data.

The slope of the line is $\frac{917 - 814}{5 - 3} = \frac{103}{2} = 51.5$. Using the point $(3, 814)$ and

the slope 51.5, we find that the equation of this line is

$$\begin{aligned}
 y - 814 &= 51.5(x - 3) && \text{Point-slope form for the equation of a line} \\
 y - 814 &= 51.5x - 154.5 && \text{Distributive property} \\
 y &= 51.5x + 659.5 && \text{Slope-intercept form}
 \end{aligned}$$

The line and the data points are shown in Figure 2.33. This line passes through two data points, but significantly underestimates the number of faculty in 2001 and overestimates the number of faculty in 2009.

Checkpoint 1

Use the points $(5, 917)$ and $(9, 1038)$ to find another model for the data in Example 1.

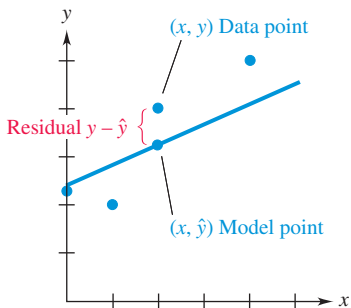


Figure 2.34

Opinions may vary as to which of the lines in Example 1 best fits the data. To make a decision, we might try to measure the amount of error in each model. One way to do this is to compute the difference between the number of faculty y and the amount \hat{y} given by the model. If the data point is (x, y) and the corresponding point on the line is (x, \hat{y}) , then the difference $y - \hat{y}$ measures the error in the model for that particular value of x . The number $y - \hat{y}$ is called a **residual**. As shown in Figure 2.34, the residual $y - \hat{y}$ is the vertical distance from the data point to the line (positive when the data point is above the line, negative when it is below the line, and 0 when it is on the line).

One way to determine how well a line fits the data points is to compute the sum of its residuals—that is, the sum of the individual errors. Unfortunately, however, the sum of the residuals of two different lines might be equal, thwarting our effort to decide which is the better fit. Furthermore, the residuals may sum to 0, which doesn't mean that there is no error, but only that the positive and negative errors (which might be quite large) cancel each other out. (See Exercise 11 at the end of this section for an example.)

To avoid this difficulty, mathematicians use the sum of the *squares* of the residuals to measure how well a line fits the data points. When the sum of the squares is used, a smaller sum means a smaller overall error and hence a better fit. The error is 0 only when all the data points lie on the line (a perfect fit).

Example 2 **Social Science** Two linear models for the number of full-time faculty at four-year colleges and universities were constructed in Example 1:

$$y = 37x + 732 \quad \text{and} \quad y = 51.5x + 659.5.$$

For each model, determine the five residuals, square of each residual, and the sum of the squares of the residuals.

Solution The information for each model is summarized in the following tables:

$$y = 37x + 732$$

Data Point (x, y)	Model Point (x, \hat{y})	Residual $y - \hat{y}$	Squared Residual $(y - \hat{y})^2$
(1, 764)	(1, 769)	-5	25
(3, 814)	(3, 843)	-29	841
(5, 917)	(5, 917)	0	0
(7, 991)	(7, 991)	0	0
(9, 1038)	(9, 1065)	-27	729
			Sum = 1595

$$y = 51.5x + 659.5$$

Data Point (x, y)	Model Point (x, \hat{y})	Residual $y - \hat{y}$	Squared Residual $(y - \hat{y})^2$
(1, 764)	(1, 711)	53	2809
(3, 814)	(3, 814)	0	0
(5, 917)	(5, 917)	0	0
(7, 991)	(7, 1020)	-29	841
(9, 1038)	(9, 1123)	-85	7225
			Sum = 10,875

✓ Checkpoint 2

Another model for the data in Examples 1 and 2 is $y = 34.25x + 729.75$. Use this line to find

- the residuals and
- the sum of the squares of the residuals.
- Does this line fit the data better than the two lines in Example 2?

According to this measure of the error, the line $y = 37x + 732$ is a better fit for the data because the sum of the squares of its residuals is smaller than the sum of the squares of the residuals for $y = 51.5x + 659.5$. ✓₂

📌 Linear Regression (Optional)*

Mathematical techniques from multivariable calculus can be used to prove the following result.

For any set of data points, there is one, and only one, line for which the sum of the squares of the residuals is as small as possible.

*Examples 3–6 require either a graphing calculator or a spreadsheet program.

This *line of best fit* is called the **least-squares regression line**, and the computational process for finding its equation is called **linear regression**. Linear-regression formulas are quite complicated and require a large amount of computation. Fortunately, most graphing calculators and spreadsheet programs can do linear regression quickly and easily.

NOTE The process outlined here works for most TI graphing calculators. Other graphing calculators and spreadsheet programs operate similarly, but check your instruction manual or see the Graphing Calculator Appendix.

Example 3 Social Science Recall the number of full-time faculty at four-year colleges and universities (in thousands) in selected years was as follows.

Year	2001	2003	2005	2007	2009
Number of Faculty	764	814	917	991	1038

Use a graphing calculator to do the following:

(a) Plot the data points with $x = 1$ corresponding to 2001.

Solution The data points are (1, 764), (3, 814), (5, 917), (7, 991), and (9, 1038). Press STAT EDIT to bring up the statistics editor. Enter the x -coordinates as list L_1 and the corresponding y -coordinates as L_2 , as shown in Figure 2.35. To plot the data points, go to the STAT PLOT menu, choose a plot (here it is Plot 1), choose ON, and enter the lists L_1 and L_2 as shown in Figure 2.36. Then set the viewing window as usual and press GRAPH to produce the plot in Figure 2.37.

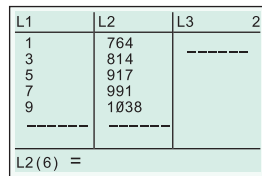


Figure 2.35

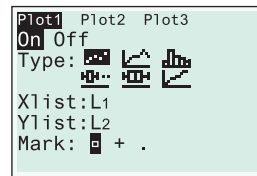


Figure 2.36

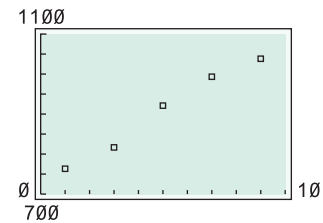


Figure 2.37

(b) Find the least squares regression line for these data.

Solution Go to the STAT CALC menu and choose LINREG, which returns you to the home screen. As shown in Figure 2.38, enter the list names and the place where the equation of the regression line should be stored (here, Y_1 is chosen; it is on the VARS Y-VARS FUNCTION menu); then press ENTER. Figure 2.39 shows that the equation of the regression line is

$$y = 36.25x + 723.55.$$

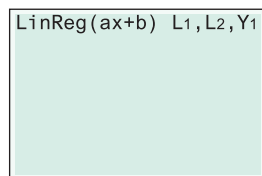


Figure 2.38

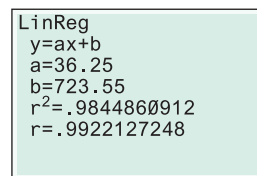


Figure 2.39

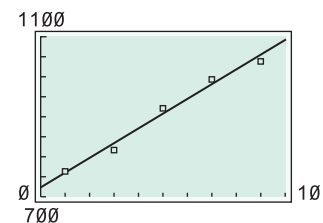


Figure 2.40

✓ Checkpoint 3

Use the least-squares regression line $y = 36.25x + 723.55$ and the data points of Example 3 to find

- (a) the residuals and
- (b) the sum of the squares of the residuals.
- (c) How does this line compare with those in Example 1 and Checkpoint 2?

(c) Graph the data points and the regression line on the same screen.

Solution Press GRAPH to see the line plotted with the data points (Figure 2.40). 3

Example 4 Social Science The following table gives the number (in thousands) of full-time faculty at two-year colleges. (Data from: U.S. National Center for Education Statistics.)

Year	2001	2003	2005	2007	2009
Number of Faculty	349	359	373	381	401

```
LinReg
y=ax+b
a=6.3
b=341.1
r2=.9804841897
r=.9901940162
```

Figure 2.41

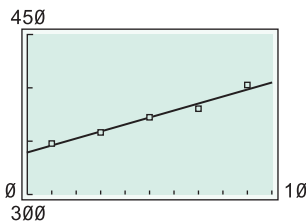


Figure 2.42

Checkpoint 4

Using only the data from 2005 and later in Example 4, find the equation of the least-squares regression line. Round the coefficients to two decimal places.

(a) Let $x = 1$ correspond to the year 2001. Use a graphing calculator or spreadsheet program to find the least-squares regression line that models the data in the table.

Solution The data points are $(1, 349)$, $(3, 359)$, $(5, 373)$, $(7, 381)$, and $(9, 401)$. Enter the x -coordinates as list L_1 and the corresponding y -coordinates as list L_2 in a graphing calculator and then find the regression line as in Figure 2.41.

(b) Plot the data points and the regression line on the same screen.

Solution See Figure 2.42, which shows that the line is a reasonable model for the data.

(c) Assuming the trend continues, estimate the number of faculty in the year 2015.

Solution The year 2015 corresponds to $x = 15$. Substitute $x = 15$ into the regression-line equation:

$$y = 6.3(15) + 341.1 = 435.6.$$

This model estimates that the number of full-time faculty at two-year colleges will be approximately 435,600 in the year 2015.

Correlation

Although the “best fit” line can always be found by linear regression, it may not be a good model. For instance, if the data points are widely scattered, no straight line will model the data accurately. We calculate a value called the **correlation coefficient** to assess the fit of the regression line to the scatterplot. It measures how closely the data points fit the regression line and thus indicates how good the regression line is for predictive purposes.

The correlation coefficient r is always between -1 and 1 . When $r = \pm 1$, the data points all lie on the regression line (a perfect fit). When the absolute value of r is close to 1 , the line fits the data quite well, and when r is close to 0 , the line is a poor fit for the data (but some other curve might be a good fit). Figure 2.43 shows how the value of r varies, depending on the pattern of the data points.

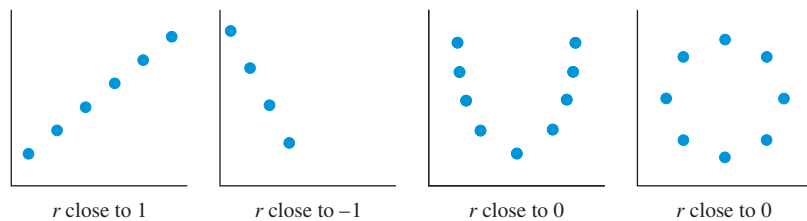


Figure 2.43



Example 5 Business The number of unemployed people in the U.S. labor force (in millions) in recent years is shown in the table. (Data from: U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics.)

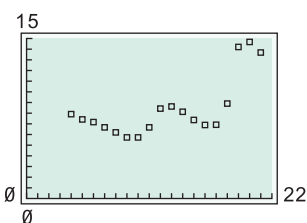


Figure 2.44

```

LinReg
y=ax+b
a=.3654158927
b=3.915079119
r2=.4781968171
r=.6915177634
    
```

Figure 2.45

✓ Checkpoint 5

Using only the data from 2002 and later in Example 5, find

- the equation of the least-squares regression line and
- the correlation coefficient.
- How well does this line fit the data?



Example 6

Education

Enrollment projections (in millions) for all U.S. colleges and universities in selected years are shown in the following table: (Data from: U.S. Center for Educational Statistics.)

Year	2005	2007	2008	2009	2010
Enrollment	17.5	18.2	19.1	20.4	21.0

- Let $x = 5$ correspond to the year 2005. Use a graphing calculator or spreadsheet program to find a linear model for the data and determine how well it fits the data points.

Solution The least-squares regression line (with coefficients rounded) is

$$y = .74x + 13.5,$$

as shown in Figure 2.46. The correlation coefficient is $r \approx .97$, which is very close to 1, and Figure 2.47 shows a linear trend. Thus, the line fits the data well.

- Assuming the trend continues, predict the enrollment in 2015.

Solution Let $x = 15$ (corresponding to 2015) in the regression equation:

$$y = .74(15) + 13.5 = 24.6.$$

Therefore, the enrollment in 2015 will be approximately 24.6 million students.

- According to this model, in what year will enrollment reach 30 million?

Solution Let $y = 30$ and solve the regression equation for x :

$$\begin{aligned}
 y &= .74x + 13.5 \\
 30 &= .74x + 13.5 && \text{Let } y = 30. \\
 16.5 &= .74x && \text{Subtract 13.5 from both sides.} \\
 x &\approx 22.3. && \text{Divide both sides by 0.74.}
 \end{aligned}$$

Since these enrollment figures change once a year, use the nearest integer value for x , namely, 22. So enrollment will reach 30 million in 2022.

```

LinReg
y=ax+b
a=.7391891892
b=13.47432432
r2=.9433889092
r=.9712820956
    
```

Figure 2.46

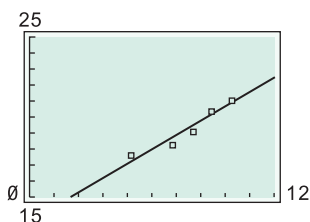


Figure 2.47

2.3 Exercises

1. **Physical Science** The following table shows equivalent Fahrenheit and Celsius temperatures:

Degrees Fahrenheit	32	68	104	140	176	212
Degrees Celsius	0	20	40	60	80	100

- (a) Choose any two data points and use them to construct a linear equation that models the data, with x being Fahrenheit and y being Celsius.
- (b) Use the model in part (a) to find the Celsius temperature corresponding to

50° Fahrenheit and 75° Fahrenheit.

Physical Science Use the linear equation derived in Exercise 1 to work the following problems.

2. Convert each temperature.
- (a) 58°F to Celsius (b) 50°C to Fahrenheit
- (c) -10°C to Fahrenheit (d) -20°F to Celsius
3. According to the *World Almanac and Book of Facts*, 2008, Venus is the hottest planet, with a surface temperature of 867° Fahrenheit. What is this temperature in degrees Celsius?
4. Find the temperature at which Celsius and Fahrenheit temperatures are numerically equal.

In each of the next set of problems, assume that the data can be modeled by a straight line and that the trend continues indefinitely. Use two data points to find such a line and then answer the question. (See Example 1.)

5. **Business** The Consumer Price Index (CPI), which measures the cost of a typical package of consumer goods, was 201.6 in the year 2006 and 224.9 in the year 2011. Let $x = 6$ correspond to 2006, and estimate the CPI in 2008 and 2015. (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics.)
6. **Finance** The approximate number (in millions) of individual tax returns filed with the Internal Revenue Service in the year 2001 was 127.1 and in the year 2011 it was 140.8. Let $x = 1$ correspond to 2001, and estimate the number of returns filed in 2005 and 2012. (Data from: U.S. Internal Revenue Service.)
7. **Business** The number (in millions) of employees working in the finance and insurance industries was 6.0 in the year 2000 and 6.5 in the year 2008. Let $x = 0$ correspond to 2000, and estimate the number of employees in 2010. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)
8. **Business** The number (in millions) of employees working in the health care and social assistance industries was 14.1 in the year 2000 and 17.2 in the year 2008. Let $x = 0$ correspond to 2000, and estimate the number of employees in 2014. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)
9. **Physical Science** Suppose a baseball is thrown at 85 miles per hour. The ball will travel 320 feet when hit by a bat swung

at 50 miles per hour and will travel 440 feet when hit by a bat swung at 80 miles per hour. Let y be the number of feet traveled by the ball when hit by a bat swung at x miles per hour. (Note: The preceding data are valid for $50 \leq x \leq 90$, where the bat is 35 inches long, weighs 32 ounces, and strikes a waist-high pitch so that the place of the swing lies at 10° from the diagonal). [Data from: Robert K. Adair, *The Physics of Baseball* (HarperCollins, 1990)]. How much farther will a ball travel for each mile-per-hour increase in the speed of the bat?

10. **Physical Science** Ski resorts require large amounts of water in order to make snow. Snowmass Ski Area in Colorado plans to pump at least 1120 gallons of water per minute for at least 12 hours a day from Snowmass Creek between mid-October and late December. Environmentalists are concerned about the effects on the ecosystem. Find the minimum amount of water pumped in 30 days. [Hint: Let y be the total number of gallons pumped x days after pumping begins. Note that $(0, 0)$ is on the graph of the equation.] (Data from: York Snow, Inc.)

In each of the next two problems, two linear models are given for the data. For each model,

- (a) find the residuals and their sum;
- (b) find the sum of the squares of the residuals;
- (c) decide which model is the better fit. (See Example 2.)

11. **Finance** The following table shows the number of operating federal credit unions in the United States for several years.

Year	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
Number of federal credit unions	5036	4847	4714	4589	4447

Let $x = 7$ correspond to the year 2007. Two equations that model the data are $y = -143.6x + 6019$ and $y = -170.2x + 6250$. (Data from: National Credit Union Association.)

12. **Business** The percentage of households using direct deposit for selected years is shown in the following table. (Data from: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.)

Year	1995	1998	2001	2004	2007
Percent of households	53	67	71	75	80

Let $x = 5$ correspond to the year 1995. Two equations that model the data are $y = 2.1x + 47$ and $y = 2.8x + 44$.

✎ In each of the following problems, determine whether a straight line is a good model for the data. Do this visually by plotting the data points and by finding the correlation coefficient for the least-squares regression line. (See Examples 5 and 6.)


13. **Business** The accompanying table gives the total sales (in billions of dollars) for the aerospace industry. Let $x = 6$

correspond to the year 2006. (Data from: ProQuest Statistical Abstract of the United States 2013.)

Year	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
Total Sales	177.3	192.0	194.7	203.0	203.6	210.0

14. **Business** The accompanying table gives the number (in thousands) of new houses built for each of the years. Let $x = 6$ correspond to the year 2006. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

Year	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011
Total Sales	1801	1355	906	554	587	609

 In Exercises 15–18 find the required linear model using least-squares regression. (See Examples 3–6.)

15. **Business** Use the data on sales of the aerospace industry in Exercise 13.

- Find a linear model for the data with $x = 6$ corresponding to the year 2006.
- Assuming the trend continues, estimate the total sales for the year 2015.

16. **Health** The accompanying table shows the number of deaths per 100,000 people from heart disease in selected years. (Data from: U.S. National Center for Health Statistics.)

Year	1985	1990	1995	2000	2005	2010
Deaths	375.0	321.8	293.4	257.6	211.1	178.5

- Find a linear model for the data with $x = 5$ corresponding to the year 1985.
 - Assuming the trend continues, estimate the number of deaths per 100,000 people for the year 2015.
17. **Business** The accompanying table shows the revenue (in billions of dollars) from newspaper publishers. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

Year	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010
Revenue	48.9	47.6	43.9	36.4	34.7

- Find a linear model for the data with $x = 6$ corresponding to the year 2006.
 - Assuming the trend continues, estimate the revenue in 2016.
18. **Health** Researchers wish to determine if a relationship exists between age and systolic blood pressure (SBP). The accompanying table gives the age and systolic blood pressure for 10 adults.

Age (x)	35	37	42	46	53	57	61	65	69	74
SBP (y)	102	127	120	131	126	137	140	130	148	147

- Find a linear model for these data using age (x) to predict systolic blood pressure (y).
- Use the results from part (a) to predict the systolic blood pressure for a person who is 42-years-old, 53-years-old, and 69-years-old. How well do the actual data agree with the predicted values?
- Use the results from part (a) to predict the systolic blood pressure for a person who is 45-years-old and 70-years-old.

 Work these problems.

19. **Business** The estimated operating revenue (in billions of dollars) from Internet publishing and broadcasting is given in the accompanying table. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

Year	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010
Revenue	11.5	15.0	17.8	19.1	21.3

- Find the least squares regression line that models these data with $x = 6$ corresponding to the year 2006.
 - Assuming the trend continues, estimate the operating revenue in the years 2012 and 2014.
20. **Business** The number of basic cable television subscribers (in millions) is shown in the following table for various years. (Data from: ProQuest Statistical Abstract of the United States 2013.)

Year	2002	2004	2006	2008	2010
Subscribers	66.5	65.7	65.3	64.3	61.0

- Find the least-squares regression line that models these data with $x = 2$ corresponding to the year 2002.
 - Find the number of subscribers for the year 2009.
 - If the trend continues indefinitely, determine in what year there will be 55 million subscribers.
 - Find the correlation coefficient.
21. **Social Science** The number (in thousands) of traffic fatalities by year is displayed in the accompanying table. (Data from: U.S. National Highway Traffic Administration.)

Year	2005	2007	2008	2009	2010
Traffic Fatalities	43.5	41.3	37.4	33.9	32.9

- Find the least-squares regression line that models these data with $x = 5$ corresponding to the year 2005.
- Find the number of deaths for the year 2006.
- If the trend continues indefinitely, determine in what year there will be 28 thousand deaths.
- Find the correlation coefficient.

22. **Health** The following table shows men's and women's life expectancy at birth (in years) for selected birth years in the United States: (Data from: U.S. Center for National Health Statistics.)

Birth Year	Life Expectancy	
	Men	Women
1970	67.1	74.7
1975	68.8	76.6
1980	70.0	77.4
1985	71.1	78.2
1990	71.8	78.8
1995	72.5	78.9
1998	73.8	79.5
2000	74.3	79.7
2001	74.4	79.8
2004	75.2	80.4
2010	75.6	81.4

- (a) Find the least-squares regression line for the men's data, with $x = 70$ corresponding to 1970.
- (b) Find the least-squares regression line for the women's data, with $x = 70$ corresponding to 1970.
- (c) Suppose life expectancy continues to increase as predicted by the equations in parts (a) and (b). Will men's life expectancy ever be the same as women's? If so, in what birth year will this occur?

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- $y = 30.25x + 765.75$
- (a) $0, -18.5, 16, 21.5, 0$
(b) 1060.5
(c) Yes, because the sum of the squares of the residuals is lower.
- (a) $4.2, -18.3, 12.2, 13.7, -11.8$
(b) 828.30
(c) It fits the data best because the sum of the squares of its residuals is smallest.
- $y = 7x + 336$
- (a) $y = .76x - 2.66$
(b) $r \approx .74$
(c) It fits reasonably well because $|r|$ is close to 1 and the pattern is linear.

2.4 Linear Inequalities

An **inequality** is a statement that one mathematical expression is greater than (or less than) another. Inequalities are very important in applications. For example, a company wants revenue to be *greater than* costs and must use *no more than* the total amount of capital or labor available.

Inequalities may be solved by algebraic or geometric methods. In this section, we shall concentrate on algebraic methods for solving **linear inequalities**, such as

$$4 - 3x \leq 7 + 2x \quad \text{and} \quad -2 < 5 + 3m < 20,$$

and absolute-value inequalities, such as $|x - 2| < 5$. The following properties are the basic algebraic tools for working with inequalities.

Properties of Inequality

For real numbers a , b , and c ,

- if $a < b$, then $a + c < b + c$;
- if $a < b$, and if $c > 0$, then $ac < bc$;
- if $a < b$, and if $c < 0$, then $ac > bc$.

Throughout this section, definitions are given only for $<$, but they are equally valid for $>$, \leq , and \geq .

CAUTION Pay careful attention to part (c) in the previous box; if both sides of an inequality are multiplied by a negative number, the direction of the inequality symbol must be reversed. For example, starting with the true statement $-3 < 5$ and multiplying both sides by the positive number 2 gives

$$-3 \cdot 2 < 5 \cdot 2,$$

or

$$-6 < 10,$$

still a true statement. However, starting with $-3 < 5$ and multiplying both sides by the negative number -2 gives a true result only if the direction of the inequality symbol is reversed:

$$\begin{aligned} -3(-2) &> 5(-2) \\ 6 &> -10. \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 1

- (a) First multiply both sides of $-6 < -1$ by 4, and then multiply both sides of $-6 < -1$ by -7 .
- (b) First multiply both sides of $9 \geq -4$ by 2, and then multiply both sides of $9 \geq -4$ by -5 .
- (c) First add 4 to both sides of $-3 < -1$, and then add -6 to both sides of $-3 < -1$.

Example 1 Solve $3x + 5 > 11$. Graph the solution.

Solution First add -5 to both sides:

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + 5 + (-5) &> 11 + (-5) \\ 3x &> 6. \end{aligned}$$

Now multiply both sides by $1/3$:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{3}(3x) &> \frac{1}{3}(6) \\ x &> 2. \end{aligned}$$

(Why was the direction of the inequality symbol not changed?) In interval notation (introduced in Section 1.1), the solution is the interval $(2, \infty)$, which is graphed on the number line in Figure 2.48. The parenthesis at 2 shows that 2 is not included in the solution.



Figure 2.48

As a partial check, note that 0, which is not part of the solution, makes the inequality false, while 3, which is part of the solution, makes it true:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} ? & & ? \\ 3(0) + 5 > 11 & & 3(3) + 5 > 11 \\ 5 > 11 & \text{False} & 14 > 11. \quad \text{True} \end{array}$$

✓ Checkpoint 2

Solve these inequalities. Graph each solution.

- (a) $5z - 11 < 14$
- (b) $-3k \leq -12$
- (c) $-8y \geq 32$

Example 2 Solve $4 - 3x \leq 7 + 2x$.

Solution Add -4 to both sides:

$$\begin{aligned} 4 - 3x + (-4) &\leq 7 + 2x + (-4) \\ -3x &\leq 3 + 2x. \end{aligned}$$

Add $-2x$ to both sides (remember that *adding* to both sides never changes the direction of the inequality symbol):

$$\begin{aligned} -3x + (-2x) &\leq 3 + 2x + (-2x) \\ -5x &\leq 3. \end{aligned}$$

Multiply both sides by $-1/5$. Since $-1/5$ is negative, change the direction of the inequality symbol:

$$-\frac{1}{5}(-5x) \geq -\frac{1}{5}(3)$$

$$x \geq -\frac{3}{5}$$


Figure 2.49 shows a graph of the solution, $[-3/5, \infty)$. The bracket in Figure 2.49 shows that $-3/5$ is included in the solution. 



Figure 2.49

 **Checkpoint 3**

Solve these inequalities. Graph each solution.

- (a) $8 - 6t \geq 2t + 24$
- (b) $-4r + 3(r + 1) < 2r$

Example 3 Solve $-2 < 5 + 3m < 20$. Graph the solution.

Solution The inequality $-2 < 5 + 3m < 20$ says that $5 + 3m$ is between -2 and 20 . We can solve this inequality with an extension of the properties given at the beginning of this section. Work as follows, first adding -5 to each part:

$$-2 + (-5) < 5 + 3m + (-5) < 20 + (-5)$$

$$-7 < 3m < 15.$$

Now multiply each part by $1/3$:

$$-\frac{7}{3} < m < 5.$$


A graph of the solution, $(-7/3, 5)$, is given in Figure 2.50. 



Figure 2.50

 **Checkpoint 4**

Solve each of the given inequalities. Graph each solution.

- (a) $9 < k + 5 < 13$
- (b) $-6 \leq 2z + 4 \leq 12$

Example 4 The formula for converting from Celsius to Fahrenheit temperature is

$$F = \frac{9}{5}C + 32.$$

What Celsius temperature range corresponds to the range from 32°F to 77°F ?

Solution The Fahrenheit temperature range is $32 < F < 77$. Since $F = (9/5)C + 32$, we have

$$32 < \frac{9}{5}C + 32 < 77.$$

Solve the inequality for C:

$$32 < \frac{9}{5}C + 32 < 77$$

$$0 < \frac{9}{5}C < 45 \quad \text{Subtract 32 from each part.}$$

$$\frac{5}{9} \cdot 0 < \frac{5}{9} \cdot \frac{9}{5}C < \frac{5}{9} \cdot 45 \quad \text{Multiply each part by } \frac{5}{9}.$$

$$0 < C < 25.$$

The corresponding Celsius temperature range is 0°C to 25°C . 

 **Checkpoint 5**

In Example 4, what Celsius temperatures correspond to the range from 5°F to 95°F ?

A product will break even or produce a profit only if the revenue R from selling the product at least equals the cost C of producing it—that is, if $R \geq C$.

Example 5 Business A company analyst has determined that the cost to produce and sell x units of a certain product is $C = 20x + 1000$. The revenue for that product is $R = 70x$. Find the values of x for which the company will break even or make a profit on the product.

Solution Solve the inequality $R \geq C$:

$$\begin{aligned} R &\geq C \\ 70x &\geq 20x + 1000 && \text{Let } R = 70x \text{ and } C = 20x + 1000. \\ 50x &\geq 1000 && \text{Subtract } 20x \text{ from both sides.} \\ x &\geq 20. && \text{Divide both sides by } 50. \end{aligned}$$

The company must produce and sell 20 items to break even and more than 20 to make a profit.

Example 6 Business A pretzel manufacturer can sell a 6-ounce bag of pretzels to a wholesaler for \$.35 a bag. The variable cost of producing each bag is \$.25 per bag, and the fixed cost for the manufacturing operation is \$110,000.* How many bags of pretzels need to be sold in order to break even or earn a profit?

Solution Let x be the number of bags produced. Then the revenue equation is

$$R = .35x,$$

and the cost is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Cost} &= \text{Fixed Costs} + \text{Variable Costs} \\ C &= 110,000 + .25x. \end{aligned}$$

We now solve the inequality $R \geq C$:

$$\begin{aligned} R &\geq C \\ .35x &\geq 110,000 + .25x \\ .1x &\geq 110,000 \\ x &\geq 1,110,000. \end{aligned}$$

The manufacturer must produce and sell 1,110,000 bags of pretzels to break even and more than that to make a profit.

Absolute-Value Inequalities

You may wish to review the definition of absolute value in Section 1.1 before reading the following examples, which show how to solve inequalities involving absolute values.

Example 7 Solve each inequality.

(a) $|x| < 5$

Solution Because absolute value gives the distance from a number to 0, the inequality $|x| < 5$ is true for all real numbers whose distance from 0 is less than 5. This includes all numbers between -5 and 5 , or numbers in the interval $(-5, 5)$. A graph of the solution is shown in Figure 2.51 on the following page.

*Variable costs, fixed costs, and revenue were discussed on page 35.

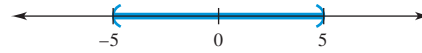


Figure 2.51

(b) $|x| > 5$

Solution The solution of $|x| > 5$ is given by all those numbers whose distance from 0 is *greater* than 5. This includes the numbers satisfying $x < -5$ or $x > 5$. A graph of the solution, all numbers in

$$(-\infty, -5) \quad \text{or} \quad (5, \infty),$$

is shown in Figure 2.52. ✓₆

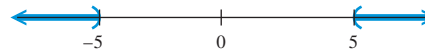


Figure 2.52

✓ **Checkpoint 6**

Solve each inequality. Graph each solution.

- (a) $|x| \leq 1$
- (b) $|y| \geq 3$

The preceding examples suggest the following generalizations.

Assume that a and b are real numbers and that b is positive.

1. Solve $|a| < b$ by solving $-b < a < b$.
2. Solve $|a| > b$ by solving $a < -b$ or $a > b$.

Example 8 Solve $|x - 2| < 5$.

Solution Replace a with $x - 2$ and b with 5 in property (1) in the box above. Now solve $|x - 2| < 5$ by solving the inequality

$$-5 < x - 2 < 5.$$

Add 2 to each part, getting the solution

$$-3 < x < 7,$$

which is graphed in Figure 2.53. ✓₇



Figure 2.53

✓ **Checkpoint 7**

Solve each inequality. Graph each solution.

- (a) $|p + 3| < 4$
- (b) $|2k - 1| \leq 7$

Example 9 Solve $|2 - 7m| - 1 > 4$.

Solution First add 1 to both sides:

$$|2 - 7m| > 5$$

Now use property (2) from the preceding box to solve $|2 - 7m| > 5$ by solving the inequality

$$2 - 7m < -5 \quad \text{or} \quad 2 - 7m > 5.$$

Solve each part separately:

$$\begin{aligned} -7m < -7 & \quad \text{or} \quad -7m > 3 \\ m > 1 & \quad \text{or} \quad m < -\frac{3}{7}. \end{aligned}$$

The solution, all numbers in $(-\infty, -\frac{3}{7})$ or $(1, \infty)$, is graphed in Figure 2.54. ✓₈

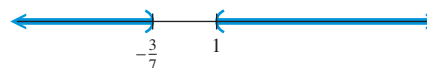


Figure 2.54

✓ **Checkpoint 8**

Solve each inequality. Graph each solution.

- (a) $|y - 2| > 5$
- (b) $|3k - 1| \geq 2$
- (c) $|2 + 5r| - 4 \geq 1$

✓ Checkpoint 9

Solve each inequality.

- (a) $|5m - 3| > -10$
 (b) $|6 + 5a| < -9$
 (c) $|8 + 2r| > 0$

Example 10

Solve $|3 - 7x| \geq -8$.

Solution The absolute value of a number is always nonnegative. Therefore, $|3 - 7x| \geq -8$ is always true, so the solution is the set of all real numbers. Note that the inequality $|3 - 7x| \leq -8$ has no solution, because the absolute value of a quantity can never be less than a negative number. ✓₉

2.4 Exercises

1. Explain how to determine whether a parenthesis or a bracket is used when graphing the solution of a linear inequality.
2. The three-part inequality $p < x < q$ means “ p is less than x and x is less than q .” Which one of the given inequalities is not satisfied by any real number x ? Explain why.
- (a) $-3 < x < 5$ (b) $0 < x < 4$
 (c) $-7 < x < -10$ (d) $-3 < x < -2$

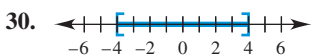
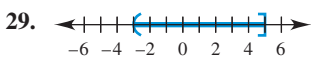
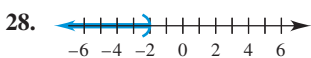
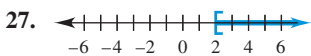
Solve each inequality and graph each solution. (See Examples 1–3.)

3. $-8k \leq 32$ 4. $-4a \leq 36$
 5. $-2b > 0$ 6. $6 - 6z < 0$
 7. $3x + 4 \leq 14$ 8. $2y - 7 < 9$
 9. $-5 - p \geq 3$ 10. $5 - 3r \leq -4$
 11. $7m - 5 < 2m + 10$ 12. $6x - 2 > 4x - 10$
 13. $m - (4 + 2m) + 3 < 2m + 2$
 14. $2p - (3 - p) \leq -7p - 2$
 15. $-2(3y - 8) \geq 5(4y - 2)$
 16. $5r - (r + 2) \geq 3(r - 1) + 6$
 17. $3p - 1 < 6p + 2(p - 1)$
 18. $x + 5(x + 1) > 4(2 - x) + x$
 19. $-7 < y - 2 < 5$ 20. $-3 < m + 6 < 2$
 21. $8 \leq 3r + 1 \leq 16$ 22. $-6 < 2p - 3 \leq 5$
 23. $-4 \leq \frac{2k - 1}{3} \leq 2$ 24. $-1 \leq \frac{5y + 2}{3} \leq 4$

25. $\frac{3}{5}(2p + 3) \geq \frac{1}{10}(5p + 1)$

26. $\frac{8}{3}(z - 4) \leq \frac{2}{9}(3z + 2)$

In the following exercises, write a linear inequality that describes the given graph.



Business In Exercises 31–36, find all values of x for which the given products will at least break even. (See Examples 5 and 6.)

31. The cost to produce x units of wire is $C = 50x + 6000$, while the revenue is $R = 65x$.
 32. The cost to produce x units of squash is $C = 100x + 6000$, while the revenue is $R = 500x$.
 33. $C = 85x + 1000$; $R = 105x$
 34. $C = 70x + 500$; $R = 60x$
 35. $C = 1000x + 5000$; $R = 900x$
 36. $C = 25,000x + 21,700,000$; $R = 102,500x$

Solve each inequality. Graph each solution. (See Examples 7–10.)

37. $|p| > 7$ 38. $|m| < 2$
 39. $|r| \leq 5$ 40. $|a| < -2$
 41. $|b| > -5$ 42. $|2x + 5| < 1$
 43. $\left|x - \frac{1}{2}\right| < 2$ 44. $|3z + 1| \geq 4$
 45. $|8b + 5| \geq 7$ 46. $\left|5x + \frac{1}{2}\right| - 2 < 5$

Work these problems.

Physical Science The given inequality describes the monthly average high daily temperature T in degrees Fahrenheit in the given location. (Data from: Weatherbase.com.) What range of temperatures corresponds to the inequality?

47. $|T - 83| \leq 7$; Miami, Florida
 48. $|T - 63| \leq 27$; Boise, Idaho
 49. $|T - 61| \leq 21$; Flagstaff, Arizona
 50. $|T - 43| \leq 22$; Anchorage, Alaska

51. **Natural Science** Human beings emit carbon dioxide when they breathe. In one study, the emission rates of carbon dioxide by college students were measured both during lectures and during exams. The average individual rate R_L (in grams per hour) during a lecture class satisfied the inequality $|R_L - 26.75| \leq 1.42$, whereas during an exam, the rate R_E satisfied the inequality $|R_E - 38.75| \leq 2.17$. (Data from: T.C. Wang, *ASHRAE Transactions* 81 [Part 1], 32 [1975].)

- (a) Find the range of values for R_L and R_E .
 (b) A class had 225 students. If T_L and T_E represent the total amounts of carbon dioxide (in grams) emitted during

a one-hour lecture and one-hour exam, respectively, write inequalities that describe the ranges for T_L and T_E .






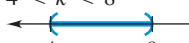
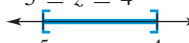




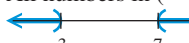

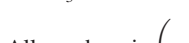
52. **Social Science** When administering a standard intelligence quotient (IQ) test, we expect about one-third of the scores to be more than 12 units above 100 or more than 12 units below 100. Describe this situation by writing an absolute value inequality.
53. **Social Science** A Gallup poll found that among Americans aged 18–34 years who consume alcohol, between 35% and 43% prefer beer. Let B represent the percentage of American alcohol consumers who prefer beer. Write the preceding information as an inequality. (Data from: Gallup.com.)
54. **Social Science** A Gallup poll in February 2013 found that between 17% and 19% of Americans considered themselves underemployed (working part-time or not working at all, but wanting to work full-time). Let U represent the percentage of underemployed workers. Write the preceding information as an inequality. (Data from: Gallup.com.)
55. **Finance** The following table shows the 2012 federal income tax for a single person. (Data from: Internal Revenue Service.)

If Taxable Income Is Over	But Not Over	Tax Rate
\$0	\$8700	10%
\$8700	\$35,350	15%
\$35,350	\$85,650	25%
\$85,650	\$178,650	28%
\$178,650	\$388,350	33%
\$388,350	No limits	35%

Let x denote the taxable income. Write each of the six income ranges in the table as an inequality.

56. **Health** Federal guidelines require drinking water to have less than .050 milligrams per liter of lead. A test using 21 samples of water in a Midwestern city found that the average amount of lead in the samples was 0.040 milligrams per liter. All samples had lead content within 5% of the average.
- Select a variable and write down what it represents.
 - Write an inequality to express the results obtained from the sample.
 - Did all the samples meet the federal requirement?

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- $-24 < -4$; $42 > 7$
 - $1 < 3$; $-9 < -7$
- $z < 5$

 - $k \geq 4$

 - $y \leq -4$

- $t \leq -2$

 - $r > 1$

- $4 < k < 8$

 - $-5 \leq z \leq 4$

- -15°C to 35°C
- $[-1, 1]$

 - All numbers in $(-\infty, -3]$ or $[3, \infty)$

- $(-7, 1)$

 - $[-3, 4]$

- All numbers in $(-\infty, -3)$ or $(7, \infty)$

 - All numbers in $(-\infty, -\frac{1}{3}]$ or $[1, \infty)$

 - All numbers in $(-\infty, -\frac{7}{5})$ or $[\frac{3}{5}, \infty)$

- All real numbers
 - No solution
 - All real numbers except -4

2.5 Polynomial and Rational Inequalities

This section deals with the solution of polynomial and rational inequalities, such as

$$r^2 + 3r - 4 \geq 0, \quad x^3 - x \leq 0, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{2x - 1}{3x + 4} < 5.$$

We shall concentrate on algebraic solution methods, but to understand why these methods work, we must first look at such inequalities from a graphical point of view.

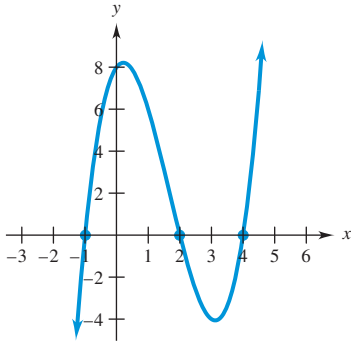


Figure 2.55

Example 1

Use the graph of $y = x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8$ in Figure 2.55 to solve each of the given inequalities.

(a) $x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8 > 0$

Solution Each point on the graph has coordinates of the form $(x, x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8)$. The number x is a solution of the inequality exactly when the second coordinate of this point is positive—that is, when the point lies *above* the x -axis. So to solve the inequality, we need only find the first coordinates of points on the graph that are above the x -axis. This information can be read from Figure 2.55. The graph is above the x -axis when $-1 < x < 2$ and when $x > 4$. Therefore, the solutions of the inequality are all numbers x in the interval $(-1, 2)$ or the interval $(4, \infty)$.

(b) $x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8 < 0$

Solution The number x is a solution of the inequality exactly when the second coordinate of the point $(x, x^3 - 5x^2 + 2x + 8)$ on the graph is negative—that is, when the point lies *below* the x -axis. Figure 2.55 shows that the graph is below the x -axis when $x < -1$ and when $2 < x < 4$. Hence, the solutions are all numbers x in the interval $(-\infty, -1)$ or the interval $(2, 4)$.

The solution process in Example 1 depends only on knowing the graph and its x -intercepts (that is, the points where the graph intersects the x -axis). This information can often be obtained algebraically, without doing any graphing.

Steps for Solving an Inequality Involving a Polynomial

1. Rewrite the inequality so that all the terms are on the left side and 0 is on the right side.
2. Find the x -intercepts by setting $y = 0$ and solving for x .
3. Divide the x -axis (number line) into regions using the solutions found in Step 2.
4. Test a point in each region by choosing a value for x and substituting it into the equation for y .
5. Determine which regions satisfy the original inequality and graph the solution.

Example 2

Solve each of the given quadratic inequalities.

(a) $x^2 - x < 12$

Solution

Step 1 Rewrite the inequality so that all the terms are on the left side and 0 is on the right side.

$$\text{Hence we add } -12 \text{ to each side and obtain } x^2 - x - 12 < 0.$$

Step 2 Find the x -intercepts by setting $y = 0$ and solving for x .

We find the x -intercepts of $y = x^2 - x - 12$ by setting $y = 0$ and solving for x :

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 - x - 12 &= 0 \\ (x + 3)(x - 4) &= 0 \\ x + 3 = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad x - 4 &= 0 \\ x = -3 \quad \quad \quad x &= 4. \end{aligned}$$

Step 3 Divide the x -axis (number line) into regions using the solutions found in Step 2. These numbers divide the x -axis into three regions, as indicated in Figure 2.56.

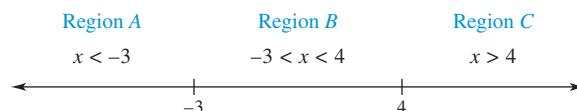


Figure 2.56

Step 4 Test a point in each region by choosing a value for x and substituting it in to the equation for y .

In each region, the graph of $y = x^2 - x - 12$ is an unbroken curve, so it will be entirely above or entirely below the axis. It can pass from above to below the x -axis only at the x -intercepts. To see whether the graph is above or below the x -axis when x is in region A , choose a value of x in region A , say, $x = -5$, and substitute it into the equation:

$$y = x^2 - x - 12 = (-5)^2 - (-5) - 12 = 18.$$

Therefore, the point $(-5, 18)$ is on the graph. Since its y -coordinate 18 is positive, this point lies above the x -axis; hence, the entire graph lies above the x -axis in region A .

Similarly, we can choose a value of x in region B , say, $x = 0$. Then

$$y = x^2 - x - 12 = 0^2 - 0 - 12 = -12,$$

so that $(0, -12)$ is on the graph. Since this point lies below the x -axis (why?), the entire graph in region B must be below the x -axis. Finally, in region C , let $x = 5$. Then $y = 5^2 - 5 - 12 = 8$, so that $(5, 8)$ is on the graph, and the entire graph in region C lies above the x -axis. We can summarize the results as follows:

Interval	$x < -3$	$-3 < x < 4$	$x > 4$
Test value in interval	-5	0	5
Value of $x^2 - x - 12$	18	-12	8
Graph	above x -axis	below x -axis	above x -axis
Conclusion	$x^2 - x - 12 > 0$	$x^2 - x - 12 < 0$	$x^2 - x - 12 > 0$

Step 5 Determine which regions satisfy the original inequality and graph the solution.

The last row shows that the only region where $x^2 - x - 12 < 0$ is region B , so the solutions of the inequality are all numbers x with $-3 < x < 4$ —that is, the interval $(-3, 4)$, as shown in the number line graph in Figure 2.57.



Figure 2.57

(b) $x^2 - x - 12 > 0$

Solution Use the chart in part (a). The last row shows that $x^2 - x - 12 > 0$ only when x is in region A or region C . Hence, the solutions of the inequality are all numbers x with $x < -3$ or $x > 4$ —that is, all numbers in the interval $(-\infty, -3)$ or the interval $(4, \infty)$.

Checkpoint 1

Solve each inequality. Graph the solution on the number line.

- (a) $x^2 - 2x < 15$
- (b) $2x^2 - 3x - 20 < 0$

Example 3

Solve the quadratic inequality $r^2 + 3r \geq 4$.

Solution

Step 1 First rewrite the inequality so that one side is 0:

$$r^2 + 3r \geq 4$$

$$r^2 + 3r - 4 \geq 0. \quad \text{Add } -4 \text{ to both sides.}$$

Step 2 Now solve the corresponding equation (which amounts to finding the x -intercepts of $y = r^3 + 3r - 4$):


$$\begin{aligned} r^2 + 3r - 4 &= 0 \\ (r - 1)(r + 4) &= 0 \\ r = 1 \quad \text{or} \quad r &= -4. \end{aligned}$$

Step 3 These numbers separate the number line into three regions, as shown in Figure 2.58. Test a number from each region:

Step 4 Let $r = -5$ from region **A**: $(-5)^2 + 3(-5) - 4 = 6 > 0$.

Let $r = 0$ from region **B**: $(0)^2 + 3(0) - 4 = -4 < 0$.

Let $r = 2$ from region **C**: $(2)^2 + 3(2) - 4 = 6 > 0$.

Step 5 We want the inequality to be positive or 0. The solution includes numbers in region **A** and in region **C**, as well as -4 and 1 , the endpoints. The solution, which includes all numbers in the interval $(-\infty, -4]$ or the interval $[1, \infty)$, is graphed in Figure 2.58. 

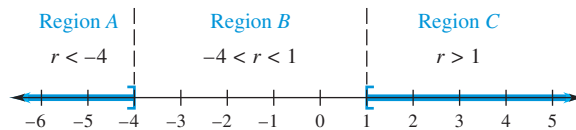


Figure 2.58

 **Checkpoint 2**

Solve each inequality. Graph each solution.

(a) $k^2 + 2k - 15 \geq 0$

(b) $3m^2 + 7m \geq 6$

Example 4 Solve $q^3 - 4q > 0$.

Solution

Step 1 Step 1 is already complete in the statement of the problem.

Step 2 Solve the corresponding equation by factoring:

$$\begin{aligned} q^3 - 4q &= 0 \\ q(q^2 - 4) &= 0 \\ q(q + 2)(q - 2) &= 0 \\ q = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad q + 2 = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad q - 2 = 0 \\ q = 0 \quad \quad \quad q = -2 \quad \quad \quad q = 2. \end{aligned}$$

Step 3 These three numbers separate the number line into the four regions shown in Figure 2.59.


Step 4 Test a number from each region:

A: If $q = -3$, $(-3)^3 - 4(-3) = -15 < 0$.

B: If $q = -1$, $(-1)^3 - 4(-1) = 3 > 0$.

C: If $q = 1$, $(1)^3 - 4(1) = -3 < 0$.

D: If $q = 3$, $(3)^3 - 4(3) = 15 > 0$.

Step 5 The numbers that make the polynomial positive are in the interval $(-2, 0)$ or the interval $(2, \infty)$, as graphed in Figure 2.59. 

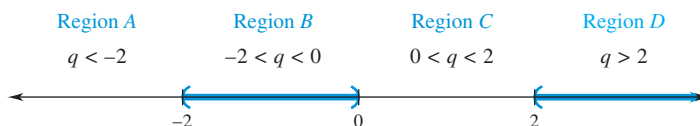


Figure 2.59

 **Checkpoint 3**

Solve each inequality. Graph each solution.

(a) $m^3 - 9m > 0$

(b) $2k^3 - 50k \leq 0$

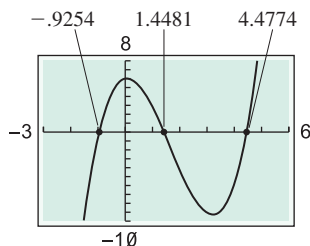


Figure 2.60

✓ Checkpoint 4

Use graphical methods to find approximate solutions of these inequalities.

- (a) $x^2 - 6x + 2 > 0$
 (b) $x^2 - 6x + 2 < 0$

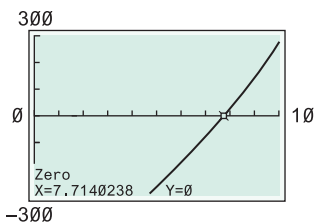


Figure 2.61

A graphing calculator can be used to solve inequalities without the need to evaluate at a test number in each interval. It is also useful for finding approximate solutions when the x -intercepts of the graph cannot be found algebraically.



Example 5

Use a graphing calculator to solve $x^3 - 5x^2 + x + 6 > 0$.

Solution Begin by graphing $y = x^3 - 5x^2 + x + 6$ (Figure 2.60). Find the x -intercepts by solving $x^3 - 5x^2 + x + 6 = 0$. Since this cannot readily be done algebraically, use the graphical root finder to determine that the solutions (x -intercepts) are approximately -0.9254 , 1.4481 , and 4.4774 .

The graph is above the x -axis when $-0.9254 < x < 1.4481$ and when $x > 4.4774$. Therefore, the approximate solutions of the inequality are all numbers in the interval $(-0.9254, 1.4481)$ or the interval $(4.4774, \infty)$. ✓₄



Example 6

Business A company sells wholesale portable DVD players for \$39 each. The variable cost of producing x thousand players is $5.5x - 4.9x^2$ (in thousands of dollars), and the fixed cost is \$550 (in thousands). Find the values of x for which the company will break even or make a profit on the product.

Solution If x thousand DVD players are sold at \$39 each, then

$$R = 39 \times x = 39x.$$

The cost function (in thousands of dollars) is

$$\text{Cost} = \text{Fixed Costs} + \text{Variable Costs}$$

$$C = 550 + (5.5x - 4.9x^2).$$

Therefore, to break even or earn a profit, we need Revenue (R) greater than or equal to Cost (C).

$$R \geq C$$

$$39x \geq 550 + 5.5x - 4.9x^2$$

$$4.9x^2 + 33.5x - 550 \geq 0.$$

Now graph $4.9x^2 + 33.5x - 550$. Since x has to be positive in this situation (why?), we need only look at the graph in the right half of the plane. Here, and in other cases, you may have to try several viewing windows before you find one that shows what you need. Once you find a suitable window, such as in Figure 2.61, use the graphical root finder to determine the relevant x -intercept. Figure 2.61 shows the intercept is approximately $x \approx 7.71$. Hence, the company must manufacture at least $7.71 \times 1000 = 7710$ portable DVD players to make a profit.

Rational Inequalities

Inequalities with quotients of algebraic expressions are called **rational inequalities**. These inequalities can be solved in much the same way as polynomial inequalities can.

Steps for Solving Inequalities Involving Rational Expressions

1. Rewrite the inequality so that all the terms are on the left side and the 0 is on the right side.
2. Write the left side as a single fraction.
3. Set the numerator and the denominator equal to 0 and solve for x .
4. Divide the x -axis (number line) into regions using the solutions found in Step 3.
5. Test a point in each region by choosing a value for x and substituting it into the equation for y .
6. Determine which regions satisfy the original inequality and graph the solution.

Example 7 Solve the rational inequality

$$\frac{5}{x+4} \geq 1.$$

Solution**Step 1** Write an equivalent inequality with one side equal to 0:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{5}{x+4} &\geq 1 \\ \frac{5}{x+4} - 1 &\geq 0.\end{aligned}$$

Step 2 Write the left side as a single fraction:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{5}{x+4} - \frac{x+4}{x+4} &\geq 0 && \text{Obtain a common denominator.} \\ \frac{5 - (x+4)}{x+4} &\geq 0 && \text{Subtract fractions.} \\ \frac{5 - x - 4}{x+4} &\geq 0 && \text{Distributive property} \\ \frac{1 - x}{x+4} &\geq 0.\end{aligned}$$

Step 3 The quotient can change sign only at places where the denominator is 0 or the numerator is 0. (In graphical terms, these are the only places where the graph of $y = \frac{1-x}{x+4}$ can change from above the x -axis to below.) This happens when

$$\begin{aligned}1 - x = 0 & \quad \text{or} \quad x + 4 = 0 \\ x = 1 & \quad \text{or} \quad x = -4.\end{aligned}$$

Step 4 As in the earlier examples, the numbers -4 and 1 divide the x -axis into three regions:

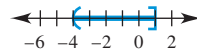
$$x < -4, \quad -4 < x < 1, \quad x > 1.$$

Step 5 Test a number from each of these regions:

$$\text{Let } x = -5: \quad \frac{1 - (-5)}{-5 + 4} = -6 < 0.$$

$$\text{Let } x = 0: \quad \frac{1 - 0}{0 + 4} = \frac{1}{4} > 0.$$

$$\text{Let } x = 2: \quad \frac{1 - 2}{2 + 4} = -\frac{1}{6} < 0.$$

Step 6 The test shows that numbers in $(-4, 1)$ satisfy the inequality. With a quotient, the endpoints must be considered individually to make sure that no denominator is 0. In this inequality, -4 makes the denominator 0, while 1 satisfies the given inequality. Write the solution in interval notation as $(-4, 1]$ and graphically as in Figure 2.62.**Figure 2.62****Checkpoint 5**

Solve each inequality.

(a) $\frac{3}{x-2} \geq 4$

(b) $\frac{p}{1-p} < 3$

(c) Why is 2 excluded from the solution in part (a)?

CAUTION As suggested by Example 7, be very careful with the endpoints of the intervals in the solution of rational inequalities. 5

Example 8 Solve

$$\frac{2x - 1}{3x + 4} < 5.$$

Solution

Step 1 Write an equivalent inequality with 0 on one side by adding -5 to each side.

$$\frac{2x - 1}{3x + 4} - 5 < 0 \quad \text{Get 0 on the right side.}$$

Step 2 Write the left side as a single fraction by using $3x + 4$ as a common denominator.

$$\frac{2x - 1 - 5(3x + 4)}{3x + 4} < 0 \quad \text{Obtain a common denominator.}$$


$$\frac{-13x - 21}{3x + 4} < 0 \quad \text{Distribute in the numerator and combine terms.}$$

Step 3 Set the numerator and denominator each equal to 0 and solve the two equations:

$$\begin{aligned} -13x - 21 &= 0 & \text{or} & & 3x + 4 &= 0 \\ x &= -\frac{21}{13} & \text{or} & & x &= -\frac{4}{3} \end{aligned}$$

Step 4 The values $-21/13$ and $-4/3$ divide the x -axis into three regions:

$$x < -\frac{21}{13}, \quad -\frac{21}{13} < x < -\frac{4}{3}, \quad x > -\frac{4}{3}.$$

Steps 5 and 6 Testing points from each interval yields that the quotient is negative for numbers in the interval $(-\infty, -21/13)$ or $(-4/3, \infty)$. Neither endpoint satisfies the given inequality. 

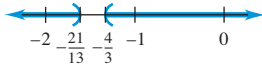


Figure 2.63

 **Checkpoint 6**

Solve each rational inequality.

(a) $\frac{3y - 2}{2y + 5} < 1$

(b) $\frac{3c - 4}{2 - c} \geq -5$



 **Checkpoint 7**


(a) Solve the inequality

$$\frac{10}{x + 2} \geq 3$$

by first multiplying both sides by $x + 2$.

(b) Show that this method produces a wrong answer by testing $x = -3$.

 **CAUTION** In problems like those in Examples 7 and 8, you should *not* begin by multiplying both sides by the denominator to simplify the inequality. Doing so will usually produce a wrong answer. For the reason, see Exercise 38. For an example, see Checkpoint 7. 

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** Rational inequalities can also be solved graphically. In Example 7, for instance, after rewriting the original inequality in the form $\frac{1 - x}{x + 4} \geq 0$, determine the values of x that make the numerator and denominator 0 (namely, $x = 1$ and $x = -4$). Then graph $\frac{1 - x}{x + 4}$. Figure 2.64 shows that the graph is above the x -axis when it is between the vertical asymptote at $x = -4$ and the x -intercept at $x = 1$. So the solution of the inequality is the interval $(-4, 1]$. (When the values that make the numerator and denominator 0 cannot be found algebraically, as they were here, you can use the root finder to approximate them.)

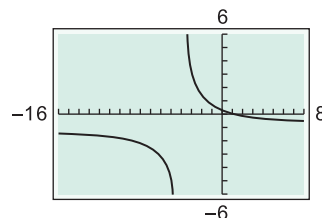


Figure 2.64

2.5 Exercises

Solve each of these quadratic inequalities. Graph the solutions on the number line. (See Examples 2 and 3.)

1. $(x + 4)(2x - 3) \leq 0$
2. $(5y - 1)(y + 3) > 0$
3. $r^2 + 4r > -3$
4. $z^2 + 6z > -8$
5. $4m^2 + 7m - 2 \leq 0$
6. $6p^2 - 11p + 3 \leq 0$
7. $4x^2 + 3x - 1 > 0$
8. $3x^2 - 5x > 2$
9. $x^2 \leq 36$
10. $y^2 \geq 9$
11. $p^2 - 16p > 0$
12. $r^2 - 9r < 0$

Solve these inequalities. (See Example 4.)

13. $x^3 - 9x \geq 0$
14. $p^3 - 25p \leq 0$
15. $(x + 7)(x + 2)(x - 2) \geq 0$
16. $(2x + 4)(x^2 - 9) \leq 0$
17. $(x + 5)(x^2 - 2x - 3) < 0$
18. $x^3 - 2x^2 - 3x \leq 0$
19. $6k^3 - 5k^2 < 4k$
20. $2m^3 + 7m^2 > 4m$
21. A student solved the inequality $p^2 < 16$ by taking the square root of both sides to get $p < 4$. She wrote the solution as $(-\infty, 4)$. Is her solution correct?

Use a graphing calculator to solve these inequalities. (See Example 5.)

22. $6x + 7 < 2x^2$
23. $.5x^2 - 1.2x < .2$
24. $3.1x^2 - 7.4x + 3.2 > 0$
25. $x^3 - 2x^2 - 5x + 7 \geq 2x + 1$
26. $x^4 - 6x^3 + 2x^2 < 5x - 2$
27. $2x^4 + 3x^3 < 2x^2 + 4x - 2$
28. $x^5 + 5x^4 > 4x^3 - 3x^2 - 2$

Solve these rational inequalities. (See Examples 7 and 8.)

29. $\frac{r - 4}{r - 1} \geq 0$
30. $\frac{z + 6}{z + 4} > 1$
31. $\frac{a - 2}{a - 5} < -1$
32. $\frac{1}{3k - 5} < \frac{1}{3}$
33. $\frac{1}{p - 2} < \frac{1}{3}$
34. $\frac{7}{k + 2} \geq \frac{1}{k + 2}$
35. $\frac{5}{p + 1} > \frac{12}{p + 1}$
36. $\frac{x^2 - 4}{x} > 0$
37. $\frac{x^2 - x - 6}{x} < 0$
38. Determine whether $x + 4$ is positive or negative when
 - (a) $x > -4$;
 - (b) $x < -4$.

(c) If you multiply both sides of the inequality $\frac{1 - x}{x + 4} \geq 0$ by $x + 4$, should you change the direction of the inequality sign? If so, when?

(d) Explain how you can use parts (a)–(c) to solve $\frac{1 - x}{x + 4} \geq 0$ correctly.

Use a graphing calculator to solve these inequalities. You may have to approximate the roots of the numerators or denominators.

39. $\frac{2x^2 + x - 1}{x^2 - 4x + 4} \leq 0$

40. $\frac{x^3 - 3x^2 + 5x - 29}{x^2 - 7} > 3$

41. **Business** An analyst has found that her company's profits, in hundreds of thousands of dollars, are given by $P = 2x^2 - 12x - 32$, where x is the amount, in hundreds of dollars, spent on advertising. For what values of x does the company make a profit?

42. **Business** The commodities market is highly unstable; money can be made or lost quickly on investments in soybeans, wheat, and so on. Suppose that an investor kept track of his total profit P at time t , in months, after he began investing, and he found that $P = 4t^2 - 30t + 14$. Find the time intervals during which he has been ahead.

43. **Business** The manager of a 200-unit apartment complex has found that the profit is given by

$$P = x^2 + 300x - 18,000,$$

where x is the number of apartments rented. For what values of x does the complex produce a profit?

Use a graphing calculator or other technology to complete Exercises 44–48. You may need to find a larger viewing window for some of these problems.

44. **Business** A door-to-door knife salesman finds that his weekly profit can be modeled by the equation

$$P = x^2 + 5x - 530$$

where x is the number of pitches he makes in a week. For what values of x does the salesman need to make in order to earn a profit?

45. **Business** The number of subscribers for cellular telecommunications (in millions) can be approximated by $.79x^2 + 5.4x + 178$ where $x = 7$ corresponds to the year 2007. Assuming the model to be valid indefinitely, in what years was the number of subscribers higher than 300 million? (Data from: ProQuest Statistical Abstract of the United States 2013.)

46. **Business** The percentage of delinquent real estate loans can be approximated by $-.65x^2 + 13.6x - 61.1$ where $x = 7$ corresponds to the year 2007. Assuming the model holds up to and including 2014, find the years in which the percentage of

delinquent real estate loans was greater than 8%. (Data from: U.S. Federal Reserve.)

47. **Finance** The amount of outstanding mortgage debt (in trillions of dollars) can be approximated by $-.2x^2 + 3.44x + .16$ where $x = 4$ corresponds to the year 2004. Assuming the model holds up to and including 2014, find the years in which the amount of outstanding mortgage debt was higher than \$13 trillion. (Data from: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve.)

48. **Finance** Similar to Exercise 47, the amount of outstanding debt for home mortgages (in trillions of dollars) can be approximated by $-.15x^2 + 2.53x + .66$ where $x = 4$ corresponds to the year 2004. Assuming the model holds up to and including 2014, find the years in which the amount of outstanding home mortgage debt was higher than \$9 trillion. (Data from: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve.)

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) $(-3, 5)$



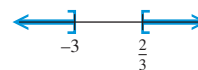
- (b) $(-5/2, 4)$



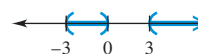
2. (a) All numbers in $(-\infty, -5]$ or $[3, \infty)$



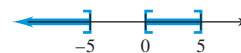
- (b) All numbers in $(-\infty, -3]$ or $[2/3, \infty)$



3. (a) All numbers in $(-3, 0)$ or $(3, \infty)$



- (b) All numbers in $(-\infty, -5]$ or $[0, 5]$



4. (a) All numbers in $(-\infty, .3542)$ or $(5.6458, \infty)$

- (b) All numbers in $(.3542, 5.6458)$

5. (a) $(2, 11/4]$

- (b) All numbers in $(-\infty, 3/4)$ or $(1, \infty)$

- (c) When $x = 2$, the fraction is undefined.

6. (a) $(-5/2, 7)$

- (b) All numbers in $(-\infty, 2)$ or $[3, \infty)$

7. (a) $x \leq \frac{4}{3}$

- (b) $x = -3$ is a solution of $x \leq \frac{4}{3}$, but not of the original

$$\text{inequality } \frac{10}{x+2} \geq 3.$$

CHAPTER 2 Summary and Review

Key Terms and Symbols*

2.1 Cartesian coordinate system

x -axis

y -axis

origin

ordered pair

x -coordinate

y -coordinate

quadrant

solution of an equation

graph

x -intercept

y -intercept

[viewing window]

[trace]

[graphical root

finder]

[maximum and minimum

finder]

graph reading

2.2 change in x

change in y

slope

slope–intercept form

parallel and perpendicular

lines

point–slope form

linear equations

general form

2.3 linear models

residual

[least-squares regression

line]

[linear regression]

[correlation coefficient]

2.4 linear inequality

properties of inequality

absolute-value inequality

2.5 polynomial inequality

algebraic solution

methods

[graphical solution

methods]

rational inequality

Chapter 2 Key Concepts

Slope of a Line

The **slope** of the line through the points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) , where $x_1 \neq x_2$, is $m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$.

Equation of a Line

The line with equation $y = mx + b$ has slope m and y -intercept b .

The line with equation $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$ has slope m and goes through (x_1, y_1) .

The line with equation $ax + by = c$ (with $a \neq 0, b \neq 0$) has x -intercept c/a and y -intercept c/b .

*Terms in brackets deal with material in which a graphing calculator or other technology is used.

The line with equation $x = k$ is vertical, with x -intercept k , no y -intercept, and undefined slope.

The line with equation $y = k$ is horizontal, with y -intercept k , no x -intercept, and slope 0.

Parallel and Perpendicular Lines

Nonvertical **parallel lines** have the same slope, and **perpendicular lines**, if neither is vertical, have slopes with a product of -1 .

Chapter 2 Review Exercises

Which of the ordered pairs $(-2, 3)$, $(0, -5)$, $(2, -3)$, $(3, -2)$, $(4, 3)$, and $(7, 2)$ are solutions of the given equation?

1. $y = x^2 - 2x - 5$ 2. $x - y = 5$

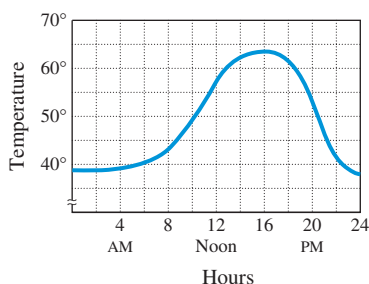
Sketch the graph of each equation.

3. $5x - 3y = 15$ 4. $2x + 7y - 21 = 0$

5. $y + 3 = 0$ 6. $y - 2x = 0$

7. $y = .25x^2 + 1$ 8. $y = \sqrt{x + 4}$

9. The following temperature graph was recorded in Bratenahl, Ohio:



(a) At what times during the day was the temperature over 55° ?

(b) When was the temperature below 40° ?

10. Greenville, South Carolina, is 500 miles south of Bratenahl, Ohio, and its temperature is 7° higher all day long. (See the graph in Exercise 9.) At what time was the temperature in Greenville the same as the temperature at noon in Bratenahl?

11. In your own words, define the slope of a line.

In Exercises 12–21, find the slope of the line defined by the given conditions.

12. Through $(-1, 3)$ and $(2, 6)$

13. Through $(4, -5)$ and $(1, 4)$

14. Through $(-4, 2)$ and $(-4, 8)$

15. Through $(8, 2)$ and $(0, 4)$

16. $3x + 5y = 25$ 17. $6x - 2y = 7$

18. $\frac{x}{8} + \frac{y}{9} = 1$ 19. $y = -4$

20. Parallel to $3x + 8y = 0$ 21. Perpendicular to $x = 3y$

22. Graph the line through $(0, 5)$ with slope $m = -2/3$.

23. Graph the line through $(-4, 1)$ with $m = 3$.

24. What information is needed to determine the equation of a line?

Find an equation for each of the following lines.

25. Through $(5, -1)$, slope $2/3$

26. Through $(8, 0)$, slope $-1/4$

27. Through $(6, -4)$, and is parallel to $3x + 4y = 8$

28. Through $(2, -3)$ and $(-3, 4)$

29. Undefined slope, through $(-1, 4)$

30. Through $(-2, -1)$, and is perpendicular to $x + y = 9$

31. x -intercept -3 , y -intercept 5

32. Here is a sample SAT question: Which of the following is an equation of the line that has a y -intercept of 2 and an x -intercept of 3 ?

(a) $-2x + 3y = 4$

(b) $-2x + 3y = 6$

(c) $2x + 3y = 4$

(d) $2x + 3y = 6$

(e) $3x + 2y = 6$

33. **Finance** A reputed company wants to analyze its profit (in hundreds of dollars) for last 10 years. The analyst provides the data in terms of a polynomial, $p = 2082x^2 - 9826x^2 - 815x + 400$, where $x = 0$ gives the data for the year 2004.

(a) Analyse the company's profit in the year 2004.

(b) In which years does the company experience losses?

(c) What is the profit of the company in 2013?

34. **Business** In the year 2005, the total domestic fish and shellfish catch was 9.7 billion pounds. In 2010, the total was 8.2 billion pounds. (Data from: U.S. National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.)

(a) Assuming the decline in fish and shellfish catch is linear, write an equation that gives the amount of the catch produced in year x , where $x = 5$ corresponds to the year 2005.

(b) Graph the equation for the years 2005 through 2010.

(c) Assuming the trend continues, estimate the total fish and shellfish catch in the year 2013.

35. **Business** The following table gives the total compensation (in dollars) per full-time employee for various years. (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis.)

Year	2000	2005	2010	2011
Compensation	47,059	56,620	66,249	68,129

- (a) Use the data from the years 2000 and 2010 to find a linear model for the data, with $x = 0$ corresponding to the year 2000.
- (b) Find the least-squares regression line for the data.
- (c) Use the models from part (a) and (b) to estimate the compensation for the year 2011. Compare the estimates to the actual compensation of \$68,129 for the year 2011.
- (d) Assume the trend continues and use the model for (b) to estimate the compensation per full-time employee in the year 2015.

36. Business In an effort to give a new lease of life to the tourism industry of a district and boost its revenue, the commissioner invested a lot of money in advertisements, renovations, constructing new tourist spots, and other related activities. At the end of the 8th year, he found that the revenue function (R) is $R = 320x^2 - 2435x^2 - 2000$, $x \geq 1$ where $x = 1, 2, 3$ gives the data for 2006, 2007, and 2008 respectively.

- (a) Was the decision made by the commissioner correct? If so, why?
- (b) Was the district able to generate revenue in any of the first 8 years?

37. Social Science A professor wishes to use mid-term grades as a predictor for final grades. The past record of mid-term and final grades is given in the following table.

CGPA (Mid-term)	6	2	10	4	8
CGPA (Final)	7	4	8	6	9

- (a) Find the linear regression model using least-squares to express the final grades in terms of the mid-term grades.
- (b) If the mid-term grade of a student is 5, what will be his expected final grade?
- (c) Find the correlation coefficient.

38. Chemical Science An experiment shows that lowering the temperature of a metal also lowers its resistivity. The following table shows the resistivity of copper at various temperatures.

Temp (°C)	-100	-50	0	50	100	150
Resistivity ($10^{-8} \Omega m$)	0.82	1.19	1.54	1.91	2.27	2.63

- (a) Find the least-squares line for the collection of data.
- (b) At what temperature will copper have a resistivity of zero?
- (c) Determine the correlation coefficient for the data.

Solve each inequality.

- 39. $-6x + 3 < 2x$
- 40. $12z \geq 5z - 7$
- 41. $5x - 8 \leq 4$
- 42. $6p - 5 > -(2p + 3)$
- 43. $-3 \leq 4x - 1 \leq 7$
- 44. $0 \leq 3 - 2a \leq 15$
- 45. $|b| \leq 8$
- 46. $|a| > 7$
- 47. $|2x - 7| \geq 3$
- 48. $|4m + 9| \leq 16$
- 49. $|5k + 2| - 3 \leq 4$
- 50. $|3z - 5| + 2 \geq 10$

51. Natural Science Here is a sample SAT question: For pumpkin carving, Mr. Sephera will not use pumpkins that weigh less than 2 pounds or more than 10 pounds. If x represents the weight of a pumpkin (in pounds) that he will *not* use, which of the following inequalities represents all possible values of x ?

- (a) $|x - 2| > 10$
- (b) $|x - 4| > 6$
- (c) $|x - 5| > 5$
- (d) $|x - 6| > 4$
- (e) $|x - 10| > 4$

52. Business Two educational societies offer courses in Android applications. The first one charges \$200 per week; the second charges \$250 per week, and offers a scholarship of \$500. The duration of both the courses is three months (assuming each month has four weeks). Which one is cheaper?

53. Business The amount of renewable energy consumed by the industrial sector of the U.S. economy (in trillion BTUs) was 1873 in the year 2005 and 2250 in the year 2010. Assume the amount of energy consumed is increasing linearly. (Data from: U.S. Energy Information Administration.)

- (a) Find the linear equation that gives the number of BTUs consumed with $x = 5$ corresponding to the year 2005.
- (b) Assume the linear equation that gives the amount of energy consumed continues indefinitely. Determine when the consumption will exceed 2500.

54. Business Two travel companies announce holiday packages for Singapore. The first company charges \$7500 per couple for fifteen days, whereas second company charges \$2000 per head and \$140 for touring per day. For what range of days is the second company's offer cheaper, if a couple wish to tour Singapore. The duration of the holiday cannot be longer than 15 days.

Solve each inequality.

- 55. $r^2 + r - 6 < 0$
- 56. $y^2 + 4y - 5 \geq 0$
- 57. $(x - 2)^2(x - 3)^2 \geq 0$
- 58. $(5 - x)(x - 6) \leq 0$
- 59. $(x - 3)(x^2 + 7x + 10) \leq 0$
- 60. $(x + 4)(x^2 - 1) \geq 0$
- 61. $\frac{(x - 2)}{(x - 6)^2} < 0$
- 62. $\frac{q - 4}{q + 3} > 0$
- 63. $\frac{5}{p + 1} > 2$
- 64. $\frac{6}{a - 2} \leq -3$
- 65. $\frac{2}{r + 5} \leq \frac{3}{r - 2}$
- 66. $\frac{x^2 - 3x + 2}{x^2 - 4} > \frac{1}{x - 2}$

67. The net income (in millions of dollars) generated by Megha Infra Company is approximated by the equation $y = 102x^2 - 370x + 50$; where $x = 2$ corresponds to the year 2004. In what years between 2004 and 2008 did the company have a positive net income?

68. Business The net income (in millions of dollars) generated by Xerox corporation can be approximated by the equation $y = 89.29x^2 - 1577x + 7505$, where $x = 6$ corresponds to the year 2006. In what years between 2006 and 2012 did Xerox have net income higher than \$1000 million? (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

Case Study 2 Using Extrapolation and Interpolation for Prediction

One reason for developing a mathematical model is to make predictions. If your model is a least-squares line, you can predict the y -value corresponding to some new x -value by substituting that x -value into an equation of the form $\hat{y} = mx + b$. (We use \hat{y} to remind us that we're getting a predicted value rather than an actual data value.) Data analysts distinguish between two very different kinds of prediction: *interpolation* and *extrapolation*. An interpolation uses a new x inside the x -range of your original data. For example, if you have inflation data at five-year intervals from 1950 to 2010, estimating the rate of inflation in 1957 is an interpolation problem. But if you use the same data to estimate what the inflation rate was in 1920, or what it will be in 2020, you are extrapolating.

In general, interpolation is much safer than extrapolation, because data that are approximately linear over a short interval may be nonlinear over a larger interval. Let us examine a case of the dangers of extrapolation. Figure 1 shows the net income (in millions of dollars) for the Starbucks Corporation from the years 2001–2007. Also on Figure 1, we see the least-squares regression line. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

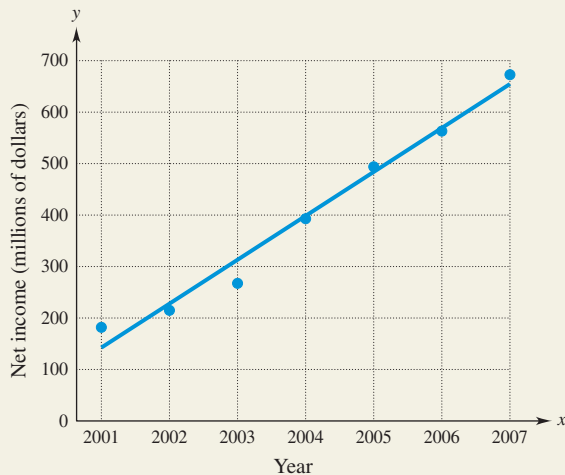


Figure 1

As we can see from graph, the fit is quite good and the linear trend seems quite clear. Additionally, the correlation coefficient is $r \approx .99$, which is quite high. The least-squares regression equation is

$$y = 85.7x + 55.3,$$

where $x = 1$ corresponds to 2001. If we extrapolate to the next two years, we predict the net earnings for Starbucks to be

$$2008: 85.7(8) + 55.3 = \$740.9 \text{ million}$$

$$2009: 85.7(9) + 55.3 = \$826.6 \text{ million}$$

As we know, however, the year 2008 saw the start of a deep recession in the United States, and the net earnings for Starbucks were actually \$316 million in the year 2008 and \$391 million in the year 2009—substantially lower than the predictions.

Using the past to predict the future is generally a dangerous business because we often cannot foresee events with major impact such as recessions, natural disasters, etc. Predictions into the future are often made, however, because planning has to occur and we use the best data we have available. One merely needs to realize that predictions into the future are highly likely to be inaccurate.

One way to determine if a model is likely to be inaccurate in the future is to examine the residuals. In Section 2.3, we defined a residual to be the difference between the actual value y and its predicted value \hat{y} .

$$\text{Residual} = y - \hat{y}.$$

Graphing these residuals on the y -axis and the predictor variable on the x -axis can be illuminating. Let's look at another historical example. Figure 2 shows the total household debt (in trillions of dollars) from the years 2004 through 2010. (Data from: Federal Reserve Bank of New York.)

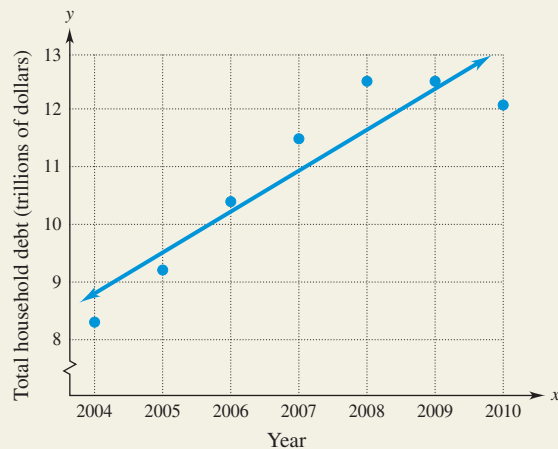


Figure 2

The regression equation for the least-squares line in Figure 2 is

$$y = .7x + 5.9,$$

where $x = 4$ corresponds to the year 2004. Since the correlation coefficient r is approximately .93, our linear model appears to fit the data well. We notice, however, that the predictions overpredict, then underpredict, and then overpredict. We can get a better look at this pattern by plotting the residuals. To find them, we put each value of the independent variable into the regression equation, calculate the predicted value \hat{y} , and subtract it from the actual value of y as in the table.

Year	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010
x	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
y	8.3	9.2	10.4	11.5	12.5	12.5	12.1
\hat{y}	8.7	9.4	10.1	10.8	11.5	12.2	12.9
Residual $y - \hat{y}$	-.4	-.2	.3	.7	1.0	.3	-.8

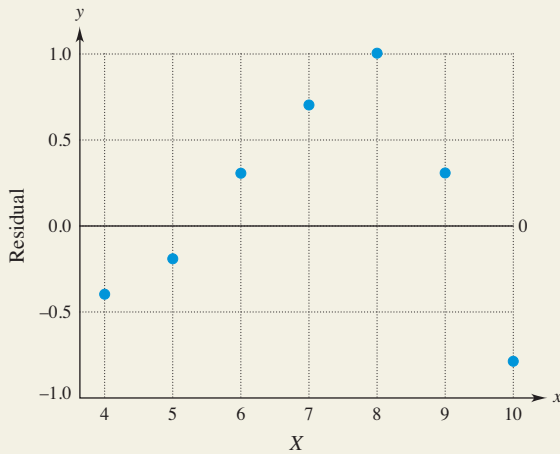


Figure 3

The residuals in Figure 3 indicate that our data have a nonlinear U-shaped component that is not captured by a linear model. When a residual plot shows a pattern such as this (or a similar pattern with an upside down U), extrapolating from the data is probably not a good idea. Our prediction for the year 2011, for example, would be

$$\hat{y} = .7(11) + 5.9 = \$13.6 \text{ trillion,}$$

which is far higher than the actual value of \$11.8 trillion.

Exercises

Business The following table gives the number of completed new single family homes (in thousands) from the years 2002 to 2012. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

Year	Housing Units	Year	Housing Units
2002	1648	2008	1120
2003	1679	2009	794
2004	1842	2010	652
2005	1931	2011	585
2006	1979	2012	650
2007	1503		

1. If you have access to the appropriate technology, verify that the least-squares regression line that models these data (with rounded coefficients) is $y = -146.1x + 2330$, where $x = 2$ corresponds to the year 2002.
2. Use the model from Exercise 1 to calculate the predicted values \hat{y} for each year in the table.
3. Use your answers from Exercise 2 to calculate the residuals for each year in the table. Make a graph of the residuals similar to Figure 3.
4. Do you think the linear model of Exercise 1 is a good fit for these data? Why or why not?

Business The following table gives the average hourly earnings (in dollars) of U.S. production workers from 1970 to 2010. (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics.)

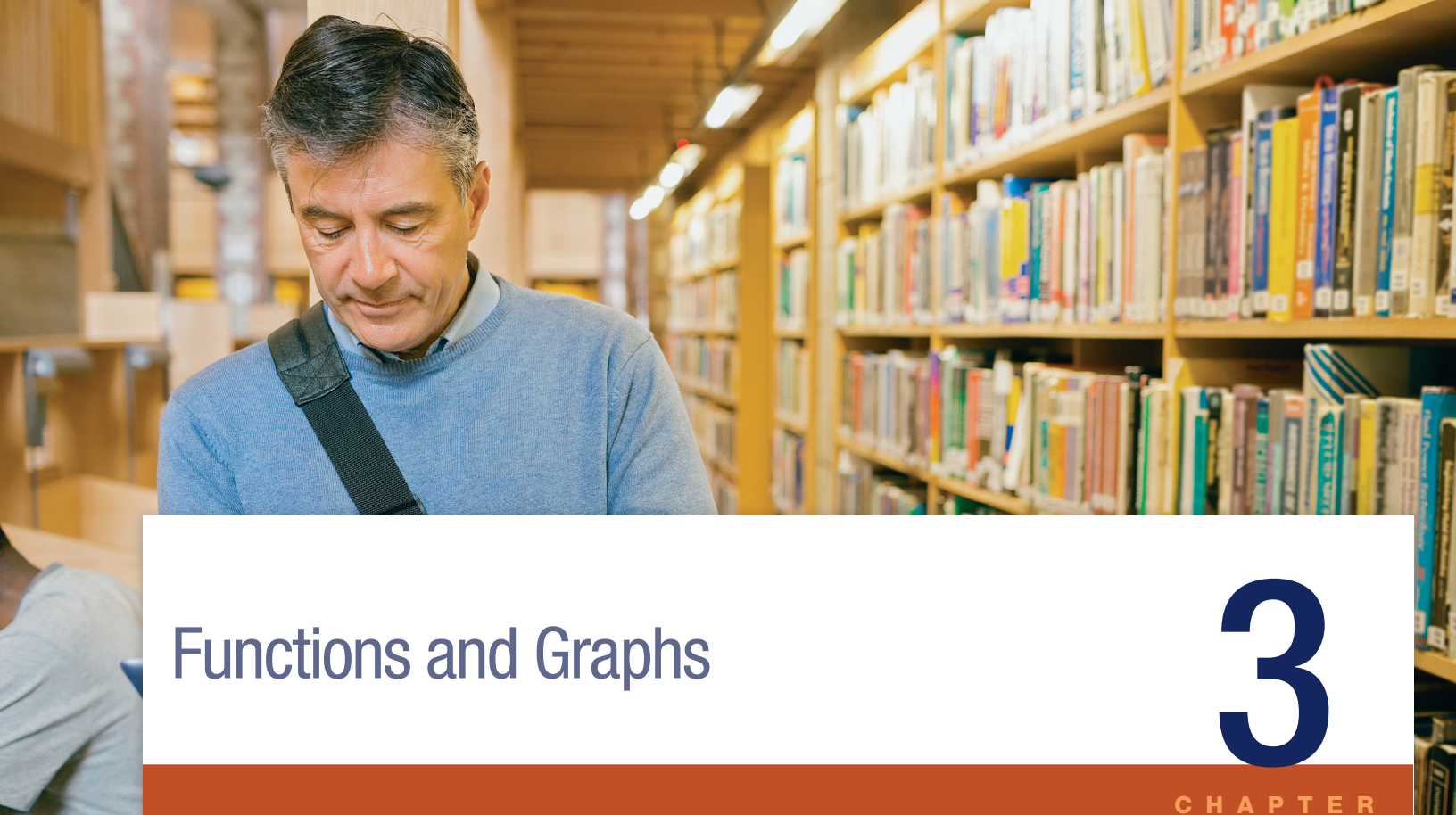
Year	Average Hourly Wage (Dollars)
1970	3.40
1975	4.73
1980	6.85
1985	8.74
1990	10.20
1995	11.65
2000	14.02
2005	16.13
2010	16.26

5. If you have appropriate technology, verify that the least-squares regression line that models these data (with coefficients rounded) is $y = .343x - 20.65$, where y is the average hourly wage in year x and $x = 0$ corresponds to 1900.
6. Use the model from Exercise 5 to interpolate a prediction of the hourly wage in 2002. The actual value was \$14.97. How close was your prediction?
7. Use the model from Exercise 5 to extrapolate to 1960 and predict the hourly average wage. Why is this prediction nonsensical?
8. Using the model from Exercise 5, find the average hourly wage for each year in the table, and subtract it from the actual value in the second column. This gives you a table of the residuals. Plot your residuals as points on a graph.
9. What will happen if you try linear regression on the *residuals*? If you're not sure, use technology such as a graphing calculator to find the regression equation for the residuals. Why does this result make sense?

Extended Project

Go to the library or use the Internet to obtain the average amount of student loan debt for the most recent years available.

1. Create a scatterplot of the data with the amount on the y -axis and the year on the x -axis and assess the trend.
2. Fit a linear model to the data and predict the loan debt amount for each year.
3. Calculate the residuals from each year in the data set. Graph the residuals.
4. Do the residuals show a U-shape?
5. Find the correlation coefficient for your data.



Functions and Graphs

3

CHAPTER

CHAPTER OUTLINE

- 3.1 Functions
- 3.2 Graphs of Functions
- 3.3 Applications of Linear Functions
- 3.4 Quadratic Functions and Applications
- 3.5 Polynomial Functions
- 3.6 Rational Functions

CASE STUDY 3
Architectural Arches

The modern world is overwhelmed with data—from the cost of college to mortgage rates, health care expenditures, and hundreds of other pieces of information. Functions enable us to construct mathematical models that can sometimes be used to estimate outcomes. Graphs of functions allow us to visualize a situation and to detect trends more easily. See Example 11 on page 149 and Exercises 57 and 58 on page 199.

Functions are an extremely useful way of describing many real-world situations in which the value of one quantity varies with, depends on, or determines the value of another. In this chapter, you will be introduced to functions, learn how to use functional notation, develop skills in constructing and interpreting the graphs of functions, and, finally, learn to apply this knowledge in a variety of situations.

3.1 Functions

To understand the origin of the concept of a function, we consider some real-life situations in which one numerical quantity depends on, corresponds to, or determines another.

Example 1 The amount of the electric bill you pay depends on the amount of kilowatt hours (kWh) consumed. The way in which the usage determines the bill is given by the rate per kWh.

Example 2 Economics The graph in Figure 3.1 shows the poverty rate from the years 1959 to 2011. The blue vertical bands indicate times of economic recession. The graph displays the percentage living in poverty that corresponds to each year. (Source: DeNavas-Walt, Carmen, Bernadette D. Proctor, and Jessica C. Smith, U.S. Census Bureau, Current Population Reports, P60-243, Income, Poverty, and Health Insurance Coverage in the United States: 2011, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC, 2012.)

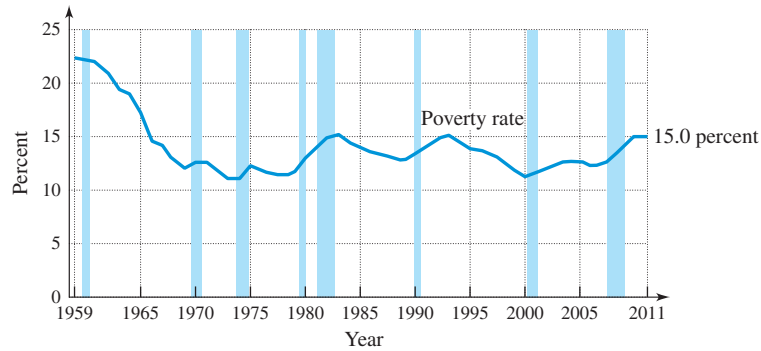


Figure 3.1

Example 3 Physical Science Suppose a rock is dropped straight down from a high point. From physics, we know that the distance traveled by the rock in t seconds is $16t^2$ feet. So the distance depends on the time.

These examples share a couple of features. First, each involves two sets of numbers, which we can think of as inputs and outputs. Second, in each case, there is a rule by which each input determines an output, as summarized here:

	Set of Inputs	Set of Outputs	Rule
Example 1	All usages	All bill amounts	The rate per kWh
Example 2	Year	Poverty rate	Time-rate graph
Example 3	Seconds elapsed after dropping the rock	Distances the rock travels	Distance = $16t^2$

Each of these examples may be mentally represented by an idealized calculator that has a single operation key: A number is entered [*input*], the rule key is pushed [*rule*], and an answer is displayed [*output*]. The formal definition of a function incorporates these same common features (input–rule–output), with a slight change in terminology.

A **function** consists of a set of inputs called the **domain**, a set of outputs called the **range**, and a rule by which each input determines *exactly one* output.

✓Checkpoint 1

Find the domain and range of the function in Example 3, assuming (unrealistically) that the rock can fall forever.

Answers to Checkpoint exercises are found at the end of the section.

Example 4 Find the domains and ranges for the functions in Examples 1 and 2.

Solution In Example 1, the domain consists of all possible usage amounts and the range consists of all possible bill amounts.

In Example 2, the domain is the set of years from 1959 to 2011, all real numbers in the interval [1959, 2011]. The range consists of the poverty rates that actually occur during those years. Figure 3.1 suggests that these are all numbers in the interval [11, 22]. ✓₁

Be sure that you understand the phrase “exactly one output” in the definition of the rule of a function. In Example 2, for instance, each year (input) determines exactly one poverty rate (output)—you can’t have two different rates at the same time. However, it is quite possible to have the same rate (output) at two different times (inputs). In other words, we can say the following:

In a function, each input produces a single output, but different inputs may produce the same output.

Example 5 Which of the following rules describe functions?

- (a) Use the optical reader at the checkout counter of the supermarket to convert codes to prices.

Solution For each code, the reader produces exactly one price, so this is a function.

- (b) Enter a number in a calculator and press the x^2 key.

Solution This is a function, because the calculator produces just one number x^2 for each number x that is entered.

- (c) Assign to each number x the number y given by this table:

x	1	1	2	2	3	3
y	3	−3	−5	−5	8	−8

Solution Since $x = 1$ corresponds to more than one y -value (as does $x = 3$), this table does not define a function.

- (d) Assign to each number x the number y given by the equation $y = 3x - 5$.

Solution Because the equation determines a unique value of y for each value of x , it defines a function. ₂

The equation $y = 3x - 5$ in part (d) of Example 5 defines a function, with x as input and y as output, because each value of x determines a *unique* value of y . In such a case, the equation is said to **define y as a function of x** .

Example 6 Decide whether each of the following equations defines y as a function of x .

- (a) $y = -4x + 11$

Solution For a given value of x , calculating $-4x + 11$ produces exactly one value of y . (For example, if $x = -7$, then $y = -4(-7) + 11 = 39$). Because one value of the input variable leads to exactly one value of the output variable, $y = -4x + 11$ defines y as a function of x .

- (b) $y^2 = x$

Solution Suppose $x = 36$. Then $y^2 = x$ becomes $y^2 = 36$, from which $y = 6$ or $y = -6$. Since one value of x can lead to two values of y , $y^2 = x$ does *not* define y as a function of x . ₃

Almost all the functions in this text are defined by formulas or equations, as in part (a) of Example 6. The domain of such a function is determined by the following **agreement on domains**.

Checkpoint 2

Do the following define functions?

- (a) The correspondence defined by the rule $y = x^2 + 5$, where x is the input and y is the output.
- (b) The correspondence defined by entering a nonzero number in a calculator and pressing the $1/x$ key.
- (c) The correspondence between a computer, x , and several users of the computer, y .

Checkpoint 3

Do the following define y as a function of x ?

- (a) $y = -6x + 1$
- (b) $y = x^2$
- (c) $x = y^2 - 1$
- (d) $y < x + 2$

Unless otherwise stated, assume that the domain of any function defined by a formula or an equation is the largest set of real numbers (inputs) that each produces a real number as output.

Example 7

Each of the given equations defines y as a function of x . Find the domain of each function.

(a) $y = x^4$

Solution Any number can be raised to the fourth power, so the domain is the set of all real numbers, which is sometimes written as $(-\infty, \infty)$.

(b) $y = \sqrt{x - 6}$

Solution For y to be a real number, $x - 6$ must be nonnegative. This happens only when $x - 6 \geq 0$ —that is, when $x \geq 6$. So the domain is the interval $[6, \infty)$.

(c) $y = \sqrt{4 - x}$

Solution For y to be a real number here, we must have $4 - x \geq 0$, which is equivalent to $x \leq 4$. So the domain is the interval $(-\infty, 4]$.

(d) $y = \frac{1}{x + 3}$

Solution Because the denominator cannot be 0, $x \neq -3$ and the domain consists of all numbers in the intervals,

$$(-\infty, -3) \text{ or } (-3, \infty).$$

(e) $y = \frac{\sqrt{x}}{x^2 - 3x + 2}$

Solution The numerator is defined only when $x \geq 0$. The domain cannot contain any numbers that make the denominator 0—that is, the numbers that are solutions of

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 - 3x + 2 &= 0. \\ (x - 1)(x - 2) &= 0 && \text{Factor.} \\ x - 1 = 0 \text{ or } x - 2 = 0 &&& \text{Zero-factor property} \\ x = 1 \text{ or } x = 2. &&& \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the domain consists of all nonnegative real numbers except 1 and 2. 

 **Checkpoint 4**

Give the domain of each function.

(a) $y = 3x + 1$

(b) $y = x^2$

(c) $y = \sqrt{-x}$

(d) $y = \frac{3}{x^2 - 1}$

Functional Notation

In actual practice, functions are seldom presented in the style of domain–rule–range, as they have been here. Functions are usually denoted by a letter such as f . If x is an input, then $f(x)$ denotes the output number that the function f produces from the input x . The symbol $f(x)$ is read “ f of x .” The rule is usually given by a formula, such as $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 + 1}$. This formula can be thought of as a set of directions:

Name of function Input number

$$\underbrace{f(x)}_{\text{Output number}} = \underbrace{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}}_{\text{Directions that tell you what to do with input } x \text{ in order to produce the corresponding output } f(x) \text{—namely, “square it, add 1, and take the square root of the result.”}}$$

Directions that tell you what to do with input x in order to produce the corresponding output $f(x)$ —namely, “square it, add 1, and take the square root of the result.”

For example, to find $f(3)$ (the output number produced by the input 3), simply replace x by 3 in the formula:

$$\begin{aligned} f(3) &= \sqrt{3^2 + 1} \\ &= \sqrt{10}. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, replacing x respectively by -5 and 0 shows that

$$\begin{aligned} f(-5) &= \sqrt{(-5)^2 + 1} & \text{and} & & f(0) &= \sqrt{0^2 + 1} \\ &= \sqrt{26} & & & &= 1. \end{aligned}$$

These directions can be applied to any quantities, such as $a + b$ or c^4 (where a , b , and c are real numbers). Thus, to compute $f(a + b)$, the output corresponding to input $a + b$, we square the input [obtaining $(a + b)^2$], add 1 [obtaining $(a + b)^2 + 1$], and take the square root of the result:

$$\begin{aligned} f(a + b) &= \sqrt{(a + b)^2 + 1} \\ &= \sqrt{a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 1}. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, the output $f(c^4)$, corresponding to the input c^4 , is computed by squaring the input $[(c^4)^2]$, adding 1 $[(c^4)^2 + 1]$, and taking the square root of the result:

$$\begin{aligned} f(c^4) &= \sqrt{(c^4)^2 + 1} \\ &= \sqrt{c^8 + 1}. \end{aligned}$$

Example 8

Let $g(x) = -x^2 + 4x - 5$. Find each of the given outputs.

(a) $g(-2)$

Solution Replace x with -2 :

$$\begin{aligned} g(-2) &= -(-2)^2 + 4(-2) - 5 \\ &= -4 - 8 - 5 \\ &= -17. \end{aligned}$$

(b) $g(x + h)$

Solution Replace x by the quantity $x + h$ in the rule of g :

$$\begin{aligned} g(x + h) &= -(x + h)^2 + 4(x + h) - 5 \\ &= -(x^2 + 2xh + h^2) + (4x + 4h) - 5 \\ &= -x^2 - 2xh - h^2 + 4x + 4h - 5. \end{aligned}$$

(c) $g(x + h) - g(x)$

Solution Use the result from part (b) and the rule for $g(x)$:

$$\begin{aligned} g(x + h) - g(x) &= \overbrace{(-x^2 - 2xh - h^2 + 4x + 4h - 5)}^{g(x + h)} - \overbrace{(-x^2 + 4x - 5)}^{g(x)} \\ &= -2xh - h^2 + 4h. \end{aligned}$$


(d) $\frac{g(x + h) - g(x)}{h}$ (assuming that $h \neq 0$)

Solution The numerator was found in part (c). Divide it by h as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{g(x + h) - g(x)}{h} &= \frac{-2xh - h^2 + 4h}{h} \\ &= \frac{h(-2x - h + 4)}{h} \\ &= -2x - h + 4. \end{aligned}$$

The quotient found in Example 8(d),


$$\frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h},$$

is called the **difference quotient** of the function g . Difference quotients are important in calculus. 

Checkpoint 5

Let $f(x) = 5x^2 - 2x + 1$. Find the following.

- (a) $f(1)$
- (b) $f(3)$
- (c) $f(1 + 3)$
- (d) $f(1) + f(3)$
- (e) $f(m)$
- (f) $f(x + h) - f(x)$
- (g) $\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$ ($h \neq 0$)

 **CAUTION** Functional notation is *not* the same as ordinary algebraic notation. You cannot simplify an expression such as $f(x+h)$ by writing $f(x) + f(h)$. To see why, consider the answers to Checkpoints 5(c) and (d), which show that

$$f(1 + 3) \neq f(1) + f(3).$$

Applications

Example 9

Finance If you were a single person in Connecticut in 2013 with a taxable income of x dollars and $x \leq \$500,000$ then your state income tax T was determined by the rule

$$T(x) = \begin{cases} .03x & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 10,000 \\ 300 + .05(x - 10,000) & \text{if } 10,000 \leq x \leq 500,000 \end{cases}$$

Find the income tax paid by a single person with the given taxable income. (Data from: www.taxbrackets.org.)

(a) \$9200

Solution We must find $T(9200)$. Since 9200 is less than 10,000, the first part of the rule applies:

$$\begin{aligned} T(x) &= .03x \\ T(9200) &= .03(9200) = \$276. \quad \text{Let } x = 9200. \end{aligned}$$

(b) \$30,000

Solution Now we must find $T(30,000)$. Since 30,000 is greater than \$10,000, the second part of the rule applies:

$$\begin{aligned} T(x) &= 300 + .05(x - 10,000) \\ T(30,000) &= 300 + .05(30,000 - 10,000) && \text{Let } x = 30,000. \\ &= 300 + .05(20,000) && \text{Simplify.} \\ &= 300 + 1000 = \$1300. \end{aligned}$$

Checkpoint 6

Use Example 9 to find the tax on each of these incomes.

- (a) \$48,750
- (b) \$7345

A function with a multipart rule, as in Example 9, is called a **piecewise-defined function**.

Example 10

Business Suppose the projected sales (in thousands of dollars) of a small company over the next 10 years are approximated by the function

$$S(x) = .07x^4 - .05x^3 + 2x^2 + 7x + 62.$$

(a) What are the projected sales for the current year?

Solution The current year corresponds to $x = 0$, and the sales for this year are given by $S(0)$. Substituting 0 for x in the rule for S , we see that $S(0) = 62$. So the current projected sales are \$62,000.

✓ Checkpoint 7

A developer estimates that the total cost of building x large apartment complexes in a year is approximated by

$$A(x) = x^2 + 80x + 60,$$

where $A(x)$ represents the cost in hundred thousands of dollars. Find the cost of building

- (a) 4 complexes;
(b) 10 complexes.

X	Y1
5	184.5
6	255.92
7	359.92
8	507.12
9	709.82
10	982
11	1339.3

X=5

Figure 3.2

(b) What will sales be in four years?

Solution The sales in four years from now are given by $S(4)$, which can be computed by hand or with a calculator:

$$S(x) = .07x^4 - .05x^3 + 2x^2 + 7x + 62$$

$$S(4) = .07(4)^4 - .05(4)^3 + 2(4)^2 + 7(4) + 62 \quad \text{Let } x = 4.$$

$$= 136.72.$$

Thus, sales are projected to be \$136,720. ✓



Example 11

Business Use the table feature of the graphing calculator to find the projected sales of the company in Example 10 for years 5 through 10.

Solution Enter the sales equation $y = .07x^4 - .05x^3 + 2x^2 + 7x + 62$ into the equation memory of the calculator (often called the $Y =$ list). Check your instruction manual for how to set the table to start at $x = 5$ and go at least through $x = 10$. Then display the table, as in Figure 3.2. The figure shows that sales are projected to rise from \$184,500 in year 5 to \$982,000 in year 10.

3.1 Exercises

For each of the following rules, state whether it defines y as a function of x or not. (See Examples 5 and 6.)

1.

x	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3
y	9	4	1	0	1	4	9

2.

x	9	4	1	0	1	4	9
y	3	2	1	0	-1	-2	-3

3. $y = x^3$ 4. $y = \sqrt{x-1}$
 5. $x = |y + 2|$ 6. $x = y^2 + 3$
 7. $y = \frac{-1}{x-1}$ 8. $y = \frac{4}{2x+3}$

State the domain of each function. (See Example 7.)

9. $f(x) = 4x - 1$ 10. $f(x) = 2x + 7$
 11. $f(x) = x^4 - 1$ 12. $f(x) = (2x + 5)^2$
 13. $f(x) = \sqrt{-x} + 3$ 14. $f(x) = \sqrt{5-x}$
 15. $g(x) = \frac{1}{x-2}$ 16. $g(x) = \frac{x}{x^2 + x - 2}$
 17. $g(x) = \frac{x^2 + 4}{x^2 - 4}$ 18. $g(x) = \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^2 + 1}$
 19. $h(x) = \frac{\sqrt{x+4}}{x^2 + x - 12}$ 20. $h(x) = |5 - 4x|$

21. $g(x) = \begin{cases} 1/x & \text{if } x < 0 \\ \sqrt{x^2 + 1} & \text{if } x \geq 0 \end{cases}$

22. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x + 3 & \text{if } x < 4 \\ x^2 - 1 & \text{if } 4 \leq x \leq 10 \end{cases}$

For each of the following functions, find

- (a) $f(4)$; (b) $f(-3)$; (c) $f(2.7)$; (d) $f(-4.9)$.

(See Examples 8 and 9.)

23. $f(x) = 8$ 24. $f(x) = 0$
 25. $f(x) = 2x^2 + 4x$ 26. $f(x) = x^2 - 2x$
 27. $f(x) = \sqrt{x+3}$ 28. $f(x) = \sqrt{5-x}$
 29. $f(x) = |x^2 - 6x - 4|$ 30. $f(x) = |x^3 - x^2 + x - 1|$
 31. $f(x) = \frac{\sqrt{x-1}}{x^2 - 1}$ 32. $f(x) = \sqrt{-x} + \frac{2}{x+1}$
 33. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if } x < 2 \\ 5x - 7 & \text{if } x \geq 2 \end{cases}$
 34. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -2x + 4 & \text{if } x \leq 1 \\ 3 & \text{if } 1 < x < 4 \\ x + 1 & \text{if } x \geq 4 \end{cases}$

For each of the following functions, find

- (a) $f(p)$; (b) $f(-r)$; (c) $f(m + 3)$.

(See Example 8.)

35. $f(x) = 6 - x$ 36. $f(x) = 3x + 5$
 37. $f(x) = \sqrt{4 - x}$ 38. $f(x) = \sqrt{-2x}$
 39. $f(x) = x^3 + 1$ 40. $f(x) = 3 - x^3$
 41. $f(x) = \frac{3}{x - 1}$ 42. $f(x) = \frac{-1}{5 + x}$

For each of the following functions, find the difference quotient

$$\frac{f(x + h) - f(x)}{h} \quad (h \neq 0).$$

(See Example 8.)

43. $f(x) = 2x - 4$ 44. $f(x) = 2 + 4x$
 45. $f(x) = x^2 + 1$ 46. $f(x) = x^2 - x$

✎ If you have a graphing calculator with table-making ability, display a table showing the (approximate) values of the given function at $x = 3.5, 3.9, 4.3, 4.7, 5.1,$ and 5.5 . (See Example 11.)

47. $g(x) = 3x^4 - x^3 + 2x$
 48. $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - 2.4x + 8}$

✎ Use a calculator to work these exercises. (See Examples 9 and 10.)

49. **Finance** The Minnesota state income tax for a single person in 2013 was determined by the rule

$$T(x) = \begin{cases} .0535x & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 23,100 \\ 1235.85 + .0705(x - 23,100) & \text{if } 23,100 < x \leq 75,891 \\ 4957.62 + .0785(x - 75,891) & \text{if } x > 75,891, \end{cases}$$

where x is the person's taxable income. Find the tax on each of these incomes. (Data from: www.taxbrackets.org.)

- (a) \$20,000
 (b) \$70,000
 (c) \$120,000
50. **Economics** The gross domestic product (GDP) of the United States, which measures the overall size of the U.S. economy in trillions of dollars, is approximated by the function

$$f(x) = -.017x^2 + .68x + 9.6,$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. Estimate the GDP in the given years. (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis.)

- (a) 2005 (b) 2009
 (c) 2011
51. **Business** The net revenue for Ford Motor Company (in billions of dollars) between the years 2006 and 2012 is approximated by

$$R(x) = -.722x^3 + 19.23x^2 - 161.2x + 421.8,$$

where $x = 6$ corresponds to the year 2006. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

- (a) What was the net revenue in 2008?
 (b) What was the net revenue in 2011?

52. **Business** The number of passengers enplaned (in millions) for the years 2000–2011 can be approximated by the function

$$f(x) = .377x^4 - 9.23x^3 + 71.4x^2 - 163x + 666,$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. Find the number of enplaned passengers in the following years. (Data from: Airlines for America.)

- (a) 2004 (b) 2009
 (c) 2010
53. **Business** The value (in millions of dollars) of electric household ranges and ovens shipped in the United States can be approximated by the function

$$g(x) = -21.1x^2 + 205x + 2164,$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

- (a) What is the value of the ranges and ovens shipped in 2001?
 (b) What is the value of the ranges and ovens shipped in 2009?

54. **Natural Science** High concentrations of zinc ions in water are lethal to rainbow trout. The function

$$f(x) = \left(\frac{x}{1960} \right)^{-.833}$$

gives the approximate average survival time (in minutes) for trout exposed to x milligrams per liter (mg/L) of zinc ions. Find the survival time (to the nearest minute) for the given concentrations of zinc ions.

- (a) 110 (b) 525 (c) 1960 (d) 4500
55. **Physical Science** The distance from Chicago to Sacramento, California, is approximately 2050 miles. A plane flying directly to Sacramento passes over Chicago at noon. If the plane travels at 500 mph, find the rule of the function $f(t)$ that gives the distance of the plane from Sacramento at time t hours (with $t = 0$ corresponding to noon).
56. **Physical Science** The distance from Toronto, Ontario to Dallas, Texas is approximately 1200 miles. A plane flying directly to Dallas passes over Toronto at 2 p.m. If the plane travels at 550 mph, find the rule of the function $f(t)$ that gives the distance of the plane from Dallas at time t hours (with $t = 0$ corresponding to 2 pm).
57. **Business** A pretzel factory has daily fixed costs of \$1800. In addition, it costs 50 cents to produce each bag of pretzels. A bag of pretzels sells for \$1.20.

- (a) Find the rule of the cost function $c(x)$ that gives the total daily cost of producing x bags of pretzels.
 (b) Find the rule of the revenue function $r(x)$ that gives the daily revenue from selling x bags of pretzels.
 (c) Find the rule of the profit function $p(x)$ that gives the daily profit from x bags of pretzels.

58. **Business** An aluminum can factory has daily fixed costs of \$120,000 per day. In addition, it costs \$.03 to produce each can. They can sell a can to a soda manufacturer for \$.05 a can.

- (a) Find the rule of the cost function $c(x)$ that gives the total daily cost of producing x aluminum cans.
 (b) Find the rule of the revenue function $r(x)$ that gives the daily revenue from selling x aluminum cans.
 (c) Find the rule of the profit function $p(x)$ that gives the daily profit from x aluminum cans.

✎ Use the table feature of a graphing calculator to do these exercises. (See Example 11.)

59. **Business** The value (in millions of dollars) of new orders for all manufacturing industries can be approximated by the function

$$h(x) = -4.83x^3 + 50.3x^2 + 25.5x + 4149,$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. Create a table that gives the value of the sales for the years 2005–2010. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

60. **Business** The value added to the economy (in billions of dollars) for agricultural production can be approximated by the function

$$g(x) = -.35x^3 + 5.34x^2 - 5.17x + 217.3,$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to 2000. Create a table that gives the value added to the economy for the years 2007–2010. (Data from: U.S. Department of Agriculture.)

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- The domain consists of all possible times—that is, all nonnegative real numbers. The range consists of all possible distances; thus, the range is also the set of all nonnegative real numbers.
- (a) Yes (b) Yes (c) No
- (a) Yes (b) Yes (c) No (d) No
- (a) $(-\infty, \infty)$ (b) $(-\infty, \infty)$ (c) $(-\infty, 0]$
(d) All real numbers except 1 and -1
- (a) 4 (b) 40 (c) 73 (d) 44
(e) $5m^2 - 2m + 1$ (f) $10xh + 5h^2 - 2h$
(g) $10x + 5h - 2$
- (a) \$2237.50 (b) \$220.35
- (a) \$39,600,000 (b) \$96,000,000

3.2 Graphs of Functions

The **graph** of a function $f(x)$ is defined to be the graph of the *equation* $y = f(x)$. It consists of all points $(x, f(x))$ —that is, every point whose first coordinate is an input number from the domain of f and whose second coordinate is the corresponding output number.

Example 1

The graph of the function $g(x) = .5x - 3$ is the graph of the equation $y = .5x - 3$. So the graph is a straight line with slope .5 and y -intercept -3 , as shown in Figure 3.3.

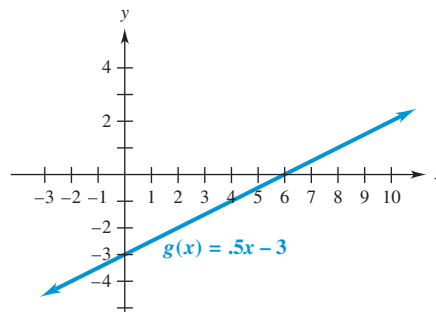


Figure 3.3

A function whose graph is a straight line, as in Example 1, is called a **linear function**. The rule of a linear function can always be put into the form

$$f(x) = ax + b$$

for some constants a and b .

Piecewise Linear Functions

We now consider functions whose graphs consist of straight-line segments. Such functions are called **piecewise linear functions** and are typically defined with different equations for different parts of the domain.

Example 2

Graph the following function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 1 & \text{if } x \leq 2 \\ -2x + 7 & \text{if } x > 2. \end{cases}$$

Solution Consider the two parts of the rule of f . The graphs of $y = x + 1$ and $y = -2x + 7$ are straight lines. The graph of f consists of

- the part of the line $y = x + 1$ with $x \leq 2$ and
- the part of the line $y = -2x + 7$ with $x > 2$.

Each of these line segments can be graphed by plotting two points in the appropriate interval, as shown in Figure 3.4.

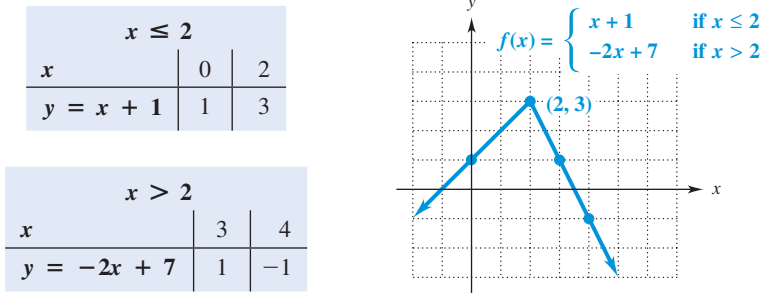


Figure 3.4

Note that the left and right parts of the graph each extend to the vertical line through $x = 2$, where the two halves of the graph meet at the point $(2, 3)$.

Checkpoint 1

Graph

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 2 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 2 - x & \text{if } x \geq 0. \end{cases}$$

Example 3

Graph the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x - 2 & \text{if } x \leq 3 \\ -x + 8 & \text{if } x > 3. \end{cases}$$

Solution The graph consists of parts of two lines. To find the left side of the graph, choose two values of x with $x \leq 3$, say, $x = 0$ and $x = 3$. Then find the corresponding points on $y = x - 2$, namely, $(0, -2)$ and $(3, 1)$. Use these points to draw the line segment to the left of $x = 3$, as in Figure 3.5. Next, choose two values of x with $x > 3$, say, $x = 4$ and $x = 6$, and find the corresponding points on $y = -x + 8$, namely, $(4, 4)$ and $(6, 2)$. Use these points to draw the line segment to the right of $x = 3$, as in Figure 3.5.

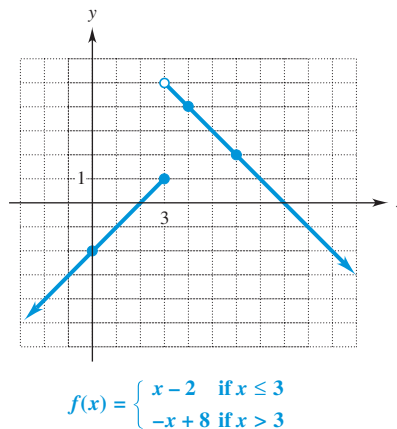


Figure 3.5

✓ Checkpoint 2

Graph

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -2x - 3 & \text{if } x < 1 \\ x - 2 & \text{if } x \geq 1. \end{cases}$$

Note that both line segments of the graph of f extend to the vertical line through $x = 3$. The closed circle at $(3, 1)$ indicates that this point is on the graph of f , whereas the open circle at $(3, 5)$ indicates that this point is *not* on the graph of f (although it is on the graph of the line $y = -x + 8$). ✓₂

Example 4

Graph the **absolute-value function**, whose rule is $f(x) = |x|$.

Solution The definition of absolute value on page 28 shows that the rule of f can be written as

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ -x & \text{if } x < 0. \end{cases}$$

So the right half of the graph (that is, where $x \geq 0$) will consist of a portion of the line $y = x$. It can be graphed by plotting two points, say, $(0, 0)$ and $(1, 1)$. The left half of the graph (where $x < 0$) will consist of a portion of the line $y = -x$, which can be graphed by plotting $(-2, 2)$ and $(-1, 1)$, as shown in Figure 3.6. ✓₃

✓ Checkpoint 3

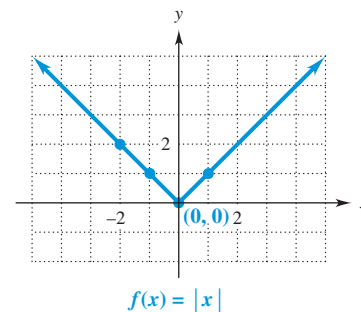
Graph $f(x) = |3x - 4|$.

Figure 3.6

TECHNOLOGY TIP To graph most piecewise linear functions on a graphing calculator, you must use a special syntax. For example, on TI calculators, the best way to obtain the graph in Example 3 is to graph two separate equations on the same screen:

$$y_1 = (x - 2)/(x \leq 3) \quad \text{and} \quad y_2 = (-x + 8)/(x > 3).$$

The inequality symbols are in the TEST (or CHAR) menu. However, most calculators will graph absolute-value functions directly. To graph $f(x) = |x + 2|$, for instance, graph the equation $y = \text{abs}(x + 2)$. “Abs” (for absolute value) is on the keyboard or in the MATH menu.

Step Functions


The **greatest-integer function**, usually written $f(x) = [x]$, is defined by saying that $[x]$ denotes the largest integer that is less than or equal to x . For example, $[8] = 8$, $[7.45] = 7$, $[\pi] = 3$, $[-1] = -1$, $[-2.6] = -3$, and so on.

Example 5

Graph the greatest-integer function $f(x) = [x]$.

Solution Consider the values of the function between each two consecutive integers—for instance,

x	$-2 \leq x < -1$	$-1 \leq x < 0$	$0 \leq x < 1$	$1 \leq x < 2$	$2 \leq x < 3$
$[x]$	-2	-1	0	1	2

Thus, between $x = -2$ and $x = -1$, the value of $f(x) = [x]$ is always -2 , so the graph there is a horizontal line segment, all of whose points have second coordinate -2 . The rest of the graph is obtained similarly (Figure 3.7). An open circle in that figure indicates that the endpoint of the segment is *not* on the graph, whereas a closed circle indicates that the endpoint *is* on the graph. 

Checkpoint 4

Graph $y = [\frac{1}{2}x + 1]$.

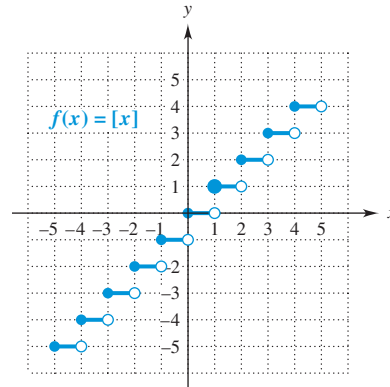



Figure 3.7

Functions whose graphs resemble the graph of the greatest-integer function are sometimes called **step functions**.

Example 6 **Business** In 2013, the U.S. Post Office charged to ship a flat envelope first class to Eastern Europe, Europe, or Australia a fee of \$2.05 for up to and including the first ounce, \$.85 for each additional ounce or fraction of an ounce up to and including 8 ounces, and then \$1.70 for each additional four ounces or less, up to a peak of 64 ounces. Let $D(x)$ represent the cost to send a flat envelope weighing x ounces. Graph $D(x)$ for x in the interval $(0, 20]$.

Solution For x in the interval $(0, 1]$, $y = 2.05$. For x in $(1, 2]$, $y = 2.05 + .85 = 2.90$. For x in $(2, 3]$, $y = 2.90 + .85 = 3.75$, and so on up to x in $(7, 8]$, $y = 7.15 + .85 = 8.00$. Then for x in $(8, 12]$, $y = 8.00 + 1.70 = 9.70$. For x in $(12, 16]$, $y = 9.70 + 1.70 = 11.40$, and x in $(16, 20]$, $y = 11.40 + 1.70 = 13.10$. The graph, which is that of a step function, is shown in Figure 3.8. 

Checkpoint 5

To mail a letter to the regions described in Example 6, the U.S. Post Office charges \$1.10 for up to and including the first ounce, an additional \$.95 for up to and including 2 ounces, an additional \$.95 for up to and including 3 ounces, and then an additional \$.95 to a maximum weight of 3.5 ounces. Let $L(x)$ represent the cost of sending a letter to those regions where x represents the weight of the letter in ounces. Graph $L(x)$ for x in the interval $(0, 3.5]$.

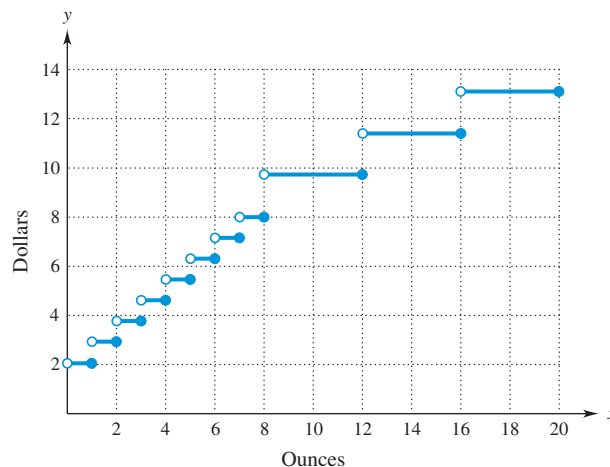



Figure 3.8

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** On most graphing calculators, the greatest-integer function is denoted INT or FLOOR. (Look on the MATH menu or its NUM submenu.) Casio calculators use INTG for the greatest-integer function and INT for a different function. When graphing these functions, put your calculator in “dot” graphing mode rather than the usual “connected” mode to avoid erroneous vertical line segments in the graph.

Other Functions


The graphs of many functions do not consist only of straight-line segments. As a general rule when graphing functions by hand, you should follow the procedure introduced in Section 2.1 and summarized here.

Graphing a Function by Plotting Points

1. Determine the domain of the function.
2. Select a few numbers in the domain of f (include both negative and positive ones when possible), and compute the corresponding values of $f(x)$.
3. Plot the points $(x, f(x))$ computed in Step 2. Use these points and any other information you may have about the function to make an educated guess about the shape of the entire graph.
4. Unless you have information to the contrary, assume that the graph is continuous (unbroken) wherever it is defined.

This method was used to find the graphs of the functions $f(x) = x^2 - 2x - 8$ and $g(x) = \sqrt{x + 2}$ in Examples 3 and 4 of Section 2.1. Here are some more examples.

Example 7 Graph $g(x) = \sqrt{x - 1}$.

Solution Because the rule of the function is defined only when $x - 1 \geq 0$ (that is, when $x \geq 1$), the domain of g is the interval $[1, \infty)$. Use a calculator to make a table of values such as the one in Figure 3.9. Plot the corresponding points and connect them to get the graph in Figure 3.9. 

Checkpoint 6

Graph $f(x) = \sqrt{5 - 2x}$.

x	$g(x) = \sqrt{x - 1}$
1	0
2	1
3	$\sqrt{2} \approx 1.414$
5	2
7	$\sqrt{6} \approx 2.449$
10	3

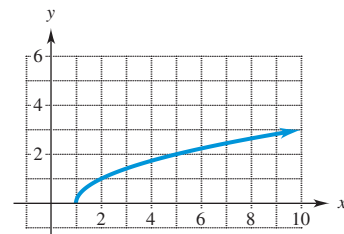


Figure 3.9

Example 8 Graph the function whose rule is

$$f(x) = 3 - \frac{x^3}{4}.$$

Solution Make a table of values and plot the corresponding points. They suggest the graph in Figure 3.10.

x	$f(x) = 3 - \frac{x^3}{4}$
-4	19.0
-3	9.8
-2	5.0
-1	3.3
0	3.0
1	2.8
2	1.0
3	-3.8
4	-13.0

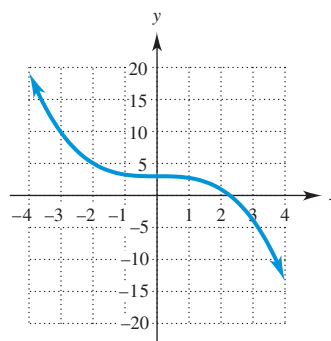


Figure 3.10

Example 9 Graph the piecewise defined function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if } x \leq 2 \\ \sqrt{x-1} & \text{if } x > 2. \end{cases}$$

Solution When $x \leq 2$, the rule of the function is $f(x) = x^2$. Make a table of values such as the one in Figure 3.11. Plot the corresponding points and connect them to get the left half of the graph in Figure 3.11. When $x > 2$, the rule of the function is $f(x) = \sqrt{x-1}$, whose graph is shown in Figure 3.9. In Example 7, the entire graph was given, beginning at $x = 1$. Here we use only the part of the graph to the right of $x = 2$, as shown in Figure 3.11. The open circle at $(2, 1)$ indicates that this point is not part of the graph of f (why?).

x	x^2
-2	4
-1	1
0	0
1	1
2	4

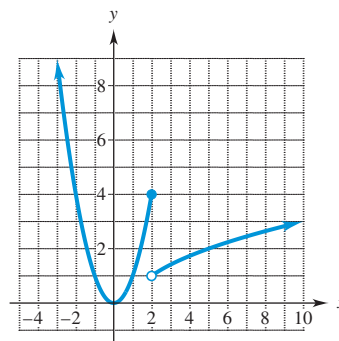


Figure 3.11

Graph Reading

Graphs are often used in business and the social sciences to present data. It is just as important to know how to *read* such graphs as it is to construct them.

Example 10 Business Figure 3.12, on the following page, shows the median sales prices (in thousands of dollars) of new privately owned one-family houses by region of the United States (northeast, midwest, south, and west) from the years 2005 to 2011. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau and U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development.)

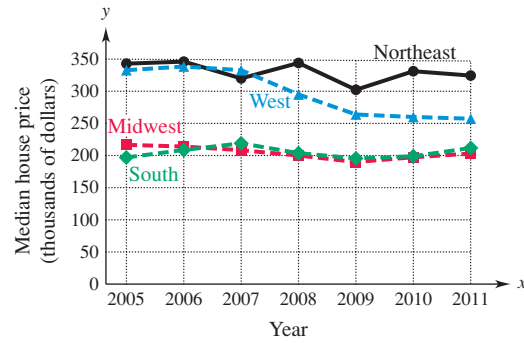


Figure 3.12

(a) How do prices in the west compare with those in the midwest over the period shown in the graph?

Solution The prices of the houses in the west started out approximately \$100,000 higher than those in the midwest. In both regions prices declined until 2009 when prices in the midwest inched higher while those in the west continued to decline. In 2011, the gap between the two regions had shrunk to just over \$50,000.

(b) Which region typically had the highest price?

Solution The northeast had the highest median price for all years except for 2007 when the west had the highest price.

Example 11

Figure 3.13 is the graph of the function f whose rule is $f(x)$ = average interest rate on a 30-year fixed-rate mortgage for a new home in year x . (Data from: www.fhfa.gov.)

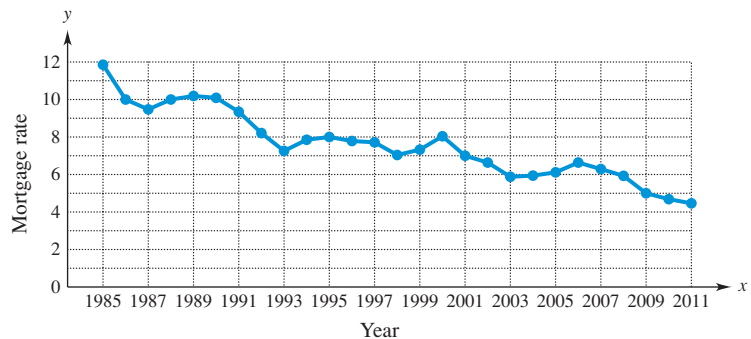


Figure 3.13

(a) Find the function values of $f(1988)$ and $f(2009)$.

Solution The point (1988, 10) is on the graph, which means that $f(1988) = 10$. Similarly, $f(2009) = 5$, because the point (2009, 5) is on the graph. These values tell us the average mortgage rates were 10% in the year 1988 and 5% in the year 2009.

(b) During what period were mortgage rates at or above 7%?

Solution Look for points on the graph whose second coordinates are 7 or more—that is, points on or above the horizontal line through 7. These points represent the period from 1985 to 2001.

(c) During what period were mortgage rates at or below 5%?

Solution Look for points that are at or below the horizontal line through 5—that is, points with second coordinates less than or equal to 5. They occur from 2009 to 2011.

The Vertical-Line Test

The following fact distinguishes function graphs from other graphs.

Vertical-Line Test

No vertical line intersects the graph of a function $y = f(x)$ at more than one point.

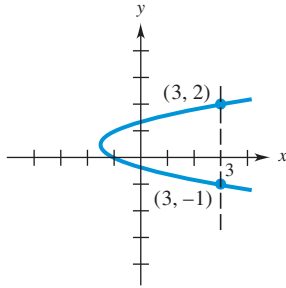


Figure 3.14

In other words, if a vertical line intersects a graph at more than one point, the graph is not the graph of a function. To see why this is true, consider the graph in Figure 3.14. The vertical line $x = 3$ intersects the graph at two points. If this were the graph of a function f , it would mean that $f(3) = 2$ (because $(3, 2)$ is on the graph) and that $f(3) = -1$ (because $(3, -1)$ is on the graph). This is impossible, because a *function* can have only one value when $x = 3$ (because each input determines exactly one output). Therefore, the graph in Figure 3.14 cannot be the graph of a function. A similar argument works in the general case.

Example 12

Use the vertical-line test to determine which of the graphs in Figure 3.15 are the graphs of functions.

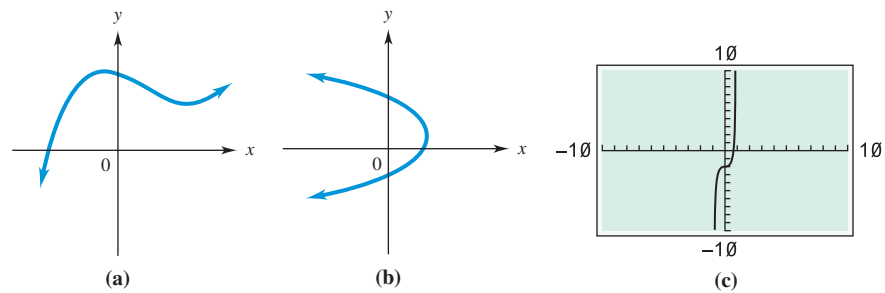


Figure 3.15

Solution To use the vertical-line test, imagine dragging a ruler held vertically across the graph from left to right. If the graph is that of a function, the edge of the ruler would hit the graph only once for every x -value. If you do this for graph (a), every vertical line intersects the graph in at most one point, so this graph is the graph of a function. Many vertical lines (including the y -axis) intersect graph (b) twice, so it is not the graph of a function.

Graph (c) appears to fail the vertical-line test near $x = 1$ and $x = -1$, indicating that it is not the graph of a function. But this appearance is misleading because of the low resolution of the calculator screen. The table in Figure 3.16 and the very narrow segment of the graph in Figure 3.17 show that the graph actually rises as it moves to the right. The same thing happens near $x = -1$. So this graph *does* pass the vertical-line test and *is* the graph of a function. (Its rule is $f(x) = 15x^{11} - 2$). The moral of this story is that you can't always trust images produced by a graphing calculator. When in doubt, try other viewing windows or a table to see what is really going on. ✓

✓ Checkpoint 7

Find a viewing window that indicates the actual shape of the graph of the function $f(x) = 15x^{11} - 2$ of Example 12 near the point $(-1, -17)$.

X	Y1
.88	1.6762
.92	3.9946
.96	7.5736
1	13
1.04	21.092
1.08	32.975
1.12	50.178

X = .88

Figure 3.16

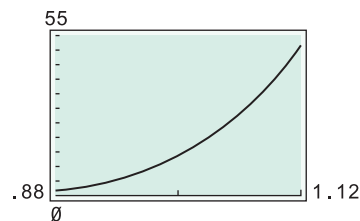


Figure 3.17

3.2 Exercises

Graph each function. (See Examples 1–4.)

1. $f(x) = -5x + 2$
2. $g(x) = 3 - x$
3. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 3 & \text{if } x \leq 1 \\ 4 & \text{if } x > 1 \end{cases}$
4. $g(x) = \begin{cases} 2x - 1 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ -1 & \text{if } x \geq 0 \end{cases}$
5. $y = \begin{cases} 4 - x & \text{if } x \leq 0 \\ 3x + 4 & \text{if } x > 0 \end{cases}$
6. $y = \begin{cases} x + 5 & \text{if } x \leq 1 \\ 2 - 3x & \text{if } x > 1 \end{cases}$
7. $f(x) = \begin{cases} |x| & \text{if } x < 2 \\ -2x & \text{if } x \geq 2 \end{cases}$
8. $g(x) = \begin{cases} -|x| & \text{if } x \leq 1 \\ 2x & \text{if } x > 1 \end{cases}$
9. $f(x) = |x - 4|$
10. $g(x) = |4 - x|$
11. $f(x) = |3 - 3x|$
12. $g(x) = -|x|$
13. $y = -|x - 1|$
14. $f(x) = |x| - 2$
15. $y = |x - 2| + 3$
16. $|x| + |y| = 1$ (*Hint:* This is not the graph of a function, but is made up of four straight-line segments. Find them by using the definition of absolute value in these four cases: $x \geq 0$ and $y \geq 0$; $x \geq 0$ and $y < 0$; $x < 0$ and $y \geq 0$; $x < 0$ and $y < 0$).

Graph each function. (See Examples 5 and 6.)

17. $f(x) = [x - 3]$
18. $g(x) = [x + 3]$
19. $g(x) = [-x]$
20. $f(x) = [x] + [-x]$ (The graph contains horizontal segments, but is *not* a horizontal line.)
21. **Business** The accompanying table gives rates charged by the U.S. Postal Service for first-class letters in March 2013. Graph the function $f(x)$ that gives the price of mailing a first-class letter, where x represents the weight of the letter in ounces and $0 \leq x \leq 3.5$.

Weight Not Over	Price
1 ounce	\$0.46
2 ounces	\$0.66
3 ounces	\$0.86
3.5 ounces	\$1.06

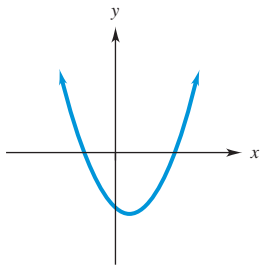
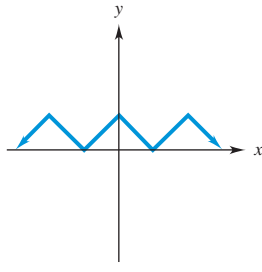
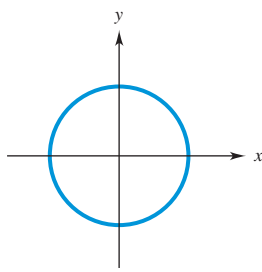
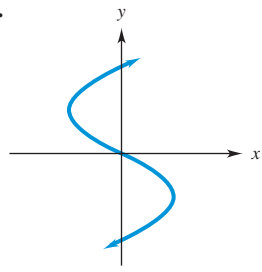
22. **Business** The accompanying table gives rates charged by the U.S. Postal Service for first-class large flat envelopes in March, 2013. Graph the function $f(x)$ that gives the price of mailing a first-class large flat envelope, where x represents the weight of the envelope in ounces and $0 \leq x \leq 6$.

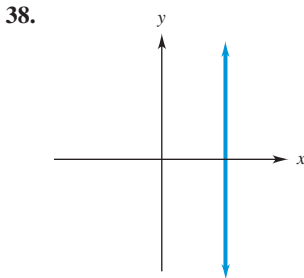
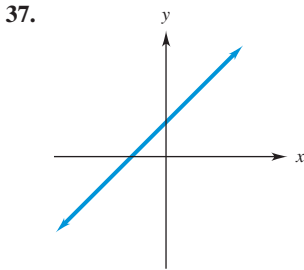
Weight Not Over	Price
1 ounce	\$0.92
2 ounces	\$1.12
3 ounces	\$1.32
4 ounces	\$1.53
5 ounces	\$1.72
6 ounces	\$1.92

Graph each function. (See Examples 7–9.)

23. $f(x) = 3 - 2x^2$
24. $g(x) = 2 - x^2$
25. $h(x) = x^3/10 + 2$
26. $f(x) = x^3/20 - 3$
27. $g(x) = \sqrt{-x}$
28. $h(x) = \sqrt{x} - 1$
29. $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{x}$
30. $g(x) = \sqrt[3]{x - 4}$
31. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & \text{if } x < 2 \\ -2x + 2 & \text{if } x \geq 2 \end{cases}$
32. $g(x) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{-x} & \text{if } x \leq -4 \\ \frac{x^2}{4} & \text{if } x > -4 \end{cases}$

Determine whether each graph is a graph of a function or not. (See Example 12.)

33. 
34. 
35. 
36. 



Use a graphing calculator or other technology to graph each of the given functions. If the graph has any endpoints, indicate whether they are part of the graph or not.

39. $f(x) = .2x^3 - .8x^2 - 4x + 9.6$

40. $g(x) = .1x^4 - .3x^3 - 1.3x^2 + 1.5x$

41. $g(x) = \begin{cases} 2x^2 + x & \text{if } x < 1 \\ x^3 - x - 1 & \text{if } x \geq 1 \end{cases}$ (Hint: See the Technology Tip on page 145)

42. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x|x| & \text{if } x \leq 0 \\ -x^2|x| + 2 & \text{if } x > 0 \end{cases}$

Use a graphical root finder to determine the x-intercepts of the graph of

43. f in Exercise 39;

44. g in Exercise 40.

Use a maximum–minimum finder to determine the location of the peaks and valleys in the graph of

45. g in Exercise 40;

46. f in Exercise 39.

See Examples 2, 3, 10, and 11 as you do Exercises 47–52.

47. **Finance** The Maine state income tax for a single person in 2013 was determined by the rule

$$T(x) = \begin{cases} .02x & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 5099 \\ 101.98 + .045(x - 5099) & \text{if } 5099 < x \leq 10,149 \\ 329.23 + .07(x - 10,149) & \text{if } 10,149 < x \leq 20,349 \\ 1043.23 + .085(x - 20,349) & \text{if } x > 20,349 \end{cases}$$

where x is the person's taxable income in dollars. Graph the function $T(x)$ for taxable incomes between 0 and \$24,000.

48. **Finance** The Alabama state income tax for a single person in 2013 was determined by the rule

$$T(x) = \begin{cases} .02x & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 500 \\ 10 + .04(x - 500) & \text{if } 500 < x \leq 3000 \\ 110 + .05(x - 3000) & \text{if } x > 3000 \end{cases}$$

where x is the person's taxable income in dollars. Graph the function $T(x)$ for taxable incomes between 0 and \$5000.

49. **Finance** The price of KeyCorp stock can be approximated by the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 9.04 - .027x & \text{if } 0 < x \leq 43 \\ 7.879 + .032(x - 43) & \text{if } 43 < x \leq 113 \end{cases}$$

where x represents the number of trading days past September 14, 2012. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

(a) Graph $f(x)$.

(b) What is the lowest stock price during the period defined by $f(x)$?

50. **Natural Science** The number of minutes of daylight in Washington, DC, can be modeled by the function

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} .0106x^2 + 1.24x + 565 & \text{if } 1 \leq x < 84 \\ -.0202x^2 + 6.97x + 295 & \text{if } 84 \leq x < 263 \\ .0148x^2 - 11.1x + 2632 & \text{if } 263 \leq x \leq 365 \end{cases}$$

where x represents the number of days of the year, starting on January 1. Find the number of minutes of daylight on

(a) day 32.

(b) day 90.

(c) day 200.

(d) day 270.

(e) Graph $g(x)$.

(f) On what day is the number of minutes of daylight the greatest?

51. **Health** The following table shows the consumer price index (CPI) for medical care in selected years: (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics.)

Year	Medical-Care CPI
1950	15.1
1980	74.9
2010	388.4

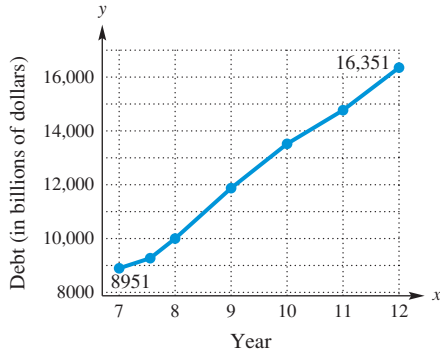
(a) Let $x = 0$ correspond to 1950. Find the rule of a piecewise linear function that models these data—that is, a piecewise linear function f with $f(0) = 15.1$, $f(30) = 74.9$, and $f(60) = 388.4$. Round all coefficients in your final answer to one decimal place.

(b) Graph the function f for $0 \leq x \leq 65$.

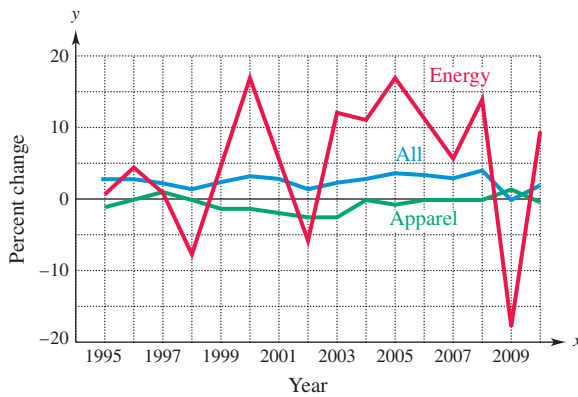
(c) Use the function to estimate the medical-care CPI in 2004.

(d) Assuming that this model remains accurate after 2010, estimate the medical-care CPI for 2015.

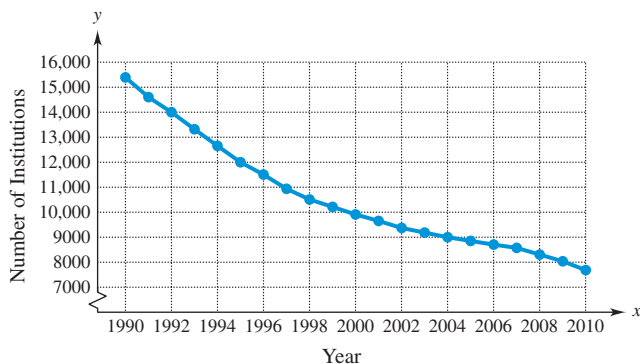
52. **Business** The graph on the following page from the U.S. Office of Management and Budget shows the federal debt from the year 2007 to the year 2012 (in billions of dollars), with $x = 7$ corresponding to the year 2007. Find the rule of a linear function g that passes through the two points corresponding to 2007 and 2012. Draw the graph of g .



Finance Use the accompanying graph to answer Exercises 53 and 54. The graph shows the annual percent change in various consumer price indexes (CPIs). (See Examples 10 and 11.) (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

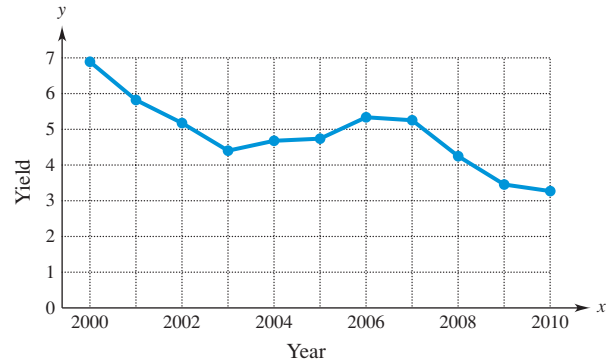


53. (a) Was there any period between 1995 and 2010 when all three indexes showed a decrease?
 (b) During what years did the CPI for energy show a decrease?
 (c) When was the CPI for energy decreasing at the fastest rate?
54. (a) During what years did the CPI for apparel show an increase?
 (b) When was the CPI for apparel increasing at the greatest rate?
55. **Finance** The following graph shows the number of FDIC-insured financial institutions in the United States for the year 1990 through the year 2010. (Data from: U.S. Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.)



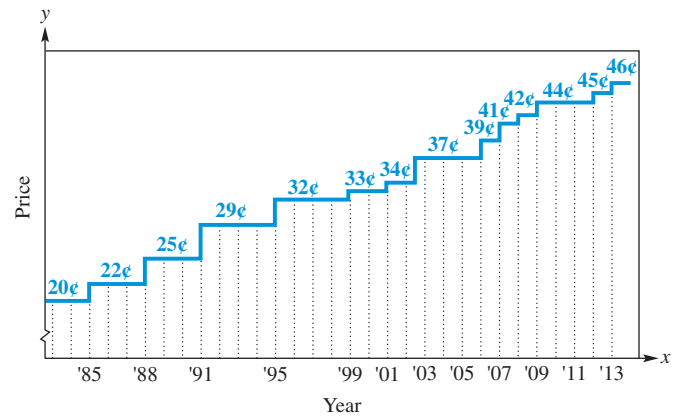
- (a) Is this the graph of a function?
 (b) What does the domain represent?
 (c) Estimate the range.

56. **Finance** The following graph shows the percent-per-year yield of the 10-year U.S. Treasury Bond from the year 2000 to the year 2010. (Data from: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.)



- (a) Is this the graph of a function?
 (b) What does the domain represent?
 (c) Estimate the range.

57. **Business** Whenever postage rates change, some newspaper publishes a graph like this one, which shows the price of a first-class stamp from 1982 to 2008:

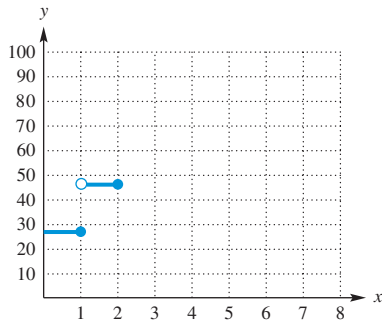


- (a) Let f be the function whose rule is $f(x) = \text{cost of a first-class stamp in year } x$.

- Find $f(2000)$ and $f(2011)$.
 (b) Explain why the graph in the figure is not the graph of the function f . What must be done to the figure to make it an accurate graph of the function f ?

58. **Business** A chain-saw rental firm charges \$20 per day or fraction of a day to rent a saw, plus a fixed fee of \$7 for resharpening the blade. Let $S(x)$ represent the cost of renting a saw for x days. Find each of the following.

- (a) $S\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$ (b) $S(1)$ (c) $S\left(1\frac{2}{3}\right)$ (d) $S\left(4\frac{3}{4}\right)$
 (e) What does it cost to rent for $5\frac{7}{8}$ days?
 (f) A portion of the graph of $y = S(x)$ is shown on the following page. Explain how the graph could be continued.



- (g) What is the domain variable?
- (h) What is the range variable?
- (i) Write a sentence or two explaining what (c) and its answer represent.
- (j) We have left $x = 0$ out of the graph. Discuss why it should or should not be included. If it were included, how would you define $S(0)$?

59. **Business** Sarah Hendrickson needs to rent a van to pick up a new couch she has purchased. The cost of the van is \$19.99 for the first 75 minutes and then an additional \$5 for each block of 15 minutes beyond 75. Find the cost to rent a van for

- (a) 2 hours; (b) 1.5 hours;
- (c) 3.5 hours; (d) 4 hours.
- (e) Graph the ordered pairs (hours, cost).

60. **Business** A delivery company charges \$25 plus 60¢ per mile or part of a mile. Find the cost for a trip of

- (a) 3 miles; (b) 4.2 miles;
- (c) 5.9 miles; (d) 8 miles.
- (e) Graph the ordered pairs (miles, cost).
- (f) Is this a function?

Work these problems.

61. **Natural Science** A laboratory culture contains about 1 million bacteria at midnight. The culture grows very rapidly until noon, when a bactericide is introduced and the bacteria population plunges. By 4 p.m., the bacteria have adapted to the bactericide and the culture slowly increases in population until 9 p.m., when the culture is accidentally destroyed by the cleanup crew. Let $g(t)$ denote the bacteria population at time t (with $t = 0$ corresponding to midnight). Draw a plausible graph of the function g . (Many correct answers are possible.)

62. **Physical Science** A plane flies from Austin, Texas, to Cleveland, Ohio, a distance of 1200 miles. Let f be the function whose rule is

$$f(t) = \text{distance (in miles) from Austin at time } t \text{ hours,}$$

with $t = 0$ corresponding to the 4 p.m. takeoff. In each part of this exercise, draw a plausible graph of f under the given circumstances. (There are many correct answers for each part.)

- (a) The flight is nonstop and takes between 3.5 and 4 hours.
- (b) Bad weather forces the plane to land in Dallas (about 200 miles from Austin) at 5 p.m., remain overnight, and leave at 8 a.m. the next day, flying nonstop to Cleveland.
- (c) The plane flies nonstop, but due to heavy traffic it must fly in a holding pattern for an hour over Cincinnati (about 200 miles from Cleveland) and then go on to Cleveland.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.
- 6.
7. There are many correct answers, including, $-1.4 \leq x \leq -0.6$ and $-30 \leq y \leq 0$.

3.3 Applications of Linear Functions

Most of this section deals with the basic business relationships that were introduced in Section 1.2:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Revenue} &= (\text{Price per item}) \times (\text{Number of items}); \\ \text{Cost} &= \text{Fixed Costs} + \text{Variable Costs}; \\ \text{Profit} &= \text{Revenue} - \text{Cost}. \end{aligned}$$

The examples will use only linear functions, but the methods presented here also apply to more complicated functions.

Cost Analysis

Recall that fixed costs are for such things as buildings, machinery, real-estate taxes, and product design. Within broad limits, the fixed cost is constant for a particular product and does not change as more items are made. Variable costs are for labor, materials, shipping, and so on, and depend on the number of items made.

If $C(x)$ is the cost of making x items, then the fixed cost (the cost that occurs even when no items are produced) can be found by letting $x = 0$. For example, for the cost function $C(x) = 45x + 250,000$, the fixed cost is

$$C(0) = 45(0) + 250,000 = \$250,000.$$

In this case, the variable cost of making x items is $45x$ —that is, \$45 per item manufactured.

Example 1 **Business** An anticlot drug can be made for \$10 per unit. The total cost to produce 100 units is \$1500.


(a) Assuming that the cost function is linear, find its rule.

Solution Since the cost function $C(x)$ is linear, its rule is of the form $C(x) = mx + b$. We are given that m (the cost per item) is 10, so the rule is $C(x) = 10x + b$. To find b , use the fact that it costs \$1500 to produce 100 units, which means that

$$\begin{aligned} C(100) &= 1500 \\ 10(100) + b &= 1500 && C(x) = 10x + b. \\ 1000 + b &= 1500 \\ b &= 500. \end{aligned}$$

So the rule of the cost function is $C(x) = 10x + 500$.

(b) What are the fixed costs?

Solution The fixed costs are $C(0) = 10(0) + 500 = \$500$. 

If $C(x)$ is the total cost to produce x items, then the **average cost** per item is given by

$$\bar{C}(x) = \frac{C(x)}{x}.$$

As more and more items are produced, the average cost per item typically decreases.

Checkpoint 1


The total cost of producing 10 calculators is \$100. The variable costs per calculator are \$4. Find the rule of the linear cost function.

Example 2 **Business** Find the average cost of producing 100 and 1000 units of the anticlot drug in Example 1.

Solution The cost function is $C(x) = 10x + 500$, so the average cost of producing 100 units is

$$\bar{C}(100) = \frac{C(100)}{100} = \frac{10(100) + 500}{100} = \frac{1500}{100} = \$15.00 \text{ per unit.}$$

The average cost of producing 1000 units is

$$\bar{C}(1000) = \frac{C(1000)}{1000} = \frac{10(1000) + 500}{1000} = \frac{10,500}{1000} = \$10.50 \text{ per unit. } $$

Checkpoint 2

In Checkpoint 1, find the average cost per calculator when 100 are produced.

Rates of Change

The rate at which a quantity (such as revenue or profit) is changing can be quite important. For instance, if a company determines that the rate of change of its revenue is decreasing, then sales growth is slowing down, a trend that may require a response.

The rate of change of a linear function is easily determined. For example, suppose $f(x) = 3x + 5$ and consider the table of values in the margin. The table shows that each time x changes by 1, the corresponding value of $f(x)$ changes by 3. Thus, the rate of change of $f(x) = 3x + 5$ with respect to x is 3, which is the slope of the line $y = 3x + 5$. The same thing happens for any linear function:

x	$f(x) = 3x + 5$
1	8
2	11
3	14
4	17
5	20

The rate of change of a linear function $f(x) = mx + b$ is the slope m .

In particular, the rate of change of a linear function is constant.

The value of a computer, or an automobile, or a machine *depreciates* (decreases) over time. **Linear depreciation** means that the value of the item at time x is given by a linear function $f(x) = mx + b$. The slope m of this line gives the rate of depreciation.

Example 3 Business According to the *Kelley Blue Book*, a Ford Mustang two-door convertible that is worth \$14,776 today will be worth \$10,600 in two years (if it is in excellent condition with average mileage).

(a) Assuming linear depreciation, find the depreciation function for this car.

Solution We know the car is worth \$14,776 now ($x = 0$) and will be worth \$10,600 in two years ($x = 2$). So the points $(0, 14,776)$ and $(2, 10,600)$ are on the graph of the linear-depreciation function and can be used to determine its slope:

$$m = \frac{10,600 - 14,776}{2} = \frac{-4176}{2} = -2088.$$

Using the point $(0, 14,776)$, we find that the equation of the line is

$$\begin{aligned} y - 14,776 &= -2088(x - 0) && \text{Point-slope form} \\ y &= -2088x + 14,776. && \text{Slope-intercept form} \end{aligned}$$


Therefore, the rule of the depreciation function is $f(x) = -2088x + 14,776$.

(b) What will the car be worth in 4 years?

Solution Evaluate f when $x = 4$:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= -2088x + 14,776 \\ f(4) &= -2088(4) + 14,776 = \$6424. \end{aligned}$$

(c) At what rate is the car depreciating?

Solution The depreciation rate is given by the slope of $f(x) = -2088x + 14,776$, namely, -2088 . This negative slope means that the car is decreasing in value an average of \$2088 a year. 

Checkpoint 3

Using the information from Example 3, determine what the car will be worth in 6 years.

In economics, the rate of change of the cost function is called the **marginal cost**. Marginal cost is important to management in making decisions in such areas as cost control, pricing, and production planning. When the cost function is linear, say, $C(x) = mx + b$, the marginal cost is the number m (the slope of the graph of C). Marginal cost can also be thought of as the cost of producing one more item, as the next example demonstrates.

Example 4 **Business** An electronics company manufactures handheld PCs. The cost function for one of its models is $C(x) = 160x + 750,000$.

(a) What are the fixed costs for this product?

Solution The fixed costs are $C(0) = 160(0) + 750,000 = \$750,000$.

(b) What is the marginal cost?

Solution The slope of $C(x) = 160x + 750,000$ is 160, so the marginal cost is \$160 per item.

(c) After 50,000 units have been produced, what is the cost of producing one more?

Solution The cost of producing 50,000 is


$$C(50,000) = 160(50,000) + 750,000 = \$8,750,000.$$

The cost of 50,001 units is

$$C(50,001) = 160(50,001) + 750,000 = \$8,750,160.$$

The cost of the additional unit is the difference

$$C(50,001) - C(50,000) = 8,750,160 - 8,750,000 = \$160.$$

Thus, the cost of one more item is the marginal cost. 

Similarly, the rate of change of a revenue function is called the **marginal revenue**. When the revenue function is linear, the marginal revenue is the slope of the line, as well as the revenue from producing one more item.

Example 5 **Business** The energy company New York State Electric and Gas charges each residential customer a basic fee for electricity of \$15.11, plus \$.0333 per kilowatt hour (kWh).

(a) Assuming there are 700,000 residential customers, find the company's revenue function.


Solution The monthly revenue from the basic fee is

$$15.11(700,000) = \$10,577,000.$$

If x is the total number of kilowatt hours used by all customers, then the revenue from electricity use is $.0333x$. So the monthly revenue function is given by

$$R(x) = .0333x + 10,577,000.$$

(b) What is the marginal revenue?

Solution The marginal revenue (the rate at which revenue is changing) is given by the slope of the rate function: \$0.0333 per kWh. 

Examples 4 and 5 are typical of the general case, as summarized here.

In a **linear cost function** $C(x) = mx + b$, the marginal cost is m (the slope of the cost line) and the fixed cost is b (the y -intercept of the cost line). The marginal cost is the cost of producing one more item.

Similarly, in a **linear revenue function** $R(x) = kx + d$, the marginal revenue is k (the slope of the revenue line), which is the revenue from selling one more item.

Checkpoint 4

The cost in dollars to produce x kilograms of chocolate candy is given by $C(x) = 3.5x + 800$. Find each of the following.

- The fixed cost
- The total cost for 12 kilograms
- The marginal cost of the 40th kilogram
- The marginal cost per kilogram

Checkpoint 5

Assume that the average customer in Example 5 uses 1600 kWh in a month.

- What is the total number of kWh used by all customers?
- What is the company's monthly revenue?

Break-Even Analysis

A typical company must analyze its costs and the potential market for its product to determine when (or even whether) it will make a profit.

Example 6 Business A company manufactures a 42-inch plasma HDTV that sells to retailers for \$550. The cost of making x of these TVs for a month is given by the cost function $C(x) = 250x + 213,000$.

(a) Find the function R that gives the revenue from selling x TVs.

Solution Since revenue is the product of the price per item and the number of items, $R(x) = 550x$.

(b) What is the revenue from selling 600 TVs?

Solution Evaluate the revenue function R at 600:

$$R(600) = 550(600) = \$330,000.$$

(c) Find the profit function P .

Solution Since Profit = Revenue - Cost,

$$P(x) = R(x) - C(x) = 550x - (250x + 213,000) = 300x - 213,000.$$

(d) What is the profit from selling 500 TVs?

Solution Evaluate the profit function at 500 to obtain

$$P(500) = 300(500) - 213,000 = -63,000,$$

that is, a loss of \$63,000.

A company can make a profit only if the revenue on a product exceeds the cost of manufacturing it. The number of units at which revenue equals cost (that is, profit is 0) is the **break-even point**.

Example 7 Business Find the break-even point for the company in Example 6.

Solution The company will break even when revenue equals cost—that is, when

$$\begin{aligned} R(x) &= C(x) \\ 550x &= 250x + 213,000 \\ 300x &= 213,000 \\ x &= 710. \end{aligned}$$

The company breaks even by selling 710 TVs. The graphs of the revenue and cost functions and the break-even point (where $x = 710$) are shown in the Figure 3.18. The company must sell more than 710 TVs ($x > 710$) in order to make a profit. ✓6

✓ Checkpoint 6

For a certain newsletter, the cost equation is $C(x) = 0.90x + 1500$, where x is the number of newsletters sold. The newsletter sells for \$1.25 per copy. Find the break-even point.

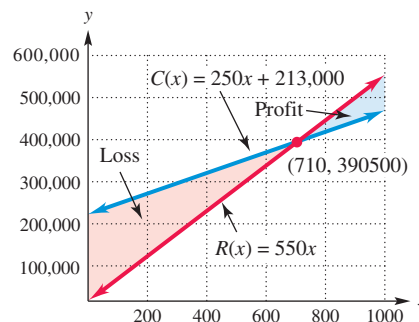


Figure 3.18

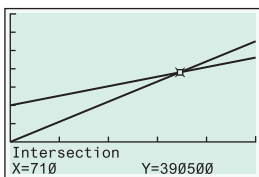


Figure 3.19

TECHNOLOGY TIP The break-even point in Example 7 can be found on a graphing calculator by graphing the cost and revenue functions on the same screen and using the calculator's intersection finder, as shown in Figure 3.19. Depending on the calculator, the intersection finder is in the CALC or G-SOLVE menu or in the MATH or FCN submenu of the GRAPH menu.

Supply and Demand

The supply of and demand for an item are usually related to its price. Producers will supply large numbers of the item at a high price, but consumer demand will be low. As the price of the item decreases, consumer demand increases, but producers are less willing to supply large numbers of the item. The curves showing the quantity that will be supplied at a given price and the quantity that will be demanded at a given price are called **supply and demand curves**, respectively. In supply-and-demand problems, we use p for price and q for quantity. We will discuss the economic concepts of supply and demand in more detail in later chapters.

Example 8 Economics Joseph Nolan has studied the supply and demand for aluminum siding and has determined that the price per unit,* p , and the quantity demanded, q , are related by the linear equation

$$p = 60 - \frac{3}{4}q.$$

(a) Find the demand at a price of \$40 per unit.

Solution Let $p = 40$. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} p &= 60 - \frac{3}{4}q \\ 40 &= 60 - \frac{3}{4}q && \text{Let } p = 40. \\ -20 &= -\frac{3}{4}q && \text{Add } -60 \text{ to both sides.} \\ \frac{80}{3} &= q. && \text{Multiply both sides by } -\frac{4}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

At a price of \$40 per unit, $80/3$ (or $26\frac{2}{3}$) units will be demanded.

(b) Find the price if the demand is 32 units.

Solution Let $q = 32$. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} p &= 60 - \frac{3}{4}q \\ p &= 60 - \frac{3}{4}(32) && \text{Let } q = 32. \\ p &= 60 - 24 \\ p &= 36. \end{aligned}$$

With a demand of 32 units, the price is \$36.

(c) Graph $p = 60 - \frac{3}{4}q$.

Solution It is customary to use the horizontal axis for the quantity q and the vertical axis for the price p . In part (a), we saw that $80/3$ units would be demanded at a price of

*An appropriate unit here might be, for example, one thousand square feet of siding.

✓ Checkpoint 7

Suppose price and quantity demanded are related by

$$p = 100 - 4q.$$

- Find the price if the quantity demanded is 10 units.
- Find the quantity demanded if the price is \$80.
- Write the corresponding ordered pairs.

\$40 per unit; this gives the ordered pair $(80/3, 40)$. Part (b) shows that with a demand of 32 units, the price is \$36, which gives the ordered pair $(32, 36)$. Using the points $(80/3, 40)$ and $(32, 36)$ yields the demand graph depicted in Figure 3.20. Only the portion of the graph in Quadrant I is shown, because supply and demand are meaningful only for positive values of p and q . ✓₇

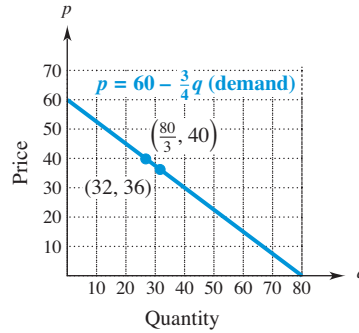


Figure 3.20

- From Figure 3.20, at a price of \$30, what quantity is demanded?

Solution Price is located on the vertical axis. Look for 30 on the p -axis, and read across to where the line $p = 30$ crosses the demand graph. As the graph shows, this occurs where the quantity demanded is 40.

- At what price will 60 units be demanded?

Solution Quantity is located on the horizontal axis. Find 60 on the q -axis, and read up to where the vertical line $q = 60$ crosses the demand graph. This occurs where the price is about \$15 per unit.

- What quantity is demanded at a price of \$60 per unit?

Solution The point $(0, 60)$ on the demand graph shows that the demand is 0 at a price of \$60 (that is, there is no demand at such a high price).

Example 9

Economics Suppose the economist in Example 8 concludes that the supply q of siding is related to its price p by the equation

$$p = .85q.$$

- Find the supply if the price is \$51 per unit.

Solution

$$51 = .85q \quad \text{Let } p = 51.$$

$$60 = q. \quad \text{Divide both sides by } .85$$

If the price is \$51 per unit, then 60 units will be supplied to the marketplace.

- Find the price per unit if the supply is 20 units.

Solution

$$p = .85(20) = 17. \quad \text{Let } q = 20.$$

If the supply is 20 units, then the price is \$17 per unit.

- Graph the supply equation $p = .85q$.

Solution As with demand, each point on the graph has quantity q as its first coordinate and the corresponding price p as its second coordinate. Part (a) shows that the ordered pair $(60, 51)$ is on the graph of the supply equation, and part (b) shows that $(20, 17)$ is on the graph. Using these points, we obtain the supply graph in Figure 3.21.

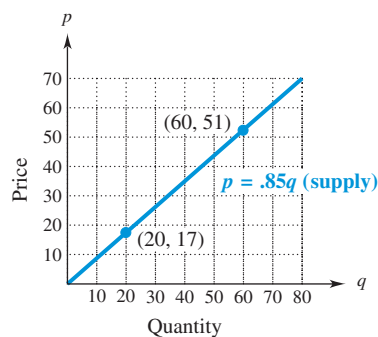


Figure 3.21

(d) Use the graph in Figure 3.21 to find the approximate price at which 35 units will be supplied. Then use algebra to find the exact price.

Solution The point on the graph with first coordinate $q = 35$ is approximately $(35, 30)$. Therefore, 35 units will be supplied when the price is approximately \$30. To determine the exact price algebraically, substitute $q = 35$ into the supply equation:

$$p = .85q = .85(35) = \$29.75.$$

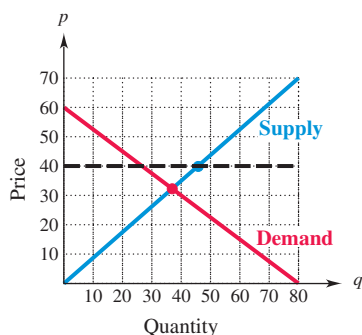


Figure 3.22

Example 10 Economics The supply and demand curves of Examples 8 and 9 are shown in Figure 3.22. Determine graphically whether there is a surplus or a shortage of supply at a price of \$40 per unit.

Solution Find 40 on the vertical axis in Figure 3.22 and read across to the point where the horizontal line $p = 40$ crosses the supply graph (that is, the point corresponding to a price of \$40). This point lies above the demand graph, so supply is greater than demand at a price of \$40, and there is a surplus of supply.

Supply and demand are equal at the point where the supply curve intersects the demand curve. This is the **equilibrium point**. Its second coordinate is the **equilibrium price**, the price at which the same quantity will be supplied as is demanded. Its first coordinate is the quantity that will be demanded and supplied at the equilibrium price; this number is called the **equilibrium quantity**.

Example 11 Economics In the situation described in Examples 8–10, what is the equilibrium quantity? What is the equilibrium price?

Solution The equilibrium point is where the supply and demand curves in Figure 3.22 intersect. To find the quantity q at which the price given by the demand equation $p = 60 - .75q$ (Example 8) is the same as that given by the supply equation $p = .85q$ (Example 9), set these two expressions for p equal to each other and solve the resulting equation:

$$\begin{aligned} 60 - .75q &= .85q \\ 60 &= 1.6q \\ 37.5 &= q. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the equilibrium quantity is 37.5 units, the number of units for which supply will equal demand. Substituting $q = 37.5$ into either the demand or supply equation shows that


$$p = 60 - .75(37.5) = 31.875 \quad \text{or} \quad p = .85(37.5) = 31.875.$$

✓ Checkpoint 8

The demand for a certain commodity is related to the price by $p = 80 - (2/3)q$. The supply is related to the price by $p = (4/3)q$. Find

- the equilibrium quantity;
- the equilibrium price.

So the equilibrium price is \$31.875 (or \$31.88, rounded). (To avoid error, it is a good idea to substitute into both equations, as we did here, to be sure that the same value of p results; if it does not, a mistake has been made.) In this case, the equilibrium point—the point whose coordinates are the equilibrium quantity and price—is $(37.5, 31.875)$. ✓₈

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** The equilibrium point $(37.5, 31.875)$ can be found on a graphing calculator by graphing the supply and demand curves on the same screen and using the calculator's intersection finder to locate their point of intersection.

3.3 Exercises

Business Write a cost function for each of the given scenarios. Identify all variables used. (See Example 1.)

- A chain-saw rental firm charges \$25, plus \$5 per hour.
- A trailer-hauling service charges \$95, plus \$8 per mile.
- A parking garage charges \$8.00, plus \$2.50 per half hour.
- For a 1-day rental, a car rental firm charges \$65, plus 45¢ per mile.

Business Assume that each of the given situations can be expressed as a linear cost function. Find the appropriate cost function in each case. (See Examples 1 and 4.)

- Fixed cost, \$200; 50 items cost \$2000 to produce.
- Fixed cost, \$2000; 40 items cost \$5000 to produce.
- Marginal cost, \$120; 100 items cost \$15,800 to produce.
- Marginal cost, \$90; 150 items cost \$16,000 to produce.

Business In Exercises 9–12, a cost function is given. Find the average cost per item when the required numbers of items are produced. (See Example 2.)

- $C(x) = 12x + 1800$; 50 items, 500 items, 1000 items
- $C(x) = 80x + 12,000$; 100 items, 1000 items, 10,000 items
- $C(x) = 6.5x + 9800$; 200 items, 2000 items, 5000 items
- $C(x) = 8.75x + 16,500$; 1000 items, 10,000 items, 75,000 items

Business Work these exercises. (See Example 3.)

- A Volkswagen Beetle convertible sedan is worth \$16,615 now and is expected to be worth \$8950 in 4 years.
 - Find a linear depreciation function for this car.
 - Estimate the value of the car 5 years from now.
 - At what rate is the car depreciating?
- A computer that cost \$1250 new is expected to depreciate linearly at a rate of \$250 per year.
 - Find the depreciation function f .
 - Explain why the domain of f is $[0, 5]$.

- A machine is now worth \$120,000 and will be depreciated linearly over an 8-year period, at which time it will be worth \$25,000 as scrap.
 - Find the rule of the depreciation function f .
 - What is the domain of f ?
 - What will the machine be worth in 6 years?
- A house increases in value in an approximately linear fashion from \$222,000 to \$300,000 in 6 years.
 - Find the appreciation function that gives the value of the house in year x .
 - If the house continues to appreciate at this rate, what will it be worth 12 years from now?

Business Work these problems. (See Example 4.)

- The total cost (in dollars) of producing x college algebra books is $C(x) = 42.5x + 80,000$.
 - What are the fixed costs?
 - What is the marginal cost per book?
 - What is the total cost of producing 1000 books? 32,000 books?
 - What is the average cost when 1000 are produced? when 32,000 are produced?
- The total cost (in dollars) of producing x DVDs is $C(x) = 6.80x + 450,000$.
 - What are the fixed costs?
 - What is the marginal cost per DVD?
 - What is the total cost of producing 50,000 DVDs? 600,000 DVDs?
 - What is the average cost per DVD when 50,000 are produced? when 500,000 are produced?
- The manager of a restaurant found that the cost of producing 100 cups of coffee is \$11.02, while the cost of producing 400 cups is \$40.12. Assume that the cost $C(x)$ is a linear function of x , the number of cups produced.
 - Find a formula for $C(x)$.
 - Find the total cost of producing 1000 cups.
 - Find the total cost of producing 1001 cups.
 - Find the marginal cost of producing the 1000th cup.
 - What is the marginal cost of producing any cup?

20. In deciding whether to set up a new manufacturing plant, company analysts have determined that a linear function is a reasonable estimation for the total cost $C(x)$ in dollars of producing x items. They estimate the cost of producing 10,000 items as \$547,500 and the cost of producing 50,000 items as \$737,500.
- Find a formula for $C(x)$.
 - Find the total cost of producing 100,000 items.
 - Find the marginal cost of the items to be produced in this plant.

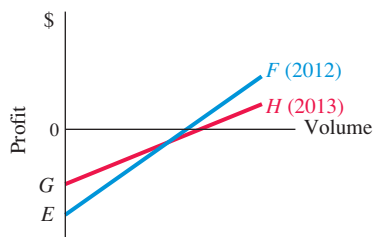
Business Work these problems. (See Example 5.)

21. For the year 2013, a resident of the city of Dallas, Texas with a 5/8 inch water meter pays \$4.20 per month plus \$1.77 per 1000 gallons of water used (up to 4000 gallons). If the city of Dallas has 550,000 customers that use less than 4000 gallons a month, find its monthly revenue function $R(x)$, where the total number of gallons x is measured in thousands.
22. The Laclede Gas Company in St. Louis, Missouri in the winter of 2012–2013 charged customers \$21.32 per month plus \$1.19071 per therm for the first 30 therms of gas used and \$.57903 for each therm above 30.
- How much revenue does the company get from a customer who uses exactly 30 therms of gas in a month?
 - Find the rule of the function $R(x)$ that gives the company's monthly revenue from one customer, where x is the number of therms of gas used. (*Hint:* $R(x)$ is a piecewise-defined function that has a two-part rule, one part for $x \leq 30$ and the other for $x > 30$.)

Business Assume that each row of the accompanying table has a linear cost function. Find (a) the cost function; (b) the revenue function; (c) the profit function; (d) the profit on 100 items. (See Example 6.)

	Fixed Cost	Marginal Cost per Item	Item Sells For
23.	\$750	\$10	\$35
24.	\$150	\$11	\$20
25.	\$300	\$18	\$28
26.	\$17,000	\$30	\$80
27.	\$20,000	\$12.50	\$30

28. **Business** In the following profit–volume chart, EF and GH represent the profit–volume graphs of a single-product company for, 2012 and 2013, respectively. (Adapted from: Uniform CPA Examination, American Institute of Certified Public Accountants.)



If the 2012 and 2013 unit sales prices are identical, how did the total fixed costs and unit variable costs of 2013 change compared with their values in 2012? Choose one:

	2012 Total Fixed Costs	2013 Unit Variable Costs
(a)	Decreased	Increased
(b)	Decreased	Decreased
(c)	Increased	Increased
(d)	Increased	Decreased

Use algebra to find the intersection points of the graphs of the given equations. (See Examples 7 and 11.)

- $2x - y = 7$ and $y = 8 - 3x$
- $6x - y = 2$ and $y = 4x + 7$
- $y = 3x - 7$ and $y = 7x + 4$
- $y = 3x + 5$ and $y = 12 - 2x$

Business Work the following problems. (See Example 7.)

33. An insurance company claims that for x thousand policies, its monthly revenue in dollars is given by $R(x) = 125x$ and its monthly cost in dollars is given by $C(x) = 100x + 5000$.
- Find the break-even point.
 - Graph the revenue and cost equations on the same axes.
 - From the graph, estimate the revenue and cost when $x = 100$ (100,000 policies).
34. The owners of a parking lot have determined that their weekly revenue and cost in dollars are given by $R(x) = 80x$ and $C(x) = 50x + 2400$, where x is the number of long-term parkers.
- Find the break-even point.
 - Graph $R(x)$ and $C(x)$ on the same axes.
 - From the graph, estimate the revenue and cost when there are 60 long-term parkers.

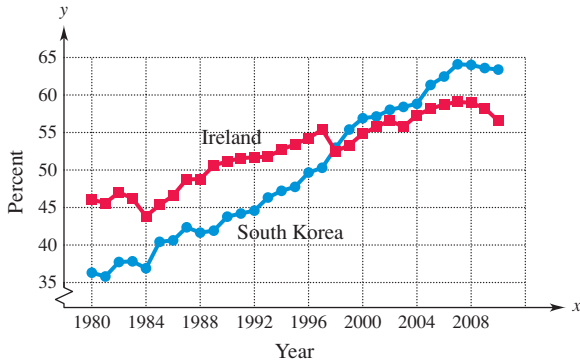


35. The revenue (in millions of dollars) from the sale of x units at a home supply outlet is given by $R(x) = .21x$. The profit (in millions of dollars) from the sale of x units is given by $P(x) = .084x - 1.5$.
- Find the cost equation.
 - What is the cost of producing 7 units?
 - What is the break-even point?

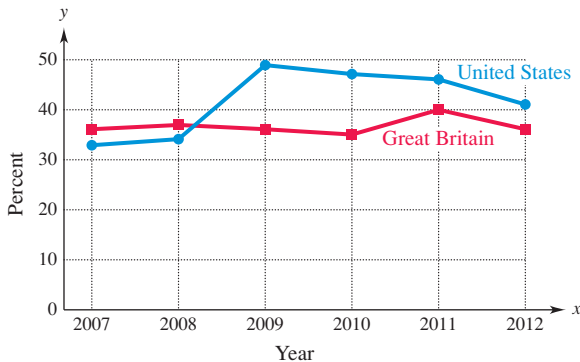
36. The profit (in millions of dollars) from the sale of x million units of Blue Glue is given by $P(x) = .7x - 25.5$. The cost is given by $C(x) = .9x + 25.5$.
- Find the revenue equation.
 - What is the revenue from selling 10 million units?
 - What is the break-even point?

Business Suppose you are the manager of a firm. The accounting department has provided cost estimates, and the sales department sales estimates, on a new product. You must analyze the data they give you, determine what it will take to break even, and decide whether to go ahead with production of the new product. (See Example 7.)

37. Cost is estimated by $C(x) = 80x + 7000$ and revenue is estimated by $R(x) = 95x$; no more than 400 units can be sold.
38. Cost is $C(x) = 140x + 3000$ and revenue is $R(x) = 125x$.
39. Cost is $C(x) = 125x + 42,000$ and revenue is $R(x) = 165.5x$; no more than 2000 units can be sold.
40. Cost is $C(x) = 1750x + 95,000$ and revenue is $R(x) = 1975x$; no more than 600 units can be sold.
41. **Business** The accompanying graph shows the percentage of females in the workforce for Ireland and South Korea for the years 1980 through 2010. Estimate the break-even point (the point at which the two countries had the same percentage of females in the workforce.) (Data from: Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development.)



42. **Social Science** Gallup conducts an annual poll of residents of 130 countries around the world to ask about approval of world leadership. The graph below shows the percentage of respondents who approve of the job performance of the leadership of the United States and Great Britain from the years 2007 to 2012. Estimate the year in which the break-even point (the year in which the opinion on leadership was the same) occurred.



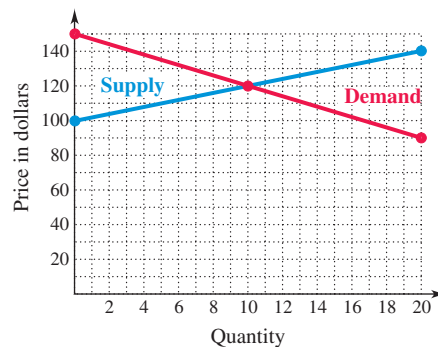
43. **Social Science** The population (in millions of people) of Florida from the year 2000 to the year 2010 can be approximated by the function $f(x) = .292x + 16.17$. Similarly, the population (in millions of people) of New York can be approximated by the function $g(x) = .026x + 19.04$. For both of these models, let $x = 0$ correspond to the year 2000. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

- Graph both functions on the same coordinate axes for $x = 0$ to $x = 10$.
- Do the graphs intersect in this window?
- If trends continue at the same rate, will Florida overtake New York in population? If so, estimate what year that will occur.

44. **Social Science** The population (in millions of people) of Massachusetts from the year 2000 to the year 2010 can be approximated by the function $f(x) = .019x + 6.36$. Similarly, the population (in millions of people) of Arizona can be approximated by the function $g(x) = .130x + 5.15$. For both of these models, let $x = 0$ correspond to the year 2000. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

- Graph both functions on the same coordinate axes for $x = 0$ to $x = 10$.
- Do the graphs intersect in this window?
- If trends continue at the same rate, will Arizona overtake Massachusetts in population? If so, estimate what year that will occur.

Business Use the supply and demand curves in the accompanying graph to answer Exercises 45–48. (See Examples 8–11.)



- At what price are 20 items supplied?
- At what price are 20 items demanded?
- Find the equilibrium quantity.
- Find the equilibrium price.

Economics Work the following exercises. (See Examples 8–11.)

49. Suppose that the demand and price for a certain brand of shampoo are related by

$$p = 16 - \frac{5}{4}q,$$

where p is price in dollars and q is demand. Find the price for a demand of

- 0 units;
- 4 units;
- 8 units.

Find the demand for the shampoo at a price of

- (d) \$6; (e) \$11; (f) \$16.
 (g) Graph $p = 16 - (5/4)q$.

Suppose the price and supply of the shampoo are related by

$$p = \frac{3}{4}q,$$

where q represents the supply and p the price. Find the supply when the price is

- (h) \$0; (i) \$10; (j) \$20.
 (k) Graph $p = (3/4)q$ on the same axes used for part (g).
 (l) Find the equilibrium quantity.
 (m) Find the equilibrium price.

50. Let the supply and demand for radial tires in dollars be given by

$$\text{supply: } p = \frac{3}{2}q; \quad \text{demand: } p = 81 - \frac{3}{4}q.$$

- (a) Graph these equations on the same axes.
 (b) Find the equilibrium quantity.
 (c) Find the equilibrium price.

51. Let the supply and demand for bananas in cents per pound be given by

$$\text{supply: } p = \frac{2}{5}q; \quad \text{demand: } p = 100 - \frac{2}{5}q.$$

- (a) Graph these equations on the same axes.
 (b) Find the equilibrium quantity.
 (c) Find the equilibrium price.
 (d) On what interval does demand exceed supply?

52. Let the supply and demand for sugar be given by

$$\text{supply: } p = 1.4q - .6$$

and

$$\text{demand: } p = -2q + 3.2,$$

where p is in dollars.

- (a) Graph these on the same axes.
 (b) Find the equilibrium quantity.
 (c) Find the equilibrium price.
 (d) On what interval does supply exceed demand?
 53. Explain why the graph of the (total) cost function is always above the x -axis and can never move downward as you go from left to right. Is the same thing true of the graph of the average cost function?
 54. Explain why the graph of the profit function can rise or fall (as you go from left to right) and can be below the x -axis.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. $C(x) = 4x + 60$. 2. \$4.60 3. \$2248
 4. (a) \$800 (b) \$842 (c) \$3.50 (d) \$3.50
 5. (a) 1,120,000,000 (b) \$47,873,000
 6. 4286 newsletters
 7. (a) \$60 (b) 5 units (c) (10, 60); (5, 80)
 8. (a) 40 (b) $160/3 \approx \$53.33$

3.4 Quadratic Functions and Applications

A **quadratic function** is a function whose rule is given by a quadratic polynomial, such as

$$f(x) = x^2, \quad g(x) = 3x^2 + 30x + 67, \quad \text{and} \quad h(x) = -x^2 + 4x.$$

Thus, a quadratic function is a function whose rule can be written in the form

$$f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$$

for some constants a , b , and c , with $a \neq 0$.

Example 1

Graph each of these quadratic functions:

$$f(x) = x^2; \quad g(x) = 4x^2; \quad h(x) = -.2x^2.$$

Solution In each case, choose several numbers (negative, positive, and 0) for x , find the values of the function at these numbers, and plot the corresponding points. Then connect the points with a smooth curve to obtain Figure 3.23, on the next page.

$f(x) = x^2$					
x	-2	-1	0	1	2
x^2	4	1	0	1	4

$g(x) = 4x^2$					
x	-2	-1	0	1	2
$4x^2$	16	4	0	4	16

$h(x) = -.2x^2$						
x	-5	-3	-1	0	2	4
$-.2x^2$	-5	-1.8	-.2	0	-.8	-3.2

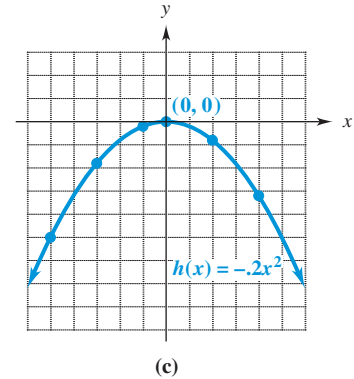
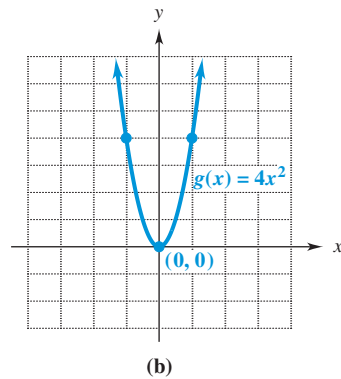
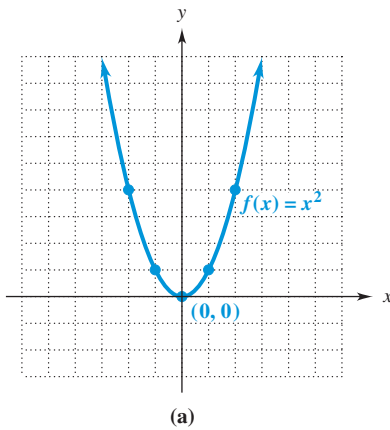


Figure 3.23

Each of the curves in Figure 3.23 is a **parabola**. It can be shown that the graph of every quadratic function is a parabola. Parabolas have many useful properties. Cross sections of radar dishes and spotlights form parabolas. Disks often visible on the sidelines of televised football games are microphones having reflectors with parabolic cross sections. These microphones are used by the television networks to pick up the signals shouted by the quarterbacks.

All parabolas have the same basic “cup” shape, although the cup may be broad or narrow and open upward or downward. The general shape of a parabola is determined by the coefficient of x^2 in its rule, as summarized here and illustrated in Example 1. ✓₁

✓ Checkpoint 1

Graph each quadratic function.

- (a) $f(x) = x^2 - 4$
 (b) $g(x) = -x^2 + 4$

The graph of a quadratic function $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ is a parabola.

If $a > 0$, the parabola opens upward. [Figure 3.23(a) and 3.23(b)]

If $a < 0$, the parabola opens downward. [Figure 3.23(c)]

If $|a| < 1$, the parabola appears wider than the graph of $y = x^2$. [Figure 3.23(c)]

If $|a| > 1$, the parabola appears narrower than the graph of $y = x^2$. [Figure 3.23(b)]

When a parabola opens upward [as in Figure 3.23(a), (b)], its lowest point is called the **vertex**. When a parabola opens downward [as in Figure 3.23(c)], its highest point is called the **vertex**. The vertical line through the vertex of a parabola is called the **axis of the parabola**. For example, $(0, 0)$ is the vertex of each of the parabolas in Figure 3.23, and the axis of each parabola is the y -axis. If you were to fold the graph of a parabola along its axis, the two halves of the parabola would match exactly. This means that a parabola is *symmetric* about its axis.

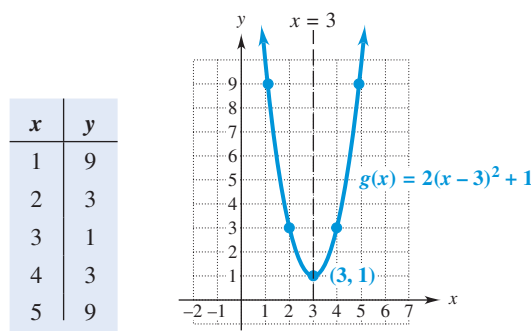
Although the vertex of a parabola can be approximated by a graphing calculator’s maximum or minimum finder, its exact coordinates can be found algebraically, as in the following examples.

Example 2Consider the function $g(x) = 2(x - 3)^2 + 1$.**(a)** Show that g is a quadratic function.**Solution** Multiply out the rule of g to show that it has the required form:

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= 2(x - 3)^2 + 1 \\ &= 2(x^2 - 6x + 9) + 1 \\ &= 2x^2 - 12x + 18 + 1 \\ g(x) &= 2x^2 - 12x + 19. \end{aligned}$$

According to the preceding box, the graph of g is a somewhat narrow, upward-opening parabola.**(b)** Show that the vertex of the graph of $g(x) = 2(x - 3)^2 + 1$ is $(3, 1)$.**Solution** Since $g(3) = 2(3 - 3)^2 + 1 = 0 + 1 = 1$, the point $(3, 1)$ is on the graph. The vertex of an upward-opening parabola is the lowest point on the graph, so we must show that $(3, 1)$ is the lowest point. Let x be any number except 3 (so that $x - 3 \neq 0$). Then the quantity $2(x - 3)^2$ is positive, and hence

$$g(x) = 2(x - 3)^2 + 1 = (\text{a positive number}) + 1,$$

which means that $g(x) > 1$. Therefore, every point $(x, g(x))$ on the graph, where $x \neq 3$, has second coordinate $g(x)$ greater than 1. Hence $(x, g(x))$ lies *above* $(3, 1)$. In other words, $(3, 1)$ is the lowest point on the graph—the vertex of the parabola.**(c)** Graph $g(x) = 2(x - 3)^2 + 1$.**Solution** Plot some points on both sides of the vertex $(3, 1)$ to obtain the graph in Figure 3.24. The vertical line $x = 3$ through the vertex is the axis of the parabola.**Figure 3.24**In Example 2, notice how the rule of the function g is related to the coordinates of the vertex:

$$g(x) = 2(x - 3)^2 + 1. \quad (3, 1).$$

Arguments similar to those in Example 2 lead to the following fact.

The graph of the quadratic function $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$ is a parabola with vertex (h, k) . It opens upward when $a > 0$ and downward when $a < 0$.

Example 3

Determine algebraically whether the given parabola opens upward or downward, and find its vertex.


(a) $f(x) = -3(x - 4)^2 - 7$

Solution The rule of the function is in the form $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$ (with $a = -3$, $h = 4$, and $k = -7$). The parabola opens downward ($a < 0$), and its vertex is $(h, k) = (4, -7)$.

(b) $g(x) = 2(x + 3)^2 + 5$

Solution Be careful here: The vertex is *not* $(3, 5)$. To put the rule of $g(x)$ in the form $a(x - h)^2 + k$, we must rewrite it so that there is a minus sign inside the parentheses:

$$\begin{aligned} g(x) &= 2(x + 3)^2 + 5 \\ &= 2(x - (-3))^2 + 5. \end{aligned}$$

This is the required form, with $a = 2$, $h = -3$, and $k = 5$. The parabola opens upward, and its vertex is $(-3, 5)$. 

Checkpoint 2

Determine the vertex of each parabola, and graph the parabola.

(a) $f(x) = (x + 4)^2 - 3$

(b) $f(x) = -2(x - 3)^2 + 1$

Example 4

Find the rule of a quadratic function whose graph has vertex $(3, 4)$ and passes through the point $(6, 22)$.

Solution The graph of $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$ has vertex (h, k) . We want $h = 3$ and $k = 4$, so that $f(x) = a(x - 3)^2 + 4$. Since $(6, 22)$ is on the graph, we must have $f(6) = 22$. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= a(x - 3)^2 + 4 \\ f(6) &= a(6 - 3)^2 + 4 \\ 22 &= a(3)^2 + 4 \\ 9a &= 18 \\ a &= 2. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the graph of $f(x) = 2(x - 3)^2 + 4$ is a parabola with vertex $(3, 4)$ that passes through $(6, 22)$.

The vertex of each parabola in Examples 2 and 3 was easily determined because the rule of the function had the form

$$f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k.$$


The rule of *any* quadratic function can be put in this form by using the technique of **completing the square**, which is illustrated in the next example.

Example 5

Determine the vertex of the graph of $f(x) = x^2 - 4x + 2$. Then graph the parabola.

Solution In order to get $f(x)$ in the form $a(x - h)^2 + k$, take half the coefficient of x , namely $\frac{1}{2}(-4) = -2$, and *square it*: $(-2)^2 = 4$. Then proceed as follows.

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= x^2 - 4x + 2 \\ &= x^2 - 4x + \underline{\quad} + 2 && \text{Leave space for the squared term and its negative.} \\ &= x^2 - 4x + 4 - 4 + 2 && \text{Add and subtract 4.} \\ &= (x^2 - 4x + 4) - 4 + 2 && \text{Insert parentheses.} \\ &= (x - 2)^2 - 2 && \text{Factor expression in parentheses and add.} \end{aligned}$$

Adding and subtracting 4 did not change the rule of $f(x)$, but did make it possible to have a perfect square as part of its rule: $f(x) = (x - 2)^2 - 2$. Now we can see that the graph is an upward-opening parabola, as shown in Figure 3.25, on the following page. 

Checkpoint 3

Rewrite the rule of each function by completing the square, and use this form to find the vertex of the graph.

(a) $f(x) = x^2 + 6x + 5$

(Hint: add and subtract the square of half the coefficient of x .)

(b) $g(x) = x^2 - 12x + 33$

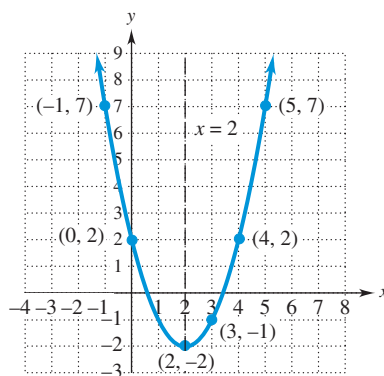


Figure 3.25

CAUTION The technique of completing the square only works when the coefficient of x^2 is 1. To find the vertex of a quadratic function such as

$$f(x) = 2x^2 + 12x - 19,$$

you must first factor out the coefficient of x^2 and write the rule as

$$f(x) = 2\left(x^2 + 6x - \frac{19}{2}\right).$$

Now complete the square on the expression in parentheses by adding and subtracting 9 (the square of half the coefficient of x), and proceed as in Example 5.

The technique of completing the square can be used to rewrite the general equation $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ in the form $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$. When this is done, we obtain a formula for the coordinates of the vertex.

The graph of $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ is a parabola with vertex (h, k) , where

$$h = \frac{-b}{2a} \quad \text{and} \quad k = f(h).$$

Additionally, the fact that the vertex of a parabola is the highest or lowest point on the graph can be used in applications to find a maximum or minimum value.

Example 6

Business Lynn Wolf owns and operates Wolf's microbrewery. She has hired a consultant to analyze her business operations. The consultant tells her that her daily profits from the sale of x cases of beer are given by

$$P(x) = -x^2 + 120x.$$

Find the vertex, determine if it is a maximum or minimum, write the equation of the axis of the parabola, and compute the x - and y -intercepts of the profit function $P(x)$.

Solution Since $a = -1$ and $b = 120$, the x -value of the vertex is

$$\frac{-b}{2a} = \frac{-120}{2(-1)} = 60.$$

The y -value of the vertex is

$$P(60) = -(60)^2 + 120(60) = 3600.$$

The vertex is $(60, 3600)$ and since a is negative, it is a maximum because the parabola opens downward. The axis of the parabola is $x = 60$. The intercepts are found by setting x and y equal to 0.

x-intercepts

Set $P(x) = y = 0$, so that

$$0 = -x^2 + 120x$$

$$0 = x(-x + 120)$$

$$x = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad -x + 120 = 0$$

$$-x = -120$$

$$x = 120$$

The x -intercepts are 0 and 120.

y-intercept

Set $x = 0$ to obtain

$$P(0) = 0^2 + 120(0) = 0$$

The y -intercept is 0.

✓ Checkpoint 4

When a company sells x units of a product, its profit is

$$P(x) = -2x^2 + 40x + 280. \text{ Find}$$

- the number of units which should be sold so that maximum profit is received;
- the maximum profit.

Figure 3.26 shows the profit function $P(x)$. ✓4

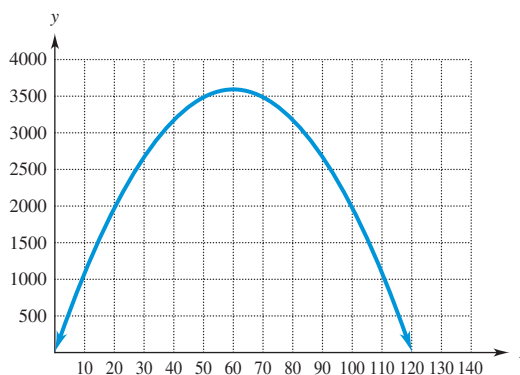


Figure 3.26

TECHNOLOGY TIP The maximum or minimum finder on a graphing calculator can approximate the vertex of a parabola with a high degree of accuracy. The max–min finder is in the CALC menu or in the MATH or FCN submenu of the GRAPH menu. Similarly, the calculator’s graphical root finder can approximate the x -intercepts of a parabola.

Supply and demand curves were introduced in Section 3.3. Here is a quadratic example.

Example 7

Economics Suppose that the price of and demand for an item are related by

$$p = 150 - 6q^2, \quad \text{Demand function}$$

where p is the price (in dollars) and q is the number of items demanded (in hundreds). Suppose also that the price and supply are related by

$$p = 10q^2 + 2q, \quad \text{Supply function}$$

where q is the number of items supplied (in hundreds). Find the equilibrium quantity and the equilibrium price.

Solution The graphs of both of these equations are parabolas (Figure 3.27), as seen on the following page. Only those portions of the graphs which lie in the first quadrant are included, because none of supply, demand, or price can be negative.

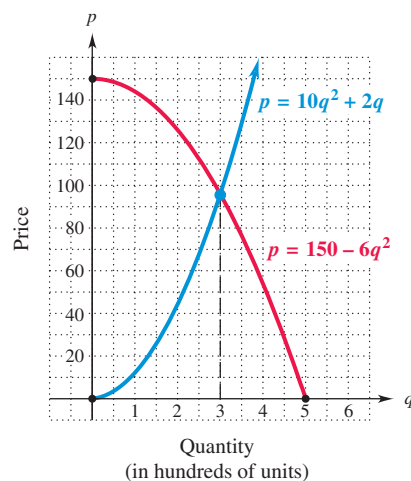


Figure 3.27

The point where the demand and supply curves intersect is the equilibrium point. Its first coordinate is the equilibrium quantity, and its second coordinate is the equilibrium price. These coordinates may be found in two ways.

Algebraic Method At the equilibrium point, the second coordinate of the demand curve must be the same as the second coordinate of the supply curve, so that

$$150 - 6q^2 = 10q^2 + 2q.$$

Write this quadratic equation in standard form as follows:

$$0 = 16q^2 + 2q - 150 \quad \text{Add } -150 \text{ and } 6q^2 \text{ to both sides.}$$

$$0 = 8q^2 + q - 75. \quad \text{Multiply both sides by } \frac{1}{2}.$$

This equation can be solved by the quadratic formula, given in Section 1.7. Here, $a = 8$, $b = 1$, and $c = -75$:

$$\begin{aligned} q &= \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{1 - 4(8)(-75)}}{2(8)} \\ &= \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{1 + 2400}}{16} && -4(8)(-75) = 2400 \\ &= \frac{-1 \pm 49}{16} && \sqrt{1 + 2400} = \sqrt{2401} = 49 \\ q &= \frac{-1 + 49}{16} = \frac{48}{16} = 3 \quad \text{or} \quad q = \frac{-1 - 49}{16} = -\frac{50}{16} = -\frac{25}{8}. \end{aligned}$$

It is not possible to make $-25/8$ units, so discard that answer and use only $q = 3$. Hence, the equilibrium quantity is 300. Find the equilibrium price by substituting 3 for q in either the supply or the demand function (and check your answer by using the other one). Using the supply function gives

$$\begin{aligned} p &= 10q^2 + 2q \\ p &= 10 \cdot 3^2 + 2 \cdot 3 && \text{Let } q = 3. \\ &= 10 \cdot 9 + 6 \\ p &= \$96. \end{aligned}$$

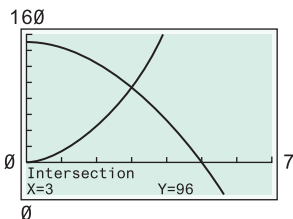




Figure 3.28

✓ Checkpoint 5

The price and demand for an item are related by $p = 32 - x^2$, while price and supply are related by $p = x^2$. Find

- the equilibrium quantity;
- the equilibrium price.

 **Graphical Method** Graph the two functions on a graphing calculator, and use the intersection finder to determine that the equilibrium point is (3, 96), as in Figure 3.28. 

Example 8

Business The rental manager of a small apartment complex with 16 units has found from experience that each \$40 increase in the monthly rent results in an empty apartment. All 16 apartments will be rented at a monthly rent of \$500. How many \$40 increases will produce maximum monthly income for the complex?

Solution Let x represent the number of \$40 increases. Then the number of apartments rented will be $16 - x$. Also, the monthly rent per apartment will be $500 + 40x$. (There are x increases of \$40, for a total increase of $40x$.) The monthly income, $I(x)$, is given by the number of apartments rented times the rent per apartment, so

$$\begin{aligned} I(x) &= (16 - x)(500 + 40x) \\ &= 8000 + 640x - 500x - 40x^2 \\ &= 8000 + 140x - 40x^2. \end{aligned}$$

Since x represents the number of \$40 increases and each \$40 increase causes one empty apartment, x must be a whole number. Because there are only 16 apartments, $0 \leq x \leq 16$. Since there is a small number of possibilities, the value of x that produces maximum income may be found in several ways.

Brute Force Method Use a scientific calculator or the table feature of a graphing calculator (as in Figure 3.29) to evaluate $I(x)$ when $x = 1, 2, \dots, 16$ and find the largest value.

X	Y1	
0	8000	
1	8100	
2	8120	
3	8060	
4	7920	
5	7700	
6	7400	

X=0

X	Y1	
7	7020	
8	6560	
9	6020	
10	5400	
11	4700	
12	3920	
13	3060	

X=7

X	Y1	
14	2120	
15	1100	
16	0	
17	-1180	
18	-2440	
19	-3780	
20	-5200	

X=14

Figure 3.29

The tables show that a maximum income of \$8120 occurs when $x = 2$. So the manager should charge rent of $500 + 2(40) = \$580$, leaving two apartments vacant.

Algebraic Method The graph of $I(x) = 8000 + 140x - 40x^2$ is a downward-opening parabola (why?), and the value of x that produces maximum income occurs at the vertex. The methods of Section 3.4 show that the vertex is $(1.75, 8122.50)$. Since x must be a whole number, evaluate $I(x)$ at $x = 1$ and $x = 2$ to see which one gives the best result:

$$\text{If } x = 1, \text{ then } I(1) = -40(1)^2 + 140(1) + 8000 = 8100.$$

$$\text{If } x = 2, \text{ then } I(2) = -40(2)^2 + 140(2) + 8000 = 8120.$$

So maximum income occurs when $x = 2$. The manager should charge a rent of $500 + 2(40) = \$580$, leaving two apartments vacant.

Quadratic Models

Real-world data can sometimes be used to construct a quadratic function that approximates the data. Such **quadratic models** can then be used (subject to limitations) to predict future behavior.

Example 9

Business The number of physical compact disks (CDs, in millions of units) shipped are given in the following table for the years 1997 through 2011. (Data from: Recording Industry Association of America.)

Year	1997	1998	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004
CDs shipped	753	847	939	943	882	803	746	767
Year	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	
CDs shipped	705	620	511	369	293	253	241	

(a) Let $x = 7$ correspond to the year 1997. Display the information graphically.

Solution Plot the points $(7, 753)$, $(8, 847)$, and so on—as in Figure 3.30.

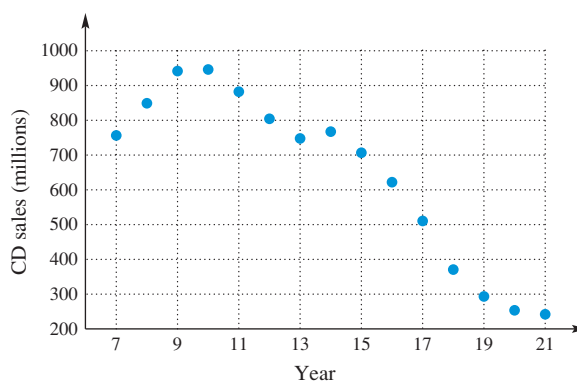


Figure 3.30

(b) The shape of the data points in Figure 3.31 resembles a downward-opening parabola. Using the year 2000 as the maximum, find a quadratic model $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$ for these data.

Solution Recall that when a quadratic function is written in the form $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$, the vertex of its graph is (h, k) . On the basis of Figure 3.30, let $(10, 943)$ be the vertex, so that

$$f(x) = a(x - 10)^2 + 943.$$

To find a , choose another data point $(15, 705)$. Assume this point lies on the parabola so that

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= a(x - 10)^2 + 943 \\ 705 &= a(15 - 10)^2 + 943 && \text{Substitute 15 for } x \text{ and 705 for } f(x). \\ 705 &= 25a + 943 && \text{Subtract inside the parentheses and then square.} \\ -238 &= 25a && \text{Subtract 943 from both sides.} \\ a &= -9.52. && \text{Divide both sides by 25.} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, $f(x) = -9.52(x - 10)^2 + 943$ is a quadratic model for these data. If we expand the form into $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= -9.52(x - 10)^2 + 943 \\ &= -9.52(x^2 - 20x + 100) + 943 && \text{Expand inside the parentheses.} \\ &= -9.52x^2 + 190.4x - 952 + 943 && \text{Distribute the } -9.52. \\ &= -9.52x^2 + 190.4x - 9. && \text{Add the last two terms together.} \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 6

Find another quadratic model in Example 9(b) by using $(10, 943)$ as the vertex and $(19, 293)$ as the other point.

Figure 3.31, on the following page, shows the original data with the graph of $f(x)$. It appears to fit the data rather well except for the last two points. (We find a better fitting model in Example 10.) ✓6

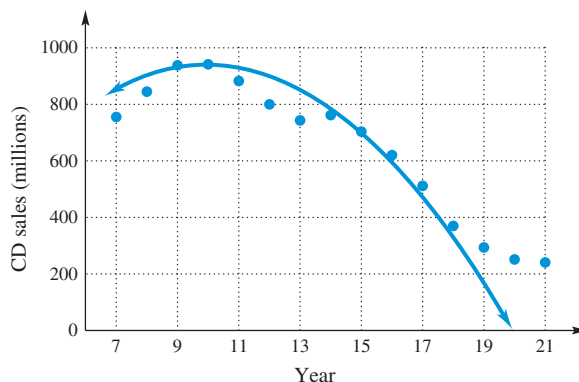


Figure 3.31

Quadratic Regression

Linear regression was used in Section 2.3 to construct a linear function that modeled a set of data points. When the data points appear to lie on a parabola rather than on a straight line (as in Example 9), a similar least-squares regression procedure is available on most graphing calculators and spreadsheet programs to construct a quadratic model for the data. Simply follow the same steps as in linear regression, with one exception: Choose quadratic, rather than linear, regression. (Both options are on the same menu.)

Example 10 Use a graphing calculator to find a quadratic-regression model for the data in Example 9.

Solution Enter the first coordinates of the data points as list L_1 and the second coordinates as list L_2 . Performing the quadratic regression, as in Figure 3.32, leads to the model

$$g(x) = -5.034x^2 + 90.25x + 461.8.$$

The number R^2 in Figure 3.32 is fairly close to 1, which indicates that this model fits the data fairly well. Figure 3.33 shows the data with the quadratic regression curve.

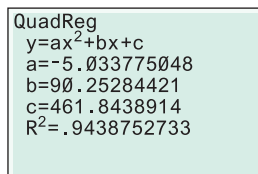


Figure 3.32

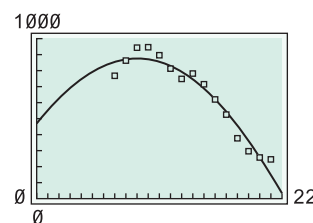


Figure 3.33

3.4 Exercises

The graph of each of the functions in Exercises 1–4 is a parabola. Without graphing, determine whether the parabola opens upward or downward. (See Example 1.)

1. $f(x) = x^2 - 3x - 12$ 2. $g(x) = -x^2 + 5x + 15$

3. $h(x) = -3x^2 + 14x + 1$ 4. $f(x) = 6.5x^2 - 7.2x + 4$

Without graphing, determine the vertex of the parabola that is the graph of the given function. State whether the parabola opens upward or downward. (See Examples 2 and 3.)

5. $f(x) = -2(x - 5)^2 + 7$ 6. $g(x) = -7(x - 8)^2 - 3$

7. $h(x) = 4(x + 1)^2 - 9$ 8. $f(x) = -8(x + 12)^2 + 9$

Match each function with its graph, which is one of those shown. (See Examples 1–3.)

9. $f(x) = x^2 + 2$

10. $g(x) = x^2 - 2$

11. $g(x) = (x - 2)^2$

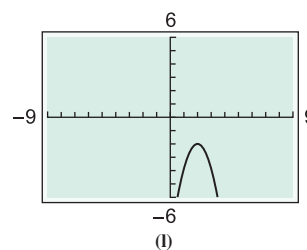
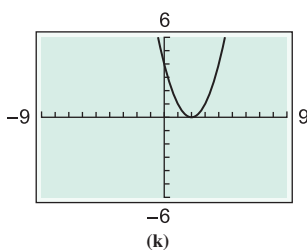
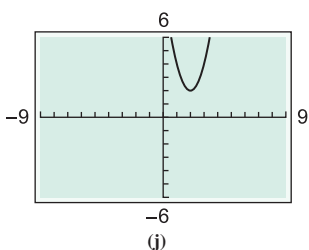
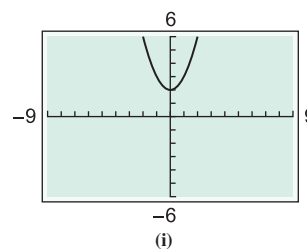
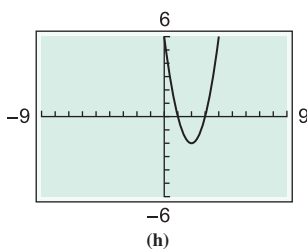
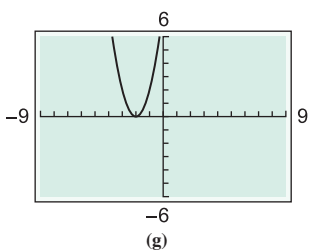
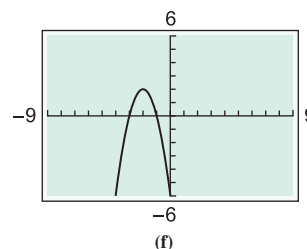
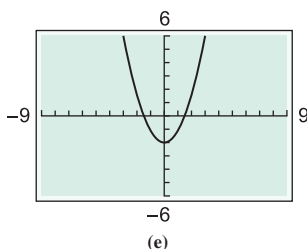
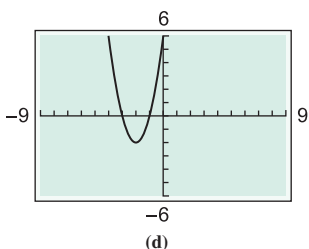
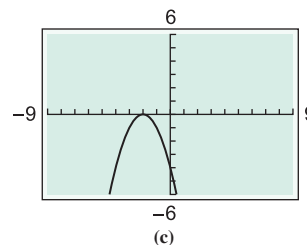
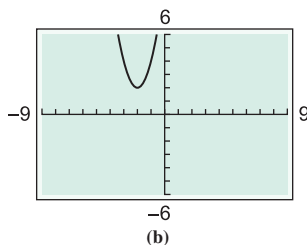
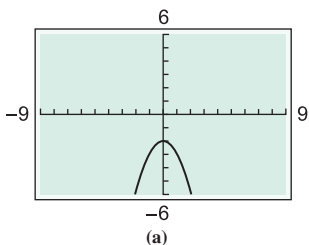
12. $f(x) = -(x + 2)^2$

13. $f(x) = 2(x - 2)^2 + 2$

14. $g(x) = -2(x - 2)^2 - 2$

15. $g(x) = -2(x + 2)^2 + 2$

16. $f(x) = 2(x + 2)^2 - 2$



Find the rule of a quadratic function whose graph has the given vertex and passes through the given point. (See Example 4.)

17. Vertex (1, 2); point (5, 6)

18. Vertex (-3, 2); point (2, 1)

19. Vertex (-1, -2); point (1, 2)

20. Vertex (2, -4); point (5, 2)

Without graphing, find the vertex of the parabola that is the graph of the given function. (See Examples 5 and 6.)

21. $f(x) = -x^2 - 6x + 3$

22. $g(x) = x^2 + 10x + 9$

23. $f(x) = 3x^2 - 12x + 5$

24. $g(x) = -4x^2 - 16x + 9$

Without graphing, determine the x - and y -intercepts of each of the given parabolas. (See Example 6.)

25. $f(x) = 3(x - 2)^2 - 3$

26. $f(x) = x^2 - 4x - 1$

27. $g(x) = 2x^2 + 8x + 6$

28. $g(x) = x^2 - 10x + 20$

Graph each parabola and find its vertex and axis of symmetry. (See Examples 1–6.)

29. $f(x) = (x + 2)^2$

30. $f(x) = -(x + 5)^2$

31. $f(x) = x^2 - 4x + 6$

32. $f(x) = x^2 + 6x + 3$

Use a calculator to work these problems.

33. **Social Science** According to data from the National Safety Council, the fatal-accident rate per 100,000 licensed drivers can be approximated by the function $f(x) = .0328x^2 - 3.55x + 115$, where x is the age of the driver ($16 \leq x \leq 88$). At what age is the rate the lowest?

34. **Social Science** Using data from the U.S. Census Bureau, the population (in thousands) of Detroit, Michigan can be approximated by $g(x) = -.422x^2 + 48.84x + 248$, where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 1900. In what year, according to the given model, did Detroit have its highest population?

35. **Natural Science** A researcher in physiology has decided that a good mathematical model for the number of impulses fired after a nerve has been stimulated is given by $y = -x^2 + 20x - 60$, where y is the number of responses per millisecond and x is the number of milliseconds since the nerve was stimulated.

(a) When will the maximum firing rate be reached?

(b) What is the maximum firing rate?

36. **Physical Science** A bullet is fired upward from ground level. Its height above the ground (in feet) at time t seconds is given by

$$H = -16t^2 + 1000t.$$

Find the maximum height of the bullet and the time at which it hits the ground.

37. **Business** Pat Kan owns a factory that manufactures souvenir key chains. Her weekly profit (in hundreds of dollars) is given by $P(x) = -2x^2 + 60x - 120$, where x is the number of cases of key chains sold.

(a) What is the largest number of cases she can sell and still make a profit?

(b) Explain how it is possible for her to lose money if she sells more cases than your answer in part (a).

(c) How many cases should she make and sell in order to maximize her profits?

38. **Business** The manager of a bicycle shop has found that, at a price (in dollars) of $p(x) = 150 - \frac{x}{4}$ per bicycle, x bicycles will be sold.

(a) Find an expression for the total revenue from the sale of x bicycles. (*Hint:* Revenue = Demand \times Price.)

(b) Find the number of bicycle sales that leads to maximum revenue.

(c) Find the maximum revenue.

Work the following problems. (See Example 7.)

39. **Business** Suppose the supply of and demand for a certain textbook are given by

$$\text{supply: } p = \frac{1}{5}q^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \text{demand: } p = -\frac{1}{5}q^2 + 40,$$

where p is price and q is quantity. How many books are demanded at a price of

(a) 10? (b) 20? (c) 30? (d) 40?

How many books are supplied at a price of

(e) 5? (f) 10? (g) 20? (h) 30?

(i) Graph the supply and demand functions on the same axes.

40. **Business** Find the equilibrium quantity and the equilibrium price in Exercise 39.

41. **Business** Suppose the price p of widgets is related to the quantity q that is demanded by

$$p = 640 - 5q^2,$$

where q is measured in hundreds of widgets. Find the price when the number of widgets demanded is

(a) 0; (b) 5; (c) 10.

Suppose the supply function for widgets is given by $p = 5q^2$, where q is the number of widgets (in hundreds) that are supplied at price p .

(d) Graph the demand function $p = 640 - 5q^2$ and the supply function $p = 5q^2$ on the same axes.

(e) Find the equilibrium quantity.

(f) Find the equilibrium price.

42. **Business** The supply function for a commodity is given by $p = q^2 + 200$, and the demand function is given by $p = -10q + 3200$.

(a) Graph the supply and demand functions on the same axes.

(b) Find the equilibrium point.

(c) What is the equilibrium quantity? the equilibrium price?

Business Find the equilibrium quantity and equilibrium price for the commodity whose supply and demand functions are given.

43. Supply: $p = 45q$; demand: $p = -q^2 + 10,000$.

44. Supply: $p = q^2 + q + 10$; demand: $p = -10q + 3060$.

45. Supply: $p = q^2 + 20q$; demand: $p = -2q^2 + 10q + 3000$.

46. Supply: $p = .2q + 51$; demand: $p = \frac{3000}{q + 5}$.

Business The revenue function $R(x)$ and the cost function $C(x)$ for a particular product are given. These functions are valid only for the specified domain of values. Find the number of units that must be produced to break even.

47. $R(x) = 200x - x^2$; $C(x) = 70x + 2200$; $0 \leq x \leq 100$

48. $R(x) = 300x - x^2$; $C(x) = 65x + 7000$; $0 \leq x \leq 150$

49. $R(x) = 400x - 2x^2$; $C(x) = -x^2 + 200x + 1900$; $0 \leq x \leq 100$

50. $R(x) = 500x - 2x^2$; $C(x) = -x^2 + 270x + 5125$; $0 \leq x \leq 125$

Business Work each problem. (See Example 8.)

51. A charter flight charges a fare of \$200 per person, plus \$4 per person for each unsold seat on the plane. If the plane holds 100 passengers and if x represents the number of unsold seats, find the following:

(a) an expression for the total revenue received for the flight. (*Hint:* Multiply the number of people flying, $100 - x$, by the price per ticket);

(b) the graph for the expression in part (a);

- (c) the number of unsold seats that will produce the maximum revenue;
- (d) the maximum revenue.
52. The revenue of a charter bus company depends on the number of unsold seats. If 100 seats are sold, the price is \$50 per seat. Each unsold seat increases the price per seat by \$1. Let x represent the number of unsold seats.
- (a) Write an expression for the number of seats that are sold.
- (b) Write an expression for the price per seat.
- (c) Write an expression for the revenue.
- (d) Find the number of unsold seats that will produce the maximum revenue.
- (e) Find the maximum revenue.
53. A hog farmer wants to find the best time to take her hogs to market. The current price is 88 cents per pound, and her hogs weigh an average of 90 pounds. The hogs gain 5 pounds per week, and the market price for hogs is falling each week by 2 cents per pound. How many weeks should the farmer wait before taking her hogs to market in order to receive as much money as possible? At that time, how much money (per hog) will she get?
54. The manager of a peach orchard is trying to decide when to arrange for picking the peaches. If they are picked now, the average yield per tree will be 100 pounds, which can be sold for 40¢ per pound. Past experience shows that the yield per tree will increase about 5 pounds per week, while the price will decrease about 2¢ per pound per week.
- (a) Let x represent the number of weeks that the manager should wait. Find the price per pound.
- (b) Find the number of pounds per tree.
- (c) Find the total revenue from a tree.
- (d) When should the peaches be picked in order to produce the maximum revenue?
- (e) What is the maximum revenue?

Work these exercises. (See Example 9.)

55. **Health** The National Center for Catastrophic Sport Injury Research keeps data on the number of fatalities directly related to football each year. These deaths occur in sandlot, pro and semipro, high school, and college-level playing. The following table gives selected years and the number of deaths. (Data from: www.unc.edu/depts/nccsi/FootballAnnual.pdf.)

Year	Deaths
1970	29
1975	15
1980	9
1985	7
1990	0
1995	4
2000	3
2005	3
2010	5

- (a) Let $x = 0$ correspond to 1970. Use (20, 0) as the vertex and the data from 2005 to find a quadratic function $g(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$ that models the data.
- (b) Use the model to estimate the number of deaths in 2008.

56. **Natural Science** The acreage (in millions) consumed by forest fires in the United States is given in the following table. (Data from: National Interagency Fire Center.)

Year	Acres
1985	2.9
1988	5.0
1991	3.0
1994	4.1
1997	2.9
2000	7.4
2003	4.0
2006	9.9
2009	5.9
2012	9.2

- (a) Let $x = 5$ correspond to the year 1985. Use (5, 2.9) as the vertex and the data for the year 1994 to find a quadratic function $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$ that models the data.
- (b) Use the model to estimate the acreage destroyed by forest fires in the year 2009.

57. **Business** The following table shows China's gross domestic expenditures on research and development (in billions of U.S. dollars) for the years 2004 through 2010. (Data from: National Science Foundation, *National Patterns of R & D Resources* [annual series].)


Year	Acres
2004	57.8
2005	71.1
2006	86.7
2007	102.4
2008	120.8
2009	154.1
2010	179.0

- (a) Let $x = 4$ correspond to the year 2004. Use (4, 57.8) as the vertex and the data from 2008 to find a quadratic function $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$ that models these data.
- (b) Use the model to estimate the expenditures in the year 2012.

58. **Economics** The amount (in billions of dollars) of personal health care expenditures for hospital care for various years is given in the table on the following page. (Data from: U.S. Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services.)

Year	Expenditures
1990	250
1995	339
2000	416
2005	609
2006	652
2007	693
2008	729
2009	776
2010	814

- (a) Let $x = 0$ correspond to the year 1990. Use $(0, 250)$ as the vertex and the data from the year 2007 to find a quadratic function $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$ that models these data.
- (b) Use the model to estimate the expenditures in 1997 and 2012.

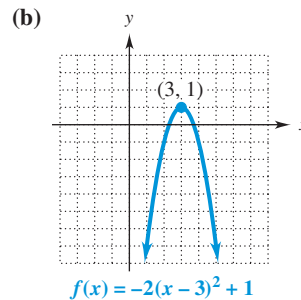
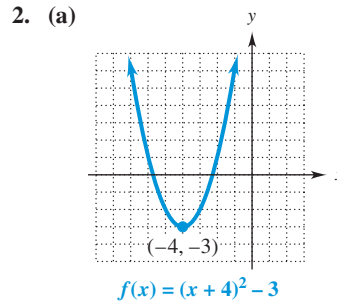
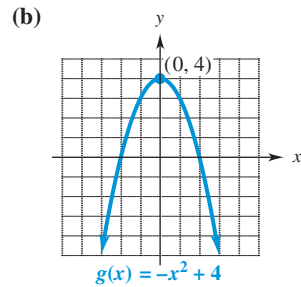
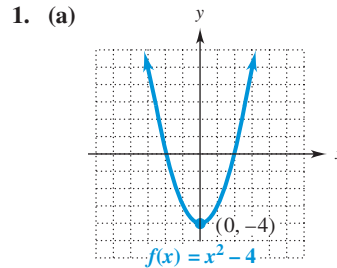
 In Exercises 59–62, plot the data points and use quadratic regression to find a function that models the data. (See Example 10.)

59. **Health** Use the data in Exercise 55, with $x = 0$ corresponding to 1970. What number of injuries does this model estimate for 2008? Compare your answer with that for Exercise 55.
60. **Natural Science** Use the data from Exercise 56, with $x = 5$ corresponding to the year 1985. How much acreage does this model estimate for the year 2009? Compare your answer with that for Exercise 56.
61. **Business** Use the data from Exercise 57, with $x = 4$ corresponding to the year 2004. What is the estimate of the amount of R&D expenditures for China in the year 2012? Compare your answer with that for Exercise 57.
62. **Economics** Use the data from Exercise 58, with $x = 0$ corresponding to the year 1990. What is the amount of expenditures for hospital care estimated by this model for the years 1997 and 2012? Compare your answers with those for Exercise 58.

Business Recall that profit equals revenue minus cost. In Exercises 63 and 64, find the following:

- (a) The break-even point (to the nearest tenth)
- (b) The x -value that makes profit a maximum
- (c) The maximum profit
- (d) For what x -values will a loss occur?
- (e) For what x -values will a profit occur?
63. $R(x) = 400x - 2x^2$ and $C(x) = 200x + 2000$, with $0 \leq x \leq 100$
64. $R(x) = 900x - 3x^2$ and $C(x) = 450x + 5000$, with $20 \leq x \leq 150$

Checkpoint Answers



3. (a) $f(x) = (x + 3)^2 - 4$; $(-3, -4)$
- (b) $g(x) = (x - 6)^2 - 3$; $(6, -3)$
4. (a) 10 units (b) \$480
5. (a) 4 (b) 16
6. $f(x) = -8.02x^2 + 160.4x + 141$

3.5 Polynomial Functions

A **polynomial function of degree n** is a function whose rule is given by a polynomial of degree n .^{*} For example

$$f(x) = 3x - 2 \quad \text{polynomial function of degree 1;}$$

$$g(x) = 3x^2 + 4x - 6 \quad \text{polynomial function of degree 2;}$$

$$h(x) = x^4 + 5x^3 - 6x^2 + x - 3 \quad \text{polynomial function of degree 4.}$$

^{*}The degree of a polynomial was defined on page 33.

Basic Graphs

The simplest polynomial functions are those whose rules are of the form $f(x) = ax^n$ (where a is a constant).

Example 1 Graph $f(x) = x^3$.

Solution First, find several ordered pairs belonging to the graph. Be sure to choose some negative x -values, $x = 0$, and some positive x -values in order to get representative ordered pairs. Find as many ordered pairs as you need in order to see the shape of the graph. Then plot the ordered pairs and draw a smooth curve through them to obtain the graph in Figure 3.34. ✓₁

✓ Checkpoint 1

Graph $f(x) = -\frac{1}{2}x^3$

x	y
2	8
1	1
0	0
-1	-1
-2	-8

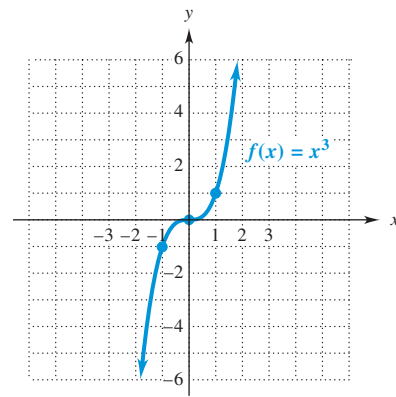


Figure 3.34

Example 2 Graph

$$f(x) = \frac{3}{2}x^4.$$

Solution The following table gives some typical ordered pairs and leads to the graph in Figure 3.35. ✓₂

✓ Checkpoint 2

Graph $g(x) = -2x^4$

x	$f(x)$
-2	24
-1	3/2
0	0
1	3/2
2	24

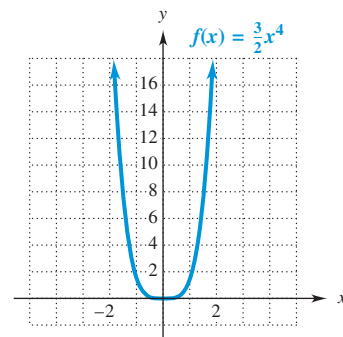
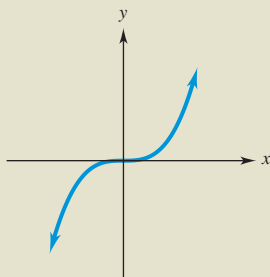
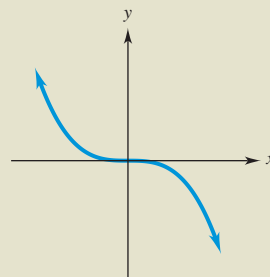
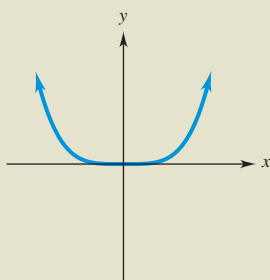
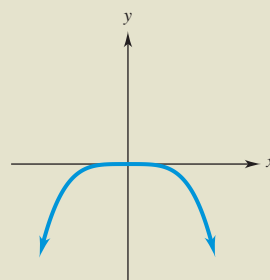


Figure 3.35

The graph of $f(x) = ax^n$ has one of the four basic shapes illustrated in Examples 1 and 2 and in Checkpoints 1 and 2. The basic shapes are summarized on the next page.

Graph of $f(x) = ax^n$ $a > 0$ and n oddExamples: $f(x) = 2x^3$ $g(x) = .01x^5$ $a < 0$ and n oddExamples: $f(x) = -x^3$ $g(x) = -2x^7$ $a > 0$ and n evenExamples: $f(x) = x^4$ $g(x) = 2x^6$ $a < 0$ and n evenExamples: $f(x) = -2x^2$ $g(x) = -3x^4$

Properties of Polynomial Graphs

Unlike the graphs in the preceding figures, the graphs of more complicated polynomial functions may have several “peaks” and “valleys,” as illustrated in Figure 3.36, on the following page. The locations of the peaks and valleys can be accurately approximated by a maximum or minimum finder on a graphing calculator. Calculus is needed to determine their exact location.

The total number of peaks and valleys in a polynomial graph, as well as the number of the graph’s x -intercepts, depends on the degree of the polynomial, as shown in Figure 3.36 and summarized here.

Polynomial	Degree	Number of peaks & valleys	Number of x -intercepts
$f(x) = x^3 - 4x + 2$	3	2	3
$f(x) = x^5 - 5x^3 + 4x$	5	4	5
$f(x) = 1.5x^4 + x^3 - 4x^2 - 3x + 4$	4	3	2
$f(x) = -x^6 + x^5 + 2x^4 + 1$	6	3	2

In each case, the number of x -intercepts is *at most* the degree of the polynomial. The total number of peaks and valleys is *at most one less than* the degree of the polynomial. The same thing is true in every case.

1. The total number of peaks and valleys on the graph of a polynomial function of degree n is at most $n - 1$.
2. The number of x -intercepts on the graph of a polynomial function of degree n is at most n .

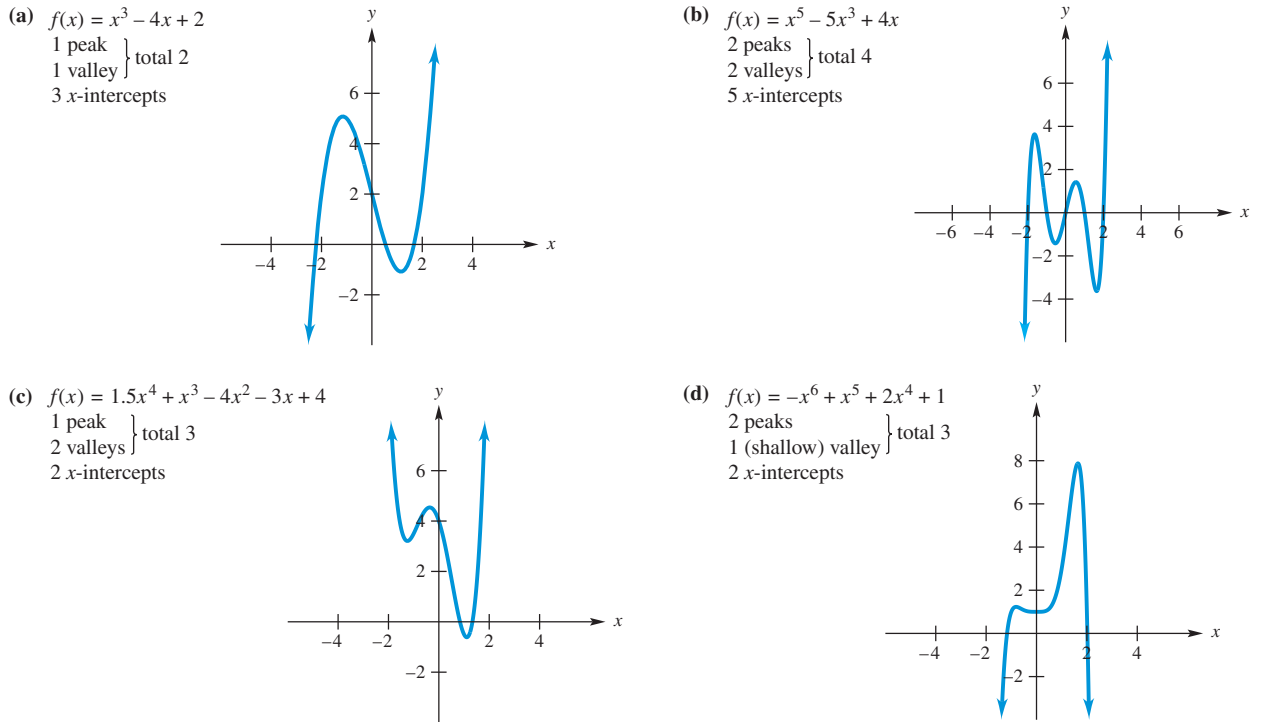


Figure 3.36

The domain of every polynomial function is the set of all real numbers, which means that its graph extends forever to the left and right. We indicate this by the arrows on the ends of polynomial graphs.

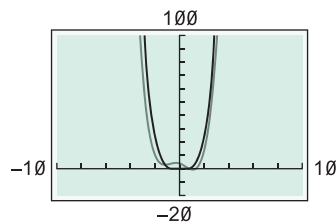


Figure 3.37

Although there may be peaks, valleys, and bends in a polynomial graph, the far ends of the graph are easy to describe: *they look like the graph of the highest-degree term of the polynomial.* Consider, for example, $f(x) = 1.5x^4 + x^3 - 4x^2 - 3x + 4$, whose highest-degree term is $1.5x^4$ and whose graph is shown in Figure 3.36(c). The ends of the graph shoot upward, just as the graph of $y = 1.5x^4$ does in Figure 3.35. When $f(x)$ and $y = 1.5x^4$ are graphed in the same large viewing window of a graphing calculator (Figure 3.37), the graphs look almost identical, except near the origin. This is an illustration of the following facts.

The graph of a polynomial function is a smooth, unbroken curve that extends forever to the left and right. When $|x|$ is large, the graph resembles the graph of its highest-degree term and moves sharply away from the x -axis.

Example 3 Let $g(x) = x^3 - 11x^2 - 32x + 24$, and consider the graph in Figure 3.38.

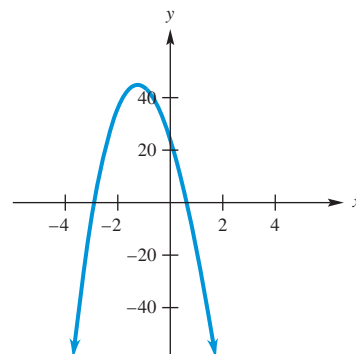



Figure 3.38

(a) Is Figure 3.38, on the previous page, a complete graph of $g(x)$; that is, does it show all the important features of the graph?

Solution The far ends of the graph of $g(x)$ should resemble the graph of its highest-degree term x^3 . The graph of $f(x) = x^3$ in Figure 3.34 moves upward at the far right, but the graph in Figure 3.38 does not. So Figure 3.38 is *not* a complete graph.

 (b) Use a graphing calculator to find a complete graph of $g(x)$.

Solution Since the graph of $g(x)$ must eventually start rising on the right side (as does the graph of x^3), a viewing window that shows a complete graph must extend beyond $x = 4$. By experimenting with various windows, we obtain Figure 3.39. This graph shows a total of two peaks and valleys and three x -intercepts (the maximum possible for a polynomial of degree 3). At the far ends, the graph of $g(x)$ resembles the graph of $f(x) = x^3$. Therefore, Figure 3.39 is a complete graph of $g(x)$. 

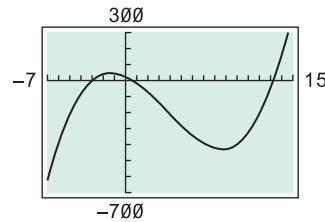



Figure 3.39


Checkpoint 3

Find a viewing window on a graphing calculator that shows a complete graph of $f(x) = -.7x^4 + 119x^2 + 400$. (Hint: The graph has two x -intercepts and the maximum possible number of peaks and valleys.)

Graphing Techniques

 Accurate graphs of first- and second-degree polynomial functions (lines and parabolas) are easily found algebraically, as we saw in Sections 2.2 and 3.4. All polynomial functions of degree 3, and some of higher degree, can be accurately graphed by hand by using calculus and algebra to locate the peaks and valleys. When a polynomial can be completely factored, the general shape of its graph can be determined algebraically by using the basic properties of polynomial graphs, as illustrated in Example 4. Obtaining accurate graphs of other polynomial functions generally requires the use of technology.

Example 4 Graph $f(x) = (2x + 3)(x - 1)(x + 2)$.

Solution Note that $f(x)$ is a polynomial of degree 3. (If you don't see why, do Checkpoint 4.) Begin by finding any x -intercepts. Set $f(x) = 0$ and solve for x : 

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= 0 \\ (2x + 3)(x - 1)(x + 2) &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Solve this equation by setting each of the three factors equal to 0:

$$\begin{array}{llll} 2x + 3 = 0 & \text{or} & x - 1 = 0 & \text{or} & x + 2 = 0 \\ x = -\frac{3}{2} & & x = 1 & & x = -2. \end{array}$$

The three numbers $-3/2$, 1, and -2 divide the x -axis into four intervals:

$$x < -2, \quad -2 < x < -\frac{3}{2}, \quad -\frac{3}{2} < x < 1, \quad \text{and} \quad 1 < x.$$

These intervals are shown in Figure 3.40.

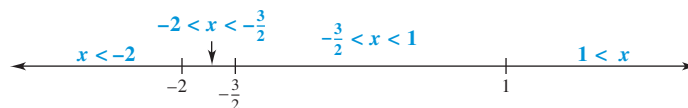


Figure 3.40

Checkpoint 4

Multiply out the expression for $f(x)$ in Example 4 and determine its degree.

Since the graph is an unbroken curve, it can change from above the x -axis to below it only by passing through the x -axis. As we have seen, this occurs only at the x -intercepts: $x = -2, -3/2,$ and 1 . Consequently, in the interval between two intercepts (or to the left of $x = -2$ or to the right of $x = 1$), the graph of $f(x)$ must lie entirely above or entirely below the x -axis.


We can determine where the graph lies over an interval by evaluating $f(x) = (2x + 3)(x - 1)(x + 2)$ at a number in that interval. For example, $x = -3$ is in the interval where $x < -2$, and

$$\begin{aligned} f(-3) &= (2(-3) + 3)(-3 - 1)(-3 + 2) \\ &= -12. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, $(-3, -12)$ is on the graph. Since this point lies below the x -axis, all points in this interval (that is, all points with $x < -2$) must lie below the x -axis. By testing numbers in the other intervals, we obtain the following table.

Interval	$x < -2$	$-2 < x < -3/2$	$-3/2 < x < 1$	$x > 1$
Test Number	-3	-7/4	0	2
Value of $f(x)$	-12	11/32	-6	28
Sign of $f(x)$	Negative	Positive	Negative	Positive
Graph	Below x -axis	Above x -axis	Below x -axis	Above x -axis

Since the graph intersects the x -axis at the intercepts and is above the x -axis between these intercepts, there must be at least one peak there. Similarly, there must be at least one valley between $x = -3/2$ and $x = 1$, because the graph is below the x -axis there. However, a polynomial function of degree 3 can have a total of at most $3 - 1 = 2$ peaks and valleys. So there must be exactly one peak and exactly one valley on this graph.

Furthermore, when $|x|$ is large, the graph must resemble the graph of $y = 2x^3$ (the highest-degree term). The graph of $y = 2x^3$, like the graph of $y = x^3$ in Figure 3.34, moves upward to the right and downward to the left. Using these facts and plotting the x -intercepts shows that the graph must have the general shape shown in Figure 3.41. Plotting additional points leads to the reasonably accurate graph in Figure 3.42. We say “reasonably accurate” because we cannot be sure of the exact locations of the peaks and valleys on the graph without using calculus. 

 **Checkpoint 5**

Graph $f(x) = 4(x - 2)(x + 3)(x - 4)$.

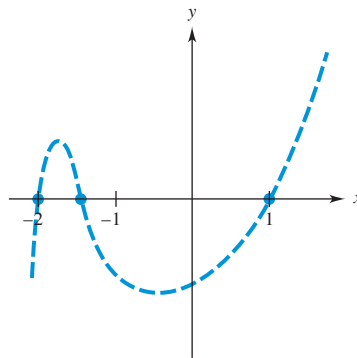


Figure 3.41

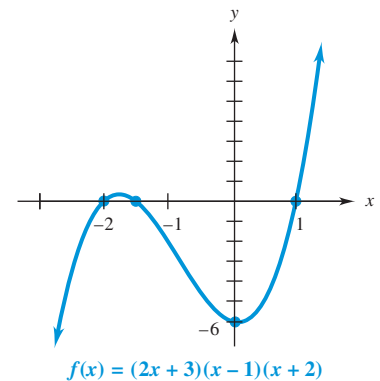


Figure 3.42

  **Polynomial Models**

Regression procedures similar to those presented for linear regression in Section 2.3 and quadratic regression in Section 3.5 can be used to find cubic and quartic (degree 4) polynomial models for appropriate data.

**Example 5**

Social Science The following table shows the population of the city of San Francisco, California in selected years.

Year	1950	1960	1970	1980	1990	2000	2010
Population	775,357	740,316	715,674	678,974	723,959	776,733	805,863

(a) Plot the data on a graphing calculator, with $x = 0$ corresponding to the year 1950.

Solution The points in Figure 3.43 suggest the general shape of a fourth-degree (quartic) polynomial.

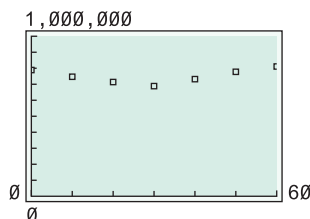


Figure 3.43

(b) Use quartic regression to obtain a model for these data.

Solution The procedure is the same as for linear regression; just choose “quartic” in place of “linear.” It produces the function

$$f(x) = -.137x^4 + 16.07x^3 - 470.34x^2 + 542.65x + 773,944.$$

Its graph, shown in Figure 3.44, appears to fit the data well.

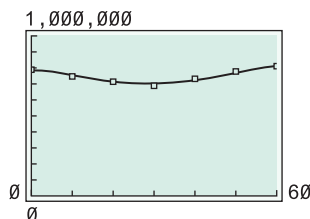


Figure 3.44

(c) Use the model to estimate the population of San Francisco in the years 1985 and 2005.

Solution The years 1985 and 2005 correspond to $x = 35$ and $x = 55$, respectively. Verify that

$$f(35) \approx 700,186 \quad \text{and} \quad f(55) \approx 801,022.$$

**Example 6**

Business The following table shows the revenue and costs (in millions of dollars) for Ford Motor Company for the years 2004–2012. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

Year	Revenue	Costs
2004	171,652	168,165
2005	177,089	175,065
2006	160,123	172,736
2007	172,455	175,178
2008	146,277	160,949
2009	118,308	115,346
2010	128,954	122,397
2011	136,264	116,042
2012	134,252	128,588

- (a) Let $x = 4$ correspond to the year 2004. Use cubic regression to obtain models for the revenue data $R(x)$ and the costs $C(x)$.

Solution The functions obtained using cubic regression from a calculator or software are

$$R(x) = 551.1x^3 - 12,601x^2 + 82,828x + 7002;$$

$$C(x) = 885.5x^3 - 21,438x^2 + 154,283x - 166,074.$$

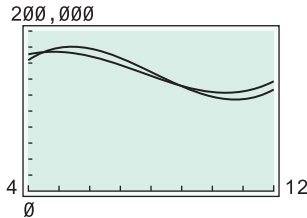


Figure 3.45

- (b) Graph $R(x)$ and $C(x)$ on the same set of axes. Did costs ever exceed revenues?

Solution The graph is shown in Figure 3.45. Since the lines cross twice, we can say that costs exceeded revenues in various periods.

- (c) Find the profit function $P(x)$ and show its graph.

Solution The profit function is the difference between the revenue function and the cost function. We subtract the coefficients of the cost function from the respective coefficients of the revenue function.

$$P(x) = R(x) - C(x)$$

$$= (551.1 - 885.5)x^3 + (-12,601 + 21,438)x^2$$

$$+ (82,828 - 154,283)x + (7002 + 166,074) \quad \text{Subtract like terms.}$$

$$= -334.4x^3 + 8837x^2 - 71,455x + 173,076.$$

The graph of $P(x)$ appears in Figure 3.46.

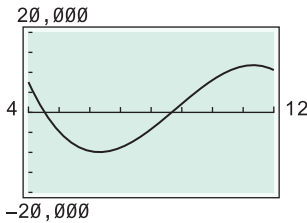


Figure 3.46

- (d) According to the model of the profit function $P(x)$, in what years was Ford Motor Company profitable?

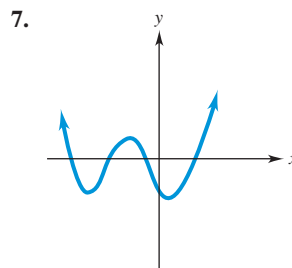
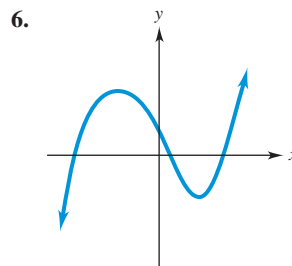
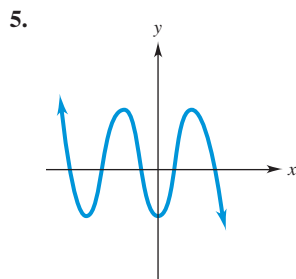
Solution The motor company was profitable in 2004, 2009, 2010, 2011, and 2012 because that is where the graph is positive.

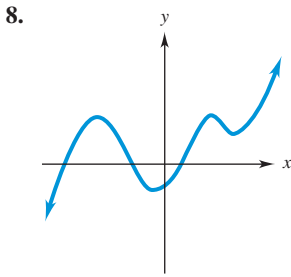
3.5 Exercises

Graph each of the given polynomial functions. (See Examples 1 and 2.)

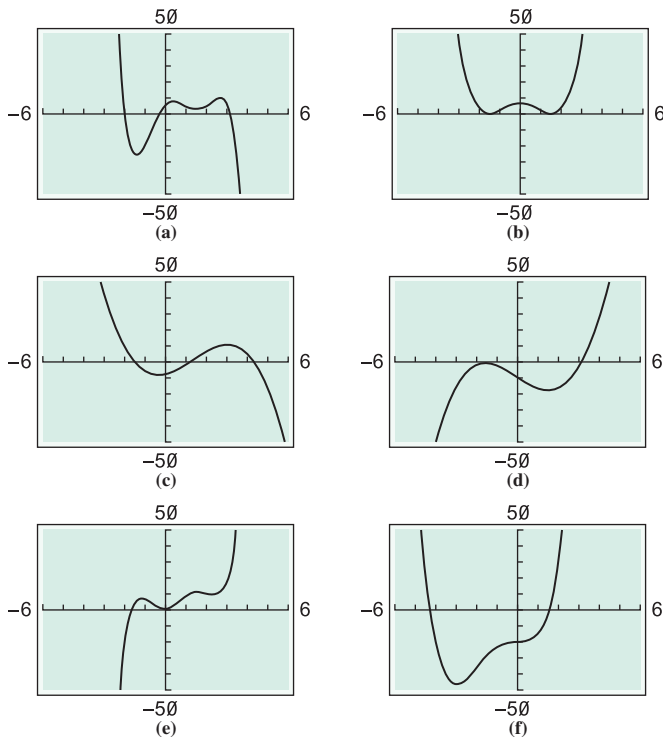
1. $f(x) = x^4$
2. $g(x) = -.5x^6$
3. $h(x) = -.2x^5$
4. $f(x) = x^7$

In Exercises 5–8, state whether the graph could possibly be the graph of (a) some polynomial function; (b) a polynomial function of degree 3; (c) a polynomial function of degree 4; (d) a polynomial function of degree 5. (See Example 3.)





In Exercises 9–14, match the given polynomial function to its graph [(a)–(f)], without using a graphing calculator. (See Example 3 and the two boxes preceding it.)



9. $f(x) = x^3 - 7x - 9$
10. $f(x) = -x^3 + 4x^2 + 3x - 8$
11. $f(x) = x^4 - 5x^2 + 7$
12. $f(x) = x^4 + 4x^3 - 20$
13. $f(x) = .7x^5 - 2.5x^4 - x^3 + 8x^2 + x + 2$
14. $f(x) = -x^5 + 4x^4 + x^3 - 16x^2 + 12x + 5$

Graph each of the given polynomial functions. (See Example 4.)

15. $f(x) = (x + 3)(x - 4)(x + 1)$
16. $f(x) = (x - 5)(x - 1)(x + 1)$
17. $f(x) = x^2(x + 3)(x - 1)$
18. $f(x) = x^2(x + 2)(x - 2)$
19. $f(x) = x^3 - x^2 - 20x$
20. $f(x) = x^3 + 2x^2 - 10x$
21. $f(x) = x^3 + 4x^2 - 7x$
22. $f(x) = x^4 - 6x^2$

Exercises 23–26 require a graphing calculator. Find a viewing window that shows a complete graph of the polynomial function (that is, a graph that includes all the peaks and valleys and that indicates how the curve moves away from the x -axis at the far left and far right). There are many correct answers. Consider your answer correct if it shows all the features that appear in the window given in the answers. (See Example 3.)

23. $g(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 - 4x - 5$
24. $f(x) = x^4 - 10x^3 + 35x^2 - 50x + 24$
25. $f(x) = 2x^5 - 3.5x^4 - 10x^3 + 5x^2 + 12x + 6$
26. $g(x) = x^5 + 8x^4 + 20x^3 + 9x^2 - 27x - 7$

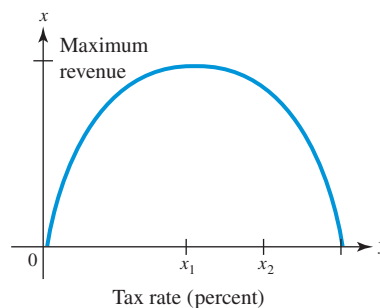
In Exercises 27–31, use a calculator to evaluate the functions. Generate the graph by plotting points or by using a graphing calculator.

27. **Finance** An idealized version of the Laffer curve (originated by economist Arthur Laffer) is shown in the accompanying graph. According to this theory, decreasing the tax rate, say, from x_2 to x_1 , may actually increase the total revenue to the government. The theory is that people will work harder and earn more if they are taxed at a lower rate, which means higher total tax revenues than would be the case at a higher rate. Suppose that the Laffer curve is given by the function

$$f(x) = \frac{x(x - 100)(x - 160)}{240} \quad (0 \leq x \leq 100),$$

where $f(x)$ is government revenue (in billions of dollars) from a tax rate of x percent. Find the revenue from the given tax rates.

- (a) 20% (b) 40% (c) 50% (d) 70%
- (e) Graph $f(x)$.



28. **Health** A technique for measuring cardiac output depends on the concentration of a dye after a known amount is injected into a vein near the heart. In a normal heart, the concentration of the dye at time x (in seconds) is given by the function defined by

$$g(x) = -.006x^4 + .140x^3 - .053x^2 + 1.79x.$$

- (a) Find the following: $g(0)$; $g(1)$; $g(2)$; $g(3)$.
 - (b) Graph $g(x)$ for $x \geq 0$.
29. **Business** The revenue for Costco Wholesale Corporation (in millions of dollars) can be approximated by the function
- $$R(x) = .141x^3 - 3.11x^2 + 26.98x - 19.99,$$
- where $x = 4$ corresponds to the year 2004. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)
- (a) Find the following: $R(5)$; $R(7)$; $R(12)$.
 - (b) Graph $R(x)$.
 - (c) Is revenue always increasing in this model?

30. **Business** The revenue for Target Corporation (in billions of dollars) can be approximated by the function

$$R(x) = .0600x^4 - 1.9766x^3 + 23.155x^2 - 110.22x + 229.42,$$

where $x = 4$ corresponds to the year 2004. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

- (a) Find the following: $R(6)$; $R(9)$; $R(11)$.
 (b) Graph $R(x)$.

31. **Business** The cost function for Costco Wholesale Corporation (in millions of dollars) can be approximated by the function

$$C(x) = .135x^3 - 2.98x^2 + 25.99x - 18.71,$$

where $x = 4$ corresponds to the year 2004. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

- (a) Find the following: $C(5)$; $C(7)$; $C(12)$.
 (b) Graph $C(x)$.
 (c) Are costs always increasing in this model?

32. **Business** The cost function for Target Corporation (in billions of dollars) can be approximated by the function


$$C(x) = .0697x^4 - 2.296x^3 + 26.947x^2 - 129.49x + 261.86,$$

where $x = 4$ corresponds to the year 2004. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

- (a) Find the following: $C(6)$; $C(9)$; $C(11)$.
 (b) Graph $C(x)$.

33. **Business** Use the revenue function $R(x)$ from Exercise 29 and the cost function $C(x)$ from Exercise 31 to write the profit function $P(x)$ for Costco Wholesale Corporation. Use your function to find the profit for the year 2012.

34. **Business** Use the revenue function $R(x)$ from Exercise 30 and the cost function $C(x)$ from Exercise 32 to write the profit function $P(x)$ for Target Corporation. Use your function to find the profit for the year 2011.

 Use a graphing calculator to do the following problems. (See Example 5.)

35. **Social Science** The following table shows the public school enrollment (in millions) in selected years. (Data from: U.S. National Center for Education Statistics.)

Year	Enrollment
1980	50.3
1985	48.9
1990	52.1
1995	55.9
2000	60.0
2005	62.1
2010	64.4

- (a) Plot the data with $x = 0$ corresponding to the year 1980.
 (b) Use cubic regression to find a third-order polynomial function $g(x)$ that models these data.

- (c) Graph $g(x)$ on the same screen as the data points. Does the graph appear to fit the data well?
 (d) According to the model, what was the enrollment in the year 2008?

36. **Business** The following table shows the profit (in billions of dollars) for Intel Corporation. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

Year	Profit
2004	7.5
2005	8.7
2006	5.0
2007	7.0
2008	5.3
2009	4.4
2010	11.5
2011	12.9
2012	11.0

- (a) Plot the data with $x = 4$ corresponding to the year 2004.
 (b) Use quartic regression to find a fourth-order polynomial function $h(x)$ that models these data.
 (c) Graph $h(x)$ on the same screen as the data points. Does the graph appear to fit the data well?
 (d) According to the model, what were Intel's profits in 2010?

37. **Business** The accompanying table gives the annual revenue for International Business Machines Corp. (IBM) in billions of dollars for the years 2004–2012. (Data from www.morningstar.com.)

Year	Revenue
2004	96.3
2005	91.1
2006	91.4
2007	98.8
2008	103.6
2009	95.8
2010	99.9
2011	106.9
2012	104.5

- (a) Let $x = 4$ correspond to the year 2004. Use cubic regression to find a polynomial function $R(x)$ that models these data.
 (b) Graph $R(x)$ on the same screen as the data points. Does the graph appear to fit the data well?

38. **Business** The accompanying table gives the annual costs for International Business Machines Corp. (IBM) in billions of dollars for the years 2004–2012. (Data from www.morningstar.com.)

Year	Costs
2004	87.9
2005	83.2
2006	81.9
2007	88.4
2008	91.3
2009	82.4
2010	85.1
2011	91.0
2012	87.9

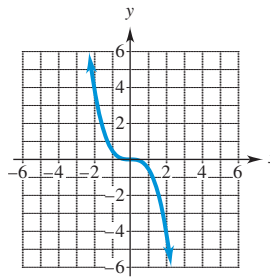
- (a) Let $x = 4$ correspond to the year 2004. Use cubic regression to find a polynomial function $C(x)$ that models these data.
- (b) Graph $C(x)$ on the screen as the data points. Does the graph appear to fit the data well?

Business For Exercises 39 and 40, use the functions $R(x)$ and $C(x)$ from the answers to Exercises 37(a) and 38(a).

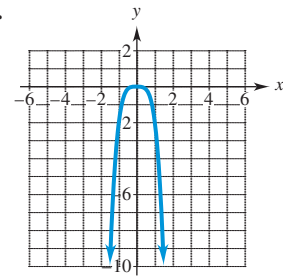
39. Find the profit function $P(x)$ for IBM for the years 2004–2012.
40. Find the profits for the year 2008.

✓Checkpoint Answers

1.



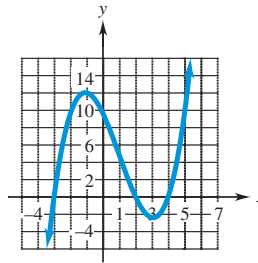
2.



3. Many correct answers, including $-15 \leq x \leq 15$ and $-2000 \leq y \leq 6000$.

4. $f(x) = 2x^3 + 5x^2 - x - 6$; degree 3.

5.



3.6 Rational Functions

A **rational function** is a function whose rule is the quotient of two polynomials, such as

$$f(x) = \frac{2}{1+x}, \quad g(x) = \frac{3x+2}{2x+4}, \quad \text{and} \quad h(x) = \frac{x^2-2x-4}{x^3-2x^2+x}.$$

Thus, a rational function is a function whose rule can be written in the form

$$f(x) = \frac{P(x)}{Q(x)},$$

where $P(x)$ and $Q(x)$ are polynomials, with $Q(x) \neq 0$. The function is undefined for any values of x that make $Q(x) = 0$, so there are breaks in the graph at these numbers.

Linear Rational Functions

We begin with rational functions in which both numerator and denominator are first-degree or constant polynomials. Such functions are sometimes called **linear rational functions**.

Example 1

Graph the rational function defined by

$$y = \frac{2}{1+x}.$$

Solution This function is undefined for $x = -1$, since -1 leads to a 0 denominator. For that reason, the graph of this function will not intersect the vertical line $x = -1$. Since x can take on any value except -1 , the values of x can approach -1 as closely as desired from either side of -1 , as shown in the following table of values.

x	-1.5	-1.2	-1.1	-1.01	-0.99	-0.9	-0.8	-0.5
$1 + x$	-0.5	-0.2	-0.1	-0.01	0.01	0.1	0.2	0.5
$\frac{2}{1 + x}$	-4	-10	-20	-200	200	20	10	4

x approaches -1
 \downarrow
 $|f(x)|$ gets larger and larger
 \uparrow

The preceding table suggests that as x gets closer and closer to -1 from either side, $|f(x)|$ gets larger and larger. The part of the graph near $x = -1$ in Figure 3.47 shows this behavior. The vertical line $x = -1$ that is approached by the curve is called a *vertical asymptote*. For convenience, the vertical asymptote is indicated by a dashed line in Figure 3.47, but this line is *not* part of the graph of the function.

As $|x|$ gets larger and larger, so does the absolute value of the denominator $1 + x$. Hence, $y = 2/(1 + x)$ gets closer and closer to 0, as shown in the following table.

x	-101	-11	-2	0	9	99
$1 + x$	-100	-10	-1	1	10	100
$\frac{2}{1 + x}$	-0.02	-0.2	-2	2	0.2	0.02

✓ Checkpoint 1

Graph the following.

- (a) $f(x) = \frac{3}{5 - x}$
- (b) $f(x) = \frac{-4}{x + 4}$

The horizontal line $y = 0$ is called a *horizontal asymptote* for this graph. Using the asymptotes and plotting the intercept and other points gives the graph of Figure 3.47. ✓₁

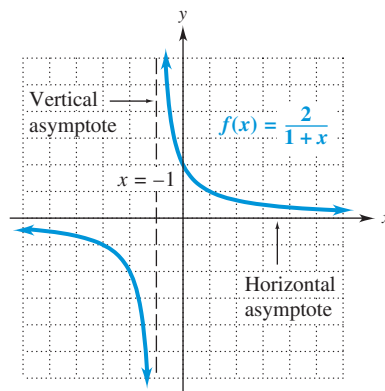


Figure 3.47

Example 1 suggests the following conclusion, which applies to all rational functions.

If a number c makes the denominator zero, but the numerator nonzero, in the expression defining a rational function, then the line $x = c$ is a **vertical asymptote** for the graph of the function.

If the graph of a function approaches a horizontal line very closely when x is very large or very small, we say that this line is a **horizontal asymptote** of the graph.

In Example 1, the horizontal asymptote was the x -axis. This is not always the case, however, as the next example illustrates.

Example 2 Graph


$$f(x) = \frac{3x + 2}{2x + 4}$$

Solution Find the vertical asymptote by setting the denominator equal to 0 and then solving for x :

$$\begin{aligned} 2x + 4 &= 0 \\ x &= -2. \end{aligned}$$

In order to see what the graph looks like when $|x|$ is very large, we rewrite the rule of the function. When $x \neq 0$, dividing both numerator and denominator by x does not change the value of the function:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \frac{3x + 2}{2x + 4} = \frac{\frac{3x + 2}{x}}{\frac{2x + 4}{x}} \\ &= \frac{\frac{3x}{x} + \frac{2}{x}}{\frac{2x}{x} + \frac{4}{x}} = \frac{3 + \frac{2}{x}}{2 + \frac{4}{x}}. \end{aligned}$$

Now, when $|x|$ is very large, the fractions $2/x$ and $4/x$ are very close to 0. (For instance, when $x = 200$, $4/x = 4/200 = .02$.) Therefore, the numerator of $f(x)$ is very close to $3 + 0 = 3$ and the denominator is very close to $2 + 0 = 2$. Hence, $f(x)$ is very close to $3/2$ when $|x|$ is large, so the line $y = 3/2$ is the horizontal asymptote of the graph, as shown in Figure 3.48. 

 **Checkpoint 2**

Graph the following.

(a) $f(x) = \frac{2x - 5}{x - 2}$

(b) $f(x) = \frac{3 - x}{x + 1}$

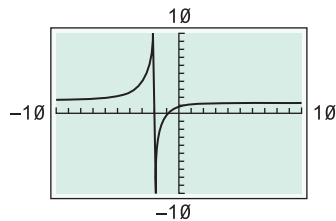


Figure 3.49

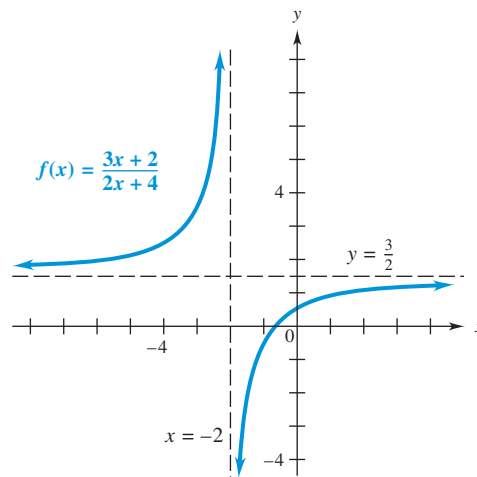


Figure 3.48

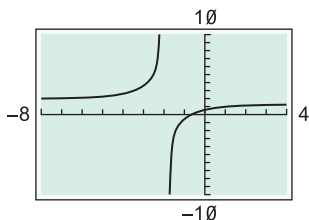



Figure 3.50

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** Depending on the viewing window, a graphing calculator may not accurately represent the graph of a rational function. For example, the graph of $f(x) = \frac{3x + 2}{2x + 4}$ in Figure 3.49, which should look like Figure 3.48, has an erroneous vertical line at the place where the graph has a vertical asymptote. This problem can usually be avoided by using a window that has the vertical asymptote at the center of the x -axis, as in Figure 3.50.

The horizontal asymptotes of a linear rational function are closely related to the coefficients of the x -terms of the numerator and denominator, as illustrated in Examples 1 and 2:

	Function	Horizontal Asymptote
Example 2:	$f(x) = \frac{3x + 2}{2x + 4}$	$y = \frac{3}{2}$
Example 1:	$f(x) = \frac{2}{1 + x} = \frac{0x + 2}{1x + 1}$	$y = \frac{0}{1} = 0$ (the x -axis)

The same pattern holds in the general case.

The graph of $f(x) = \frac{ax + b}{cx + d}$ (where $c \neq 0$ and $ad \neq bc$) has a vertical asymptote at the root of the denominator and has horizontal asymptote $y = \frac{a}{c}$.

Other Rational Functions

When the numerator or denominator of a rational function has degree greater than 1, the graph of the function can be more complicated than those in Examples 1 and 2. The graph may have several vertical asymptotes, as well as peaks and valleys.

Example 3 Graph

$$f(x) = \frac{2x^2}{x^2 - 4}$$

Solution Find the vertical asymptotes by setting the denominator equal to 0 and solving for x :

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 - 4 &= 0 \\ (x + 2)(x - 2) &= 0 && \text{Factor.} \\ x + 2 = 0 &\quad \text{or} \quad x - 2 = 0 && \text{Set each term equal to 0.} \\ x = -2 &\quad \text{or} \quad x = 2. && \text{Solve for } x. \end{aligned}$$

Since neither of these numbers makes the numerator 0, the lines $x = -2$ and $x = 2$ are vertical asymptotes of the graph. The horizontal asymptote can be determined by dividing both the numerator and denominator of $f(x)$ by x^2 (the highest power of x that appears in either one):

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \frac{2x^2}{x^2 - 4} \\ &= \frac{\frac{2x^2}{x^2}}{\frac{x^2 - 4}{x^2}} \\ &= \frac{\frac{2x^2}{x^2}}{\frac{x^2}{x^2} - \frac{4}{x^2}} \\ &= \frac{2}{1 - \frac{4}{x^2}} \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 3

List the vertical and horizontal asymptotes of the given function.

(a) $f(x) = \frac{3x + 5}{x + 5}$

(b) $g(x) = \frac{2 - x^2}{x^2 - 4}$

When $|x|$ is very large, the fraction $4/x^2$ is very close to 0, so the denominator is very close to 1 and $f(x)$ is very close to 2. Hence, the line $y = 2$ is the horizontal asymptote of the graph. Using this information and plotting several points in each of the three regions determined by the vertical asymptotes, we obtain Figure 3.51. ✓₃

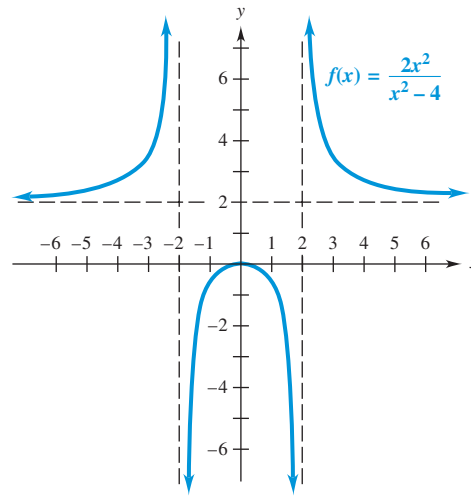


Figure 3.51

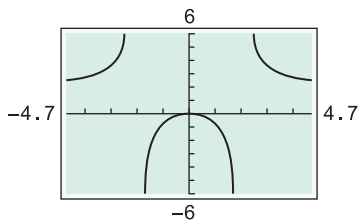


Figure 3.52

TECHNOLOGY TIP When a function whose graph has more than one vertical asymptote (as in Example 3) is graphed on a graphing calculator, erroneous vertical lines can sometimes be avoided by using a *decimal window* (with the y -range adjusted to show the graph). On TI, use (Z)DECIMAL in the ZOOM or VIEWS menu. On Casio, use INIT in the V-WINDOW menu. Figure 3.52 shows the function of Example 3 graphed in a decimal window on a TI-84+. (The x -range may be different on other calculators.)

The arguments used to find the horizontal asymptotes in Examples 1–3 work in the general case and lead to the following conclusion.

If the numerator of a rational function $f(x)$ is of *smaller* degree than the denominator, then the x -axis (the line $y = 0$) is the horizontal asymptote of the graph. If the numerator and denominator are of the *same* degree, say, $f(x) = \frac{ax^n + \dots}{cx^n + \dots}$, then the line $y = \frac{a}{c}$ is the horizontal asymptote.*

Applications

Rational functions have a variety of applications, some of which are explored next.

Example 4 **Natural Science** In many situations involving environmental pollution, much of the pollutant can be removed from the air or water at a fairly reasonable cost, but the minute amounts of the pollutant that remain can be very expensive to remove.

Cost as a function of the percentage of pollutant removed from the environment can be calculated for various percentages of removal, with a curve fitted through the resulting data points. This curve then leads to a function that approximates the situation. Rational functions often are a good choice for these **cost–benefit functions**.


*When the numerator is of larger degree than the denominator, the graph has no horizontal asymptote, but may have nonhorizontal lines or other curves as asymptotes; see Exercises 32 and 33 at the end of this section for examples.

For example, suppose a cost–benefit function is given by

$$f(x) = \frac{18x}{106 - x},$$

where $f(x)$, or y , is the cost (in thousands of dollars) of removing x percent of a certain pollutant. The domain of x is the set of all numbers from 0 to 100, inclusive; any amount of pollutant from 0% to 100% can be removed. To remove 100% of the pollutant here would cost

$$y = \frac{18(100)}{106 - 100} = 300,$$

or \$300,000. Check that 95% of the pollutant can be removed for about \$155,000, 90% for about \$101,000, and 80% for about \$55,000, as shown in Figure 3.53 (in which the displayed y -coordinates are rounded to the nearest integer). 

Checkpoint 4

Using the function in Example 4, find the cost to remove the following percentages of pollutants.

- (a) 70%
- (b) 85%
- (c) 98%

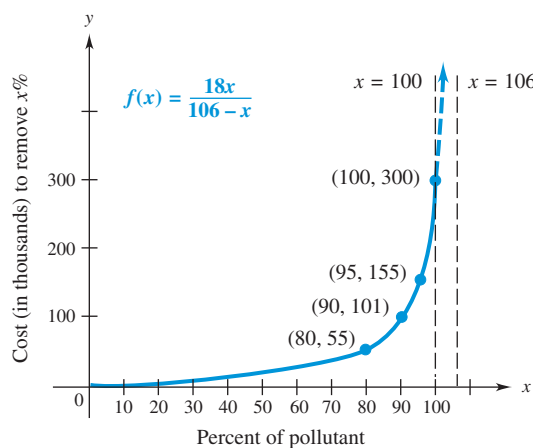


Figure 3.53

In management, **product-exchange functions** give the relationship between quantities of two items that can be produced by the same machine or factory. For example, an oil refinery can produce gasoline, heating oil, or a combination of the two; a winery can produce red wine, white wine, or a combination of the two. The next example discusses a product-exchange function.

Example 5 **Business** The product-exchange function for the Fruits of the Earth Winery for red wine x and white wine y , in number of cases, is

$$y = \frac{150,000 - 75x}{1200 + x}.$$

Graph the function and find the maximum quantity of each kind of wine that can be produced.

Solution Only nonnegative values of x and y make sense in this situation, so we graph the function in the first quadrant (Figure 3.54, on the following page). Note that the y -intercept of the graph (found by setting $x = 0$) is 125 and the x -intercept (found by setting $y = 0$ and solving for x) is 2000. Since we are interested only in the portion of the graph in Quadrant I, we can find a few more points in that quadrant and complete the graph as shown in Figure 3.54.

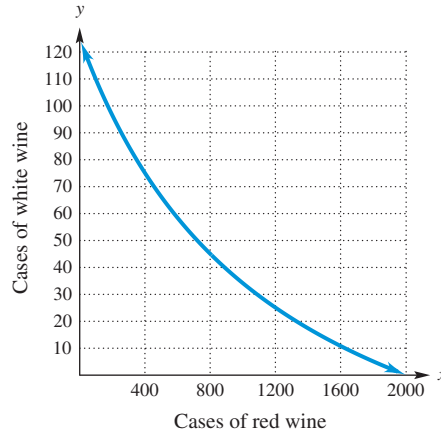


Figure 3.54

The maximum value of y occurs when $x = 0$, so the maximum amount of white wine that can be produced is 125 cases, as given by the y -intercept. The x -intercept gives the maximum amount of red wine that can be produced: 2000 cases. ✓₅

✓ **Checkpoint 5**

Rework Example 5 with the product-exchange function

$$y = \frac{70,000 - 10x}{70 + x}$$

to find the maximum amount of each wine that can be produced.



Example 6

Business A retailer buys 2500 specialty lightbulbs from a distributor each year. In addition to the cost of each bulb, there is a fee for each order, so she wants to order as few times as possible. However, storage costs are higher when there are fewer orders (and hence more bulbs per order to store). Past experience shows that the total annual cost (for the bulbs, ordering fees, and storage costs) is given by the rational function.

$$C(x) = \frac{.98x^2 + 1200x + 22,000}{x},$$

where x is the number of bulbs ordered each time. How many bulbs should be ordered each time in order to have the smallest possible cost?

Solution Graph the cost function $C(x)$ in a window with $0 \leq x \leq 2500$ (because the retailer cannot order a negative number of bulbs and needs only 2500 for the year).

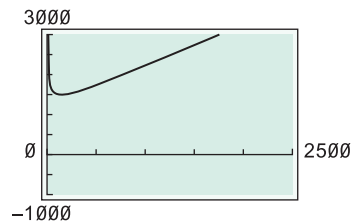


Figure 3.55

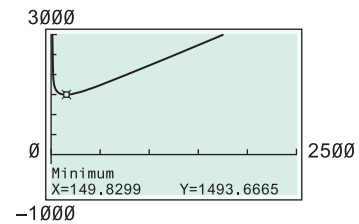


Figure 3.56

For each point on the graph in Figure 3.55,

- the x -coordinate is the number of bulbs ordered each time;
- the y -coordinate is the annual cost when x bulbs are ordered each time.

Use the minimum finder on a graphing calculator to find the point with the smallest y -coordinate, which is approximately $(149.83, 1493.67)$, as shown in Figure 3.56. Since the retailer cannot order part of a lightbulb, she should order 150 bulbs each time, for an approximate annual cost of \$1494.

3.6 Exercises

Graph each function. Give the equations of the vertical and horizontal asymptotes. (See Examples 1–3.)

1. $f(x) = \frac{1}{x+5}$ 2. $g(x) = \frac{-7}{x-6}$

3. $f(x) = \frac{-3}{2x+5}$ 4. $h(x) = \frac{-4}{2-x}$

5. $f(x) = \frac{3x}{x-1}$ 6. $g(x) = \frac{x-2}{x}$

7. $f(x) = \frac{x+1}{x-4}$ 8. $f(x) = \frac{x-3}{x+5}$

9. $f(x) = \frac{2-x}{x-3}$ 10. $g(x) = \frac{3x-2}{x+3}$

11. $f(x) = \frac{3x+2}{2x+4}$ 12. $f(x) = \frac{4x-8}{8x+1}$

13. $h(x) = \frac{x+1}{x^2+2x-8}$ 14. $g(x) = \frac{1}{x(x+2)^2}$

15. $f(x) = \frac{x^2+4}{x^2-4}$ 16. $f(x) = \frac{x-1}{x^2-2x-3}$

Find the equations of the vertical asymptotes of each of the given rational functions.

17. $f(x) = \frac{x-3}{x^2+x-2}$ 18. $g(x) = \frac{x+2}{x^2-1}$

19. $g(x) = \frac{x^2+2x}{x^2-4x-5}$ 20. $f(x) = \frac{x^2-2x-4}{x^3-2x^2+x}$

Work these problems. (See Example 4.)

21. **Natural Science** Suppose a cost–benefit model is given by

$$f(x) = \frac{4.3x}{100-x},$$

where $f(x)$ is the cost, in thousands of dollars, of removing x percent of a given pollutant. Find the cost of removing each of the given percentages of pollutants.

- (a) 50% (b) 70% (c) 80%
 (d) 90% (e) 95% (f) 98%
 (g) 99%
 (h) Is it possible, according to this model, to remove *all* the pollutant?
 (i) Graph the function.

22. **Business** Suppose a cost–benefit model is given by

$$f(x) = \frac{6.2x}{112-x},$$

where $f(x)$ is the cost, in thousands of dollars, of removing x percent of a certain pollutant. Find the cost of removing the given percentages of pollutants.

- (a) 0% (b) 50%
 (c) 80% (d) 90%
 (e) 95% (f) 99%
 (g) 100% (h) Graph the function.

23. **Natural Science** The function

$$f(x) = \frac{\lambda x}{1+(ax)^b}$$

is used in population models to give the size of the next generation $f(x)$ in terms of the current generation x . (See J. Maynard Smith, *Models in Ecology* [Cambridge University Press, 1974].)

- (a) What is a reasonable domain for this function, considering what x represents?
 (b) Graph the function for $\lambda = a = b = 1$ and $x \geq 0$.
 (c) Graph the function for $\lambda = a = 1$ and $b = 2$ and $x \geq 0$.
 (d) What is the effect of making b larger?

24. **Natural Science** The function

$$f(x) = \frac{Kx}{A+x}$$

is used in biology to give the growth rate of a population in the presence of a quantity x of food. This concept is called Michaelis–Menten kinetics. (See Leah Edelstein-Keshet, *Mathematical Models in Biology* [Random House, 1988].)

- (a) What is a reasonable domain for this function, considering what x represents?
 (b) Graph the function for $K = 5$, $A = 2$, and $x \geq 0$.
 (c) Show that $y = K$ is a horizontal asymptote.
 (d) What do you think K represents?
 (e) Show that A represents the quantity of food for which the growth rate is half of its maximum.

25. **Social Science** The average waiting time in a line (or queue) before getting served is given by

$$W = \frac{S(S-A)}{A},$$

where A is the average rate at which people arrive at the line and S is the average service time. At a certain fast-food restaurant, the average service time is 3 minutes. Find W for each of the given average arrival times.

- (a) 1 minute
 (b) 2 minutes
 (c) 2.5 minutes
 (d) What is the vertical asymptote?
 (e) Graph the equation on the interval $(0, 3)$.
 (f) What happens to W when $A > 3$? What does this mean?

Business Sketch the portion of the graph in Quadrant I of each of the functions defined in Exercises 26 and 27, and then estimate the maximum quantities of each product that can be produced. (See Example 5.)

26. The product-exchange function for gasoline x and heating oil y , in hundreds of gallons per day, is

$$y = \frac{125,000 - 25x}{125 + 2x}.$$

27. A drug factory found that the product-exchange function for a red tranquilizer x and a blue tranquilizer y is

$$y = \frac{900,000,000 - 30,000x}{x + 90,000}.$$

28. **Physical Science** The failure of several O-rings in field joints was the cause of the fatal crash of the *Challenger* space shuttle in 1986. NASA data from 24 successful launches prior to *Challenger* suggested that O-ring failure was related to launch temperature by a function similar to

$$N(t) = \frac{600 - 7t}{4t - 100} \quad (50 \leq t \leq 85),$$

where t is the temperature (in °F) at launch and N is the approximate number of O-rings that fail. Assume that this function accurately models the number of O-ring failures that would occur at lower launch temperatures (an assumption NASA did not make).

- Does $N(t)$ have a vertical asymptote? At what value of t does it occur?
- Without actually graphing the function, what would you conjecture that the graph would look like just to the right of the vertical asymptote? What does this suggest about the number of O-ring failures that might be expected near that temperature? (The temperature at the *Challenger* launching was 31°.)
- Confirm your conjecture by graphing $N(t)$ between the vertical asymptote and $t = 85$.

29. **Business** A company has fixed costs of \$40,000 and a marginal cost of \$2.60 per unit.

- Find the linear cost function.
- Find the average cost function. (Average cost was defined in Section 3.3.)
- Find the horizontal asymptote of the graph of the average cost function. Explain what the asymptote means in this situation. (How low can the average cost be?)

Use a graphing calculator to do Exercises 30–33. (See Example 6.)

30. **Finance** Another model of a Laffer curve (see Exercise 27 of Section 3.5) is given by

$$f(x) = \frac{300x - 3x^2}{10x + 200},$$

where $f(x)$ is government revenue (in billions of dollars) from a tax rate of x percent. Find the revenue from the given tax rates.

- 16%
- 25%
- 40%
- 55%
- Graph $f(x)$.
- What tax rate produces maximum revenue? What is the maximum revenue?

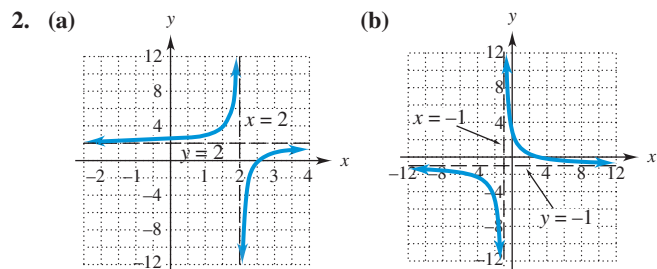
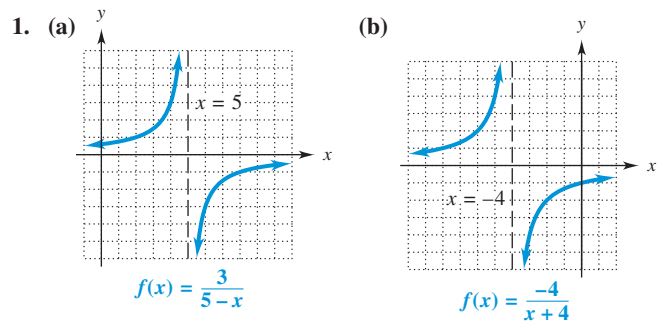
31. **Business** When no more than 110 units are produced, the cost of producing x units is given by

$$C(x) = .2x^3 - 25x^2 + 1531x + 25,000.$$

How many units should be produced in order to have the lowest possible average cost?

- Graph $f(x) = \frac{x^3 + 3x^2 + x + 1}{x^2 + 2x + 1}$.
 - Does the graph appear to have a horizontal asymptote? Does the graph appear to have some nonhorizontal straight line as an asymptote?
 - Graph $f(x)$ and the line $y = x + 1$ on the same screen. Does this line appear to be an asymptote of the graph of $f(x)$?
- Graph $g(x) = \frac{x^3 - 2}{x - 1}$ in the window with $-5 \leq x \leq 5$ and $-6 \leq y \leq 12$.
 - Graph $g(x)$ and the parabola $y = x^2 + x + 1$ on the same screen. How do the two graphs compare when $|x| \geq 2$?

✓ Checkpoint Answers



- Vertical, $x = -5$; horizontal, $y = 3$
 - Vertical, $x = -2$ and $x = 2$; horizontal, $y = -1$
- \$35,000
 - About \$73,000
 - About \$221,000
- 7000 cases of red, 1000 cases of white

CHAPTER 3 Summary and Review

Key Terms and Symbols

- | | | | |
|--|---|--|---|
| <p>3.1 function
domain
range
functional notation
piecewise-defined function</p> <p>3.2 graph
linear function
piecewise linear function
absolute-value function
greatest-integer function
step function</p> | <p>graph reading
vertical-line test</p> <p>3.3 fixed costs
variable cost
average cost
linear depreciation
rate of change
marginal cost
linear cost function
linear revenue function
break-even point</p> | <p>supply and demand curves
equilibrium point
equilibrium price
equilibrium quantity</p> <p>3.4 quadratic function
parabola
vertex
axis
quadratic model</p> <p>3.5 polynomial function
graph of $f(x) = ax^n$</p> | <p>properties of polynomial graphs
polynomial models</p> <p>3.6 rational function
linear rational function
vertical asymptote
horizontal asymptote</p> |
|--|---|--|---|

Chapter 3 Key Concepts

Functions

A **function** consists of a set of inputs called the **domain**, a set of outputs called the **range**, and a rule by which each input determines exactly one output.

If a vertical line intersects a graph in more than one point, the graph is not that of a function.

Linear Functions

A **linear cost function** has equation $C(x) = mx + b$, where m is the **marginal cost** (the cost of producing one more item) and b is the **fixed cost**.

If $p = f(q)$ gives the price per unit when q units can be supplied and $p = g(q)$ gives the price per unit when q units are demanded, then the **equilibrium price** and **equilibrium quantity** occur at the q -value such that $f(q) = g(q)$.

Quadratic Functions

The **quadratic function** defined by $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$ has a graph that is a **parabola** with vertex (h, k) and axis of symmetry $x = h$. The parabola opens upward if $a > 0$ and downward if $a < 0$.

If the equation is in the form $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$, the vertex is $\left(-\frac{b}{2a}, f\left(-\frac{b}{2a}\right)\right)$.

Polynomial Functions

When $|x|$ is large, the graph of a **polynomial function** resembles the graph of its highest-degree term ax^n . The graph of $f(x) = ax^n$ is described on page 180.

On the graph of a polynomial function of degree n ,

the total number of peaks and valleys is at most $n - 1$;

the total number of x -intercepts is at most n .

Rational Functions

If a number c makes the denominator of a **rational function** 0, but the numerator nonzero, then the line $x = c$ is a **vertical asymptote** of the graph.

Whenever the values of y approach, but do not equal, some number k as $|x|$ gets larger and larger, the line $y = k$ is a **horizontal asymptote** of the graph.

If the numerator of a rational function is of *smaller* degree than the denominator, then the x -axis is the horizontal asymptote of the graph.

If the numerator and denominator of a rational function are of the *same* degree, say,

$$f(x) = \frac{ax^n + \dots}{cx^n + \dots}, \text{ then the line } y = \frac{a}{c} \text{ is the horizontal asymptote of the graph.}$$

Chapter 3 Review Exercises

In Exercises 1–6, state whether the given rule defines a function or not.

1.

x	3	2	1	0	1	2
y	8	5	2	0	-2	-5

2.

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
y	9	4	1	0	1	4	9

3. $y = \sqrt{x}$

4. $y = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$

5. $x = y^2 + 1$
 6. $y = 5x - 2$

For the functions in Exercises 7–10, find

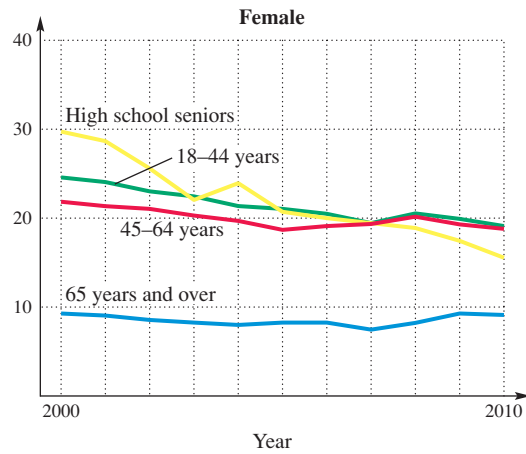
- (a) $f(6)$; (b) $f(-2)$; (c) $f(p)$; (d) $f(r + 1)$.
7. $f(x) = 4x - 1$ 8. $f(x) = 3 - 4x$
 9. $f(x) = -x^2 + 2x - 4$ 10. $f(x) = 8 - x - x^2$
11. Let $f(x) = 5x - 3$ and $g(x) = -x^2 + 4x$. Find each of the following:
 (a) $f(-2)$ (b) $g(3)$ (c) $g(-k)$
 (d) $g(3m)$ (e) $g(k - 5)$ (f) $f(3 - p)$
12. Let $f(x) = 3x^2 + 4x + 8$. Find each of the following:
 (a) $f(2)$ (b) $f(-1)$ (c) $f(4)$
 (d) Based on your answers in parts (a)–(c), is it true that $f(a + b) = f(a) + f(b)$ for all real number a and b ?

Graph the functions in Exercises 13–24.

13. $f(x) = |x| - 3$ 14. $f(x) = -|x| - 2$
 15. $f(x) = -|x + 1| + 3$ 16. $f(x) = 2|x - 3| - 4$
 17. $f(x) = [x - 3]$ 18. $f(x) = \left\lfloor \frac{1}{2}x - 2 \right\rfloor$
19. $f(x) = \begin{cases} -4x + 2 & \text{if } x \leq 1 \\ 3x - 5 & \text{if } x > 1 \end{cases}$
 20. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 3x + 1 & \text{if } x < 2 \\ -x + 4 & \text{if } x \geq 2 \end{cases}$
 21. $f(x) = \begin{cases} |x| & \text{if } x < 3 \\ 6 - x & \text{if } x \geq 3 \end{cases}$
 22. $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2}$
 23. $g(x) = x^2/8 - 3$
 24. $h(x) = \sqrt{x} + 2$

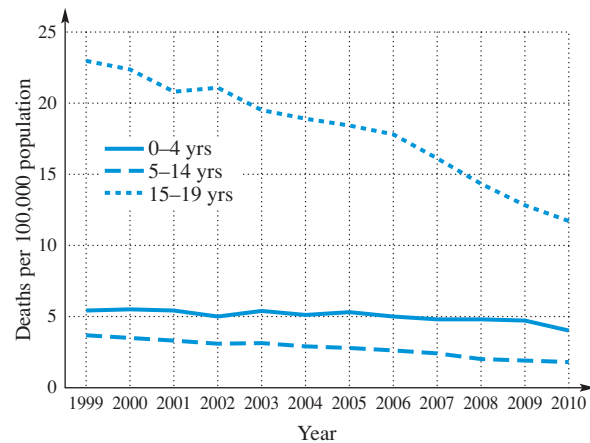
25. **Business** Let f be a function that gives the cost to rent a power washer for x hours. The cost is a flat \$45 for renting the washer, plus \$20 per day or fraction of a day for using the washer.
 (a) Graph f .
 (b) Give the domain and range of f .
 (c) John McDonough wants to rent the washer, but he can spend no more than \$90. What is the maximum number of days he can use it?
26. **Health** A city hospital charges \$20 per hour for hospitalization. The consultant charges are \$100 per day. If a patient is hospitalized for x days, then
 (a) Define a function $Y = f(x)$.
 (b) Graph the function.
 (c) If $x = 10$ days, then find the cost to the patient.

27. **Health** The following graph, which tracks the percentage of the female population of the United States who smoke cigarettes, appeared in a report from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.



- (a) What is the general trend for female high school seniors? What is the general trend for females 65 years and over?
 (b) Let $x = 0$ correspond to the year 2000. Approximate a linear function for female high school seniors using the points $(0, 30)$ and $(10, 16)$.
 (c) If the trend continues, estimate the percentage of female high school seniors who smoke cigarettes in 2012.

28. **Health** The following graph, which tracks the rate of traumatic brain injury-related deaths per 100,000 people, appeared on a website for the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.



- (a) What is the general trend for youth age 15–19 years?
 (b) Let $x = 9$ correspond to the year 1999. Approximate a linear function to fit the data using 22 as the number of deaths in 2000 and 11 for 2010.
 (c) If the trend continues, estimate the deaths per 100,000 people in the year 2012.

Business In Exercises 29–32, find the following:

- (a) the linear cost function;
 (b) the marginal cost;
 (c) the average cost per unit to produce 100 units.
29. Fifteen unit cost \$625; ten unit cost \$425
 30. Fixed cost is \$2000; 36 units cost \$8480.
 31. Twelve units cost \$445; 50 units cost \$1585.
 32. Ten unit cost \$345; eighteen unit cost \$545.

- 33. Business** The cost of producing x ink cartridges for a printer is given by $C(x) = 24x + 18,000$. Each cartridge can be sold for \$28.
- What are the fixed costs?
 - Find the revenue function.
 - Find the break-even point.
 - If the company sells exactly the number of cartridges needed to break even, what is its revenue?
- 34. Business** The cost of producing x laser printers is given by $C(x) = 325x + 2,300,000$. Each printer can be sold for \$450.
- What are the fixed costs?
 - Find the revenue function.
 - Find the break-even point.
 - If the company sells exactly the number of printers needed to break even, what is its revenue?
- 35. Business** A manufacturer of batteries estimates that when x batteries are manufactured each month, the total cost will be $C(x) = \frac{1}{10}x^2 + 3x + 20$. All batteries can be sold at a price of $p(x) = 70 - x$ dollars per unit. What are the fixed costs? Also determine the break-even point.
- 36. Business** Suppose the supply and price for prescription-strength Tylenol are related by $p = .0015q + 1$, where p is the price (in dollars) of a 30-day prescription. If the demand is related to price by $p = -.0025q + 64.36$, what are the equilibrium quantity and price?

Without graphing, determine whether each of the following parabolas opens upward or downward, and find its vertex.

37. $f(x) = 3(x - 2)^2 + 6$ 38. $f(x) = \sqrt{x + 2} - 2$
 39. $g(x) = -4(x + 1)^2 + 8$ 40. $g(x) = -5(x - 4)^2 - 6$

Graph each of the following quadratic functions, and label its vertex.

41. $f(x) = x^2 - 9$ 42. $f(x) = 5 - 2x^2$
 43. $f(x) = x^2 + 2x - 6$ 44. $g(x) = -x^2 - x + \frac{15}{4}$
 45. $f(x) = -x^2 - 6x + 5$ 46. $f(x) = 5x^2 + 20x - 2$
 47. $f(x) = 2x^2 - 12x + 10$ 48. $f(x) = -3x^2 - 12x - 2$

Determine whether the functions in Exercises 49–52 have a minimum or a maximum value, and find that value.

49. $f(x) = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + x^2 + 4$ 50. $f(x) = \frac{x^4}{4} - \frac{x^3}{3} - 2x^2 + 4x + 6$
 51. $g(x) = -4x^2 + 8x + 3$ 52. $f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 + 3x - 1$

Solve each problem.

- 53. Business** The weekly future price for a barrel of oil can be approximated by the function $f(x) = -.002x^2 + .644x + 45.32$, where x is the number of weeks since the beginning of the year 2009. How many weeks from the beginning of the year 2009 until the peak oil futures price occurs? What is the peak oil futures price with this model? (Data from: U.S. Energy Information Administration.)

- 54. Social Science** The percent of children living below the poverty line can be approximated by the function $f(x) = .096x^2 - 2.40x + 31.7$, where $x = 6$ corresponds to the year 1996. What year saw the lowest percent living in poverty? What was the lowest percent?
- 55. Social Science** The declining birth rate in China has demographers believing that the population of China will soon peak. A model for the population (in millions) for China is $g(x) = -.173x^2 + 12.86x + 1152$, where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 1990. According to this model, what year will China reach its peak population? What is the estimate of the peak population? (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)
- 56. Business** The amount of energy (in kilowatt hours) a new refrigerator typically used for a year of operation can be approximated by the function $h(x) = -1.44x^2 + 220x - 6953$, where $x = 50$ corresponds to the year 1950. According to this model, what year did peak electrical use occur? What was that amount? (Data from: U.S. Energy Information Administration.)
- 57. Business** The following table shows the average cost of tuition and fees at private colleges in various years. (Data from: U.S. Center for Educational Statistics.)

Year	Cost
1975	3672
1980	5470
1985	8885
1990	12,910
1995	17,208
2000	21,373
2005	26,908
2010	32,026

- Let $x = 5$ correspond to the year 1975. Find a quadratic function $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$ that models these data using (5, 3672) as the vertex and the data for 2005.
 - Estimate the average tuition and fees at private colleges in 2015.
- 58. Social Science** According to the U.S. Department of Justice, the following table gives the number (in thousands) of violent crimes committed in the given years.

Year	Crimes
2004	1360
2005	1391
2006	1418
2007	1408
2008	1393
2009	1326
2010	1246

- Let $x = 4$ correspond to the year 2004. Find a quadratic function $f(x) = a(x - h)^2 + k$ that models these data using (6, 1418) as the vertex and the data for 2009.
- Estimate the number of violent crimes in 2012.

59. **Business** Use the data from Exercise 57 and use quadratic regression to find a function g that models these data.

- Give the function.
- Graph the function with the data points.
- Find the estimated tuition with this model for the year 2015.

60. **Business** Use the data from Exercise 58 and use quadratic regression to find a function g that models these data.

- Give the function.
- Graph the function with the data points.
- Find the estimated number of violent crimes with this model for the year 2012.

Graph each of the following polynomial functions.

61. $f(x) = x^4 - 5$ 62. $g(x) = x^3 - 4x$

63. $f(x) = x(x - 4)(x + 1)$

64. $f(x) = (x - 1)(x + 2)(x - 3)$

65. $f(x) = x^4 - 5x^2 - 6$

66. $f(x) = x^4 - 7x^2 - 8$

Use a graphing calculator to do Exercises 67–70.

67. **Business** The demand equation for automobile oil filters is

$$p = -.000012q^3 - .00498q^2 + .1264q + 1508,$$

where p is in dollars and q is in thousands of items. The supply equation is

$$p = -.000001q^3 + .00097q^2 + 2q.$$

Find the equilibrium quantity and the equilibrium price.

68. **Business** The average cost (in dollars) per item of manufacturing x thousand cans of spray paint is given by

$$A(x) = -.000006x^4 + .0017x^3 + .03x^2 - 24x + 1110.$$

How many cans should be manufactured if the average cost is to be as low as possible? What is the average cost in that case?

69. **Business** The revenue (in millions of dollars) for the Exxon Mobil Corporation can be approximated by the function $R(x) = 1558x^3 - 36,587x^2 + 283,469x - 329,027$ where $x = 3$ corresponds to the year 2003. The cost function is approximated by $C(x) = 1261x^3 - 29,686x^2 + 233,069x - 249,868$ again with $x = 3$ corresponding to the year 2003. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

- Find the revenue for the year 2010.
- Find the costs for the year 2010.
- Find the profit function $P(x)$.
- Find the profit for the years 2010 and 2012.

70. **Health** The following table shows the average remaining life expectancy (in years) for a person in the United States at selected ages. (Data from: National Center for Health Statistics.)

Current Age	Birth	20	40	60	80	90	100
Life Expectancy	77.8	58.8	39.9	22.6	9.2	5.0	2.6

- Let birth = 0, and plot the data points.
- Use quartic regression to find a fourth-degree polynomial $f(x)$ that models the data.
- What is the remaining life expectancy of a person of age 25? age 35? age 50?
- What is the life expectancy of a person who is exactly your age?

List the vertical and horizontal asymptotes of each function, and sketch its graph.

71. $f(x) = \frac{1}{x - 3}$ 72. $g(x) = \frac{2x^2 - 8}{x^2 - 16}$

73. $f(x) = \frac{-3}{2x - 4}$ 74. $f(x) = \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^3}$

75. $g(x) = \frac{5x - 2}{4x^2 - 4x - 3}$ 76. $f(x) = \frac{3x}{x + 4}$

77. **Business** The average cost per carton of producing x cartons of cocoa is given by

$$A(x) = \frac{650}{2x + 40}.$$

Find the average cost per carton to make the given number of cartons.

- 10 cartons
- 50 cartons
- 70 cartons
- 100 cartons
- Graph $C(x)$.

78. **Business** The cost and revenue functions (in dollars) for a frozen-yogurt shop are given by

$$C(x) = \frac{400x + 400}{x + 4} \quad \text{and} \quad R(x) = 100x,$$

where x is measured in hundreds of units.

- Graph $C(x)$ and $R(x)$ on the same set of axes.
 - What is the break-even point for this shop?
 - If the profit function is given by $P(x)$, does $P(1)$ represent a profit or a loss?
 - Does $P(4)$ represent a profit or a loss?
79. **Business** The supply and demand functions for the yogurt shop in Exercise 78 are

$$\text{supply: } p = \frac{q^2}{4} + 25 \quad \text{and} \quad \text{demand: } p = \frac{500}{q},$$

where p is the price in dollars for q hundred units of yogurt.

- Graph both functions on the same axes, and from the graph, estimate the equilibrium point.
 - Give the q -intervals where supply exceeds demand.
 - Give the q -intervals where demand exceeds supply.
80. **Business** A cost–benefit curve for pollution control is given by

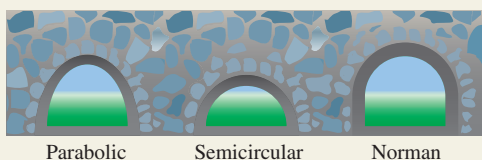
$$y = \frac{9.2x}{106 - x},$$

where y is the cost, in thousands of dollars, of removing x percent of a specific industrial pollutant. Find y for each of the given values of x .

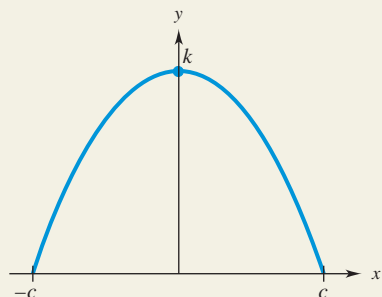
- $x = 50$
- $x = 98$
- What percent of the pollutant can be removed for \$22,000?

Case Study 3 Architectural Arches

From ancient Roman bridges to medieval cathedrals, modern highway tunnels, and fast-food restaurants, arches are everywhere. For centuries builders and architects have used them for both structural and aesthetic reasons. There are arches of almost every material, from stone to steel. Some of the most common arch shapes are the parabolic arch, the semicircular arch, and the Norman arch (a semicircular arch set atop a rectangle, as shown here).



Note that every arch is symmetric around a vertical line through its center. The part of the arch on the left side of the line is mirror image of the part on the right side, with the line being the mirror. To describe these arches mathematically, suppose that each one is located on a coordinate plane with the origin at the intersection of the vertical symmetry line and a horizontal line at the base of the arch. For a parabolic arch, the situation looks like this, for some numbers k and c :



Since $(0, k)$ is the vertex, the arch is the graph of a function of the form

$$f(x) = a(x - 0)^2 + k,$$

or

$$f(x) = ax^2 + k.$$

Note that the point $(c, 0)$ is on the arch, which means that $f(c) = 0$. Therefore, we can make the following derivation:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= ax^2 + k \\ f(c) &= ac^2 + k && \text{Let } x = c. \\ 0 &= ac^2 + k && f(c) = 0. \\ -k &= ac^2 && \text{Subtract } k \text{ from both sides.} \\ a &= \frac{-k}{c^2} && \text{Divide both sides by } c^2. \end{aligned}$$

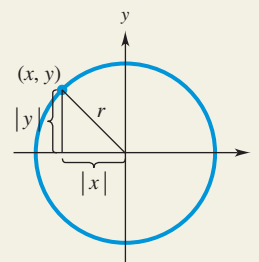
So the function whose graph is the shape of the parabolic arch is

$$f(x) = \frac{-k}{c^2}x^2 + k \quad (-c \leq x \leq c),$$

where k is the height of the arch at its highest point and $2c$ (the distance from $-c$ to c) is the width of the arch at its base. For example, a 12-foot-high arch that is 14 feet wide at its base has $k = 12$ and $c = 7$, so it is the graph of

$$f(x) = \frac{-12}{49}x^2 + 12.$$

In order to describe semicircular and Norman arches, we must first find the equation of a circle of radius r with center at the origin. Consider a point (x, y) on the graph and the right triangle it determines*:



The horizontal side of the triangle has length $|x|$ (the distance from x to 0 on the x -axis), and the vertical side has length $|y|$ (the distance from y to 0 on the y -axis). The hypotenuse has length r (the radius of the circle). By the Pythagorean theorem,

$$|x|^2 + |y|^2 = r^2,$$

which is equivalent to

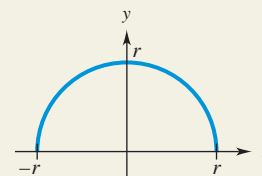
$$x^2 + y^2 = r^2,$$

because the absolute value of x is either x or $-x$ (see the definition on page 28), so $|x|^2 = (\pm x)^2 = x^2$, and similarly for y . Solving this equation for y shows that

$$\begin{aligned} y^2 &= r^2 - x^2 \\ y &= \sqrt{r^2 - x^2} \quad \text{or} \quad y = -\sqrt{r^2 - x^2}. \end{aligned}$$

In the first equation, y is always positive or 0 (because square roots are nonnegative), so its graph is the top half of the circle. Similarly, the second equation gives the bottom half of the circle.

Now consider a semicircle arch of radius r :



*The figure shows a point in the second quadrant, where x is negative and y is positive, but the same argument will work for points in other quadrants.

The arch is the top half of a circle with center at the origin. By the preceding paragraph, it is the graph of the function

$$g(x) = \sqrt{r^2 - x^2} \quad (-r \leq x \leq r).$$

For instance, a semicircular arch that is 8 feet high has $r = 8$ and is the graph of

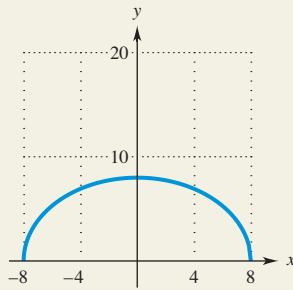
$$g(x) = \sqrt{8^2 - x^2} = \sqrt{64 - x^2} \quad (-8 \leq x \leq 8).$$

A Norman arch is not the graph of a function (since its sides are vertical lines), but we can describe the semicircular top of the arch.

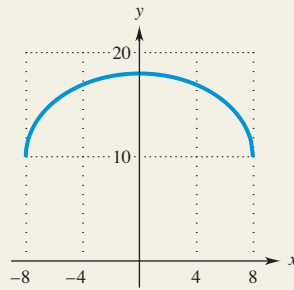
For example, consider a Norman arch whose top has radius 8 and whose sides are 10 feet high. If the top of the arch were at ground level, then its equation would be $g(x) = \sqrt{64 - x^2}$, as we just saw. But in the actual arch, this semicircular part is raised 10 feet, so it is the graph of

$$h(x) = g(x) + 10 = \sqrt{64 - x^2} + 10 \quad (-8 \leq x \leq 8),$$

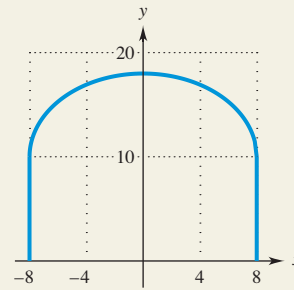
as shown below.



$$g(x) = \sqrt{64 - x^2}$$



$$h(x) = \sqrt{64 - x^2} + 10$$



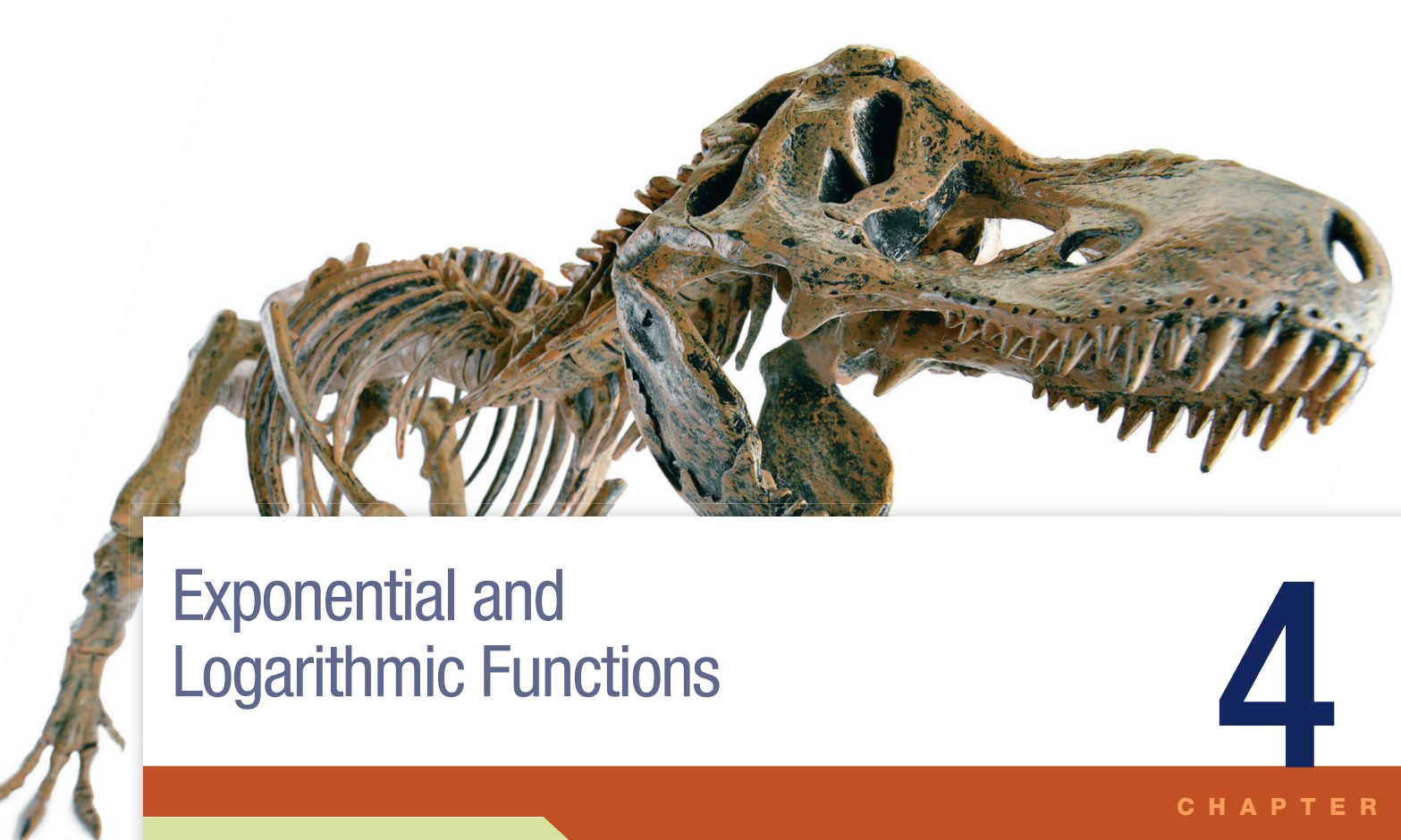
Norman Arch

Exercises

- Write a function $f(x)$ that describes a parabolic arch which is 20 feet tall and 14 feet wide at the base.
- Write a function $f(x)$ that describes a parabolic arch that is 25 feet tall and 30 feet wide at its base.
- Write a function $g(x)$ that describes a semicircular arch that is 25 feet tall. How wide is the arch at its base?
- Write a function $g(x)$ that describes a semicircular arch that is 40 feet tall. How wide is the arch at its base?
- Write a function $h(x)$ that describes the top part of a Norman arch that is 20 feet tall and 24 feet wide at the base. How high are the vertical sides of this arch?
- Write a function $h(x)$ that describes the top part of a Norman arch which is 32 feet tall and 44 feet wide at the base. How high are the vertical sides of this arch?
- Would a truck that is 12 feet tall and 9 feet wide fit through all of the arches in Exercises 1, 3, and 5?
- Would a truck that is 13 feet tall and 10 feet wide fit through all of the arches in Exercises 2, 4, and 6?

Extended Projects

- Find an example of a parabolic, circular, or Norman arch (or all three) on your campus. Measure the dimensions and then write the equation for the arch in a manner similar to Exercises 1–8.
- Find the dimensions of the fleet of Good Year Blimps that are currently in use. Determine the equation of a semicircular arch that would need to be built for the entrance to a facility that would house the blimps when not in use.



Exponential and Logarithmic Functions

4

CHAPTER

CHAPTER OUTLINE

- 4.1 Exponential Functions
- 4.2 Applications of Exponential Functions
- 4.3 Logarithmic Functions
- 4.4 Logarithmic and Exponential Equations

CASE STUDY 4

Gapminder.org

Population growth (of humans, fish, bacteria, etc.), compound interest, radioactive decay, and a host of other phenomena can be described by exponential functions. See Exercises 42–50 on page 211. Archeologists sometimes use carbon-14 dating to determine the approximate age of an artifact (such as a dinosaur skeleton or a mummy). This procedure involves using logarithms to solve an exponential equation. See Exercises 70–72 on page 237. The Richter scale for measuring the magnitude of an earthquake is a logarithmic function. See Exercises 73–74 on page 237.

Exponential and logarithmic functions play a key role in management, economics, the social and physical sciences, and engineering. We begin with exponential growth and exponential decay functions.

4.1 Exponential Functions

In polynomial functions such as $f(x) = x^2 + 5x - 4$, the variable is raised to various constant exponents. In **exponential functions**, such as

$$f(x) = 10^x, \quad g(x) = 750(1.05^x), \quad h(x) = 3^{6x}, \quad \text{and} \quad k(x) = 2^{-x^2},$$

the variable is in the exponent and the **base** is a positive constant. We begin with the simplest type of exponential function, whose rule is of the form $f(x) = a^x$, with $a > 0$.

Example 1 Graph $f(x) = 2^x$, and estimate the height of the graph when $x = 50$.

Solution Either use a graphing calculator or graph by hand: Make a table of values, plot the corresponding points, and join them by a smooth curve, as in Figure 4.1. The graph has y -intercept 1 and rises steeply to the right. Note that the graph gets very close to the x -axis on the left, but always lies *above* the axis (because *every* power of 2 is positive).

x	y
-3	1/8
-2	1/4
-1	1/2
0	1
1	2
2	4
3	8

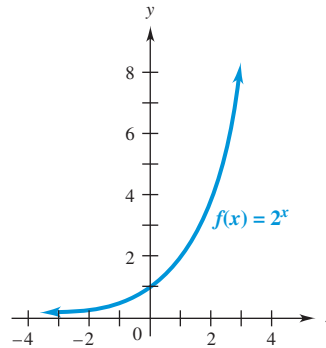


Figure 4.1

The graph illustrates **exponential growth**, which is far more explosive than polynomial growth. At $x = 50$, the graph would be 2^{50} units high. Since there are approximately 6 units to the inch in Figure 4.1, and since there are 12 inches to the foot and 5280 feet to the mile, the height of the graph at $x = 50$ would be approximately

$$\frac{2^{50}}{6 \times 12 \times 5280} \approx 2,961,647,482 \text{ miles! } \checkmark_1$$

✓ Checkpoint 1

(a) Fill in this table:

x	$g(x) = 3^x$
-3	
-2	
-1	
0	
1	
2	
3	

(b) Sketch the graph of $g(x) = 3^x$.

Answers to Checkpoint exercises are found at the end of the section.

When $a > 1$, the graph of the exponential function $h(x) = a^x$ has the same basic shape as the graph of $f(x) = 2^x$, as illustrated in Figure 4.2 and summarized in the next box.

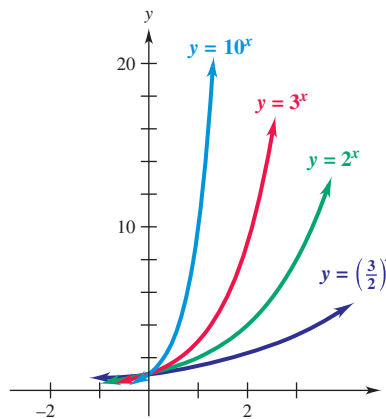
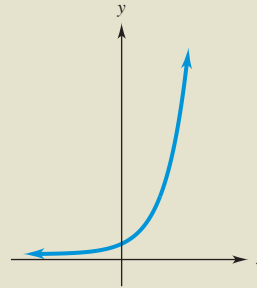


Figure 4.2

When $a > 1$, the function $f(x) = a^x$ has the set of all real numbers as its domain. Its graph has the shape shown on the following page and all five of the properties listed below.



1. The graph is above the x -axis.
2. The y -intercept is 1.
3. The graph climbs steeply to the right.
4. The negative x -axis is a horizontal asymptote.
5. The larger the base a , the more steeply the graph rises to the right.

Example 2 Consider the function $g(x) = 2^{-x}$.

(a) Rewrite the rule of g so that no minus signs appear in it.

Solution By the definition of negative exponents,

$$g(x) = 2^{-x} = \frac{1}{2^x} = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^x.$$

(b) Graph $g(x)$.

Solution Either use a graphing calculator or graph by hand in the usual way, as shown in Figure 4.3.

x	$y = 2^{-x}$
-3	8
-2	4
-1	2
0	1
1	1/2
2	1/4
3	1/8

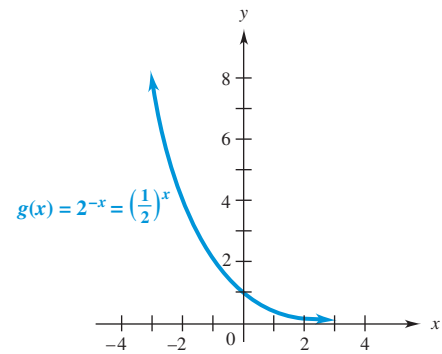


Figure 4.3

✓ Checkpoint 2

Graph $h(x) = (1/3)^x$.

The graph falls sharply to the right, but never touches the x -axis, because every power of $\frac{1}{2}$ is positive. This is an example of **exponential decay**. ✓₂

When $0 < a < 1$, the graph of $k(x) = a^x$ has the same basic shape as the graph of $g(x) = (1/2)^x$, as illustrated in Figure 4.4 and summarized in the next box, on the following page.

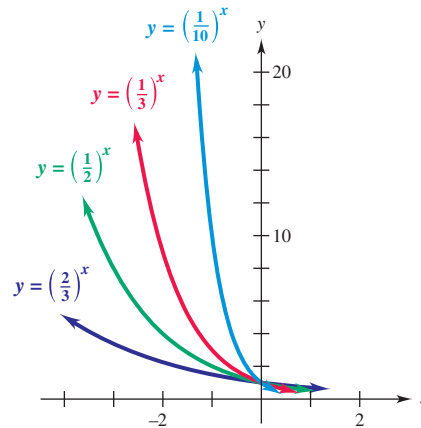
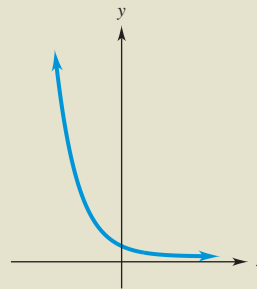


Figure 4.4

When $0 < a < 1$, the function $f(x) = a^x$ has the set of all real numbers as its domain. Its graph has the shape shown here and all five of the properties listed.



1. The graph is above the x -axis.
2. The y -intercept is 1.
3. The graph falls sharply to the right.
4. The positive x -axis is a horizontal asymptote.
5. The smaller the base a , the more steeply the graph falls to the right.

✓ Checkpoint 3

Use a graphing calculator to graph $f(x) = 4^x$ and $g(x) = (\frac{1}{4})^x$ on the same screen.

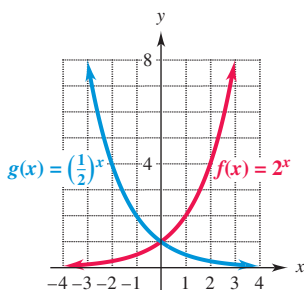


Figure 4.5

Example 3

In each case, graph $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ on the same set of axes and explain how the graphs are related.

(a) $f(x) = 2^x$ and $g(x) = (1/2)^x$

Solution The graphs of f and g are shown in Figures 4.1 and 4.3, above. Placing them on the same set of axes, we obtain Figure 4.5. It shows that the graph of $g(x) = (1/2)^x$ is the mirror image of the graph of $f(x) = 2^x$, with the y -axis as the mirror.

(b) $f(x) = 3^{1-x}$ and $g(x) = 3^{-x}$

Solution Choose values of x that make the exponent positive, zero, and negative, and plot the corresponding points. The graphs are shown in Figure 4.6, on the following page. The graph of $f(x) = 3^{1-x}$ has the same shape as the graph of $g(x) = 3^{-x}$, but is shifted 1 unit to the right, making the y -intercept $(0, 3)$ rather than $(0, 1)$.

(c) $f(x) = 2^{.6x}$ and $g(x) = 2^x$

Solution Comparing the graphs of $f(x) = 2^{.6x}$ and $g(x) = 2^x$ in Figure 4.7, we see that the graphs are both increasing, but the graph of $f(x)$ rises at a slower rate. This happens because of the .6 in the exponent. If the coefficient of x were greater than 1, the graph would rise at a faster rate than the graph of $g(x) = 2^x$. ✓4

✓ **Checkpoint 4**

Graph $f(x) = 2^{x+1}$.

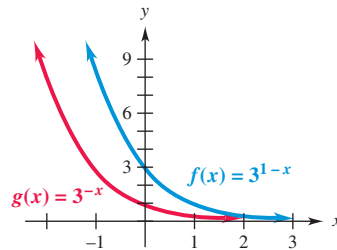


Figure 4.6

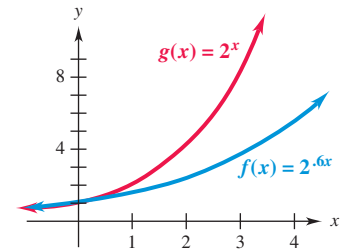


Figure 4.7

When the exponent involves a nonlinear expression in x , the graph of an exponential function may have a much different shape than the preceding ones have.

Example 4 Graph $f(x) = 2^{-x^2}$.

Solution Either use a graphing calculator or plot points and connect them with a smooth curve, as in Figure 4.8. The graph is symmetric about the y -axis; that is, if the figure were folded on the y -axis, the two halves would match. This graph has the x -axis as a horizontal asymptote. The domain is still all real numbers, but here the range is $0 < y \leq 1$. Graphs such as this are important in probability, where the normal curve has an equation similar to $f(x)$ in this example. ✓5

✓ **Checkpoint 5**

Graph $f(x) = (\frac{1}{2})^{-x^2}$.

x	y
-2	1/16
-1.5	.21
-1	1/2
-.5	.84
0	1
.5	.84
1	1/2
1.5	.21
2	1/16

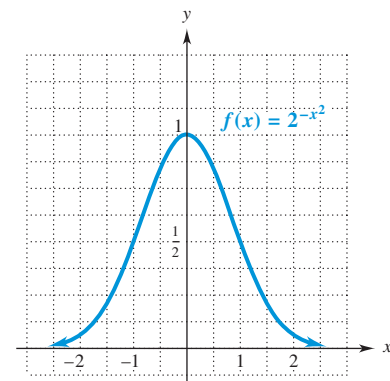


Figure 4.8



The Number e


In Case 5, we shall see that a certain irrational number, denoted e , plays an important role in the compounding of interest. This number e also arises naturally in a variety of other mathematical and scientific contexts. To 12 decimal places,

$$e \approx 2.718281828459.$$

Perhaps the single most useful exponential function is the function defined by $f(x) = e^x$.

$e^{(5)}$	148.4131591
$e^{(-1.4)}$	.2465969639
$e^{(1)}$	2.7182

Figure 4.9

TECHNOLOGY TIP To evaluate powers of e with a calculator, use the e^x key, as in Figure 4.9. The figure also shows how to display the decimal expansion of e by calculating e^1 . 

In Figure 4.10, the functions defined by

$$g(x) = 2^x, \quad f(x) = e^x, \quad \text{and} \quad h(x) = 3^x$$

are graphed for comparison.

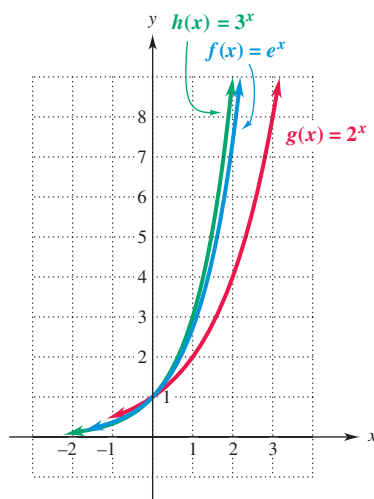


Figure 4.10

✓ Checkpoint 6

Evaluate the following powers of e .

- $e^{.06}$
- $e^{-.06}$
- $e^{2.30}$
- $e^{-2.30}$

Example 5

Business The amount of wine (in millions of gallons) consumed in the United States can be approximated by the function

$$f(x) = 139.6e^{.031x},$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 1950. (Data from: www.wineinstitute.org.)

- (a) How much wine was consumed in the year 1970?

Solution Since 1970 corresponds to $x = 20$, we evaluate $f(20)$:

$$f(20) = 139.6e^{.031(20)} \approx 260 \text{ million gallons.}$$


So the consumption was approximately 260 million gallons.

- (b) How much wine was consumed in the year 2010?

Solution Since 2010 corresponds to $x = 60$, we evaluate $f(60)$:

$$f(60) = 139.6e^{.031(60)} \approx 897 \text{ million gallons.}$$

So the consumption was approximately 897 million gallons.

-  (c) Use a graphing calculator to determine when consumption will reach 1000 million gallons.

Solution Since f measures consumption in millions of gallons, we must solve the equation $f(x) = 1000$, that is

$$139.6e^{.031x} = 1000.$$

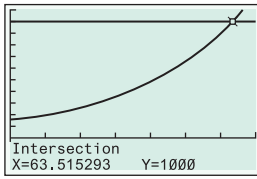


Figure 4.11

Checkpoint 7

Per-person wine consumption (in gallons) can be approximated by $g(x) = .875e^{.019x}$, where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 1950.

(a) Estimate the per-person wine consumption in 1990.

(b) Determine when the per-person consumption reached 2.0 gallons.

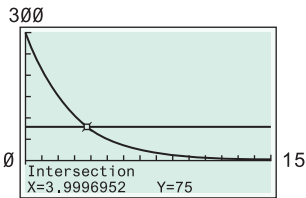


Figure 4.12

One way to do this is to find the intersection point of the graphs of $y = 139.6e^{.031x}$ and $y = 1000$. (The calculator's intersection finder is in the same menu as its root [or zero] finder.) Figure 4.11 shows that this point is approximately (63.5, 1000). Hence, consumption reached 1000 million gallons when $x \approx 63.5$, that is, in 2013. ✓

Example 6 Health When a patient is given a 300-mg dose of the drug cimetidine intravenously, the amount C of the drug in the bloodstream t hours later is given by $C(t) = 300e^{-.3466t}$.

(a) How much of the drug is in the bloodstream after 3 hours and after 10 hours?

Solution Evaluate the function at $t = 3$ and $t = 10$:

$$C(3) = 300e^{-.3466 \cdot 3} \approx 106.1 \text{ mg;}$$

$$C(10) = 300e^{-.3466 \cdot 10} \approx 9.4 \text{ mg.}$$

(b) Doctors want to give a patient a second 300-mg dose of cimetidine when its level in her bloodstream decreases to 75 mg. Use graphing technology to determine when this should be done.

Solution The second dose should be given when $C(t) = 75$, so we must solve the equation

$$300e^{-.3466t} = 75.$$

Using the method of Example 5(c), we graph $y = 300e^{-.3466t}$ and $y = 75$ and find their intersection point. Figure 4.12 shows that this point is approximately (4, 75). So the second dose should be given 4 hours after the first dose.

4.1 Exercises

Classify each function as linear, quadratic, or exponential.

1. $f(x) = 6^x$
2. $g(x) = -5x$
3. $h(x) = 4x^2 - x + 5$
4. $k(x) = 4^{x+3}$
5. $f(x) = 675(1.055^x)$
6. $g(x) = 12e^{x^2+1}$

Without graphing,

- (a) describe the shape of the graph of each function;
- (b) find the second coordinates of the points with first coordinates 0 and 1. (See Examples 1–3.)

7. $f(x) = .6^x$
8. $g(x) = 4^{-x}$
9. $h(x) = 2^{-5x}$
10. $k(x) = 5(3^x)$
11. $f(x) = e^{-x}$
12. $g(x) = 3(16^{x/4})$

Graph each function. (See Examples 1–3.)

13. $f(x) = 3^x$
14. $g(x) = 3^{-x}$
15. $f(x) = 2^{x/2}$
16. $g(x) = e^{x/4}$
17. $f(x) = (1/5)^x$
18. $g(x) = 2^{3x}$

19. Graph these functions on the same axes.

- (a) $f(x) = 2^x$ (b) $g(x) = 2^{x+3}$ (c) $h(x) = 2^{x-4}$

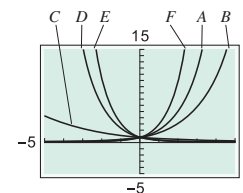
(d) If c is a positive constant, explain how the graphs of $y = 2^{x+c}$ and $y = 2^{x-c}$ are related to the graph of $f(x) = 2^x$.

20. Graph these functions on the same axes.

- (a) $f(x) = 3^x$ (b) $g(x) = 3^x + 2$ (c) $h(x) = 3^x - 4$

(d) If c is a positive constant, explain how the graphs of $y = 3^x + c$ and $y = 3^x - c$ are related to the graph of $f(x) = 3^x$.

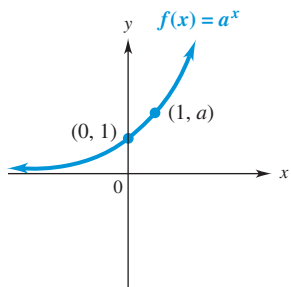
The accompanying figure shows the graphs of $y = a^x$ for $a = 1.8, 2.3, 3.2, 4, .75, \text{ and } .31$. They are identified by letter, but not necessarily in the same order as the values just given. Use your knowledge of how the exponential function behaves for various powers of a to match each lettered graph with the correct value of a .



21. A 22. B 23. C
24. D 25. E 26. F

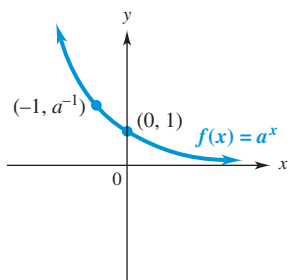
In Exercises 27 and 28, the graph of an exponential function with base a is given. Follow the directions in parts (a)–(f) in each exercise.

27.



- Is $a > 1$ or is $0 < a < 1$?
- Give the domain and range of f .
- Sketch the graph of $g(x) = -a^x$.
- Give the domain and range of g .
- Sketch the graph of $h(x) = a^{-x}$.
- Give the domain and range of h .

28.



- Is $a > 1$ or is $0 < a < 1$?
 - Give the domain and range of f .
 - Sketch the graph of $g(x) = a^x + 2$.
 - Give the domain and range of g .
 - Sketch the graph of $h(x) = a^{x+2}$.
 - Give the domain and range of h .
29. If $f(x) = a^x$ and $f(3) = 27$, find the following values of $f(x)$.
- $f(1)$
 - $f(-1)$
 - $f(2)$
 - $f(0)$
30. Give a rule of the form $f(x) = a^x$ to define the exponential function whose graph contains the given point.
- $(3, 8)$
 - $(-3, 64)$

Graph each function. (See Example 4.)

- $f(x) = 2^{-x^2+2}$
- $g(x) = 2^{x^2-2}$
- $f(x) = x \cdot 2^x$
- $f(x) = x^2 \cdot 2^x$

Work the following exercises.

35. **Finance** If \$1 is deposited into an account paying 6% per year compounded annually, then after t years the account will contain

$$y = (1 + .06)^t = (1.06)^t$$

dollars.

- Use a calculator to complete the following table:

t	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
y	1					1.34					1.79

- Graph $y = (1.06)^t$.

36. **Finance** If money loses value at the rate of 3% per year, the value of \$1 in t years is given by

$$y = (1 - .03)^t = (.97)^t.$$

- Use a calculator to complete the following table:

t	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
y	1					.86					.74

- Graph $y = (.97)^t$.

Work these problems. (See Example 5.)

37. **Finance** If money loses value, then as time passes, it takes more dollars to buy the same item. Use the results of Exercise 36(a) to answer the following questions.

- Suppose a house costs \$105,000 today. Estimate the cost of the same house in 10 years. (*Hint*: Solve the equation $.74t = \$105,000$.)
- Estimate the cost of a \$50 textbook in 8 years.

38. **Natural Science** Biologists have found that the oxygen consumption of yearling salmon is given by $g(x) = 100e^{.7x}$, where x is the speed in feet per second. Find each of the following.

- the oxygen consumption when the fish are still;
- the oxygen consumption when the fish are swimming at a speed of 2 feet per second.

39. **Business** The number of cell phone subscribers (in millions) can be approximated by

$$f(x) = 116.75e^{.101x},$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. Estimate the number of cell phone subscribers in the following years. (Data from: CTIA-The Wireless Association.)

- 2004
- 2010
- 2011



40. **Business** The monthly payment on a car loan at 12% interest per year on the unpaid balance is given by

$$f(n) = \frac{P}{\frac{1 - 1.01^{-n}}{.01}}$$

where P is the amount borrowed and n is the number of months over which the loan is paid back. Find the monthly payment for each of the following loans.

- (a) \$8000 for 48 months (b) \$8000 for 24 months
(c) \$6500 for 36 months (d) \$6500 for 60 months

41. **Natural Science** The amount of plutonium remaining from 1 kilogram after x years is given by the function $W(x) = 2^{-x/24,360}$. How much will be left after
- (a) 1000 years? (b) 10,000 years? (c) 15,000 years?
(d) Estimate how long it will take for the 1 kilogram to decay to half its original weight. Your answer may help to explain why nuclear waste disposal is a serious problem.

Business The scrap value of a machine is the value of the machine at the end of its useful life. By one method of calculating scrap value, where it is assumed that a constant percentage of value is lost annually, the scrap value is given by

$$S = C(1 - r)^n,$$

where C is the original cost, n is the useful life of the machine in years, and r is the constant annual percentage of value lost. Find the scrap value for each of the following machines.

42. Original cost, \$68,000; life, 10 years; annual rate of value loss, 8%
43. Original cost, \$244,000; life, 12 years; annual rate of value loss, 15%
44. Use the graphs of $f(x) = 2^x$ and $g(x) = 2^{-x}$ (not a calculator) to explain why $2^x + 2^{-x}$ is approximately equal to 2^x when x is very large.

Work the following problems. (See Examples 5 and 6.)

45. **Social Science** There were fewer than a billion people on Earth when Thomas Jefferson died in 1826, and there are now more than 6 billion. If the world population continues to grow as expected, the population (in billions) in year t will be given by the function $P(t) = 4.834(1.01^{t-1980})$. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.) Estimate the world population in the following years.
- (a) 2005 (b) 2010 (c) 2030
(d) What will the world population be when you reach 65 years old?

46. **Business** The number of unique monthly visitors (in thousands) for Pinterest.com can be approximated by the function

$$g(x) = 325(1.29^x),$$

where $x = 1$ corresponds to the month of May, 2011. Estimate the number of unique monthly visitors for the following months. (Data from: cnet.com and techcrunch.com.)

- (a) September 2011 (b) May 2012
✔ (c) If the model remains accurate, find the month in which the number of unique visitors surpasses 40,000,000.
47. **Economics** Projections of the gross domestic product (GDP—in trillions of U.S. dollars), adjusted for purchasing power parity, are approximated as follows.

$$\text{China: } f(x) = 10.21(1.103)^x$$

$$\text{United States: } g(x) = 14.28(1.046)^x,$$

where $x = 1$ corresponds to the year 2011. (Data from: International Monetary Fund.) Find the projected GDP for the given years.

- (a) 2012 (b) 2020 (c) 2050
✔ (d) Use technology to determine when the Chinese GDP surpasses the U.S. GDP according to these projections. (Hint: Either graph both functions and find their intersection point or use the table feature of a graphing calculator.)

48. **Business** The amount of electricity (in trillion kilowatt hours) generated by natural gas in the United States can be approximated by the function

$$f(x) = .10(1.05)^x,$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 1960. (Data from: Energy Information Administration.) How many kilowatt hours were generated in the given years?

- (a) 1990
(b) 2002
✔ (c) In what year did the kilowatt hours hit 1 trillion?
49. **Business** The number of total subscribers (in millions) to Netflix, Inc. can be approximated by the function

$$g(x) = 9.78(1.07)^x,$$

where $x = 1$ corresponds to the first quarter of the year 2009, $x = 2$ corresponds to the second quarter of the year 2009, etc. Find the number of subscribers for the following quarters. (Data from: The Wall Street Journal and The Associated Press.)

- (a) First quarter of 2010
(b) Fourth quarter of 2012
✔ (c) Find the quarter and year when total subscribers surpassed 25 million.

50. **Business** The monthly rate for basic cable (in dollars) can be approximated by the function

$$h(x) = 8.71e^{.06x}, \quad (5 \leq x \leq 30)$$

where $x = 5$ corresponds to the year 1985. (Data from: ProQuest Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2013.)

- (a) Find the rate in the year 2000 and the year 2009.
✔ (b) When did spending reach \$40 a month.
51. **Business** The amount of music (in billions of hours) listened to on the on-line streaming site Pandora can be approximated by the function

$$f(x) = .54e^{.191x},$$

where $x = 1$ corresponds to the first quarter of the year 2011, $x = 2$ corresponds to the second quarter of the year 2011, etc. Find the hours listened for the following quarters. (Data from: The Wall Street Journal.)

- (a) Fourth quarter of 2011
(b) Third quarter of 2012
✔ (c) When did the hours exceed 2.5 billion hours?
52. **Business** The stock price (in dollars) for Apple, Inc. can be approximated by the function

$$g(x) = 2.23e^{.404x} \quad (4 \leq x \leq 13),$$

where $x = 4$ corresponds to the year 2004. Use this model to approximate the price in the following years. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

- (a) 2007 (b) 2013

➤ (c) In what year, according to the model, did the price reach \$300?

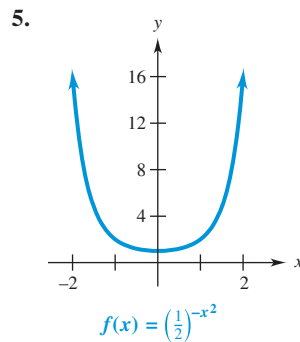
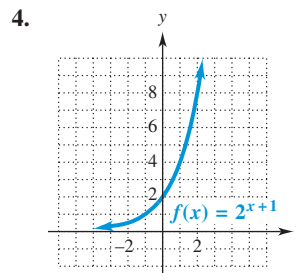
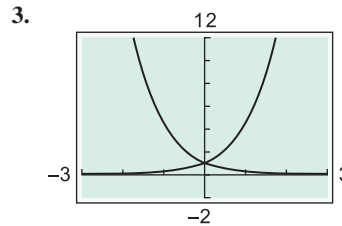
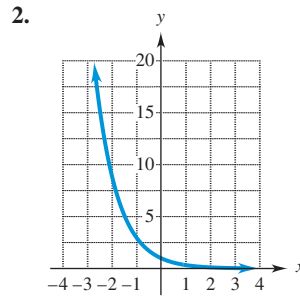
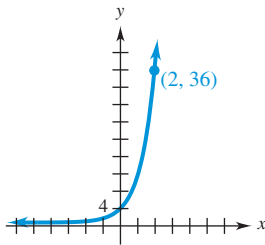
53. **Health** When a patient is given a 20-mg dose of aminophylline intravenously, the amount C of the drug in the bloodstream t hours later is given by $C(t) = 20e^{-.1155t}$. How much aminophylline remains in the bloodstream after the given numbers of hours?

- (a) 4 hours
(b) 8 hours

➤ (c) Approximately when does the amount of aminophylline decrease to 3.5 mg?

54. The accompanying figure shows the graph of an exponential growth function $f(x) = Pa^x$.

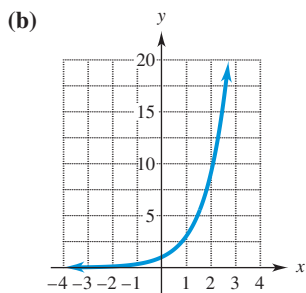
- (a) Find P . [Hint: What is $f(0)$?]
(b) Find a . [Hint: What is $f(2)$?]
(c) Find $f(5)$.



6. (a) 1.06184 (b) .94176
(c) 9.97418 (d) .10026
7. (a) About 1.87 gallons per person
(b) 1993

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) The entries in the second column are $1/27$, $1/9$, $1/3$, 1 , 3 , 9 , 27 , respectively.



4.2 Applications of Exponential Functions

In many situations in biology, economics, and the social sciences, a quantity changes at a rate proportional to the quantity present. For example, a country's population might be increasing at a rate of 1.3% a year. In such cases, the amount present at time t is given by an **exponential growth function**.

It is understood that growth can involve either growing larger or growing smaller.

Exponential Growth Function

Under normal conditions, growth can be described by a function of the form

$$f(t) = y_0e^{kt} \quad \text{or} \quad f(t) = y_0b^t,$$

where $f(t)$ is the amount present at time t , y_0 is the amount present at time $t = 0$, and k and b are constants that depend on the rate of growth.

When $f(t) = y_0e^{kt}$, and $k > 0$, we describe $f(t)$ as modeling exponential growth, and when $k < 0$, we describe $f(t)$ as modeling exponential decay. When $f(t) = y_0b^t$, and $b > 1$, we describe $f(t)$ as modeling exponential growth, and when $0 < b < 1$, we describe $f(t)$ as modeling exponential decay.

Example 1 Finance Since the early 1970s, the amount of the total credit market (debt owed by the government, companies, or individuals) as a percentage of gross domestic product (GDP) can be approximated by the exponential function

$$f(t) = y_0e^{0.02t},$$

where t is time in years, $t = 0$ corresponds to the year 1970, and $f(t)$ is a percent. (Data from: Federal Reserve.)

- (a) If the amount of total credit market was 155% of the GDP in 1970, find the percent in the year 2005.

Solution Since y_0 represents the percent when $t = 0$ (that is, in 1970) we have $y_0 = 155$. So the growth function is $f(t) = 155e^{0.02t}$. To find the percent of the total credit market in the year 2005, evaluate $f(t)$ at $t = 35$ (which corresponds to the year 2005):

$$\begin{aligned} f(t) &= 155e^{0.02t} \\ f(35) &= 155e^{0.02(35)} \approx 312. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the percent of the total credit market in the year 2005 was approximately 312% of GDP.

- (b) If the model remains accurate, what percent of GDP will the total credit market be in the year 2015?

Solution Since 2015 corresponds to $t = 45$, evaluate the function at $t = 45$:

$$f(45) = 155e^{0.02(45)} \approx 381\%. \quad \checkmark_1$$

✓ Checkpoint 1

Suppose the number of bacteria in a culture at time t is

$$y = 500e^{4t},$$

where t is measured in hours.

- (a) How many bacteria are present initially?
 (b) How many bacteria are present after 10 hours?

Example 2 Business Cigarette consumption in the United States has been decreasing for some time. Based on data from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the number (in billions) of cigarettes consumed can be approximated by the function

$$g(x) = 436e^{-0.036x},$$

with $x = 0$ corresponding to the year 2000.

- (a) Find the number of cigarettes consumed in the years 2005 and 2010.

Solution The years 2005 and 2010 correspond to $x = 5$ and $x = 10$, respectively. We can evaluate $g(x)$ at these values for x :

$$\begin{aligned} g(5) &= 436e^{-0.036(5)} \approx 364 \text{ billion in the year 2005;} \\ g(10) &= 436e^{-0.036(10)} \approx 304 \text{ billion in the year 2010.} \end{aligned}$$

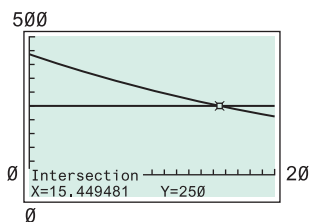


Figure 4.13

(b) If this model remains accurate, when will cigarette consumption fall to 250 billion?

Solution Graph $y = 436e^{-.036x}$ and $y = 250$ on the same screen and find the x -coordinate of their intersection point. Figure 4.13 shows that consumption is expected to be 250 billion in the year 2015 ($x = 15$).

When a quantity is known to grow exponentially, it is sometimes possible to find a function that models its growth from a small amount of data.

Example 3 Finance When money is placed in a bank account that pays compound interest, the amount in the account grows exponentially, as we shall see in Chapter 5. Suppose such an account grows from \$1000 to \$1316 in 7 years.

(a) Find a growth function of the form $f(t) = y_0b^t$ that gives the amount in the account at time t years.

Solution The values of the account at time $t = 0$ and $t = 7$ are given; that is, $f(0) = 1000$ and $f(7) = 1316$. Solve the first of these equations for y_0 :

$$\begin{aligned} f(0) &= 1000 \\ y_0b^0 &= 1000 && \text{Rule of } f \\ y_0 &= 1000. && b^0 = 1 \end{aligned}$$

So the rule of f has the form $f(t) = 1000b^t$. Now solve the equation $f(7) = 1316$ for b :

$$\begin{aligned} f(7) &= 1316 \\ 1000b^7 &= 1316 && \text{Rule of } f \\ b^7 &= 1.316 && \text{Divide both sides by 1000.} \\ b &= (1.316)^{1/7} \approx 1.04. && \text{Take the seventh root of each side.} \end{aligned}$$

So the rule of the function is $f(t) = 1000(1.04)^t$.

(b) How much is in the account after 12 years?

Solution $f(12) = 1000(1.04)^{12} = \1601.03 .

✓ Checkpoint 2

Suppose an investment grows exponentially from \$500 to \$587.12 in three years.

- (a)** Find a function of the form $f(t) = y_0b^t$ that gives the value of the investment after t years.
- (b)** How much is the investment worth after 10 years?

Example 4 Health Infant mortality rates in the United States are shown in the following table. (Data from: U.S. National Center for Health Statistics.)

Year	Rate	Year	Rate
1920	76.7	1980	12.6
1930	60.4	1990	9.2
1940	47.0	1995	7.6
1950	29.2	2000	6.9
1960	26.0	2005	6.9
1970	20.0	2008	6.6

(a) Let $t = 0$ correspond to 1920. Use the data for 1920 and 2008 to find a function of the form $f(t) = y_0b^t$ that models these data.

Solution Since the rate is 76.7 when $t = 0$, we have $y_0 = 76.7$. Hence, $f(t) = 76.7b^t$. Because 2008 corresponds to $t = 88$, we have $f(88) = 6.6$; that is,

$$76.7b^{88} = 6.6 \quad \text{Rule of } f$$

$$b^{88} = \frac{6.6}{76.7} \quad \text{Divide both sides by 76.7.}$$

$$b = \left(\frac{6.6}{76.7}\right)^{\frac{1}{88}} \approx .97251 \quad \text{Take 88}^{th} \text{ roots on both sides.}$$

Therefore, the function is $f(t) = 76.7(.97251^t)$.

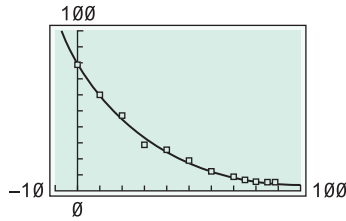


Figure 4.14

(b) Use exponential regression on a graphing calculator to find another model for the data.

Solution The procedure for entering the data and finding the function is the same as that for linear regression (just choose “exponential” instead of “linear”), as explained in Section 2.3. Depending on the calculator, one of the following functions will be produced:

$$g(t) = 79.2092 \cdot .9708^t \quad \text{or} \quad h(t) = 79.2092e^{-.0296t}.$$

Both functions give the same values (except for slight differences due to rounding of the coefficients). They fit the data reasonably well, as shown in Figure 4.14.

(c) Use the preceding models, and assume they continue to remain accurate, to estimate the infant mortality rate in the years 2012 and 2015.

Solution Evaluating each of the models in parts (a) and (b) at $t = 92$ and $t = 95$ shows that the models give slightly different results.

t	$f(t)$	$g(t)$
92	5.9	5.2
95	5.4	4.7

Other Exponential Models

When a quantity changes exponentially, but does not either grow very large or decrease practically to 0, as in Examples 1–3, different functions are needed.

Example 5 Business Sales of a new product often grow rapidly at first and then begin to level off with time. Suppose the annual sales of an inexpensive can opener are given by

$$S(x) = 10,000(1 - e^{-.5x}),$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the time the can opener went on the market.

(a) What were the sales in each of the first three years?

Solution At the end of one year ($x = 1$), sales were

$$S(1) = 10,000(1 - e^{-.5(1)}) \approx 3935.$$

Sales in the next two years were

$$S(2) = 10,000(1 - e^{-.5(2)}) \approx 6321 \quad \text{and} \quad S(3) = 10,000(1 - e^{-.5(3)}) \approx 7769.$$

(b) What were the sales at the end of the 10th year?

Solution $S(10) = 10,000(1 - e^{-.5(10)}) \approx 9933.$

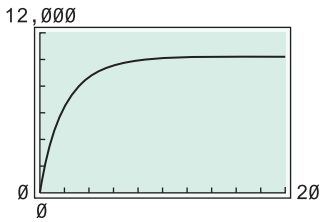


Figure 4.15

✓ Checkpoint 3

Suppose the value of the assets (in thousands of dollars) of a certain company after t years is given by

$$V(t) = 100 - 75e^{-.2t}.$$

- What is the initial value of the assets?
- What is the limiting value of the assets?
- Find the value after 10 years.
- Graph $V(t)$.

✓ Checkpoint 4

In Example 6,

- find the number of facts remembered after 10 days;
- use the graph to estimate when just one fact will be remembered.

TECHNOLOGY TIP

Many graphing calculators can find a logistic model for appropriate data.

(c) Graph the function S . What does it suggest?

Solution The graph can be obtained by plotting points and connecting them with a smooth curve or by using a graphing calculator, as in Figure 4.15. The graph indicates that sales will level off after the 12th year, to around 10,000 can openers per year. ✓₃

A variety of activities can be modeled by **logistic functions**, whose rules are of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{c}{1 + ae^{kx}}.$$

The logistic function in the next example is sometimes called a **forgetting curve**.

Example 6

Social Science Psychologists have measured people's ability to remember facts that they have memorized. In one such experiment, it was found that the number of facts, $N(t)$, remembered after t days was given by

$$N(t) = \frac{10.003}{1 + .0003e^{.8t}}.$$

(a) How many facts were remembered at the beginning of the experiment?

Solution When $t = 0$,

$$N(0) = \frac{10.003}{1 + .0003e^{.8(0)}} = \frac{10.003}{1.0003} = 10.$$

So 10 facts were remembered at the beginning.

(b) How many facts were remembered after one week? after two weeks?

Solution One and two weeks respectively correspond to $t = 7$ and $t = 14$:

$$N(7) = \frac{10.003}{1 + .0003e^{.8(7)}} = \frac{10.003}{1.0811} \approx 9.25;$$

$$N(14) = \frac{10.003}{1 + .0003e^{.8(14)}} = \frac{10.003}{22.9391} \approx .44.$$

So 9 facts were remembered after one week, but effectively none were remembered after two weeks (because .44 is less than “half a fact”). The graph of the function in Figure 4.16 gives a picture of this forgetting process. ✓₄

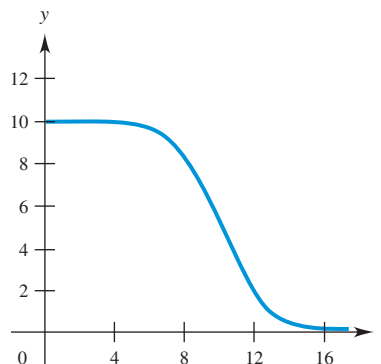


Figure 4.16

4.2 Exercises

1. **Finance** Suppose you owe \$800 on your credit card and you decide to make no new purchases and to make the minimum monthly payment on the account. Assuming that the interest rate on your card is 1% per month on the unpaid balance and that the minimum payment is 2% of the total (balance plus interest), your balance after t months is given by

$$B(t) = 800(.9898)^t.$$

Find your balance at each of the given times.

- six months
 - one year (remember that t is in months)
 - five years
 - eight years
 - On the basis of your answers to parts (a)–(d), what advice would you give to your friends about minimum payments?
2. **Finance** Suppose you owe \$1500 on your credit card and you decide to make no new purchases and to make the minimum monthly payment on the account. Assuming the interest rate on the card is 1.1% per month on the unpaid balance, and the minimum payment is 5% of the total (balance plus interest), your balance after t months is given by

$$B(t) = 1500(.9604)^t.$$

Find the balance at each of the given times.

- five months
 - one year (remember that t is in months)
 - Is the balance paid off in two years?
3. **Business** The amount (in megawatts) of energy generated in the United States from wind power can be modeled by the function

$$W(t) = w_0(1.30)^t,$$

where $t = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. (Data from: www.windpoweringamerica.gov.)

- The amount generated in the year 2000 was 2540 megawatts. Find w_0 .
 - Estimate the amount of energy generated by wind power in the years 2005 and 2012.
4. **Finance** The percent that public pension funds with assets over \$1 billion hold in private-equity investments can be modeled by the function

$$f(t) = 2.214(1.142)^t,$$

where $t = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. (Data from: *The Wall Street Journal*.)

Find the percent held in private-equity investments in the years:

- 2008
- 2011
- If the model continues to be accurate, project the percent for the year 2015.

In each of the following problems, find an exponential function of the form $f(t) = y_0b^t$ to model the data. (See Examples 3 and 4.)

5. **Business** The average asking price for rent in San Francisco was \$1000 a month in the year 1990 and \$2663 in the year 2012. (Data from: *The Wall Street Journal*.)
- Find a model for these data in which $t = 0$ corresponds to the year 1990.
 - If this model remains accurate, what is the predicted average rent in the year 2015?
 - By experimenting with different values (or using a graphing calculator to solve an appropriate equation), estimate the year in which the average rent hit \$2000 a month.
6. **Social Science** The U.S. Census Bureau predicts that the African-American population will increase from 35.3 million in 2000 to 61.8 million in 2060.
- Find a model for these data, in which $t = 0$ corresponds to 2000.
 - What is the projected African-American population in 2020? in 2030?
 - By experimenting with different values of t (or by using a graphing calculator to solve an appropriate equation), estimate the year in which the African-American population will reach 55 million.
7. **Business** Sales of video and audio equipment, computers, and related services in the United States were about \$81.1 billion in the year 1990 and \$296 billion in the year 2010.
- Let $t = 0$ correspond to the year 1990 and find a model for these data.
 - According to the model, what were sales in the year 2008?
 - If the model remains accurate, estimate sales for the year 2015.
8. **Health** Medicare expenditures were \$110 billion in the year 1990 and increased to \$554 billion in the year 2011.
- Find a model for these data in which $t = 0$ corresponds to the year 1990 and expenditures are in billions of dollars.
 - Estimate Medicare expenditures in 2010.
 - If the model remains accurate, estimate Medicare expenditures for the year 2016.

In the following exercises, find the exponential model as follows: If you do not have suitable technology, use the first and last data points to find a function. (See Examples 3 and 4.) If you have a graphing calculator or other suitable technology, use exponential regression to find a function. (See Example 4.)

9. **Finance** The table shows the purchasing power of a dollar in recent years, with the year 2000 being the base year. For example, the entry .88 for 2005 means that a dollar in 2005 bought what \$.88 did in the year 2000. (Data from: Bureau of Labor Statistics.)

Year	Purchasing Power of \$1
2000	\$1.00
2001	.97
2002	.96
2003	.94
2004	.91
2005	.88
2006	.85
2007	.83
2008	.79
2009	.80
2010	.79
2011	.77
2012	.75

- (a) Find an exponential model for these data, where $t = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000.
- (b) Assume the model remains accurate and predict the purchasing power of a dollar in 2015 and 2018.
- (c) Use a graphing calculator (or trial and error) to determine the year in which the purchasing power of the 2000 dollar will drop to \$.40.

10. **Physical Science** The table shows the atmospheric pressure (in millibars) at various altitudes (in meters).

Altitude	Pressure
0	1,013
1000	899
2000	795
3000	701
4000	617
5000	541
6000	472
7000	411
8000	357
9000	308
10,000	265

- (a) Find an exponential model for these data, in which t is measured in thousands. (For instance, $t = 2$ is 2000 meters.)
- (b) Use the function in part (a) to estimate the atmospheric pressure at 1500 meters and 11,000 meters. Compare your results with the actual values of 846 millibars and 227 millibars, respectively.

11. **Health** The table shows the age-adjusted death rates per 100,000 Americans for heart disease. (Data from: U.S. Center for Health Statistics.)

Year	Death Rate
2000	257.6
2002	240.8
2004	217.0
2006	210.2
2008	186.5
2010	178.5

- (a) Find an exponential model for these data, where $t = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000.
- (b) Assuming the model remains accurate, estimate the death rate in 2012 and 2016.
- (c) Use a graphing calculator (or trial and error) to determine the year in which the death rate will fall to 100.

12. **Business** The table shows outstanding consumer credit (in billions of dollars) at the beginning of various years. (Data from: U.S. Federal Reserve.)

Year	Credit
1980	350.5
1985	524.0
1990	797.7
1995	1010.4
2000	1543.7
2005	2200.1
2010	2438.7

- (a) Find an exponential model for these data, where $t = 0$ corresponds to the year 1980.
- (b) If this model remains accurate, what will the outstanding consumer credit be in 2013 and 2016?
- (c) In what year will consumer credit reach \$6000 billion?

Work the following problems. (See Example 5.)

13. **Business** Assembly-line operations tend to have a high turnover of employees, forcing the companies involved to spend much time and effort in training new workers. It has been found that a worker who is new to the operation of a certain task on the assembly line will produce $P(t)$ items on day t , where

$$P(t) = 25 - 25e^{-.3t}.$$

- (a) How many items will be produced on the first day?
- (b) How many items will be produced on the eighth day?
- (c) According to the function, what is the maximum number of items the worker can produce?

14. **Social Science** The number of words per minute that an average person can type is given by

$$W(t) = 60 - 30e^{-.5t},$$

where t is time in months after the beginning of a typing class. Find each of the following.

- (a) $W(0)$
- (b) $W(1)$
- (c) $W(4)$
- (d) $W(6)$

Natural Science Newton's law of cooling says that the rate at which a body cools is proportional to the difference in temperature between the body and an environment into which it is introduced. Using calculus, we can find that the temperature $F(t)$ of the body at time t after being introduced into an environment having constant temperature T_0 is

$$F(t) = T_0 + Cb^t,$$

where C and b are constants. Use this result in Exercises 15 and 16.

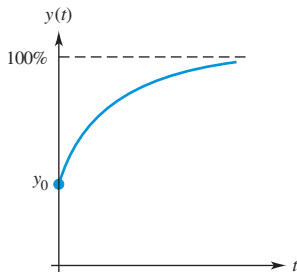
15. Boiling water at 100° Celsius is placed in a freezer at -18° Celsius. The temperature of the water is 50° Celsius after 24 minutes. Find the temperature of the water after 76 minutes.

16. Paisley refuses to drink coffee cooler than 95°F . She makes coffee with a temperature of 170°F in a room with a temperature of 70°F . The coffee cools to 120°F in 10 minutes. What is the longest amount of time she can let the coffee sit before she drinks it?

17. **Social Science** A sociologist has shown that the fraction $y(t)$ of people in a group who have heard a rumor after t days is approximated by

$$y(t) = \frac{y_0 e^{kt}}{1 - y_0(1 - e^{kt})},$$

where y_0 is the fraction of people who heard the rumor at time $t = 0$ and k is a constant. A graph of $y(t)$ for a particular value of k is shown in the figure.



- (a) If $k = .1$ and $y_0 = .05$, find $y(10)$.
- (b) If $k = .2$ and $y_0 = .10$, find $y(5)$.
18. **Social Science** Data from the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration indicate that, in year t , the approximate percentage of people in the United States who wear seat belts when driving is given by

$$g(t) = \frac{97}{1 + .823e^{-.1401t}},$$

where $t = 0$ corresponds to the year 1994. What percentage used seat belts in

- (a) 2000?
 (b) 2003?
 (c) 2004?

Assuming that this function is accurate after 2004, estimate seat belt use for the following years.

- (d) 2011?
 (e) 2013?
 (f) 2015?
 (g) Graph the function. Does the graph suggest that seat belt usage will ever reach 100%?

Use a graphing calculator or other technology to do the following problems. (See Example 6.)

19. **Economics** The amount of U.S. expenditures on national defense (in billions of dollars) can be approximated by the function

$$f(x) = \frac{1084}{1 + 1.94e^{-.171x}},$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis.)

- (a) Estimate the expenditures in the years 2005 and 2010.
 (b) Assume the model remains accurate and graph the function from the year 2000 to the year 2020.
 (c) Use the graph to determine the year in which expenditures reach \$850 billion.

20. **Natural Science** The population of fish in a certain lake at time t months is given by the function

$$p(t) = \frac{20,000}{1 + 24(2^{-.36t})},$$

- (a) Graph the population function from $t = 0$ to $t = 48$ (a four-year period).
 (b) What was the population at the beginning of the period?
 (c) Use the graph to estimate the one-year period in which the population grew most rapidly.
 (d) When do you think the population will reach 25,000? What factors in nature might explain your answer?

21. **Business** The amount (in billions of dollars) spent on legal services in the United States can be approximated by the function

$$g(x) = \frac{99.85}{1 + .527e^{-.258x}},$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000. (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis.)

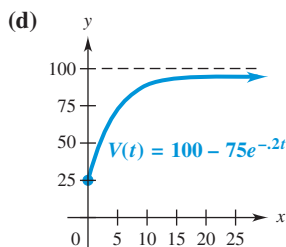
- (a) Estimate the amount spent on legal services in 2007 and 2011.
 (b) Assume the model remains accurate and graph $g(x)$ from the year 2000 to the year 2025.
 (c) Does the graph ever go over \$110 billion dollars?

22. **Social Science** The probability P percent of having an automobile accident is related to the alcohol level t of the driver's blood by the function $P(t) = e^{21.459t}$.

- (a) Graph $P(t)$ in a viewing window with $0 \leq t \leq .2$ and $0 \leq P(t) \leq 100$.
 (b) At what blood alcohol level is the probability of an accident at least 50%? What is the legal blood alcohol level in your state?

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- (a) 500
(b) About 27,300
- (a) $f(t) = 500(1.055)^t$
(b) \$854.07
- (a) \$25,000
(b) \$100,000
(c) \$89,850



- (a) 5
(b) After about 12 days

4.3 Logarithmic Functions

Until the development of computers and calculators, logarithms were the only effective tool for large-scale numerical computations. They are no longer needed for this purpose, but logarithmic functions still play a crucial role in calculus and in many applications.

Common Logarithms

Logarithms are simply *a new language for old ideas*—essentially, a special case of exponents.

Definition of Common (Base 10) Logarithms

$$y = \log x \quad \text{means} \quad 10^y = x.$$

Log x , which is read “the logarithm of x ,” is the answer to the question,

To what exponent must 10 be raised to produce x ?

✓ Checkpoint 1

Find each common logarithm.

- log 100
- log 1000
- log .1

log(359)	2.555094449
$10^{(2.5551)}$	359.004589
log(.026)	-1.585026652

Figure 4.17

✓ Checkpoint 2

Find each common logarithm.

- log 27
- log 1089
- log .00426

Example 1 To find $\log 10,000$, ask yourself, “To what exponent must 10 be raised to produce 10,000?” Since $10^4 = 10,000$, we see that $\log 10,000 = 4$. Similarly,


$$\begin{aligned} \log 1 &= 0 && \text{because} && 10^0 &= 1; \\ \log .01 &= -2 && \text{because} && 10^{-2} &= \frac{1}{10^2} = \frac{1}{100} = .01; \\ \log \sqrt{10} &= 1/2 && \text{because} && 10^{1/2} &= \sqrt{10}. \end{aligned}$$



Example 2 Log (-25) is the exponent to which 10 must be raised to produce -25 . But every power of 10 is positive! So there is no exponent that will produce -25 . *Logarithms of negative numbers and 0 are not defined.*

Example 3 (a) We know that $\log 359$ must be a number between 2 and 3 because $10^2 = 100$ and $10^3 = 1000$. By using the “log” key on a calculator, we find that $\log 359$ (to four decimal places) is 2.5551. You can verify this statement by computing $10^{2.5551}$; the result (rounded) is 359. See the first two lines in Figure 4.17.

(b) When 10 is raised to a negative exponent, the result is a number less than 1. Consequently, the logarithms of numbers between 0 and 1 are negative. For instance, $\log .026 = -1.5850$, as shown in the third line in Figure 4.17.

 **NOTE** On most scientific calculators, enter the number followed by the log key. On graphing calculators, press the log key followed by the number, as in Figure 4.17.

Natural Logarithms

Although common logarithms still have some uses (one of which is discussed in Section 4.4), the most widely used logarithms today are defined in terms of the number e (whose decimal expansion begins 2.71828 . . .) rather than 10. They have a special name and notation.

Definition of Natural (Base e) Logarithms

$$y = \ln x \quad \text{means} \quad e^y = x.$$

Thus, the number $\ln x$ (which is sometimes read “el-en x ”) is the exponent to which e must be raised to produce the number x . For instance, $\ln 1 = 0$ because $e^0 = 1$. Although logarithms to the base e may not seem as “natural” as common logarithms, there are several reasons for using them, some of which are discussed in Section 4.4.

$\ln(85)$	4.442651256
$e^{4.4427}$	85.0041433
$\ln(.38)$	-.9675840263

Figure 4.18


Checkpoint 3

Find the following.

- (a) $\ln 6.1$
- (b) $\ln 20$
- (c) $\ln .8$
- (d) $\ln .1$

Example 4

(a) To find $\ln 85$, use the **LN** key of your calculator, as in Figure 4.18. The result is 4.4427. Thus, 4.4427 is the exponent (to four decimal places) to which e must be raised to produce 85. You can verify this result by computing $e^{4.4427}$; the answer (rounded) is 85. See Figure 4.18.

(b) A calculator shows that $\ln .38 = -.9676$ (rounded), which means that $e^{-.9676} \approx .38$. See Figure 4.18. 

Example 5

You don't need a calculator to find $\ln e^8$. Just ask yourself, “To what exponent must e be raised to produce e^8 ?” The answer, obviously, is 8. So $\ln e^8 = 8$.

Other Logarithms

The procedure used to define common and natural logarithms can be carried out with any positive number $a \neq 1$ as the base in place of 10 or e .

Definition of Logarithms to the Base a

$$y = \log_a x \quad \text{means} \quad a^y = x.$$

Read $y = \log_a x$ as “ y is the logarithm of x to the base a .” As was the case with common and natural logarithms, $\log_a x$ is an *exponent*; it is the answer to the question,

To what power must a be raised to produce x ?

For example, suppose $a = 2$ and $x = 16$. Then $\log_2 16$ is the answer to the question,

To what power must 2 be raised to produce 16?

It is easy to see that $2^4 = 16$, so $\log_2 16 = 4$. In other words, the exponential statement $2^4 = 16$ is equivalent to the logarithmic statement $4 = \log_2 16$.

In the definition of a logarithm to base a , note carefully the relationship between the base and the exponent:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \text{Exponent} & \\ & \downarrow & \\ \text{Logarithmic form:} & y = \log_a x & \\ & \uparrow & \text{Base} \\ & \text{Exponent} & \\ \text{Exponential form:} & a^y = x & \\ & \uparrow & \text{Base} \end{array}$$

Common and natural logarithms are the special cases when $a = 10$ and when $a = e$, respectively. Both $\log u$ and $\log_{10} u$ mean the same thing. Similarly, $\ln u$ and $\log_e u$ mean the same thing.

Example 6

This example shows several statements written in both exponential and logarithmic form.

Exponential Form	Logarithmic Form
(a) $3^2 = 9$	$\log_3 9 = 2$
(b) $(1/5)^{-2} = 25$	$\log_{1/5} 25 = -2$
(c) $10^5 = 100,000$	$\log_{10} 100,000$ (or $\log 100,000$) = 5
(d) $4^{-3} = 1/64$	$\log_4 (1/64) = -3$
(e) $2^{-4} = 1/16$	$\log_2 (1/16) = -4$
(f) $e^0 = 1$	$\log_e 1$ (or $\ln 1$) = 0



✓ Checkpoint 4

Write the logarithmic form of

- (a) $5^3 = 125$;
- (b) $3^{-4} = 1/81$;
- (c) $8^{2/3} = 4$.

✓ Checkpoint 5

Write the exponential form of

- (a) $\log_{16} 4 = 1/2$;
- (b) $\log_3 (1/9) = -2$;
- (c) $\log_{16} 8 = 3/4$.

Properties of Logarithms

Some of the important properties of logarithms arise directly from their definition.

Let x and a be any positive real numbers, with $a \neq 1$, and r be any real number. Then

- (a) $\log_a 1 = 0$;
- (b) $\log_a a = 1$;
- (c) $\log_a a^r = r$;
- (d) $a^{\log_a x} = x$.

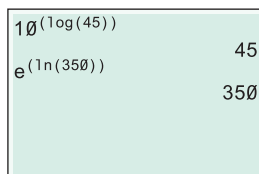


Figure 4.19

Property (a) was discussed in Example 1 (with $a = 10$). Property (c) was illustrated in Example 5 (with $a = e$ and $r = 8$). Property (b) is property (c) with $r = 1$. To understand property (d), recall that $\log_a x$ is the exponent to which a must be raised to produce x . Consequently, when you raise a to this exponent, the result is x , as illustrated for common and natural logarithms in Figure 4.19.

The following properties are part of the reason that logarithms are so useful. They will be used in the next section to solve exponential and logarithmic equations.

The Product, Quotient, and Power Properties

Let x , y , and a be any positive real numbers, with $a \neq 1$. Let r be any real number. Then

$$\log_a xy = \log_a x + \log_a y \quad \text{Product property}$$

$$\log_a \frac{x}{y} = \log_a x - \log_a y \quad \text{Quotient property}$$

$$\log_a x^r = r \log_a x \quad \text{Power property}$$

Each of these three properties is illustrated on a calculator in Figure 4.20.

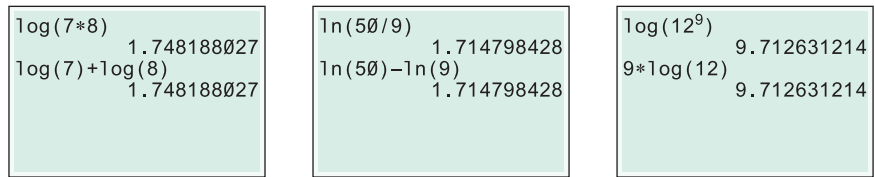


Figure 4.20

To prove the product property, let

$$m = \log_a x \quad \text{and} \quad n = \log_a y.$$

Then, by the definition of logarithm,

$$a^m = x \quad \text{and} \quad a^n = y.$$

Multiply to get

$$a^m \cdot a^n = x \cdot y,$$

or, by a property of exponents,

$$a^{m+n} = xy.$$

Use the definition of logarithm to rewrite this last statement as

$$\log_a xy = m + n.$$

Replace m with $\log_a x$ and n with $\log_a y$ to get

$$\log_a xy = \log_a x + \log_a y.$$

The quotient and power properties can be proved similarly.

✓ Checkpoint 6

Write each expression as a single logarithm, using the properties of logarithms.

- (a) $\log_a 5x + \log_a 3x^4$
- (b) $\log_a 3p - \log_a 5q$
- (c) $4 \log_a k - 3 \log_a m$

Example 7 Using the properties of logarithms, we can write each of the following as a single logarithm:*

(a) $\log_a x + \log_a (x - 1) = \log_a x(x - 1);$ Product property


(b) $\log_a (x^2 + 4) - \log_a (x + 6) = \log_a \frac{x^2 + 4}{x + 6};$ Quotient property

(c) $\log_a 9 + 5 \log_a x = \log_a 9 + \log_a x^5 = \log_a 9x^5.$ Product and power properties ✓ 6

*Here and elsewhere, we assume that variable expressions represent positive numbers and that the base a is positive, with $a \neq 1$.

CAUTION There is no logarithm property that allows you to simplify the logarithm of a sum, such as $\log_a(x^2 + 4)$. In particular, $\log_a(x^2 + 4)$ is *not* equal to $\log_a x^2 + \log_a 4$. The product property of logarithms shows that $\log_a x^2 + \log_a 4 = \log_a 4x^2$.

Example 8 Assume that $\log_6 7 \approx 1.09$ and $\log_6 5 \approx .90$. Use the properties of logarithms to find each of the following:

- (a) $\log_6 35 = \log_6(7 \cdot 5) = \log_6 7 + \log_6 5 \approx 1.09 + .90 = 1.99$;
 (b) $\log_6 5/7 = \log_6 5 - \log_6 7 \approx .90 - 1.09 = -.19$;
 (c) $\log_6 5^3 = 3 \log_6 5 \approx 3(.90) = 2.70$;
 (d) $\log_6 6 = 1$;
 (e) $\log_6 1 = 0$. 

Checkpoint 7

Use the properties of logarithms to rewrite and evaluate each expression, given that $\log_3 7 \approx 1.77$ and $\log_3 5 \approx 1.46$.

- (a) $\log_3 35$
 (b) $\log_3 7/5$
 (c) $\log_3 25$
 (d) $\log_3 3$
 (e) $\log_3 1$

In Example 8, several logarithms to the base 6 were given. However, they could have been found by using a calculator and the following formula.

Change-of-Base Theorem

For any positive numbers a and x (with $a \neq 1$),

$$\log_a x = \frac{\ln x}{\ln a}.$$

Example 9 To find $\log_7 3$, use the theorem with $a = 7$ and $x = 3$:

$$\log_7 3 = \frac{\ln 3}{\ln 7} \approx \frac{1.0986}{1.9459} \approx .5646.$$

You can check this result on your calculator by verifying that $7^{.5646} \approx 3$.

Example 10 **Natural Science** Environmental scientists who study the diversity of species in an ecological community use the *Shannon index* to measure diversity. If there are k different species, with n_1 individuals of species 1, n_2 individuals of species 2, and so on, then the Shannon index H is defined as

$$H = \frac{N \log_2 N - [n_1 \log_2 n_1 + n_2 \log_2 n_2 + \cdots + n_k \log_2 n_k]}{N},$$

where $N = n_1 + n_2 + n_3 + \cdots + n_k$. A study of the species that barn owls in a particular region typically eat yielded the following data:

Species	Number
Rats	143
Mice	1405
Birds	452

Find the index of diversity of this community.

Solution In this case, $n_1 = 143$, $n_2 = 1405$, $n_3 = 452$, and

$$N = n_1 + n_2 + n_3 = 143 + 1405 + 452 = 2000.$$

So the index of diversity is

$$\begin{aligned} H &= \frac{N \log_2 N - [n_1 \log_2 n_1 + n_2 \log_2 n_2 + \cdots + n_k \log_2 n_k]}{N} \\ &= \frac{2000 \log_2 2000 - [143 \log_2 143 + 1405 \log_2 1405 + 452 \log_2 452]}{2000}. \end{aligned}$$

To compute H , we use the change-of-base theorem:

$$\begin{aligned} H &= \frac{2000 \frac{\ln 2000}{\ln 2} - \left[143 \frac{\ln 143}{\ln 2} + 1405 \frac{\ln 1405}{\ln 2} + 452 \frac{\ln 452}{\ln 2} \right]}{2000} \\ &\approx 1.1149. \end{aligned}$$

Logarithmic Functions

For a given *positive* value of x , the definition of logarithm leads to exactly one value of y , so that $y = \log_a x$ defines a function.

If $a > 0$ and $a \neq 1$, the **logarithmic function** with base a is defined as

$$f(x) = \log_a x.$$

The most important logarithmic function is the natural logarithmic function.

Example 11 Graph $f(x) = \ln x$ and $g(x) = e^x$ on the same axes.

Solution For each function, use a calculator to compute some ordered pairs. Then plot the corresponding points and connect them with a curve to obtain the graphs in Figure 4.21.

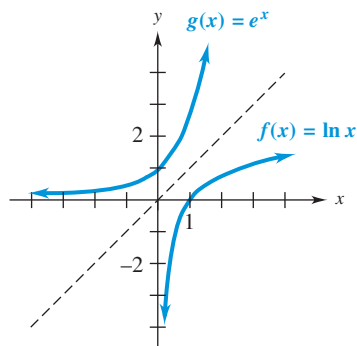



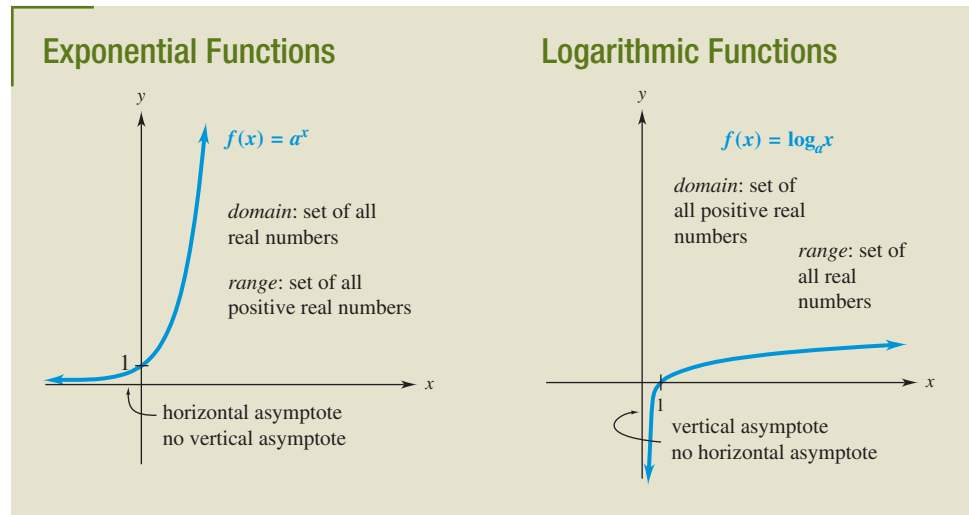
Figure 4.21

The dashed line in Figure 4.21 is the graph of $y = x$. Observe that the graph of $f(x) = \ln x$ is the mirror image of the graph of $g(x) = e^x$, with the line $y = x$ being the mirror. A pair of functions whose graphs are related in this way are said to be **inverses** of each other. A more complete discussion of inverse functions is given in many college algebra books. 

Checkpoint 8

Verify that $f(x) = \log x$ and $g(x) = 10^x$ are inverses of each other by graphing $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ on the same axes.

When the base $a > 1$, the graph of $f(x) = \log_a x$ has the same basic shape as the graph of the natural logarithmic function in Figure 4.21, as summarized on the following page.



As the information in the box suggests, the functions $f(x) = \log_a x$ and $g(x) = a^x$ are inverses of each other. (Their graphs are mirror images of each other, with the line $y = x$ being the mirror.)

Applications

Logarithmic functions are useful for, among other things, describing quantities that grow, but do so at a slower rate as time goes on.

Example 12 **Health** The life expectancy at birth of a person born in year x is approximated by the function

$$f(x) = 17.6 + 12.8 \ln x,$$

where $x = 10$ corresponds to 1910. (Data from: U.S. National Center for Health Statistics.)

(a) Find the life expectancy of persons born in 1910, 1960, and 2010.

Solution Since these years correspond to $x = 10$, $x = 60$, and $x = 110$, respectively, use a calculator to evaluate $f(x)$ at these numbers:

$$f(10) = 17.6 + 12.8 \ln(10) \approx 47.073;$$

$$f(60) = 17.6 + 12.8 \ln(60) \approx 70.008;$$

$$f(110) = 17.6 + 12.8 \ln(110) \approx 77.766.$$

So in the half-century from 1910 to 1960, life expectancy at birth increased from about 47 to 70 years, an increase of 23 years. But in the half-century from 1960 to 2010, it increased less than 8 years, from about 70 to 77.8 years.

(b) If this function remains accurate, when will life expectancy at birth be 80.2 years?

Solution We must solve the equation $f(x) = 80.2$, that is,

$$17.6 + 12.8 \ln x = 80.2$$

In the next section, we shall see how to do this algebraically. For now, we solve the equation graphically by graphing $f(x)$ and $y = 80.2$ on the same screen and finding their intersection point. Figure 4.22 shows that the x -coordinate of this point is approximately 133. So life expectancy will be 80.2 years in 2033.

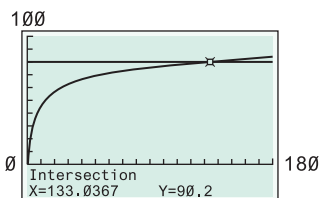


Figure 4.22

4.3 Exercises

Complete each statement in Exercises 1–4.

- $y = \log_a x$ means $x =$ _____.
- The statement $\log_5 125 = 3$ tells us that _____ is the power of _____ that equals _____.
- What is wrong with the expression $y = \log_b?$
- Logarithms of negative numbers are not defined because _____.

Translate each logarithmic statement into an equivalent exponential statement. (See Examples 1, 5, and 6.)

- $\log 100,000 = 5$
- $\log .001 = -3$
- $\log_9 81 = 2$
- $\log_2 (1/8) = -3$

Translate each exponential statement into an equivalent logarithmic statement. (See Examples 5 and 6.)

- $10^{1.9823} = 96$
- $e^{3.2189} = 25$
- $3^{-2} = 1/9$
- $16^{1/2} = 4$

Without using a calculator, evaluate each of the given expressions. (See Examples 1, 5, and 6.)

- $\log 1000$
- $\log_3 81$
- $\log_4 64$
- $\log_5 125$
- $\log_2 \frac{1}{4}$
- $\log_3 \frac{1}{27}$
- $\ln \sqrt{e}$
- $\ln(1/e)$
- $\ln e^{8.77}$
- $\log 10^{74.3}$

Use a calculator to evaluate each logarithm to three decimal places. (See Examples 3 and 4.)

- $\log 53$
- $\log .005$
- $\ln .0068$
- $\ln 354$
- Why does $\log_a 1$ always equal 0 for any valid base a ?

Write each expression as the logarithm of a single number or expression. Assume that all variables represent positive numbers. (See Example 7.)

- $\log 20 - \log 5$
- $\log 6 + \log 8 - \log 2$
- $3 \ln 2 + 2 \ln 3$
- $2 \ln 5 - \frac{1}{2} \ln 25$
- $5 \log x - 2 \log y$
- $2 \log u + 3 \log w - 6 \log v$
- $\ln(3x + 2) + \ln(x + 4)$
- $2 \ln(x + 2) - \ln(x + 3)$

Write each expression as a sum and/or a difference of logarithms, with all variables to the first degree.

- $\log 5x^2y^3$
- $\ln \sqrt{6m^4n^2}$
- $\ln \frac{3x}{5y}$
- $\log \frac{\sqrt{xz}}{z^3}$

- The calculator-generated table in the figure is for $y_1 = \log(4 - x)$. Why do the values in the y_1 column show ERROR for $x \geq 4$?

X	Y1
0	.60206
1	.47712
2	.30103
3	0
4	ERROR
5	ERROR
6	ERROR

X=4

Express each expression in terms of u and v , where $u = \ln x$ and $v = \ln y$. For example, $\ln x^3 = 3(\ln x) = 3u$.

- $\ln(x^2y^5)$
- $\ln(\sqrt{x} \cdot y^2)$
- $\ln(x^3/y^2)$
- $\ln(\sqrt{x}/y)$

Evaluate each expression. (See Example 9.)

- $\log_6 384$
- $\log_{30} 78$
- $\log_{35} 5646$
- $\log_6 60 - \log_{60} 6$

Find numerical values for b and c for which the given statement is FALSE.

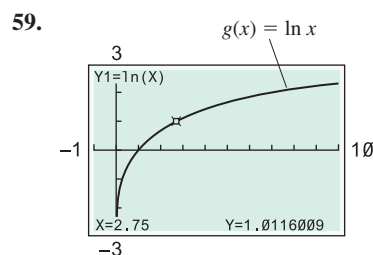
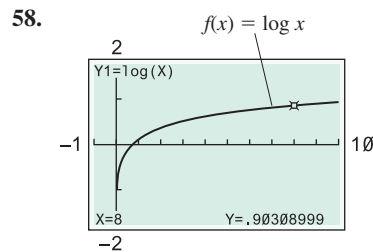
- $\log(b + c) = \log b + \log c$
- $\frac{\ln b}{\ln c} = \ln\left(\frac{b}{c}\right)$

Graph each function. (See Example 11.)

- $y = \ln(x + 2)$
- $y = \ln x + 2$
- $y = \log(x - 3)$
- $y = \log x - 3$

- Graph $f(x) = \log x$ and $g(x) = \log(x/4)$ for $-2 \leq x \leq 8$. How are these graphs related? How does the quotient rule support your answer?

In Exercises 58 and 59, the coordinates of a point on the graph of the indicated function are displayed at the bottom of the screen. Write the logarithmic and exponential equations associated with the display.



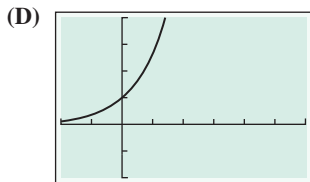
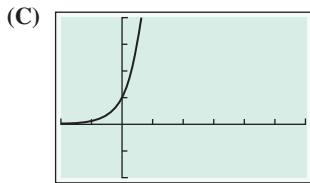
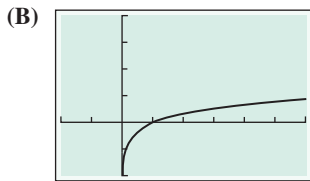
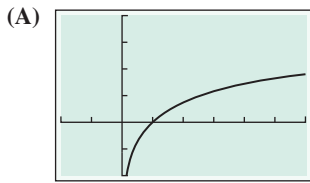
60. Match each equation with its graph. Each tick mark represents one unit.

(a) $y = \log x$

(b) $y = 10^x$

(c) $y = \ln x$

(d) $y = e^x$



61. **Finance** The doubling function

$$D(r) = \frac{\ln 2}{\ln(1 + r)}$$

gives the number of years required to double your money when it is invested at interest rate r (expressed as a decimal), compounded annually. How long does it take to double your money at each of the following rates?

- (a) 4% (b) 8% (c) 18% (d) 36%

(e) Round each of your answers in parts (a)–(d) to the nearest year, and compare them with these numbers: $72/4$, $72/8$, $72/18$, and $72/36$. Use this evidence to state a “rule of thumb” for determining approximate doubling time without employing the function D . This rule, which has long been used by bankers, is called the *rule of 72*.

62. **Health** Two people with the flu visited a college campus. The number of days, T , that it took for the flu virus to infect n people is given by

$$T = -1.43 \ln\left(\frac{10,000 - n}{4998n}\right).$$

How many days will it take for the virus to infect

- (a) 500 people? (b) 5000 people?

63. **Business** The average annual expenditure (in dollars) for a consumer of gasoline and motor oil can be approximated by the function

$$g(x) = -771.9 + 1035 \ln x,$$

where $x = 5$ corresponds to the year 1995. (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics.)

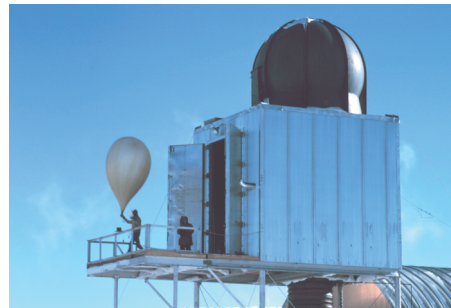
- (a) Estimate the average expenditure in 2008.
 (b) Graph the function g for the period 1995 to 2011.
 (c) Assuming the graph remains accurate, what does the shape of the graph suggest regarding the average expenditure on gasoline and motor oil?

64. **Physical Science** The barometric pressure p (in inches of mercury) is related to the height h above sea level (in miles) by the equation

$$h = -5 \ln\left(\frac{p}{29.92}\right).$$

The pressure readings given in parts (a)–(c) were made by a weather balloon. At what heights were they made?

- (a) 29.92 in. (b) 20.05 in. (c) 11.92 in.
 (d) Use a graphing calculator to determine the pressure at a height of 3 miles.



65. **Social Science** The number of residents (in millions) of the United States age 65 or older can be approximated by the function

$$h(x) = 1.58 + 10.15 \ln x,$$

where $x = 10$ corresponds to the year 1980. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

- (a) Give the number of residents age 65 or older for the years 1990 and 2005.
 (b) Graph the function h for $10 \leq x \leq 50$.
 (c) What does the graph suggest regarding the number of older people as time goes on?

Natural Science *These exercises deal with the Shannon index of diversity. (See Example 10.) Note that in two communities with the same number of species, a larger index indicates greater diversity.*

66. A study of barn owl prey in a particular area produced the following data:

Species	Number
Rats	662
Mice	907
Birds	531

Find the index of diversity of this community. Is this community more or less diverse than the one in Example 10?

67. An eastern forest is composed of the following trees:

Species	Number
Beech	2754
Birch	689
Hemlock	4428
Maple	629

What is the index of diversity of this community?

68. A community has high diversity when all of its species have approximately the same number of individuals. It has low diversity when a few of its species account for most of the total population. Illustrate this fact for the following two communities:

Community 1	Number
Species A	1000
Species B	1000
Species C	1000


Community 2	Number
Species A	2500
Species B	200
Species C	300

69. **Business** The total assets (in billions of dollars) held by credit unions can be approximated by the function

$$f(x) = -1237 + 580.6 \ln x,$$

where $x = 10$ corresponds to the year 1990. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

(a) What were the assets held by credit unions in 1998 and 2010?

 (b) If the model remains accurate, find the year the assets reach \$1000 billion.

70. **Finance** The amount (in billions of dollars) held in private pension funds can be approximated by the function

$$h(x) = -11,052 + 5742 \ln x,$$

where $x = 10$ corresponds to the year 1990. (Data from: Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.)

(a) What was the amount in private pension funds in 2001 and 2009?

(b) If the model remains accurate, when will the amount reach \$9000 billion?

71. **Business** The amount of milk (in gallons) consumed per person annually can be approximated by the function

$$g(x) = 28.29 - 1.948 \ln(x + 1),$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 1980. (Data from: U.S. Department of Agriculture.)

(a) How many gallons per person were consumed in the years 1985 and 2005?

(b) Assuming the model remains accurate, when will the per-person consumption be at 21 gallons?

72. **Economics** The median family income is the “middle income”—half the families have this income or more, and half have a lesser income. The median family income can be approximated by

$$f(x) = 22,751 + 8217 \ln(x + 1),$$

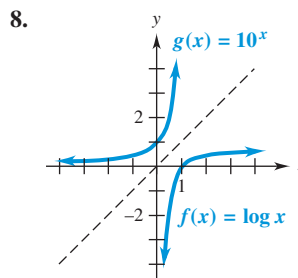
where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 1990. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

(a) What is the median income in the years 2000 and 2010?

(b) If this model remains accurate, when will the median income reach \$52,000?

Checkpoint Answers

- 1. (a) 2 (b) 3 (c) -1
- 2. (a) 1.4314 (b) 3.0370 (c) -2.3706
- 3. (a) 1.8083 (b) 2.9957 (c) -.2231 (d) -2.3026
- 4. (a) $\log_5 125 = 3$ (b) $\log_3(1/81) = -4$ (c) $\log_8 4 = 2/3$
- 5. (a) $16^{1/2} = 4$ (b) $3^{-2} = 1/9$ (c) $16^{3/4} = 8$
- 6. (a) $\log_a 15x^5$ (b) $\log_a(3p/5q)$ (c) $\log_a(k^4/m^3)$
- 7. (a) 3.23 (b) .31 (c) 2.92 (d) 1 (e) 0



4.4 Logarithmic and Exponential Equations

Many applications involve solving logarithmic and exponential equations, so we begin with solution methods for such equations.

Logarithmic Equations

When an equation involves only logarithmic terms, use the logarithm properties to write each side as a single logarithm. Then use the following fact.

Let u , v , and a be positive real numbers, with $a \neq 1$.

If $\log_a u = \log_a v$, then $u = v$.

Example 1

Solve $\log x = \log(x + 3) - \log(x - 1)$.

Solution First, use the quotient property of logarithms to write the right side as a single logarithm:

$$\begin{aligned}\log x &= \log(x + 3) - \log(x - 1) \\ \log x &= \log\left(\frac{x + 3}{x - 1}\right).\end{aligned}$$

Quotient property of logarithms

The fact in the preceding box now shows that

$$\begin{aligned}x &= \frac{x + 3}{x - 1} \\ x(x - 1) &= x + 3 && \text{Cross multiply.} \\ x^2 - x &= x + 3 \\ x^2 - 2x - 3 &= 0 \\ (x - 3)(x + 1) &= 0 && \text{Factor.} \\ x = 3 &\quad \text{or} \quad x = -1.\end{aligned}$$

Since $\log x$ is not defined when $x = -1$, the only possible solution is $x = 3$. Use a calculator to verify that 3 actually is a solution. 

✓ Checkpoint 1

Solve each equation.

- (a) $\log_2(p + 9) - \log_2 p = \log_2(p + 1)$
 (b) $\log_3(m + 1) - \log_3(m - 1) = \log_3 m$

When an equation involves constants and logarithmic terms, use algebra and the logarithm properties to write one side as a single logarithm and the other as a constant. Then use the following property of logarithms, which was discussed on pages 222–223.

If a and u are positive real numbers, with $a \neq 1$, then

$$a^{\log_a u} = u.$$

Example 2

Solve each equation.

(a) $\log_5(2x - 3) = 2$

Solution Since the base of the logarithm is 5, raise 5 to the exponents given by the equation:

$$5^{\log_5(2x-3)} = 5^2$$

On the left side, use the fact in the preceding box (with $a = 5$ and $u = 2x - 3$) to conclude that

$$\begin{aligned}2x - 3 &= 25 \\ 2x &= 28 \\ x &= 14.\end{aligned}$$

Verify that 14 is a solution of the original equation.

$$(b) \log(x - 16) = 2 - \log(x - 1)$$

Solution First rearrange the terms to obtain a single logarithm on the left side:

$$\begin{aligned} \log(x - 16) + \log(x - 1) &= 2 \\ \log[(x - 16)(x - 1)] &= 2 && \text{Product property of logarithms} \\ \log(x^2 - 17x + 16) &= 2. \end{aligned}$$

Since the base of the logarithm is 10, raise 10 to the given powers:

$$10^{\log(x^2 - 17x + 16)} = 10^2.$$

On the left side, apply the logarithm property in the preceding box (with $a = 10$ and $u = x^2 - 17x + 16$):

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 - 17x + 16 &= 100 \\ x^2 - 17x - 84 &= 0 \\ (x + 4)(x - 21) &= 0 \\ x = -4 &\quad \text{or} \quad x = 21. \end{aligned}$$

In the original equation, when $x = -4$, $\log(x - 16) = \log(-20)$, which is not defined. So -4 is not a solution. You should verify that 21 is a solution of the original equation.

$$(c) \log_2 x - \log_2(x - 1) = 1$$

Solution Proceed as before, with 2 as the base of the logarithm:

$$\begin{aligned} \log_2 \frac{x}{x - 1} &= 1 && \text{Quotient property of logarithms} \\ 2^{\log_2 x / (x - 1)} &= 2^1 && \text{Exponentiate to the base 2.} \\ \frac{x}{x - 1} &= 2 && \text{Use the fact in the preceding box.} \\ x &= 2(x - 1) && \text{Multiply both sides by } x - 1. \\ x &= 2x - 2 \\ -x &= -2 \\ x &= 2. \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 2

Solve each equation.

$$(a) \log_5 x + 2 \log_5 x = 3$$

$$(b) \log_6(a + 2) - \log_6 \frac{a - 7}{5} = 1$$

Verify that 2 is a solution of the original equation. ✓₂

Exponential Equations

An equation in which all the variables are exponents is called an exponential equation. When such an equation can be written as two powers of the same base, it can be solved by using the following fact.

Let a be a positive real number, with $a \neq 1$.

$$\text{If } a^u = a^v, \quad \text{then} \quad u = v.$$

Example 3

Solve $9^x = 27$.

Solution First, write both sides as powers of the same base. Since $9 = 3^2$ and $27 = 3^3$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 9^x &= 27 \\ (3^2)^x &= 3^3 \\ 3^{2x} &= 3^3. \end{aligned}$$

Apply the fact in the preceding box (with $a = 3$, $u = 2x$, and $v = 3$):

$$2x = 3$$

$$x = \frac{3}{2}.$$

✓ Checkpoint 3

Solve each equation.

- (a) $8^{2x} = 4$
 (b) $5^{3x} = 25^4$
 (c) $36^{-2x} = 6$

Verify that $x = 3/2$ is a solution of the original equation. ✓₃

Exponential equations involving different bases can often be solved by using the power property of logarithms, which is repeated here for natural logarithms.

If u and r are real numbers, with u positive, then

$$\ln u^r = r \ln u.$$

Although natural logarithms are used in the following examples, logarithms to any base will produce the same solutions.

Example 4

Solve $3^x = 5$.

Solution Take natural logarithms on both sides:

$$\ln 3^x = \ln 5.$$

Apply the power property of logarithms in the preceding box (with $r = x$) to the left side:

$$x \ln 3 = \ln 5$$

$$x = \frac{\ln 5}{\ln 3} \approx 1.465. \quad \text{Divide both sides by the constant } \ln 3.$$

To check, evaluate $3^{1.465}$; the answer should be approximately 5, which verifies that the solution of the given equation is 1.465 (to the nearest thousandth). ✓₄

✓ Checkpoint 4

Solve each equation. Round solutions to the nearest thousandth.

- (a) $2^x = 7$
 (b) $5^m = 50$
 (c) $3^y = 17$

CAUTION Be careful: $\frac{\ln 5}{\ln 3}$ is *not* equal to $\ln\left(\frac{5}{3}\right)$ or $\ln 5 - \ln 3$.

Example 5

Solve $3^{2x-1} = 4^{x+2}$.

Solution Taking natural logarithms on both sides gives

$$\ln 3^{2x-1} = \ln 4^{x+2}.$$

Now use the power property of logarithms and the fact that $\ln 3$ and $\ln 4$ are constants to rewrite the equation:

$$(2x - 1)(\ln 3) = (x + 2)(\ln 4) \quad \text{Power property}$$

$$2x(\ln 3) - 1(\ln 3) = x(\ln 4) + 2(\ln 4) \quad \text{Distributive property}$$

$$2x(\ln 3) - x(\ln 4) = 2(\ln 4) + 1(\ln 3). \quad \text{Collect terms with } x \text{ on one side.}$$

Factor out x on the left side to get

$$[2(\ln 3) - \ln 4]x = 2(\ln 4) + \ln 3.$$

Divide both sides by the coefficient of x :

$$x = \frac{2(\ln 4) + \ln 3}{2(\ln 3) - \ln 4}.$$

✓ Checkpoint 5

Solve each equation. Round solutions to the nearest thousandth.

- (a) $6^m = 3^{2m-1}$
 (b) $5^{6a-3} = 2^{4a+1}$

✓ Checkpoint 6

Solve each equation. Round solutions to the nearest thousandth.

- (a) $e^{-1x} = 11$
 (b) $e^{3+x} = .893$
 (c) $e^{2x^2-3} = 9$



TECHNOLOGY TIP

Logarithmic and exponential equations can be solved on a graphing calculator. To solve $3^x = 5^{2x-1}$, for example, graph $y = 3^x$ and $y = 5^{2x-1}$ on the same screen. Then use the intersection finder to determine the x -coordinates of their intersection points. Alternatively, graph $y = 3^x - 5^{2x-1}$ and use the root finder to determine the x -intercepts of the graph.

✓ Checkpoint 7

Use the function in Example 7 to determine when Netflix reached 35 million subscribers.

Using a calculator to evaluate this last expression, we find that

$$x = \frac{2 \ln 4 + \ln 3}{2 \ln 3 - \ln 4} \approx 4.774. \quad \checkmark_5$$

Recall that $\ln e = 1$ (because 1 is the exponent to which e must be raised to produce e). This fact simplifies the solution of equations involving powers of e .

Example 6

Solve $3e^{x^2} = 600$.

Solution First divide each side by 3 to get

$$e^{x^2} = 200.$$

Now take natural logarithms on both sides; then use the power property of logarithms:

$$\begin{aligned} e^{x^2} &= 200 \\ \ln e^{x^2} &= \ln 200 \\ x^2 \ln e &= \ln 200 && \text{Power property} \\ x^2 &= \ln 200 && \ln e = 1. \\ x &= \pm \sqrt{\ln 200} \\ x &\approx \pm 2.302. \end{aligned}$$

Verify that the solutions are ± 2.302 , rounded to the nearest thousandth. (The symbol \pm is used as a shortcut for writing the two solutions 2.302 and -2.302 .) \checkmark_6

Applications

Some of the most important applications of exponential and logarithmic functions arise in banking and finance. They will be thoroughly discussed in Chapter 5. The applications here are from other fields.

Example 7

Business The number of total subscribers (in millions) to Netflix, Inc. can be approximated by the function

$$g(x) = 9.78(1.07)^x,$$

where $x = 1$ corresponds to the first quarter of the year 2009, $x = 2$ corresponds to the second quarter of the year 2009, etc. Assume the model remains accurate and determine when the number of subscribers reached 28 million. (Data from: *The Wall Street Journal* and *The Associated Press*.)

Solution You are being asked to find the value of x for which $g(x) = 28$ —that is, to solve the following equation:

$$\begin{aligned} 9.78(1.07)^x &= 28 \\ 1.07^x &= \frac{28}{9.78} && \text{Divide both sides by 9.78.} \\ \ln(1.07^x) &= \ln\left(\frac{28}{9.78}\right) && \text{Take logarithms on both sides.} \\ x \ln(1.07) &= \ln\left(\frac{28}{9.78}\right) && \text{Power property of logarithms} \\ x &= \frac{\ln(28/9.78)}{\ln(1.07)} && \text{Divide both sides by } \ln(1.07). \\ x &\approx 15.5. \end{aligned}$$

The 15th quarter corresponds to the third quarter of the year 2012. Hence, according to this model, Netflix, Inc., reached 28 million subscribers in the third quarter of 2012. \checkmark_7

The **half-life** of a radioactive substance is the time it takes for a given quantity of the substance to decay to one-half its original mass. The half-life depends only on the substance, not on the size of the sample. It can be shown that the amount of a radioactive substance at time t is given by the function

$$f(t) = y_0 \left(\frac{1}{2} \right)^{t/h} = y_0 (.5^{t/h}),$$

where y_0 is the initial amount (at time $t = 0$) and h is the half-life of the substance.

Radioactive carbon-14 is found in every living plant and animal. After the plant or animal dies, its carbon-14 decays exponentially, with a half-life of 5730 years. This fact is the basis for a technique called *carbon dating* for determining the age of fossils.


Example 8 **Natural Science** A round wooden table hanging in Winchester Castle (England) was alleged to have belonged to King Arthur, who lived in the fifth century. A recent chemical analysis showed that the wood had lost 9% of its carbon-14.* How old is the table?

Solution The decay function for carbon-14 is

$$f(t) = y_0 (.5^{t/5730}),$$

where $t = 0$ corresponds to the time the wood was cut to make the table. (That is when the tree died.) Since the wood has lost 9% of its carbon-14, the amount in the table now is 91% of the initial amount y_0 (that is, $.91y_0$). We must find the value of t for which $f(t) = .91y_0$. So we must solve the equation

$$\begin{aligned} y_0 (.5^{t/5730}) &= .91y_0 && \text{Definition of } f(t) \\ .5^{t/5730} &= .91 && \text{Divide both sides by } y_0. \\ \ln .5^{t/5730} &= \ln .91 && \text{Take logarithms on both sides.} \\ \left(\frac{t}{5730} \right) \ln .5 &= \ln .91 && \text{Power property of logarithms} \\ t \ln .5 &= 5730 \ln .91 && \text{Multiply both sides by 5730.} \\ t &= \frac{5730 \ln .91}{\ln .5} \approx 779.63. && \text{Divide both sides by } \ln .5. \end{aligned}$$

The table is about 780 years old and therefore could not have belonged to King Arthur. 

Checkpoint 8

How old is a skeleton that has lost 65% of its carbon-14?

Earthquakes are often in the news. The standard method of measuring their size, the **Richter scale**, is a logarithmic function (base 10).

Example 9 **Physical Science** The intensity $R(i)$ of an earthquake, measured on the Richter scale, is given by

$$R(i) = \log \left(\frac{i}{i_0} \right),$$

where i is the intensity of the ground motion of the earthquake and i_0 is the intensity of the ground motion of the so-called *zero earthquake* (the smallest detectable earthquake, against which others are measured). The underwater earthquake that caused the disastrous 2004 tsunami in Southeast Asia measured 9.1 on the Richter scale.

*This is done by measuring the ratio of carbon-14 to nonradioactive carbon-12 in the table (a ratio that is approximately constant over long periods) and comparing it with the ratio in living wood.

(a) How did the ground motion of this tsunami compare with that of the zero earthquake?

Solution In this case,

$$R(i) = 9.1$$

$$\log\left(\frac{i}{i_0}\right) = 9.1.$$

By the definition of logarithms, 9.1 is the exponent to which 10 must be raised to produce i/i_0 , which means that

$$10^{9.1} = \frac{i}{i_0}, \quad \text{or equivalently,} \quad i = 10^{9.1}i_0.$$

So the earthquake that produced the tsunami had $10^{9.1}$ (about 1.26 billion) times more ground motion than the zero earthquake.


(b) What is the Richter-scale intensity of an earthquake with 10 times as much ground motion as the 2004 tsunami earthquake?

Solution From (a), the ground motion of the tsunami quake was $10^{9.1}i_0$. So a quake with 10 times that motion would satisfy

$$i = 10(10^{9.1}i_0) = 10^1 \cdot 10^{9.1}i_0 = 10^{10.1}i_0.$$

Therefore, its Richter scale measure would be

$$R(i) = \log\left(\frac{i}{i_0}\right) = \log\left(\frac{10^{10.1}i_0}{i_0}\right) = \log 10^{10.1} = 10.1.$$

Thus, a tenfold increase in ground motion increases the Richter scale measure by only 1. 

Checkpoint 9

Find the Richter-scale intensity of an earthquake whose ground motion is 100 times greater than the ground motion of the 2004 tsunami earthquake discussed in Example 9.

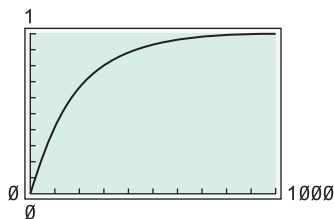


Figure 4.23

Example 10 Economics One action that government could take to reduce carbon emissions into the atmosphere is to place a tax on fossil fuels. This tax would be based on the amount of carbon dioxide that is emitted into the air when such a fuel is burned. The *cost-benefit* equation $\ln(1 - P) = -.0034 - .0053T$ describes the approximate relationship between a tax of T dollars per ton of carbon dioxide and the corresponding percent reduction P (in decimals) in emissions of carbon dioxide.*

(a) Write P as a function of T .

Solution We begin by writing the cost-benefit equation in exponential form:

$$\ln(1 - P) = -.0034 - .0053T$$

$$1 - P = e^{-.0034 - .0053T}$$

$$P = P(T) = 1 - e^{-.0034 - .0053T}.$$

A calculator-generated graph of $P(T)$ is shown in Figure 4.23.

(b) Discuss the benefit of continuing to raise taxes on carbon dioxide emissions.

Solution From the graph, we see that initially there is a rapid reduction in carbon dioxide emissions. However, after a while, there is little benefit in raising taxes further.

*“To Slow or Not to Slow: The Economics of The Greenhouse Effect,” William D. Nordhaus, *The Economic Journal*, Vol. 101, No. 407 (July, 1991), pp. 920–937.

4.4 Exercises

Solve each logarithmic equation. (See Example 1.)

- $\ln(x + 3) = \ln(2x - 5)$
- $\ln(8k - 7) - \ln(3 + 4k) = \ln(9/11)$
- $\ln(3x + 1) - \ln(5 + x) = \ln 2$
- $\ln(5x + 2) = \ln 4 + \ln(x + 3)$
- $2 \ln(x - 3) = \ln(x + 5) + \ln 4$
- $\ln(k + 5) + \ln(k + 2) = \ln 18k$

Solve each logarithmic equation. (See Example 2.)

- $\log_3(6x - 2) = 2$
- $\log_5(3x - 4) = 1$
- $\log x - \log(x + 4) = -1$
- $\log m - \log(m + 4) = -2$
- $\log_3(y + 2) = \log_3(y - 7) + \log_3 4$
- $\log_8(z - 6) = 2 - \log_8(z + 15)$
- $\ln(x + 9) - \ln x = 1$
- $\ln(2x + 1) - 1 = \ln(x - 2)$
- $\log x + \log(x - 9) = 1$
- $\log(x - 1) + \log(x + 2) = 1$

Solve each equation for c .

- $\log(3 + b) = \log(4c - 1)$
- $\ln(b + 7) = \ln(6c + 8)$
- $2 - b = \log(6c + 5)$
- $8b + 6 = \ln(2c) + \ln c$

21. Suppose you overhear the following statement: "I must reject any negative answer when I solve an equation involving logarithms." Is this correct? Write an explanation of why it is or is not correct.

22. What values of x cannot be solutions of the following equation?

$$\log_a(4x - 7) + \log_a(x^2 + 4) = 0.$$

Solve these exponential equations without using logarithms. (See Example 3.)

- $2^{x-1} = 8$
- $25^{-3x} = 3125$
- $6^{-x} = 36^{x+6}$
- $\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^x = \frac{16}{9}$
- $16^{-x+2} = 8$
- $81^{-2x} = 3^{x-1}$
- $16^x = 64$
- $2^{x^2-4x} = \frac{1}{16}$

Use logarithms to solve these exponential equations. (See Examples 4–6.)

- $2^x = 5$
- $2^x = 3^{x-1}$
- $5^x = 8$
- $4^{x+2} = 5^{x-1}$

- $3^{1-2x} = 5^{x+5}$
- $e^{3x} = 6$
- $2e^{5a+2} = 8$
- $4^{3x-1} = 3^{x-2}$
- $e^{-3x} = 5$
- $10e^{3z-7} = 5$

Solve each equation for c .

- $10^{4c-3} = d$
- $e^{2c-1} = b$
- $3 \cdot 10^{2c+1} = 4d$
- $3e^{5c-7} = b$

Solve these equations. (See Examples 1–6.)

- $\log_7(r + 3) + \log_7(r - 3) = 1$
- $\log_4(z + 3) + \log_4(z - 3) = 2$
- $\log_3(a - 3) = 1 + \log_3(a + 1)$
- $\log w + \log(3w - 13) = 1$
- $\log_2 \sqrt{2y^2 - 1} = 3/2$
- $\log_2(\log_2 x) = 1$
- $\log_2(\log_3 x) = 1$
- $5^{-2x} = \frac{1}{25}$
- $2^{|x|} = 16$
- $2^{x^2-1} = 10$
- $2(e^x + 1) = 10$
- $5^{-|x|} = \frac{1}{25}$
- $3^{2-x^2} = 8$
- $5(e^{2x} - 2) = 15$

61. Explain why the equation $4^{x^2+1} = 2$ has no solutions.
62. Explain why the equation $\log(-x) = -4$ does have a solution, and find that solution.

Work these problems. (See Example 7.)

63. **Business** Gambling revenues (in billions of U.S. dollars) generated in Macau, China can be approximated by the function $g(x) = 1.104(1.346)^x$, where $x = 2$ corresponds to the year 2002. Assume the model remains accurate and find the years in which the gambling revenues reached the indicated amounts. (Data from: *The Wall Street Journal*.)

- (a) \$20 billion (b) \$45 billion

64. **Social Science** The number of centenarians (in thousands) in the United States can be approximated by the function $h(x) = 2(1.056)^x$, where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 1950. Find the year in which the number of centenarians reached the following levels. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

- (a) 30,000 (b) 50,000

65. **Health** As we saw in Example 12 of Section 4.3, the life expectancy at birth of a person born in year x is approximately

$$f(x) = 17.6 + 12.8 \ln x,$$

where $x = 10$ corresponds to the year 1910. Find the birth year of a person whose life expectancy at birth was

- (a) 75.5 years; (b) 77.5 years; (c) 81 years.

66. **Health** A drug's effectiveness decreases over time. If, each hour, a drug is only 90% as effective as during the previous hour, at some point the patient will not be receiving enough medication and must receive another dose. This situation can be modeled by the exponential function $y = y_0(0.90)^{t-1}$. In this equation, y_0 is the amount of the initial dose and y is the amount of medication still available t hours after the drug was administered. Suppose 200 mg of the drug is administered. How long will it take for this initial dose to reach the dangerously low level of 50 mg?
67. **Economics** The percentage of the U.S. income earned by the top one percent of earners can be approximated by the function $f(x) = 7.9e^{0.254x}$, where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 1970. (Data from: *The New York Times*.)
- When did the percentage reach 15%?
 - If the model remains accurate, when will the percentage reach 30%?
68. **Health** The probability P percent of having an accident while driving a car is related to the alcohol level t of the driver's blood by the equation $P = e^{kt}$, where k is a constant. Accident statistics show that the probability of an accident is 25% when the blood alcohol level is $t = .15$.
- Use the equation and the preceding information to find k (to three decimal places). *Note:* Use $P = 25$, and not .25.
 - Using the value of k from part (a), find the blood alcohol level at which the probability of having an accident is 50%.

Work these exercises. (See Example 8.)

69. **Natural Science** The amount of cobalt-60 (in grams) in a storage facility at time t is given by
- $$C(t) = 25e^{-.14t},$$
- where time is measured in years.
- How much cobalt-60 was present initially?
 - What is the half-life of cobalt-60? (*Hint:* For what value of t is $C(t) = 12.5$?)
70. **Natural Science** A Native American mummy was found recently. It had 73.6% of the amount of radiocarbon present in living beings. Approximately how long ago did this person die?
71. **Natural Science** How old is a piece of ivory that has lost 36% of its radiocarbon?
72. **Natural Science** A sample from a refuse deposit near the Strait of Magellan had 60% of the carbon-14 of a contemporary living sample. How old was the sample?

Natural Science Work these problems. (See Example 9.)

73. In May 2008, Sichuan province, China suffered an earthquake that measured 7.9 on the Richter scale.
- Express the intensity of this earthquake in terms of i_0 .
 - In July of the same year, a quake measuring 5.4 on the Richter scale struck Los Angeles. Express the intensity of this earthquake in terms of i_0 .

- How many times more intense was the China earthquake than the one in Los Angeles?
74. Find the Richter-scale intensity of earthquakes whose ground motion is
- $1000i_0$; (b) $100,000i_0$;
 - $10,000,000i_0$.
 - Fill in the blank in this statement: Increasing the ground motion by a factor of 10^k increases the Richter intensity by _____ units.

75. The loudness of sound is measured in units called decibels. The decibel rating of a sound is given by

$$D(i) = 10 \cdot \log\left(\frac{i}{i_0}\right),$$

where i is the intensity of the sound and i_0 is the minimum intensity detectable by the human ear (the so-called *threshold sound*). Find the decibel rating of each of the sounds with the given intensities. Round answers to the nearest whole number.

- Whisper, $115i_0$
 - Average sound level in the movie *Godzilla*, $10^{10}i_0$
 - Jackhammer, $31,600,000,000i_0$
 - Rock music, $895,000,000,000i_0$
 - Jetliner at takeoff, $109,000,000,000,000i_0$
76. (a) How much more intense is a sound that measures 100 decibels than the threshold sound?
- (b) How much more intense is a sound that measures 50 decibels than the threshold sound?
- (c) How much more intense is a sound measuring 100 decibels than one measuring 50 decibels?
77. **Natural Science** Refer to Example 10.
- Determine the percent reduction in carbon dioxide when the tax is \$60.
 - What tax will cause a 50% reduction in carbon dioxide emissions?
78. **Business** The revenue (in billions of dollars) for Walt Disney Company can be approximated by the function $R(x) = 16.20 + 9.992 \ln x$, where $x = 3$ corresponds to the year 2003. Find each of the following. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)
- $R(9)$ (b) $R(12)$
 - If the model remains accurate, in what year will revenue reach \$50 billion?
79. **Business** Annual box office revenue (in billions of dollars) generated in North America can be approximated by the function $g(x) = 2.0 + 2.768 \ln x$, where $x = 2$ corresponds to the year 1992. (Data from: www.boxofficemojo.com.)
- Graph the function g for the years 1992 through 2012.
 - According to the model, in what year did revenue reach \$9 billion?
80. **Physical Science** The table on the following page gives some of the planets' average distances D from the sun and their period P of revolution around the sun in years. The distances

have been normalized so that Earth is one unit from the sun. Thus, Jupiter's distance of 5.2 means that Jupiter's distance from the sun is 5.2 times farther than Earth's.*

Planet	D	P
Earth	1	1
Jupiter	5.2	11.9
Saturn	9.54	29.5
Uranus	19.2	84.0

- Plot the points (D, P) for these planets. Would a straight line or an exponential curve fit these points best?
- Plot the points $(\ln D, \ln P)$ for these planets. Do these points appear to lie on a line?
- Determine a linear equation that approximates the data points, with $x = \ln D$ and $y = \ln P$. Use the first and last data points (rounded to 2 decimal places). Graph your line and the data on the same coordinate axes.
- Use the linear equation to predict the period of the planet Pluto if its distance is 39.5. Compare your answer with the true value of 248.5 years.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- (a) 3 (b) $1 + \sqrt{2} \approx 2.414$
- (a) 5 (b) 52
- (a) $1/3$ (b) $8/3$ (c) $-1/4$
- (a) 2.807 (b) 2.431 (c) 2.579
- (a) 2.710 (b) .802
- (a) 23.979 (b) -3.113 (c) ± 1.612
- Second quarter of 2013.
- About 8679 years
- 11.1

*C. Ronan, *The Natural History of the Universe*. New York: Macmillan Publishing Co., 1991.



CHAPTER 4 Summary and Review

Key Terms and Symbols

4.1 exponential function
exponential growth and decay
the number
 $e \approx 2.71828 \dots$

4.2 exponential growth function
logistic function

4.3 $\log x$ common (base-10) logarithm of x
 $\ln x$ natural (base- e) logarithm of x
 $\log_a x$ base- a logarithm of x

product, quotient, and power properties of logarithms
change-of-base theorem
Inverse logarithmic functions

4.4 logarithmic equations
exponential equations
half-life
Richter scale

Chapter 4 Key Concepts

Exponential Functions

An important application of exponents is the **exponential growth function**, defined as $f(t) = y_0 e^{kt}$ or $f(t) = y_0 b^t$, where y_0 is the amount of a quantity present at time $t = 0$, $e \approx 2.71828$, and k and b are constants.

Logarithmic Functions

The **logarithm** of x to the base a is defined as follows: For $a > 0$ and $a \neq 1$, $y = \log_a x$ means $a^y = x$. Thus, $\log_a x$ is an *exponent*, the power to which a must be raised to produce x .

Properties of Logarithms

Let x , y , and a be positive real numbers, with $a \neq 1$, and let r be any real number. Then

$$\log_a 1 = 0; \log_a a = 1;$$

$$\log_a a^r = r; a^{\log_a x} = x.$$

Product property $\log_a xy = \log_a x + \log_a y$

Quotient property $\log_a \frac{x}{y} = \log_a x - \log_a y$

Power property $\log_a x^r = r \log_a x$

Solving Exponential and Logarithmic Equations

Let $a > 0$, with $a \neq 1$.

If $\log_a u = \log_a v$, then $u = v$.

If $a^u = a^v$, then $u = v$.

Chapter 4 Review Exercises

Match each equation with the letter of the graph that most closely resembles the graph of the equation. Assume that $a > 1$.

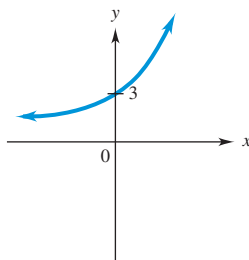
1. $y = a^{x+2}$

2. $y = a^x + 2$

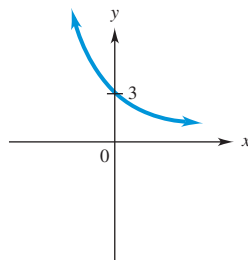
3. $y = -a^x + 2$

4. $y = a^{-x} + 2$

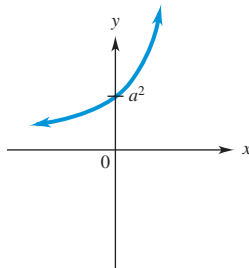
(a)



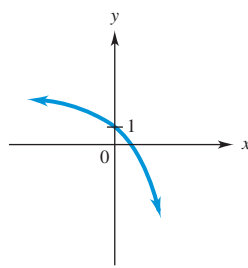
(b)



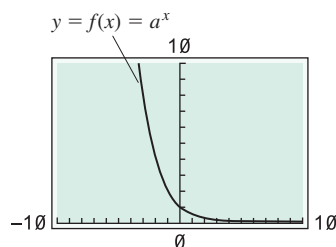
(c)



(d)



Consider the exponential function $y = f(x) = a^x$ graphed here. Answer each question on the basis of the graph.



5. What is true about the value of a in comparison to 1?

6. What is the domain of f ?
7. What is the range of f ?
8. What is the value of $f(0)$?

Graph each function.

9. $f(x) = 4^x$

10. $g(x) = 4^{-x}$

11. $f(x) = \ln x + 5$

12. $g(x) = \log x - 3$

Work these problems.

13. **Health** The cumulative amount of nicotine content in an active smoker's lung depends on the brand and number of cigarettes smoked. A research found that this relation can be expressed by $y = ab^{0.00301t}$; where a is the cigarette brand, b the number of cigarettes smoked daily, and t the number of days.

Brand (a)	A	B	C	D	E
Nicotine content	0.0005mg	0.0003mg	0.0001mg	0.00009mg	0.00005mg

Find the cumulative amount of nicotine content in the lungs of a smoker at the end of a month (30 days) if they smoke:

- (a) B and 15 cigarettes daily
- (b) D and 10 cigarettes daily

14. **Economics** The cumulative number of retail jobs (in thousands) added each year to the Chinese economy can be approximated by the function $f(x) = 39.6(5.21)^x$; where $x = 1$ corresponds to 2001.

- (a) Estimate the cumulative number of jobs added in 2010.
- (b) In which year did the cumulative number of jobs hit 40,000,000?

Translate each exponential statement into an equivalent logarithmic one.

15. $10^{2.53148} = 340$

16. $5^4 = 625$

17. $e^{3.8067} = 45$

18. $343^{1/3} = 7$

Translate each logarithmic statement into an equivalent exponential one.

19. $\log 10,000 = 4$

20. $\log 26.3 = 1.4200$

21. $\ln 81.1 = 4.3957$

22. $\log_2 4096 = 12$

Evaluate these expressions without using a calculator.

23. $\ln e^5$

24. $\log \sqrt[3]{10}$

25. $10^{\log 8.9}$

26. $e^{\ln 13}$

27. $\log_8 2$

28. $\log_8 32$

Write these expressions as a single logarithm. Assume all variables represent positive quantities.

29. $\log 4x + \log 5x^5$

30. $4 \log u - 5 \log u^6$

31. $3 \log b - 2 \log c$

32. $7 \ln x - 3(\ln x^3 + 5 \ln x)$

Solve each equation. Round to the nearest thousandth.

33. $2 \ln(b + 1) - 2 \ln 2 = 1$

34. $2 \ln(y + 1) = \ln(y^2 - 1) + \ln 5$

35. $\log(m + 3) = 2$

36. $\ln r + \ln(r - 1) = 3$

37. $\log_2(3k + 1) = 4$

38. $\log_5\left(\frac{5z}{z - 2}\right) = 2$

39. $\log_5(a + 1) + \log_5(a - 1) - \log_5(a + 7) = 1$

40. $\log_2 r + \log_2(r - 2) = 3$

41. $2^{3x} = \frac{1}{64}$

42. $\left(\frac{9}{16}\right)^x = \frac{3}{4}$

43. $9^{2y+1} = 27^y$

44. $\frac{1}{2} = \left(\frac{b}{4}\right)^{1/4}$

45. $8^p = 19$

46. $3^z = 11$

47. $2^{2k+1} \cdot 3^{2k-1} = 864$

48. $2 \cdot 15^{-k} = 18$

49. $e^{-5-2x} = 5$

50. $e^{3x-1} = 12$

51. $6^{2-m} = 2^{3m+1}$

52. $5^{3r-1} = 6^{2r+5}$

53. $(1 + .003)^k = 1.089$

54. $(1 + .094)^z = 2.387$

Work these problems.

55. A population is increasing according to the growth law $y = 4e^{0.3t}$, where y is in thousands and t is in months. Match each of the questions (a), (b), (c), and (d) with one of the solutions (A), (B), (C), or (D).

(a) How long will it take for the population to double? (A) Solve $4e^{0.3t} = 12$ for t .

(b) When will the population reach 12 thousand? (B) Evaluate $4e^{0.3(72)}$.

(c) How large will the population be in 6 months? (C) Solve $4e^{0.3t} = 2 \cdot 4$ for t .

(d) How large will the population be in 6 years? (D) Evaluate $4e^{0.3(6)}$.

56. **Natural Science** A population is increasing according to the growth law $y = 2e^{0.2t}$, where y is in millions and t is in

years. Match each of the questions (a), (b), (c), and (d) with one of the solutions (A), (B), (C), or (D).

(a) How long will it take for the population to triple? (A) Evaluate $2e^{0.2(1/3)}$.

(b) When will the population reach 3 million? (B) Solve $2e^{0.2t} = 3 \cdot 2$ for t .

(c) How large will the population be in 3 years? (C) Evaluate $2e^{0.2(3)}$.

(d) How large will the population be in 4 months? (D) Solve $2e^{0.2t} = 3$ for t .

57. **Natural Science** The amount of polonium (in grams) present after t days is given by

$$A(t) = 10e^{-0.00495t}$$

(a) How much polonium was present initially?

(b) What is the half-life of polonium?

(c) How long will it take for the polonium to decay to 3 grams?

58. **Business** The annual average natural gas price (in dollars per million BTUs) can be approximated by the function $h(x) = 69.54e^{-.264x}$, where $x = 8$ corresponds to the year 2008. (Data from: Energy Information Administration.)

(a) What was the average price per million BTUs in the year 2010?


(b) According to the model, in what year did the average price per million BTUs hit \$3.00?

59. **Natural Science** The amount of uranium 235 (in grams) left after t seconds is given by $A(t) = A_0e^{-0.0005t}$

(a) If $A_0 = 10$ then, find the initial amount of uranium 235.

(b) What will be the half-life of uranium 235?

60. **Natural Science** One earthquake measures 4.6 on the Richter scale. A second earthquake has ground motion 1000 times greater than the first. What does the second one measure on the Richter scale?

 **Natural Science** The decomposition of a compound is found to follow the given rate law $K = (2.303/t)\log[a/(a - x)]$, where K is the reactivity constant and x is the amount of the compound decayed after t seconds.

61. If 20% of the original amount of the compound decomposes in 15 minutes, find K .

62. Find the half-life of the compound.

In Exercises 63–66, do part (a) and skip part (b) if you do not have a graphing calculator. If you have a graphing calculator, then skip part (a) and do part (b).

63. **Business** The approximate average times (in minutes per month) spent on Facebook per unique visitor in the United States on a mobile device are given in the following table for the last six months of 2012 and first two months of 2013. (Data from: www.comScore.com.)

Month	July 2012	Aug. 2012	Sept. 2012	Oct. 2012	Nov. 2012	Dec. 2012	Jan. 2013	Feb. 2013
Minutes	500	510	520	580	615	700	760	785

- (a) Let $x = 0$ correspond to July, 2012. Use the data points from July, 2012 and February, 2013 to find a function of the form $f(x) = a(b^x)$ that models these data.
- ✎ (b) Use exponential regression to find a function g that models these data, with $x = 0$ corresponding to July, 2012.
- (c) Assume the model remains accurate and estimate the minutes per month in April, 2013.
- (d) According to this model, when will the minutes per month reach 1000?

64. Agriculture The number of farm laborers and the area (in hectares) covered is correlated. The observed data is given below.

No. of laborers	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Area (in hectare)	1	1.2	1.8	2.5	3.6	4.7	6.6	9.1

- (a) Find an exponential curve of the form $Y = ab_x$, where $Y =$ area covered, $X =$ number of farm laborers.
- ✎ (b) If 5 laborers are working, what is the area they are expected to cover?
- (c) If 10 hectares are to be covered, how many laborers are required?.
- (d) If 10 people are working, what is the expected area they will cover?

65. Business The table shows the approximate digital share (in percent) of recorded music sales in the United States in recent years. (Data from: www.statista.com.)

Year	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012
Percent	18	25	39	43	47	50	59

- (a) Let $x = 1$ correspond to the year 2006. Use the data points for 2006 and 2012 to find a function of the form $f(x) = a + b \ln x$ that models these data. [Hint: Use (1, 18) to find a ; then use (7, 59) to find b .]
- ✎ (b) Use logarithmic regression to find a function g that models these data, with $x = 1$ corresponding to the year 2006.
- (c) Assume the model remains accurate and predict the percentage for 2014.
- (d) According to the model, when will the share of digital music reach 70%?

66. Physical Science The expected remaining life of an electronic part is believed to be related to the age of the part. The age of 5 parts that were in use on a certain date were recorded in operating hours. When each part burned out, the elapsed time was recorded. The results were as follows

Age of parts (in hours) X	40	65	90	5	30
Remaining life (in hours) Y	30	20	10	80	40

- (a) Find an exponential curve of the form $Y = a + b \ln X$
- (b) What will be the remaining life of the electronic part if its age is 60 hours at present?
- (c) What will be the remaining life of the electronic part which is used only for an hour?

Case Study 4 Gapminder.org

The website www.gapminder.org is committed to displaying economic and health data for countries around the world in a visually compelling way. The goal is to make publicly available data easy for citizens of the world to understand so individuals and policy makers can comprehend trends and make data-driven conclusions. For example, the website uses the size of the bubble on a plot to indicate the population of the country, and the color indicates the region in which the country lies:

Yellow	America
Orange	Europe and Central Asia
Green	Middle East and Northern Africa
Dark Blue	Sub-Saharan Africa
Red	East Asia and the Pacific

Additionally, the website also uses animation to show how variables change over time.

Let's look at an example of two variables of interest as best we can on a printed page. We will use income per-person (in U.S. dollars and measured as gross domestic product per capita) as a measure of a country's wealth as the x -axis variable and life expectancy (in years) at birth as a measure of the health of a country on the y -axis. In Figure 4.24 on the following page we see a bubble for each country in the year 1800.

We see that all the countries are bunched together with quite low income per-person and average life expectancy ranging from 25–40 years. The two large bubbles you see are for the two most populous countries: China (red) and India (light blue). When you visit the website (please do so, it is very cool!) and press the "Play" button at the bottom left, you can see how income per-person and life expectancy change over time for each country. At its conclusion, you obtain Figure 4.25 on the following page, which shows the relationship between income per-person and average life expectancy in the year 2011.

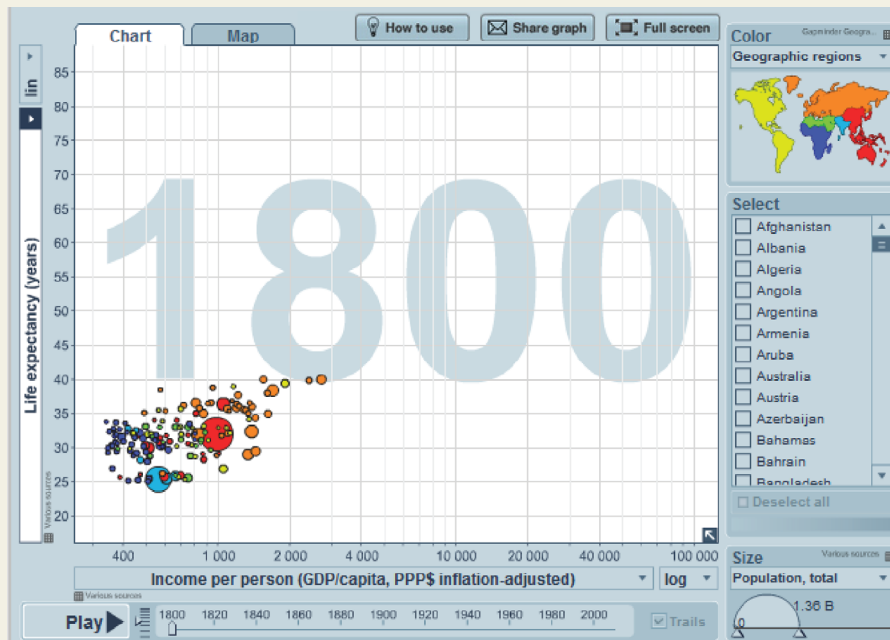


Figure 4.24 Relationship Between Income per Person and Average Life Expectancy in 1800 from Gapminder Foundation. Reproduced by permission of Gapminder Foundation.

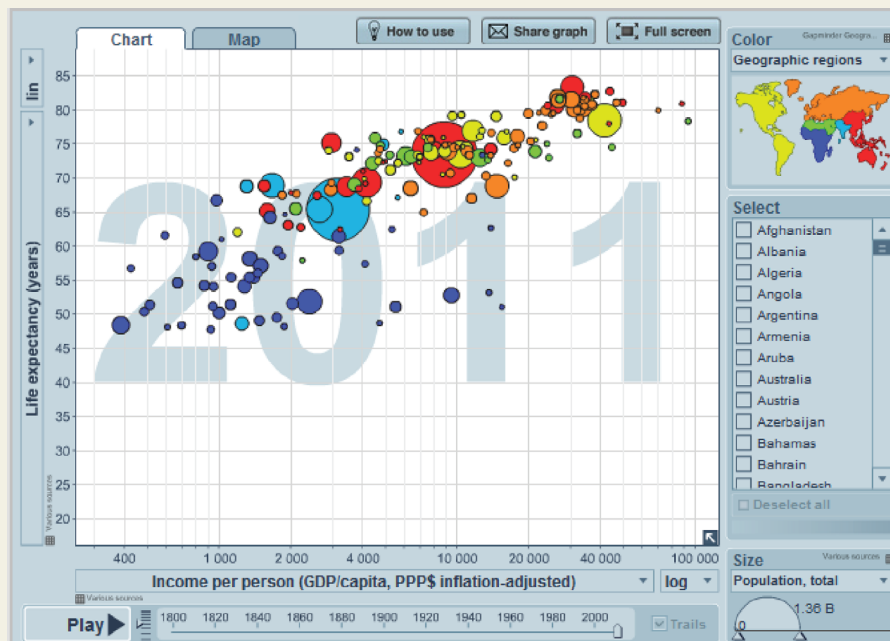


Figure 4.25 Relationship Between Income per Person and Average Life Expectancy in 2011 from Gapminder Foundation. Reproduced by permission of Gapminder Foundation.

We can see that a great deal has changed in 200 years! One great thing is that all countries now have average life expectancy that is over 45 years. This is simply incredible. Also, we see there is a great range of income per-person values for a variety of countries. The country to the far right (the little green dot) is the Middle Eastern country of Qatar. We see that many of the Sub-Sahara countries on the left (in dark blue) have the lowest per-person income and the lowest average life expectancy. The wealthier countries—for example, countries whose per-person income is greater than \$20,000—all have life expectancy over 70 years.

We can actually use the per-person income x to predict the average life expectancy $f(x)$. Note that Gapminder.org has its default showing the income per-person on a logarithmic scale. When we see a linear pattern such as this where the x -axis is on a logarithmic scale and the y -axis is on the regular scale, a model of the form $f(x) = a + b \ln x$ often fits the data well. Since Gapminder.org makes all the data for their graphs available, we can fit a model to find values for a and b . Using regression, we obtain the following model:

$$f(x) = 15.32 + 6.178 \ln x. \quad (1)$$

Gapminder.org will also show the economic development for an individual country. Figure 4.26 shows per capita GDP on the y-axis for the country of Brazil over time. We can see that economic gains began close to the year 1900. The graph shows per-person income on the y-axis (again on a logarithmic scale) and the trend seems approx-

imately linear since 1900. When this is the case, a model of the form $a(b^x)$ usually fits the data well. Letting $x = 0$ correspond to the year 1900, we obtain the following:

$$g(x) = 510.3(1.029)^x \tag{2}$$

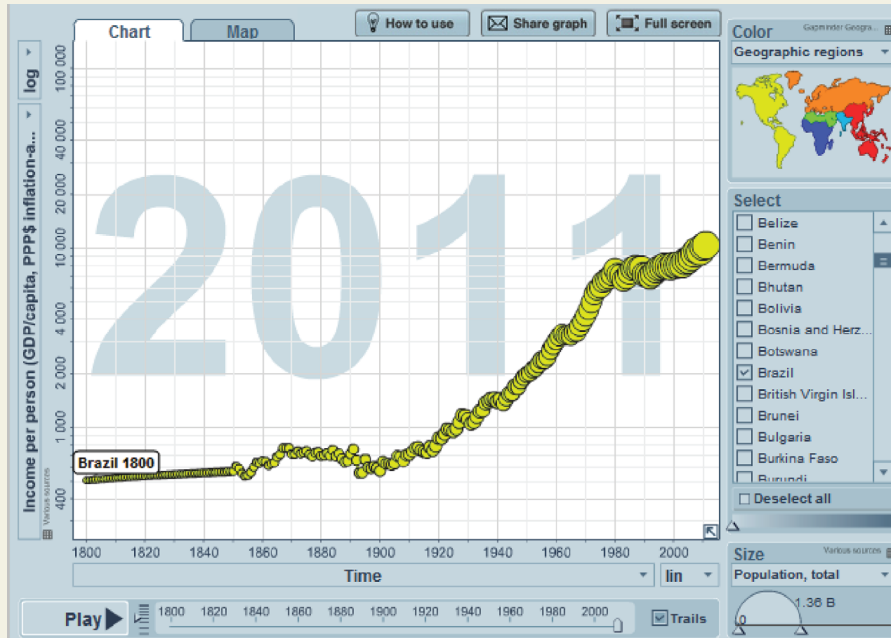


Figure 4.26 Relationship Between Time and per Capita GDP in 2011 from Gapminder Foundation. Reproduced by permission of Gapminder Foundation.

The trajectory of the United States (Figure 4.27) is a bit different, with rising incomes starting in the early 1800s and continuing to the present. Notice the dips that occur in the mid-1930s (the Great Depression) and the early 1940s (World War II). Fitting a model to

the data for the United States (again with $x = 0$ corresponding to the year 1900) yields the model:

$$h(x) = 6229.2(1.018)^x \tag{3}$$

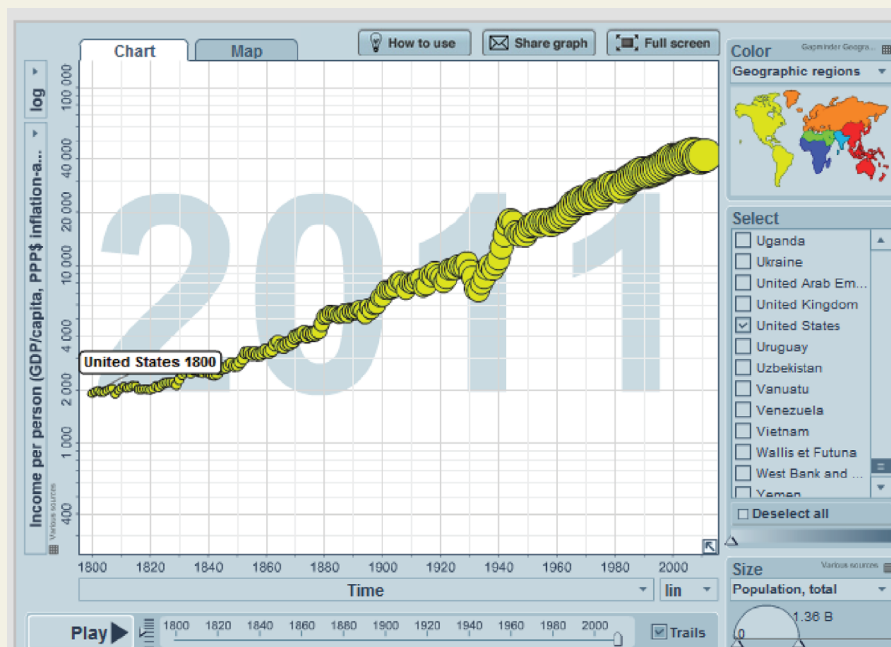


Figure 4.27 Trajectory of United States from Gapminder Foundation. Reproduced by permission of Gapminder Foundation.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–6, use Equation (1) that provides a model using per-person income as the x -variable to predict life expectancy as the y -variable.

1. Create a graph of the function given in Equation (1) from $x = 0$ to 100,000.
2. Describe the shape of the graph.
3. The country farthest to the left in Figure 4.25 is the Democratic Republic of the Congo. In 2011, its income per-person was \$387 and its life expectancy was 48. Suppose that the economic development improved so that the Democratic Republic of the Congo had a per-person income level of \$4000. What does the model of Equation (1) predict for life expectancy?
4. In 2011, Russia had per-person income of \$14,738 and life expectancy of 69 years. What does the model predict for life expectancy if the per-person income improved to \$25,000?
5. According to the model, what per-person income level predicts a life expectancy of 60 years?
6. According to the model, what per-person income level predicts a life expectancy of 75 years?

For Exercises 7–10, use the model in Equation (2) that uses year (with $x = 0$ corresponding to the year 1900) to predict the per-person income for Brazil.

7. Graph the model of Equation (2) from $x = 0$ to 111.
8. Describe the shape of the model.
9. According to the model, what was the per-person income for Brazil in the year 1950? In the year 2000?
10. What year does the model indicate that per-person income reached \$4000?

For Exercises 11–14, use the model in Equation (3) that uses year (with $x = 0$ corresponding to the year 1900) to predict the per-person income for the United States.

11. Graph the model of Equation (3) from $x = 0$ to 111.
12. Describe the shape of the model.
13. According to the model, what was the per-person income for the United States in the year 1960? In the year 2010?
14. What year does the model indicate that per-person income reached \$20,000?

Extended Project

Go to the website www.gapminder.org and explore different relationships. Examine the relationship between a variety of variables that look at relationships among health, climate, disasters, economy, education, family, global trends, HIV, and poverty. (*Hint:* When you have the graphic display showing, click on the button for “Open Graph Menu” to see a list of options in these areas all ready to be viewed.) When observing the different graphs, notice when the x -axis, the y -axis, or both are on a logarithmic scale.

1. Find a relationship that appears linear when the x -axis is on the logarithmic scale and the y -axis is not. Now click on the button to the right of the x -axis and observe the graph on a linear scale (rather than the logarithmic scale). Describe the shape.
2. Find a relationship that appears linear when the x -axis is not on the logarithmic scale, but the y -axis is on the logarithmic scale. Now click on the button above the y -axis and observe the graph on a linear scale (rather than the logarithmic scale). Describe the shape.
3. Find a relationship that appears linear when the x -axis is on the logarithmic scale, and the y -axis is on the logarithmic scale. Now click on the button to the right of the x -axis and click on the button above the y -axis and observe the graph on a linear scale (rather than the logarithmic scale) for both axes. Describe the shape.



Mathematics of Finance

5

CHAPTER


CHAPTER OUTLINE

- 5.1 Simple Interest and Discount
- 5.2 Compound Interest
- 5.3 Annuities, Future Value, and Sinking Funds
- 5.4 Annuities, Present Value, and Amortization

CASE STUDY 5
Continuous Compounding

Most people must take out a loan for a big purchase, such as a car, a major appliance, or a house. People who carry a balance on their credit cards are, in effect, also borrowing money. Loan payments must be accurately determined, and it may take some work to find the “best deal.” See Exercise 54 on page 282 and Exercise 57 on page 262. We must all plan for eventual retirement, which usually involves savings accounts and investments in stocks, bonds, and annuities to fund 401K accounts or individual retirement accounts (IRAs). See Exercises 40 and 41 on page 270.

It is important for both businesspersons and consumers to understand the mathematics of finance in order to make sound financial decisions. Interest formulas for borrowing and investing money are introduced in this chapter.

 **NOTE** We try to present realistic, up-to-date applications in this text. Because interest rates change so frequently, however, it is very unlikely that the rates in effect when this chapter was written are the same as the rates today when you are reading it. Fortunately, the mathematics of finance is the same regardless of the level of interest rates. So we have used a variety of rates in the examples and exercises. Some will be realistic and some won't by the time you see them—but all of them have occurred in the past several decades.

5.1 Simple Interest and Discount

Interest is the fee paid to use someone else's money. Interest on loans of a year or less is frequently calculated as **simple interest**, which is paid only on the amount borrowed or invested and not on past interest. The amount borrowed or deposited is called the

principal. The **rate** of interest is given as a percent per year, expressed as a decimal. For example, $6\% = .06$ and $11\frac{1}{2}\% = .115$. The **time** during which the money is accruing interest is calculated in years. Simple interest is the product of the principal, rate, and time.

Simple Interest

The simple interest I on P dollars at a rate of interest r per year for t years is

$$I = Prt.$$

It is customary in financial problems to round interest to the nearest cent.

Example 1

To furnish her new apartment, Maggie Chan borrowed \$4000 at 3% interest from her parents for 9 months. How much interest will she pay?

Solution Use the formula $I = Prt$, with $P = 4000$, $r = 0.03$, and $t = 9/12 = 3/4$ years:

$$\begin{aligned} I &= Prt \\ I &= 4000 * .03 * \frac{3}{4} = 90. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, Maggie pays a total of \$90 in interest. 

✓ Checkpoint 1

Find the simple interest for each loan.

- (a) \$2000 at 8.5% for 10 months
- (b) \$3500 at 10.5% for $1\frac{1}{2}$ years

Answers to Checkpoint exercises are found at the end of the section.

Simple interest is normally used only for loans with a term of a year or less. A significant exception is the case of **corporate bonds** and similar financial instruments. A typical bond pays simple interest twice a year for a specified length of time, at the end of which the bond **matures**. At maturity, the company returns your initial investment to you.

Example 2

Finance On January 8, 2013, Bank of America issued 10-year bonds at an annual simple interest rate of 3.3%, with interest paid twice a year. John Altieri buys a \$10,000 bond. (Data from: www.finra.org.)

- (a) How much interest will he earn every six months?


Solution Use the interest formula, $I = Prt$, with $P = 10,000$, $r = .033$, and $t = \frac{1}{2}$:

$$I = Prt = 10,000 * .033 * \frac{1}{2} = \$165.$$

- (b) How much interest will he earn over the 10-year life of the bond?

Solution Either use the interest formula with $t = 10$, that is,

$$I = Prt = 10,000 * .033 * 10 = \$3300,$$

or take the answer in part (a), which will be paid out every six months for 10 years for a total of twenty times. Thus, John would obtain $\$165 * 20 = \3300 . 

✓ Checkpoint 2

For the given bonds, find the semiannual interest payment and the total interest paid over the life of the bond.

- (a) \$7500 Time Warner Cable, Inc. 30-year bond at 7.3% annual interest.
- (b) \$15,000 Clear Channel Communications 10-year bond at 9.0% annual interest.

Future Value

If you deposit P dollars at simple interest rate r for t years, then the **future value** (or **maturity value**) A of this investment is the sum of the principal P and the interest I it has earned:

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \text{Principal} + \text{Interest} \\ &= P + I \\ &= P + Prt && I = Prt. \\ &= P(1 + rt). && \text{Factor out } P. \end{aligned}$$

The following box summarizes this result.

Future Value (or Maturity Value) for Simple Interest

The future value (maturity value) A of P dollars for t years at interest rate r per year is

$$A = P + I, \quad \text{or} \quad A = P(1 + rt).$$

Example 3 Find each maturity value and the amount of interest paid.

- (a) Rick borrows \$20,000 from his parents at 5.25% to add a room on his house. He plans to repay the loan in 9 months with a bonus he expects to receive at that time.

Solution The loan is for 9 months, or $9/12$ of a year, so $t = .75$, $P = 20,000$, and $r = .0525$. Use the formula to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} A &= P(1 + rt) \\ &= 20,000[1 + .0525(.75)] \\ &\approx 20,787.5, && \text{Use a calculator.} \end{aligned}$$

or \$20,787.50. The maturity value A is the sum of the principal P and the interest I , that is, $A = P + I$. To find the amount of interest paid, rearrange this equation:

$$\begin{aligned} I &= A - P \\ I &= \$20,787.50 - \$20,000 = \$787.50. \end{aligned}$$

- (b) A loan of \$11,280 for 85 days at 9% interest.

Solution Use the formula $A = P(1 + rt)$, with $P = 11,280$ and $r = .09$. Unless stated otherwise, we assume a 365-day year, so the period in years is $t = 85/365$. The maturity value is

$$\begin{aligned} A &= P(1 + rt) \\ A &= 11,280 \left(1 + .09 * \frac{85}{365} \right) \\ &\approx 11,280(1.020958904) \approx \$11,516.42. \end{aligned}$$

As in part (a), the interest is

$$I = A - P = \$11,516.42 - \$11,280 = \$236.42. \quad \checkmark_3$$

✓Checkpoint 3

Find each future value.

- (a) \$1000 at 4.6% for 6 months
 (b) \$8970 at 11% for 9 months
 (c) \$95,106 at 9.8% for 76 days

Example 4

Suppose you borrow \$15,000 and are required to pay \$15,315 in 4 months to pay off the loan and interest. What is the simple interest rate?

Solution One way to find the rate is to solve for r in the future-value formula when $P = 15,000$, $A = 15,315$, and $t = 4/12 = 1/3$:

$$P(1 + rt) = A$$

$$15,000\left(1 + r * \frac{1}{3}\right) = 15,315$$

$$15,000 + \frac{15,000r}{3} = 15,315$$

Multiply out left side.

$$\frac{15,000r}{3} = 315$$

Subtract 15,000 from both sides.

$$15,000r = 945$$

Multiply both sides by 3.

$$r = \frac{945}{15,000} = .063.$$

Divide both sides by 15,000.

Therefore, the interest rate is 6.3%. 

 **Checkpoint 4**

You lend a friend \$500. She agrees to pay you \$520 in 6 months. What is the interest rate?

Present Value

A sum of money that can be deposited today to yield some larger amount in the future is called the **present value** of that future amount. Present value refers to the principal to be invested or loaned, so we use the same variable P as we did for principal. In interest problems, P always represents the amount at the beginning of the period, and A always represents the amount at the end of the period. To find a formula for P , we begin with the future-value formula:

$$A = P(1 + rt).$$

Dividing each side by $1 + rt$ gives the following formula for the present value.

Present Value for Simple Interest

The **present value** P of a future amount of A dollars at a simple interest rate r for t years is


$$P = \frac{A}{1 + rt}.$$

Example 5

Find the present value of \$32,000 in 4 months at 9% interest.

Solution

$$P = \frac{A}{1 + rt} = \frac{32,000}{1 + (.09)\left(\frac{4}{12}\right)} = \frac{32,000}{1.03} = 31,067.96.$$

A deposit of \$31,067.96 today at 9% interest would produce \$32,000 in 4 months. These two sums, \$31,067.96 today and \$32,000.00 in 4 months, are equivalent (at 9%) because the first amount becomes the second amount in 4 months. 

 **Checkpoint 5**

Find the present value of the given future amounts. Assume 6% interest.


- (a) \$7500 in 1 year
- (b) \$89,000 in 5 months
- (c) \$164,200 in 125 days

Example 6

Because of a court settlement, Jeff Weidenaar owes \$5000 to Chuck Synovec. The money must be paid in 10 months, with no interest. Suppose Weidenaar wants to pay the money today and that Synovec can invest it at an annual rate of 5%. What amount should Synovec be willing to accept to settle the debt?

Solution The \$5000 is the future value in 10 months. So Synovec should be willing to accept an amount that will grow to \$5000 in 10 months at 5% interest. In other words, he should accept the present value of \$5000 under these circumstances. Use the present-value formula with $A = 5000$, $r = .05$, and $t = 10/12 = 5/6$:

$$P = \frac{A}{1 + rt} = \frac{5000}{1 + .05 * \frac{5}{6}} = 4800.$$

Synovec should be willing to accept \$4800 today in settlement of the debt. 

 **Checkpoint 6**

Jerrell Davis is owed \$19,500 by Christine O'Brien. The money will be paid in 11 months, with no interest. If the current interest rate is 10%, how much should Davis be willing to accept today in settlement of the debt?

Example 7


Larry Parks owes \$6500 to Virginia Donovan. The loan is payable in one year at 6% interest. Donovan needs cash to pay medical bills, so four months before the loan is due, she sells the note (loan) to the bank. If the bank wants a return of 9% on its investment, how much should it pay Donovan for the note?

Solution First find the maturity value of the loan—the amount (with interest) that Parks must pay Donovan:

$$\begin{aligned} A &= P(1 + rt) && \text{Maturity-value formula} \\ &= 6500(1 + .06 * 1) && \text{Let } P = 6500, r = .06, \text{ and } t = 1. \\ &= 6500(1.06) = \$6890. \end{aligned}$$

In four months, the bank will receive \$6890. Since the bank wants a 9% return, compute the present value of this amount at 9% for four months:

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \frac{A}{1 + rt} && \text{Present-value formula} \\ &= \frac{6890}{1 + .09\left(\frac{4}{12}\right)} = \$6689.32. && \text{Let } A = 6890, r = .09, \text{ and } t = 4/12. \end{aligned}$$

The bank pays Donovan \$6689.32 and four months later collects \$6890 from Parks. 

 **Checkpoint 7**

A firm accepts a \$21,000 note due in 8 months, with interest of 10.5%. Two months before it is due, the firm sells the note to a broker. If the broker wants a 12.5% return on his investment, how much should he pay for the note?

Discount

The preceding examples dealt with loans in which money is borrowed and simple interest is charged. For most loans, both the principal (amount borrowed) and the interest are paid at the end of the loan period. With a corporate bond (which is a loan to a company by the investor who buys the bond), interest is paid during the life of the bond and the principal is paid back at maturity. In both cases,

the borrower receives the principal,
but pays back the principal *plus* the interest.

In a **simple discount loan**, however, the interest is deducted in advance from the amount of the loan and the *balance* is given to the borrower. The *full value* of the loan must be paid back at maturity. Thus,

the borrower receives the principal *less* the interest,
but pays back the principal.

The most common examples of simple discount loans are U.S. Treasury bills (T-bills), which are essentially short-term loans to the U.S. government by investors. T-bills are sold at a **discount** from their face value and the Treasury pays back the face value of the T-bill at maturity. The discount amount is the interest deducted in advance from the face value. The Treasury receives the face value less the discount, but pays back the full face value.

Example 8 Finance An investor bought a six-month \$8000 treasury bill on February 28, 2013 that sold at a discount rate of .135%. What is the amount of the discount? What is the price of the T-bill? (Data from: www.treasurydirect.gov.)

Solution The discount rate on a T-bill is always a simple *annual* interest rate. Consequently, the discount (interest) is found with the simple interest formula, using $P = 8000$ (face value), $r = .00135$ (discount rate), and $t = .5$ (because 6 months is half a year):

$$\text{Discount} = Prt = 8000 * .00135 * .5 = \$5.40.$$

So the price of the T-bill is

$$\text{Face Value} - \text{Discount} = 8000 - 5.40 = \$7994.60. \quad \checkmark_8$$

In a simple discount loan, such as a T-bill, the discount rate is not the actual interest rate the borrower pays. In Example 8, the discount rate .135% was applied to the face value of \$8000, rather than the \$7994.60 that the Treasury (the borrower) received.

Example 9 Finance Find the actual interest rate paid by the Treasury in Example 8.

Solution Use the formula for simple interest, $I = Prt$ with r as the unknown. Here, $P = 7994.60$ (the amount the Treasury received) and $I = 5.40$ (the discount amount). Since this is a six-month T-bill, $t = .5$, and we have

$$\begin{aligned} I &= Prt \\ 5.40 &= 7994.60(r)(.5) \\ 5.40 &= 3997.3r && \text{Multiply out right side.} \\ r &= \frac{5.40}{3997.3} \approx .0013509. && \text{Divide both sides by 3997.3.} \end{aligned}$$

So the actual interest rate is .13509%. \checkmark_9

✓ Checkpoint 8

The maturity times and discount rates for \$10,000 T-bills sold on March 7, 2013, are given. Find the discount amount and the price of each T-bill.

- one year; .15%
- six months; .12%
- three months; .11%

✓ Checkpoint 9

Find the actual interest rate paid by the Treasury for each T-bill in Checkpoint 8.

5.1 Exercises

Unless stated otherwise, “interest” means simple interest, and “interest rate” and “discount rate” refer to annual rates. Assume 365 days in a year.

- What factors determine the amount of interest earned on a fixed principal?

Find the interest on each of these loans. (See Example 1.)

- \$35,000 at 6% for 9 months
- \$2850 at 7% for 8 months
- \$1875 at 5.3% for 7 months
- \$3650 at 6.5% for 11 months
- \$5160 at 7.1% for 58 days

- \$2830 at 8.9% for 125 days
- \$8940 at 9%; loan made on May 7 and due September 19
- \$5328 at 8%; loan made on August 16 and due December 30
- \$7900 at 7%; loan made on July 7 and due October 25

Finance For each of the given corporate bonds, whose interest rates are provided, find the semiannual interest payment and the total interest earned over the life of the bond. (See Example 2, Data from: www.finra.org.)

- \$5000 IBM, 3-year bond; 1.25%
- \$9000 Barrick Gold Corp., 10-year bond; 3.85%
- \$12,500 Morgan Stanley, 10-year bond; 3.75%

14. \$4500 Goldman Sachs, 3-year bond; 6.75%
15. \$6500 Amazon.com Corp, 10-year bond; 2.5%
16. \$10,000 Wells Fargo, 10-year bond; 3.45%

Find the future value of each of these loans. (See Example 3.)

17. \$12,000 loan at 3.5% for 3 months
18. \$3475 loan at 7.5% for 6 months
19. \$6500 loan at 5.25% for 8 months
20. \$24,500 loan at 9.6% for 10 months

21. What is meant by the *present value* of money?
22. In your own words, describe the *maturity value* of a loan.

Find the present value of each future amount. (See Examples 5 and 6.)

23. \$15,000 for 9 months; money earns 6%
24. \$48,000 for 8 months; money earns 5%
25. \$15,402 for 120 days; money earns 6.3%
26. \$29,764 for 310 days; money earns 7.2%

Finance *The given treasury bills were sold on April 4, 2013. Find (a) the price of the T-bill, and (b) the actual interest rate paid by the Treasury. (See Examples 8 and 9. Data from: www.treasurydirect.gov.)*

27. Three-month \$20,000 T-bill with discount rate of .075%
28. One-month \$12,750 T-bill with discount rate of .070%
29. Six-month \$15,500 T-bill with discount rate of .105%
30. One-year \$7000 T-bill with discount rate of .140%

Finance *Historically, treasury bills offered higher rates. On March 9, 2007 the discount rates were substantially higher than in April, 2013. For the following treasury bills bought in 2007, find (a) the price of the T-bill, and (b) the actual interest rate paid by the Treasury. (See Examples 8 and 9. Data from: www.treasury.gov.)*

31. Three-month \$20,000 T-bill with discount rate of 4.96%
32. One-month \$12,750 T-bill with discount rate of 5.13%
33. Six-month \$15,500 T-bill with discount rate of 4.93%
34. Six-month \$9000 T-bill with discount rate of 4.93%

Finance *Work the following applied problems.*

35. In March 1868, Winston Churchill's grandfather, L.W. Jerome, issued \$1000 bonds (to pay for a road to a race track he owned in what is now the Bronx). The bonds carried a 7% annual interest rate payable semiannually. Mr. Jerome paid the interest until March 1874, at which time New York City assumed responsibility for the bonds (and the road they financed). (Data from: *New York Times*, February 13, 2009.)

- (a) The first of these bonds matured in March 2009. At that time, how much interest had New York City paid on this bond?

- (b) Another of these bonds will not mature until March 2147! At that time, how much interest will New York City have paid on it?

36. An accountant for a corporation forgot to pay the firm's income tax of \$725,896.15 on time. The government charged a penalty of 9.8% interest for the 34 days the money was late. Find the total amount (tax and penalty) that was paid.
37. Mike Branson invested his summer earnings of \$3000 in a savings account for college. The account pays 2.5% interest. How much will this amount to in 9 months?
38. To pay for textbooks, a student borrows \$450 from a credit union at 6.5% simple interest. He will repay the loan in 38 days, when he expects to be paid for tutoring. How much interest will he pay?
39. An account invested in a money market fund grew from \$67,081.20 to \$67,359.39 in a month. What was the interest rate, to the nearest tenth?
40. A \$100,000 certificate of deposit held for 60 days is worth \$101,133.33. To the nearest tenth of a percent, what interest rate was earned?
41. Dave took out a \$7500 loan at 7% and eventually repaid \$7675 (principal and interest). What was the time period of the loan?
42. What is the time period of a \$10,000 loan at 6.75%, in which the total amount of interest paid was \$618.75?
43. Tuition of \$1769 will be due when the spring term begins in 4 months. What amount should a student deposit today, at 3.25%, to have enough to pay the tuition?
44. A firm of accountants has ordered 7 new computers at a cost of \$5104 each. The machines will not be delivered for 7 months. What amount could the firm deposit in an account paying 6.42% to have enough to pay for the machines?
45. John Sun Yee needs \$6000 to pay for remodeling work on his house. A contractor agrees to do the work in 10 months. How much should Yee deposit at 3.6% to accumulate the \$6000 at that time?
46. Lorie Reilly decides to go back to college. For transportation, she borrows money from her parents to buy a small car for \$7200. She plans to repay the loan in 7 months. What amount can she deposit today at 5.25% to have enough to pay off the loan?
47. A six-month \$4000 Treasury bill sold for \$3930. What was the discount rate?
48. A three-month \$7600 Treasury bill carries a discount of \$80.75. What is the discount rate for this T-bill?

Finance *Work the next set of problems, in which you are to find the annual simple interest rate. Consider any fees, dividends, or profits as part of the total interest.*

49. A stock that sold for \$22 at the beginning of the year was selling for \$24 at the end of the year. If the stock paid a dividend of \$.50 per share, what is the simple interest rate on an investment in this stock? (*Hint*: Consider the interest to be the increase in value plus the dividend.)

50. Jerry Ryan borrowed \$8000 for nine months at an interest rate of 7%. The bank also charges a \$100 processing fee. What is the actual interest rate for this loan?
51. You are due a tax refund of \$760. Your tax preparer offers you a no-interest loan to be repaid by your refund check, which will arrive in four weeks. She charges a \$60 fee for this service. What actual interest rate will you pay for this loan? (*Hint:* The time period of this loan is not $4/52$, because a 365-day year is 52 weeks and 1 day. So use days in your computations.)
52. Your cousin is due a tax refund of \$400 in six weeks. His tax preparer has an arrangement with a bank to get him the \$400 now. The bank charges an administrative fee of \$29 plus interest at 6.5%. What is the actual interest rate for this loan? (See the hint for Exercise 51.)
- Finance** Work these problems. (See Example 7.)
53. A building contractor gives a \$13,500 promissory note to a plumber who has loaned him \$13,500. The note is due in nine months with interest at 9%. Three months after the note is signed, the plumber sells it to a bank. If the bank gets a 10% return on its investment, how much will the plumber receive? Will it be enough to pay a bill for \$13,650?
54. Shalia Johnson owes \$7200 to the Eastside Music Shop. She has agreed to pay the amount in seven months at an interest rate of 10%. Two months before the loan is due, the store needs \$7550 to pay a wholesaler's bill. The bank will buy the note, provided that its return on the investment is 11%. How much will the store receive? Is it enough to pay the bill?
55. Let y_1 be the future value after t years of \$100 invested at 8% annual simple interest. Let y_2 be the future value after t years of \$200 invested at 3% annual simple interest.
- (a) Think of y_1 and y_2 as functions of t and write the rules of these functions.
- (b) Without graphing, describe the graphs of y_1 and y_2 .
- (c) Verify your answer to part (b) by graphing y_1 and y_2 in the first quadrant.
- (d) What do the slopes and y -intercepts of the graphs represent (in terms of the investment situation that they describe)?
56. If $y = 16.25t + 250$ and y is the future value after t years of P dollars at interest rate r , what are P and r ? (*Hint:* See Exercise 55.)

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) \$141.67 (b) \$551.25
2. (a) \$273.75; \$16,425 (b) \$675; \$13,500
3. (a) \$1023 (b) \$9710.03 (c) \$97,046.68
4. 8%
5. (a) \$7075.47 (b) \$86,829.27 (c) \$160,893.96
6. \$17,862.60
7. \$22,011.43
8. (a) \$15; \$9985 (b) \$6; \$9994
(c) \$2.75; \$9997.25
9. (a) About .15023% (b) About .12007%
(c) About .11003%

5.2 Compound Interest

With annual simple interest, you earn interest each year on your original investment. With annual **compound interest**, however, you earn interest both on your original investment *and* on any previously earned interest. To see how this process works, suppose you deposit \$1000 at 5% annual interest. The following chart shows how your account would grow with both simple and compound interest:

End of Year	SIMPLE INTEREST		COMPOUND INTEREST	
	Interest Earned	Balance	Interest Earned	Balance
	<i>Original Investment: \$1000</i>		<i>Original Investment: \$1000</i>	
1	$1000(.05) = \$50$	\$1050	$1000(.05) = \$50$	\$1050
2	$1000(.05) = \$50$	\$1100	$1050(.05) = \$52.50$	\$1102.50
3	$1000(.05) = \$50$	\$1150	$1102.50(.05) = \$55.13^*$	\$1157.63

As the chart shows, simple interest is computed each year on the original investment, but compound interest is computed on the entire balance at the end of the preceding year. So simple interest always produces \$50 per year in interest, whereas compound interest

*Rounded to the nearest cent.

✓ Checkpoint 1

Extend the chart in the text by finding the interest earned and the balance at the end of years 4 and 5 for (a) simple interest and (b) compound interest.

produces \$50 interest in the first year and increasingly larger amounts in later years (because you earn interest on your interest). ✓1

Example 1 If \$7000 is deposited in an account that pays 4% interest compounded annually, how much money is in the account after nine years?

Solution After one year, the account balance is

$$\begin{aligned} 7000 + 4\% \text{ of } 7000 &= 7000 + (.04)7000 \\ &= 7000(1 + .04) && \text{Distributive property} \\ &= 7000(1.04) = \$7280. \end{aligned}$$

The initial balance has grown by a factor of 1.04. At the end of the second year, the balance is

$$\begin{aligned} 7280 + 4\% \text{ of } 7280 &= 7280 + (.04)7280 \\ &= 7280(1 + .04) && \text{Distributive property} \\ &= 7280(1.04) = 7571.20. \end{aligned}$$

Once again, the balance at the beginning of the year has grown by a factor of 1.04. This is true in general: If the balance at the beginning of a year is P dollars, then the balance at the end of the year is

$$\begin{aligned} P + 4\% \text{ of } P &= P + .04P \\ &= P(1 + .04) \\ &= P(1.04). \end{aligned}$$

So the account balance grows like this:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Year 1} & \text{Year 2} & \text{Year 3} \\ 7000 \rightarrow 7000(1.04) \rightarrow \frac{[7000(1.04)](1.04)}{7000(1.04)^2} \rightarrow \frac{[7000(1.04)(1.04)](1.04)}{7000(1.04)^3} \rightarrow \cdots \end{array}$$

At the end of nine years, the balance is

$$7000(1.04)^9 = \$9963.18 \quad (\text{rounded to the nearest penny}).$$


The argument used in Example 1 applies in the general case and leads to this conclusion.

Compound Interest

If P dollars are invested at interest rate i per period, then the **compound amount** (future value) A after n compounding periods is

$$A = P(1 + i)^n.$$

In Example 1, for instance, we had $P = 7000$, $n = 9$, and $i = .04$ (so that $1 + i = 1 + .04 = 1.04$).

 **NOTE** Compare this future value formula for compound interest with the one for simple interest from the previous section, using t as the number of years:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Compound interest} & A = P(1 + i)^t; \\ \text{Simple interest} & A = P(1 + it). \end{array}$$

The important distinction between the two formulas is that, in the compound interest formula, the number of years, t , is an *exponent*, so that money grows much more rapidly when interest is compounded.

Example 2

Suppose \$1000 is deposited for six years in an account paying 8.31% per year compounded annually.

(a) Find the compound amount.

Solution In the formula above, $P = 1000$, $i = .0831$, and $n = 6$. The compound amount is

$$\begin{aligned} A &= P(1 + i)^n \\ A &= 1000(1.0831)^6 \\ A &= \$1614.40. \end{aligned}$$

(b) Find the amount of interest earned.

Solution Subtract the initial deposit from the compound amount:

$$\text{Amount of interest} = \$1614.40 - \$1000 = \$614.40. \quad \checkmark_2$$

 **Checkpoint 2**

Suppose \$17,000 is deposited at 4% compounded annually for 11 years.

- (a) Find the compound amount.
 (b) Find the amount of interest earned.

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP**

Spreadsheets are ideal for performing financial calculations. Figure 5.1 shows a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet with the formulas for compound and simple interest used to create columns B and C, respectively, when \$1000 is invested at an annual rate of 10%. Notice how rapidly the compound amount increases compared with the maturity value with simple interest. For more details on the use of spreadsheets in the mathematics of finance, see the *Spreadsheet Manual* that is available with this text.

	A	B	C
1	period	compound	simple
2	1	1100	1100
3	2	1210	1200
4	3	1331	1300
5	4	1464.1	1400
6	5	1610.51	1500
7	6	1771.561	1600
8	7	1948.7171	1700
9	8	2143.58881	1800
10	9	2357.947691	1900
11	10	2593.74246	2000
12	11	2853.116706	2100
13	12	3138.428377	2200
14	13	3452.271214	2300
15	14	3797.498336	2400
16	15	4177.248169	2500
17	16	4594.972986	2600
18	17	5054.470285	2700
19	18	5559.917313	2800
20	19	6115.909045	2900
21	20	6727.499949	3000

Figure 5.1

Example 3

If a \$16,000 investment grows to \$50,000 in 18 years, what is the interest rate (assuming annual compounding)?

Solution Use the compound interest formula, with $P = 16,000$, $A = 50,000$, and $n = 18$, and solve for i :

$$\begin{aligned} P(1 + i)^n &= A \\ 16,000(1 + i)^{18} &= 50,000 \\ (1 + i)^{18} &= \frac{50,000}{16,000} = 3.125 && \text{Divide both sides by 16,000.} \\ \sqrt[18]{(1 + i)^{18}} &= \sqrt[18]{3.125} && \text{Take 18th roots on both sides.} \\ 1 + i &= \sqrt[18]{3.125} \\ i &= \sqrt[18]{3.125} - 1 \approx .06535. && \text{Subtract 1 from both sides.} \end{aligned}$$

So the interest rate is about 6.535%.

Interest can be compounded more than once a year. Common **compounding periods** include

semiannually (2 periods per year),
quarterly (4 periods per year),
monthly (12 periods per year), and
daily (usually 365 periods per year).

When the annual interest i is compounded m times per year, the interest rate per period is understood to be i/m .

Example 4 Finance In April 2013, www.bankrate.com advertised a one-year certificate of deposit (CD) for GE Capital Retail Bank at an interest rate of 1.05%. Find the value of the CD if \$10,000 is invested for one year and interest is compounded according to the given periods.

(a) Annually

Solution Apply the formula $A = P(1 + i)^n$ with $P = 10,000$, $i = .0105$, and $n = 1$:

$$A = P(1 + i)^n = 10,000(1 + .0105)^1 = 10,000(1.0105) = \$10,105.$$

(b) Semiannually

Solution Use the same formula and value of P . Here interest is compounded twice a year, so the number of periods is $n = 2$ and the interest rate per period is $i = \frac{.0105}{2}$:

$$A = P(1 + i)^n = 10,000\left(1 + \frac{.0105}{2}\right)^2 = \$10,105.28.$$

(c) Quarterly

Solution Proceed as in part (b), but now interest is compounded 4 times a year, and so $n = 4$ and the interest rate per period is $i = \frac{.0105}{4}$:

$$A = P(1 + i)^n = 10,000\left(1 + \frac{.0105}{4}\right)^4 = \$10,105.41.$$

(d) Monthly

Solution Interest is compounded 12 times a year, so $n = 12$ and $i = \frac{.0105}{12}$:

$$A = P(1 + i)^n = 10,000\left(1 + \frac{.0105}{12}\right)^{12} = \$10,105.51.$$

(e) Daily

Solution Interest is compounded 365 times a year, so $n = 365$ and $i = \frac{.0105}{365}$:

$$A = P(1 + i)^n = 10,000\left(1 + \frac{.0105}{365}\right)^{365} = \$10,105.55.$$

Example 5 Finance The given CDs were advertised online by various banks in April 2013. Find the future value of each one. (Data from: cdrates.bankaholic.com.)

(a) Nationwide Bank: \$100,000 for 5 years at 1.73% compounded daily.

Solution Use the compound interest formula with $P = 100,000$. Interest is compounded 365 times a year, so the interest rate per period is $i = \frac{.0173}{365}$. Since there are five years, the number of periods in 5 years is $n = 365(5) = 1825$. The future value is

$$A = P(1 + i)^n = 100,000 \left(1 + \frac{.0173}{365} \right)^{1825} = \$109,034.91.$$

(b) California First National Bank: \$5000 for 2 years at 1.06% compounded monthly.


Solution Use the compound interest formula with $P = 5000$. Interest is compounded 12 times a year, so the interest rate per period is $i = \frac{.0106}{12}$. Since there are two years, the number of periods in 2 years is $n = 12(2) = 24$. The future value is

$$A = P(1 + i)^n = 5000 \left(1 + \frac{.0106}{12} \right)^{24} = \$5107.08. \quad \checkmark_3$$

✓ Checkpoint 3

Find the future value for these CDs.

- (a) National Republic Bank of Chicago: \$1000 at 1.3% compounded monthly for 3 years.
- (b) Discover Bank: \$2500 at .8% compounded daily for 9 months (assume 30 days in each month).

 Example 4 shows that the more often interest is compounded, the larger is the amount of interest earned. Since interest is rounded to the nearest penny, however, there is a limit on how much can be earned. In Example 4, part (e), for instance, that limit of \$10,105.55 has been reached. Nevertheless, the idea of compounding more and more frequently leads to a method of computing interest called **continuous compounding** that is used in certain financial situations. The formula for continuous compounding is developed in Case 5, but the formula is given in the following box where $e = 2.7182818 \dots$, which was introduced in Chapter 4.

Continuous Compound Interest

The compound amount A for a deposit of P dollars at an interest rate r per year compounded continuously for t years is given by

$$A = Pe^{rt}.$$

Example 6

Suppose that \$5000 is invested at an annual interest rate of 3.1% compounded continuously for 4 years. Find the compound amount.

Solution In the formula for continuous compounding, let $P = 5000$, $r = .031$, and $t = 4$. Then a calculator with an e^x key shows that


$$A = Pe^{rt} = 5000e^{.031(4)} = \$5660.08. \quad \checkmark_4$$

✓ Checkpoint 4

Find the compound amount for \$7500 invested at an annual interest rate of 2.07% compounded continuously for 3 years.

```
N=365
I%=1.05
PV=-10000
PMT=0
•FV=10105.55166
P/Y=365
C/Y=365
PMT:END BEGIN
```

Figure 5.2

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** TI-84+ and most Casios have a “TVM solver” for financial computations (in the TI APPS/financial menu or the Casio main menu); a similar one can be downloaded for TI-89. Figure 5.2 shows the solution of Example 4(e) on such a solver (FV means future value). The use of these solvers is explained in the next section. Most of the problems in this section can be solved just as quickly with an ordinary calculator.


Ordinary corporate or municipal bonds usually make semiannual simple interest payments. With a **zero-coupon bond**, however, there are no interest payments during the life of the bond. The investor receives a single payment when the bond matures, consisting of

his original investment and the interest (compounded semiannually) that it has earned. Zero-coupon bonds are sold at a substantial discount from their face value, and the buyer receives the face value of the bond when it matures. The difference between the face value and the price of the bond is the interest earned.

Example 7 Doug Payne bought a 15-year zero-coupon bond paying 4.5% interest (compounded semiannually) for \$12,824.50. What is the face value of the bond?

Solution Use the compound interest formula with $P = 12,824.50$. Interest is paid twice a year, so the rate per period is $i = .045/2$, and the number of periods in 15 years is $n = 30$. The compound amount will be the face value:

$$A = P(1 + i)^n = 12,824.50(1 + .045/2)^{30} = 24,999.99618.$$

Rounding to the nearest cent, we see that the face value of the bond is \$25,000. 

✓ Checkpoint 5

Find the face value of the zero coupon.

- (a) 30-year bond at 6% sold for \$2546
- (b) 15-year bond at 5% sold for \$16,686

Example 8 Suppose that the inflation rate is 3.5% (which means that the overall level of prices is rising 3.5% a year). How many years will it take for the overall level of prices to double?

Solution We want to find the number of years it will take for \$1 worth of goods or services to cost \$2. Think of \$1 as the present value and \$2 as the future value, with an interest rate of 3.5%, compounded annually. Then the compound amount formula becomes

$$\begin{aligned} P(1 + i)^n &= A \\ 1(1 + .035)^n &= 2, \end{aligned}$$

which simplifies as

$$1.035^n = 2.$$

We must solve this equation for n . There are several ways to do this.

Graphical Use a graphing calculator (with x in place of n) to find the intersection point of the graphs of $y_1 = 1.035^x$ and $y_2 = 2$. Figure 5.3 shows that the intersection point has (approximate) x -coordinate 20.14879. So it will take about 20.15 years for prices to double.

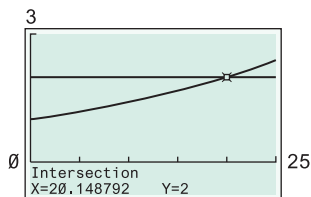


Figure 5.3

Algebraic The same answer can be obtained by using natural logarithms, as in Section 4.4:

$$\begin{aligned} 1.035^n &= 2 \\ \ln 1.035^n &= \ln 2 && \text{Take the logarithm of each side.} \\ n \ln 1.035 &= \ln 2 && \text{Power property of logarithms.} \\ n &= \frac{\ln 2}{\ln 1.035} && \text{Divide both sides by } \ln 1.035. \\ n &\approx 20.14879. && \text{Use a calculator. } \img alt="checkmark icon" data-bbox="761 748 786 764"/> \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 6

Using a calculator, find the number of years it will take for \$500 to increase to \$750 in an account paying 6% interest compounded semiannually.

Effective Rate (APY)

If you invest \$100 at 9%, compounded monthly, then your balance at the end of one year is

$$A = P(1 + i)^n = 100\left(1 + \frac{.09}{12}\right)^{12} = \$109.38.$$

You have earned \$9.38 in interest, which is 9.38% of your original \$100. In other words, \$100 invested at 9.38% compounded *annually* will produce the same amount of interest

(namely, $\$100 * .0938 = \9.38) as does 9% compounded monthly. In this situation, 9% is called the **nominal** or **stated rate**, while 9.38% is called the **effective rate** or **annual percentage yield (APY)**.

In the discussion that follows, the nominal rate is denoted r and the APY (effective rate) is denoted r_E .

Effective Rate (r_E) or Annual Percentage Yield (APY)

The APY r_E is the annual compounding rate needed to produce the same amount of interest in one year, as the nominal rate does with more frequent compounding.

Example 9

Finance In April 2013, Nationwide Bank offered its customers a 5-year \$100,000 CD at 1.73% interest, compounded daily. Find the APY. (Data from: cdrates.bankaholic.com.)

Solution The box given previously means that we must have the following:

\$100,000 at rate r_E compounded annually = \$100,000 at 1.73%, compounded daily

$$100,000(1 + r_E)^1 = 100,000\left(1 + \frac{.0173}{365}\right)^{365} \quad \text{Compound interest formula.}$$

$$(1 + r_E) = \left(1 + \frac{.0173}{365}\right)^{365} \quad \text{Divide both sides by 100,000.}$$

$$r_E = \left(1 + \frac{.0173}{365}\right)^{365} - 1 \quad \text{Subtract 1 from both sides.}$$

$$r_E \approx .0175.$$

So the APY is about 1.75%.

The argument in Example 9 can be carried out with 100,000 replaced by P , .0173 by r , and 365 by m . The result is the effective-rate formula.

Effective Rate (APY)

The effective rate (APY) corresponding to a stated rate of interest r compounded m times per year is

$$r_E = \left(1 + \frac{r}{m}\right)^m - 1.$$

Example 10

Finance When interest rates are low (as they were when this text went to press), the interest rate and the APY are insignificantly different. To see when the difference is more pronounced, we will find the APY for each of the given money market checking accounts (with balances between \$50,000 and \$100,000), which were advertised in October 2008 when offered rates were higher.

(a) Imperial Capital Bank: 3.35% compounded monthly.

Solution Use the effective-rate formula with $r = .0335$ and $m = 12$:

$$r_E = \left(1 + \frac{r}{m}\right)^m - 1 = \left(1 + \frac{.0335}{12}\right)^{12} - 1 = .034019.$$

So the APY is about 3.40%, a slight increase over the nominal rate of 3.35%.

(b) U.S. Bank: 2.33% compounded daily.

Solution Use the formula with $r = .0233$ and $m = 365$:

$$r_E = \left(1 + \frac{r}{m}\right)^m - 1 = \left(1 + \frac{.0233}{365}\right)^{365} - 1 = .023572.$$

The APY is about 2.36%. 

✓ Checkpoint 7

Find the APY corresponding to a nominal rate of

- (a) 12% compounded monthly;
(b) 8% compounded quarterly.

TECHNOLOGY TIP

Effective rates (APYs) can be computed on TI-84+ by using “Eff” in the APPS financial menu, as shown in Figure 5.4 for Example 11.

▶Eff (10.1)	10
▶Eff (9.6, 12)	10.03386937
▶Eff (9.7, 4)	10.05857629

Figure 5.4

✓ Checkpoint 8

Find the APY corresponding to a nominal rate of

- (a) 4% compounded quarterly;
(b) 7.9% compounded daily.

✓ Checkpoint 9

Find P in Example 12 if the interest rate is

- (a) 6%;
(b) 10%.

Example 11

Bank A is now lending money at 10% interest compounded annually. The rate at Bank B is 9.6% compounded monthly, and the rate at Bank C is 9.7% compounded quarterly. If you need to borrow money, at which bank will you pay the least interest?

Solution Compare the APYs:

$$\text{Bank A: } \left(1 + \frac{.10}{1}\right)^1 - 1 = .10 = 10\%;$$

$$\text{Bank B: } \left(1 + \frac{.096}{12}\right)^{12} - 1 \approx .10034 = 10.034\%;$$

$$\text{Bank C: } \left(1 + \frac{.097}{4}\right)^4 - 1 \approx .10059 = 10.059\%.$$

The lowest APY is at Bank A, which has the highest nominal rate. 



NOTE Although you can find both the stated interest rate and the APY for most certificates of deposit and other interest-bearing accounts, most bank advertisements mention only the APY.

Present Value for Compound Interest

The formula for compound interest, $A = P(1 + i)^n$, has four variables: A , P , i , and n . Given the values of any three of these variables, the value of the fourth can be found. In particular, if A (the future amount), i , and n are known, then P can be found. Here, P is the amount that should be deposited today to produce A dollars in n periods.


Example 12

Keisha Jones must pay a lump sum of \$6000 in 5 years. What amount deposited today at 6.2% compounded annually will amount to \$6000 in 5 years?

Solution Here, $A = 6000$, $i = .062$, $n = 5$, and P is unknown. Substituting these values into the formula for the compound amount gives

$$6000 = P(1.062)^5$$

$$P = \frac{6000}{(1.062)^5} = 4441.49,$$

or \$4441.49. If Jones leaves \$4441.49 for 5 years in an account paying 6.2% compounded annually, she will have \$6000 when she needs it. To check your work, use the compound interest formula with $P = 4441.49$, $i = .062$, and $n = 5$. You should get $A = \$6000.00$. 

As Example 12 shows, \$6000 in 5 years is (approximately) the same as \$4441.49 today (if money can be deposited at 6.2% annual interest). An amount that can be deposited today to yield a given amount in the future is called the *present value* of the future amount. By solving $A = P(1 + i)^n$ for P , we get the following general formula for present value.

Present Value for Compound Interest


The **present value** of A dollars compounded at an interest rate i per period for n periods is

$$P = \frac{A}{(1 + i)^n}, \quad \text{or} \quad P = A(1 + i)^{-n}.$$

Example 13 A zero-coupon bond with face value \$15,000 and a 6% interest rate (compounded semiannually) will mature in 9 years. What is a fair price to pay for the bond today?

Solution Think of the bond as a 9-year investment paying 6%, compounded semiannually, whose future value is \$15,000. Its present value (what it is worth today) would be a fair price. So use the present value formula with $A = 15,000$. Since interest is compounded twice a year, the interest rate per period is $i = .06/2 = .03$ and the number of periods in nine years is $n = 9(2) = 18$. Hence,

$$P = \frac{A}{(1 + i)^n} = \frac{15,000}{(1 + .03)^{18}} \approx 8810.919114.$$

So a fair price would be the present value of \$8810.92. 


Checkpoint 10

Find the fair price (present value) in Example 13 if the interest rate is 7.5%.

Example 14 **Economics** The average annual inflation rate for the years 2010–2012 was 2.29%. How much did an item that sells for \$1000 in early 2013 cost three years before? (Data from: inflationdata.com.)

Solution Think of the price three years prior as the present value P and \$1000 as the future value A . Then $i = .0229$, $n = 3$, and the present value is

$$P = \frac{A}{(1 + i)^n} = \frac{1000}{(1 + .0229)^3} = \$934.33.$$

So the item cost \$934.33 three years prior. 

Checkpoint 11

What did a \$1000 item sell for 5 years prior if the annual inflation rate has been 3.2%?

Summary

At this point, it seems helpful to summarize the notation and the most important formulas for simple and compound interest. We use the following variables:

- P = principal or present value;
- A = future or maturity value;
- r = annual (stated or nominal) interest rate;
- t = number of years;
- m = number of compounding periods per year;
- i = interest rate per period;
- n = total number of compounding periods;
- r_E = effective rate (APY).

Simple Interest

$$A = P(1 + rt)$$

$$P = \frac{A}{1 + rt}$$

Compound Interest

$$A = P(1 + i)^n$$

$$P = \frac{A}{(1 + i)^n} = A(1 + i)^{-n}$$

$$r_E = \left(1 + \frac{r}{m}\right)^m - 1$$

Continuous Compounding

$$A = Pe^{rt}$$

$$P = \frac{A}{e^{rt}}$$

5.2 Exercises

Interest on the zero-coupon bonds here is compounded semiannually.

1. In the preceding summary what is the difference between r and i ? between t and n ?
2. Explain the difference between simple interest and compound interest.
3. What factors determine the amount of interest earned on a fixed principal?
4. In your own words, describe the *maturity value* of a loan.
5. What is meant by the *present value* of money?
6. If interest is compounded more than once per year, which rate is higher, the stated rate or the effective rate?

Find the compound amount and the interest earned for each of the following deposits. (See Examples 1, 2, 4, and 5.)

7. \$1000 at 4% compounded annually for 6 years
8. \$1000 at 6% compounded annually for 10 years
9. \$470 at 8% compounded semiannually for 12 years
10. \$15,000 at 4.6% compounded semiannually for 11 years
11. \$6500 at 4.5% compounded quarterly for 8 years
12. \$9100 at 6.1% compounded quarterly for 4 years

Finance *The following CDs were available on www.bankrate.com on April 13, 2013. Find the compound amount and the interest earned for each of the following. (See Example 5.)*

13. Virtual Bank: \$10,000 at .9% compounded daily for 1 year
14. AloStar Bank of Commerce: \$1000 at .85% compounded daily for 1 year
15. USAA: \$5000 at .81% compounded monthly for 2 years
16. Centennial Bank: \$20,000 at .45% compounded monthly for 2 years
17. E-LOAN: \$100,000 at 1.52% compounded daily for 5 years
18. Third Federal Savings and Loans: \$150,000 at 1.15% compounded quarterly for 5 years

Find the interest rate (with annual compounding) that makes the statement true. (See Example 3.)

19. \$3000 grows to \$3606 in 5 years
20. \$2550 grows to \$3905 in 11 years
21. \$8500 grows to \$12,161 in 7 years
22. \$9000 grows to \$17,118 in 16 years

Find the compound amount and the interest earned when the following investments have continuous compounding. (See Example 6.)

23. \$20,000 at 3.5% for 5 years
24. \$15,000 at 2.9% for 10 years

25. \$30,000 at 1.8% for 3 years
26. \$100,000 at 5.1% for 20 years

Find the face value (to the nearest dollar) of the zero-coupon bond. (See Example 7.)

27. 15-year bond at 5.2%; price \$4630
28. 10-year bond at 4.1%; price \$13,328
29. 20-year bond at 3.5%; price \$9992

30. How do the nominal, or stated, interest rate and the effective interest rate (APY) differ?

Find the APY corresponding to the given nominal rates. (See Examples 9–11).

31. 4% compounded semiannually
32. 6% compounded quarterly
33. 5% compounded quarterly
34. 4.7% compounded semiannually

Find the present value of the given future amounts. (See Example 12.)

35. \$12,000 at 5% compounded annually for 6 years
36. \$8500 at 6% compounded annually for 9 years
37. \$17,230 at 4% compounded quarterly for 10 years
38. \$5240 at 6% compounded quarterly for 8 years

What price should you be willing to pay for each of these zero-coupon bonds? (See Example 13.)

39. 5-year \$5000 bond; interest at 3.5%
40. 10-year \$10,000 bond; interest at 4%
41. 15-year \$20,000 bond; interest at 4.7%
42. 20-year \$15,000 bond; interest at 5.3%

Finance *For Exercises 43 and 44, assume an annual inflation rate of 2.07% (the annual inflation rate of 2012 according to www.InflationData.com). Find the previous price of the following items. (See Example 14.)*

43. How much did an item that costs \$5000 now cost 4 years prior?
44. How much did an item that costs \$7500 now cost 5 years prior?
45. If the annual inflation rate is 3.6%, how much did an item that costs \$500 now cost 2 years prior?
46. If the annual inflation rate is 1.18%, how much did an item that costs \$1250 now cost 6 years prior?
47. If money can be invested at 8% compounded quarterly, which is larger, \$1000 now or \$1210 in 5 years? Use present value to decide.
48. If money can be invested at 6% compounded annually, which is larger, \$10,000 now or \$15,000 in 6 years? Use present value to decide.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- | | | | | | |
|--------|-------------|----------|-----------|--------|------------------------------|
| 1. (a) | Year | Interest | Balance | 4. | \$7980.52 |
| | 4 | \$50 | \$1200 | 5. (a) | \$15,000 |
| | 5 | \$50 | \$1250 | (b) | \$35,000 |
| (b) | Year | Interest | Balance | 6. | About 7 years ($n = 6.86$) |
| | 4 | \$57.88 | \$1215.51 | 7. (a) | 12.68% |
| | 5 | \$60.78 | \$1276.29 | (b) | 8.24% |
| 2. (a) | \$26,170.72 | (b) | \$9170.72 | 8. (a) | 4.06% |
| 3. (a) | \$1039.75 | (b) | \$2514.84 | 9. (a) | \$4483.55 |
| | | | | (b) | \$3725.53 |
| | | | | 10. | \$7732.24 |
| | | | | (b) | \$854.28 |

5.3 Annuities, Future Value, and Sinking Funds

So far in this chapter, only lump-sum deposits and payments have been discussed. Many financial situations, however, involve a sequence of payments at regular intervals, such as weekly deposits in a savings account or monthly payments on a mortgage or car loan. Such periodic payments are the subject of this section and the next.

The analysis of periodic payments will require an algebraic technique that we now develop. Suppose x is a real number. For reasons that will become clear later, we want to find the product

$$(x - 1)(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + \cdots + x^{11}).$$

Using the distributive property to multiply this expression out, we see that all but two of the terms cancel:

$$\begin{aligned} x(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + \cdots + x^{11}) - 1(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + \cdots + x^{11}) \\ = (x + x^2 + x^3 + \cdots + x^{11} + x^{12}) - 1 - x - x^2 - x^3 - \cdots - x^{11} \\ = x^{12} - 1. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, $(x - 1)(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + \cdots + x^{11}) = x^{12} - 1$. Dividing both sides by $x - 1$, we have

$$1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + \cdots + x^{11} = \frac{x^{12} - 1}{x - 1}.$$

The same argument, with any positive integer n in place of 12 and $n - 1$ in place of 11, produces the following result:

If x is a real number and n is a positive integer, then

$$1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + \cdots + x^{n-1} = \frac{x^n - 1}{x - 1}.$$

For example, when $x = 5$ and $n = 7$, we see that

$$1 + 5 + 5^2 + 5^3 + 5^4 + 5^5 + 5^6 = \frac{5^7 - 1}{5 - 1} = \frac{78,124}{4} = 19,531.$$

A calculator can easily add up the terms on the left side, but it is faster to use the formula (Figure 5.5).

$$\begin{array}{l} 1+5+5^2+5^3+5^4+5^5+5^6 \\ \hline 19531 \\ 5^7-1 \\ \hline 5-1 \\ \hline 19531 \end{array}$$

Figure 5.5

Ordinary Annuities

A sequence of equal payments made at equal periods of time is called an **annuity**. The time between payments is the **payment period**, and the time from the beginning of the first payment period to the end of the last period is called the **term of the annuity**. Annuities can be used to accumulate funds—for example, when you make regular deposits in a savings account. Or they can be used to pay out funds—as when you receive regular payments from a pension plan after you retire.

Annuities that pay out funds are considered in the next section. This section deals with annuities in which funds are accumulated by regular payments into an account or investment that earns compound interest. The **future value** of such an annuity is the final sum on deposit—that is, the total amount of all deposits and all interest earned by them.

We begin with **ordinary annuities**—ones where the payments are made at the *end* of each period and the frequency of payments is the same as the frequency of compounding the interest.

Example 1

\$1500 is deposited at the end of each year for the next 6 years in an account paying 8% interest compounded annually. Find the future value of this annuity.

Solution Figure 5.6 shows the situation schematically.

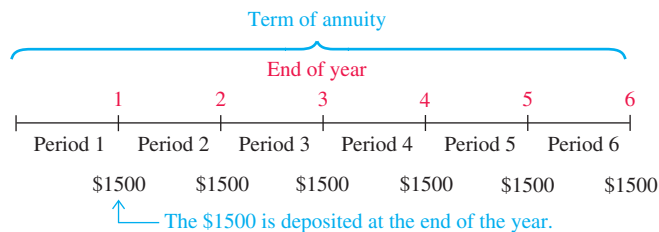


Figure 5.6

To find the future value of this annuity, look separately at each of the \$1500 payments. The first \$1500 is deposited at the end of period 1 and earns interest for the remaining 5 periods. From the formula in the box on page 253, the compound amount produced by this payment is

$$1500(1 + .08)^5 = 1500(1.08)^5.$$

The second \$1500 payment is deposited at the end of period 2 and earns interest for the remaining 4 periods. So the compound amount produced by the second payment is

$$1500(1 + .08)^4 = 1500(1.08)^4.$$

Continue to compute the compound amount for each subsequent payment, as shown in Figure 5.7. Note that the last payment earns no interest.

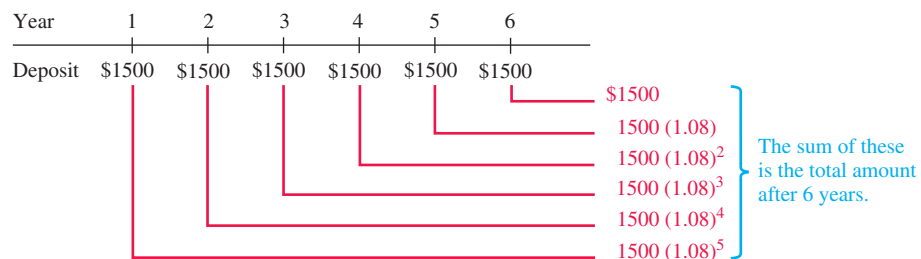


Figure 5.7

The last column of Figure 5.7 shows that the total amount after 6 years is the sum

$$\begin{aligned} &1500 + 1500 \cdot 1.08 + 1500 \cdot 1.08^2 + 1500 \cdot 1.08^3 + 1500 \cdot 1.08^4 + 1500 \cdot 1.08^5 \\ &= 1500(1 + 1.08 + 1.08^2 + 1.08^3 + 1.08^4 + 1.08^5). \end{aligned} \quad (1)$$

Now apply the algebraic fact in the box on page 263 to the expression in parentheses (with $x = 1.08$ and $n = 6$). It shows that the sum (the future value of the annuity) is

$$1500 \cdot \frac{1.08^6 - 1}{1.08 - 1} = \$11,003.89. \quad \checkmark_1$$

✓ Checkpoint 1

Complete these steps for an annuity of \$2000 at the end of each year for 3 years. Assume interest of 6% compounded annually.

- (a) The first deposit of \$2000 produces a total of _____.
- (b) The second deposit becomes _____.
- (c) No interest is earned on the third deposit, so the total in the account is _____.

Example 1 is the model for finding a formula for the future value of any annuity. Suppose that a payment of R dollars is deposited at the end of each period for n periods, at an interest rate of i per period. Then the future value of this annuity can be found by using the procedure in Example 1, with these replacements:

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} 1500 & & .08 & & 1.08 & & 6 & & 5 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ R & & i & & 1 + i & & n & & n - 1 \end{array}$$

The future value S in Example 1—call it S —is the sum (1), which now becomes

$$S = R[1 + (1 + i) + (1 + i)^2 + \cdots + (1 + i)^{n-2} + (1 + i)^{n-1}].$$

Apply the algebraic fact in the box on page 263 to the expression in brackets (with $x = 1 + i$). Then we have

$$S = R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{(1 + i) - 1} \right] = R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i} \right].$$

The quantity in brackets in the right-hand part of the preceding equation is sometimes written $s_{\overline{n}|i}$ (read “s-angle- n at i ”). So we can summarize as follows.*

Future Value of an Ordinary Annuity

The future value S of an ordinary annuity used to accumulate funds is given by

$$S = R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i} \right], \quad \text{or} \quad S = R \cdot s_{\overline{n}|i}$$

where

- R is the payment at the end of each period,
- i is the interest rate per period, and
- n is the number of periods.

TECHNOLOGY TIP Most computations with annuities can be done quickly with a spreadsheet program or a graphing calculator. On a calculator, use the TVM solver if there is one (see the Technology Tip on page 256); otherwise, use the programs in the Program Appendix.

Figure 5.8 shows how to do Example 1 on a TI-84+ TVM solver. First, enter the known quantities: N = number of payments, $I\%$ = annual interest rate, PV = present value, PMT = payment per period (entered as a negative amount), P/Y = number of payments per year, and C/Y = number of compoundings per year. At the bottom of the screen, set PMT : to “END” for ordinary annuities. Then put the cursor next to the unknown amount FV (future value), and press SOLVE.

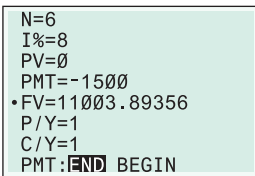


Figure 5.8

Note: P/Y and C/Y should always be the same for problems in this text. If you use the solver for ordinary compound interest problems, set $PMT = 0$ and enter either PV or FV (whichever is known) as a negative amount.

Example 2

A rookie player in the National Football League just signed his first 7-year contract. To prepare for his future, he deposits \$150,000 at the end of each year for 7 years in an account paying 4.1% compounded annually. How much will he have on deposit after 7 years?

*We use S for the future value here instead of A , as in the compound interest formula, to help avoid confusing the two formulas.

✓ Checkpoint 2

Johnson Building Materials deposits \$2500 at the end of each year into an account paying 8% per year compounded annually. Find the total amount on deposit after

- (a) 6 years;
(b) 10 years.

Solution His payments form an ordinary annuity with $R = 150,000$, $n = 7$, and $i = .041$. The future value of this annuity (by the previous formula) is

$$S = 150,000 \left[\frac{(1.041)^7 - 1}{.041} \right] = \$1,188,346.11. \quad \checkmark_2$$


Example 3

Allyson, a college professor, contributed \$950 a month to the CREF stock fund (an investment vehicle available to many college and university employees). For the past 10 years this fund has returned 4.25%, compounded monthly.

(a) How much did Allyson earn over the course of the last 10 years?

Solution Allyson's payments form an ordinary annuity, with monthly payment $R = 950$. The interest per month is $i = \frac{.0425}{12}$, and the number of months in 10 years is $n = 10 * 12 = 120$. The future value of this annuity is

$$S = R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i} \right] = 950 \left[\frac{(1 + .0425/12)^{120} - 1}{.0425/12} \right] = \$141,746.90.$$

 (b) As of April 14, 2013, the year to date return was 9.38%, compounded monthly. If this rate were to continue, and Allyson continues to contribute \$950 a month, how much would the account be worth at the end of the next 15 years?

Solution Deal separately with the two parts of her account (the \$950 contributions in the future and the \$141,746.90 already in the account). The contributions form an ordinary annuity as in part (a). Now we have $R = 950$, $i = .0938/12$, and $n = 12 * 15 = 180$. So the future value is

$$S = R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i} \right] = 950 \left[\frac{(1 + .0938/12)^{180} - 1}{.0938/12} \right] = \$372,068.65.$$

Meanwhile, the \$141,746.90 from the first 10 years is also earning interest at 9.38%, compounded monthly. By the compound amount formula (Section 5.2), the future value of this money is

$$141,746.90(1 + .0938/12)^{180} = \$575,691.85.$$

So the total amount in Allyson's account after 25 years is the sum

$$\$372,068.65 + \$575,691.85 = \$947,760.50. \quad \checkmark_3$$

✓ Checkpoint 3

Find the total value of the account in part (b) of Example 3 if the fund's return for the last 15 years is 8.72%, compounded monthly.

Sinking Funds

A **sinking fund** is a fund set up to receive periodic payments. Corporations and municipalities use sinking funds to repay bond issues, to retire preferred stock, to provide for replacement of fixed assets, and for other purposes. If the payments are equal and are made at the end of regular periods, they form an ordinary annuity.

Example 4

A business sets up a sinking fund so that it will be able to pay off bonds it has issued when they mature. If it deposits \$12,000 at the end of each quarter in an account that earns 5.2% interest, compounded quarterly, how much will be in the sinking fund after 10 years?

Solution The sinking fund is an annuity, with $R = 12,000$, $i = .052/4$, and $n = 4(10) = 40$. The future value is

$$S = R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i} \right] = 12,000 \left[\frac{(1 + .052/4)^{40} - 1}{.052/4} \right] = \$624,369.81.$$

So there will be about \$624,370 in the sinking fund.

Example 5

A firm borrows \$6 million to build a small factory. The bank requires it to set up a \$200,000 sinking fund to replace the roof after 15 years. If the firm’s deposits earn 6% interest, compounded annually, find the payment it should make at the end of each year into the sinking fund.

Solution This situation is an annuity with future value $S = 200,000$, interest rate $i = .06$, and $n = 15$. Solve the future-value formula for R :

$$S = R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i} \right]$$

$$200,000 = R \left[\frac{(1 + .06)^{15} - 1}{.06} \right] \quad \text{Let } S = 200,000, i = .06, \text{ and } n = 15.$$

$$200,000 = R[23.27597] \quad \text{Compute the quantity in brackets.}$$

$$R = \frac{200,000}{23.27597} = \$8592.55. \quad \text{Divide both sides by 23.27597.}$$

So the annual payment is about \$8593. ✓₄

✓ **Checkpoint 4**

Francisco Arce needs \$8000 in 6 years so that he can go on an archaeological dig. He wants to deposit equal payments at the end of each quarter so that he will have enough to go on the dig. Find the amount of each payment if the bank pays

- (a) 12% interest compounded quarterly;
- (b) 8% interest compounded quarterly.

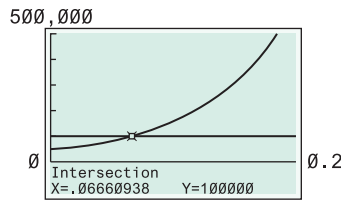


Figure 5.9

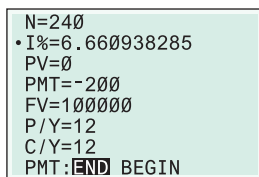


Figure 5.10

Example 6

As an incentive for a valued employee to remain on the job, a company plans to offer her a \$100,000 bonus, payable when she retires in 20 years. If the company deposits \$200 a month in a sinking fund, what interest rate must it earn, with monthly compounding, in order to guarantee that the fund will be worth \$100,000 in 20 years?

Solution The sinking fund is an annuity with $R = 200$, $n = 12(20) = 240$, and future value $S = 100,000$. We must find the interest rate. If x is the annual interest rate in decimal form, then the interest rate per month is $i = x/12$. Inserting these values into the future-value formula, we have

$$R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i} \right] = S$$

$$200 \left[\frac{(1 + x/12)^{240} - 1}{x/12} \right] = 100,000.$$

This equation is hard to solve algebraically. You can get a rough approximation by using a calculator and trying different values for x . With a graphing calculator, you can get an accurate solution by graphing

$$y_1 = 200 \left[\frac{(1 + x/12)^{240} - 1}{x/12} \right] \quad \text{and} \quad y_2 = 100,000$$

and finding the x -coordinate of the point where the graphs intersect. Figure 5.9 shows that the company needs an interest rate of about 6.661%. The same answer can be obtained on a TVM solver (Figure 5.10). ✓₅

✓ **Checkpoint 5**

Pete’s Pizza deposits \$5800 at the end of each quarter for 4 years.

- (a) Find the final amount on deposit if the money earns 6.4% compounded quarterly.
- (b) Pete wants to accumulate \$110,000 in the 4-year period. What interest rate (to the nearest tenth) will be required?

Annuities Due

The formula developed previously is for *ordinary annuities*—annuities with payments at the *end* of each period. The results can be modified slightly to apply to **annuities due**—annuities where payments are made at the *beginning* of each period.

An example will illustrate how this is done. Consider an annuity due in which payments of \$100 are made for 3 years, and an ordinary annuity in which payments of \$100 are made for 4 years, both with 5% interest, compounded annually. Figure 5.11 computes the growth of each payment separately (as was done in Example 1).

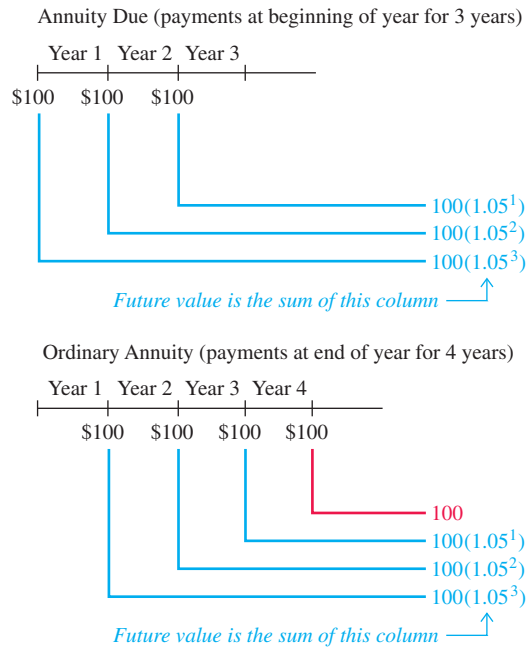


Figure 5.11

Figure 5.11 shows that the future values are the same, *except* for one \$100 payment on the ordinary annuity (shown in red). So we can use the formula on page 265 to find the future value of the 4-year ordinary annuity and then subtract one \$100 payment to get the future value of the 3-year annuity due:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Future value of} \\ \text{3-year annuity due} \end{array} = \begin{array}{l} \text{Future value of} \\ \text{4-year ordinary annuity} \end{array} - \text{One payment}$$

$$S = 100 \left[\frac{1.05^4 - 1}{.05} \right] - 100 = \$331.01.$$

Essentially the same argument works in the general case.

Future Value of an Annuity Due

The future value S of an annuity due used to accumulate funds is given by

$$S = R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^{n+1} - 1}{i} \right] - R$$

Future value of
 $S =$ an ordinary annuity $-$ One payment,
 of $n + 1$ payments

where

- R is the payment at the beginning of each period,
- i is the interest rate per period, and
- n is the number of periods.

Example 7

Payments of \$500 are made at the beginning of each quarter for 7 years in an account paying 8% interest, compounded quarterly. Find the future value of this annuity due.

✓Checkpoint 6

- (a) Ms. Black deposits \$800 at the beginning of each 6-month period for 5 years. Find the final amount if the account pays 6% compounded semiannually.
- (b) Find the final amount if this account were an ordinary annuity.

TECHNOLOGY TIP

When a TVM solver is used for annuities due, the PMT: setting at the bottom of the screen should be "BEGIN". See Figure 5.12, which shows the solution of Example 8.

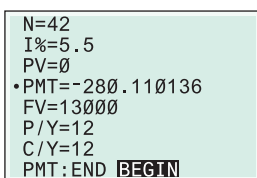


Figure 5.12

Solution In 7 years, there are $n = 28$ quarterly periods. For an annuity due, add one period to get $n + 1 = 29$, and use the formula with $i = .08/4 = .02$:

$$S = R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^{n+1} - 1}{i} \right] - R = 500 \left[\frac{(1 + .02)^{29} - 1}{.02} \right] - 500 = \$18,896.12.$$

After 7 years, the account balance will be \$18,896.12. ✓6

Example 8

Jay Rechten plans to have a fixed amount from his paycheck directly deposited into an account that pays 5.5% interest, compounded monthly. If he gets paid on the first day of the month and wants to accumulate \$13,000 in the next three-and-a-half years, how much should he deposit each month?

Solution Jay's deposits form an annuity due whose future value is $S = 13,000$. The interest rate is $i = .055/12$. There are 42 months in three-and-a-half years. Since this is an annuity due, add one period, so that $n + 1 = 43$. Then solve the future-value formula for the payment R :

$$R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^{n+1} - 1}{i} \right] - R = S$$

$$R \left[\frac{(1 + .055/12)^{43} - 1}{.055/12} \right] - R = 13,000$$

Let $i = .055/12$, $n = 43$, and $S = 13,000$.

$$R \left(\left[\frac{(1 + .055/12)^{43} - 1}{.055/12} \right] - 1 \right) = 13,000$$

Factor out R on left side.

$$R(46.4103) = 13,000$$

Compute left side.

$$R = \frac{13,000}{46.4103} = 280.110.$$

Divide both sides by 46.4103.

Jay should have \$280.11 deposited from each paycheck.

5.3 Exercises

Note: Unless stated otherwise, all payments are made at the end of the period.

Find each of these sums (to 4 decimal places).

1. $1 + 1.05 + 1.05^2 + 1.05^3 + \dots + 1.05^{14}$
2. $1 + 1.046 + 1.046^2 + 1.046^3 + \dots + 1.046^{21}$

Find the future value of the ordinary annuities with the given payments and interest rates. (See Examples 1, 2, 3(a), and 4.)

3. $R = \$12,000$, 6.2% interest compounded annually for 8 years
4. $R = \$20,000$, 4.5% interest compounded annually for 12 years
5. $R = \$865$, 6% interest compounded semiannually for 10 years
6. $R = \$7300$, 9% interest compounded semiannually for 6 years
7. $R = \$1200$, 8% interest compounded quarterly for 10 years
8. $R = \$20,000$, 6% interest compounded quarterly for 12 years

Find the final amount (rounded to the nearest dollar) in each of these retirement accounts, in which the rate of return on the


account and the regular contribution change over time. (See Example 3.)

9. \$400 per month invested at 4%, compounded monthly, for 10 years; then \$600 per month invested at 6%, compounded monthly, for 10 years.
10. \$500 per month invested at 5%, compounded monthly, for 20 years; then \$1000 per month invested at 8%, compounded monthly, for 20 years.
11. \$1000 per quarter invested at 4.2%, compounded quarterly, for 10 years; then \$1500 per quarter invested at 7.4%, compounded quarterly, for 15 years.
12. \$1500 per quarter invested at 7.4%, compounded quarterly, for 15 years; then \$1000 per quarter invested at 4.2%, compounded quarterly, for 10 years. (Compare with Exercise 11.)


Find the amount of each payment to be made into a sinking fund to accumulate the given amounts. Payments are made at the end of each period. (See Example 5.)


13. \$11,000; money earns 5% compounded semiannually for 6 years

14. \$65,000; money earns 6% compounded semiannually for $4\frac{1}{2}$ years
15. \$50,000; money earns 8% compounded quarterly for $2\frac{1}{2}$ years
16. \$25,000; money earns 9% compounded quarterly for $3\frac{1}{2}$ years
17. \$6000; money earns 6% compounded monthly for 3 years
18. \$9000; money earns 7% compounded monthly for $2\frac{1}{2}$ years

 **Find the interest rate needed for the sinking fund to reach the required amount. Assume that the compounding period is the same as the payment period. (See Example 6.)**

19. \$50,000 to be accumulated in 10 years; annual payments of \$3940.
20. \$100,000 to be accumulated in 15 years; quarterly payments of \$1200.
21. \$38,000 to be accumulated in 5 years; quarterly payments of \$1675.
22. \$77,000 to be accumulated in 20 years; monthly payments of \$195.

 **23.** What is meant by a sinking fund? List some reasons for establishing a sinking fund.

 **24.** Explain the difference between an ordinary annuity and an annuity due.

Find the future value of each annuity due. (See Example 7.)

25. Payments of \$500 for 10 years at 5% compounded annually
26. Payments of \$1050 for 8 years at 3.5% compounded annually
27. Payments of \$16,000 for 11 years at 4.7% compounded annually
28. Payments of \$25,000 for 12 years at 6% compounded annually
29. Payments of \$1000 for 9 years at 8% compounded semiannually
30. Payments of \$750 for 15 years at 6% compounded semiannually
31. Payments of \$100 for 7 years at 9% compounded quarterly
32. Payments of \$1500 for 11 years at 7% compounded quarterly



Find the payment that should be used for the annuity due whose future value is given. Assume that the compounding period is the same as the payment period. (See Example 8.)

33. \$8000; quarterly payments for 3 years; interest rate 4.4%
34. \$12,000; annual payments for 6 years; interest rate 5.1%
35. \$55,000; monthly payments for 12 years; interest rate 5.7%
36. \$125,000; monthly payments for 9 years; interest rate 6%

Finance *Work the following applied problems.*

37. A typical pack-a-day smoker in Ohio spends about \$170 per month on cigarettes. Suppose the smoker invests that amount at the end of each month in an investment fund that pays a return

of 5.3% compounded monthly. What would the account be worth after 40 years? (Data from: www.theawl.com.)

38. A typical pack-a-day smoker in Illinois spends about \$307.50 per month on cigarettes. Suppose the smoker invests that amount at the end of each month in an investment fund that pays a return of 4.9% compounded monthly. What would the account be worth after 40 years? (Data from: www.theawl.com.)
39. The Vanguard Explorer Value fund had as of April 2013 a 10-year average return of 10.99%. (Data from: www.vanguard.com.)
- (a) If Becky Anderson deposited \$800 a month in the fund for 10 years, find the final value of the amount of her investments. Assume monthly compounding.
- (b) If Becky had invested instead with the Vanguard Growth and Income fund, which had an average annual return of 7.77%, what would the final value of the amount of her investments be? Assume monthly compounding.
- (c) How much more did the Explorer Value fund generate than the Growth and Income fund?
40. The Janus Enterprise fund had as of April 2013 a 10-year average return of 12.54%. (Data from: www.janus.com.)
- (a) If Elaine Chuha deposited \$625 a month in the fund for 8 years, find the final value of the amount of her investments. Assume monthly compounding.
- (b) If Elaine had invested instead with the Janus Twenty fund, which had an average annual return of 10.63%, what would the final value of the amount of her investments be? Assume monthly compounding.
- (c) How much more did the Janus Enterprise fund generate than the Janus Twenty fund?
-  **41.** Brian Feister, a 25-year-old professional, invests \$200 a month in the T. Rowe Price Capital Opportunity fund, which has a 10-year average return of 8.75%. (Data from: www.troweprice.com.)
- (a) Brian wants to estimate what he will have for retirement when he is 60 years old if the rate stays constant. Assume monthly compounding.
- (b) If Brian makes no further deposits and makes no withdrawals after age 60, how much will he have for retirement at age 65?
-  **42.** Ian Morrison, a 30-year-old professional, invests \$250 a month in the T. Rowe Price Equity Income fund, which has a 10-year average return of 9.04%. (Data from: www.troweprice.com.)
- (a) Ian wants to estimate what he will have for retirement when he is 65 years old if the rate stays constant. Assume monthly compounding.
- (b) If Ian makes no further deposits and makes no withdrawals after age 65, how much will he have for retirement at age 75? Assume monthly compounding.
43. A mother opened an investment account for her son on the day he was born, investing \$1000. Each year on his birthday, she deposits another \$1000, making the last deposit on his 18th birthday. If the account paid a return rate of 5.6% compounded annually, how much is in the account at the end of the day on the son's 18th birthday?

44. A grandmother opens an investment account for her only granddaughter on the day she was born, investing \$500. Each year on her birthday, she deposits another \$500, making the last deposit on her 25th birthday. If the account paid a return rate of 6.2% compounded annually, how much is in the account at the end of the day on the granddaughter's 25th birthday?
45. Chuck Hickman deposits \$10,000 at the beginning of each year for 12 years in an account paying 5% compounded annually. He then puts the total amount on deposit in another account paying 6% compounded semi-annually for another 9 years. Find the final amount on deposit after the entire 21-year period.
46. Suppose that the best rate that the company in Example 6 can find is 6.3%, compounded monthly (rather than the 6.661% it wants). Then the company must deposit more in the sinking fund each month. What monthly deposit will guarantee that the fund will be worth \$100,000 in 20 years?
47. David Horwitz needs \$10,000 in 8 years.
- What amount should he deposit at the end of each quarter at 5% compounded quarterly so that he will have his \$10,000?
 - Find Horwitz's quarterly deposit if the money is deposited at 5.8% compounded quarterly.
48. Harv's Meats knows that it must buy a new machine in 4 years. The machine costs \$12,000. In order to accumulate enough money to pay for the machine, Harv decides to deposit a sum of money at the end of each 6 months in an account paying 6% compounded semiannually. How much should each payment be?
49. Barbara Margolius wants to buy a \$24,000 car in 6 years. How much money must she deposit at the end of each quarter in an account paying 5% compounded quarterly so that she will have enough to pay for her car?
50. The Chinns agree to sell an antique vase to a local museum for \$19,000. They want to defer the receipt of this money until they retire in 5 years (and are in a lower tax bracket). If the museum can earn 5.8%, compounded annually, find the amount of each annual payment it should make into a sinking fund so that it will have the necessary \$19,000 in 5 years.
51. Diane Gray sells some land in Nevada. She will be paid a lump sum of \$60,000 in 7 years. Until then, the buyer pays 8% simple interest quarterly.
- Find the amount of each quarterly interest payment.
 - The buyer sets up a sinking fund so that enough money will be present to pay off the \$60,000. The buyer wants to make semiannual payments into the sinking fund; the account pays 6% compounded semiannually. Find the amount of each payment into the fund.
52. Joe Seniw bought a rare stamp for his collection. He agreed to pay a lump sum of \$4000 after 5 years. Until then, he pays 6% simple interest semiannually.
- Find the amount of each semiannual interest payment.
 - Seniw sets up a sinking fund so that enough money will be present to pay off the \$4000. He wants to make annual payments into the fund. The account pays 8% compounded annually. Find the amount of each payment.
53. To save for retirement, Karla Harby put \$300 each month into an ordinary annuity for 20 years. Interest was compounded monthly. At the end of the 20 years, the annuity was worth \$147,126. What annual interest rate did she receive?
54. Jennifer Wall made payments of \$250 per month at the end of each month to purchase a piece of property. After 30 years, she owned the property, which she sold for \$330,000. What annual interest rate would she need to earn on an ordinary annuity for a comparable rate of return?
55. When Joe and Sarah graduate from college, each expects to work a total of 45 years. Joe begins saving for retirement immediately. He plans to deposit \$600 at the end of each quarter into an account paying 8.1% interest, compounded quarterly, for 10 years. He will then leave his balance in the account, earning the same interest rate, but make no further deposits for 35 years. Sarah plans to save nothing during the first 10 years and then begin depositing \$600 at the end of each quarter in an account paying 8.1% interest, compounded quarterly, for 35 years.
- Without doing any calculations, predict which one will have the most in his or her retirement account after 45 years. Then test your prediction by answering the following questions (calculation required to the nearest dollar).
 - How much will Joe contribute to his retirement account?
 - How much will be in Joe's account after 45 years?
 - How much will Sarah contribute to her retirement account?
 - How much will be in Sarah's account after 45 years?
56. In a 1992 Virginia lottery, the jackpot was \$27 million. An Australian investment firm tried to buy all possible combinations of numbers, which would have cost \$7 million. In fact, the firm ran out of time and was unable to buy all combinations, but ended up with the only winning ticket anyway. The firm received the jackpot in 20 equal annual payments of \$1.35 million. Assume these payments meet the conditions of an ordinary annuity. (Data from: *Washington Post*, March 10, 1992, p. A1.)
- Suppose the firm can invest money at 8% interest compounded annually. How many years would it take until the investors would be further ahead than if they had simply invested the \$7 million at the same rate? (*Hint*: Experiment with different values of n , the number of years, or use a graphing calculator to plot the value of both investments as a function of the number of years.)
 - How many years would it take in part (a) at an interest rate of 12%?

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- (a) \$2247.20 (b) \$2120.00 (c) \$6367.20
- (a) \$18,339.82 (b) \$36,216.41
- \$872,354.36
- (a) \$232.38 (b) \$262.97
- (a) \$104,812.44 (b) 8.9%
- (a) \$9446.24 (b) \$9171.10

5.4 Annuities, Present Value, and Amortization

In the annuities studied previously, regular deposits were made into an interest-bearing account and the value of the annuity increased from 0 at the beginning to some larger amount at the end (the future value). Now we expand the discussion to include annuities that begin with an amount of money and make regular payments each period until the value of the annuity decreases to 0. Examples of such annuities are lottery jackpots, structured settlements imposed by a court in which the party at fault (or his or her insurance company) makes regular payments to the injured party, and trust funds that pay the recipients a fixed amount at regular intervals.

In order to develop the essential formula for dealing with “payout annuities,” we need another useful algebraic fact. If x is a nonzero number and n is a positive integer, verify the following equality by multiplying out the right-hand side:*

$$x^{-1} + x^{-2} + x^{-3} + \cdots + x^{-(n-1)} + x^{-n} = x^{-n}(x^{n-1} + x^{n-2} + x^{n-3} + \cdots + x^1 + 1).$$

Now use the sum formula in the box on page 263 to rewrite the expression in parentheses on the right-hand side:


$$\begin{aligned} x^{-1} + x^{-2} + x^{-3} + \cdots + x^{-(n-1)} + x^{-n} &= x^{-n} \left(\frac{x^n - 1}{x - 1} \right) \\ &= \frac{x^{-n}(x^n - 1)}{x - 1} = \frac{x^0 - x^{-n}}{x - 1} = \frac{1 - x^{-n}}{x - 1}. \end{aligned}$$

We have proved the following result:

If x is a nonzero real number and n is a positive integer, then

$$x^{-1} + x^{-2} + x^{-3} + \cdots + x^{-n} = \frac{1 - x^{-n}}{x - 1}.$$

Present Value

 In Section 5.2, we saw that the present value of A dollars at interest rate i per period for n periods is the amount that must be deposited today (at the same interest rate) in order to produce A dollars in n periods. Similarly, the **present value of an annuity** is the amount that must be deposited today (at the same compound interest rate as the annuity) to provide all the payments for the term of the annuity. It does not matter whether the payments are invested to accumulate funds or are paid out to disperse funds; the amount needed to provide the payments is the same in either case. We begin with ordinary annuities.

Example 1

Your rich aunt has funded an annuity that will pay you \$1500 at the end of each year for six years. If the interest rate is 8%, compounded annually, find the present value of this annuity.

Solution Look separately at each payment you will receive. Then find the present value of each payment—the amount needed now in order to make the payment in the future. The sum of these present values will be the present value of the annuity, since it will provide all of the payments.

*Remember that powers of x are multiplied by *adding* exponents and that $x^n x^{-n} = x^{n-n} = x^0 = 1$.

To find the first \$1500 payment (due in one year), the present value of \$1500 at 8% annual interest is needed now. According to the present-value formula for compound interest on page 260 (with $A = 1500$, $i = .08$, and $n = 1$), this present value is

$$\frac{1500}{1 + .08} = \frac{1500}{1.08} = 1500(1.08^{-1}) \approx \$1388.89.$$

This amount will grow to \$1500 in one year.

For the second \$1500 payment (due in two years), we need the present value of \$1500 at 8% interest, compounded annually for two years. The present-value formula for compound interest (with $A = 1500$, $i = .08$, and $n = 2$) shows that this present value is

$$\frac{1500}{(1 + .08)^2} = \frac{1500}{1.08^2} = 1500(1.08^{-2}) \approx \$1286.01.$$

Less money is needed for the second payment because it will grow over two years instead of one.

A similar calculation shows that the third payment (due in three years) has present value $\$1500(1.08^{-3})$. Continue in this manner to find the present value of each of the remaining payments, as summarized in Figure 5.13.

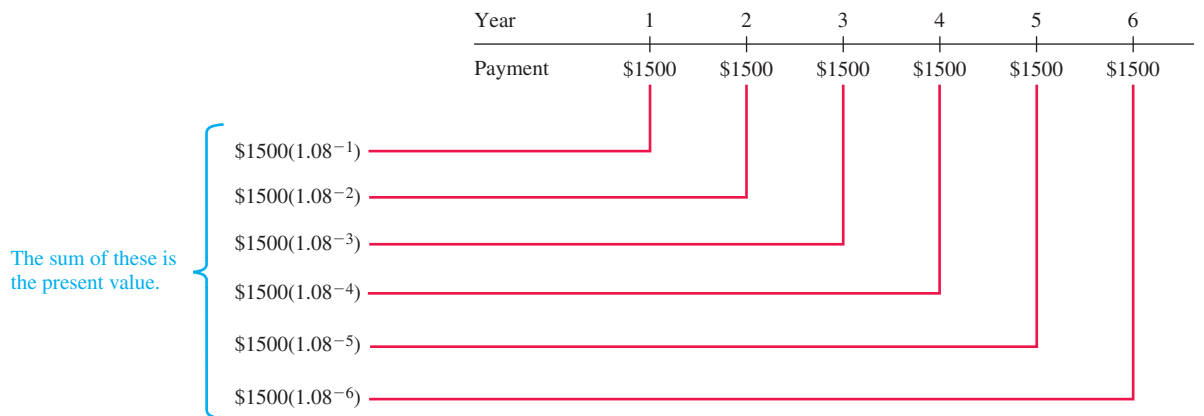


Figure 5.13

The left-hand column of Figure 5.13 shows that the present value is

$$\begin{aligned} &1500 \cdot 1.08^{-1} + 1500 \cdot 1.08^{-2} + 1500 \cdot 1.08^{-3} + 1500 \cdot 1.08^{-4} \\ &\qquad\qquad\qquad + 1500 \cdot 1.08^{-5} + 1500 \cdot 1.08^{-6} \\ &= 1500(1.08^{-1} + 1.08^{-2} + 1.08^{-3} + 1.08^{-4} + 1.08^{-5} + 1.08^{-6}). \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

✓ Checkpoint 1

Show that \$6934.32 will provide all the payments in Example 1 as follows:

- (a) Find the balance at the end of the first year after the interest has been added and the \$1500 payment subtracted.
- (b) Repeat part (a) to find the balances at the ends of years 2 through 6.

Now apply the algebraic fact in the box on page 272 to the expression in parentheses (with $x = 1.08$ and $n = 6$). It shows that the sum (the present value of the annuity) is

$$1500 \left[\frac{1 - 1.08^{-6}}{1.08 - 1} \right] = 1500 \left[\frac{1 - 1.08^{-6}}{.08} \right] = \$6934.32.$$

This amount will provide for all six payments and leave a zero balance at the end of six years (give or take a few cents due to rounding to the nearest penny at each step). ✓

Example 1 is the model for finding a formula for the future value of any ordinary annuity. Suppose that a payment of R dollars is made at the end of each period for n

periods, at interest rate i per period. Then the present value of this annuity can be found by using the procedure in Example 1, with these replacements:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} 1500 & .08 & 1.08 & 6 \\ \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\ R & i & 1 + i & n \end{array}$$

The future value in Example 1 is the sum in equation (1), which now becomes

$$P = R[(1 + i)^{-1} + (1 + i)^{-2} + (1 + i)^{-3} + \cdots + (1 + i)^{-n}].$$

Apply the algebraic fact in the box on page 272 to the expression in brackets (with $x = 1 + i$). Then we have

$$P = R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}}{(1 + i) - 1} \right] = R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}}{i} \right].$$

The quantity in brackets in the right-hand part of the preceding equation is sometimes written $a_{\overline{n}|i}$ (read “a-angle- n at i ”). So we can summarize as follows.


Present Value of an Ordinary Annuity

The present value P of an ordinary annuity is given by

$$P = R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}}{i} \right], \text{ or } P = R \cdot a_{\overline{n}|i},$$

where

- R is the payment at the end of each period,
- i is the interest rate per period, and
- n is the number of periods.

 **CAUTION** Do not confuse the formula for the present value of an annuity with the one for the future value of an annuity. Notice the difference: The numerator of the fraction in the present-value formula is $1 - (1 + i)^{-n}$, but in the future-value formula, it is $(1 + i)^n - 1$.

Example 2

Jim Riles was in an auto accident. He sued the person at fault and was awarded a structured settlement in which an insurance company will pay him \$600 at the end of each month for the next seven years. How much money should the insurance company invest now at 4.7%, compounded monthly, to guarantee that all the payments can be made?

Solution The payments form an ordinary annuity. The amount needed to fund all the payments is the present value of the annuity. Apply the present-value formula with $R = 600$, $n = 7 \cdot 12 = 84$, and $i = .047/12$ (the interest rate per month). The insurance company should invest

$$P = R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}}{i} \right] = 600 \left[\frac{1 - (1 + .047/12)^{-84}}{.047/12} \right] = \$42,877.44. \quad \checkmark_2$$

✓ Checkpoint 2

An insurance company offers to pay Jane Parks an ordinary annuity of \$1200 per quarter for five years or the present value of the annuity now. If the interest rate is 6%, find the present value.

Example 3

To supplement his pension in the early years of his retirement, Ralph Taylor plans to use \$124,500 of his savings as an ordinary annuity that will make monthly payments to him for 20 years. If the interest rate is 5.2%, how much will each payment be?

Solution The present value of the annuity is $P = \$124,500$, the monthly interest rate is $i = .052/12$, and $n = 12 \cdot 20 = 240$ (the number of months in 20 years). Solve the present-value formula for the monthly payment R :

$$P = R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}}{i} \right]$$

$$124,500 = R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + .052/12)^{-240}}{.052/12} \right]$$

$$R = \frac{124,500}{\left[\frac{1 - (1 + .052/12)^{-240}}{.052/12} \right]} = \$835.46.$$

✓ Checkpoint 3

Carl Dehne has \$80,000 in an account paying 4.8% interest, compounded monthly. He plans to use up all the money by making equal monthly withdrawals for 15 years. If the interest rate is 4.8%, find the amount of each withdrawal.

Taylor will receive \$835.46 a month (about \$10,026 per year) for 20 years. ✓₃

Example 4

Surinder Sinah and Maria Gonzalez are graduates of Kenyon College. They both agree to contribute to an endowment fund at the college. Sinah says he will give \$500 at the end of each year for 9 years. Gonzalez prefers to give a single donation today. How much should she give to equal the value of Sinah's gift, assuming that the endowment fund earns 7.5% interest, compounded annually?

Solution Sinah's gift is an ordinary annuity with annual payments of \$500 for 9 years. Its *future* value at 7.5% annual compound interest is

$$S = R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i} \right] = 500 \left[\frac{(1 + .075)^9 - 1}{.075} \right] = 500 \left[\frac{1.075^9 - 1}{.075} \right] = \$6114.92.$$

We claim that for Gonzalez to equal this contribution, she should today contribute an amount equal to the *present* value of this annuity, namely,

$$P = R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}}{i} \right] = 500 \left[\frac{1 - (1 + .075)^{-9}}{.075} \right] = 500 \left[\frac{1 - 1.075^{-9}}{.075} \right] = \$3189.44.$$

To confirm this claim, suppose the present value $P = \$3189.44$ is deposited today at 7.5% interest, compounded annually for 9 years. According to the compound interest formula on page 253, P will grow to

$$3189.44(1 + .075)^9 = \$6114.92,$$

the future value of Sinah's annuity. So at the end of 9 years, Gonzalez and Sinah will have made identical gifts.

Example 4 illustrates the following alternative description of the present value of an "accumulation annuity."

The present value of an annuity for accumulating funds is the single deposit that would have to be made today to produce the future value of the annuity (assuming the same interest rate and period of time.) ✓₄

✓ Checkpoint 4

What lump sum deposited today would be equivalent to equal payments of

- (a) \$650 at the end of each year for 9 years at 4% compounded annually?
- (b) \$1000 at the end of each quarter for 4 years at 4% compounded quarterly?

Corporate bonds, which were introduced in Section 5.1, are routinely bought and sold in financial markets. In most cases, interest rates when a bond is sold differ from the interest rate paid by the bond (known as the **coupon rate**). In such cases, the price of a bond will not be its face value, but will instead be based on current interest rates. The next example shows how this is done.

Example 5

A 15-year \$10,000 bond with a 5% coupon rate was issued five years ago and is now being sold. If the current interest rate for similar bonds is 7%, what price should a purchaser be willing to pay for this bond?

Solution According to the simple interest formula (page 246), the interest paid by the bond each half-year is

$$I = Prt = 10,000 \cdot .05 \cdot \frac{1}{2} = \$250.$$

Think of the bond as a two-part investment: The first is an annuity that pays \$250 every six months for the next 10 years; the second is the \$10,000 face value of the bond, which will be paid when the bond matures, 10 years from now. The purchaser should be willing to pay the present value of each part of the investment, assuming 7% interest, compounded semiannually.* The interest rate per period is $i = .07/2$, and the number of six-month periods in 10 years is $n = 20$. So we have:

Present value of annuity

$$\begin{aligned} P &= R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}}{i} \right] \\ &= 250 \left[\frac{1 - (1 + .07/2)^{-20}}{.07/2} \right] \\ &= \$3553.10 \end{aligned}$$

Present value of \$10,000 in 10 years

$$\begin{aligned} P &= A(1 + i)^{-n} \\ &= 10,000(1 + .07/2)^{-20} \\ &= \$5025.66. \end{aligned}$$

So the purchaser should be willing to pay the sum of these two present values:

$$\$3553.10 + \$5025.66 = \$8578.76. \quad \checkmark_5$$

✓Checkpoint 5

Suppose the current interest rate for bonds is 4% instead of 7% when the bond in Example 5 is sold. What price should a purchaser be willing to pay for it?



NOTE Example 5 and Checkpoint 5 illustrate the inverse relation between interest rates and bond prices: If interest rates rise, bond prices fall, and if interest rates fall, bond prices rise.

Loans and Amortization

If you take out a car loan or a home mortgage, you repay it by making regular payments to the bank. From the bank's point of view, your payments are an annuity that is paying it a fixed amount each month. The present value of this annuity is the amount you borrowed.

Example 6

Finance Chase Bank in April 2013 advertised a new car auto loan rate of 2.23% for a 48-month loan. Shelley Fasulko will buy a new car for \$25,000 with a down payment of \$4500. Find the amount of each payment. (Data from: www.chase.com.)

Solution After a \$4500 down payment, the loan amount is \$20,500. Use the present-value formula for an annuity, with $P = 20,500$, $n = 48$, and $i = .0223/12$ (the monthly interest rate). Then solve for payment R .

$$\begin{aligned} P &= R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}}{i} \right] \\ 20,500 &= R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + .0223/12)^{-48}}{.0223/12} \right] \\ R &= \frac{20,500}{\left[\frac{1 - (1 + .0223/12)^{-48}}{.0223/12} \right]} \quad \text{Solve for } R. \\ R &= \$446.81 \quad \checkmark_6 \end{aligned}$$

✓Checkpoint 6

Suzanne Bellini uses a Chase auto loan to purchase a used car priced at \$28,750 at an interest rate of 3.64% for a 60-month loan. What is the monthly payment?

A loan is **amortized** if both the principal and interest are paid by a sequence of equal periodic payments. The periodic payment needed to amortize a loan may be found, as in Example 6, by solving the present-value formula for R .

*The analysis here does not include any commissions or fees charged by the financial institution that handles the bond sale.

Amortization Payments

A loan of P dollars at interest rate i per period may be amortized in n equal periodic payments of R dollars made at the end of each period, where

$$R = \frac{P}{\left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}}{i} \right]} = \frac{Pi}{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}}$$

Example 7

Finance In April 2013, the average rate for a 30-year fixed mortgage was 3.43%. Assume a down payment of 20% on a home purchase of \$272,900. (Data from: Freddie Mac.)

(a) Find the monthly payment needed to amortize this loan.

Solution The down payment is $.20(272,900) = \$54,580$. Thus, the loan amount P is $\$272,900 - \$54,580 = \$218,320$. We can now apply the formula in the preceding box, with $n = 12(30) = 360$ (the number of monthly payments in 30 years), and monthly interest rate $i = .0343/12$.*

$$R = \frac{Pi}{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}} = \frac{(218,320)(.0343/12)}{1 - (1 + .0343/12)^{-360}} = \$971.84$$

Monthly payments of \$971.84 are required to amortize the loan.

(b) After 10 years, approximately how much is owed on the mortgage?

Solution You may be tempted to say that after 10 years of payments on a 30-year mortgage, the balance will be reduced by a third. However, a significant portion of each payment goes to pay interest. So, much less than a third of the mortgage is paid off in the first 10 years, as we now see.

After 10 years (120 payments), the 240 remaining payments can be thought of as an annuity. The present value for this annuity is the (approximate) remaining balance on the mortgage. Hence, we use the present-value formula with $R = 971.84$, $i = .0343/12$, and $n = 240$:

$$P = 971.84 \left[\frac{1 - (1 + .0343/12)^{-240}}{(.0343/12)} \right] = \$168,614.16.$$

So the remaining balance is about \$168,614.16. The actual balance probably differs slightly from this figure because payments and interest amounts are rounded to the nearest penny. ✓₇

✓ Checkpoint 7

Find the remaining balance after 20 years.

```
N=360
I%=3.43
PV=218320
•PMT=-971.8435089
FV=0
P/Y=12
C/Y=12
PMT: [END] BEGIN
```

Figure 5.14



TECHNOLOGY TIP A TVM solver on a graphing calculator can find the present value of an annuity or the payment on a loan: Fill in the known information, put the cursor next to the unknown item (PV or PMT), and press SOLVE. Figure 5.14 shows the solution to Example 7(a) on a TVM solver. Alternatively, you can use the program in the Program Appendix.

Example 7(b) illustrates an important fact: Even though equal *payments* are made to amortize a loan, the loan *balance* does not decrease in equal steps. The method used to estimate the remaining balance in Example 7(b) works in the general case. If n payments

*Mortgage rates are quoted in terms of annual interest, but it is always understood that the monthly rate is $\frac{1}{12}$ of the annual interest rate and that interest is compounded monthly.

are needed to amortize a loan and x payments have been made, then the remaining payments form an annuity of $n - x$ payments. So we apply the present-value formula with $n - x$ in place of n to obtain this result.

Remaining Balance

If a loan can be amortized by n payments of R dollars each at an interest rate i per period, then the *approximate* remaining balance B after x payments is

$$B = R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-(n-x)}}{i} \right].$$

Amortization Schedules

The remaining-balance formula is a quick and convenient way to get a reasonable estimate of the remaining balance on a loan, but it is not accurate enough for a bank or business, which must keep its books exactly. To determine the exact remaining balance after each loan payment, financial institutions normally use an **amortization schedule**, which lists how much of each payment is interest, how much goes to reduce the balance, and how much is still owed after each payment.

Example 8

Beth Hill borrows \$1000 for one year at 12% annual interest, compounded monthly.

(a) Find her monthly payment.

Solution Apply the amortization payment formula with $P = 1000$, $n = 12$, and monthly interest rate $i = .12/12 = .01$. Her payment is

$$R = \frac{Pi}{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}} = \frac{1000(.01)}{1 - (1 + .01)^{-12}} = \$88.85.$$

(b) After making five payments, Hill decides to pay off the remaining balance. Approximately how much must she pay?

Solution Apply the remaining-balance formula just given, with $R = 88.85$, $i = .01$, and $n - x = 12 - 5 = 7$. Her approximate remaining balance is

$$B = R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-(n-x)}}{i} \right] = 88.85 \left[\frac{1 - (1 + .01)^{-7}}{.01} \right] = \$597.80.$$

(c) Construct an amortization schedule for Hill's loan.

Solution An amortization schedule for the loan is shown in the table on the next page. It was obtained as follows: The annual interest rate is 12% compounded monthly, so the interest rate per month is $12\%/12 = 1\% = .01$. When the first payment is made, one month's interest, namely, $.01(1000) = \$10$, is owed. Subtracting this from the \$88.85 payment leaves \$78.85 to be applied to repayment. Hence, the principal at the end of the first payment period is $1000 - 78.85 = \$921.15$, as shown in the "payment 1" line of the table.

When payment 2 is made, one month's interest on the new balance of \$921.15 is owed, namely, $.01(921.15) = \$9.21$. Continue as in the preceding paragraph to compute the entries in this line of the table. The remaining lines of the table are found in a similar fashion.

Payment Number	Amount of Payment	Interest for Period	Portion to Principal	Principal at End of Period
0	—	—	—	\$1000.00
1	\$88.85	\$10.00	\$78.85	921.15
2	88.85	9.21	79.64	841.51
3	88.85	8.42	80.43	761.08
4	88.85	7.61	81.24	679.84
5	88.85	6.80	82.05	597.79
6	88.85	5.98	82.87	514.92
7	88.85	5.15	83.70	431.22
8	88.85	4.31	84.54	346.68
9	88.85	3.47	85.38	261.30
10	88.85	2.61	86.24	175.06
11	88.85	1.75	87.10	87.96
12	88.84	.88	87.96	0

Note that Hill's remaining balance after five payments differs slightly from the estimate made in part (b).

The final payment in the amortization schedule in Example 8(c) differs from the other payments. It often happens that the last payment needed to amortize a loan must be adjusted to account for rounding earlier and to ensure that the final balance will be exactly 0.



TECHNOLOGY TIP Most Casio graphing calculators can produce amortization schedules. For other calculators, use the amortization table program in the Program Appendix. Spreadsheets are another useful tool for creating amortization tables. Microsoft Excel (Microsoft Corporation Excel © 2013) has a built-in feature for calculating monthly payments. Figure 5.15 shows an Excel amortization table for Example 8. For more details, see the *Spreadsheet Manual*, also available with this text.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	Prnt#	Payment	Interest	Principal	End Principal	
2	0				1000	
3	1	88.85	10.00	78.85	921.15	
4	2	88.85	9.21	79.64	841.51	
5	3	88.85	8.42	80.43	761.08	
6	4	88.85	7.61	81.24	679.84	
7	5	88.85	6.80	82.05	597.79	
8	6	88.85	5.98	82.87	514.92	
9	7	88.85	5.15	83.70	431.22	
10	8	88.85	4.31	84.54	346.68	
11	9	88.85	3.47	85.38	261.30	
12	10	88.85	2.61	86.24	175.06	
13	11	88.85	1.75	87.10	87.96	
14	12	88.85	0.88	87.97	-0.01	

Figure 5.15

Annuities Due

We want to find the present value of an annuity due in which 6 payments of R dollars are made at the *beginning* of each period, with interest rate i per period, as shown schematically in Figure 5.16.

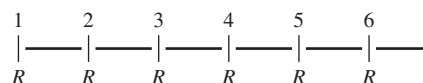


Figure 5.16

The present value is the amount needed to fund all 6 payments. Since the first payment earns no interest, R dollars are needed to fund it. Now look at the last 5 payments by themselves in Figure 5.17.

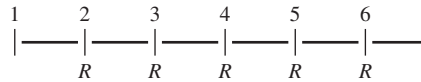


Figure 5.17

If you think of these 5 payments as being made at the end of each period, you see that they form an ordinary annuity. The money needed to fund them is the present value of this ordinary annuity. So the present value of the annuity due is given by

$$R + \text{Present value of the ordinary annuity of 5 payments}$$

$$R + R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-5}}{i} \right].$$

Replacing 6 by n and 5 by $n - 1$, and using the argument just given, produces the general result that follows.

Present Value of an Annuity Due

The present value P of an annuity due is given by

$$P = R + R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-(n-1)}}{i} \right],$$

$P =$ One payment + Present value of an ordinary annuity of $n - 1$ payments

where

- R is the payment at the beginning of each period,
- i is the interest rate per period, and
- n is the number of periods.

✓ Checkpoint 8

What is the cash value for a Lotto jackpot of \$25 million if the Illinois Lottery can earn 6.2% annual interest?

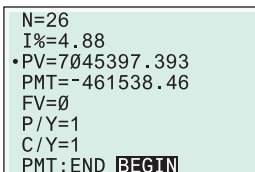


Figure 5.18

Example 9

Finance The *Illinois Lottery Winner's Handbook* discusses the options of how to receive the winnings for a \$12 million Lotto jackpot. One option is to take 26 annual payments of approximately \$461,538.46, which is \$12 million divided into 26 equal payments. The other option is to take a lump-sum payment (which is often called the “cash value”). If the Illinois lottery commission can earn 4.88% annual interest, how much is the cash value?

Solution The yearly payments form a 26-payment annuity due. An equivalent amount now is the present value of this annuity. Apply the present-value formula with $R = 461,538.46$, $i = .0488$, and $n = 26$:

$$P = R + R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-(n-1)}}{i} \right] = 461,538.46 + 461,538.46 \left[\frac{1 - (1 + .0488)^{-25}}{.0488} \right]$$

$$= \$7,045,397.39.$$

The cash value is \$7,045,397.39. ✓₈

TECHNOLOGY TIP Figure 5.18 shows the solution of Example 9 on a TVM solver. Since this is an annuity due, the PMT: setting at the bottom of the screen is “BEGIN”.

5.4 Exercises

Unless noted otherwise, all payments and withdrawals are made at the end of the period.

1. Explain the difference between the present value of an annuity and the future value of an annuity.

Find the present value of each ordinary annuity. (See Examples 1, 2, and 4.)

2. Payments of \$890 each year for 16 years at 6% compounded annually
3. Payments of \$1400 each year for 8 years at 6% compounded annually
4. Payments of \$10,000 semiannually for 15 years at 7.5% compounded semiannually
5. Payments of \$50,000 quarterly for 10 years at 5% compounded quarterly
6. Payments of \$15,806 quarterly for 3 years at 6.8% compounded quarterly

Find the amount necessary to fund the given withdrawals. (See Examples 1 and 2.)

7. Quarterly withdrawals of \$650 for 5 years; interest rate is 4.9%, compounded quarterly.
8. Yearly withdrawals of \$1200 for 14 years; interest rate is 5.6%, compounded annually.
9. Monthly withdrawals of \$425 for 10 years; interest rate is 6.1%, compounded monthly.
10. Semiannual withdrawals of \$3500 for 7 years; interest rate is 5.2%, compounded semiannually.

Find the payment made by the ordinary annuity with the given present value. (See Example 3.)

11. \$90,000; monthly payments for 22 years; interest rate is 4.9%, compounded monthly.
12. \$45,000; monthly payments for 11 years; interest rate is 5.3%, compounded monthly.
13. \$275,000; quarterly payments for 18 years; interest rate is 6%, compounded quarterly.
14. \$330,000; quarterly payments for 30 years; interest rate is 6.1% compounded quarterly.

Find the lump sum deposited today that will yield the same total amount as payments of \$10,000 at the end of each year for 15 years at each of the given interest rates. (See Example 4 and the box following it.)

15. 3% compounded annually
16. 4% compounded annually
17. 6% compounded annually
18. What sum deposited today at 5% compounded annually for 8 years will provide the same amount as \$1000 deposited at the end of each year for 8 years at 6% compounded annually?

19. What lump sum deposited today at 8% compounded quarterly for 10 years will yield the same final amount as deposits of \$4000 at the end of each 6-month period for 10 years at 6% compounded semiannually?

Find the price a purchaser should be willing to pay for the given bond. Assume that the coupon interest is paid twice a year. (See Example 5.)

20. \$20,000 bond with coupon rate 4.5% that matures in 8 years; current interest rate is 5.9%.
21. \$15,000 bond with coupon rate 6% that matures in 4 years; current interest rate is 5%.
22. \$25,000 bond with coupon rate 7% that matures in 10 years; current interest rate is 6%.
23. \$10,000 bond with coupon rate 5.4% that matures in 12 years; current interest rate is 6.5%.
24. What does it mean to amortize a loan?

Find the payment necessary to amortize each of the given loans. (See Examples 6, 7(a), and 8(a).)

25. \$2500; 8% compounded quarterly; 6 quarterly payments
26. \$41,000; 9% compounded semiannually; 10 semiannual payments
27. \$90,000; 7% compounded annually; 12 annual payments
28. \$140,000; 12% compounded quarterly; 15 quarterly payments
29. \$7400; 8.2% compounded semiannually; 18 semiannual payments
30. \$5500; 9.5% compounded monthly; 24 monthly payments

Finance *In April 2013, the mortgage interest rates listed in Exercises 31–34 for the given companies were listed at www.hsh.com. Find the monthly payment necessary to amortize the given loans. (See Example 7(a).)*

31. \$225,000 at 3.25% for 30 years from Amerisave
32. \$330,000 at 3.125% for 20 years from Quicken Loans
33. \$140,000 at 2.375% for 15 years from Discover Home Loans
34. \$180,000 at 2.25% for 10 years from Roundpoint Mortgage Company

Finance *Find the monthly payment and estimate the remaining balance (to the nearest dollar). Assume interest is on the unpaid balance. The interest rates are from national averages from www.bankrate.com in April 2013. (See Examples 7 and 8.)*

35. Four-year new car loan for \$26,799 at 3.13%; remaining balance after 2 years
36. Three-year used car loan for \$15,875 at 2.96%; remaining balance after 1 year
37. Thirty-year mortgage for \$210,000 at 3.54%; remaining balance after 12 years

38. Fifteen-year mortgage for \$195,000 at 2.78%; remaining balance after 4.5 years

Use the amortization table in Example 8(c) to answer the questions in Exercises 39–42.

39. How much of the 5th payment is interest?
 40. How much of the 10th payment is used to reduce the debt?
 41. How much interest is paid in the first 5 months of the loan?
 42. How much interest is paid in the last 5 months of the loan?

Find the cash value of the lottery jackpot (to the nearest dollar). Yearly jackpot payments begin immediately (26 for Mega Millions and 30 for Powerball). Assume the lottery can invest at the given interest rate. (See Example 9.)

43. Powerball: \$57.6 million; 5.1% interest
 44. Powerball: \$207 million; 5.78% interest
 45. Mega Millions: \$41.6 million; 4.735% interest
 46. Mega Millions: \$23.4 million; 4.23% interest

Finance Work the following applied problems.

47. An auto stereo dealer sells a stereo system for \$600 down and monthly payments of \$30 for the next 3 years. If the interest rate is 1.25% *per month* on the unpaid balance, find
 (a) the cost of the stereo system;
 (b) the total amount of interest paid.
48. John Kushida buys a used car costing \$6000. He agrees to make payments at the end of each monthly period for 4 years. He pays 12% interest, compounded monthly.
 (a) What is the amount of each payment?
 (b) Find the total amount of interest Kushida will pay.



49. A speculator agrees to pay \$15,000 for a parcel of land; this amount, with interest, will be paid over 4 years with semiannual payments at an interest rate of 10% compounded semiannually. Find the amount of each payment.
50. Alan Stasa buys a new car costing \$26,750. What is the monthly payment if the interest rate is 4.2%, compounded monthly, and the loan is for 60 months? Find the total amount of interest Alan will pay.

Finance A student education loan has two repayment options. The standard plan repays the loan in 10 years with equal monthly payments. The extended plan allows from 12 to 30 years to repay the loan. A student borrows \$35,000 at 7.43% compounded monthly.

51. Find the monthly payment and total interest paid under the standard plan.
 52. Find the monthly payment and total interest paid under the extended plan with 20 years to pay off the loan.

Finance Use the formula for the approximate remaining balance to work each problem. (See Examples 7(b) and 8(b).)

53. When Teresa Flores opened her law office, she bought \$14,000 worth of law books and \$7200 worth of office furniture. She paid \$1200 down and agreed to amortize the balance with semiannual payments for 5 years at 12% compounded semiannually.
 (a) Find the amount of each payment.
 (b) When her loan had been reduced below \$5000, Flores received a large tax refund and decided to pay off the loan. How many payments were left at this time?
54. Kareem Adams buys a house for \$285,000. He pays \$60,000 down and takes out a mortgage at 6.9% on the balance. Find his monthly payment and the total amount of interest he will pay if the length of the mortgage is
 (a) 15 years;
 (b) 20 years;
 (c) 25 years.
 (d) When will half the 20-year loan be paid off?
55. Susan Carver will purchase a home for \$257,000. She will use a down payment of 20% and finance the remaining portion at 3.9%, compounded monthly for 30 years.
 (a) What will be the monthly payment?
 (b) How much will remain on the loan after making payments for 5 years?
 (c) How much interest will be paid on the total amount of the loan over the course of 30 years?
56. Mohsen Manouchehri will purchase a \$230,000 home with a 20-year mortgage. If he makes a down payment of 20% and the interest rate is 3.3%, compounded monthly,
 (a) what will the monthly payment be?
 (b) how much will he owe after making payments for 8 years?
 (c) how much in total interest will he pay over the course of the 20-year loan?

Work each problem.

57. Elizabeth Bernardi and her employer contribute \$400 at the end of each month to her retirement account, which earns 7% interest, compounded monthly. When she retires after 45 years, she plans to make monthly withdrawals for 30 years. If her account earns 5% interest, compounded monthly, then when she retires, what is her maximum possible monthly withdrawal (without running out of money)?

58. Jim Milliken won a \$15,000 prize. On March 1, he deposited it in an account earning 5.2% interest, compounded monthly. On March 1 one year later, he begins to withdraw the same amount at the beginning of each month for a year. Assuming that he uses up all the money in the account, find the amount of each monthly withdrawal.
59. Catherine Dohanyos plans to retire in 20 years. She will make 20 years of monthly contributions to her retirement account. One month after her last contribution, she will begin the first of 10 years of withdrawals. She wants to withdraw \$2500 per month. How large must her monthly contributions be in order to accomplish her goal if the account earns interest of 7.1% compounded monthly for the duration of her contributions and the 120 months of withdrawals?
60. David Turner plans to retire in 25 years. He will make 25 years of monthly contributions to his retirement account. One month after his last contribution, he will begin the first of 10 years of withdrawals. He wants to withdraw \$3000 per month. How large must his monthly contributions be in order to accomplish his goal if the account earns interest of 6.8% compounded monthly for the duration of his contributions and the 120 months of withdrawals?
61. William Blake plans to retire in 20 years. William will make 10 years (120 months) of equal monthly payments into his account. Ten years after his last contribution, he will begin the first of 120 monthly withdrawals of \$3400 per month. Assume that the retirement account earns interest of 8.2% compounded monthly for the duration of his contributions, the 10 years in between his contributions and the beginning of his withdrawals, and the 10 years of withdrawals. How large must William's monthly contributions be in order to accomplish his goal?
62. Gil Stevens plans to retire in 25 years. He will make 15 years (180 months) of equal monthly payments into his account. Ten years after his last contribution, he will begin the first of 120 monthly withdrawals of \$2900 per month. Assume that the retirement account earns interest of 5.4% compounded monthly for the duration of his contributions, the 10 years in between his contributions and the beginning of his withdrawals, and the 10 years of withdrawals. How large must Gil's monthly contributions be in order to accomplish his goal?
- Finance** In Exercises 63–66, prepare an amortization schedule showing the first four payments for each loan. (See Example 8(c).)
63. An insurance firm pays \$4000 for a new printer for its computer. It amortizes the loan for the printer in 4 annual payments at 8% compounded annually.
64. Large semitrailer trucks cost \$72,000 each. Ace Trucking buys such a truck and agrees to pay for it by a loan that will be amortized with 9 semiannual payments at 6% compounded semiannually.
65. One retailer charges \$1048 for a certain computer. A firm of tax accountants buys 8 of these computers. It makes a down payment of \$1200 and agrees to amortize the balance with monthly payments at 12% compounded monthly for 4 years.
66. Joan Varozza plans to borrow \$20,000 to stock her small boutique. She will repay the loan with semiannual payments for 5 years at 7% compounded semiannually.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) \$5989.07
(b) \$4968.20; \$3865.66; \$2674.91; \$1388.90; \$0.01
2. \$20,602.37
3. \$624.33
4. (a) \$4832.97 (b) \$14,717.87
5. \$10,817.57
6. \$524.82
7. \$98,605.61
8. \$13,023,058.46

CHAPTER 5 Summary and Review

Key Terms and Symbols

- | | | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| <p>5.1 simple interest
principal
rate
time
future value (maturity value)
present value
discount and T-bills</p> | <p>5.2 compound interest
compound amount
compounding period
nominal rate (stated rate)
effective rate (APY)
present value</p> <p>5.3 annuity
payment period</p> | <p>term of an annuity
ordinary annuity
future value of an ordinary annuity
sinking fund
annuity due
future value of an annuity due</p> | <p>5.4 present value of an ordinary annuity
amortization payments
remaining balance
amortization schedule
present value of an annuity due</p> |
|--|---|--|--|

Chapter 5 Key Concepts

A Strategy for Solving Finance Problems

We have presented a lot of new formulas in this chapter. By answering the following questions, you can decide which formula to use for a particular problem.

1. Is simple or compound interest involved?
Simple interest is normally used for investments or loans of a year or less; compound interest is normally used in all other cases.
2. If simple interest is being used, what is being sought—interest amount, future value, present value, or discount?
3. If compound interest is being used, does it involve a lump sum (single payment) or an annuity (sequence of payments)?
 - (a) For a lump sum,
 - (i) is ordinary compound interest involved?
 - (ii) what is being sought—present value, future value, number of periods, or effective rate (APY)?
 - (b) For an annuity,
 - (i) is it an ordinary annuity (payment at the end of each period) or an annuity due (payment at the beginning of each period)?
 - (ii) what is being sought—present value, future value, or payment amount?

Once you have answered these questions, choose the appropriate formula and work the problem. As a final step, consider whether the answer you get makes sense. For instance, the amount of interest or the payments in an annuity should be fairly small compared with the total future value.

Key Formulas

List of Variables

r is the annual interest rate.

m is the number of periods per year.

i is the interest rate per period.

$$i = \frac{r}{m}$$

t is the number of years.

n is the number of periods.

$$n = tm$$

P is the principal or present value.

A is the future value of a lump sum.

S is the future value of an annuity.

R is the periodic payment in an annuity.

B is the remaining balance on a loan.

Interest	Simple Interest	Compound Interest
Interest	$I = Prt$	$I = A - P$
Future value	$A = P(1 + rt)$	$A = P(1 + i)^n$
Present value	$P = \frac{A}{1 + rt}$	$P = \frac{A}{(1 + i)^n} = A(1 + i)^{-n}$
		Effective rate (or APY) $r_E = \left(1 + \frac{r}{m}\right)^m - 1$

Discount

If D is the **discount** on a T-bill with face value P at simple interest rate r for t years, then $D = Prt$.

Continuous Interest

If P dollars are deposited for t years at interest rate r per year, compounded continuously, the **compound amount (future value)** is $A = Pe^{rt}$.

The **present value** P of A dollars at interest rate r per year compounded continuously for t years is

$$P = \frac{A}{e^{rt}}$$

Annuities

Ordinary annuity	Future value	$S = R \left[\frac{(1+i)^n - 1}{i} \right] = R \cdot s_{\overline{n}|i}$
	Present value	$P = R \left[\frac{1 - (1+i)^{-n}}{i} \right] = R \cdot a_{\overline{n}|i}$
Annuity due	Future value	$S = R \left[\frac{(1+i)^{n+1} - 1}{i} \right] - R$
	Present value	$P = R + R \left[\frac{1 - (1+i)^{-(n-1)}}{i} \right]$

Chapter 5 Review Exercises

Find the simple interest for the following loans.

1. \$4902 at 6.5% for 11 months
2. \$4859 at 4.8% from February 1 to October 30, 2012
3. \$3478 at 7.4% for 88 days
4. \$2390 at 8.7% from May 3 to July 28

Find the semiannual (simple) interest payment and the total interest earned over the life of the bond.


5. \$12,000 Merck Company 6-year bond at 4.75% annual interest
6. \$20,000 General Electric 9-year bond at 5.25% annual interest

Find the maturity value for each simple interest loan.

7. \$7750 at 6.8% for 4 months
8. \$15,600 at 8.2% for 9 months

-  9. What is meant by the present value of an amount A?

Find the present value of the given future amounts; use simple interest.

10. \$459.57 in 7 months; money earns 5.5%
11. \$80,612 in 128 days; money earns 6.77%
12. A 6-month \$5000 Treasury Bill sells at the discount rate of 2.2%. Find the amount of the discount and price of T-bill.
13. A 6-month \$10,000 T-bill sold at a 4% discount. Find the actual rate of interest paid by the Treasury.
-  14. For a given amount of money at a given interest rate for a given period greater than 1 year, does simple interest or compound interest produce more interest? Explain.

Find the compound amount and the amount of interest earned in each of the given scenarios.

15. \$2800 at 6% compounded annually for 12 years
16. \$5926 at 5% compounded monthly for 5 years
17. \$12,903.45 at 6.37% compounded quarterly for 29 quarters
18. \$4677.23 at 4.57% compounded monthly for 32 months

Find the amount of compound interest earned by each deposit.

19. \$22,000 at 5.5%, compounded quarterly for 6 years
20. \$2975 at 4.7%, compounded monthly for 4 years

Find the face value (to the nearest dollar) of the zero-coupon bond.

21. 5-year bond at 3.9%; price \$12,366
22. 15-year bond at 5.2%; price \$11,575

Find the APY corresponding to the given nominal rate.

23. 5% compounded monthly
24. 6.5% compounded daily

Find the present value of the given amounts at the given interest rate.

25. \$42,000 in 7 years; 12% compounded monthly
26. \$17,650 in 4 years; 8% compounded quarterly
27. \$9864.5 for 25 months; 5% compounded monthly
28. \$2388.90 in 44 months; 5.75% compounded monthly

Find the price that a purchaser should be willing to pay for these zero-coupon bonds.

29. 10-year \$15,000 bond; interest at 4.4%
30. 25-year \$30,000 bond; interest at 6.2%

-  31. What is meant by the future value of an annuity?

Find the future value of each annuity.

32. \$1288 deposited at the end of each year for 14 years; money earns 7% compounded annually
33. \$4375 deposited at the end of each quarter for 5 years; money earns 5% compounded quarterly
34. \$233 deposited at the end of each month for 4 years; money earns 6% compounded monthly
35. \$3000 deposited at the end of each month for 10 years; money earns 6% compounded monthly
36. \$11,900 deposited at the beginning of each month for 13 months; money earns 7% compounded monthly

-  37. What is the purpose of a sinking fund?

Find the amount of each payment that must be made into a sinking fund to accumulate the given amounts. Assume payments are made at the end of each period.

38. \$6500; money earns 5% compounded annually; 6 annual payments
39. \$57,000; money earns 6% compounded semiannually for $8\frac{1}{2}$ years

40. \$233,188; money earns 5.7% compounded quarterly for $7\frac{3}{4}$ years
 41. \$56,788; money earns 6.12% compounded monthly for $4\frac{1}{2}$ years

Find the present value of each ordinary annuity.

42. Payments of \$850 annually for 4 years at 5% compounded annually
 43. Payments of \$1500 quarterly for 7 years at 8% compounded quarterly
 44. Payments of \$4000 annually for 10 years at 6% compounded annually
 45. Payments of \$877.34 monthly for 17 months at 6.4% compounded monthly

Find the amount necessary to fund the given withdrawals (which are made at the end of each period).

46. Quarterly withdrawals of \$800 for 4 years with interest rate 4.6%, compounded quarterly
 47. Monthly withdrawals of \$1500 for 10 years with interest rate 5.8%, compounded monthly
 48. Yearly withdrawals of \$3000 for 15 years with interest rate 6.2%, compounded annually

Find the payment for the ordinary annuity with the given present value.

49. \$150,000; monthly payments for 15 years, with interest rate 5.1%, compounded monthly
 50. \$30,000; semiannually for 10 years, with interest rate 6%, compounded annually
 51. Find the lump-sum deposit today that will produce the same total amount as payments of \$4200 at the end of each year for 12 years. The interest rate in both cases is 4.5%, compounded annually.
 52. If the current interest rate is 6.5%, find the price (to the nearest dollar) that a purchaser should be willing to pay for a \$24,000 bond with coupon rate 5% that matures in 6 years.

Find the amount of the payment necessary to amortize each of the given loans.

53. \$40,000 at 9.2% compounded semiannually, 20 semiannual payments
 54. \$5607 at 7.6% compounded monthly; 32 monthly payments

Find the monthly house payments for the given mortgages.

55. \$95,000 at 3.67% for 30 years
 56. \$1,600,000 at 2.1% for 20 years
 57. Find the approximate remaining balance after 5 years of payments on the loan in Exercise 55.
 58. Find the approximate remaining balance after 9 years of payment on \$85000 at 3.2% compounded quarterly for 15 years.

Finance According to www.studentaid.ed.gov, in 2013 the interest rate for a direct unsubsidized student loan was 6.8%. A portion of an amortization table is given here for a \$15,000 direct unsubsidized student loan compounded monthly to be paid back in 10 years. Use the table to answer Exercises 59–62.

Payment Number	Amount of Payment	Interest for Period	Portion to Principal	Principal at End of Period
0				15,000.00
1	172.62	85.00	87.62	14,912.38
2	172.62	84.50	88.12	14,824.26
3	172.62	84.00	88.62	14,735.64
4	172.62	83.50	89.12	14,646.52
5	172.62	83.00	89.62	14,556.90
6	172.62	82.49	90.13	14,466.77
7	172.62	81.98	90.64	14,376.13
8	172.62	81.46	91.16	14,284.97

59. How much of the seventh payment is interest?
 60. How much of the fourth payment is used to reduce the debt?
 61. **Finance** Mr. Rajput won \$100,000,000 at a TV quiz show. The producers of the show offer two options to Mr. Rajput to receive the amount. One option is to take the amount in 35 instalments of \$2,000,000 (after deducting tax). The other option is to take the lump-sum amount at once. The authorities can earn interest at the rate 2.02% annually. What should be the amount Mr. Rajput can take at one go? (Tax deducted at source is 30% on the prize.)
 62. How much has the debt been reduced at the end of the first 8 months?

Finance Work the following applied problems.

63. In February 2013, a Virginia family won a Powerball lottery prize of \$217,000,000.
 (a) If they had chosen to receive the money in 30 yearly payments, beginning immediately, what would have been the amount of each payment?
 (b) The family chose the one-time lump-sum cash option. If the interest rate is 3.58%, approximately how much did they receive?
 64. **Finance** Mr. Vikash has deposited \$4300 for 8 years in a finance company. The company claims that it will return the amount at 6.2% compounded continuously. What amount can Mr. Vikash expect after 8 years?
 65. Tom, a graduate student, is considering investing \$500 now, when he is 23, or waiting until he is 40 to invest \$500. How much more money will he have at age 65 if he invests now, given that he can earn 5% interest compounded quarterly?
 66. According to a financial Web site, on June 15, 2005, Frontenac Bank of Earth City, Missouri, paid 3.94% interest, compounded quarterly, on a 2-year CD, while E*TRADE Bank of Arlington, Virginia, paid 3.93% compounded daily. What was the effective rate for the two CDs, and which bank paid a higher effective rate? (Data from: www.bankrate.com.)
 67. **Finance** Madame Maupassant is a valued employee of a renowned company. The company has pledged to pay her \$4,000,000 as retirement benefit when she retires in 30 years. If the company deposits \$500 in a sinking fund, what interest rate

must it earn with monthly compounding, in order to guarantee the amount?

68. Each year, a firm must set aside enough funds to provide employee retirement benefits of \$52,000 in 20 years. If the firm can invest money at 7.5% compounded monthly, what amount must be invested at the end of each month for this purpose?
69. A benefactor wants to be able to leave a bequest to the college she attended. If she wants to make a donation of \$2,000,000 in 10 years, how much each month does she need to place in an investment account that pays an interest rate of 5.5%, compounded monthly?
70. Suppose you have built up a pension with \$12,000 annual payments by working 10 years for a company when you leave to accept a better job. The company gives you the option of collecting half the full pension when you reach age 55 or the full pension at age 65. Assume an interest rate of 8% compounded annually. By age 75, how much will each plan produce? Which plan would produce the larger amount?
71. In 3 years, Ms. Nguyen must pay a pledge of \$7500 to her favorite charity. What lump sum can she deposit today at 10% compounded semiannually so that she will have enough to pay the pledge?
72. To finance the \$15,000 cost of their kitchen remodeling, the Chews will make equal payments at the end of each month for 36 months. They will pay interest at the rate of 7.2% compounded monthly. Find the amount of each payment.
73. To expand her business, the owner of a small restaurant borrows \$40,000. She will repay the money in equal payments at the end of each semiannual period for 8 years at 9% interest compounded semiannually. What payments must she make?
74. The Fix family bought a house for \$210,000. They paid \$42,000 down and took out a 30-year mortgage for the balance at 3.75%.
- (a) Find the monthly payment.
- (b) How much of the first payment is interest?

After 15 years, the family sold their house for \$255,000.

- (c) Estimate the current mortgage balance at the time of the sale.
- (d) Find the amount of money they received from the sale after paying off the mortgage.
75. Over a 20-year period, the class A shares of the Davis New York Venture mutual fund increased in value at the rate of 11.2%, compounded monthly. If you had invested \$250 at the end of each month in this fund, what would have the value of your account been at the end of those 20 years?
76. **Business** Coal India floats a 10-year infrastructure bond at an annual simple interest of 6.5%, with interest paid twice a year. Mr. Mishra buys a \$1,000,000 bond.
- (a) How much interest he will earn every six months?
- (b) How much interest he will earn over the 10 years?
- (c) What amount would he get if the interest rate had been 6.5% compounded semiannually?
77. The proceeds of a \$10,000 death benefit are left on deposit with an insurance company for 7 years at an annual effective interest rate of 5%.* The balance at the end of 7 years is paid to the beneficiary in 120 equal monthly payments of X , with the first payment made immediately. During the payout period, interest is credited at an annual effective interest rate of 3%. Which of the following is the correct value of X ?
- (a) 117 (b) 118 (c) 129 (d) 135 (e) 158
78. Eileen Gianiodis wants to retire on \$75,000 per year for her life expectancy of 20 years after she retires. She estimates that she will be able to earn an interest rate of 10.1%, compounded annually, throughout her lifetime. To reach her retirement goal, Eileen will make annual contributions to her account for the next 30 years. One year after making her last deposit, she will receive her first retirement check. How large must her yearly contributions be?

*The Proceeds of Death Benefit Left on Deposit with an Insurance Company from Course 140 Examination, Mathematics of Compound Interest. Copyright © Society of Actuaries. Reproduced by permission of Society of Actuaries.

Case Study 5 Continuous Compounding

Informally, you can think of *continuous compounding* as a process in which interest is compounded *very* frequently (for instance, every nanosecond). You will occasionally see an ad for a certificate of deposit in which interest is compounded continuously. That's pretty much a gimmick in most cases, because it produces only a few more cents than daily compounding. However, continuous compounding does play a serious role in certain financial situations, notably in the pricing of derivatives.* So let's see what is involved in continuous compounding.

As a general rule, the more often interest is compounded, the better off you are as an investor. (See Example 4 of Section

5.2.) But there is, alas, a limit on the amount of interest, no matter how often it is compounded. To see why this is so, suppose you have \$1 to invest. The Exponential Bank offers to pay 100% annual interest, compounded n times per year and rounded to the nearest penny. Furthermore, you may pick any value for n that you want. Can you choose n so large that your \$1 will grow to \$5 in a year? We will test several values of n in the formula for the compound amount, with $P = 1$. In this case, the annual interest rate (in decimal form) is also 1. If there are n periods in the year, the interest rate per period is $i = 1/n$. So the amount that your dollar grows to is:

$$A = P(1 + i)^n = 1 \left(1 + \frac{1}{n} \right)^n.$$

*Derivatives are complicated financial instruments. But investors have learned the hard way that they can sometimes cause serious problems—as was the case in the recession that began in 2008, which was blamed in part on the misuse of derivatives.

A computer gives the following results for various values of n :

Interest Is Compounded . . .	n	$\left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n$
Annually	1	$\left(1 + \frac{1}{1}\right)^1 = 2$
Semiannually	2	$\left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = 2.25$
Quarterly	4	$\left(1 + \frac{1}{4}\right)^4 \approx 2.4414$
Monthly	12	$\left(1 + \frac{1}{12}\right)^{12} \approx 2.6130$
Daily	365	$\left(1 + \frac{1}{365}\right)^{365} \approx 2.71457$
Hourly	8760	$\left(1 + \frac{1}{8760}\right)^{8760} \approx 2.718127$
Every minute	525,600	$\left(1 + \frac{1}{525,600}\right)^{525,600} \approx 2.7182792$
Every second	31,536,000	$\left(1 + \frac{1}{31,536,000}\right)^{31,536,000} \approx 2.7182818$

Because interest is rounded to the nearest penny, the compound amount never exceeds \$2.72, no matter how big n is. (A computer was used to develop the table, and the figures in it are accurate. If you try these computations with your calculator, however, your answers may not agree exactly with those in the table because of round-off error in the calculator.)

The preceding table suggests that as n takes larger and larger values, the corresponding values of $\left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n$ get closer and closer to a specific real number whose decimal expansion begins 2.71828 This is indeed the case, as is shown in calculus, and the number 2.71828 . . . is denoted e . This fact is sometimes expressed by writing

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n = e,$$

which is read “the limit of $\left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n$ as n approaches infinity is e .”

The preceding example is typical of what happens when interest is compounded n times per year, with larger and larger values of n . It can be shown that no matter what interest rate or principal is used, there is always an upper limit (involving the number e) on the compound amount, which is called the compound amount from **continuous compounding**.

Continuous Compounding

The compound amount A for a deposit of P dollars at an interest rate r per year compounded continuously for t years is given by

$$A = Pe^{rt}.$$

Most calculators have an e^x key for computing powers of e . See the Technology Tip on page 208 for details on using a calculator to evaluate e^x .

Example 1 Suppose \$5000 is invested at an annual rate of 4% compounded continuously for 5 years. Find the compound amount.

Solution In the formula for continuous compounding, let $P = 5000$, $r = .04$, and $t = 5$. Then a calculator with an e^x key shows that

$$A = 5000e^{(.04)5} = 5000e^2 \approx \$6107.01.$$

You can readily verify that daily compounding would have produced a compound amount about 6¢ less.

Exercises

- Find the compound amount when \$20,000 is invested at 6% compounded continuously for
 - 2 years;
 - 10 years;
 - 20 years.
- Find the compound amount when \$2500 is invested at 5.5%, compounded monthly for two years.
 - Do part (a) when the interest rate is 5.5% compounded continuously.
- Determine the compounded amount from a deposit of \$25,000 when it is invested at 5% for 10 years and compounded in the following time periods:
 - annually
 - quarterly
 - monthly
 - daily
 - continuously

4. Determine the compounded amount from a deposit of \$250,000 when it is invested at 5% for 10 years and compounded in the following time periods:
- (a) annually (b) quarterly (c) monthly
(d) daily (e) continuously
5. It can be shown that if interest is compounded continuously at nominal rate r , then the effective rate r_E is $e^r - 1$. Find the effective rate of continuously compounded interest if the nominal rate is
- (a) 4.5%; (b) 5.7%; (c) 7.4%.
6. Suppose you win a court case and the defendant has up to 8 years to pay you \$5000 in damages. Assume that the defendant will wait until the last possible minute to pay you.
- (a) If you can get an interest rate of 3.75% compounded continuously, what is the present value of the \$5000? [*Hint*: Solve the continuous-compounding formula for P .]
(b) If the defendant offers you \$4000 immediately to settle his debt, should you take the deal?

Extended Projects

1. Investigate the interest rates for the subsidized and unsubsidized student loans. If you have taken out student loans or plan to take out student loans before graduating, calculate your own monthly payment and how much interest you will pay over the course of the repayment period. If you have not taken out, and you do not plan to take out a student loan, contact the financial aid office of your college and university to determine the median amount borrowed with student loans at your institution. Determine the monthly payment and how much interest is paid during repayment for the typical borrowing student.
2. Determine the best interest rate for a new car purchase for a 48-month loan at a bank near you. If you finance \$25,999 with such a loan, determine the payment and the total interest paid over the course of the loan. Also, determine the best interest rate for a new car purchase for a 48-month loan at a credit union near you. Determine the monthly payment and total interest paid if the same auto loan is financed through the credit union. Is it true that the credit union would save you money?



Systems of Linear Equations and Matrices

6

CHAPTER

CHAPTER OUTLINE

- 6.1** Systems of Two Linear Equations in Two Variables
- 6.2** Larger Systems of Linear Equations
- 6.3** Applications of Systems of Linear Equations
- 6.4** Basic Matrix Operations
- 6.5** Matrix Products and Inverses
- 6.6** Applications of Matrices

CASE STUDY 6

Matrix Operations and Airline Route Maps

A variety of resource allocation problems involving many variables can be handled by solving an appropriate system of linear equations. Technology (such as graphing calculators, WolframAlpha.com, computer algebra systems, and smart phone apps) is very helpful for handling large systems. Smaller ones can easily be solved by hand. See Exercises 22 and 23 on page 316.

This chapter deals with **linear** (or **first-degree**) **equations** such as

$$2x + 3y = 14 \quad \text{linear equation in two variables,}$$

$$4x - 2y + 5z = 8 \quad \text{linear equation in three variables,}$$

and so on. A **solution** of such an equation is an ordered list of numbers that, when substituted for the variables in the order they appear, produces a true statement. For instance, (1, 4) is a solution of the equation $2x + 3y = 14$ because substituting $x = 1$ and $y = 4$ produces the true statement $2(1) + 3(4) = 14$.

Many applications involve **systems of linear equations**, such as these two:

Two equations in
two variables

$$5x - 3y = 7$$

$$2x + 4y = 8$$

Three equations in
four variables

$$2x + y + z = 3$$

$$x + y + z + w = 5$$

$$-4x + z + w = 0.$$

A **solution of a system** is a solution that satisfies *all* the equations in the system. For instance, in the right-hand system of equations on page 290, $(1, 0, 1, 3)$ is a solution of all three equations (check it) and hence is a solution of the system. By contrast, $(1, 1, 0, 3)$ is a solution of the first two equations, but not the third. Hence, $(1, 1, 0, 3)$ is not a solution of the system.

This chapter presents methods for solving such systems, including matrix methods. Matrix algebra and other applications of matrices are also discussed.

6.1 Systems of Two Linear Equations in Two Variables



The graph of a linear equation in two variables is a straight line. The coordinates of each point on the graph represent a solution of the equation (Section 2.1). Thus, the solution of a system of two such equations is represented by the point or points where the two lines intersect. There are exactly three geometric possibilities for two lines: They intersect at a single point, or they coincide, or they are distinct and parallel. As illustrated in Figure 6.1, each of these geometric possibilities leads to a different number of solutions for the system.

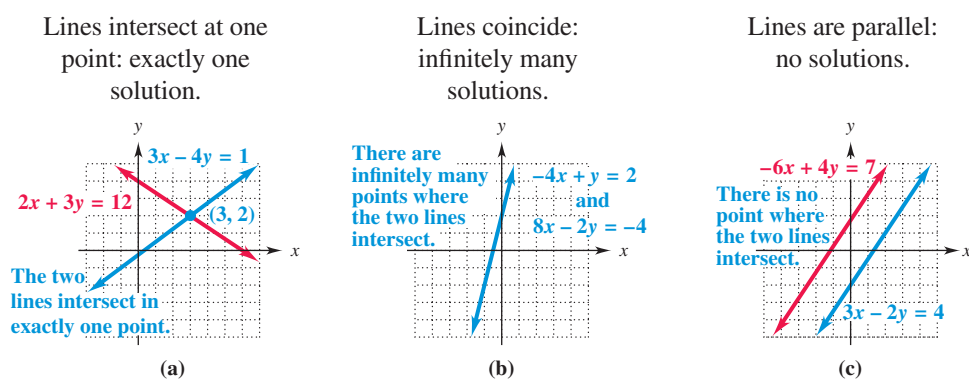


Figure 6.1

The Substitution Method

Example 1 illustrates the substitution method for solving a system of two equations in two variables.

Example 1 Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - y &= 1 \\ 3x + 2y &= 4. \end{aligned}$$

Solution Begin by solving the first equation for y :


$$\begin{aligned} 2x - y &= 1 \\ -y &= -2x + 1 && \text{Subtract } 2x \text{ from both sides.} \\ y &= 2x - 1. && \text{Multiply both sides by } -1. \end{aligned}$$

Substitute this expression for y in the second equation and solve for x :

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + 2y &= 4 \\ 3x + 2(2x - 1) &= 4 && \text{Substitute } 2x - 1 \text{ for } y. \\ 3x + 4x - 2 &= 4 && \text{Multiply out the left side.} \\ 7x - 2 &= 4 && \text{Combine like terms.} \\ 7x &= 6 && \text{Add 2 to both sides.} \\ x &= 6/7. && \text{Divide both sides by 7.} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, every solution of the system must have $x = 6/7$. To find the corresponding solution for y , substitute $x = 6/7$ in one of the two original equations and solve for y . We shall use the first equation.

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - y &= 1 \\ 2\left(\frac{6}{7}\right) - y &= 1 && \text{Substitute } 6/7 \text{ for } x. \\ \frac{12}{7} - y &= 1 && \text{Multiply out the left side.} \\ -y &= -\frac{12}{7} + 1 && \text{Subtract } 12/7 \text{ from both sides.} \\ y &= \frac{12}{7} - 1 = \frac{5}{7}. && \text{Multiply both sides by } -1. \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the solution of the original system is $x = 6/7$ and $y = 5/7$. We would have obtained the same solution if we had substituted $x = 6/7$ in the second equation of the original system, as you can easily verify. 

✓ Checkpoint 1

Use the substitution method to solve this system:

$$\begin{aligned} x - 2y &= 3 \\ 2x + 3y &= 13. \end{aligned}$$

Answers to Checkpoint exercises are found at the end of the section.

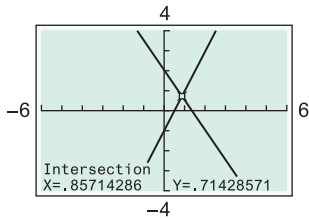



Figure 6.2

The substitution method is useful when at least one of the equations has a variable with coefficient 1. That is why we solved for y in the first equation of Example 1. If we had solved for x in the first equation or for x or y in the second, we would have had a lot more fractions to deal with.

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** A graphing calculator can be used to solve systems of two equations in two variables. Solve each of the given equations for y and graph them on the same screen. In Example 1, for instance we would graph

$$y_1 = 2x - 1 \quad \text{and} \quad y_2 = \frac{-3x + 4}{2}.$$

Use the intersection finder to determine the point where the graphs intersect (the solution of the system), as shown in Figure 6.2. Note that this is an *approximate* solution, rather than the exact solution found algebraically in Example 1.

The Elimination Method

The elimination method of solving systems of linear equations is often more convenient than substitution, as illustrated in the next four examples.

Example 2

Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} 5x + y &= 4 \\ 3x + 2y &= 1. \end{aligned}$$

Solution Multiply the first equation by -2 , so that the coefficients of y in the two equations are negatives of each other:

$$\begin{aligned} -10x - 2y &= -8 && \text{First equation multiplied by } -2. \\ 3x + 2y &= 1. && \text{Second equation as given.} \end{aligned}$$

Any solution of this system of equations must also be a solution of the sum of the two equations:

$$\begin{aligned} -10x - 2y &= -8 \\ 3x + 2y &= 1 \\ \hline -7x &= -7 && \text{Sum; variable } y \text{ is eliminated.} \\ x &= 1. && \text{Divide both sides by } -7. \end{aligned}$$

To find the corresponding value of y , substitute $x = 1$ in one of the original equations, say the first one:

$$\begin{aligned} 5x + y &= 4 \\ 5(\mathbf{1}) + y &= 4 && \text{Substitute 1 for } x. \\ y &= -1. && \text{Subtract 5 from both sides.} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the solution of the original system is $(1, -1)$. 

Checkpoint 2

Use the elimination method to solve this system:

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2y &= 4 \\ 3x - 4y &= -8. \end{aligned}$$

Example 3 Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} 3x - 4y &= 1 \\ 2x + 3y &= 12. \end{aligned}$$

Solution Multiply the first equation by 2 and the second equation by -3 to get


$$\begin{aligned} 6x - 8y &= 2 && \text{First equation multiplied by 2.} \\ -6x - 9y &= -36. && \text{Second equation multiplied by } -3. \end{aligned}$$

The multipliers 2 and -3 were chosen so that the coefficients of x in the two equations would be negatives of each other. Any solution of both these equations must also be a solution of their sum:

$$\begin{aligned} 6x - 8y &= 2 \\ -6x - 9y &= -36 \\ \hline -17y &= -34 && \text{Sum; variable } x \text{ is eliminated.} \\ y &= 2. && \text{Divide both sides by } -17. \end{aligned}$$

To find the corresponding value of x , substitute 2 for y in either of the original equations. We choose the first equation:

$$\begin{aligned} 3x - 4y &= 1 \\ 3x - 4(2) &= 1 && \text{Substitute 2 for } y. \\ 3x - 8 &= 1 && \text{Simplify.} \\ 3x &= 9 && \text{Add 8 to both sides.} \\ x &= 3. && \text{Divide both sides by 3.} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the solution of the system is $(3, 2)$. The graphs of both equations of the system are shown in Figure 6.1(a). They intersect at the point $(3, 2)$, the solution of the system. 

Checkpoint 3

Solve the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + 2y &= -1 \\ 5x - 3y &= 11. \end{aligned}$$

Draw the graph of each equation on the same set of axes.

Dependent and Inconsistent Systems

A system of equations that has a unique solution, such as those in Examples 1–3, is called an **independent system**. Now we consider systems that have infinitely many solutions or no solutions at all.

Example 4 Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} -4x + y &= 2 \\ 8x - 2y &= -4. \end{aligned}$$

Solution If you solve each equation in the system for y , you see that the two equations are actually the same:

$$\begin{aligned} -4x + y &= 2 && 8x - 2y = -4 \\ y &= 4x + 2 && -2y = -8x - 4 \\ &&& y = 4x + 2. \end{aligned}$$

So the two equations have the same graph, as shown in Figure 6.1(b), and the system has infinitely many solutions (namely, all solutions of $y = 4x + 2$). A system such as this is said to be **dependent**.

You do not have to analyze a system as was just done in order to find out that the system is dependent. The elimination method will warn you. For instance, if you attempt to eliminate x in the original system by multiplying both sides of the first equation by 2 and adding the results to the second equation, you obtain

$$\begin{array}{rcl} -8x + 2y = 4 & \text{First equation multiplied by 2.} \\ 8x - 2y = -4 & \text{Second equation as given.} \\ \hline 0 = 0. & \text{Both variables are eliminated.} \end{array}$$

The equation “ $0 = 0$ ” is an algebraic indication that the system is dependent and has infinitely many solutions. 

✓ Checkpoint 4

Solve the following system:

$$\begin{aligned} 3x - 4y &= 13 \\ 12x - 16y &= 52. \end{aligned}$$

Example 5 Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} 3x - 2y &= 4 \\ -6x + 4y &= 7. \end{aligned}$$

Solution The graphs of these equations are parallel lines (each has slope $3/2$), as shown in Figure 6.1(c). Therefore, the system has no solution. However, you do not need the graphs to discover this fact. If you try to solve the system algebraically by multiplying both sides of the first equation by 2 and adding the results to the second equation, you obtain

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 6x - 4y = 8 & \text{First equation multiplied by 2.} \\ -6x + 4y = 7 & \text{Second equation as given.} \\ \hline 0 = 15. & \text{False statement.} \end{array}$$

The false statement “ $0 = 15$ ” is the algebraic signal that the system has no solution. A system with no solutions is said to be **inconsistent**. 

✓ Checkpoint 5

Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} x - y &= 4 \\ 2x - 2y &= 3. \end{aligned}$$

Draw the graph of each equation on the same set of axes.

Applications

In many applications, the answer is the solution of a system of equations. Solving the system is the easy part—*finding* the system, however, may take some thought.

Example 6 Business Eight hundred people attend a basketball game, and total ticket sales are \$3102. If adult tickets are \$6 and student tickets are \$3, how many adults and how many students attended the game?

Solution Let x be the number of adults and y the number of students. Then

$$\text{Number of adults} + \text{Number of students} = \text{Total attendance.}$$

$$x + y = 800.$$

A second equation can be found by considering ticket sales:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \text{Adult ticket sales} & + & \text{Student ticket sales} & = & \text{Total ticket sales} \\ \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{Price} \\ \text{per} \\ \text{ticket} \end{array} \right) \times \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{Number} \\ \text{of} \\ \text{adults} \end{array} \right) & + & \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{Price} \\ \text{per} \\ \text{ticket} \end{array} \right) \times \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{Number} \\ \text{of} \\ \text{students} \end{array} \right) & = & 3102 \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ 6x & + & 3y & = & 3102. \end{array}$$

✓ Checkpoint 6

- (a) Use substitution or elimination to solve the system of equations in Example 6.
- ✎ (b) Use technology to solve the system. (*Hint:* Solve each equation for y , graph both equations on the same screen, and use the intersection finder.)

To find x and y we must solve this system of equations:

$$\begin{aligned}x + y &= 800 \\6x + 3y &= 3102.\end{aligned}$$

The system can readily be solved by hand or by using technology. See Checkpoint 6, which shows that 234 adults and 566 students attended the game. ✓6

6.1 Exercises

Determine whether the given ordered list of numbers is a solution of the system of equations.

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. $(-1, 3)$ | 2. $(2, -5)$ |
| $2x + y = 1$ | $.5x + 8y = -3$ |
| $-3x + 2y = 9$ | $x + 5y = -5$ |

Use substitution to solve each system. (See Example 1.)

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 3. $3x - y = 1$ | 4. $x + y = 7$ |
| $x + 2y = -9$ | $x - 2y = -5$ |
| 5. $3x - 2y = 4$ | 6. $5x - 3y = -2$ |
| $2x + y = -1$ | $-x - 2y = 3$ |

Use elimination to solve each system. (See Examples 2–5.)

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 7. $x - 2y = 5$ | 8. $3x - y = 1$ |
| $2x + y = 3$ | $-x + 2y = 4$ |
| 9. $2x - 2y = 12$ | 10. $3x + 2y = -4$ |
| $-2x + 3y = 10$ | $4x - 2y = -10$ |
| 11. $x + 3y = -1$ | 12. $4x - 3y = -1$ |
| $2x - y = 5$ | $x + 2y = 19$ |
| 13. $2x + 3y = 15$ | 14. $2x + 5y = 8$ |
| $8x + 12y = 40$ | $6x + 15y = 18$ |
| 15. $2x - 8y = 2$ | 16. $3x - 2y = 4$ |
| $3x - 12y = 3$ | $6x - 4y = 8$ |

In Exercises 17 and 18, multiply both sides of each equation by a common denominator to eliminate the fractions. Then solve the system.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 17. $\frac{x}{5} + 3y = 31$ | 18. $\frac{x}{2} + \frac{y}{3} = 8$ |
| $2x - \frac{y}{5} = 8$ | $\frac{2x}{3} + \frac{3y}{2} = 17$ |

19. **Business** When Neil Simon opened a new play, he had to decide whether to open the show on Broadway or off Broadway. For example, he decided to open his play *London Suite* off Broadway. From information provided by Emanuel Azenberg, his producer, the following equations were developed:

$$\begin{aligned}43,500x - y &= 1,295,000 \\27,000x - y &= 440,000,\end{aligned}$$

where x represents the number of weeks that the show ran and y represents the profit or loss from the show. The first equation is for Broadway, and the second equation is for off Broadway.*

- (a) Solve this system of equations to determine when the profit or loss from the show will be equal for each venue. What is the amount of that profit or loss?
- ✎ (b) Discuss which venue is favorable for the show.



20. **Social Science** One of the factors that contribute to the success or failure of a particular army during war is its ability to get new troops ready for service. It is possible to analyze the rate of change in the number of troops of two hypothetical armies with the simplified model

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Rate of increase (Red Army)} &= 200,000 - .5r - .3b \\ \text{Rate of increase (Blue Army)} &= 350,000 - .5r - .7b,\end{aligned}$$

*Albert Goetz, "Basic Economics: Calculating against Theatrical Disaster," *Mathematics Teacher* 89, no. 1 (January 1996): 30–32. Reprinted with permission, ©1996 by the National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. All rights reserved.

where r is the number of soldiers in the Red Army at a given time and b is the number of soldiers in the Blue Army at the same time. The factors $.5$ and $.7$ represent each army's efficiency at bringing new soldiers into the fight.*

- (a) Solve this system of equations to determine the number of soldiers in each army when the rate of increase for each is zero.
- (b) Describe what might be going on in a war when the rate of increase is zero.

21. **Social Science** According to U.S. Census Bureau projections through the year 2030, the population y of the given state in year x is approximated by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Ohio:} & \quad -5x + y = 11,400 \\ \text{North Carolina:} & \quad -140x + y = 8000, \end{aligned}$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000 and y is in thousands. In what year do the two states have the same population?

22. **Social Science** The population y of the given state in year x is approximated by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Florida:} & \quad 50y - 21x = 800 \\ \text{New York:} & \quad 75y - x = 1425, \end{aligned}$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000 and y is in millions. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

- (a) Which state had the larger population in the year 2000?
- (b) Which state is projected to have the larger population in the year 2030?
- (c) In what year do the two states have the same population?

23. **Finance** On the basis of data from 2000 and 2010, median weekly earnings y in year x can be approximated for women and men by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Women:} & \quad 2y - 9x = 1248 \\ \text{Men:} & \quad 10y - 13x = 8110, \end{aligned}$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000 and y is in constant 2010 dollars. If these equations remain valid in the future, when will the median weekly earnings for women and men be the same? (Data from: Bureau of Labor Statistics.)

24. **Health** The number of deaths y in year x can be approximated for diseases of the heart and malignant neoplasms (cancer) by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Heart disease:} & \quad 58x + 5y = 3555 \\ \text{Cancer:} & \quad -21x + 10y = 5530, \end{aligned}$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000 and y is in thousands. According to these models (which are based on data from 2000 and 2010), when were deaths from heart disease equal to cancer deaths? (Data from: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.)

25. **Business** A 200-seat theater charges \$8 for adults and \$5 for children. If all seats were filled and the total ticket income was \$1435, how many adults and how many children were in the audience?

26. **Business** In November 2008, HBO released the complete series of *The Sopranos* on DVD. According to an ad in the *New York Times*, there were 86 episodes on 33 discs. If 5 discs were soundtracks and bonus material and 6 discs each had 4 episodes, how many discs had 2 episodes and how many had 3?

27. **Physical Science** A plane flies 3000 miles from San Francisco to Boston in 5 hours, with a tailwind all the way. The return trip on the same route, now with a headwind, takes 6 hours. Assuming both remain constant, find the speed of the plane and the speed of the wind. [Hint: If x is the plane's speed and y the wind speed (in mph), then the plane travels to Boston at $x + y$ mph because the plane and the wind go in the same direction; on the return trip, the plane travels at $x - y$ mph. (Why?)]

28. **Physical Science** A plane flying into a headwind travels 2200 miles in 5 hours. The return flight along the same route with a tailwind takes 4 hours. Find the wind speed and the plane's speed (assuming both are constant). (See the hint for Exercise 27.)

29. **Finance** Shirley Cicero has \$16,000 invested in Boeing and GE stock. The Boeing stock currently sells for \$30 a share and the GE stock for \$70 a share. If GE stock triples in value and Boeing stock goes up 50%, her stock will be worth \$34,500. How many shares of each stock does she own?

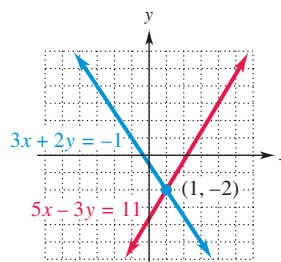
30. **Business** An apparel shop sells skirts for \$45 and blouses for \$35. Its entire stock is worth \$51,750, but sales are slow and only half the skirts and two-thirds of the blouses are sold, for a total of \$30,600. How many skirts and blouses are left in the store?

31. (a) Find the equation of the straight line through (1, 2) and (3, 4).
 (b) Find the equation of the line through (-1, 1) with slope 3.
 (c) Find a point that lies on both of the lines in (a) and (b).

32. (a) Find an equation of the straight line through (0, 9) and (2, 1).
 (b) Find an equation of the straight line through (1, 5) with slope 2.
 (c) Find a point that lies on both of the lines in (a) and (b).

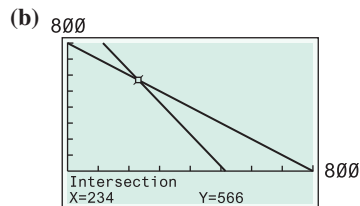
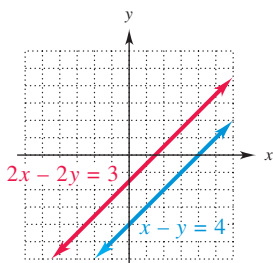
✓ Checkpoint Answers

- 1. (5, 1) 2. (0, 2)
- 3. (1, -2)



*Ian Bellamy, "Modeling War," *Journal of Peace Research* 36, no. 6 (1999): 729-739. ©1999 Sage Publications, Ltd.

4. All ordered pairs that satisfy the equation $3x - 4y = 13$ (or $12x - 16y = 52$)
5. No solution
6. (a) $x = 234$ and $y = 566$



6.2 Larger Systems of Linear Equations

Two systems of equations are said to be **equivalent** if they have the same solutions. The basic procedure for solving a large system of equations is to transform the system into a simpler, equivalent system and then solve this simpler system.

Three operations, called **elementary operations**, are used to transform a system into an equivalent one:

1. Interchange any two equations in the system.

Changing the order of the equations obviously does not affect the solutions of the equations or the system.

2. Multiply an equation in the system by a nonzero constant.

Multiplying an equation by a nonzero constant does not change its solutions. So it does not change the solutions of the system.

3. Replace an equation in the system by the sum of itself and a constant multiple of another equation.

We are not saying here that the replacement equation has the same solutions as the one it replaces—it doesn't—only that the new *system* has the same solutions as the original system (that is, the systems are equivalent).*

Example 1 shows how to use elementary operations on a system to eliminate certain variables and produce an equivalent system that is easily solved. The italicized statements provide an outline of the procedure. Here and later on, we use R_1 to denote the first equation in a system, R_2 the second equation, and so on.

Example 1

Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} 2x + y - z &= 2 \\ x + 3y + 2z &= 1 \\ x + y + z &= 2. \end{aligned}$$

Solution First, *use elementary operations to produce an equivalent system in which 1 is the coefficient of x in the first equation.* One way to do this is to interchange the first two equations (another would be to multiply both sides of the first equation by $\frac{1}{2}$):

$$\begin{aligned} x + 3y + 2z &= 1 && \text{Interchange } R_1 \text{ and } R_2. \\ 2x + y - z &= 2 \\ x + y + z &= 2. \end{aligned}$$

*This operation was used in a slightly different form in Section 6.1, when the sum of an equation and a constant multiple of another equation was found in order to eliminate one of the variables. See, for instance, Examples 2 and 3 of that section.

Next, use elementary operations to produce an equivalent system in which the x -term has been eliminated from the second and third equations. To eliminate the x -term from the second equation, replace the second equation by the sum of itself and -2 times the first equation:

$$\begin{array}{r} x + 3y + 2z = 1 \\ -5y - 5z = 0 \\ x + y + z = 2. \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} -2R_1 \quad -2x - 6y - 4z = -2 \\ R_2 \quad 2x + y - z = 2 \\ \hline -2R_1 + R_2 \quad -5y - 5z = 0 \end{array}$$

$-2R_1 + R_2 \leftarrow$

To eliminate the x -term from the third equation of this last system, replace the third equation by the sum of itself and -1 times the first equation:

$$\begin{array}{r} x + 3y + 2z = 1 \\ -5y - 5z = 0 \\ -2y - z = 1. \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} -1R_1 \quad -x - 3y - 2z = -1 \\ R_3 \quad x + y + z = 2 \\ \hline -1R_1 + R_3 \quad -2y - z = 1 \end{array}$$

$-1R_1 + R_3 \leftarrow$

Now that x has been eliminated from all but the first equation, we ignore the first equation and work on the remaining ones. Use elementary operations to produce an equivalent system in which 1 is the coefficient of y in the second equation. This can be done by multiplying the second equation in the system by $-\frac{1}{5}$:

$$\begin{array}{r} x + 3y + 2z = 1 \\ y + z = 0 \\ -2y - z = 1. \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} \\ -\frac{1}{5}R_2 \\ \end{array}$$

Then use elementary operations to obtain an equivalent system in which y has been eliminated from the third equation. Replace the third equation by the sum of itself and 2 times the second equation:

$$\begin{array}{r} x + 3y + 2z = 1 \\ y + z = 0 \\ z = 1. \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ 2R_2 + R_3 \end{array}$$

The solution of the third equation is obvious: $z = 1$. Now work backward in the system. Substitute 1 for z in the second equation and solve for y , obtaining $y = -1$. Finally, substitute 1 for z and -1 for y in the first equation and solve for x , obtaining $x = 2$. This process is known as **back substitution**. When it is finished, we have the solution of the original system, namely, $(2, -1, 1)$. It is always wise to check the solution by substituting the values for x , y , and z in *all* equations of the original system.

The procedure used in Example 1 to eliminate variables and produce a system in which back substitution works can be carried out with any system, as summarized below. In this summary, the first variable that appears in an equation with a nonzero coefficient is called the **leading variable** of that equation, and its nonzero coefficient is called the **leading coefficient**.


The Elimination Method for Solving Large Systems of Linear Equations

Use elementary operations to transform the given system into an equivalent one as follows:

1. Make the leading coefficient of the first equation 1 either by interchanging equations or by multiplying the first equation by a suitable constant.

- Eliminate the leading variable of the first equation from each later equation by replacing the later equation by the sum of itself and a suitable multiple of the first equation.
- Repeat Steps 1 and 2 for the second equation: Make its leading coefficient 1 and eliminate its leading variable from each later equation by replacing the later equation by the sum of itself and a suitable multiple of the second equation.
- Repeat Steps 1 and 2 for the third equation, fourth equation, and so on, until it is not possible to go any further.

Then solve the resulting system by back substitution.

At various stages in the elimination process, you may have a choice of elementary operations that can be used. As long as the final result is a system in which back substitution can be used, the choice does not matter. To avoid unnecessary errors, choose elementary operations that minimize the amount of computation and, as far as possible, avoid complicated fractions. 

Checkpoint 1

Use the elimination method to solve each system.

- (a)
$$\begin{aligned} 2x + y &= -1 \\ x + 3y &= 2 \end{aligned}$$
- (b)
$$\begin{aligned} 2x - y + 3z &= 2 \\ x + 2y - z &= 6 \\ -x - y + z &= -5 \end{aligned}$$

Matrix Methods


You may have noticed that the variables in a system of equations remain unchanged during the solution process. So we need to keep track of only the coefficients and the constants. For instance, consider the system in Example 1:

$$\begin{aligned} 2x + y - z &= 2 \\ x + 3y + 2z &= 1 \\ x + y + z &= 2. \end{aligned}$$

This system can be written in an abbreviated form without listing the variables as

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Such a rectangular array of numbers, consisting of horizontal **rows** and vertical **columns**, is called a **matrix** (plural, **matrices**). Each number in the array is an **element**, or **entry**. To separate the constants in the last column of the matrix from the coefficients of the variables, we sometimes use a vertical line, producing the following **augmented matrix**:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 2 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{array} \right]. \quad \text{$$

The rows of the augmented matrix can be transformed in the same way as the equations of the system, since the matrix is just a shortened form of the system. The following **row operations** on the augmented matrix correspond to the elementary operations used on systems of equations.

Checkpoint 2

- (a) Write the augmented matrix of the following system:

$$\begin{aligned} 4x - 2y + 3z &= 4 \\ 3x + 5y + z &= -7 \\ 5x - y + 4z &= 6. \end{aligned}$$

- (b) Write the system of equations associated with the following augmented matrix:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 2 & -2 & -2 \\ 1 & 1 & 4 \\ 3 & 5 & 8 \end{array} \right].$$

Performing any one of the following **row operations** on the augmented matrix of a system of linear equations produces the augmented matrix of an equivalent system:

- Interchange any two rows.
- Multiply each element of a row by a nonzero constant.
- Replace a row by the sum of itself and a constant multiple of another row of the matrix.

✓ Checkpoint 3

Perform the given row operations on the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 5 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

- Interchange R_1 and R_2 .
- Find $2R_1$.
- Replace R_2 by $-3R_1 + R_2$.
- Replace R_1 by $2R_2 + R_1$.

Row operations on a matrix are indicated by the same notation we used for elementary operations on a system of equations. For example, $2R_3 + R_1$ indicates the sum of 2 times row 3 and row 1. ✓₃

Example 2

Use matrices to solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} x - 2y &= 6 - 4z \\ x + 13z &= 6 - y \\ -2x + 6y - z &= -10. \end{aligned}$$

Solution First, put the system in the required form, with the constants on the right side of the equals sign and the terms with variables *in the same order* in each equation on the left side of the equals sign. Then write the augmented matrix of the system.

$$\begin{aligned} x - 2y + 4z &= 6 \\ x + y + 13z &= 6 \\ -2x + 6y - z &= -10 \end{aligned} \quad \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 4 & 6 \\ 1 & 1 & 13 & 6 \\ -2 & 6 & -1 & -10 \end{array} \right]$$

The matrix method is the same as the elimination method, except that row operations are used on the augmented matrix instead of elementary operations on the corresponding system of equations, as shown in the following side-by-side comparison:

Equation Method

Replace the second equation by the sum of itself and -1 times the first equation:

$$\begin{aligned} x - 2y + 4z &= 6 \\ 3y + 9z &= 0 \\ -2x + 6y - z &= -10. \end{aligned} \quad \leftarrow -1R_1 + R_2 \rightarrow$$

Replace the third equation by the sum of itself and 2 times the first equation:

$$\begin{aligned} x - 2y + 4z &= 6 \\ 3y + 9z &= 0 \\ 2y + 7z &= 2. \end{aligned} \quad \leftarrow 2R_1 + R_3 \rightarrow$$

Multiply both sides of the second equation by $\frac{1}{3}$:

$$\begin{aligned} x - 2y + 4z &= 6 \\ y + 3z &= 0 \\ 2y + 7z &= 2. \end{aligned} \quad \leftarrow \frac{1}{3}R_2 \rightarrow$$

Replace the third equation by the sum of itself and -2 times the second equation:

$$\begin{aligned} x - 2y + 4z &= 6 \\ y + 3z &= 0 \\ z &= 2. \end{aligned} \quad \leftarrow -2R_2 + R_3 \rightarrow$$

Now use back substitution:

$$\begin{aligned} z &= 2 & y + 3(2) &= 0 \\ & & y &= -6 \end{aligned}$$

Matrix Method

Replace the second row by the sum of itself and -1 times the first row:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 4 & 6 \\ \mathbf{0} & 3 & 9 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & -1 & -10 \end{array} \right]$$

Replace the third row by the sum of itself and 2 times the first row:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 4 & 6 \\ \mathbf{0} & 3 & 9 & 0 \\ \mathbf{0} & 2 & 7 & 2 \end{array} \right]$$

Multiply each element of row 2 by $\frac{1}{3}$:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 4 & 6 \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{1} & 3 & 0 \\ \mathbf{0} & 2 & 7 & 2 \end{array} \right]$$

Replace the third row by the sum of itself and -2 times the second row:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 4 & 6 \\ \mathbf{0} & 1 & 3 & 0 \\ \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} & 1 & 2 \end{array} \right]$$

✓ Checkpoint 4

Complete the matrix solution of the system with this augmented matrix:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 3 & 1 & 5 \end{array} \right]$$

The solution of the system is $(-14, -6, 2)$. ✓₄

$$\begin{aligned} x - 2(-6) + 4(2) &= 6 \\ x + 20 &= 6 \\ x &= -14. \end{aligned}$$

A matrix, such as the last one in Example 2, is said to be in **row echelon form** when

- all rows consisting entirely of zeros (if any) are at the bottom;
- the first nonzero entry in each row is 1 (called a *leading 1*); and
- each leading 1 appears to the right of the leading 1s in any preceding rows.

When a matrix in row echelon form is the augmented matrix of a system of equations, as in Example 2, the system can readily be solved by back substitution. So the matrix solution method amounts to transforming the augmented matrix of a system of equations into a matrix in row echelon form.

The Gauss–Jordan Method

The **Gauss–Jordan method** is a variation on the matrix elimination method used in Example 2. It replaces the back substitution used there with additional elimination of variables, as illustrated in the next example.

Example 3

Use the Gauss–Jordan method to solve the system in Example 2.

Solution First, set up the augmented matrix. Then apply the same row operations used in Example 2 until you reach the final row echelon matrix, which is

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 4 & 6 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{array} \right].$$

Now use additional row operations to make the entries (other than the 1s) in columns two and three into zeros. Make the first two entries in column three 0 as follows:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 4 & 6 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & -6 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{array} \right] \quad \begin{array}{l} -3R_3 + R_2 \\ -4R_3 + R_1 \end{array}$$


$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 0 & -2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -6 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{array} \right] \quad -4R_3 + R_1$$

Now make the first entry in column two 0.

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & -14 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -6 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{array} \right] \quad 2R_2 + R_1$$

The last matrix corresponds to the system $x = -14$, $y = -6$, $z = 2$. So the solution of the original system is $(-14, -6, 2)$. This solution agrees with what we found in Example 2.

The final matrix in the Gauss–Jordan method is said to be in **reduced row echelon form**, meaning that it is in row echelon form *and* every column containing a leading 1 has zeros in all its other entries, as in Example 3. As we saw there, the solution of the system can be read directly from the reduced row echelon matrix.

In the Gauss–Jordan method, row operations may be performed in any order, but it is best to transform the matrix systematically. Either follow the procedure in Example 3 (which first puts the system into a form in which back substitution can be used and then eliminates additional variables) or work column by column from left to right, as in Checkpoint 5. 

Checkpoint 5

Use the Gauss–Jordan method to solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2y &= 11 \\ -4x + y &= -8 \\ 5x + y &= 19 \end{aligned}$$

as instructed in parts (a)–(g). Give the shorthand notation for the required row operations in parts (b)–(f) and the new matrix in each step.

- (a) Set up the augmented matrix.
- (b) Get 0 in row 2, column 1.
- (c) Get 0 in row 3, column 1.
- (d) Get 1 in row 2, column 2.
- (e) Get 0 in row 1, column 2.
- (f) Get 0 in row 3, column 2.
- (g) List the solution of the system.

Technology and Systems of Equations

When working by hand, it is usually better to use the matrix elimination method (Example 2), because errors with back substitution are less likely to occur than errors in performing the additional row operations needed in the Gauss–Jordan method. When you are using technology, however, the Gauss–Jordan method (Example 3) is more efficient: The solution can be read directly from the final reduced row echelon matrix without any “hand work,” as illustrated in the next example.



Example 4

Use a graphing calculator to solve the system in Example 2.

Solution There are three ways to proceed.

Matrix Elimination Method Enter the augmented matrix of the system into the calculator (Figure 6.3). Use REF (in the MATH or OPS submenu of the MATRIX menu) to put this matrix in row echelon form (Figure 6.4). The system corresponding to this matrix is

$$\begin{aligned}x - 3y + .5z &= 5 \\y + 3.125z &= .25 \\z &= 2.\end{aligned}$$

Because the calculator used a different sequence of row operations than was used in Example 2, it produced a different row echelon matrix (and corresponding system). However, back substitution shows that the solutions of this system are the same ones found in Example 2:

$$\begin{aligned}z = 2 \quad y + 3.125(2) &= .25 & x - 3(-6) + .5(2) &= 5 \\y + 6.25 &= .25 & x + 18 + 1 &= 5 \\y &= -6 & x &= -14.\end{aligned}$$

As you can see, a significant amount of hand work is involved in this method, so it is not recommended.

Gauss–Jordan Method Enter the augmented matrix (Figure 6.3). Use RREF (in same menu as REF) to produce the same reduced row echelon matrix obtained in Example 3 (Figure 6.5). The solution of the system can be read directly from the matrix: $x = -14$, $y = -6$, $z = 2$.

System Solver Method This is essentially the same as the Gauss–Jordan method, with an extra step at the beginning. Call up the solver (see the Technology Tip on the next page) and enter the number of variables and equations. The solver will display an appropriately sized matrix, with all entries 0. Change the entries so that the matrix becomes the augmented matrix of the system (Figure 6.6). Press SOLVE and the solution will appear (Figure 6.7). The calculator uses the variables x_1 , x_2 , and x_3 instead of x , y , and z .

$$[A] \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 4 & 6 \\ 1 & 1 & 13 & 6 \\ -2 & 6 & -1 & -10 \end{bmatrix}$$

Figure 6.3

$$\text{ref}([A]) \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & .5 & 5 \\ 0 & 1 & 3.125 & .25 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Figure 6.4

$$\text{rref}([A]) \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & -14 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -6 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Figure 6.5

✓ Checkpoint 6

On a graphing calculator, use the Gauss–Jordan method or the system solver to solve

$$\begin{aligned}x - y + 5z &= -6 \\4x + 2y + 4z &= 4 \\x - 5y + 8z &= -17 \\x + 3y + 2z &= 5.\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|} \hline \text{SYSTEM MATRIX (3x4)} & & & \\ \hline [1 & -2 & 4 & 6] \\ [1 & 1 & 13 & 6] \\ [-2 & 6 & -1 & -10] \\ \hline \end{array}$$

(3, 4) = -10


MAIN | MODE | CLR | LOAD | SOLVE

Figure 6.6

$$\begin{array}{|c|} \hline \text{SOLUTION} \\ \hline X1 = -14 \\ X2 = -6 \\ X3 = 2 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

MAIN | MODE | SYSM | STO | F◀▶D

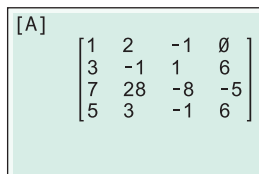
Figure 6.7

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** Many graphing calculators have system solvers. Select PLYSMLT2 in the APPS menu of TI-84+, SIMULT on the TI-86 keyboard, or EQUA in the Casio main menu. *Note:* The TI-86 and Casio solvers work only for systems that have the same number of variables as equations *and* have a unique solution (so they cannot be used in Checkpoint 6 or in Examples 5–8).

 **Example 5** Use a graphing calculator to solve the system

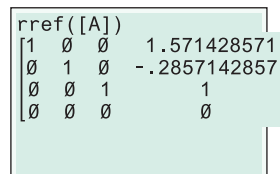
$$\begin{aligned}x + 2y - z &= 0 \\3x - y + z &= 6 \\7x + 28y - 8z &= -5 \\5x + 3y - z &= 6.\end{aligned}$$

Solution Enter the augmented matrix into the calculator (Figure 6.8). Then use RREF to put this matrix in reduced row echelon form (Figure 6.9). In Figure 6.9, you must use the arrow key to scroll over to see the full decimal expansions in the right-hand column. This inconvenience can be avoided on TI calculators by using FRAC (in the MATH menu), as in Figure 6.10.



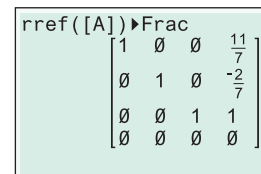
$$[A] \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 1 & 6 \\ 7 & 28 & -8 & -5 \\ 5 & 3 & -1 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

Figure 6.8



$$\text{rref}([A]) \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1.571428571 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -.2857142857 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Figure 6.9



$$\text{rref}([A]) \triangleright \text{Frac} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{11}{7} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -\frac{2}{7} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Figure 6.10

Checkpoint 7

Use a graphing calculator to solve the following system:

$$\begin{aligned}x + 3y &= 4 \\4x + 8y &= 4 \\6x + 12y &= 6.\end{aligned}$$

The answers can now be read from the last column of the matrix in Figure 6.10: $x = 11/7$, $y = -2/7$, $z = 1$. 

Inconsistent and Dependent Systems

Recall that a system of equations in two variables may have exactly one solution, an infinite number of solutions, or no solutions at all. This fact was illustrated geometrically in Figure 6.1. The same thing is true for systems with three or more variables (and the same terminology is used): A system has exactly one solution (an **independent system**), an infinite number of solutions (a **dependent system**), or no solutions at all (an **inconsistent system**).

Example 6 Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned}2x + 4y &= 4 \\3x + 6y &= 8 \\2x + y &= 7.\end{aligned}$$

Solution There are several possible ways to proceed.

Manual Method Write the augmented matrix and perform row operations to obtain a first column whose entries (from top to bottom) are 1, 0, 0:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 2 & 4 & 4 \\ 3 & 6 & 8 \\ 2 & 1 & 7 \end{array} \right]$$

Figure 6.11

✓ Checkpoint 8



Solve each system.

- (a) $x - y = 4$
 $-2x + 2y = 1$
- (b) $3x - 4y = 0$
 $2x + y = 0$

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 2 & 2 \\ 3 & 6 & 8 \\ 2 & 1 & 7 \end{array} \right] \quad \frac{1}{2}R_1$$

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 2 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & 7 \end{array} \right] \quad -3R_1 + R_2$$

Stop! The second row of the matrix denotes the equation $0x + 0y = 2$. Since the left side of this equation is always 0 and the right side is 2, it has no solution. Therefore, the original system has no solution.

 **Calculator Method** Enter the augmented matrix into a graphing calculator and use RREF to put it into reduced row echelon form, as in Figure 6.11. The last row of that matrix corresponds to $0x + 0y = 1$, which has no solution. Hence, the original system has no solution. 

Whenever the solution process produces a row whose elements are all 0 *except* the last one, as in Example 6, the system is inconsistent and has no solutions. However, if a row with a 0 for *every* entry is produced, it corresponds to an equation such as $0x + 0y + 0z = 0$, which has infinitely many solutions. So the system may have solutions, as in the next example.

Example 7

Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - 3y + 4z &= 6 \\ x - 2y + z &= 9 \\ y + 2z &= -12. \end{aligned}$$

Solution Use matrix elimination as far as possible, beginning with the augmented matrix of the system:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 2 & -3 & 4 & 6 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 & 9 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & -12 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 1 & 9 \\ 2 & -3 & 4 & 6 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & -12 \end{array} \right] \quad \text{Interchange } R_1 \text{ and } R_2.$$

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 1 & 9 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & -12 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & -12 \end{array} \right] \quad -2R_1 + R_2$$

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 1 & 9 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & -12 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right] \quad -R_2 + R_3$$

$$\begin{aligned} x - 2y + z &= 9 \\ y + 2z &= -12. \end{aligned}$$

The last augmented matrix above represents the system shown to its right. Since there are only two rows in the matrix, it is not possible to continue the process. The fact that the corresponding system has one variable (namely, z) that is not the leading variable of an equation indicates a dependent system. To find its solutions, first solve the second equation for y :

$$y = -2z - 12.$$

Now substitute the result for y in the first equation and solve for x :


$$\begin{aligned}x - 2y + z &= 9 \\x - 2(-2z - 12) + z &= 9 \\x + 4z + 24 + z &= 9 \\x + 5z &= -15 \\x &= -5z - 15.\end{aligned}$$

Each choice of a value for z leads to values for x and y . For example,

$$\begin{aligned}\text{if } z &= 1, & \text{ then } x &= -20 & \text{ and } y &= -14; \\ \text{if } z &= -6, & \text{ then } x &= 15 & \text{ and } y &= 0; \\ \text{if } z &= 0, & \text{ then } x &= -15 & \text{ and } y &= -12.\end{aligned}$$

There are infinitely many solutions of the original system, since z can take on infinitely many values. The solutions are all ordered triples of the form

$$(-5z - 15, -2z - 12, z),$$

where z is any real number. 

Checkpoint 9

Use the following values of z to find additional solutions for the system of Example 7.

- (a) $z = 7$
- (b) $z = -14$
- (c) $z = 5$

$$[A] \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 9 & -12 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Figure 6.12

Example 8 Row operations were used to reduce the augmented matrix of a system of three equations in four variables (x , y , z , and w) to the reduced row echelon matrix in Figure 6.12. Solve the system.


Solution First write out the system represented by the matrix:

$$\begin{aligned}x + 9w &= -12 \\ y - w &= 4 \\ z - 2w &= 1.\end{aligned}$$

Let w be the parameter. Solve the first equation for x , the second for y , and the third for z :

$$x = -9w - 12; \quad y = w + 4; \quad z = 2w + 1.$$

The solutions are given by $(-9w - 12, w + 4, 2w + 1, w)$, where w is any real number.

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** When the system solvers on TI-86 and Casio produce an error message, the system might be inconsistent (no solutions) or dependent (infinitely many solutions). You must use RREF or manual methods to solve the system.

The TI-84+ solver usually solves dependent systems directly; Figure 6.13 shows its solutions for Example 7. When the message “no solution found” is displayed, as in Figure 6.14, select RREF at the bottom of the screen to display the reduced row echelon matrix of the system. From that, you can determine the solutions (if there are any) or that no solutions are possible.

Figure 6.13

Figure 6.14

6.2 Exercises

Obtain an equivalent system by performing the stated elementary operation on the system. (See Example 1.)

1. Interchange equations 1 and 2.

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - 4y + 5z &= 1 \\ x &\quad - 3z = 2 \\ 5x - 8y + 7z &= 6 \\ 3x - 4y + 2z &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

2. Interchange equations 1 and 3.

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - 2y + z &= -6 \\ 3x + y + 2z &= 2 \\ x + y - 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

3. Multiply the second equation by -1 .

$$\begin{aligned} 3x &\quad + z + 2w + 18v = 0 \\ 4x - y + &\quad w + 24v = 0 \\ 7x - y + z + 3w + 42v &= 0 \\ 4x &\quad + z + 2w + 24v = 0 \end{aligned}$$

4. Multiply the third equation by $1/2$.

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 4z &= 3 \\ x &\quad + 2z = 0 \\ 2x + 4y + z &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

5. Replace the second equation by the sum of itself and -2 times the first equation.

$$\begin{aligned} x + y + 2z + 3w &= 1 \\ 2x + y + 3z + 4w &= 1 \\ 3x + y + 4z + 5w &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

6. Replace the third equation by the sum of itself and -1 times the first equation.

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 4z &= 6 \\ y + z &= 1 \\ x + 3y + 5z &= 10 \end{aligned}$$

7. Replace the third equation by the sum of itself and -2 times the second equation.

$$\begin{aligned} x + 12y - 3z + 4w &= 10 \\ 2y + 3z + w &= 4 \\ 4y + 5z + 2w &= 1 \\ 6y - 2z - 3w &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

8. Replace the third equation by the sum of itself and 3 times the second equation.

$$\begin{aligned} 2x + 2y - 4z + w &= -5 \\ 2y + 4z - w &= 2 \\ -6y - 4z + 2w &= 6 \\ 2y + 5z - 3w &= 7 \end{aligned}$$

Solve the system by back substitution. (See Example 1.)

9.
$$\begin{aligned} x + 3y - 4z + 2w &= 1 \\ y + z - w &= 4 \\ 2z + 2w &= -6 \\ 3w &= 9 \end{aligned}$$

10.
$$\begin{aligned} x + 5z + 6w &= 10 \\ y + 3z - 2w &= 4 \\ z - 4w &= -6 \\ 2w &= 4 \end{aligned}$$

11.
$$\begin{aligned} 2x + 2y - 4z + w &= -5 \\ 3y + 4z - w &= 0 \\ 2z - 7w &= -6 \\ 5w &= 15 \end{aligned}$$

12.
$$\begin{aligned} 3x - 2y - 4z + 2w &= 6 \\ 2y + 5z - 3w &= 7 \\ 3z + 4w &= 0 \\ 3w &= 15 \end{aligned}$$

Write the augmented matrix of each of the given systems. Do not solve the systems. (See Example 2.)

13.
$$\begin{aligned} 2x + y + z &= 3 \\ 3x - 4y + 2z &= -5 \\ x + y + z &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

14.
$$\begin{aligned} 3x + 4y - 2z - 3w &= 0 \\ x - 3y + 7z + 4w &= 9 \\ 2x + 5z - 6w &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Write the system of equations associated with each of the given augmented matrices. Do not solve the systems.

15.
$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 2 & 3 & 8 & 20 \\ 1 & 4 & 6 & 12 \\ 0 & 3 & 5 & 10 \end{array} \right]$$

16.
$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 3 & 2 & 6 & 18 \\ 2 & -2 & 5 & 7 \\ 1 & 0 & 5 & 20 \end{array} \right]$$

Use the indicated row operation to transform each matrix. (See Examples 2 and 3.)

17. Interchange R_2 and R_3 .

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 6 & 5 & 4 & 6 \\ 2 & 0 & 7 & -4 \end{array} \right]$$

18. Replace R_3 by $-3R_1 + R_3$.

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 5 & 2 & 0 \\ 8 & 5 & 4 & 6 \\ 3 & 0 & 7 & 1 \end{array} \right]$$

19. Replace R_2 by $2R_1 + R_2$.

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} -4 & -3 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 8 & 2 & 5 & 0 & 6 \\ 0 & -2 & 9 & 4 & 5 \end{array} \right]$$

20. Replace R_3 by $\frac{1}{4}R_3$.

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 2 & 5 & 1 & -1 \\ -4 & 0 & 4 & 6 \\ 6 & 0 & 8 & -4 \end{array} \right]$$

In Exercises 21–24, the reduced row echelon form of the augmented matrix of a system of equations is given. Find the solutions of the system. (See Example 3.)

$$21. \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 3/2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 17 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$22. \left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 6 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right]$$

$$23. \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 12 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$24. \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 7 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

In Exercises 25–30, perform row operations on the augmented matrix as far as necessary to determine whether the system is independent, dependent, or inconsistent. (See Examples 6–8.)

$$25. \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ y - z = 2 \\ x + y + z = -2 \end{cases}$$

$$26. \begin{cases} x + 2y + z = 0 \\ y + 2z = 0 \\ x + y - z = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$27. \begin{cases} x + 2y + 4z = 6 \\ y + z = 1 \\ x + 3y + 5z = 10 \end{cases}$$

$$28. \begin{cases} x + y + 2z + 3w = 1 \\ 2x + y + 3z + 4w = 1 \\ 3x + y + 4z + 5w = 2 \end{cases}$$

$$29. \begin{cases} a - 3b - 2c = -3 \\ 3a + 2b - c = 12 \\ -a - b + 4c = 3 \end{cases}$$

$$30. \begin{cases} 2x + 2y + 2z = 6 \\ 3x - 3y - 4z = -1 \\ x + y + 3z = 11 \end{cases}$$

Write the augmented matrix of the system and use the matrix method to solve the system. (See Examples 2 and 4.)

$$31. \begin{cases} -x + 3y + 2z = 0 \\ 2x - y - z = 3 \\ x + 2y + 3z = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$32. \begin{cases} 3x + 7y + 9z = 0 \\ x + 2y + 3z = 2 \\ x + 4y + z = 2 \end{cases}$$

$$33. \begin{cases} x - 2y + 4z = 6 \\ x + 2y + 13z = 6 \\ -2x + 6y - z = -10 \end{cases}$$

$$34. \begin{cases} x - 2y + 5z = -6 \\ x + 2y + 3z = 0 \\ x + 3y + 2z = 5 \end{cases}$$

$$35. \begin{cases} x + y + z = 200 \\ x - 2y = 0 \\ 2x + 3y + 5z = 600 \\ 2x - y + z = 200 \end{cases}$$

$$36. \begin{cases} 2x - y + 2z = 3 \\ -x + 2y - z = 0 \\ 3y - 2z = 1 \\ x + y - z = 1 \end{cases}$$

$$37. \begin{cases} x + y + z = 5 \\ 2x + y - z = 2 \\ x - y + z = -2 \end{cases}$$

$$38. \begin{cases} 2x + y + 3z = 9 \\ -x - y + z = 1 \\ 3x - y + z = 9 \end{cases}$$

Use the Gauss–Jordan method to solve each of the given systems of equations. (See Examples 3–5.)

$$39. \begin{cases} x + 2y + z = 5 \\ 2x + y - 3z = -2 \\ 3x + y + 4z = -5 \end{cases}$$

$$40. \begin{cases} 3x - 2y + z = 6 \\ 3x + y - z = -4 \\ -x + 2y - 2z = -8 \end{cases}$$

$$41. \begin{cases} x + 3y - 6z = 7 \\ 2x - y + 2z = 0 \\ x + y + 2z = -1 \end{cases}$$

$$42. \begin{cases} x = 1 - y \\ 2x = z \\ 2z = -2 - y \end{cases}$$

$$43. \begin{cases} x - 2y + 4z = 9 \\ x + y + 13z = 6 \\ -2x + 6y - z = -10 \end{cases}$$

$$44. \begin{cases} x - y + 5z = -6 \\ 3x + 3y - z = 10 \\ x + 2y + 3z = 5 \end{cases}$$

Solve the system by any method.

$$45. \begin{cases} x + 3y + 4z = 14 \\ 2x - 3y + 2z = 10 \\ 3x - y + z = 9 \\ 4x + 2y + 5z = 9 \end{cases}$$

$$46. \begin{cases} 4x - y + 3z = -2 \\ 3x + 5y - z = 15 \\ -2x + y + 4z = 14 \\ x + 6y + 3z = 29 \end{cases}$$

$$47. \begin{cases} x + 8y + 8z = 8 \\ 3x - y + 3z = 5 \\ -2x - 4y - 6z = 5 \end{cases}$$

$$48. \begin{cases} 3x - 2y - 8z = 1 \\ 9x - 6y - 24z = -2 \\ x - y + z = 1 \end{cases}$$

$$49. \begin{cases} 5x + 3y + 4z = 19 \\ 3x - y + z = -4 \end{cases}$$

$$50. \begin{cases} 3x + y - z = 0 \\ 2x - y + 3z = -7 \end{cases}$$

$$51. \begin{cases} x - 2y + z = 5 \\ 2x + y - z = 2 \\ -2x + 4y - 2z = 2 \end{cases}$$

$$52. \begin{cases} 2x + 3y + z = 9 \\ 4x + y - 3z = -7 \\ 6x + 2y - 4z = -8 \end{cases}$$

$$53. \begin{cases} -8x - 9y = 11 \\ 24x + 34y = 2 \\ 16x + 11y = -57 \end{cases}$$

$$54. \begin{cases} 2x + y = 7 \\ x - y = 3 \\ x + 3y = 4 \end{cases}$$

$$55. \begin{cases} x + 2y = 3 \\ 2x + 3y = 4 \\ 3x + 4y = 5 \\ 4x + 5y = 6 \end{cases}$$

$$56. \begin{cases} x - y = 2 \\ x + y = 4 \\ 2x + 3y = 9 \\ 3x - 2y = 6 \end{cases}$$

$$57. \begin{cases} x + y - z = -20 \\ 2x - y + z = 11 \end{cases}$$

$$58. \begin{cases} 4x + 3y + z = 1 \\ -2x - y + 2z = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$59. \begin{cases} 2x + y + 3z - 2w = -6 \\ 4x + 3y + z - w = -2 \\ x + y + z + w = -5 \\ -2x - 2y - 2z + 2w = -10 \end{cases}$$

$$60. \begin{cases} x + y + z + w = -1 \\ -x + 4y + z - w = 0 \\ x - 2y + z - 2w = 11 \\ -x - 2y + z + 2w = -9 \end{cases}$$

$$61. \begin{cases} x + 2y - z = 3 \\ 3x + y + w = 4 \\ 2x - y + z + w = 2 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 62. \quad x - 2y - z - 3w &= -3 \\ -x + y + z &= 2 \\ 4y + 3z - 6w &= -2 \end{aligned}$$

$$63. \quad \frac{3}{x} - \frac{1}{y} + \frac{4}{z} = -13$$

$$\frac{1}{x} + \frac{2}{y} - \frac{1}{z} = 12$$

$$\frac{4}{x} - \frac{1}{y} + \frac{3}{z} = -7$$

[Hint: Let $u = 1/x$, $v = 1/y$, and $w = 1/z$, and solve the resulting system.]

$$64. \quad \frac{1}{x+1} - \frac{2}{y-3} + \frac{3}{z-2} = 4$$

$$\frac{5}{y-3} - \frac{10}{z-2} = -5$$

$$\frac{-3}{x+1} + \frac{4}{y-3} - \frac{1}{z-2} = -2$$

[Hint: Let $u = 1/(x+1)$, $v = 1/(y-3)$, and $w = 1/(z-2)$.]

Work these exercises.

65. **Social Science** The population y in year x of the county listed is approximated by:

$$\text{Calhoun County, IL: } x + 20y = 102$$

$$\text{Martin County, TX: } -x + 10y = 48$$

$$\text{Schley County, GA: } y = 5,$$

where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2010 and y is in thousands. When did all three counties have the same population? What was that population? (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

66. **Social Science** The population y in year x of the greater metropolitan area listed is approximated by the given equation in which $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2010 and y is in thousands:

$$\text{Portland, OR: } -32x + y = 2226$$

$$\text{Cambridge, MA: } -22x + y = 2246$$

$$\text{Charlotte, NC: } -73x + 2y = 4434.$$

In what year did all three metropolitan areas have the same population? (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

67. **Business** A band concert is attended by x adults, y teenagers, and z preteen children. These numbers satisfy the following equations:

$$x + 1.25y + .25z = 457.5$$

$$x + .6y + .4z = 390$$

$$3.16x + 3.48y + .4z = 1297.2.$$

How many adults, teenagers, and children were present?

68. **Business** The owner of a small business borrows money on three separate credit cards: x dollars on Mastercard, y dollars on Visa, and z dollars on American Express. These amounts satisfy the following equations:

$$1.18x + 1.15y + 1.09z = 11,244.25$$

$$3.54x - .55y + .27z = 3,732.75$$

$$.06x + .05y + .03z = 414.75.$$

How much did the owner borrow on each card?

Work these problems.

69. Graph the equations in the given system. Then explain why the graphs show that the system is inconsistent:

$$2x + 3y = 8$$

$$x - y = 4$$

$$5x + y = 7.$$

70. Explain why the graphs of the equations in the given system suggest that the system is independent:

$$-x + y = 1$$

$$-2x + y = 0$$

$$x + y = 3.$$

71. Find constants a , b , and c such that the points $(2, 3)$, $(-1, 0)$, and $(-2, 2)$ lie on the graph of the equation $y = ax^2 + bx + c$. (Hint: Since $(2, 3)$ is on the graph, we must have $3 = a(2^2) + b(2) + c$; that is, $4a + 2b + c = 3$. Similarly, the other two points lead to two more equations. Solve the resulting system for a , b , and c .)

72. Explain why a system with more variables than equations cannot have a unique solution (that is, be an independent system). (Hint: When you apply the elimination method to such a system, what must happen?)

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- (a) $(-1, 1)$ (b) $(3, 1, -1)$
- (a) $\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 4 & -2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 5 & 1 & -7 \\ 5 & -1 & 4 & 6 \end{array} \right]$ (b) $2x - 2y = -2$
 $x + y = 4$
 $3x + 5y = 8$
- (a) $\left[\begin{array}{cc} 3 & -2 \\ -1 & 5 \end{array} \right]$ (b) $\left[\begin{array}{cc} -2 & 10 \\ 3 & -2 \end{array} \right]$
(c) $\left[\begin{array}{cc} -1 & 5 \\ 6 & -17 \end{array} \right]$ (d) $\left[\begin{array}{cc} 5 & 1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{array} \right]$
- $(-1, 1, 2)$
- (a) $\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 2 & 11 \\ -4 & 1 & -8 \\ 5 & 1 & 19 \end{array} \right]$ (b) $4R_1 + R_2 \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 2 & 11 \\ 0 & 9 & 36 \\ 5 & 1 & 19 \end{array} \right]$
(c) $-5R_1 + R_3 \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 2 & 11 \\ 0 & 9 & 36 \\ 0 & -9 & -36 \end{array} \right]$
(d) $\frac{1}{9}R_2 \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 2 & 11 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & -9 & -36 \end{array} \right]$

$$(e) \quad -2R_2 + R_1 \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & -9 & -36 \end{array} \right]$$

$$(f) \quad \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 9R_2 + R_3 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$(g) (3, 4)$$

$$6. (1, 2, -1)$$

$$7. (-5, 3)$$

$$8. (a) \text{ No solution}$$

$$(b) (0, 0)$$

$$9. (a) (-50, -26, 7)$$

$$(b) (55, 16, -14)$$

$$(c) (-40, -22, 5)$$

6.3 Applications of Systems of Linear Equations

There are no hard and fast rules for solving applied problems, but it is usually best to begin by identifying the unknown quantities and letting each be represented by a variable. Then look at the given data to find one or more relationships among the unknown quantities that lead to equations. If the equations are all linear, use the techniques of the preceding sections to solve the system.

Example 1

Business The U-Drive Rent-a-Truck Company plans to spend \$5 million on 200 new vehicles. Each van will cost \$20,000, each small truck \$25,000, and each large truck \$35,000. Past experience shows that U-Drive needs twice as many vans as small trucks. How many of each kind of vehicle can the company buy?

Solution Let x be the number of vans, y the number of small trucks, and z the number of large trucks. Then

$$\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{Number of} \\ \text{vans} \end{array} \right) + \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{Number of} \\ \text{small trucks} \end{array} \right) + \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{Number of} \\ \text{large trucks} \end{array} \right) = \text{Total number of vehicles}$$

$$x + y + z = 200. \quad (1)$$

Similarly,

$$\left(\begin{array}{c} \text{Cost of } x \\ \text{vans} \end{array} \right) + \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{Cost of } y \\ \text{small trucks} \end{array} \right) + \left(\begin{array}{c} \text{Cost of } z \\ \text{large trucks} \end{array} \right) = \text{Total cost}$$

$$20,000x + 25,000y + 35,000z = 5,000,000.$$

Dividing both sides by 5000 produces the equivalent equation

$$4x + 5y + 7z = 1000. \quad (2)$$

Finally, the number of vans is twice the number of small trucks; that is, $x = 2y$, or equivalently,

$$x - 2y = 0. \quad (3)$$

We must solve the system given by equations (1)–(3):

$$\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 200 \\ 4x + 5y + 7z &= 1000 \\ x - 2y &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Manual Method Form the augmented matrix and transform it into row echelon form:

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 200 \\ 4 & 5 & 7 & 1000 \\ 1 & -2 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right] \\ & \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 200 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 200 \\ 0 & -3 & -1 & -200 \end{array} \right] \begin{array}{l} -4R_1 + R_2 \\ -R_1 + R_3 \end{array} \\ & \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 200 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 200 \\ 0 & 0 & 8 & 400 \end{array} \right] 3R_2 + R_3 \\ & \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 200 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 200 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 50 \end{array} \right] \frac{1}{8}R_3 \end{aligned}$$

This row echelon matrix corresponds to the system

$$\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 200 \\ y + 3z &= 200 \\ z &= 50. \end{aligned}$$



Use back substitution to solve this system:

$$\begin{aligned} z = 50 \quad y + 3z &= 200 & x + y + z &= 200 \\ y + 3(50) &= 200 & x + 50 + 50 &= 200 \\ y + 150 &= 200 & x &+ 100 = 200 \\ y &= 50 & x &= 100. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, U-Drive should buy 100 vans, 50 small trucks, and 50 large trucks.

```
rref([A])
[ 1  0  0 100 ]
[ 0  1  0  50 ]
[ 0  0  1  50 ]
```

Figure 6.15

 **Calculator Method** Enter the augmented matrix of the system into the calculator. Use RREF to change it into reduced row echelon form, as in Figure 6.15. The answers may be read directly from the matrix: $x = 100$ vans, $y = 50$ small trucks, and $z = 50$ large trucks. 

✓ Checkpoint 1

In Example 1, suppose that U-Drive can spend only \$2 million on 150 new vehicles and the company needs three times as many vans as small trucks. Write a system of equations to express these conditions.

Example 2 Finance Ellen McGillicuddy plans to invest a total of \$100,000 in a money market account, a bond fund, an international stock fund, and a domestic stock fund. She wants 60% of her investment to be conservative (money market and bonds). She wants the amount in international stocks to be one-fourth of the amount in domestic stocks. Finally, she needs an annual return of \$4000. Assuming she gets annual returns of 2.5% on the money market account, 3.5% on the bond fund, 5% on the international stock fund, and 6% on the domestic stock fund, how much should she put in each investment?

Solution Let x be the amount invested in the money market account, y the amount in the bond fund, z the amount in the international stock fund, and w the amount in the domestic stock fund. Then

$$x + y + z + w = \text{total amount invested} = 100,000. \quad (4)$$

Use her annual return to get a second equation:

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(\begin{array}{c} 2.5\% \text{ return} \\ \text{on money} \\ \text{market} \end{array} \right) + \left(\begin{array}{c} 3.5\% \text{ return} \\ \text{on bond} \\ \text{fund} \end{array} \right) + \left(\begin{array}{c} 5\% \text{ return on} \\ \text{international} \\ \text{stock fund} \end{array} \right) + \left(\begin{array}{c} 6\% \text{ return} \\ \text{on domestic} \\ \text{stock fund} \end{array} \right) = 4000 \\ & \quad \downarrow \quad \quad \quad \downarrow \quad \quad \quad \downarrow \quad \quad \quad \downarrow \\ & .025x \quad + \quad .035y \quad + \quad .05z \quad + \quad .06w \quad = 4000. \quad (5) \end{aligned}$$

Since Ellen wants the amount in international stocks to be one-fourth of the amount in domestic stocks, we have

$$z = \frac{1}{4}w, \quad \text{or equivalently,} \quad z - .25w = 0. \quad (6)$$

Finally, the amount in conservative investments is $x + y$, and this quantity should be equal to 60% of \$100,000—that is,


$$x + y = 60,000. \quad (7)$$

Now solve the system given by equations (4)–(7):

$$\begin{aligned} x + y + z + w &= 100,000 \\ .025x + .035y + .05z + .06w &= 4,000 \\ z - .25w &= 0 \\ x + y &= 60,000. \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 2

- Write the augmented matrix of the system given by equations (4)–(7) of Example 2.
- List a sequence of row operations that transforms this matrix into row echelon form.
- Display the final row echelon form matrix.

Manual Method Write the augmented matrix of the system and transform it into row echelon form, as in Checkpoint 2. 

The final matrix in Checkpoint 2 represented the system

$$\begin{aligned} x + y + z + w &= 100,000 \\ y + 2.5z + 3.5w &= 150,000 \\ z - .25w &= 0 \\ w &= 32,000. \end{aligned}$$

Back substitution shows that

$$\begin{aligned} w &= 32,000 & z &= .25w = .25(32,000) = 8000 \\ y &= -2.5z - 3.5w + 150,000 = -2.5(8000) - 3.5(32,000) + 150,000 = 18,000 \\ x &= -y - z - w + 100,000 = -18,000 - 8000 - 32,000 + 100,000 = 42,000. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, Ellen should put \$42,000 in the money market account, \$18,000 in the bond fund, \$8000 in the international stock fund, and \$32,000 in the domestic stock fund.

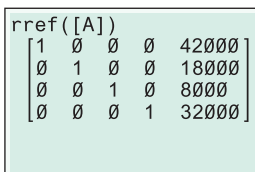



Figure 6.16

 **Calculator Method** Enter the augmented matrix of the system into the calculator. Use RREF to change it into reduced row echelon form, as in Figure 6.16. The answers can easily be read from this matrix: $x = 42,000$, $y = 18,000$, $z = 8000$, and $w = 32,000$.

Example 3 Business An animal feed is to be made from corn, soybeans, and cottonseed. Determine how many units of each ingredient are needed to make a feed that supplies 1800 units of fiber, 2800 units of fat, and 2200 units of protein, given that 1 unit of each ingredient provides the numbers of units shown in the table below. The table states, for example, that a unit of corn provides 10 units of fiber, 30 units of fat, and 20 units of protein.

	Corn	Soybeans	Cottonseed	Totals
Units of Fiber	10	20	30	1800
Units of Fat	30	20	40	2800
Units of Protein	20	40	25	2200

Solution Let x represent the required number of units of corn, y the number of units of soybeans, and z the number of units of cottonseed. Since the total amount of fiber is to be 1800, we have

$$10x + 20y + 30z = 1800.$$

The feed must supply 2800 units of fat, so

$$30x + 20y + 40z = 2800.$$


Finally, since 2200 units of protein are required, we have

$$20x + 40y + 25z = 2200.$$

Thus, we must solve this system of equations:

$$\begin{aligned} 10x + 20y + 30z &= 1800 \\ 30x + 20y + 40z &= 2800 \\ 20x + 40y + 25z &= 2200. \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

Now solve the system, either manually or with technology.

Manual Method Write the augmented matrix and use row operations to transform it into row echelon form, as in Checkpoint 3. The resulting matrix represents the following system: 

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 3z &= 180 \\ y + \frac{5}{4}z &= 65 \\ z &= 40. \end{aligned} \quad (9)$$

Back substitution now shows that

$$z = 40, \quad y = 65 - \frac{5}{4}(40) = 15, \quad \text{and} \quad x = 180 - 2(15) - 3(40) = 30.$$


Thus, the feed should contain 30 units of corn, 15 units of soybeans, and 40 units of cottonseed.

✓ Checkpoint 3

- Write the augmented matrix of system (8) of Example 3.
- List a sequence of row operations that transforms this matrix into row echelon form.
- Display the final row echelon form matrix.

$$\text{rref}([A]) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 30 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 15 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 40 \end{bmatrix}$$

Figure 6.17

 **Calculator Method** Enter the augmented matrix of the system into the calculator (top of Figure 6.17). Use RREF to transform it into reduced row echelon form (bottom of Figure 6.17), which shows that $x = 30$, $y = 15$, and $z = 40$.

Example 4 Social Science The table shows Census Bureau projections for the population of the United States (in millions).

Year	2020	2040	2050
U.S. Population	334	380	400

- Use the given data to construct a quadratic function that gives the U.S. population (in millions) in year x .

Solution Let $x = 0$ correspond to the year 2000. Then the table represents the data points (20,334), (40,380), and (50,400). We must find a function of the form

$$f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$$

whose graph contains these three points. If (20,334) is to be on the graph, we must have $f(20) = 334$; that is,

$$\begin{aligned} a(20)^2 + b(20) + c &= 334 \\ 400a + 20b + c &= 334. \end{aligned}$$

The other two points lead to these equations:

$$\begin{aligned} f(40) &= 380 & f(50) &= 400 \\ a(40)^2 + b(40) + c &= 380 & a(50)^2 + b(50) + c &= 400 \\ 1600a + 40b + c &= 380 & 2500a + 50b + c &= 400. \end{aligned}$$

Now work by hand or use technology to solve the following system:

$$\begin{aligned} 400a + 20b + c &= 334 \\ 1600a + 40b + c &= 380 \\ 2500a + 50b + c &= 400. \end{aligned}$$

The reduced row echelon form of the augmented matrix in Figure 6.18 shows that the solution is $a = -.01$, $b = 2.9$, and $c = 280$. So the function is

$$f(x) = -.01x^2 + 2.9x + 280.$$

(b) Use this model to estimate the U.S. population in the year 2030.

Solution The year 2030 corresponds to $x = 30$, so the U.S. population is projected to be

$$f(30) = -.01(30)^2 + 2.9(30) + 280 = 358 \text{ million.}$$

Figure 6.18

Example 5 Business Kelly Karpel Kleaners sells rug-cleaning machines. The EZ model weighs 10 pounds and comes in a 10-cubic-foot box. The compact model weighs 20 pounds and comes in an 8-cubic-foot box. The commercial model weighs 60 pounds and comes in a 28-cubic-foot box. Each of Kelly's delivery vans has 248 cubic feet of space and can hold a maximum of 440 pounds. In order for a van to be fully loaded, how many of each model should it carry?

Solution Let x be the number of EZ, y the number of compact, and z the number of commercial models carried by a van. Then we can summarize the given information in this table.

Model	Number	Weight	Volume
EZ	x	10	10
Compact	y	20	8
Commercial	z	60	28
Total for a load		440	248

Since a fully loaded van can carry 440 pounds and 248 cubic feet, we must solve this system of equations:

$$\begin{aligned} 10x + 20y + 60z &= 440 && \text{Weight equation} \\ 10x + 8y + 28z &= 248. && \text{Volume equation} \end{aligned}$$

The augmented matrix of the system is

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 10 & 20 & 60 & 440 \\ 10 & 8 & 28 & 248 \end{array} \right].$$

If you are working by hand, transform the matrix into row echelon form and use back substitution. If you are using a graphing calculator, use RREF to transform the matrix into reduced row echelon form, as in Figure 6.19 (which also uses FRAC in the MATH menu to eliminate long decimals).

Figure 6.19

The system corresponding to Figure 6.19 is

$$x + \frac{2}{3}z = 12$$

$$y + \frac{8}{3}z = 16,$$

which is easily solved: $x = 12 - \frac{2}{3}z$ and $y = 16 - \frac{8}{3}z$.

Hence, all solutions of the system are given by $\left(12 - \frac{2}{3}z, 16 - \frac{8}{3}z, z\right)$. The only solutions that apply in this situation, however, are those given by $z = 0, 3,$ and $6,$ because all other values of z lead to fractions or negative numbers. (You can't deliver part of a box or a negative number of boxes). Hence, there are three ways to have a fully loaded van:

Solution	Van Load
(12, 16, 0)	12 EZ, 16 compact, 0 commercial
(10, 8, 3)	10 EZ, 8 compact, 3 commercial
(8, 0, 6)	8 EZ, 0 compact, 6 commercial.

6.3 Exercises

Use systems of equations to work these applied problems. (See Examples 1–5.)

- Business** The U-Drive Rent-a-Truck Company of Example 1 learns that each van now costs \$25,000, each small truck costs \$30,000, and each large truck costs \$40,000. The company still needs twice as many vans as small trucks and wants to spend \$5 million, but it decides to buy only 175 vehicles. How many of each kind should it buy?
- Finance** Suppose that Ellen McGillicuddy in Example 2 finds that her annual return on the international stock fund will be only 4%. Now how much should she put in each investment?
- Health** To meet consumer demand, the animal feed in Example 3 now supplies only 2400 units of fat. How many units of corn, soybeans, and cottonseed are now needed?
- Business** Suppose that Kelly Karpel Kleaners in Example 5 finds a way to pack the EZ model in an 8-cubic-foot box. Now how many of each model should a fully loaded van carry?
- Business** Mario took clothes to the cleaners three times last month. First, he brought 3 shirts and 1 pair of slacks and paid \$10.96. Then he brought 7 shirts, 2 pairs of slacks, and a sports coat and paid \$30.40. Finally, he brought 4 shirts and 1 sports coat and paid \$14.45. How much was he charged for each shirt, each pair of slacks, and each sports coat?
- Business** A minor league baseball park has 7000 seats. Box seats cost \$6, grandstand seats cost \$4, and bleacher seats cost \$2. When all seats are sold, the revenue is \$26,400. If the number of box seats is one-third the number of bleacher seats, how many seats of each type are there?
- Business** Tickets to a band concert cost \$5 for adults, \$3 for teenagers, and \$2 for preteens. There were 570 people at the concert, and total ticket receipts were \$1950. Three-fourths as many teenagers as preteens attended. How many adults, teenagers, and preteens attended?
- Business** Shipping charges at an online bookstore are \$4 for one book, \$6 for two books, and \$7 for three to five books. Last week, there were 6400 orders of five or fewer books, and total shipping charges for these orders were \$33,600. The number of shipments with \$7 charges was 1000 less than the number with \$6 charges. How many shipments were made in each category (one book, two books, three-to-five books)?
- Finance** An investor wants to invest \$30,000 in corporate bonds that are rated AAA, A, and B. The lower rated ones pay higher interest, but pose a higher risk as well. The average yield is 5% on AAA bonds, 6% on A bonds, and 10% on B bonds. Being conservative, the investor wants to have twice as much in AAA bonds as in B bonds. How much should she invest in each type of bond to have an interest income of \$2000?
- Finance** Makayla borrows \$10,000. Some is from her friend at 8% annual interest, twice as much as that from her bank at 9%, and the remainder from her insurance company at 5%. She pays a total of \$830 in interest for the first year. How much did she borrow from each source?
- Business** Pretzels cost \$3 per pound, dried fruit \$4 per pound, and nuts \$8 per pound. How many pounds of each should be used to produce 140 pounds of trail mix costing \$6 per pound in which there are twice as many pretzels (by weight) as dried fruit?
- Business** An auto manufacturer sends cars from two plants, I and II, to dealerships A and B, located in a midwestern city.

Plant I has a total of 28 cars to send, and plant II has 8. Dealer A needs 20 cars, and dealer B needs 16. Transportation costs based on the distance of each dealership from each plant are \$220 from I to A, \$300 from I to B, \$400 from II to A, and \$180 from II to B. The manufacturer wants to limit transportation costs to \$10,640. How many cars should be sent from each plant to each of the two dealerships?

13. **Natural Science** An animal breeder can buy four types of tiger food. Each case of Brand A contains 25 units of fiber, 30 units of protein, and 30 units of fat. Each case of Brand B contains 50 units of fiber, 30 units of protein, and 20 units of fat. Each case of Brand C contains 75 units of fiber, 30 units of protein, and 20 units of fat. Each case of Brand D contains 100 units of fiber, 60 units of protein, and 30 units of fat. How many cases of each brand should the breeder mix together to obtain a food that provides 1200 units of fiber, 600 units of protein, and 400 units of fat?

14. **Physical Science** The stopping distance for a car traveling 25 mph is 61.7 feet, and for a car traveling 35 mph it is 106 feet. The stopping distance in feet can be described by the equation $y = ax^2 + bx$, where x is the speed in mph. (Data from: *National Traffic Safety Institute Student Workbook*, 1993, p. 7.)

- (a) Find the values of a and b .
- (b) Use your answers from part (a) to find the stopping distance for a car traveling 55 mph.

15. **Finance** An investor plans to invest \$70,000 in a mutual fund, corporate bonds, and a fast-food franchise. She plans to put twice as much in bonds as in the mutual fund. On the basis of past performance, she expects the mutual fund to pay a 2% dividend, the bonds 6%, and the franchise 10%. She would like a dividend income of \$4800. How much should she put in each of three investments?

16. **Business** According to data from a Texas agricultural report, the amounts of nitrogen (lb/acre), phosphate (lb/acre), and labor (hr/acre) needed to grow honeydews, yellow onions, and lettuce are given by the following table.*

	Honeydews	Yellow Onions	Lettuce
Nitrogen	120	150	180
Phosphate	180	80	80
Labor	4.97	4.45	4.65

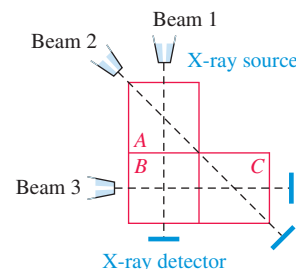
- (a) If a farmer has 220 acres, 29,100 pounds of nitrogen, 32,600 pounds of phosphate, and 480 hours of labor, can he use all of his resources completely? If so, how many acres should he allot for each crop?
- (b) Suppose everything is the same as in part (a), except that 1061 hours of labor are available. Is it possible to use all of his resources completely? If so, how many acres should he allot for each crop?

17. **Health** Computer-aided tomography (CAT) scanners take X-rays of a part of the body from different directions and put the information together to create a picture of a cross-section of

the body.[†] The amount by which the energy of the X-ray decreases, measured in linear-attenuation units, tells whether the X-ray has passed through healthy tissue, tumorous tissue, or bone, on the basis of the following table:

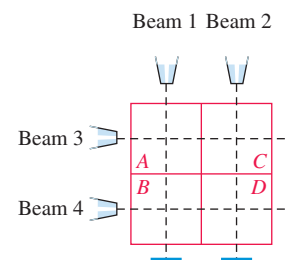
Type of Tissue	Linear-Attenuation Values
Healthy tissue	.1625–.2977
Tumorous tissue	.2679–.3930
Bone	.3857–.5108

The part of the body to be scanned is divided into cells. If an X-ray passes through more than one cell, the total linear-attenuation value is the sum of the values for the cells. For example, in the accompanying figure, let a , b , and c be the values for cells A, B, and C, respectively. Then the attenuation value for beam 1 is $a + b$ and for beam 2 is $a + c$.



- (a) Find the attenuation value for beam 3.
- (b) Suppose that the attenuation values are .8, .55, and .65 for beams 1, 2, and 3, respectively. Set up and solve the system of three equations for a , b , and c . What can you conclude about cells A, B, and C?

18. **Health** (Refer to Exercise 17.) Four X-ray beams are aimed at four cells, as shown in the following figure:

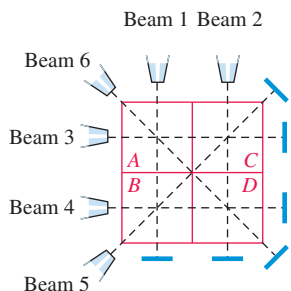


- (a) Suppose the attenuation values for beams 1, 2, 3, and 4 are .60, .75, .65, and .70, respectively. Do we have enough information to determine the values of a , b , c , and d ? Explain.
- (b) Suppose we have the data from part (a), as well as the following values for d . Find the values for a , b , and c , and make conclusions about cells A, B, C, and D in each case.
 - (i) .33
 - (ii) .43
- (c) Two X-ray beams are added as shown in the figure. In addition to the data in part (a), we now have attenuation values

*Miguel Paredes, Mohammad Fatehi, and Richard Hinthorn, "The Transformation of an Inconsistent Linear System into a Consistent System," *AMATYC Review*, 13, no. 2 (spring 1992).

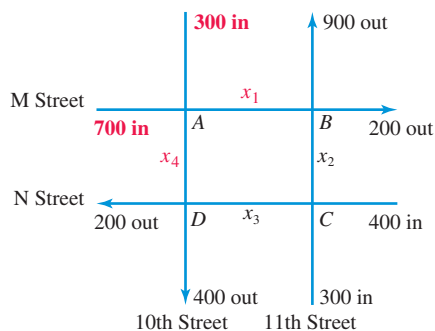
[†]Exercises 17 and 18 are based on the article "Medical Applications of Systems of Linear Equations," by David Jabon, Penny Coffman, Gail Nord, John Nord, and Bryce W. Wilson, *Mathematics Teacher* 89, no. 5 (May 1996) pp. 398–402; 408–410.

of .85 and .50 for beams 5 and 6, respectively. Find the values for a , b , c , and d , and make conclusions about cells A , B , C , and D .



19. **Physical Science** During rush hours, substantial traffic congestion is encountered at the intersections shown in the figure. (The arrows indicate one-way streets.)

The city wishes to improve the signals at these corners to speed the flow of traffic. The traffic engineers first gather data. As the figure shows, 700 cars per hour come down M Street to intersection A , and 300 cars per hour come down 10th Street to intersection A . x_1 of these cars leave A on M Street, and x_4 cars leave A on 10th Street.



The number of cars entering A must equal the number leaving, so that

$$x_1 + x_4 = 700 + 300,$$

or

$$x_1 + x_4 = 1000.$$

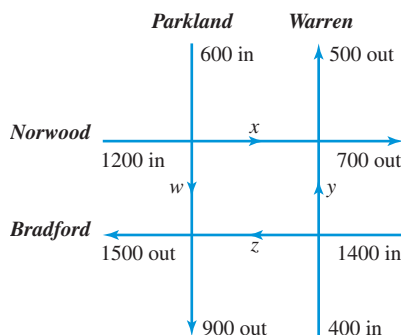
For intersection B , x_1 cars enter on M Street and x_2 on 11th Street. The figure shows that 900 cars leave B on 11th Street and 200 cars leave B on M Street. So, we have

$$x_1 + x_2 = 900 + 200$$

$$x_1 + x_2 = 1100.$$

- Write two equations representing the traffic entering and leaving intersections C and D .
- Solve the system of four equations, using x_4 as the parameter.
- On the basis of your solution to part (b), what are the largest and smallest possible values for the number of cars leaving intersection A on 10th Street?
- Answer the question in part (c) for the other three variables.
- Verify that you could have discarded any one of the four original equations without changing the solution. What does this tell you about the original problem?

20. **Physical Science** The diagram shows the traffic flow at four intersections during rush hour, as in Exercise 19.



- What are the possible values of x , y , z , and w that will avoid any congestion? (Use w as the parameter.)
- What are the possible values of w ?

A graphing calculator or other technology is recommended for the following exercises.

21. **Health** The table shows the calories, sodium, and protein in one cup of various kinds of soup.

	Progresso™ Hearty Chicken Rotini	Healthy Choice™ Hearty Chicken	Campbell's™ Chunky Chicken Noodle
Calories	100	130	110
Sodium (mg)	960	480	890
Protein (g)	7	9	8

How many cups of each kind of soup should be mixed together to produce 10 servings of soup, each of which provides 171 calories, 1158 milligrams of sodium, and 12.1 grams of protein? What is the serving size (in cups)? (*Hint:* In 10 servings, there must be 1710 calories, 11,580 milligrams of sodium, and 121 grams of protein.)

22. **Health** The table shows the calories, sodium, and fat in 1 ounce of various snack foods (all produced by Planters™):

	Sweet N' Crunchy Peanuts	Dry Roasted Honey Peanuts	Kettle Roasted Honey BBQ Peanuts
Calories	140	160	180
Sodium (mg)	20	110	55
Fat (g)	8	13	15


How many ounces of each kind of snack should be combined to produce 10 servings, each of which provides 284 calories, 93 milligrams of sodium, and 20.6 grams of fat? What is the serving size?

23. **Finance** An investment firm recommends that a client invest in bonds rated AAA, A, and B. The average yield on AAA bonds is 6%, on A bonds 7%, and on B bonds 10%. The client wants to invest twice as much in AAA bonds as in B bonds.

How much should be invested in each type of bond under the following conditions?

- (a) The total investment is \$25,000, and the investor wants an annual return of \$1810 on the three investments.
- (b) The values in part (a) are changed to \$30,000 and \$2150, respectively.
- (c) The values in part (a) are changed to \$40,000 and \$2900, respectively.
- 24. Business** An electronics company produces transistors, resistors, and computer chips. Each transistor requires 3 units of copper, 1 unit of zinc, and 2 units of glass. Each resistor requires 3, 2, and 1 unit of the three materials, and each computer chip requires 2, 1, and 2 units of these materials, respectively. How many of each product can be made with the following amounts of materials?
- (a) 810 units of copper, 410 of zinc, and 490 of glass
- (b) 765 units of copper, 385 of zinc, and 470 of glass
- (c) 1010 units of copper, 500 of zinc, and 610 of glass

Work these exercises. (See Example 4.)

-  **25. Social Science** The table shows Census Bureau projections for the female population of the United States (in millions).

Year	2015	2035	2040
Female Population	163	187	192

- (a) Find a quadratic function $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ that gives the female population (in millions) in year x , where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000.
- (b) Estimate the female population in the year 2020.
- 26. Social Science** The table shows Census Bureau projections for the male population of the United States (in millions).

Year	2015	2035	2040
Male Population	158	183	188

- (a) Find a quadratic function $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ that gives the male population (in millions) in year x , where $x = 0$ corresponds to the year 2000.
- (b) Estimate the male population in the year 2020.
- 27. Business** At a pottery factory, fuel consumption for heating the kilns varies with the size of the order being fired. In the past, the company recorded the figures in the table.

$x =$ Number of Platters	$y =$ Fuel Cost per Platter
6	\$2.80
8	2.48
10	2.24

- (a) Find an equation of the form $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ whose graph contains the three points corresponding to the data in the table.
- (b) How many platters should be fired at one time in order to minimize the fuel cost per platter? What is the minimum fuel cost per platter?

- 28. Health** The number of Alzheimer's cases in people 85 and older was 2 million in 2004 and is projected to be 3 million in 2025 and 8 million in 2050. (Data from: Alzheimer's Association.)

- (a) Let $x = 0$ correspond to 2000. Find a quadratic function that models the given data.
- (b) How many people 85 or older will have Alzheimer's disease in 2020 and in 2034?
- (c) In the year you turn 85, how many people your age or older are expected to have Alzheimer's disease?

- 29. Physical Science** For certain aircraft, there exists a quadratic relationship between an airplane's maximum speed S (in knots) and its ceiling C —its highest altitude possible (in thousands of feet). (Data from: D. Sanders, *Statistics: A First Course*, Fifth Edition [McGraw Hill, 1995].) The following table lists three airplanes that conform to this relationship:

Airplane	Maximum Speed	Ceiling
Hawkeye	320	33
Corsair	600	40
Tomcat	1283	50

- (a) If the relationship between C and S is written as $C = aS^2 + bS + c$, use a linear system of equations to determine the constants a , b , and c .
- (b) A new aircraft of this type has a ceiling of 45,000 feet. Predict its top speed.
- 30. Natural Science** The concentration (in parts per million) of carbon dioxide (a greenhouse gas) has been measured at Mauna Loa, Hawaii since 1959. The concentrations are known to have increased quadratically. The following table lists readings for three years. (Data from: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.)

Year	1960	1989	2012
Carbon Dioxide	317	353	394

- (a) Use the given data to construct a quadratic function that gives the concentration in year x . Let $x = 0$ correspond to the year 1959, so the table represents the data points (1,317), (30,353), and (53,394).
- (b) Use this model to estimate the carbon dioxide concentration in the year 2019.

Checkpoint Answers

$$\begin{aligned} 1. \quad x + y + z &= 150 \\ 4x + 5y + 7z &= 400 \\ x - 3y &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$2. \quad (a) \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 100,000 \\ .025 & .035 & .05 & .06 & 4000 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -.25 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 60,000 \end{bmatrix}$$

(b) Many sequences are possible, including this one:

Replace R_2 by $-.025R_1 + R_2$;

replace R_4 by $-R_1 + R_4$;

replace R_2 by $\frac{1}{.01}R_2$;

replace R_4 by $R_3 + R_4$;

replace R_4 by $\frac{-1}{1.25}R_4$.

$$(c) \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 100,000 \\ 0 & 1 & 2.5 & 3.5 & 150,000 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -.25 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 32,000 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$3. (a) \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 20 & 30 & 1800 \\ 30 & 20 & 40 & 2800 \\ 20 & 40 & 25 & 2200 \end{bmatrix}$$

(b) Many sequences are possible, including this one:

Replace R_1 by $\frac{1}{10}R_1$;

replace R_2 by $\frac{1}{10}R_2$;

replace R_3 by $\frac{1}{5}R_3$;

replace R_2 by $-3R_1 + R_2$;

replace R_3 by $-4R_1 + R_3$;

replace R_2 by $-\frac{1}{4}R_2$;

replace R_3 by $-\frac{1}{7}R_3$.

$$(c) \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 180 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{4} & 65 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 40 \end{bmatrix}$$

6.4 Basic Matrix Operations

Until now, we have used matrices only as a convenient shorthand to solve systems of equations. However, matrices are also important in the fields of management, natural science, engineering, and social science as a way to organize data, as Example 1 demonstrates.

Example 1

Business The EZ Life Company manufactures sofas and armchairs in three models: A , B , and C . The company has regional warehouses in New York, Chicago, and San Francisco. In its August shipment, the company sends 10 model A sofas, 12 model B sofas, 5 model C sofas, 15 model A chairs, 20 model B chairs, and 8 model C chairs to each warehouse.

These data might be organized by first listing them as follows:

Sofas	10 model A	12 model B	5 model C ;
Chairs	15 model A	20 model B	8 model C .

Alternatively, we might tabulate the data:

		MODEL		
		A	B	C
FURNITURE	Sofa	10	12	5
	Chair	15	20	8

With the understanding that the numbers in each row refer to the type of furniture (sofa or chair) and the numbers in each column refer to the model (A , B , or C), the same information can be given by a matrix as follows:

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 12 & 5 \\ 15 & 20 & 8 \end{bmatrix} \quad \checkmark_1$$

✓ Checkpoint 1

Rewrite matrix M in Example 1 in a matrix with three rows and two columns.

A matrix with m horizontal rows and n vertical columns has dimension, or size, $m \times n$. The number of rows is always given first.

Example 2

(a) The matrix $\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 5 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 5 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ is a 3×2 matrix.

(b) $\begin{bmatrix} 5 & 8 & 9 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 \\ -4 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ is a 3×3 matrix.

(c) $[1 \ 6 \ 5 \ -2 \ 5]$ is a 1×5 matrix.

(d) A graphing calculator displays a 4×1 matrix like this:

Checkpoint 2

Give the size of each of the following matrices.

(a) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -5 & 6 \\ 3 & 0 & 7 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$

(b) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 9 & 8 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$

Checkpoint 3

Use the numbers 2, 5, -8 , and 4 to write

- (a) a row matrix;
 (b) a column matrix;
 (c) a square matrix.

A matrix with only one row, as in Example 2(c), is called a **row matrix**, or **row vector**. A matrix with only one column, as in Example 2(d), is called a **column matrix**, or **column vector**. A matrix with the same number of rows as columns is called a **square matrix**. The matrix in Example 2(b) is a square matrix, as are

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -5 & 6 \\ 8 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -2 & 4 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -5 & -4 & 1 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$$

When a matrix is denoted by a single letter, such as the matrix A above, the element in row i and column j is denoted a_{ij} . For example, $a_{21} = 8$ (the element in row 2, column 1). Similarly, in matrix B , $b_{42} = -4$ (the element in row 4, column 2).

Addition

The matrix given in Example 1,

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 12 & 5 \\ 15 & 20 & 8 \end{bmatrix},$$

shows the August shipment from the EZ Life plant to each of its warehouses. If matrix N below gives the September shipment to the New York warehouse, what is the total shipment for each item of furniture to the New York warehouse for the two months?

$$N = \begin{bmatrix} 45 & 35 & 20 \\ 65 & 40 & 35 \end{bmatrix}$$

If 10 model A sofas were shipped in August and 45 in September, then altogether 55 model A sofas were shipped in the two months. Adding the other corresponding entries gives a new matrix, Q , that represents the total shipment to the New York warehouse for the two months:

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} 55 & 47 & 25 \\ 80 & 60 & 43 \end{bmatrix}$$

It is convenient to refer to Q as the *sum* of M and N .

The way these two matrices were added illustrates the following definition of addition of matrices:

Matrix Addition

The **sum** of two $m \times n$ matrices X and Y is the $m \times n$ matrix $X + Y$ in which each element is the sum of the corresponding elements of X and Y .

It is important to remember that only matrices that are the same size can be added.

Example 3 Find each sum if possible.

$$(a) \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -6 \\ 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -4 & 6 \\ 8 & -3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 + (-4) & -6 + 6 \\ 8 + 8 & 9 + (-3) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 16 & 6 \end{bmatrix}.$$

(b) The matrices

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 8 \\ 6 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 9 & 1 \\ 4 & 2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

are of different sizes, so it is not possible to find the sum $A + B$. 


✓ Checkpoint 4

Find each sum when possible.

$$(a) \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 & 7 \\ 3 & -1 & 4 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 & 0 \\ 10 & -4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$(b) \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 4 & 5 \\ 6 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$(c) [5 \ 4 \ -1] + [-5 \ 2 \ 3]$$

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** Graphing calculators can find matrix sums, as illustrated in Figure 6.20.

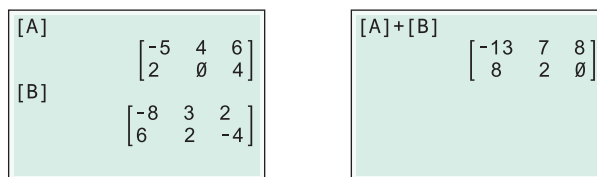


Figure 6.20


Example 4 Business The September shipments of the three models of sofas and chairs from the EZ Life Company to the New York, San Francisco, and Chicago warehouses are given respectively in matrices N , S , and C as follows:

$$N = \begin{bmatrix} 45 & 35 & 20 \\ 65 & 40 & 35 \end{bmatrix}; \quad S = \begin{bmatrix} 30 & 32 & 28 \\ 43 & 47 & 30 \end{bmatrix}; \quad C = \begin{bmatrix} 22 & 25 & 38 \\ 31 & 34 & 35 \end{bmatrix}.$$

What was the total amount shipped to the three warehouses in September?

Solution The total of the September shipments is represented by the sum of the three matrices N , S , and C :

$$\begin{aligned} N + S + C &= \begin{bmatrix} 45 & 35 & 20 \\ 65 & 40 & 35 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 30 & 32 & 28 \\ 43 & 47 & 30 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 22 & 25 & 38 \\ 31 & 34 & 35 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 97 & 92 & 86 \\ 139 & 121 & 100 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

For example, from this sum, the total number of model C sofas shipped to the three warehouses in September was 86. 

✓ Checkpoint 5

From the result of Example 4, find the total number of the following shipped to the three warehouses.

(a) Model A chairs

(b) Model B sofas

(c) Model C chairs

Example 5 **Health** A drug company is testing 200 patients to see if Painoff (a new headache medicine) is effective. Half the patients receive Painoff and half receive a placebo. The data on the first 50 patients is summarized in this matrix:

	Pain Relief Obtained	
	Yes	No
Patient took Painoff	22	3
Patient took placebo	8	17

For example, row 2 shows that, of the people who took the placebo, 8 got relief, but 17 did not. The test was repeated on three more groups of 50 patients each, with the results summarized by these matrices:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 21 & 4 \\ 6 & 19 \end{bmatrix}; \begin{bmatrix} 19 & 6 \\ 10 & 15 \end{bmatrix}; \begin{bmatrix} 23 & 2 \\ 3 & 22 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The total results of the test can be obtained by adding these four matrices:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 22 & 3 \\ 8 & 17 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 21 & 4 \\ 6 & 19 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 19 & 6 \\ 10 & 15 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 23 & 2 \\ 3 & 22 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 85 & 15 \\ 27 & 73 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Because 85 of 100 patients got relief with Painoff and only 27 of 100 did so with the placebo, it appears that Painoff is effective. 6

Checkpoint 6

Later, it was discovered that the data in the last group of 50 patients in Example 5 was invalid. Use a matrix to represent the total test results after those data were eliminated.

Subtraction

Subtraction of matrices can be defined in a manner similar to matrix addition.

Matrix Subtraction

The **difference** of two $m \times n$ matrices X and Y is the $m \times n$ matrix $X - Y$ in which each element is the difference of the corresponding elements of X and Y .

Example 6 Find the following.

(a) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & 5 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & -7 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & 5 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & -7 & 2 \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 - (-2) & 2 - 3 & 3 - 0 \\ 0 - 1 & -1 - (-7) & 5 - 2 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 & 3 \\ -1 & 6 & 3 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

(b) $[8 \ 6 \ -4] - [3 \ 5 \ -8]$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} [8 \ 6 \ -4] - [3 \ 5 \ -8] &= [8 - 3 \ 6 - 5 \ -4 - (-8)] \\ &= [5 \ 1 \ 4]. \end{aligned}$$

(c) $\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 5 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution The matrices are of different sizes and thus cannot be subtracted. 7

Checkpoint 7

Find each of the following differences when possible.

(a) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 4 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

(b) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 5 & 6 \\ 2 & 4 & 8 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 10 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

(c) $[5 \ -4 \ 1] - [6 \ 0 \ -3]$

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP**

Graphing calculators can do matrix subtraction, as illustrated in Figure 6.21.

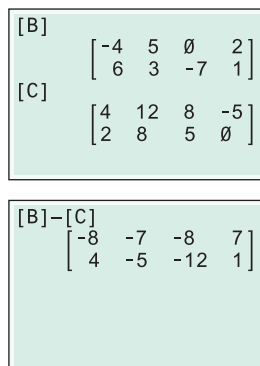


Figure 6.21

Example 7 Business During September, the Chicago warehouse of the EZ Life Company shipped out the following numbers of each model, where the entries in the matrix have the same meaning as given earlier:

$$K = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 10 & 8 \\ 11 & 14 & 15 \end{bmatrix}.$$

What was the Chicago warehouse's inventory on October 1, taking into account only the number of items received and sent out during the previous month?

Solution The number of each kind of item received during September is given by matrix C from Example 4; the number of each model sent out during September is given by matrix K . The October 1 inventory is thus represented by the matrix $C - K$:

$$C - K = \begin{bmatrix} 22 & 25 & 38 \\ 31 & 34 & 35 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 10 & 8 \\ 11 & 14 & 15 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 17 & 15 & 30 \\ 20 & 20 & 20 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Scalar Multiplication

Suppose one of the EZ Life Company warehouses receives the following order, written in matrix form, where the entries have the same meaning as given earlier:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 5 & 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Later, the store that sent the order asks the warehouse to send six more of the same order. The six new orders can be written as one matrix by multiplying each element in the matrix by 6, giving the product

$$6 \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 30 & 24 & 6 \\ 18 & 12 & 18 \end{bmatrix}.$$

In work with matrices, a real number, like the 6 in the preceding multiplication, is called a **scalar**.

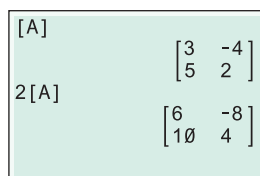


Figure 6.22

 **Checkpoint 8**

Find each product.

(a) $-3 \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$


(b) $4 \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 & 7 \\ 8 & 2 & 1 \\ 5 & 7 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

Scalar Multiplication

The **product** of a scalar k and a matrix X is the matrix kX in which each element is k times the corresponding element of X .

Example 8

(a) $(-3) \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ 1 & 7 \\ 4 & -6 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -6 & 15 \\ -3 & -21 \\ -12 & 18 \end{bmatrix}.$

(b) Graphing calculators can also do scalar multiplication (Figure 6.22). 



Recall that the *negative* of a real number a is the number $-a = (-1)a$. The negative of a matrix is defined similarly.

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP**

To compute the negative of matrix A on a calculator, use the “negative” key ($-$), as shown in Figure 6.23.

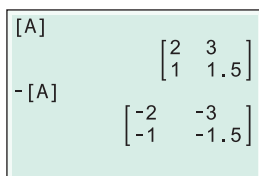


Figure 6.23

 **Checkpoint 9**

Let A and B be the matrices in Example 9. Find

- $A + (-B)$;
- $A - B$.
- What can you conclude from parts (a) and (b)?

The **negative** (or *additive inverse*) of a matrix A is the matrix $(-1)A$ which is obtained by multiplying each element of A by -1 . It is denoted $-A$.

Example 9 Find $-A$ and $-B$ when

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & -7 & 2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution By the preceding definition,

$$-A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -2 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & -5 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad -B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 & 0 \\ -1 & 7 & -2 \end{bmatrix}. \quad \checkmark 9$$

A matrix consisting only of zeros is called a **zero matrix** and is denoted O . There is an $m \times n$ zero matrix for each pair of values of m and n —for instance,

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}; \quad \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

2×2 zero matrix 2×4 zero matrix

The negative of a matrix and zero matrices have the following properties, as illustrated in Checkpoint 9 and Exercises 28–30.

Let A and B be any $m \times n$ matrices and let O be the $m \times n$ zero matrix. Then

$$\begin{aligned} A + (-B) &= A - B; \\ A + (-A) &= O = A - A; \\ A + O &= A = O + A. \end{aligned}$$

6.4 Exercises

Find the size of each of the given matrices. Identify any square, column, or row matrices. Give the negative (additive inverse) of each matrix. (See Examples 2 and 9.)

1. $\begin{bmatrix} 7 & -8 & 4 \\ 0 & 13 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$

2. $\begin{bmatrix} -7 & 23 \\ 5 & -6 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $\begin{bmatrix} -3 & 0 & 11 \\ 1 & \frac{1}{4} & -7 \\ 5 & -3 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $[6 \quad -4 \quad \frac{2}{3} \quad 12 \quad 2]$

5. $\begin{bmatrix} 7 \\ 11 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $[-5]$

7. If A is a 5×3 matrix and $A + B = A$, what do you know about B ?

8. If C is a 3×3 matrix and D is a 3×4 matrix, then $C + D$ is _____.

Perform the indicated operations where possible. (See Examples 3–7.)

9. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 7 & -1 \\ 8 & 0 & 2 & -4 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -8 & 12 & -5 & 5 \\ -2 & -3 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

10. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 7 \\ 2 & -3 \\ 3 & 7 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 8 \\ 6 & 8 \\ -1 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$

11. $\begin{bmatrix} -1 & -5 & 9 \\ 2 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 4 & -7 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

12. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ -8 & 2 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 9 & -5 \\ 8 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

13. $\begin{bmatrix} -3 & -2 & 5 \\ 3 & 9 & 0 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 5 & -2 \\ -3 & 6 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$

14. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -2 \\ 1 & 9 \\ -5 & -9 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 8 & 6 \\ 9 & 17 \\ 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

15. $\begin{bmatrix} 9 & 1 \\ 0 & -3 \\ 4 & 10 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 9 & -4 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

16. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -8 & 0 \\ 1 & 5 & -7 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 6 \\ 9 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$

Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 0 \\ 5 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ 4 & -6 \end{bmatrix}$. Find each of the following. (See Examples 8 and 9.)

17. $2A$ 18. $-3B$ 19. $-4B$
 20. $5A$ 21. $-4A + 5B$ 22. $3A - 10B$

Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ 4 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$. Find a matrix X satisfying the given equation.

23. $2X = 2A + 3B$ 24. $3X = A - 3B$

Using matrices

$$O = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, P = \begin{bmatrix} m & n \\ p & q \end{bmatrix}, T = \begin{bmatrix} r & s \\ t & u \end{bmatrix}, \text{ and } X = \begin{bmatrix} x & y \\ z & w \end{bmatrix},$$

verify that the statements in Exercises 25–30 are true.

25. $X + T$ is a 2×2 matrix.
 26. $X + T = T + X$ (commutative property of addition of matrices).
 27. $X + (T + P) = (X + T) + P$ (associative property of addition of matrices).
 28. $X + (-X) = O$ (inverse property of addition of matrices).
 29. $P + O = P$ (identity property of addition of matrices).
 30. Which of the preceding properties are valid for matrices that are not square?

Work the following exercises. (See Example 1.)

31. **Business** When ticket holders fail to attend, major league sports teams lose the money these fans would have spent on refreshments, souvenirs, etc. The percentage of fans who don't show up is 16% in basketball and hockey, 20% in football, and 18% in baseball. The lost revenue per fan is \$18.20 in basketball, \$18.25 in hockey, \$19 in football, and \$15.40 in baseball. The total annual lost revenue is \$22.7 million in basketball, \$35.8 million in hockey, \$51.9 million in football, and \$96.3 million in baseball. Express this information in matrix form; specify what the rows and columns represent. (Data from: American Demographics.)



32. **Finance** In both 2010 and 2011, 66% of college graduates had student loan debt. The average debt was \$25,250 in 2010 and rose to \$26,600 in 2011. The unemployment rate for 2011 graduates was 8.8%, down slightly from 9.1% in 2010. Write

this information as a 3×2 matrix, labeling rows and columns. (Data from: ProjectOnStudentDebt.org.)

33. **Health** The shortage of organs for transplants is a continuing problem in the United States. At the end of 2009, there were 2674 adults waiting for a heart transplant, 1799 for a lung transplant, 15,094 for a liver transplant, and 79,397 for a kidney transplant. Corresponding figures for 2010 were 2874, 1759, 15,394, and 83,919, respectively. In 2011, the figures were 2813, 1630, 15,330, and 86,547, respectively. Express this information as a matrix, labeling rows and columns. (Data from: Organ Procurement and Transplant Network and Scientific Registry of Transplant Recipients.)
34. **Finance** Median household debt varies by age group. Median secured debt (backed by collateral) is \$76,500 for individuals under 35 years old, \$128,500 for 35–44 year-olds, \$99,000 for 45–54 year-olds, \$85,000 for 55–64 year olds, and \$50,000 for those 65 and older. The corresponding figures for unsecured debt (including credit card debt) are \$9700, \$8400, \$8000, \$6000, and \$3450. Round all dollar amounts to the nearest thousand and then write this information (in thousands) in matrix form, labeling rows and columns. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

Work these exercises.

35. **Business** There are three convenience stores in Gambier. This week, Store I sold 88 loaves of bread, 48 quarts of milk, 16 jars of peanut butter, and 112 pounds of cold cuts. Store II sold 105 loaves of bread, 72 quarts of milk, 21 jars of peanut butter, and 147 pounds of cold cuts. Store III sold 60 loaves of bread, 40 quarts of milk, no peanut butter, and 50 pounds of cold cuts.
- (a) Use a 3×4 matrix to express the sales information for the three stores.
- (b) During the following week, sales on these products at Store I increased by 25%, sales at Store II increased by one-third, and sales at Store III increased by 10%. Write the sales matrix for that week.
- (c) Write a matrix that represents total sales over the two-week period.
36. **Social Science** The following table gives educational attainment as a percent of the U.S. population 25 years and older in various years. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

Year	MALE		FEMALE	
	Four Years of High School or More	Four Years of College or More	Four Years of High School or More	Four Years of College or More
1940	22.7%	5.5%	26.3%	3.8%
1970	55.0%	14.1%	55.4%	8.2%
2000	84.2%	27.8%	84.0%	23.6%
2012	87.3%	31.4%	88.0%	30.6%

- (a) Write a 2×4 matrix for the educational attainment of males.
- (b) Write a 2×4 matrix for the educational attainment of females.
- (c) Use the matrices from parts (a) and (b) to write a matrix showing how much more (or less) males have reached educational attainment than females.

37. **Social Science** The tables give the death rates (per million person-trips) for male and female drivers for various ages and numbers of passengers:

MALE DRIVERS				
Age	Number of Passengers			
	0	1	2	≥ 3
16	2.61	4.39	6.29	9.08
17	1.63	2.77	4.61	6.92
30–59	.92	.75	.62	.54

FEMALE DRIVERS				
Age	Number of Passengers			
	0	1	2	≥ 3
16	1.38	1.72	1.94	3.31
17	1.26	1.48	2.82	2.28
30–59	.41	.33	.27	.40

- (a) Write a matrix A for the death rate of male drivers.
 (b) Write a matrix B for the death rate of female drivers.
 (c) Use the matrices from parts (a) and (b) to write a matrix showing the difference between the death rates of males and females.
38. **Social Science** Use matrix operations on the matrices found in Exercise 37(a) and (b) to obtain one matrix that gives the combined death rates for males and females (per million person-trips) of drivers of various ages, with varying numbers of passengers. [Hint: Consider $\frac{1}{2}(A + B)$.]

*Li-Hui Chen, Susan Baker, Elisa Braver, and Guohua Li, "Carrying Passengers as a Risk Factor for Crashes Fatal to 16- and 17-Year-Old Drivers," *JAMA* 283, no. 12 (March 22/29, 2000): 1578–1582.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. $\begin{bmatrix} 10 & 15 \\ 12 & 20 \\ 5 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$
2. (a) 2×4 (b) 3×3
3. (a) $[2 \ 5 \ -8 \ 4]$
- (b) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \\ -8 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ -8 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ or $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -8 \\ 5 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$
 (Other answers are possible.)
4. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 7 & 7 \\ 13 & -5 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) Not possible
 (c) $[0 \ 6 \ 2]$
5. (a) 139 (b) 92 (c) 100
6. $\begin{bmatrix} 62 & 13 \\ 24 & 51 \end{bmatrix}$
7. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} -4 & 1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) Not possible
 (c) $[-1 \ -4 \ 4]$
8. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} -12 & 6 \\ -3 & -15 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{bmatrix} 8 & 16 & 28 \\ 32 & 8 & 4 \\ 20 & 28 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$
9. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 & 3 \\ -1 & 6 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 & 3 \\ -1 & 6 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$
 (c) $A + (-B) = A - B$

6.5 Matrix Products and Inverses

To understand the reasoning behind the definition of matrix multiplication, look again at the EZ Life Company. Suppose sofas and chairs of the same model are often sold as sets, with matrix W showing the number of each model set in each warehouse:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{New York} \\ \text{Chicago} \\ \text{San Francisco} \end{array} \begin{array}{ccc} A & B & C \\ \left[\begin{array}{ccc} 10 & 7 & 3 \\ 5 & 9 & 6 \\ 4 & 8 & 2 \end{array} \right] = W. \end{array}$$

If the selling price of a model A set is \$800, of a model B set is \$1000, and of a model C set is \$1200, find the total value of the sets in the New York warehouse as follows:

Type	Number of Sets		Price of Set		Total
A	10	\times	\$ 800	=	\$ 8,000
B	7	\times	1000	=	7,000
C	3	\times	1200	=	3,600
Total for New York					\$18,600

✓ Checkpoint 1

In this example of the EZ Life Company, find the total value of the New York sets if model A sets sell for \$1200, model B for \$1600, and model C for \$1300.

The total value of the three kinds of sets in New York is \$18,600. ✓

The work done in the preceding table is summarized as

$$10(\$800) + 7(\$1000) + 3(\$1200) = \$18,600.$$

In the same way, the Chicago sets have a total value of

$$5(\$800) + 9(\$1000) + 6(\$1200) = \$20,200,$$

and in San Francisco, the total value of the sets is

$$4(\$800) + 8(\$1000) + 2(\$1200) = \$13,600.$$

The selling prices can be written as a column matrix P and the total value in each location as a column matrix V :

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 800 \\ 1000 \\ 1200 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad V = \begin{bmatrix} 18,600 \\ 20,200 \\ 13,600 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Consider how the first row of the matrix W and the single column P lead to the first entry of V :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 10 & 7 & 3 \\ 5 & 9 & 6 \\ 4 & 8 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 800 \\ 1000 \\ 1200 \end{bmatrix} = 10(800) + 7(1000) + 3(1200) = \begin{bmatrix} 18,600 \\ 20,200 \\ 13,600 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Product of first entries
Product of second entries
Product of third entries

Similarly, adding the products of corresponding entries in the second row of W and the column P produces the second entry in V . The third entry in V is obtained in the same way by using the third row of W and column P . This suggests that it is reasonable to *define* the product WP to be V :

$$WP = \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 7 & 3 \\ 5 & 9 & 6 \\ 4 & 8 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 800 \\ 1000 \\ 1200 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 18,600 \\ 20,200 \\ 13,600 \end{bmatrix} = V$$

Note the sizes of the matrices here: The product of a 3×3 matrix and a 3×1 matrix is a 3×1 matrix.

Multiplying Matrices

In order to define matrix multiplication in the general case, we first define the **product of a row of a matrix and a column of a matrix** (with the same number of entries in each) to be the *number* obtained by multiplying the corresponding entries (first by first, second by second, etc.) and adding the results. For instance,

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = 3 \cdot 4 + (-2) \cdot 5 + 1 \cdot 0 = 12 - 10 + 0 = 2.$$

Now **matrix multiplication** is defined as follows.

Matrix Multiplication

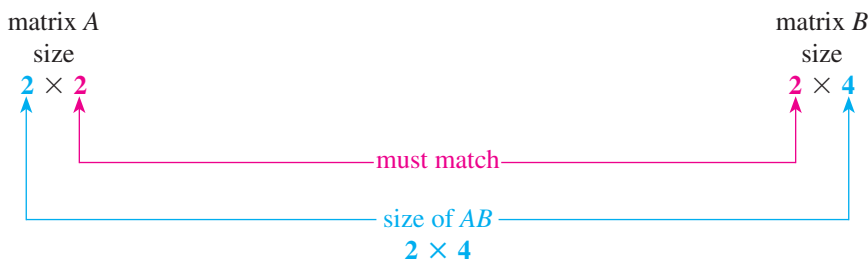
Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix and let B be an $n \times k$ matrix. The **product matrix** AB is the $m \times k$ matrix whose entry in the i th row and j th column is

the product of the i th row of A and the j th column of B .

CAUTION Be careful when multiplying matrices. Remember that the number of *columns* of A must equal the number of *rows* of B in order to get the product matrix AB . The final product will have as many rows as A and as many columns as B .

Example 1 Suppose matrix A is 2×2 and matrix B is 2×4 . Can the product AB be calculated? If so, what is the size of the product?

Solution The following diagram helps decide the answers to these questions:



The product AB can be calculated because A has two columns and B has two rows. The product will be a 2×4 matrix. ✓₂

✓ Checkpoint 2

Matrix A is 4×6 and matrix B is 2×4 .

- (a) Can AB be found? If so, give its size.
- (b) Can BA be found? If so, give its size.

Example 2 Find the product CD when

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 4 & 1 \\ 5 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad D = \begin{bmatrix} -6 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution Here, matrix C is 2×3 and matrix D is 3×2 , so matrix CD can be found and will be 2×2 .

Step 1 row 1, column 1

$$\begin{bmatrix} -3 & 4 & 1 \\ 5 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -6 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (-3) \cdot (-6) + 4 \cdot 2 + 1 \cdot 3 = 29.$$

Hence, 29 is the entry in row 1, column 1, of CD , as shown in Step 5 below.

Step 2 row 1, column 2

$$\begin{bmatrix} -3 & 4 & 1 \\ 5 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -6 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (-3) \cdot 4 + 4 \cdot 3 + 1 \cdot (-2) = -2.$$

So -2 is the entry in row 1, column 2, of CD , as shown in Step 5. Continue in this manner to find the remaining entries of CD .

Step 3 row 2, column 1

$$\begin{bmatrix} -3 & 4 & 1 \\ 5 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -6 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \quad 5 \cdot (-6) + 0 \cdot 2 + 4 \cdot 3 = -18.$$

Step 4 row 2, column 2

$$\begin{bmatrix} -3 & 4 & 1 \\ 5 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -6 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \quad 5 \cdot 4 + 0 \cdot 3 + 4 \cdot (-2) = 12.$$

Step 5 The product is

$$CD = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 4 & 1 \\ 5 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -6 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 29 & -2 \\ -18 & 12 \end{bmatrix}. \quad \checkmark_3$$

✓ Checkpoint 3

Find the product CD , given that

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 5 \\ 2 & -4 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 4 & 3 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

✓ Checkpoint 4

Give the size of each of the following products, if the product can be found.

(a) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 6 & 8 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$


(b) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 5 & 10 \\ 12 & 7 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 6 \\ 9 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

(c) $\begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix} [1 \ 0 \ 6]$

Example 3 Find BA , given that

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 7 \\ -3 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Since B is a 2×3 matrix and A is a 2×2 matrix, the product BA is not defined. \checkmark_4

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** Graphing calculators can find matrix products. However, if you use a graphing calculator to try to find the product in Example 3, the calculator will display an error message.

Matrix multiplication has some similarities to the multiplication of numbers.

For any matrices A , B , and C such that all the indicated sums and products exist, matrix multiplication is associative and distributive:

$$A(BC) = (AB)C; A(B + C) = AB + AC; (B + C)A = BA + CA.$$

However, there are important differences between matrix multiplication and the multiplication of numbers. (See Exercises 19–22 at the end of this section.) In particular, matrix multiplication is *not* commutative.

If A and B are matrices such that the products AB and BA exist,

$$AB \text{ may not equal } BA.$$

Figure 6.24 shows an example of this situation.

$\begin{array}{l} [A] \\ [B] \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 4 \\ 5 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{l} [A][B] \\ [B][A] \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \begin{bmatrix} -22 & -8 \\ 4 & 18 \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 16 \\ 14 & -14 \end{bmatrix} \end{array}$
---	--

Figure 6.24

Example 4 Business A contractor builds three kinds of houses, models A , B , and C , with a choice of two styles, Spanish or contemporary. Matrix P shows the number of each kind of house planned for a new 100-home subdivision:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Model A} \\ \text{Model B} \\ \text{Model C} \end{array} \begin{array}{cc} \text{Spanish} & \text{Contemporary} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 30 \\ 10 & 20 \\ 20 & 20 \end{bmatrix} & \end{array} = P.$$

The amounts for each of the exterior materials used depend primarily on the style of the house. These amounts are shown in matrix Q (concrete is measured in cubic yards, lumber in units of 1000 board feet, brick in thousands, and shingles in units of 100 square feet):

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Spanish} \\ \text{Contemporary} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{Concrete} \quad \text{Lumber} \quad \text{Brick} \quad \text{Shingles} \\ \left[\begin{array}{cccc} 10 & 2 & 0 & 2 \\ 50 & 1 & 20 & 2 \end{array} \right] = Q.$$

Matrix R gives the cost for each kind of material:

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Concrete} \\ \text{Lumber} \\ \text{Brick} \\ \text{Shingles} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{Cost per Unit} \\ \left[\begin{array}{c} 20 \\ 180 \\ 60 \\ 25 \end{array} \right] = R.$$

(a) What is the total cost for each model of house?

Solution First find the product PQ , which shows the amount of each material needed for each model of house:

$$PQ = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 30 \\ 10 & 20 \\ 20 & 20 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 2 & 0 & 2 \\ 50 & 1 & 20 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$PQ = \begin{array}{cccc} \text{Concrete} & \text{Lumber} & \text{Brick} & \text{Shingles} \\ \left[\begin{array}{cccc} 1500 & 30 & 600 & 60 \\ 1100 & 40 & 400 & 60 \\ 1200 & 60 & 400 & 80 \end{array} \right] & \text{Model A} \\ & \text{Model B.} \\ & \text{Model C} \end{array}$$

Now multiply PQ and R , the cost matrix, to get the total cost for each model of house:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1500 & 30 & 600 & 60 \\ 1100 & 40 & 400 & 60 \\ 1200 & 60 & 400 & 80 \end{bmatrix} \begin{array}{c} \text{Cost} \\ \left[\begin{array}{c} 20 \\ 180 \\ 60 \\ 25 \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c} 72,900 \\ 54,700 \\ 60,800 \end{array} \right] \begin{array}{l} \text{Model A} \\ \text{Model B.} \\ \text{Model C} \end{array}$$

(b) How much of each of the four kinds of material must be ordered?

Solution The totals of the columns of matrix PQ will give a matrix whose elements represent the total amounts of each material needed for the subdivision. Call this matrix T and write it as a row matrix:

$$T = [3800 \quad 130 \quad 1400 \quad 200].$$

(c) What is the total cost for material?

Solution Find the total cost of all the materials by taking the product of matrix T , the matrix showing the total amounts of each material, and matrix R , the cost matrix. [To multiply these and get a 1×1 matrix representing total cost, we must multiply a 1×4 matrix by a 4×1 matrix. This is why T was written as a row matrix in (b).] So, we have

$$TR = [3800 \quad 130 \quad 1400 \quad 200] \begin{bmatrix} 20 \\ 180 \\ 60 \\ 25 \end{bmatrix} = [188,400].$$

(d) Suppose the contractor builds the same number of homes in five subdivisions. What is the total amount of each material needed for each model in this case?

✓ Checkpoint 5

Let matrix A be

$$\text{Brand} \begin{array}{c} X \\ Y \end{array} \begin{array}{ccc} \text{Vitamin} \\ \text{C} & \text{E} & \text{K} \\ \left[\begin{array}{ccc} 2 & 7 & 5 \\ 4 & 6 & 9 \end{array} \right]$$

and matrix B be

$$\text{Vitamin} \begin{array}{c} C \\ E \\ K \end{array} \begin{array}{cc} \text{Cost} \\ X & Y \\ \left[\begin{array}{cc} 12 & 14 \\ 18 & 15 \\ 9 & 10 \end{array} \right]$$

- What quantities do matrices A and B represent?
- What quantities does the product AB represent?
- What quantities does the product BA represent?

Solution Determine the total amount of each material for each model for all five subdivisions. Multiply PQ by the scalar 5 as follows:

$$5 \begin{bmatrix} 1500 & 30 & 600 & 60 \\ 1100 & 40 & 400 & 60 \\ 1200 & 60 & 400 & 80 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 7500 & 150 & 3000 & 300 \\ 5500 & 200 & 2000 & 300 \\ 6000 & 300 & 2000 & 400 \end{bmatrix}$$

We can introduce notation to help keep track of the quantities a matrix represents. For example, we can say that matrix P from Example 4 represents models/styles, matrix Q represents styles/materials, and matrix R represents materials/cost. In each case, the meaning of the rows is written first and the columns second. When we found the product PQ in Example 4, the rows of the matrix represented models and the columns represented materials. Therefore, we can say that the matrix product PQ represents models/materials. The common quantity, styles, in both P and Q was eliminated in the product PQ . Do you see that the product $(PQ)R$ represents models/cost?

In practical problems, this notation helps decide in what order to multiply two matrices so that the results are meaningful. In Example 4(c), we could have found either product RT or product TR . However, since T represents subdivisions/materials and R represents materials/cost, the product TR gives subdivisions/cost. ✓₅

Identity Matrices

Recall from Section 1.1 that the real number 1 is the identity element for multiplication of real numbers: For any real number a , $a \cdot 1 = 1 \cdot a = a$. In this section, an **identity matrix** I is defined that has properties similar to those of the number 1.

If I is to be the identity matrix, the products AI and IA must both equal A . The 2×2 identity matrix that satisfies these conditions is

$$I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad \checkmark_6$$

To check that I is really the 2×2 identity matrix, let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}.$$

Then AI and IA should both equal A :

$$AI = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a(1) + b(0) & a(0) + b(1) \\ c(1) + d(0) & c(0) + d(1) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} = A;$$

$$IA = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1(a) + 0(c) & 1(b) + 0(d) \\ 0(a) + 1(c) & 0(b) + 1(d) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} = A.$$

This verifies that I has been defined correctly. (It can also be shown that I is the only 2×2 identity matrix.)

The identity matrices for 3×3 matrices and 4×4 matrices are, respectively,

$$I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

By generalizing these findings, an identity matrix can be found for any n by n matrix. This identity matrix will have 1s on the main diagonal from upper left to lower right, with all other entries equal to 0.

Inverse Matrices

Recall that for every nonzero real number a , the equation $ax = 1$ has a solution, namely, $x = 1/a = a^{-1}$. Similarly, for a square matrix A , we consider the matrix equation $AX = I$.

✓ Checkpoint 6

Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 4 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ and

$$I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Find IA and AI .


TECHNOLOGY TIP

An $n \times n$ identity matrix can be displayed on most graphing calculators by using IDENTITY n or IDENT n or IDENMAT(n). Look in the MATH or OPS submenu of the TI MATRIX menu, or the OPTN MAT menu of Casio.

This equation does not always have a solution, but when it does, we use special terminology. If there is a matrix A^{-1} satisfying

$$AA^{-1} = I,$$

(that is, A^{-1} is a solution of $AX = I$), then A^{-1} is called the **inverse matrix** of A . In this case, it can be proved that $A^{-1}A = I$ and that A^{-1} is unique (that is, a square matrix has no more than one inverse). When a matrix has an inverse, it can be found by using the row operations given in Section 6.2, as we shall see later.

 **CAUTION** Only square matrices have inverses, but not every square matrix has one. A matrix that does not have an inverse is called a **singular matrix**. Note that the symbol A^{-1} (read “A-inverse”) does *not* mean $1/A$; the symbol A^{-1} is just the notation for the inverse of matrix A . There is no such thing as matrix division.


Example 5 Given matrices A and B as follows, determine whether B is the inverse of A :

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 6 \end{bmatrix}; \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 1 \\ 2 & -\frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution B is the inverse of A if $AB = I$ and $BA = I$, so we find those products:

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 6 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 1 \\ 2 & -\frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I;$$

$$BA = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 1 \\ 2 & -\frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 6 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I.$$

Therefore, B is the inverse of A ; that is, $A^{-1} = B$. (It is also true that A is the inverse of B , or $B^{-1} = A$.) 

Checkpoint 7

Given $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 3 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$, determine whether they are inverses.

Example 6 Find the multiplicative inverse of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution Let the unknown inverse matrix be

$$A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} x & y \\ z & w \end{bmatrix}.$$

By the definition of matrix inverse, $AA^{-1} = I$, or

$$AA^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x & y \\ z & w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Use matrix multiplication to get

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2x + 4z & 2y + 4w \\ x - z & y - w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Setting corresponding elements equal to each other gives the system of equations

$$2x + 4z = 1 \quad (1)$$

$$2y + 4w = 0 \quad (2)$$

$$x - z = 0 \quad (3)$$

$$y - w = 1. \quad (4)$$

Since equations (1) and (3) involve only x and z , while equations (2) and (4) involve only y and w , these four equations lead to two systems of equations:

$$\begin{array}{l} 2x + 4z = 1 \\ x - z = 0 \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{l} 2y + 4w = 0 \\ y - w = 1. \end{array}$$

Writing the two systems as augmented matrices gives

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 2 & 4 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{array} \right] \quad \text{and} \quad \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 2 & 4 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{array} \right].$$

Note that the row operations needed to transform both matrices are the same because the first two columns of both matrices are identical. Consequently, we can save time by combining these matrices into the single matrix

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 2 & 4 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right]. \quad (5)$$

Columns 1–3 represent the first system and columns 1, 2, and 4 represent the second system. Now use row operations as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 4 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right] && \text{Interchange } R_1 \text{ and } R_2. \\ & \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 6 & 1 & -2 \end{array} \right] && -2R_1 + R_2 \\ & \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{6} & -\frac{1}{3} \end{array} \right] && \frac{1}{6}R_2 \\ & \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{6} & \frac{2}{3} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{6} & -\frac{1}{3} \end{array} \right] && R_2 + R_1 \end{aligned} \quad (6)$$

The left half of the augmented matrix in equation (6) is the identity matrix, so the Gauss–Jordan process is finished and the solutions can be read from the right half of the augmented matrix. The numbers in the first column to the right of the vertical bar give the values of x and z . The second column to the right of the bar gives the values of y and w . That is,

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & 0 & x & y \\ 0 & 1 & z & w \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{6} & \frac{2}{3} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{6} & -\frac{1}{3} \end{array} \right],$$

so that

$$A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} x & y \\ z & w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{6} & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{1}{6} & -\frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix}.$$

Check by multiplying A and A^{-1} . The result should be I :

$$AA^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{6} & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{1}{6} & -\frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{3} + \frac{2}{3} & \frac{4}{3} - \frac{4}{3} \\ \frac{1}{6} - \frac{1}{6} & \frac{2}{3} + \frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I.$$

Thus, the original augmented matrix in equation (5) has A as its left half and the identity matrix as its right half, while the final augmented matrix in equation (6), at the end of the Gauss–Jordan process, has the identity matrix as its left half and the inverse matrix A^{-1} as its right half:

$$[A \mid I] \rightarrow [I \mid A^{-1}]. \quad \checkmark 8$$

The procedure in Example 6 can be generalized as follows.

Inverse Matrix

To obtain an **inverse matrix** A^{-1} for any $n \times n$ matrix A for which A^{-1} exists, follow these steps:

1. Form the augmented matrix $[A \mid I]$, where I is the $n \times n$ identity matrix.
2. Perform row operations on $[A \mid I]$ to get a matrix of the form $[I \mid B]$.
3. Matrix B is A^{-1} .

✓ Checkpoint 8

Carry out the process in Example 6 on a graphing calculator as follows: Enter matrix (5) in the example as matrix [B] on the calculator. Then find RREF [B]. What is the result?

Example 7 Find A^{-1} if

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 & -1 \\ 5 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution First write the augmented matrix $[A \mid I]$:

$$[A \mid I] = \left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & -2 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 5 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right].$$

Transform the left side of this matrix into the 3×3 identity matrix:

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & -3 & -2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -5 & -5 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right] & \begin{array}{l} \\ -2R_1 + R_2 \\ -5R_1 + R_3 \end{array} \\ & \left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{3}{2} & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & -\frac{1}{5} \end{array} \right] & \begin{array}{l} \\ -\frac{1}{2}R_2 \\ -\frac{1}{5}R_3 \end{array} \\ & \left[\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{5} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{3}{10} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & -\frac{1}{5} \end{array} \right] & \begin{array}{l} -1R_3 + R_1 \\ -\frac{3}{2}R_3 + R_2 \\ \end{array} \end{aligned}$$

Looking at the right half of the preceding matrix, we see that

$$A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{5} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{3}{10} \\ 1 & 0 & -\frac{1}{5} \end{bmatrix}.$$

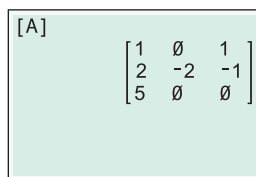
Verify that AA^{-1} is I .

The best way to find matrix inverses on a graphing calculator is illustrated in the next example.

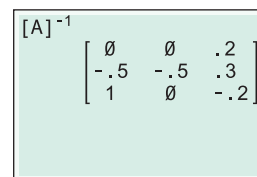
**Example 8** Use a graphing calculator to find the inverse of the following matrices (if they have inverses):

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 & -1 \\ 5 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 6 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution Enter matrix A into the calculator [Figure 6.25(a)]. Then use the x^{-1} key to find the inverse matrix, as in Figure 6.25(b). (Using \wedge and -1 for the inverse results in an error message on most calculators.) Note that Figure 6.25(b) agrees with the answer we found working by hand in Example 7.



(a)



(b)

Figure 6.25

Now enter matrix B into the calculator and use the x^{-1} key. The result is an error message (Figure 6.26), which indicates that the matrix is singular; it does not have an inverse. (If you were working by hand, you would have found that the appropriate system of equations has no solution.)

✓ Checkpoint 9

Use a graphing calculator to find the inverses of these matrices (if they exist).

(a) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & -1 & 0 \\ 5 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

(b) $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ -1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

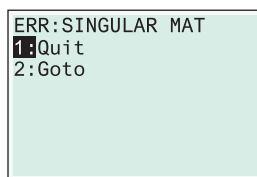



Figure 6.26

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** Because of round-off error, a graphing calculator may sometimes display an “inverse” for a matrix that doesn’t actually have one. So always verify your results by multiplying A and A^{-1} . If the product is not the identity matrix, then A does not have an inverse.

6.5 Exercises

In Exercises 1–6, the sizes of two matrices A and B are given. Find the sizes of the product AB and the product BA whenever these products exist. (See Example 1.)

- A is 2×2 and B is 2×2 .
- A is 3×3 and B is 3×2 .
- A is 3×5 and B is 5×3 .
- A is 4×3 and B is 3×6 .
- A is 4×2 and B is 3×4 .
- A is 7×3 and B is 2×7 .
- To find the product matrix AB , the number of _____ of A must be the same as the number of _____ of B .
- The product matrix AB has the same number of _____ as A and the same number of _____ as B .

Find each of the following matrix products, if they exist. (See Examples 2 and 3.)

- $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$
- $\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 5 \\ 7 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$
- $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2 & -1 \\ 5 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -2 \\ -1 & 5 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$
- $\begin{bmatrix} -9 & 3 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$
- $\begin{bmatrix} -4 & 1 \\ 2 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

- $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 1 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$
- $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -5 & 7 \\ -2 & 1 & 6 \\ 0 & -3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$
- $\begin{bmatrix} -8 & 9 \\ 3 & -4 \\ -1 & 6 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$
- $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 0 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 4 \\ 7 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$
- $\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 0 & 3 \\ 4 & -3 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 & 5 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 4 & 2 & 5 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 19–21, use the matrices

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & -9 \\ 2 & 6 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 6 \\ 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}.$$

- Show that $AB \neq BA$. Hence, matrix multiplication is not commutative.
- Show that $(A + B)^2 \neq A^2 + 2AB + B^2$.
- Show that $(A + B)(A - B) \neq A^2 - B^2$.
- Show that $D^2 = D$, where

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Given matrices

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} m & n \\ p & q \end{bmatrix}, \quad X = \begin{bmatrix} x & y \\ z & w \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad T = \begin{bmatrix} r & s \\ t & u \end{bmatrix},$$

verify that the statements in Exercises 23–26 are true.

- 23. $(PX)T = P(XT)$ (associative property)
- 24. $P(X + T) = PX + PT$ (distributive property)
- 25. $k(X + T) = kX + kT$ for any real number k
- 26. $(k + h)P = kP + hP$ for any real numbers k and h

Determine whether the given matrices are inverses of each other by computing their product. (See Example 5.)

- 27. $\begin{bmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 3 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$
- 28. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 7 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ -7 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$
- 29. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{2} \\ 2 & \frac{3}{2} \end{bmatrix}$
- 30. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 5 \\ 7 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} -\frac{9}{8} & \frac{5}{8} \\ \frac{7}{8} & -\frac{3}{8} \end{bmatrix}$
- 31. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 1.5 & .5 & -1.5 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ .5 & -.5 & .5 \end{bmatrix}$
- 32. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 & 4 \\ 1 & 4 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ -5 & 8 & 2 \\ 7 & -11 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

Find the inverse, if it exists, for each of the given matrices. (See Examples 6 and 7.)

- 33. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$
- 34. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$
- 35. $\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$
- 36. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$
- 37. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$
- 38. $\begin{bmatrix} -3 & -5 \\ 6 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$
- 39. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$
- 40. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & -2 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$
- 41. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 3 \\ 1 & -3 & -2 \\ 2 & 5 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$
- 42. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 2 & -3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$
- 43. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 2 \\ -2 & 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$
- 44. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -5 \\ 4 & -7 & 3 \\ 3 & -7 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$

Use a graphing calculator to find the inverse of each matrix. (See Example 8.)

- 45. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$
- 46. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2 & -4 \\ 2 & 6 & 0 \\ -3 & -3 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$
- 47. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -2 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 2 & 2 \\ 3 & -1 & -2 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$
- 48. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 3 & 2 & -2 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

A graphing calculator or other technology is recommended for part (c) of Exercises 49–51.

- 49. **Social Science** Population estimates and projections (in millions) for several regions of the world and the average birth and death rates per million people for those regions are shown in the tables below. (Data from: United Nations Population Fund.)

	Asia	Europe	Latin America	North America
2000	3719	727	521	313
2010	4164	738	590	345
2020	4566	744	652	374

	Births	Deaths
Asia	.019	.007
Europe	.011	.011
Latin America	.019	.006
North America	.024	.008

- (a) Write the information in the first table as a 3×4 matrix A .
 - (b) Write the information in the second table as a 4×2 matrix B .
 - (c) Find the matrix product AB .
 - (d) Explain what AB represents.
 - (e) According to matrix AB , what was the total number of births in these four regions combined in 2010? What total number of deaths is projected for 2020?
- 50. **Business** A restaurant has a main location and a traveling food truck. The first matrix A shows the number of managers and associates employed. The second matrix B shows the average annual cost of salary and benefits (in thousands of dollars).
- | | | | |
|------------|----------|------------|-------|
| | Managers | Associates | |
| Restaurant | 5 | 25 | = A |
| Food Truck | 1 | 4 | |

	Salary	Benefits	
Managers	41	6	= B
Associates	20	2	
- (a) Find the matrix product AB .
 - (b) Explain what AB represents.
 - (c) According to matrix AB , what is the total cost of salaries for all employees (managers and associates) at the restaurant? What is the total cost of benefits for all employees at the food truck?
- 51. **Social Science** Population estimates and projections (in millions) for the BRIC countries (Brazil, Russia, India, China) and birth and death rates per million people for those countries are shown in the tables on the next page. (Data from: United Nations Population Fund.)

	2010	2020
Brazil	195	210
Russia	143	141
India	1225	1387
China	1341	1388

	Births	Deaths
Brazil	.016	.006
Russia	.011	.014
India	.023	.008
China	.013	.007

- (a) Write the information in the first table as a 2×4 matrix A .
- (b) Write the information in the second table as a 4×2 matrix B .
- (c) Find the matrix product AB .
- (d) Explain what AB represents.
- (e) According to matrix AB , what was the total number of deaths in the BRIC countries in 2010? What total number of births is projected for 2020?

52. **Business** The first table shows the number of employees (in millions) in various sectors of the U.S. economy over a 3-year period. The second table gives the average weekly wage per employee (in dollars) in each sector over the same period. (Data from: Bureau of Labor Statistics.)

	2007	2008	2009
Private	114.0	113.2	106.9
Local Government	14.0	14.2	14.2
State Government	4.6	4.6	4.6
Federal Government	2.7	2.8	2.8

	2007	2008	2009
Private	853	873	868
Local Government	784	813	830
State Government	883	923	937
Federal Government	1248	1275	1303

- (a) Write the information in the first table as a 4×3 matrix A .
- (b) Write the information in the second table as a 3×4 matrix B .
- (c) Explain what each of the following entries in AB represents: row 1, column 1; row 2, column 2; row 3, column 3; row 4, column 4. Do any of the other entries represent anything meaningful?
- (d) What was the total weekly payroll (in dollars) for the federal government over the 3-year period?

53. **Business** The four departments of Stagg Enterprises need to order the following amounts of the same products:

	Paper	Tape	Ink Cartridges	Memo Pads	Pens
Department 1	10	4	3	5	6
Department 2	7	2	2	3	8
Department 3	4	5	1	0	10
Department 4	0	3	4	5	5

The unit price (in dollars) of each product is as follows for two suppliers:

Product	Supplier A	Supplier B
Paper	9	12
Tape	6	6
Ink Cartridges	24	18
Memo Pads	4	4
Pens	8	12

- (a) Use matrix multiplication to get a matrix showing the comparative costs for each department for the products from the two suppliers.
- (b) Find the total cost to buy products from each supplier. From which supplier should the company make the purchase?

54. **Health** The first table shows the number of live births (in thousands). The second table shows infant mortality rates (deaths per 1000 live births). (Data from: U.S. Center for Health Statistics.)

	2008	2009	2010
Black	671	658	636
White	3274	3173	3069

	2008	2009	2010
Black	12.7	12.6	11.6
White	5.6	5.3	5.2

- (a) Write the information in the first table as a 3×2 matrix C .
- (b) Write the information in the second table as a 2×3 matrix D .
- (c) Find the matrix product DC .
- (d) Which entry in DC gives the total number of black infant deaths from 2008 to 2010?
- (e) Which entry in DC gives the total number of white infant deaths from 2008 to 2010?

55. **Business** Burger Barn's three locations sell hamburgers, fries, and soft drinks. Barn I sells 900 burgers, 600 orders of fries, and 750 soft drinks each day. Barn II sells 1500 burgers a day and Barn III sells 1150. Soft drink sales number 900 a day at Barn II and 825 a day at Barn III. Barn II sells 950 orders of fries per day and Barn III sells 800.

- (a) Write a 3×3 matrix S that displays daily sales figures for all locations.

- (b) Burgers cost \$3.00 each, fries \$1.80 an order, and soft drinks \$1.20 each. Write a 1×3 matrix P that displays the prices.
- (c) What matrix product displays the daily revenue at each of the three locations?
- (d) What is the total daily revenue from all locations?

56. Business The Perulli Candy Company makes three types of chocolate candy: Cheery Cherry, Mucho Mocha, and Almond Delight. The company produces its products in San Diego, Mexico City, and Managua, using two main ingredients: chocolate and sugar.

- (a) Each kilogram of Cheery Cherry requires .5 kilogram of sugar and .2 kilogram of chocolate; each kilogram of Mucho Mocha requires .4 kilogram of sugar and .3 kilogram of chocolate; and each kilogram of Almond Delight requires .3 kilogram of sugar and .3 kilogram of chocolate. Put this information into a 2×3 matrix, labeling the rows and columns.
- (b) The cost of 1 kilogram of sugar is \$3 in San Diego, \$2 in Mexico City, and \$1 in Managua. The cost of 1 kilogram of chocolate is \$3 in San Diego, \$3 in Mexico City, and \$4 in Managua. Put this information into a matrix in such a way that when you multiply it with your matrix from part (a), you get a matrix representing the cost by ingredient of producing each type of candy in each city.
- (c) Multiply the matrices in parts (a) and (b), labeling the product matrix.
- (d) From part (c), what is the combined cost of sugar and chocolate required to produce 1 kilogram of Mucho Mocha in Managua?
- (e) Perulli Candy needs to quickly produce a special shipment of 100 kilograms of Cheery Cherry, 200 kilograms of Mucho Mocha, and 500 kilograms of Almond Delight, and it decides to select one factory to fill the entire order. Use matrix multiplication to determine in which city the total cost of sugar and chocolate combined required to produce the order is the smallest.



✓ Checkpoint Answers

- \$27,100
- (a) No (b) Yes; 2×6
- $CD = \begin{bmatrix} 19 & -2 \\ -13 & -12 \end{bmatrix}$
- (a) 2×3 (b) Not possible (c) 3×3
- (a) $A = \text{brand/vitamin}$;
 $B = \text{vitamin/cost}$.
(b) $AB = \text{brand/cost}$.
(c) Not meaningful, although the product BA can be found.
- $IA = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 4 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = A$, and $AI = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 4 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = A$.
- No, because $AB \neq I$.
- RREF $[B]$ is matrix (6) in the example.
- (a) No inverse
(b) Use the FRAC key (if you have one) to simplify the answer, which is

$$B^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 4/11 & -3/11 \\ 1/11 & 2/11 \end{bmatrix}.$$

6.6 Applications of Matrices

This section gives a variety of applications of matrices.

Solving Systems with Matrices

Consider this system of linear equations:


$$\begin{aligned} 2x - 3y &= 4 \\ x + 5y &= 2. \end{aligned}$$

Let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, \quad X = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Since

$$AX = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2x - 3y \\ x + 5y \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix},$$

the original system is equivalent to the single matrix equation $AX = B$. Similarly, any system of linear equations can be written as a matrix equation $AX = B$. The matrix A is called the **coefficient matrix**. 

Checkpoint 1

Write the matrix of coefficients, the matrix of variables, and the matrix of constants for the system

$$2x + 6y = -14$$

$$-x - 2y = 3.$$

$$AX = B$$

$$A^{-1}(AX) = A^{-1}B \quad \text{Multiply both sides by } A^{-1}.$$

$$(A^{-1}A)X = A^{-1}B \quad \text{Associative property}$$

$$IX = A^{-1}B \quad \text{Inverse property}$$

$$X = A^{-1}B. \quad \text{Identity property}$$

When multiplying by matrices on both sides of a matrix equation, be careful to multiply in the same order on both sides, since multiplication of matrices is not commutative (unlike the multiplication of real numbers). This discussion is summarized below.

Suppose that a system of equations with the same number of equations as variables is written in matrix form as $AX = B$, where A is the square matrix of coefficients, X is the column matrix of variables, and B is the column matrix of constants. If A has an inverse, then the unique solution of the system is $X = A^{-1}B$.*

Example 1

Consider this system of equations:

$$x + y + z = 2$$

$$2x + 3y = 5$$

$$x + 2y + z = -1.$$

(a) Write the system as a matrix equation.

Solution We have these three matrices:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Coefficient Matrix} & \text{Matrix of Variables} & \text{Matrix of Constants} \\ A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, & X = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}, & \text{and } B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}. \end{array}$$

So the matrix equation is

$$AX = B$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

*If A does not have an inverse, then the system either has no solution or has an infinite number of solutions. Use the methods of Sections 6.1 or 6.2.

(b) Find A^{-1} and solve the equation.

Solution Use Exercise 31 of Section 6.5, technology, or the method of Section 6.5 to find that

$$A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1.5 & .5 & -1.5 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ .5 & -.5 & .5 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Hence,

$$X = A^{-1}B = \begin{bmatrix} 1.5 & .5 & -1.5 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ .5 & -.5 & .5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 7 \\ -3 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Thus, the solution of the original system is $(7, -3, -2)$. 

Checkpoint 2

Use the inverse matrix to solve the system in Example 1 if the constants for the three equations are 12, 0, and 8, respectively.


Example 2

Use the inverse of the coefficient matrix to solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} x + 1.5y &= 8 \\ 2x + 3y &= 10. \end{aligned}$$

Solution The coefficient matrix is $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1.5 \\ 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$. A graphing calculator will indicate that A^{-1} does not exist. If we try to carry out the row operations, we see why:

$$\begin{aligned} &\left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & 1.5 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right] \\ &\left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & 1.5 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & 1 \end{array} \right] \quad -2R_1 + R_2 \end{aligned}$$

The next step cannot be performed because of the zero in the second row, second column. Verify that the original system has no solution. 

Checkpoint 3

Solve the system in Example 2 if the constants are, respectively, 3 and 6.

Input–Output Analysis

An interesting application of matrix theory to economics was developed by Nobel Prize winner Wassily Leontief. His application of matrices to the interdependencies in an economy is called **input–output analysis**. In practice, input–output analysis is very complicated, with many variables. We shall discuss only simple examples with just a few variables.

Input–output models are concerned with the production and flow of goods and services. A typical economy is composed of a number of different sectors (such as manufacturing, energy, transportation, agriculture, etc.). Each sector requires input from other sectors (and possibly from itself) to produce its output. For instance, manufacturing output requires energy, transportation, and manufactured items (such as tools and machinery). If an economy has n sectors, then the inputs required by the various sectors from each other to produce their outputs can be described by an $n \times n$ matrix called the **input–output matrix** (or the **technological matrix**).

Example 3

Economics Suppose a simplified economy involves just three sectors—agriculture, manufacturing, and transportation—all in appropriate units. The production of 1 unit of agriculture requires $\frac{1}{2}$ unit of manufacturing and $\frac{1}{4}$ unit of transportation. The production of 1 unit of manufacturing requires $\frac{1}{4}$ unit of agriculture and $\frac{1}{4}$ unit of transportation. The production of 1 unit of transportation requires $\frac{1}{3}$ unit of agriculture and $\frac{1}{4}$ unit of manufacturing. Write the input–output matrix of this economy.

Solution Since there are three sectors in the economy, the input–output matrix A is 3×3 . Each row and each column is labeled by a sector of the economy, as shown below. The first column lists the units from each sector of the economy that are required to produce one unit of agriculture. The second column lists the units required from each sector to produce 1 unit of manufacturing, and the last column lists the units required from each sector to produce 1 unit of transportation.

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{Input} \\ \text{Agriculture} \\ \text{Manufacturing} \\ \text{Transportation} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{Output} \\ \text{Agriculture} \\ \text{Manufacturing} \\ \text{Transportation} \end{array} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{4} & 0 \end{bmatrix} = A. \quad \checkmark 4$$

✓ Checkpoint 4

Write a 2×2 input–output matrix in which 1 unit of electricity requires $\frac{1}{2}$ unit of water and $\frac{1}{3}$ unit of electricity, while 1 unit of water requires no water but $\frac{1}{4}$ unit of electricity.

Example 3 is a bit unrealistic in that no sector of the economy requires any input from itself. In an actual economy, most sectors require input from themselves as well as from other sectors to produce their output (as discussed in the paragraph preceding Example 3). Nevertheless, it is easier to learn the basic concepts from simplified examples, so we shall continue to use them.

The input–output matrix gives only a partial picture of an economy. We also need to know the amount produced by each sector and the amount of the economy’s output that is used up by the sectors themselves in the production process. The remainder of the total output is available to satisfy the needs of consumers and others outside the production system.

Example 4 **Economics** Consider the economy whose input–output matrix A was found in Example 3.

- (a) Suppose this economy produces 60 units of agriculture, 52 units of manufacturing, and 48 units of transportation. Write this information as a column matrix.

Solution Listing the sectors in the same order as the rows of input–output matrix, we have

$$X = \begin{bmatrix} 60 \\ 52 \\ 48 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The matrix X is called the **production matrix**.

- (b) How much from each sector is used up in the production process?

Solution Since $\frac{1}{4}$ unit of agriculture is used to produce each unit of manufacturing and there are 52 units of manufacturing output, the amount of agriculture used up by manufacturing is $\frac{1}{4} \times 52 = 13$ units. Similarly $\frac{1}{3}$ unit of agriculture is used to produce a unit of transportation, so $\frac{1}{3} \times 48 = 16$ units of agriculture are used up by transportation. Therefore $13 + 16 = 29$ units of agriculture are used up in the economy’s production process.

A similar analysis shows that the economy’s production process uses up

$$\frac{1}{2} \times 60 + \frac{1}{4} \times 48 = 30 + 12 = 42 \text{ units of manufacturing}$$

agricul- transpor-
ture tation

and

$$\frac{1}{4} \times 60 + \frac{1}{4} \times 52 = 15 + 13 = 28 \text{ units of transportation.}$$

agricul- manufac-
ture turing

- (c) Describe the conclusions of part (b) in terms of the input–output matrix A and the production matrix X .


Solution The matrix product AX gives the amount from each sector that is used up in the production process, as shown here [with selected entries color coded as in part (b)]:

$$\begin{aligned} AX &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{4} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 60 \\ 52 \\ 48 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \cdot 60 + \frac{1}{4} \cdot 52 + \frac{1}{3} \cdot 48 \\ \frac{1}{2} \cdot 60 + 0 \cdot 52 + \frac{1}{4} \cdot 48 \\ \frac{1}{4} \cdot 60 + \frac{1}{4} \cdot 52 + 0 \cdot 48 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4} \cdot 52 + \frac{1}{3} \cdot 48 \\ \frac{1}{2} \cdot 60 + \frac{1}{4} \cdot 48 \\ \frac{1}{4} \cdot 60 + \frac{1}{4} \cdot 52 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 29 \\ 42 \\ 28 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

- (d) Find the matrix $D = X - AX$ and explain what its entries represent.

Solution From parts (a) and (c), we have

$$D = X - AX = \begin{bmatrix} 60 \\ 52 \\ 48 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 29 \\ 42 \\ 28 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 31 \\ 10 \\ 20 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The matrix D lists the amount of each sector that is *not* used up in the production process and hence is available to groups outside the production process (such as consumers). For example, 60 units of agriculture are produced and 29 units are used up in the process, so the difference $60 - 29 = 31$ is the amount of agriculture that is available to groups outside the production process. Similar remarks apply to manufacturing and transportation. The matrix D is called the **demand matrix**. Matrices A and D show that the production of 60 units of agriculture, 52 units of manufacturing, and 48 units of transportation would satisfy an outside demand of 31 units of agriculture, 10 units of manufacturing, and 20 units of transportation. 

Checkpoint 5

- (a) Write a 2×1 matrix X to represent the gross production of 9000 units of electricity and 12,000 units of water.
- (b) Find AX , using A from Checkpoint 4.
- (c) Find D , using $D = X - AX$.

Example 4 illustrates the general situation. In an economy with n sectors, the input–output matrix A is $n \times n$. The production matrix X is a column matrix whose n entries are the outputs of each sector of the economy. The demand matrix D is also a column matrix with n entries. This matrix is defined by

$$D = X - AX.$$

D lists the amount from each sector that is available to meet the demands of consumers and other groups outside the production process.

In Example 4, we knew the input–output matrix A and the production matrix X and used them to find the demand matrix D . In practice, however, this process is reversed: The input–output matrix A and the demand matrix D are known, and we must find the production matrix X needed to satisfy the required demands. Matrix algebra can be used to solve the equation $D = X - AX$ for X :

$$\begin{aligned} D &= X - AX \\ D &= IX - AX && \text{Identity property} \\ D &= (I - A)X. && \text{Distributive property} \end{aligned}$$

If the matrix $I - A$ has an inverse, then

$$X = (I - A)^{-1}D.$$

Example 5 Economics Suppose, in the three-sector economy of Examples 3 and 4, there is a demand for 516 units of agriculture, 258 units of manufacturing, and 129 units of transportation. What should production be for each sector?

Solution The demand matrix is

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 516 \\ 258 \\ 129 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Find the production matrix by first calculating $I - A$:

$$I - A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{4} & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\frac{1}{4} & -\frac{1}{3} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 1 & -\frac{1}{4} \\ -\frac{1}{4} & -\frac{1}{4} & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Using a calculator with matrix capability or row operations, find the inverse of $I - A$:

$$(I - A)^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1.3953 & .4961 & .5891 \\ .8372 & 1.3643 & .6202 \\ .5581 & .4651 & 1.3023 \end{bmatrix}.$$

(The entries are rounded to four decimal places. *) Since $X = (I - A)^{-1}D$,

$$X = \begin{bmatrix} 1.3953 & .4961 & .5891 \\ .8372 & 1.3643 & .6202 \\ .5581 & .4651 & 1.3023 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 516 \\ 258 \\ 129 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 924 \\ 864 \\ 576 \end{bmatrix}$$

(rounded to the nearest whole numbers).

From the last result, we see that the production of 924 units of agriculture, 864 units of manufacturing, and 576 units of transportation is required to satisfy demands of 516, 258, and 129 units, respectively.

Example 6

Economics An economy depends on two basic products: wheat and oil. To produce 1 metric ton of wheat requires .25 metric ton of wheat and .33 metric ton of oil. The production of 1 metric ton of oil consumes .08 metric ton of wheat and .11 metric ton of oil. Find the production that will satisfy a demand of 500 metric tons of wheat and 1000 metric tons of oil.

Solution The input–output matrix is

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} .25 & .08 \\ .33 & .11 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} \text{Wheat} \\ \text{Oil} \end{matrix},$$

and we also have

$$I - A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} .25 & .08 \\ .33 & .11 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .75 & -.08 \\ -.33 & .89 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Next, use technology or the methods of Section 6.5 to calculate $(I - A)^{-1}$:

$$(I - A)^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1.3882 & .1248 \\ .5147 & 1.1699 \end{bmatrix} \quad (\text{rounded}).$$


The demand matrix is

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 500 \\ 1000 \end{bmatrix}.$$

*Although we show the matrix $(I - A)^{-1}$ with entries rounded to four decimal places, we did not round off in calculating $(I - A)^{-1}D$. If the rounded figures are used, the numbers in the product may vary slightly in the last digit.

Consequently, the production matrix is

$$X = (I - A)^{-1}D = \begin{bmatrix} 1.3882 & .1248 \\ .5147 & 1.1699 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 500 \\ 1000 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 819 \\ 1427 \end{bmatrix},$$

where the production numbers have been rounded to the nearest whole numbers. The production of 819 metric tons of wheat and 1427 metric tons of oil is required to satisfy the indicated demand. 

Checkpoint 6

A simple economy depends on just two products: beer and pretzels.

- (a) Suppose $\frac{1}{2}$ unit of beer and $\frac{1}{2}$ unit of pretzels are needed to make 1 unit of beer, and $\frac{3}{4}$ unit of beer is needed to make 1 unit of pretzels. Write the technological matrix A for the economy.
- (b) Find $I - A$.
- (c) Find $(I - A)^{-1}$.
- (d) Find the gross production X that will be needed to get a net production of

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 100 \\ 1000 \end{bmatrix}.$$



TECHNOLOGY TIP If you are using a graphing calculator to determine X , you can calculate $(I - A)^{-1}D$ in one step without finding the intermediate matrices $I - A$ and $(I - A)^{-1}$.

Code Theory

Governments need sophisticated methods of coding and decoding messages. One example of such an advanced code uses matrix theory. This code takes the letters in the words and divides them into groups. (Each space between words is treated as a letter; punctuation is disregarded.) Then, numbers are assigned to the letters of the alphabet. For our purposes, let the letter a correspond to 1, b to 2, and so on. Let the number 27 correspond to a space.

For example, the message

mathematics is for the birds

can be divided into groups of three letters each:

mat hem ati cs- is- for -th e-b ird s--

(We used $-$ to represent a space.) We now write a column matrix for each group of three symbols, using the corresponding numbers instead of letters. For example, the first four groups can be written as

$$\begin{matrix} \text{mat} & \text{hem} & \text{ati} & \text{cs-} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 13 \\ 1 \\ 20 \end{bmatrix}, & \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ 5 \\ 13 \end{bmatrix}, & \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 20 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix}, & \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 19 \\ 27 \end{bmatrix}. \end{matrix}$$

The entire message consists of ten 3×1 column matrices:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 13 \\ 1 \\ 20 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ 5 \\ 13 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 20 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 19 \\ 27 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 9 \\ 19 \\ 27 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 15 \\ 18 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 27 \\ 20 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 27 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 9 \\ 18 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 19 \\ 27 \\ 27 \end{bmatrix}. \quad \img alt="checkmark icon" data-bbox="895 625 920 640"/>$$

Although you could transmit these matrices, a simple substitution code such as this is very easy to break.

To get a more reliable code, we choose a 3×3 matrix M that has an inverse. Suppose we choose

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Then encode each message group by multiplying by M —that is,

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 13 \\ 1 \\ 20 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 76 \\ 77 \\ 96 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ 5 \\ 13 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 62 \\ 67 \\ 75 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 20 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 88 \\ 108 \\ 97 \end{bmatrix},$$

Checkpoint 7

Write the message “when” using 2×1 matrices.

and so on. The coded message consists of the ten 3×1 column matrices

$$\begin{bmatrix} 76 \\ 77 \\ 96 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 62 \\ 67 \\ 75 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 88 \\ 108 \\ 97 \end{bmatrix}, \dots, \begin{bmatrix} 181 \\ 208 \\ 208 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The message would be sent as a string of numbers:

$$76, 77, 96, 62, 67, 75, 88, 108, 97, \dots, 181, 208, 208.$$

✓ Checkpoint 8

Use the following matrix to find the 2×1 matrices to be transmitted for the message in Checkpoint 7:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Note that the same letter may be encoded by different numbers. For instance, the first a in “mathematics” is 77 and the second a is 88. This makes the code harder to break. ✓₈

The receiving agent rewrites the message as the ten 3×1 column matrices shown in color previously. The agent then decodes the message by multiplying each of these column matrices by the matrix M^{-1} . Verify that

$$M^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & -3 & -3 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

So the first two matrices of the coded message are decoded as

$$\begin{bmatrix} 7 & -3 & -3 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 76 \\ 77 \\ 96 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 13 \\ 1 \\ 20 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} m \\ a \\ t \end{matrix}$$

and

$$\begin{bmatrix} 7 & -3 & -3 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 62 \\ 67 \\ 75 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ 5 \\ 13 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} h \\ e \\ m \end{matrix}.$$

The other blocks are decoded similarly.

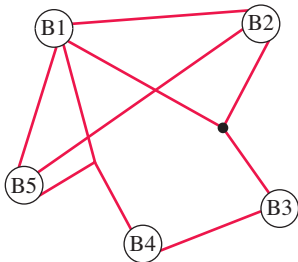


Figure 6.27

Routing

The diagram in Figure 6.27 shows the pathways connecting five buildings on a college campus. We can represent the pathways via matrix A , where the entries represent the number of pathways connecting two buildings without passing through another building. From the diagram, we see that there are two pathways connecting building 1 to building 2 without passing through buildings 3, 4, or 5. This information is entered in row one, column two, and again in row two, column one of matrix A :

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$


Note that there are no pathways connecting each building to itself, so the main diagonal of the matrix from upper left to lower right consists entirely of zeros.

We can also investigate the number of ways to go from building 1 to building 3 by going through exactly one other building. This can happen by going from building 1 to building 2 two ways, and then from building 2 to building 3. Another way is to go from building 1 to building 4 and then from building 4 to building 3. Thus, there are three total ways to go from building 1 to building 3 by going through exactly one other building.

The matrix A^2 shows the number of ways to travel between any two buildings by going through exactly one other building.

$$A^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 3 & 3 & 3 & 3 \\ 3 & 6 & 2 & 4 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & 3 & 1 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 & 4 & 2 & 6 \end{bmatrix}.$$

We ignore the values down the main diagonal for travel from one building into itself. We notice that the entry in row one, column three has a value of 3. This coincides with what we learned earlier—that there are three ways to go from building 1 to building 3 that go through exactly one other building.

We can also find the number of ways to walk between any two buildings by passing through exactly two other buildings by calculating A^3 . Additionally, $A + A^2$ gives the number of ways to walk between two buildings with at most one intermediate building. 

The diagram can be given many other interpretations. For example, the lines could represent lines of mutual influence between people or nations, or they could represent communication lines, such as telephone lines.

Checkpoint 9

Use a graphing calculator to find the following.

- (a) A^3
 (b) $A + A^2$

6.6 Exercises

Solve the matrix equation $AX = B$ for X . (See Example 1.)

1. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$

2. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 4 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 2 & 7 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 8 \\ 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

5. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ -4 & -1 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 9 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 6 \\ 12 \end{bmatrix}$

Use the inverse of the coefficient matrix to solve each system of equations. (See Example 1.)

7. $x + 2y + 3z = 10$
 $2x + 3y + 2z = 6$
 $-x - 2y - 4z = -1$
8. $-x + y - 3z = 3$
 $2x + 4y - 4z = 6$
 $-x + y + 4z = -1$
9. $x + 4y + 3z = -12$
 $x - 3y - 2z = 0$
 $2x + 5y + 4z = 7$
10. $5x + 2z = 3$
 $2x + 2y + z = 4$
 $-3x + y - z = 5$

11. $x + 2y + 3z = 4$
 $x + 4y + 2z = 8$
 $y - z = -4$

12. $2x + 2y - 4z = 12$
 $2x + 6y = 16$
 $-3x - 3y + 5z = -20$

13. $x + y + 2w = 3$
 $2x - y + z - w = 3$
 $3x + 3y + 2z - 2w = 5$
 $x + 2y + z = 3$

14. $x - 2z = 4$
 $-2x + y + 2z + 2w = -8$
 $3x - y - 2z - 3w = 12$
 $y + 4z + w = -4$

Use matrix algebra to solve the given matrix equations for X . Check your work.

15. $N = X - MX; N = \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ -12 \end{bmatrix}, M = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

16. $A = BX + X; A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 6 \\ -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & -2 \\ 3 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

To complete these exercises, write a system of equations and use the inverse of the coefficient matrix to solve the system.

17. **Business** Donovan's Dandy Furniture makes dining room furniture. A buffet requires 15 hours for cutting, 20 hours for assembly, and 5 hours for finishing. A chair requires 5 hours for cutting, 8 hours for assembly, and 5 hours for finishing. A table requires 10 hours for cutting, 6 hours for assembly, and 6 hours for finishing. The cutting department has 4900 hours of labor available each

week, the assembly department has 6600 hours available, and the finishing department has 3900 hours available. How many pieces of each type of furniture should be produced each week if the factory is to run at full capacity?

18. **Natural Science** A hospital dietician is planning a special diet for a certain patient. The total amount per meal of food groups A , B , and C must equal 400 grams. The diet should include one-third as much of group A as of group B , and the sum of the amounts of group A and group C should equal twice the amount of group B .
- (a) How many grams of each food group should be included?
- (b) Suppose we drop the requirement that the diet include one-third as much of group A as of group B . Describe the set of all possible solutions.
- (c) Suppose that, in addition to the conditions given in part (a), foods A and B cost 2 cents per gram, food C costs 3 cents per gram, and a meal must cost \$8. Is a solution possible?

19. **Natural Science** Three species of bacteria are fed three foods: I, II, and III. A bacterium of the first species consumes 1.3 units each of foods I and II and 2.3 units of food III each day. A bacterium of the second species consumes 1.1 units of food I, 2.4 units of food II, and 3.7 units of food III each day. A bacterium of the third species consumes 8.1 units of I, 2.9 units of II, and 5.1 units of III each day. If 16,000 units of I, 28,000 units of II, and 44,000 units of III are supplied each day, how many of each species can be maintained in this environment?

20. **Business** A company produces three combinations of mixed vegetables, which sell in 1-kilogram packages. Italian style combines .3 kilogram of zucchini, .3 of broccoli, and .4 of carrots. French style combines .6 kilogram of broccoli and .4 of carrots. Oriental style combines .2 kilogram of zucchini, .5 of broccoli, and .3 of carrots. The company has a stock of 16,200 kilograms of zucchini, 41,400 kilograms of broccoli, and 29,400 kilograms of carrots. How many packages of each style should the company prepare in order to use up its supplies?

21. **Business** A national chain of casual clothing stores recently sent shipments of jeans, jackets, sweaters, and shirts to its stores in various cities. The number of items shipped to each city and their total wholesale cost are shown in the table. Find the wholesale price of one pair of jeans, one jacket, one sweater, and one shirt.

City	Jeans	Jackets	Sweaters	Shirts	Total Cost
Cleveland	3000	3000	2200	4200	\$507,650
St. Louis	2700	2500	2100	4300	459,075
Seattle	5000	2000	1400	7500	541,225
Phoenix	7000	1800	600	8000	571,500

22. **Health** A 100-bed nursing home provides two levels of long-term care: regular and maximum. Patients at each level have a choice of a private room or a less expensive semiprivate room. The tables show the number of patients in each category at various times last year. The total daily costs for all patients were

\$24,040 in January, \$23,926 in April, \$23,760 in July, and \$24,042 in October. Find the daily cost of each of the following: a private room (regular care), a private room (maximum care), a semiprivate room (regular care), and a semiprivate room (maximum care).

	REGULAR-CARE PATIENTS	
Month	Semiprivate	Private
January	22	8
April	26	8
July	24	14
October	20	10

	MAXIMUM-CARE PATIENTS	
Month	Semiprivate	Private
January	60	10
April	54	12
July	56	6
October	62	8

Find the production matrix for the given input-output and demand matrices. (See Examples 3–6.)

23. $A = \begin{bmatrix} .1 & .03 \\ .07 & .6 \end{bmatrix}, D = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix}$

24. $A = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{2}{5} \\ \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{5} \end{bmatrix}, D = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$

Exercises 25 and 26 refer to Example 6.

25. **Business** If the demand is changed to 690 metric tons of wheat and 920 metric tons of oil, how many units of each commodity should be produced?
26. **Business** Change the technological matrix so that the production of 1 metric ton of wheat requires $\frac{1}{5}$ metric ton of oil (and no wheat) and the production of 1 metric ton of oil requires $\frac{1}{3}$ metric ton of wheat (and no oil). To satisfy the same demand matrix, how many units of each commodity should be produced?

Work these problems. (See Examples 3–6.)

27. **Business** A simplified economy has only two industries: the electric company and the gas company. Each dollar's worth of the electric company's output requires \$.40 of its own output and \$.50 of the gas company's output. Each dollar's worth of the gas company's output requires \$.25 of its own output and \$.60 of the electric company's output. What should the production of electricity and gas be (in dollars) if there is a \$12 million demand for gas and a \$15 million demand for electricity?

28. **Business** A two-segment economy consists of manufacturing and agriculture. To produce 1 unit of manufacturing output requires .40 unit of its own output and .20 unit of agricultural output. To produce 1 unit of agricultural output

requires .30 unit of its own output and .40 unit of manufacturing output. If there is a demand of 240 units of manufacturing and 90 units of agriculture, what should be the output of each segment?

29. Business A primitive economy depends on two basic goods: yams and pork. The production of 1 bushel of yams requires $\frac{1}{4}$ bushel of yams and $\frac{1}{2}$ of a pig. To produce 1 pig requires $\frac{1}{6}$ bushel of yams. Find the amount of each commodity that should be produced to get

- (a) 1 bushel of yams and 1 pig;
- (b) 100 bushels of yams and 70 pigs.

30. Business A simplified economy is based on agriculture, manufacturing, and transportation. Each unit of agricultural output requires .4 unit of its own output, .3 unit of manufacturing output, and .2 unit of transportation output. One unit of manufacturing output requires .4 unit of its own output, .2 unit of agricultural output, and .3 unit of transportation output. One unit of transportation output requires .4 unit of its own output, .1 unit of agricultural output, and .2 unit of manufacturing output. There is demand for 35 units of agricultural, 90 units of manufacturing, and 20 units of transportation output. How many units should each segment of the economy produce?

31. Business In his work *Input–Output Economics*, Leontief provides an example of a simplified economy with just three sectors: agriculture, manufacturing, and households (that is, the sector of the economy that produces labor).^{*} It has the following input–output matrix:

	Agriculture	Manufacturing	Households
Agriculture	.25	.40	.133
Manufacturing	.14	.12	.100
Households	.80	3.60	.133

- (a) How many units from each sector does the manufacturing sector require to produce 1 unit?
- (b) What production levels are needed to meet a demand of 35 units of agriculture, 38 units of manufacturing, and 40 units of households?
- (c) How many units of agriculture are used up in the economy’s production process?

32. Business A much simplified version of Leontief’s 42-sector analysis of the 1947 American economy has the following input–output matrix:[†]

	Agriculture	Manufacturing	Households
Agriculture	.245	.102	.051
Manufacturing	.099	.291	.279
Households	.433	.372	.011

- (a) What information about the needs of agricultural production is given by column 1 of the matrix?

(b) Suppose the demand matrix (in billions of dollars) is

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 2.88 \\ 31.45 \\ 30.91 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Find the amount of each commodity that should be produced.

33. Business An analysis of the 1958 Israeli economy is simplified here by grouping the economy into three sectors, with the following input–output matrix:[‡]

	Agriculture	Manufacturing	Energy
Agriculture	.293	0	0
Manufacturing	.014	.207	.017
Energy	.044	.010	.216

- (a) How many units from each sector does the energy sector require to produce one unit?
- (b) If the economy’s production (in thousands of Israeli pounds) is 175,000 of agriculture, 22,000 of manufacturing, and 12,000 of energy, how much is available from each sector to satisfy the demand from consumers and others outside the production process?
- (c) The actual 1958 demand matrix is

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 138,213 \\ 17,597 \\ 1786 \end{bmatrix}.$$

How much must each sector produce to meet this demand?

34. Business The 1981 Chinese economy can be simplified to three sectors: agriculture, industry and construction, and transportation and commerce.[§] The input–output matrix is

	Agri.	Industry/Constr.	Trans./Commerce
Agri.	.158	.156	.009
Industry/Constr.	.136	.432	.071
Trans./Commerce	.013	.041	.011

The demand [in 100,000 *renminbi* (RMB), the unit of money in China] is

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 106,674 \\ 144,739 \\ 26,725 \end{bmatrix}.$$

- (a) Find the amount each sector should produce.
- (b) Interpret the economic value of an increase in demand of 1 RMB in agriculture exports.

35. Business The 1987 economy of the state of Washington has been simplified to four sectors: natural resource, manufacturing,

^{*}Wassily Leontief, *Input–Output Economics*, 2d ed. (Oxford University Press, 1986), pp. 19–27.

[†]Ibid., pp. 6–9.

[‡]Ibid., pp. 174–175.

[§]*Input–Output Tables of China: 1981*, China Statistical Information and Consultancy Service Centre, 1987, pp. 17–19.

trade and services, and personal consumption. The input–output matrix is as follows:*

	Natural Resources	Manufacturing	Trade and Services	Personal Consumption
Natural Resources	.1045	.0428	.0029	.0031
Manufacturing	.0826	.1087	.0584	.0321
Trade and Services	.0867	.1019	.2032	.3555
Personal Consumption	.6253	.3448	.6106	.0798

Suppose the demand (in millions of dollars) is

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 450 \\ 300 \\ 125 \\ 100 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Find the amount each sector should produce.

36. **Business** The 1963 economy of the state of Nebraska has been condensed to six sectors; livestock, crops, food products, mining and manufacturing, households, and other. The input–output matrix is as follows:†

.178	.018	.411	0	.005	0
.143	.018	.088	0	.001	0
.089	0	.035	0	.060	.003
.001	.010	.012	.063	.007	.014
.141	.252	.088	.089	.402	.124
.188	.156	.103	.255	.008	.474

- (a) Find the matrix $(I - A)^{-1}$ and interpret the value in row two, column one, of this matrix.
 (b) Suppose the demand (in millions of dollars) is

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 1980 \\ 650 \\ 1750 \\ 1000 \\ 2500 \\ 3750 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Find the dollar amount each sector should produce.

37. **Business** Input–output analysis can also be used to model how changes in one city can affect cities that are connected with it in some way. For example, if a large manufacturing company shuts down in one city, it is very likely that the economic welfare of all of the cities around it will suffer. Consider three Pennsylvania communities: Sharon, Farrell, and Hermitage.

Due to their proximity to each other, residents of these three communities regularly spend time and money in the other communities. Suppose that we have gathered information in the form of an input–output matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} .2 & .1 & .1 \\ .1 & .1 & 0 \\ .5 & .6 & .7 \end{bmatrix}.$$

This matrix can be thought of as the likelihood that a person from a particular community will spend money in each of the communities.‡

- (a) Treat this matrix like an input–output matrix and calculate $(I - A)^{-1}$, where A is the given input–output matrix.
 (b) Interpret the entries of this inverse matrix.

38. **Social Science** Use the method discussed in this section to encode the message

Anne is home.

Break the message into groups of two letters and use the matrix

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 7 \end{bmatrix}.$$

39. **Social Science** Use the matrix of Exercise 38 to encode the message

Head for the hills!

40. **Social Science** Decode the following message, which was encoded by using the matrix M of Exercise 38:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 90 \\ 207 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 39 \\ 87 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 26 \\ 57 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 66 \\ 145 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 61 \\ 142 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 89 \\ 205 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Work these routing problems.

41. **Social Science** Use matrix A in the discussion on routing (pages 344–345) to find A^2 . Then answer the following questions: How many ways are there to travel from

- (a) city 1 to city 3 by passing through exactly one city?
 (b) city 2 to city 4 by passing through exactly one city?
 (c) city 1 to city 3 by passing through at most one city?
 (d) city 2 to city 4 by passing through at most one city?

42. **Social Science** The matrix A^3 (see Exercise 41) was found in Checkpoint 9 of the text. Use it to answer the following questions.

- (a) How many ways are there to travel between cities 1 and 4 by passing through exactly two cities?
 (b) How many ways are there to travel between cities 1 and 4 by passing through at most two cities?

43. **Business** A small telephone system connects three cities. There are four lines between cities 3 and 2, three lines connecting city 3 with city 1, and two lines between cities 1 and 2.

- (a) Write a matrix B to represent this information.
 (b) Find B^2 .

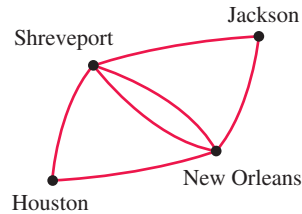
*Robert Chase, Philip Bourque, and Richard Conway, Jr., *The 1987 Washington State Input–Output Study*, Report to the Graduate School of Business Administration, University of Washington, September 1993.

†F. Charles Lamphear and Theodore Roesler, “1970 Nebraska Input–Output Tables,” *Nebraska Economic and Business Report No. 10*, Bureau of Business Research, University of Nebraska, Lincoln.

‡The idea for this problem came from an example created by Thayer Watkins, Department of Economics, San Jose State University.

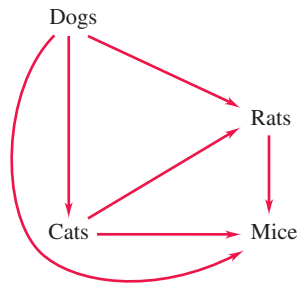
- (c) How many lines that connect cities 1 and 2 go through exactly one other city (city 3)?
- (d) How many lines that connect cities 1 and 2 go through at most one other city?

44. **Business** The figure shows four southern cities served by Supersouth Airlines.



- (a) Write a matrix to represent the number of nonstop routes between cities.
- (b) Find the number of one-stop flights between Houston and Jackson.
- (c) Find the number of flights between Houston and Shreveport that require at most one stop.
- (d) Find the number of one-stop flights between New Orleans and Houston.

45. **Natural Science** The figure shows a food web. The arrows indicate the food sources of each population. For example, cats feed on rats and on mice.



- (a) Write a matrix C in which each row and corresponding column represent a population in the food chain. Enter a 1 when the population in a given row feeds on the population in the given column.
- (b) Calculate and interpret C^2 .

Checkpoint Answers

1. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 6 \\ -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$, $X = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$, and $B = \begin{bmatrix} -14 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$.

2. $(6, -4, 10)$

3. $(3 - 1.5y, y)$ for all real numbers y

4. Elec. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$
Water

5. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} 9000 \\ 12,000 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{bmatrix} 6000 \\ 4500 \end{bmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{bmatrix} 3000 \\ 7500 \end{bmatrix}$

6. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{3}{4} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{3}{4} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

(c) $\begin{bmatrix} 8 & 6 \\ 4 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ (d) $\begin{bmatrix} 6800 \\ 4400 \end{bmatrix}$

7. $\begin{bmatrix} 23 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 14 \end{bmatrix}$

8. $\begin{bmatrix} 54 \\ 115 \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} 24 \\ 25 \end{bmatrix}$

9. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} [A]^3 \\ 18 & 26 & 16 & 16 & 26 \\ 26 & 12 & 13 & 9 & 16 \\ 16 & 13 & 6 & 10 & 9 \\ 16 & 9 & 10 & 6 & 13 \\ 26 & 16 & 9 & 13 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $[A] + [A]^2$
 $\begin{bmatrix} 10 & 5 & 4 & 4 & 5 \\ 5 & 6 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 4 & 3 & 3 & 2 & 4 \\ 4 & 4 & 2 & 3 & 3 \\ 5 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$

CHAPTER 6 Summary and Review

Key Terms and Symbols

- 6.1 linear equation
- system of linear equations
- solution of a system
- substitution method
- elimination method
- independent system
- dependent system
- inconsistent system
- 6.2 equivalent systems
- elementary operations
- elimination method
- row
- column
- matrix (matrices)
- element (entry)
- augmented matrix
- row operations
- row echelon form
- Gauss–Jordan method
- reduced row echelon form
- independent system
- inconsistent system
- dependent system
- parameter
- 6.3 applications of systems of linear equations
- 6.4 row matrix (row vector)
- column matrix (column vector)
- square matrix
- additive inverse of a matrix
- zero matrix
- scalar
- product of a scalar and a matrix
- 6.5 product matrix
- identity matrix
- inverse matrix
- singular matrix
- 6.6 coefficient matrix
- input–output analysis
- input–output matrix
- production matrix
- demand matrix
- code theory
- routing theory

Chapter 6 Key Concepts

Solving Systems of Equations

The following **elementary operations** are used to transform a system of equations into a simpler equivalent system:

1. Interchange any two equations.
2. Multiply both sides of an equation by a nonzero constant.
3. Replace an equation by the sum of itself and a constant multiple of another equation in the system.

The **elimination method** is a systematic way of using elementary operations to transform a system into an equivalent one that can be solved by **back substitution**. See Section 6.2 for details.

The matrix version of the elimination method uses the following **matrix row operations**, which correspond to using elementary row operations with back substitution on a system of equations:

1. Interchange any two rows.
2. Multiply each element of a row by a nonzero constant.
3. Replace a row by the sum of itself and a constant multiple of another row in the matrix.

The **Gauss–Jordan method** is an extension of the elimination method for solving a system of linear equations. It uses row operations on the augmented matrix of the system. See Section 6.2 for details.

The **sum** of two $m \times n$ matrices X and Y is the $m \times n$ matrix $X + Y$ in which each element is the sum of the corresponding elements of X and Y . The **difference** of two $m \times n$ matrices X and Y is the $m \times n$ matrix $X - Y$ in which each element is the difference of the corresponding elements of X and Y .

The **product** of a scalar k and a matrix X is the matrix kX , with each element being k times the corresponding element of X .

The **product matrix** AB of an $m \times n$ matrix A and an $n \times k$ matrix B is the $m \times k$ matrix whose entry in the i th row and j th column is the product of the i th row of A and the j th column of B .

The **inverse matrix** A^{-1} for any $n \times n$ matrix A for which A^{-1} exists is found as follows: Form the augmented matrix $[A|I]$, and perform row operations on $[A|I]$ to get the matrix $[I|A^{-1}]$.

Operations on Matrices

Chapter 6 Review Exercises

Solve each of the following systems.

1. $-5x - 3y = -3$
 $2x + y = 4$

2. $3x - y = 8$
 $2x + 3y = 6$

3. $3x - 5y = 16$
 $2x + 3y = -2$

4. $\frac{1}{4}x - \frac{1}{3}y = -\frac{1}{4}$
 $\frac{1}{10}x + \frac{2}{5}y = \frac{2}{5}$

5. **Business** Abigail Henderson plans to buy shares of two stocks. One costs \$32 per share and pays dividends of \$1.20 per share. The other costs \$23 per share and pays dividends of \$1.40 per share. She has \$10,100 to spend and wants to earn dividends of \$540. How many shares of each stock should she buy?

6. **Business** Emma Henderson has money in two investment funds. Last year, the first fund paid a dividend of 8% and the second a dividend of 2%, and she received a total of \$780. This year, the first fund paid a 10% dividend and the second only 1%, and she received \$810. How much does she have invested in each fund?

9. $3x + y - z = 3$
 $x + 2z = 6$
 $-3x - y + 2z = 9$

10. $x + y - 4z = 0$
 $2x + y - 3z = 2$

Solve each of the following systems by using matrix methods.

11. $x + z = 4$
 $2x + 2y + 2z = 12$
 $3x + 4y + 5z = 40$

12. $2x + 3y + 4z = 8$
 $-x + y - 2z = -9$
 $2x + 2y + 6z = 16$

13. $x - 2y + 5z = 3$
 $4x + 3y - 4z = 1$
 $3x + 5y - 9z = 7$

14. $5x - 8y + z = 1$
 $3x - 2y + 4z = 3$
 $10x - 16y + 2z = 3$

15. $x - 2y + 3z = 4$
 $2x + y - 4z = 3$
 $-3x + 4y - z = -2$

16. $3x + 2y - 6z = 3$
 $x + y + 2z = 2$
 $2x + 2y + 5z = 0$

17. **Finance** You are given \$144 in one-, five-, and ten-dollar bills. There are 35 bills. There are two more ten-dollar bills than five-dollar bills. How many bills of each type are there?

18. **Social Science** A social service agency provides counseling, meals, and shelter to clients referred by sources I, II, and III. Clients from source I require an average of \$100 for food, \$250 for shelter, and no counseling. Source II clients require an average of \$100 for counseling, \$200 for food, and nothing for

Solve each of the following systems.

7. $x + y + z = 5$
 $x + 2y + 3z = 7$
 $x + 3y + 6z = 11$

8. $4x - y - 2z = 4$
 $x - y - \frac{1}{2}z = 1$
 $2x - y - z = 8$

shelter. Source III clients require an average of \$100 for counseling, \$150 for food, and \$200 for shelter. The agency has funding of \$25,000 for counseling, \$50,000 for food, and \$32,500 for shelter. How many clients from each source can be served?

19. **Business** A small business makes woven blankets, rugs, and skirts. Each blanket requires 24 hours for spinning the yarn, 4 hours for dyeing the yarn, and 15 hours for weaving. Rugs require 30, 5, and 18 hours, and skirts require 12, 3, and 9 hours, respectively. If there are 306, 59, and 201 hours available for spinning, dyeing, and weaving, respectively, how many of each item can be made? (*Hint*: Simplify the equations you write, if possible, before solving the system.)
20. **Business** Each week at a furniture factory, 2000 work hours are available in the construction department, 1400 work hours in the painting department, and 1300 work hours in the packing department. Producing a chair requires 2 hours of construction, 1 hour of painting, and 2 hours for packing. Producing a table requires 4 hours of construction, 3 hours of painting, and 3 hours for packing. Producing a chest requires 8 hours of construction, 6 hours of painting, and 4 hours for packing. If all available time is used in every department, how many of each item are produced each week?

For each of the following, find the dimensions of the matrix and identify any square, row, or column matrices.

21. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 5 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$

22. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 4 & 6 \\ 5 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$

23. $[12 \ 4 \ -8 \ -1]$

24. $\begin{bmatrix} -7 & 5 & 6 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & -1 & 2 \\ -1 & 12 & 8 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

25. $\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 8 & 10 \\ 5 & 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

26. $\begin{bmatrix} -9 \\ 15 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$

27. **Finance** The closing stock price, change in price, and volume of stocks traded for the following companies were reported on January 3, 2013: Apple Inc.: \$542.10; -\$6.93; and 12,605,900. Nike Inc.: \$52.37; \$.53; and 3,616,100. Verizon Communications Inc.: \$44.06; -\$.21; and 11,227,700. Write these data as a 3×3 matrix. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)
28. **Natural Science** The activities of a grazing animal can be classified roughly into three categories: grazing, moving, and resting. Suppose horses spend 8 hours grazing, 8 moving, and 8 resting; cattle spend 10 grazing, 5 moving, and 9 resting; sheep spend 7 grazing, 10 moving, and 7 resting; and goats spend 8 grazing, 9 moving, and 7 resting. Write this information as a 4×3 matrix.

Given the matrices

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 6 \\ -2 & -2 \\ 5 & 9 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \quad C = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ -1 & 3 \\ 4 & 7 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad E = [1 \ 3 \ -4], \quad F = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 6 & 7 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and}$$

$$G = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 1 & 6 \end{bmatrix},$$

find each of the following (if possible).

29. $-B$ 30. $-D$ 31. $A + 2C$ 32. $F + 3G$

33. $2B - 5C$ 34. $D + E$ 35. $3A - 2C$ 36. $G - 2F$

37. **Finance** Refer to Exercise 27. Write a 3×2 matrix giving just the change in price and volume data for the three companies. The next day's changes in price and volume for the same three companies were: -\$15.10 and 21,226,200; \$.51 and 3,397,000; \$.24 and 14,930,400. Write a 3×2 matrix to represent these new price change and volume figures. Use matrix addition to find the total change in price and volume of stock traded for the two days. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

38. **Business** An oil refinery in Tulsa sent 110,000 gallons of oil to a Chicago distributor, 73,000 to a Dallas distributor, and 95,000 to an Atlanta distributor. Another refinery in New Orleans sent the following respective amounts to the same three distributors: 85,000, 108,000, and 69,000. The next month, the two refineries sent the same distributors new shipments of oil as follows: from Tulsa, 58,000 to Chicago, 33,000 to Dallas, and 80,000 to Atlanta; from New Orleans, 40,000, 52,000, and 30,000, respectively.

- (a) Write the monthly shipments from the two distributors to the three refineries as 3×2 matrices.
 (b) Use matrix addition to find the total amounts sent to the refineries from each distributor.

Use the matrices shown before Exercise 29 to find each of the following (if possible).

39. AG 40. EB 41. GA
 42. CA 43. AGF 44. EBD

45. **Health** In a study, the numbers of head and neck injuries among hockey players wearing full face shields and half face shields were compared. Injury rates were recorded per 1000 athlete exposures for specific injuries that caused a player to miss one or more events.*

Players wearing a half shield had the following rates of injury:

- Head and face injuries, excluding concussions: 3.54;
- Concussions: 1.53;
- Neck injuries: .34;
- Other injuries: 7.53.

Players wearing a full shield had the following injury rates:

- Head and face injuries, excluding concussions: 1.41;
- Concussions: 1.57;
- Neck injuries: .29;
- Other injuries: 6.21.

*Brian Benson, Nicholas Nohtadi, Sarah Rose, and Willem Meeuwisse, "Head and Neck Injuries among Ice Hockey Players Wearing Full Face Shields vs. Half Face Shields," *JAMA*, 282, no. 24, (December 22/29, 1999): 2328-2332.

If an equal number of players in a large league wear each type of shield and the total number of athlete exposures for the league in a season is 8000, use matrix operations to estimate the total number of injuries of each type.

46. **Business** An office supply manufacturer makes two kinds of paper clips: standard and extra large. To make a unit of standard paper clips requires $\frac{1}{4}$ hour on a cutting machine and $\frac{1}{2}$ hour on a machine that shapes the clips. A unit of extra-large paper clips requires $\frac{1}{3}$ hour on each machine.

- (a) Write this information as a 2×2 matrix (size/machine).
 (b) If 48 units of standard and 66 units of extra-large clips are to be produced, use matrix multiplication to find out how many hours each machine will operate. (*Hint*: Write the units as a 1×2 matrix.)

47. **Finance** The cost per share of stock was \$61.17 for Coca-Cola Bottling Co. Consolidated, \$60.50 for Starbucks Corporation, and \$96.21 for Anheuser-Busch, as reported on April 26, 2013. The dividend per share was \$1.00, \$.84, and \$1.88, respectively. Your stock portfolio consists of 100 shares of Coca-Cola, 500 shares of Starbucks, and 200 shares of Anheuser-Busch. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

- (a) Write the cost per share and dividend per share data as a 3×2 matrix.
 (b) Write the number of shares of each stock as a 1×3 matrix.
 (c) Use matrix multiplication to find the total cost and total dividend earnings of this portfolio.

48. **Finance** Matthew's stock portfolio consists of 4000 shares of The New York Times Company, 1000 shares of Coffee Holding Co. Inc., 5000 shares of Barnes & Noble Inc., and 2000 shares of Columbia Sportswear Company. On April 26, 2013, the cost per share for each of these stocks was \$9.45, \$6.59, \$18.21, and \$60.70, respectively, and the dividend per share for each of these stocks was \$0, \$.24, \$0, and \$.88, respectively. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

- (a) Write the cost per share and dividend per share data as a 4×2 matrix.
 (b) Write the number of shares of each stock as a 1×4 matrix.
 (c) Use matrix multiplication to find the total cost and total dividend earnings of this portfolio.

49. Verify that matrix multiplication is not commutative.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 5 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 8 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

50. Is it possible to do Exercise 49 if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$? Explain.

Find the inverse of the following matrix, if an inverse exist for that matrix.

51. $\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 2 \\ 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

52. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ -5 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

53. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 6 \\ 4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

54. $\begin{bmatrix} 15 & -12 \\ 5 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$

55. $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 5 & 6 \\ 0 & 0 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$

56. $C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

57. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 5 \\ -2 & -3 & -5 \\ 1 & 4 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

58. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 6 \\ 4 & 0 & 9 \\ 5 & 15 & 30 \end{bmatrix}$

59. $D = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

60. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

Refer again to the matrices shown before Exercise 29 to find each of the following (if possible).

61. F^{-1} 62. G^{-1} 63. $(G - F)^{-1}$

64. $(F + G)^{-1}$ 65. B^{-1}

66. Explain why the matrix $\begin{bmatrix} a & 0 \\ c & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, where a and c are nonzero constants, cannot have an inverse.

Solve each of the following matrix equations $AX = B$ for X .

67. $A = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 4 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$

68. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 9 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$

69. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ 4 \\ -6 \end{bmatrix}$

70. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 & 0 \\ 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 72 \\ -24 \\ 48 \end{bmatrix}$

Use the method of matrix inverses to solve each of the following systems.

71. $x + y = -2$
 $2x + 5y = 2$

72. $5x - 3y = -2$
 $2x + 7y = -9$

73. $2x + y = 10$
 $3x - 2y = 8$

74. $x - 2y = 7$
 $3x + y = 7$

75. $x + y + z = 3$
 $x - y + z = 3$
 $x + z = 2$

76. $x + 2y + z = 4$
 $2x + 4y + 4z = 2$
 $4x + 8y + 6z = 10$

77. $3x - 2y + 4z = 4$
 $4x + y - 5z = 2$
 $-6x + 4y - 8z = -2$

78. Check whether the system of equations is consistent or inconsistent.

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2y + 3z &= 8 \\ 4x + 5y + 6z &= 12 \\ 7x + 8y + 9z &= 16 \end{aligned}$$

Solve each of the following problems by any method.

79. **Business** A wine maker has two large casks of wine. One is 9% alcohol and the other is 14% alcohol. How many liters of

each wine should be mixed to produce 40 liters of wine that is 12% alcohol?

- 80. **Business** A gold merchant has some 12-carat gold (12/24 pure gold) and some 22-carat gold (22/24 pure). How many grams of each could be mixed to get 25 grams of 15-carat gold?
- 81. **Natural Science** A chemist has a 40% acid solution and a 60% solution. How many liters of each should be used to get 40 liters of a 45% solution?
- 82. **Business** How many pounds of tea worth \$4.60 a pound should be mixed with tea worth \$6.50 a pound to get 10 pounds of a mixture worth \$5.74 a pound?
- 83. **Business** A machine in a pottery factory takes 3 minutes to form a bowl and 2 minutes to form a plate. The material for a bowl costs \$.25, and the material for a plate costs \$.20. If the machine runs for 8 hours and exactly \$44 is spent for material, how many bowls and plates can be produced?
- 84. **Physical Science** A boat travels at a constant speed a distance of 57 kilometers downstream in 3 hours and then turns around and travels 55 kilometers upstream in 5 hours. What are the speeds of the boat and the current?
- 85. **Business** Henry Miller invests \$50,000 three ways—at 8%, $8\frac{1}{2}\%$, and 11%. In total, he receives \$4436.25 per year in interest. The interest on the 11% investment is \$80 more than the interest on the 8% investment. Find the amount he has invested at each rate.
- 86. **Business** Tickets to the homecoming football game cost \$4 for students, \$10 for alumni, \$12 for other adults, and \$6 for children. The total attendance was 3750, and the ticket receipts were \$29,100. Six times more students than children attended. The number of alumni was $\frac{4}{5}$ of the number of students. How many students, alumni, other adults, and children were at the game?

87. Given the input–output matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and the demand matrix $D = \begin{bmatrix} 2100 \\ 1400 \end{bmatrix}$, find each of the following.

- (a) $I - A$
- (b) $(I - A)^{-1}$
- (c) The production matrix X

- 88. **Business** An economy depends on two commodities: goats and cheese. It takes $\frac{2}{3}$ unit of goats to produce 1 unit of cheese and $\frac{1}{2}$ unit of cheese to produce 1 unit of goats.
 - (a) Write the input–output matrix for this economy.
 - (b) Find the production required to satisfy a demand of 400 units of cheese and 800 units of goats.

Use technology to do Exercises 89–91.

- 89. **Business** In a simple economic model, a country has two industries: agriculture and manufacturing. To produce \$1 of agricultural output requires \$.10 of agricultural output and \$.40 of manufacturing output. To produce \$1 of manufacturing output

requires \$.70 of agricultural output and \$.20 of manufacturing output. If agricultural demand is \$60,000 and manufacturing demand is \$20,000, what must each industry produce? (Round answers to the nearest whole number.)

- 90. **Business** Here is the input–output matrix for a small economy:

	Agriculture	Services	Mining	Manufacturing
Agriculture	.02	.9	0	.001
Services	0	.4	0	.06
Mining	.01	.02	.06	.07
Manufacturing	.25	.9	.9	.4

- (a) How many units from each sector does the service sector require to produce 1 unit?
- (b) What production levels are needed to meet a demand for 760 units of agriculture, 1600 units of services, 1000 units of mining, and 2000 units of manufacturing?
- (c) How many units of manufacturing production are used up in the economy’s production process?

- 91. Use this input–output matrix to answer the questions below.

	Agriculture	Construction	Energy	Manufacturing	Transportation
Agriculture	.18	.017	.4	.005	0
Construction	.14	.018	.09	.001	0
Energy	.9	0	.4	.06	.002
Manufacturing	.19	.16	.1	.008	.5
Transportation	.14	.25	.9	.4	.12

- (a) How many units from each sector does the energy sector require to produce 1 unit?
- (b) If the economy produces 28,067 units of agriculture, 9383 units of construction, 51,372 units of energy, 61,364 units of manufacturing, and 90,403 units of transportation, how much is available from each sector to satisfy the demand from consumers and others outside the production system?
- (c) A new demand matrix for the economy is

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2400 \\ 850 \\ 1400 \\ 3200 \\ 1800 \end{bmatrix}$$

How much must each sector produce to meet this demand?

92. **Business** The following matrix represents the number of direct flights between four cities:

$$\begin{array}{c} A \quad B \quad C \quad D \\ A \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ B \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ C \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ D \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{array} \end{array} \end{array}$$

- (a) Find the number of one-stop flights between cities A and C.

- (b) Find the total number of flights between cities B and C that are either direct or one stop.
- (c) Find the matrix that gives the number of two-stop flights between these cities.

93. Use the matrix $M = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ to encode the message

“algebra is fun.”

94. Which matrix should be used to decode the answer to the previous exercise?

Case Study 6 Matrix Operations and Airline Route Maps

Airline route maps are usually published on airline Web sites, as well as in in-flight magazines. The purpose of these maps is to show what cities are connected to each other by nonstop flights provided by the airline. We can think of these maps as another type of **graph**, and we can use matrix operations to answer questions of interest about the graph. To study these graphs, a bit of terminology will be helpful. In this context, a **graph** is a set of points called **vertices** or **nodes** and a set of lines called **edges** connecting some pairs of vertices. Two vertices connected by an edge are said to be **adjacent**. Suppose, for example, that Stampede Air is a short-haul airline serving the state of Texas whose route map is shown in Figure 1 below. The vertices are the cities to which Stampede Air flies, and two vertices are connected if there is a nonstop flight between them.

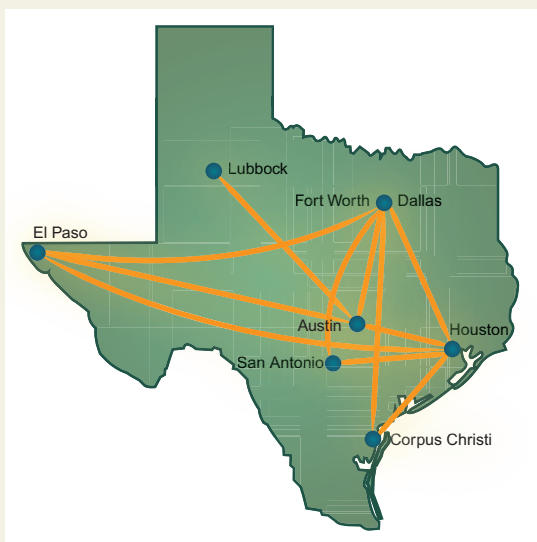


Figure 1 Stampede Air route map

Some natural questions arise about graphs. It might be important to know if two vertices are connected by a sequence of two edges, even if they are not connected by a single edge. In the route map, Houston and Lubbock are connected by a two-edge sequence, meaning that a passenger would have to stop in Austin while flying between those cities on Stampede Air. It might be important to know if it is possible to get from a vertex to another vertex in a given number of flights. In the example, a passenger on Stampede Air can get from any city in the company's network to any other city, given enough flights. But how many flights are enough? This is another issue of interest: What is the minimum number of steps required to get from one vertex to another? What is the minimum number of steps required to get from any vertex on the graph to any other? While these questions are relatively easy to answer for a small graph, as the number of vertices and edges grows, it becomes harder to keep track of all the different ways the vertices are connected. Matrix notation and computation can help to answer these questions.

The **adjacency matrix** for a graph with n vertices is an $n \times n$ matrix whose (i, j) entry is 1 if the i th and j th vertices are connected and 0 if they are not. If the vertices in the Stampede Air graph respectively correspond to Austin (A), El Paso (E), Houston (H), Dallas-Fort Worth (D), San Antonio (S), Corpus Christi (C), and Lubbock (L), then the adjacency matrix for Stampede Air is as follows.

$$A = \begin{array}{c} \begin{matrix} A & E & H & D & S & C & L \\ \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{matrix} \begin{matrix} A \\ E \\ H \\ D \\ S \\ C \\ L \end{matrix} \end{array}$$

Adjacency matrices can be used to address the questions about graphs raised earlier. Which vertices are connected by a two-edge sequence? How many different two-edge sequences connect each

pair of vertices? Consider the matrix A^2 , which is A multiplied by itself. For example, let the $(6, 2)$ entry in the matrix A^2 be named b_{62} . This entry in A^2 is the product of the 6th row of A and the 2nd column of A , or

$$\begin{aligned} b_{62} &= a_{61}a_{12} + a_{62}a_{22} + a_{63}a_{32} + a_{64}a_{42} + a_{65}a_{52} + a_{66}a_{62} + a_{67}a_{72} \\ &= 0 \cdot 1 + 0 \cdot 0 + 1 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 1 + 0 \cdot 0 + 0 \cdot 0 + 0 \cdot 0 \\ &= 2, \end{aligned}$$

which happens to be the number of two-flight sequences that connect city 6 (Corpus Christi) and city 2 (El Paso). A careful look at Figure 1 confirms this fact. This calculation works because, in order for a two-flight sequence to occur between Corpus Christi and El Paso, Corpus Christi and El Paso must each connect to an intermediate city. Since Corpus Christi connects to Houston and Houston connects to El Paso, $a_{63}a_{32} = 1 \cdot 1 = 1$. Thus, there is one two-flight sequence between Corpus Christi and El Paso that passes through Houston. Since Corpus Christi does not connect to Austin (city 1), but Austin does connect with El Paso, $a_{61}a_{12} = 0 \cdot 1 = 0$. Hence, there is no two-flight sequence from Corpus Christi to El Paso that passes through Austin. To find the total number of two-flight sequences between Corpus Christi and El Paso, simply sum over all intermediate points. Notice that this sum, which is

$$a_{61}a_{12} + a_{62}a_{22} + a_{63}a_{32} + a_{64}a_{42} + a_{65}a_{52} + a_{66}a_{62} + a_{67}a_{72},$$

is just b_{62} , the $(6, 2)$ entry in the matrix A^2 . So we see that the number of two-step sequences between vertex i and vertex j in a graph with adjacency matrix A is the (i, j) entry in A^2 . A more general result is the following:

The number of k -step sequences between vertex i and vertex j in a graph with adjacency matrix A is the (i, j) entry in A^k .

If A is the adjacency matrix for Figure 1, then

$$A^2 = \begin{matrix} & \begin{matrix} A & E & H & D & S & C & L \end{matrix} \\ \begin{matrix} A \\ E \\ H \\ D \\ S \\ C \\ L \end{matrix} & \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 2 & 2 & 2 & 2 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 & 2 & 2 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 & 5 & 4 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 & 4 & 5 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 2 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 2 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{matrix}$$

and

$$A^3 = \begin{matrix} & \begin{matrix} A & E & H & D & S & C & L \end{matrix} \\ \begin{matrix} A \\ E \\ H \\ D \\ S \\ C \\ L \end{matrix} & \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 8 & 12 & 12 & 4 & 4 & 4 \\ 8 & 6 & 11 & 11 & 4 & 4 & 2 \\ 12 & 11 & 10 & 11 & 9 & 9 & 2 \\ 12 & 11 & 11 & 10 & 9 & 9 & 2 \\ 4 & 4 & 9 & 9 & 2 & 2 & 2 \\ 4 & 4 & 9 & 9 & 2 & 2 & 2 \\ 4 & 2 & 2 & 2 & 2 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{matrix}$$

Since the $(6, 3)$ entry in A^2 is 1, there is one two-step sequence from Corpus Christi to Houston. Likewise, there are four three-step

sequences between El Paso and San Antonio, since the $(2, 5)$ entry in A^3 is 4.

In observing the figure, note that some two-step or three-step sequences may not be meaningful. On the Stampede Air route map, Dallas-Fort Worth is reachable in two steps from Austin (via El Paso or Houston), but in reality this does not matter, since there is a non-stop flight between the two cities. A better question to ask of a graph might be, “What is the least number of edges that must be traversed to go from vertex i to vertex j ?”

To answer this question, consider the matrix $S_k = A + A^2 + \dots + A^k$. The (i, j) entry in this matrix tallies the number of ways to get from vertex i to vertex j in k steps or less. If such a trip is impossible, this entry will be zero. Thus, to find the shortest number of steps between the vertices, continue to compute S_k as k increases; the first k for which the (i, j) entry in S_k is nonzero is the shortest number of steps between i and j . Note that although the shortest number of steps may be computed, the method does not determine what those steps are.

Exercises

- Which Stampede Air cities may be reached by a two-flight sequence from San Antonio? Which may be reached by a three-flight sequence?
- It was shown previously that there are four three-step sequences between El Paso and San Antonio. Describe these three-step sequences.
- Which trips in the Stampede Air network take the greatest number of flights?
- Suppose that Vacation Air is an airline serving Jacksonville, Orlando, West Palm Beach, Miami, and Tampa, Florida. The route map is given in Figure 2. Produce an adjacency matrix B for this map, listing the cities in the order given.



Figure 2 Vacation Air route map

- Find B^2 , the square of the adjacency matrix found in Exercise 4. What does this matrix tell you?
- Find $B + B^2$. What can you conclude from this calculation?

Extended Project

Visit the website dir.yahoo.com/business_and_economy/shopping_and_services/travel_and_transportation/airlines/. This site includes links to many obscure and smaller airlines, as well as the more well-known carriers. Find a small regional airline that serves your area and use their route map to produce an adjacency matrix. Determine

which trips using this airline take the largest number of flights. How many flights did these trips take? Prepare a report that includes an overview of the airline, the route map, an explanation of the adjacency matrix, and your findings about which trips take the largest number of flights.



Linear Programming

7

CHAPTER

CHAPTER OUTLINE

- 7.1 Graphing Linear Inequalities in Two Variables
- 7.2 Linear Programming: The Graphical Method
- 7.3 Applications of Linear Programming
- 7.4 The Simplex Method: Maximization
- 7.5 Maximization Applications
- 7.6 The Simplex Method: Duality and Minimization
- 7.7 The Simplex Method: Nonstandard Problems

CASE STUDY 7

Cooking with Linear Programming

Linear programming is one of the most remarkable (and useful) mathematical techniques developed in the last 65 years. It is used to deal with a variety of issues faced by businesses, financial planners, medical personnel, sports leagues, and others. Typical applications include maximizing company profits by adjusting production schedules, minimizing shipping costs by locating warehouses efficiently, and maximizing pension income by choosing the best mix of financial products. See Exercise 17 on page 397, Exercise 33 on page 418, and Exercise 19 on page 377.

Many real-world problems involve inequalities. For example, a factory may have no more than 200 workers on a shift and must manufacture at least 3000 units at a cost of no more than \$35 each. How many workers should it have per shift in order to produce the required number of units at minimal cost? *Linear programming* is a method for finding the optimal (best possible) solution for such problems—if there is one.

In this chapter, we shall study two methods of solving linear programming problems: the graphical method and the simplex method. The graphical method requires a knowledge of **linear inequalities**, which are inequalities involving only first-degree polynomials in x and y . So we begin with a study of such inequalities.

7.1 Graphing Linear Inequalities in Two Variables

Examples of linear inequalities in two variables include

$$x + 2y < 4, \quad 3x + 2y > 6, \quad \text{and} \quad 2x - 5y \geq 10.$$

A solution of a linear inequality is an ordered pair that satisfies the inequality. For example $(4, 4)$ is a solution of

$$3x - 2y \leq 6.$$

(Check by substituting 4 for x and 4 for y .) A linear inequality has an infinite number of solutions, one for every choice of a value for x . The best way to show these solutions is to sketch the **graph of the inequality**, which consists of all points in the plane whose coordinates satisfy the inequality.

Example 1 Graph the inequality $3x - 2y \leq 6$.

Solution First, solve the inequality for y :


$$\begin{aligned} 3x - 2y &\leq 6 \\ -2y &\leq -3x + 6 \\ y &\geq \frac{3}{2}x - 3 && \text{Multiply by } -\frac{1}{2}; \text{ reverse the inequality.} \\ y &\geq 1.5x - 3. \end{aligned}$$

This inequality has the same solutions as the original one. To solve it, note that the points on the line $y = 1.5x - 3$ certainly satisfy $y \geq 1.5x - 3$. Plot some points, and graph this line, as in Figure 7.1.

The points on the line satisfy “ y equals $1.5x - 3$.” The points satisfying “ y is greater than $1.5x - 3$ ” are the points *above* the line (because they have larger second coordinates than the points on the line; see Figure 7.2). Similarly, the points satisfying

$$y < 1.5x - 3$$

lie below the line (because they have smaller second coordinates), as shown in Figure 7.2. The line $y = 1.5x - 3$ is the **boundary line**.

Thus, the solutions of $y \geq 1.5x - 3$ are all points *on or above* the line $y = 1.5x - 3$. The line and the shaded region of Figure 7.3 make up the graph of the inequality $y \geq 1.5x - 3$. 

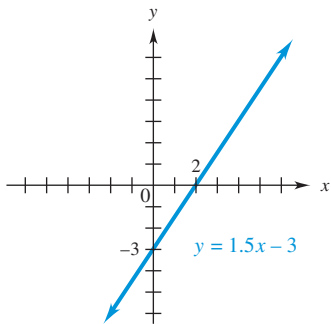


Figure 7.1

✓ Checkpoint 1

Graph the given inequalities.

(a) $2x + 5y \leq 10$

(b) $x - y \geq 4$

Answers to Checkpoint exercises are found at the end of the section.

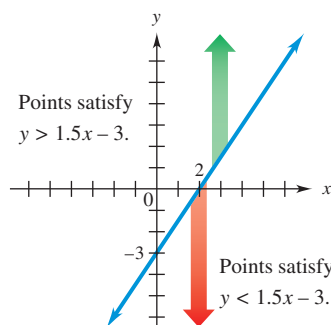


Figure 7.2

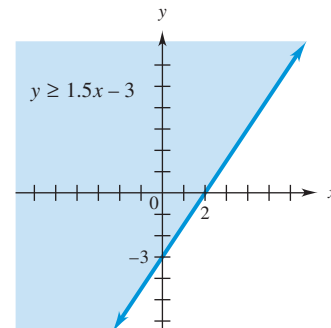


Figure 7.3

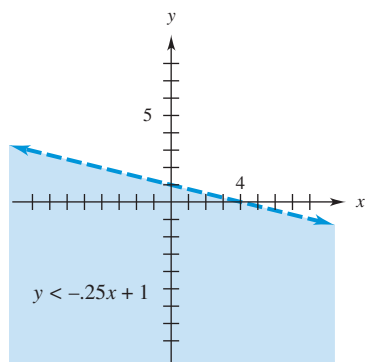


Figure 7.4

✓ Checkpoint 2

Graph the given inequalities.

- (a) $2x + 3y > 12$
 (b) $3x - 2y < 6$

Example 2

 Graph $x + 4y < 4$.

Solution First obtain an equivalent inequality by solving for y :

$$4y < -x + 4$$

$$y < -\frac{1}{4}x + 1$$


$$y < -.25x + 1.$$

The boundary line is $y = -.25x + 1$, but it is *not* part of the solution, since points *on* the line do not satisfy $y < -.25x + 1$. To indicate this, the line is drawn dashed in Figure 7.4. The points *below* the boundary line are the solutions of $y < -.25x + 1$, because they have smaller second coordinates than the points on the line $y = -.25x + 1$. The shaded region in Figure 7.4 (excluding the dashed line) is the graph of the inequality $y < -.25x + 1$. ✓₂

Examples 1 and 2 show that the solutions of a linear inequality form a **half-plane** consisting of all points on one side of the boundary line (and possibly the line itself). When an inequality is solved for y , the inequality symbol immediately tells whether the points above ($>$), on ($=$), or below ($<$) the boundary line satisfy the inequality, as summarized here.

Inequality	Solution Consists of All Points
$y \geq mx + b$	<i>on or above</i> the line $y = mx + b$
$y > mx + b$	<i>above</i> the line $y = mx + b$
$y \leq mx + b$	<i>on or below</i> the line $y = mx + b$
$y < mx + b$	<i>below</i> the line $y = mx + b$

When graphing by hand, draw the boundary line $y = mx + b$ solid when it is included in the solution (\geq or \leq inequalities) and dashed when it is not part of the solution ($>$ or $<$ inequalities).

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** To shade the area above or below the graph of Y_1 on TI-84+, go to the $Y =$ menu and move the cursor to the left of Y_1 . Press ENTER until the correct shading pattern appears (\blacktriangle for above the line and \blacktriangledown for below the line). Then press GRAPH. On TI-86/89, use the STYLE key in the $Y =$ menu instead of the ENTER key. For other calculators, consult your instruction manual.

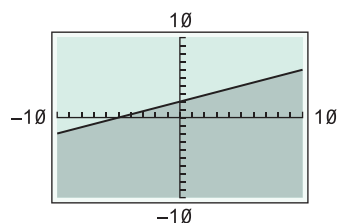


Figure 7.5

✓ Checkpoint 3

Use a graphing calculator to graph $2x < y$.

Example 3

 Graph $5y - 2x \leq 10$.


Solution Solve the inequality for y :

$$5y \leq 2x + 10$$

$$y \leq \frac{2}{5}x + 2$$

$$y \leq .4x + 2.$$

The graph consists of all points on or below the boundary line $y \leq .4x + 2$, as shown in Figure 7.5. (See the Technology Tip.) ✓₃

 **CAUTION** You cannot tell from a calculator-produced graph whether the boundary line is included. It is included in Figure 7.5, but not in the answer to Checkpoint 3.

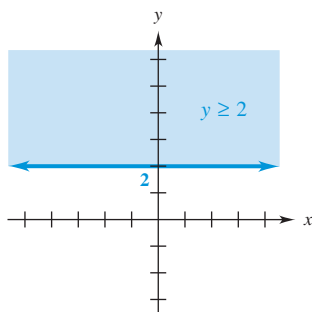


Figure 7.6

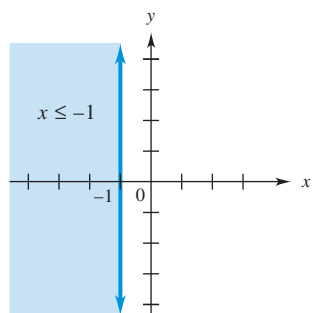


Figure 7.7

✓ Checkpoint 4

Graph each of the following.

- (a) $x \geq 3$
 (b) $y - 3 \leq 0$

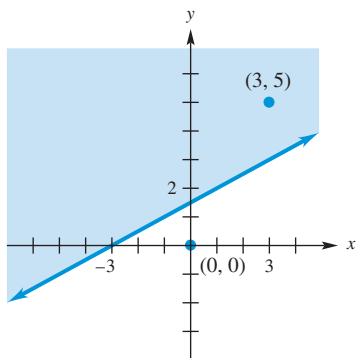


Figure 7.8

Example 4

Graph each of the given inequalities.

(a) $y \geq 2$

Solution The boundary line is the horizontal line $y = 2$. The graph consists of all points on or above this line (Figure 7.6).

(b) $x \leq -1$

Solution This inequality does not fit the pattern discussed earlier, but it can be solved by a similar technique. Here, the boundary line is the vertical line $x = -1$, and it is included in the solution. The points satisfying $x < -1$ are all points to the left of this line (because they have x -coordinates smaller than -1). So the graph consists of the points that are *on or to the left of* the vertical line $x = -1$, as shown in Figure 7.7. ✓₄

An alternative technique for solving inequalities that does not require solving for y is illustrated in the next example. Feel free to use it if you find it easier than the technique presented in Examples 1–4.

Example 5

Graph $4y - 2x \geq 6$.

Solution The boundary line is $4y - 2x = 6$, which can be graphed by finding its intercepts:

$$x\text{-intercept: Let } y = 0.$$

$$4(0) - 2x = 6$$

$$x = -3.$$

$$y\text{-intercept: Let } x = 0.$$

$$4y - 2(0) = 6$$

$$y = \frac{6}{4} = 1.5.$$

The graph contains the half-plane above or below this line. To determine which, choose a test point—any point not on the boundary line, say, $(0, 0)$. Letting $x = 0$ and $y = 0$ in the inequality produces

$$4(0) - 2(0) \geq 6, \quad \text{a false statement.}$$

Therefore, $(0, 0)$ is not in the solution. So the solution is the half-plane that does *not* include $(0, 0)$, as shown in Figure 7.8. If a different test point is used, say, $(3, 5)$, then substituting $x = 3$ and $y = 5$ in the inequality produces

$$4(5) - 2(3) \geq 6, \quad \text{a true statement.}$$

Therefore, the solution of the inequality is the half-plane containing $(3, 5)$, as shown in Figure 7.8.

NOTE When using the method of Example 5, $(0, 0)$ is the best choice for the test point because it makes the calculation very easy. The only time that $(0, 0)$ cannot be used is for inequalities of the form $ax + by \geq 0$ (or $>$ or $<$ or \leq); in such cases, $(0, 0)$ is on the line $ax + by = 0$.

Systems of Inequalities

Real-world problems often involve many inequalities. For example, a manufacturing problem might produce inequalities resulting from production requirements, as well as inequalities about cost requirements. A set of at least two inequalities is called a **system of inequalities**. The **graph** of a system of inequalities is made up of all those points which satisfy *all* the inequalities of the system.

Example 6

Graph the system

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + y &\leq 12 \\ x &\leq 2y. \end{aligned}$$

Solution First, solve each inequality for y :

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + y &\leq 12 & x &\leq 2y \\ y &\leq -3x + 12 & y &\geq \frac{x}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

Then the original system is equivalent to this one:

$$\begin{aligned} y &\leq -3x + 12 \\ y &\geq \frac{x}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 5

Graph the system

$$\begin{aligned} x + y &\leq 6 \\ 2x + y &\geq 4. \end{aligned}$$

The solutions of the first inequality are the points *on or below* the line $y = -3x + 12$ (Figure 7.9). The solutions of the second inequality are the points *on or above* the line $y = x/2$ (Figure 7.10). So the solutions of the *system* are the points that satisfy both of these conditions, as shown in Figure 7.11. ✓ 5

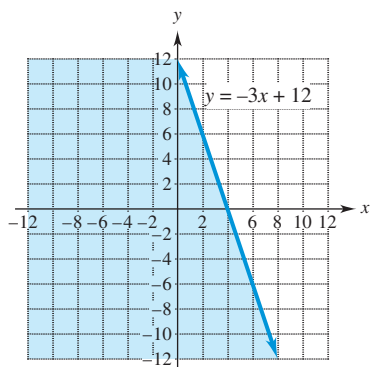


Figure 7.9

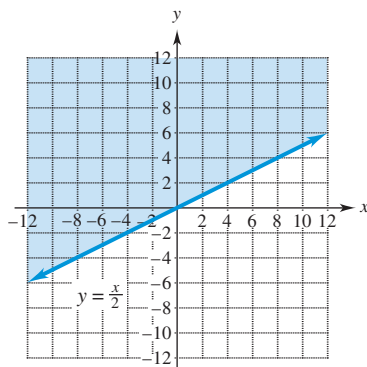


Figure 7.10

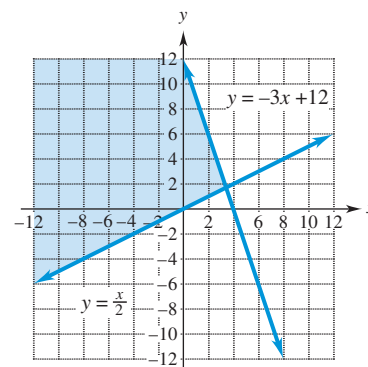


Figure 7.11

The shaded region in Figure 7.11 is sometimes called the **region of feasible solutions**, or just the **feasible region**, since it consists of all the points that satisfy (are feasible for) every inequality of the system.

Example 7

Graph the feasible region for the system

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - 5y &\leq 10 \\ x + 2y &\leq 8 \\ x &\geq 0, y \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Solution Begin by solving the first two inequalities for y :

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - 5y &\leq 10 & x + 2y &\leq 8 \\ -5y &\leq -2x + 10 & 2y &\leq -x + 8 \\ y &\geq .4x - 2 & y &\leq -.5x + 4. \end{aligned}$$

Then the original system is equivalent to this one:

$$\begin{aligned} y &\geq .4x - 2 \\ y &\leq -.5x + 4 \\ x &\geq 0, y \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 6

Graph the feasible region of the system

$$\begin{aligned} x + 4y &\leq 8 \\ x - y &\geq 3 \\ x &\geq 0, y \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

The inequalities $x \geq 0$ and $y \geq 0$ restrict the graph to the first quadrant. So the feasible region consists of all points in the first quadrant that are on or above the line $y = .4x - 2$ and on or below the line $y = -.5x + 4$. In the calculator-generated graph of Figure 7.12, the feasible region is the region with both vertical and horizontal shading. This is confirmed by the hand-drawn graph of the feasible region in Figure 7.13. **✓6**

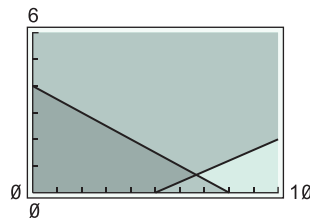


Figure 7.12

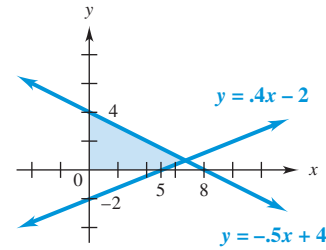


Figure 7.13

Example 8

Graph the feasible region for the system

$$\begin{aligned} 5y - 2x &\leq 10 \\ x &\geq 3, y \geq 2. \end{aligned}$$

Solution Solve the first inequality for y (as in Example 3) to obtain an equivalent system:

$$\begin{aligned} y &\leq .4x + 2 \\ x &\geq 3, y \geq 2. \end{aligned}$$

As shown in Example 3, Checkpoint 4, and Example 4(a), the feasible region consists of all points that lie

- on or below the line $y \leq .4x + 2$ and
- on or to the right of the vertical line $x = 3$ and
- on or above the horizontal line $y = 2$,

as shown in Figure 7.14.

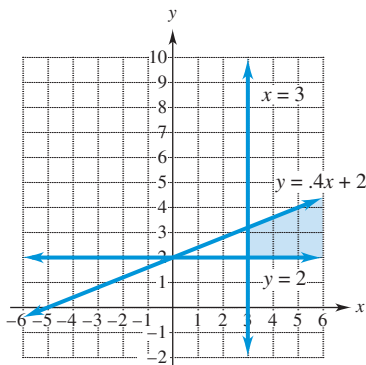


Figure 7.14

Example 9

Health A bodybuilder wishes to supplement his regular meals with protein shakes and protein bars. The protein shake contains 30 grams of protein and 325 calories. The protein bar contains 25 grams of protein and 275 calories. During a 5-day work week, the bodybuilder wants to achieve at least 350 grams of protein, but fewer than or equal to 7150 calories. Write a system of inequalities expressing these conditions, and graph the feasible region.

Solution Let x represent the number of protein shakes to be consumed and y the number of protein bars. Then make a chart that summarizes the given information.

	Number of Units	Grams of Protein	Number of Calories
Protein Shakes	x	30	325
Protein Bars	y	25	275
Maximum or Minimum		350	7150

We must have $x \geq 0$ and $y \geq 0$, because the bodybuilder cannot consume a negative number of protein shakes or bars. In terms of consuming at least 350 grams of protein, we have

$$\begin{aligned} 30x + 25y &\geq 350 \\ y &\geq -\frac{6}{5}x + 14. \end{aligned} \quad \text{Solve for } y.$$

Similarly, the 7150 calorie requirement has that

$$325x + 275y \leq 7150$$

$$y \leq -\frac{13}{11}x + 26. \quad \text{Solve for } y.$$

So we must solve the system

$$y \geq -\frac{6}{5}x + 14$$

$$y \leq -\frac{13}{11}x + 26$$

$$x \geq 0, y \geq 0.$$

✓ Checkpoint 7

Mylene wishes to invest up to \$40,000 in two bond products. Bond A has an annual return of 4% and Bond B has an annual return of 5.2%. She wants to earn at least \$1800 annually. Write a system of inequalities expressing these conditions, and graph the feasible region.

The feasible region is shown in Figure 7.15. ✓7

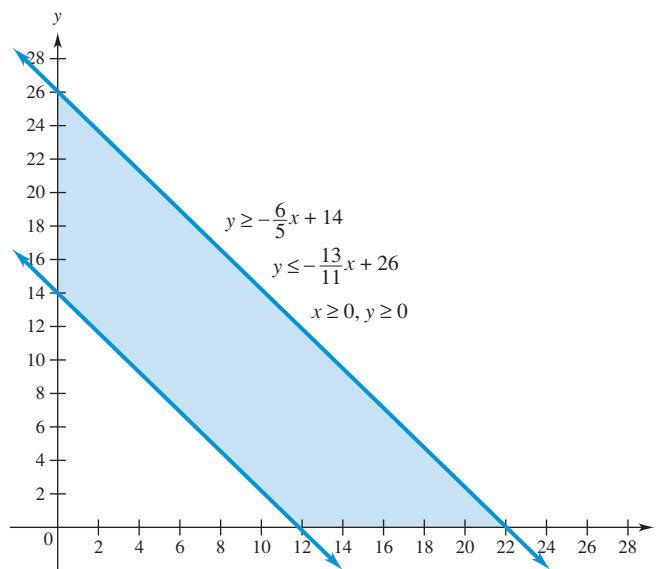


Figure 7.15

7.1 Exercises

Match the inequality with its graph, which is one of the ones shown.

1. $y \geq -x - 2$

2. $y \leq 2x - 2$

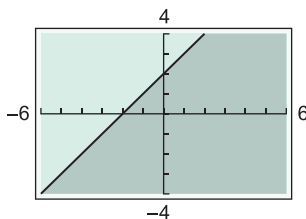
3. $y \leq x + 2$

4. $y \geq x + 1$

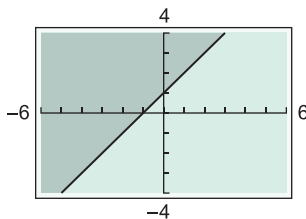
5. $6x + 4y \geq -12$

6. $3x - 2y \geq -4$

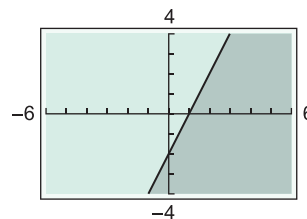
A.



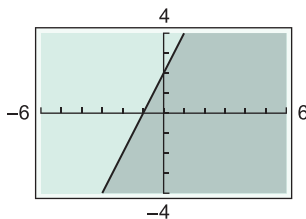
B.



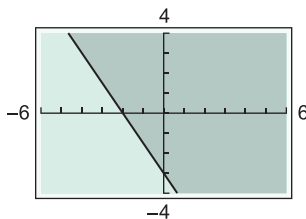
C.



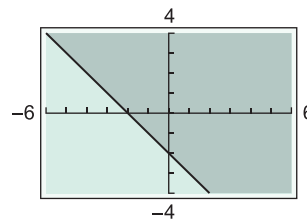
D.



E.



F.



Graph each of the given linear inequalities. (See Examples 1–5.)

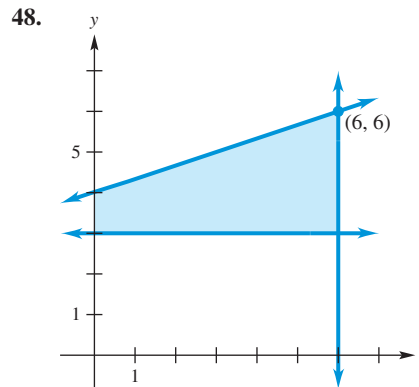
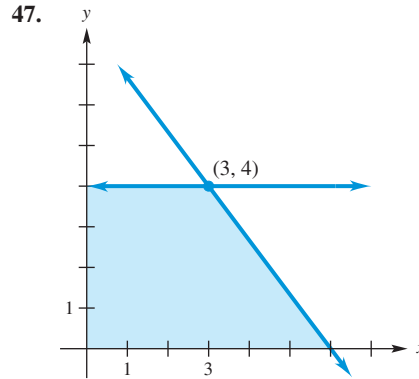
- 7. $y < 5 - 2x$
- 8. $y < x + 3$
- 9. $3x - 2y \geq 18$
- 10. $2x + 5y \geq 10$
- 11. $2x - y \leq 4$
- 12. $4x - 3y \leq 24$
- 13. $y \leq -4$
- 14. $x \geq -2$
- 15. $3x - 2y \geq 18$
- 16. $3x + 2y \geq -4$
- 17. $3x + 4y \geq 12$
- 18. $4x - 3y > 9$
- 19. $2x - 4y \leq 3$
- 20. $4x - 3y < 12$
- 21. $x \leq 5y$
- 22. $2x \geq y$
- 23. $-3x \leq y$
- 24. $-x \geq 6y$
- 25. $y \leq x$
- 26. $y > -2x$

- 27. In your own words, explain how to determine whether the boundary line of an inequality should be solid or dashed.
- 28. When graphing $y \leq 3x - 6$, would you shade above or below the line $y = 3x - 6$? Explain your answer.

Graph the feasible region for the given systems of inequalities. (See Examples 6 and 7.)

- 29. $y \geq 3x - 6$
 $y \geq -x + 1$
- 30. $x + y \leq 4$
 $x - y \geq 2$
- 31. $2x + y \leq 5$
 $x + 2y \leq 5$
- 32. $x - y \geq 1$
 $x \leq 3$
- 33. $2x + y \geq 8$
 $4x - y \leq 3$
- 34. $4x + y \geq 9$
 $2x + 3y \leq 7$
- 35. $2x - y \leq 1$
 $3x + y \leq 6$
- 36. $x + 3y \leq 6$
 $2x + 4y \geq 7$
- 37. $-x - y \leq 5$
 $2x - y \leq 4$
- 38. $6x - 4y \geq 8$
 $3x + 2y \geq 4$
- 39. $3x + y \geq 6$
 $x + 2y \geq 7$
 $x \geq 0$
 $y \geq 0$
- 40. $2x + 3y \geq 12$
 $x + y \geq 4$
 $x \geq 0$
 $y \geq 0$
- 41. $-2 \leq x \leq 3$
 $-1 \leq y \leq 5$
 $2x + y \leq 6$
- 42. $-2 \leq x \leq 2$
 $y \geq 1$
 $x - y \geq 0$
- 43. $2y - x \geq -5$
 $y \leq 3 + x$
 $x \geq 0$
 $y \geq 0$
- 44. $2x + 3y \leq 12$
 $2x + 3y \geq -6$
 $3x + y \leq 4$
 $x \geq 0$
 $y \geq 0$
- 45. $3x + 4y \geq 12$
 $2x - 3y \leq 6$
 $0 \leq y \leq 2$
 $x \geq 0$
- 46. $0 \leq x \leq 9$
 $x - 2y \geq 4$
 $3x + 5y \leq 30$
 $y \geq 0$

Find a system of inequalities that has the given graph.



In Exercises 49 and 50, find a system of inequalities whose feasible region is the interior of the given polygon.

- 49. Rectangle with vertices (2, 3), (2, -1), (7, 3), and (7, -1)
- 50. Triangle with vertices (2, 4), (-4, 0), and (2, -1)

51. **Business** Cindi Herring and Kent Merrill produce handmade shawls and afghans. They spin the yarn, dye it, and then weave it. A shawl requires 1 hour of spinning, 1 hour of dyeing, and 1 hour of weaving. An afghan needs 2 hours of spinning, 1 of dyeing, and 4 of weaving. Together, they spend at most 8 hours spinning, 6 hours dyeing, and 14 hours weaving.

(a) Complete the following table.

	Number	Hours Spinning	Hours Dyeing	Hours Weaving
Shawls	x			
Afghans	y			
Maximum Number of Hours Available		8	6	14

- (b) Use the table to write a system of inequalities that describes the situation.
- (c) Graph the feasible region of this system of inequalities.
- 52. **Business** A manufacturer of electric shavers makes two models: the regular and the flex. Because of demand, the number of regular shavers made is never more than half the number of flex shavers. The factory's production cannot exceed 1200 shavers per week.

- (a) Write a system of inequalities that describes the possibilities for making x regular and y flex shavers per week.
- (b) Graph the feasible region of this system of inequalities.

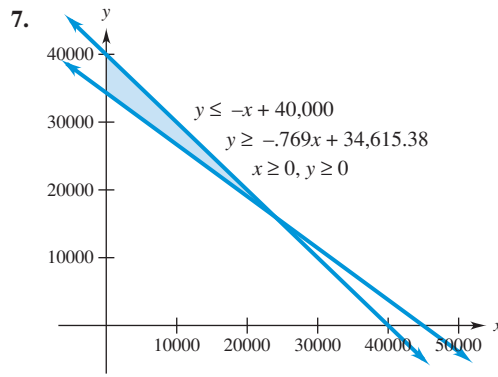
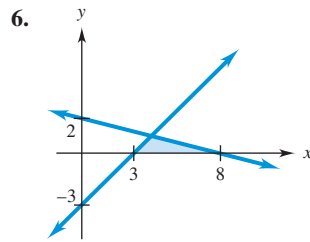
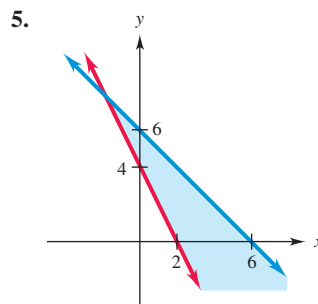
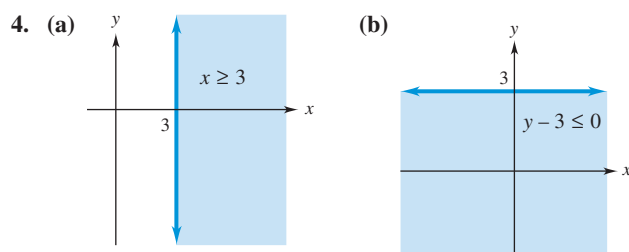
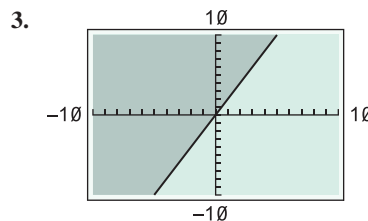
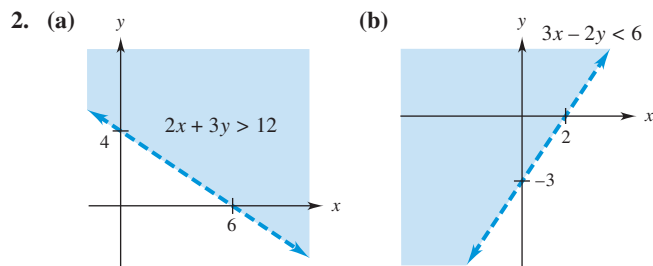
In each of the following, write a system of inequalities that describes all the given conditions, and graph the feasible region of the system. (See Example 9.)

53. Finance As of April 2013, a New York, NY Development Corp. municipal bond fund yielded an annual return of 3.6% and the Florida Village Community Development District No. 8 municipal bond fund yielded an annual return of 5.0%. You would like to invest up to \$50,000 and obtain at least \$2100 in interest. Let x be the amount invested in the New York fund and let y be the amount invested in the Florida fund. (Data from: Financial Industry Regulatory Authority.)

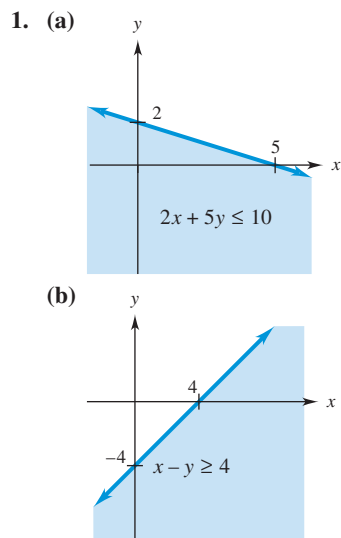
54. Finance As of April 2013, a Sanilac County, Michigan municipal bond fund yielded an annual return of 6.0% and the Mandan North Dakota municipal bond fund yielded an annual return of 4.7%. You would like to invest up to \$40,000 and earn at least \$2250 in interest. Let x be the amount invested in the Michigan fund and let y be the amount invested in the North Dakota fund. (Data from: Financial Industry Regulatory Authority.)

55. Business Joyce Blake is the marketing director for a new company selling a fashion collection for young women and she wishes to place ads in two magazines: *Vogue* and *Elle*. Joyce estimates that each one-page ad in *Vogue* will be read by 1.3 million people and each one-page ad in *Elle* will be read by 1.1 million people. Joyce wants to reach at least 8 million readers and to place at least 2 ads in each magazine. (Data from: www.nyjobsources.com.)

56. Business Corey Steinbruner is the marketing director for a new vitamin supplement and he wants to place ads in two magazines: *Sports Illustrated* and *Men's Health*. Corey estimates that each one-page ad in *Sports Illustrated* will be read by 3.2 million people and each one-page ad in *Men's Health* will be read by 1.9 million people. Corey wants to reach at least 20 million readers and to place at least 3 ads in each magazine. (Data from: www.nyjobsources.com.)



✓ Checkpoint Answers



7.2 Linear Programming: The Graphical Method

Many problems in business, science, and economics involve finding the optimal value of a function (for instance, the maximum value of the profit function or the minimum value of the cost function), subject to various **constraints** (such as transportation costs, environmental protection laws, availability of parts, and interest rates). **Linear programming** deals with such situations. In linear programming, the function to be optimized, called the **objective function**, is linear and the constraints are given by linear inequalities. Linear programming problems that involve only two variables can be solved by the graphical method, explained in Example 1.

Example 1

Find the maximum and minimum values of the objective function $z = 2x + 5y$, subject to the following constraints:

$$3x + 2y \leq 6$$

$$-2x + 4y \leq 8$$

$$x + y \geq 1$$

$$x \geq 0, y \geq 0.$$

Solution First, graph the feasible region of the system of inequalities (Figure 7.16). The points in this region or on its boundaries are the only ones that satisfy all the constraints. However, each such point may produce a different value of the objective function. For instance, the points $(.5, 1)$ and $(1, 0)$ in the feasible region lead to the respective values

$$z = 2(.5) + 5(1) = 6 \quad \text{and} \quad z = 2(1) + 5(0) = 2.$$

We must find the points that produce the maximum and minimum values of z .

To find the maximum value, consider various possible values for z . For instance, when $z = 0$, the objective function is $0 = 2x + 5y$, whose graph is a straight line. Similarly, when z is 5, 10, and 15, the objective function becomes (in turn)

$$5 = 2x + 5y, \quad 10 = 2x + 5y, \quad \text{and} \quad 15 = 2x + 5y.$$

These four lines are graphed in Figure 7.17. (All the lines are parallel because they have the same slope.) The figure shows that z cannot take on the value 15, because the graph for $z = 15$ is entirely outside the feasible region. The maximum possible value of z will be obtained from a line parallel to the others and between the lines representing the objective

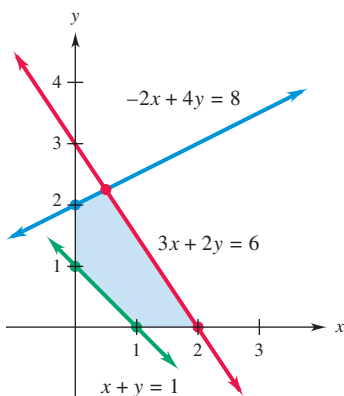


Figure 7.16

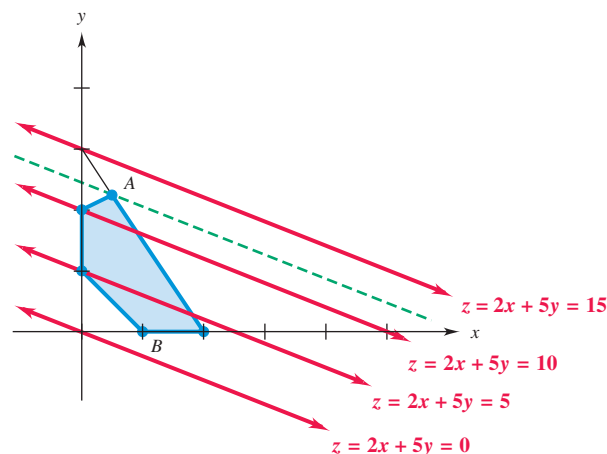


Figure 7.17

function when $z = 10$ and $z = 15$. The value of z will be as large as possible, and all constraints will be satisfied, if this line just touches the feasible region. This occurs with the green line through point A .

The point A is the intersection of the graphs of $3x + 2y = 6$ and $-2x + 4y = 8$. (See Figure 7.16.) Its coordinates can be found either algebraically or graphically (using a graphing calculator).

Algebraic Method

Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + 2y &= 6 \\ -2x + 4y &= 8, \end{aligned}$$

as in Section 6.1, to get $x = \frac{1}{2}$ and $y = \frac{9}{4}$. Hence, A has coordinates $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{9}{4}) = (.5, 2.25)$.

The value of z at point A is


$$z = 2x + 5y = 2(.5) + 5(2.25) = 12.25.$$

Graphical Method

Solve the two equations for y :

$$\begin{aligned} y &= -1.5x + 3 \\ y &= .5x + 2. \end{aligned}$$

Graph both equations on the same screen and use the intersection finder to find that the coordinates of the intersection point A are $(.5, 2.25)$.

Thus, the maximum possible value of z is 12.25. Similarly, the minimum value of z occurs at point B , which has coordinates $(1, 0)$. The minimum value of z is $2(1) + 5(0) = 2$. 

 **Checkpoint 1**

Suppose the objective function in Example 1 is changed to $z = 5x + 2y$.

- (a) Sketch the graphs of the objective function when $z = 0$, $z = 5$, and $z = 10$ on the region of feasible solutions given in Figure 7.16.
- (b) From the graph, decide what values of x and y will maximize the objective function.

Points such as A and B in Example 1 are called corner points. A **corner point** is a point in the feasible region where the boundary lines of two constraints cross. The feasible region in Figure 7.16 is **bounded** because the region is enclosed by boundary lines on all sides. Linear programming problems with bounded regions always have solutions. However, if Example 1 did not include the constraint $3x + 2y \leq 6$, the feasible region would be **unbounded**, and there would be no way to *maximize* the value of the objective function.

Some general conclusions can be drawn from the method of solution used in Example 1. Figure 7.18 shows various feasible regions and the lines that result from various values of z . (Figure 7.18 shows the situation in which the lines are in order from left to right as z increases.) In part (a) of Figure 7.18, the objective function takes on its minimum value at corner point Q and its maximum value at corner point P . The minimum is again at Q in part (b), but the maximum occurs at P_1 or P_2 , or any point on the line segment connecting them. Finally, in part (c), the minimum value occurs at Q , but the objective function has no maximum value because the feasible region is unbounded.

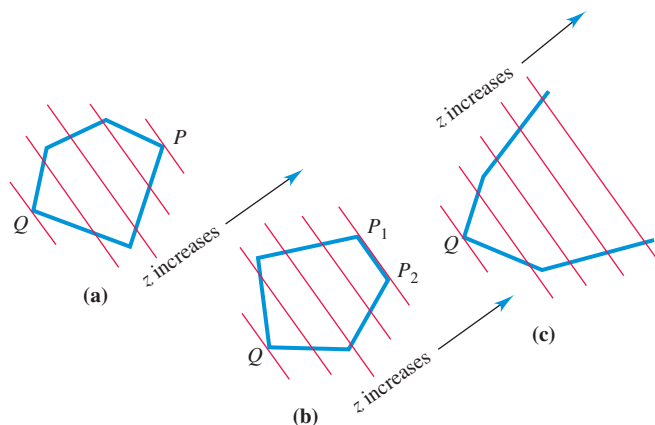


Figure 7.18

The preceding discussion suggests the **corner point theorem**.

Corner Point Theorem

If the feasible region is bounded, then the objective function has both a maximum and a minimum value, and each occurs at one or more corner points.

If the feasible region is unbounded, the objective function may not have a maximum or minimum. But if a maximum or minimum value exists, it will occur at one or more corner points.

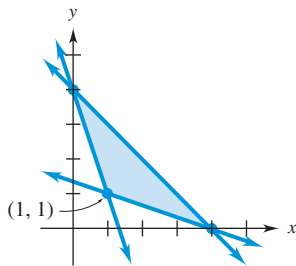
This theorem simplifies the job of finding an optimum value. First, graph the feasible region and find all corner points. Then test each point in the objective function. Finally, identify the corner point producing the optimum solution.

With the theorem, the problem in Example 1 could have been solved by identifying the five corner points of Figure 7.16: $(0, 1)$, $(0, 2)$, $(.5, 2.25)$, $(2, 0)$, and $(1, 0)$. Then, substituting each of these points into the objective function $z = 2x + 5y$ would identify the corner points that produce the maximum and minimum values of z .

Corner Point	Value of $z = 2x + 5y$
$(0, 1)$	$2(0) + 5(1) = 5$
$(0, 2)$	$2(0) + 5(2) = 10$
$(.5, 2.25)$	$2(.5) + 5(2.25) = 12.25$ (maximum)
$(2, 0)$	$2(2) + 5(0) = 4$
$(1, 0)$	$2(1) + 5(0) = 2$ (minimum)

✓ Checkpoint 2

- (a) Identify the corner points in the given graph.



- (b) Which corner point would minimize $z = 2x + 3y$?

From these results, the corner point $(.5, 2.25)$ yields the maximum value of 12.25 and the corner point $(1, 0)$ gives the minimum value of 2. These are the same values found earlier. ✓₂

A summary of the steps for solving a linear programming problem by the graphical method is given here.

Solving a Linear Programming Problem Graphically

1. Write the objective function and all necessary constraints.
2. Graph the feasible region.
3. Determine the coordinates of each of the corner points.
4. Find the value of the objective function at each corner point.
5. If the feasible region is bounded, the solution is given by the corner point producing the optimum value of the objective function.
6. If the feasible region is an unbounded region in the first quadrant and both coefficients of the objective function are positive,* then the minimum value of the objective function occurs at a corner point and there is no maximum value.

*This is the only case of an unbounded region that occurs in the applications considered here.

Example 2

Sketch the feasible region for the following set of constraints:

$$\begin{aligned} 3y - 2x &\geq 0 \\ y + 8x &\leq 52 \\ y - 2x &\leq 2 \\ x &\geq 3. \end{aligned}$$

Then find the maximum and minimum values of the objective function $z = 5x + 2y$.**Solution** Graph the feasible region, as in Figure 7.19. To find the corner points, you must solve these four systems of equations:

A	B	C	D
$y - 2x = 2$	$3y - 2x = 0$	$3y - 2x = 0$	$y - 2x = 2$
$x = 3$	$x = 3$	$y + 8x = 52$	$y + 8x = 52$

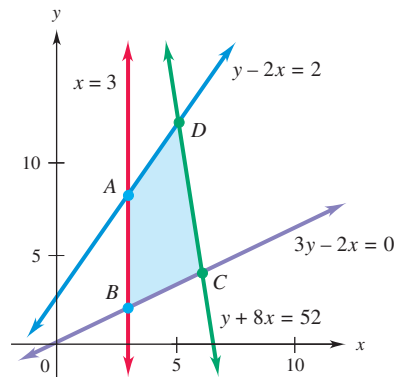
The first two systems are easily solved by substitution, which shows that $A = (3, 8)$ and $B = (3, 2)$. The other two systems can be solved either graphically (as in Figure 7.20) or algebraically (see Checkpoint 3). Hence, $C = (6, 4)$ and $D = (5, 12)$. **Checkpoint 3**Use the elimination method (see Section 6.1) to solve the last system and find the coordinates of D in Example 2.

Figure 7.19

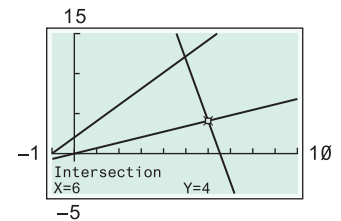
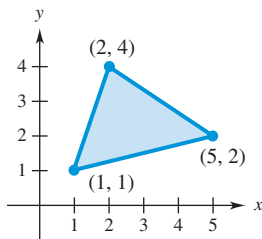


Figure 7.20

Checkpoint 4

Use the region of feasible solutions in the accompanying sketch to find the given values.



- (a) The values of x and y that maximize $z = 2x - y$
- (b) The maximum value of $z = 2x - y$
- (c) The values of x and y that minimize $z = 4x + 3y$
- (d) The minimum value of $z = 4x + 3y$

Use the corner points from the graph to find the maximum and minimum values of the objective function.

Corner Point	Value of $z = 5x + 2y$
$(3, 8)$	$5(3) + 2(8) = 31$
$(3, 2)$	$5(3) + 2(2) = 19$ (minimum)
$(6, 4)$	$5(6) + 2(4) = 38$
$(5, 12)$	$5(5) + 2(12) = 49$ (maximum)

The minimum value of $z = 5x + 2y$ is 19, at the corner point $(3, 2)$. The maximum value is 49, at $(5, 12)$. **Example 3**

Solve the following linear programming problem:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Minimize} \quad & z = x + 2y \\ \text{subject to} \quad & x + y \leq 10 \\ & 3x + 2y \geq 6 \\ & x \geq 0, y \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

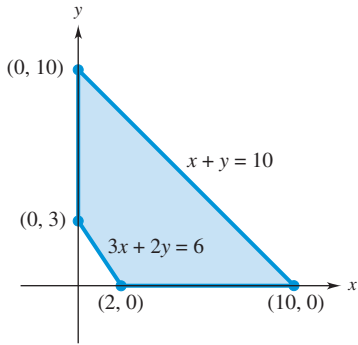


Figure 7.21

Solution The feasible region is shown in Figure 7.21.

From the figure, the corner points are (0, 3), (0, 10), (10, 0), and (2, 0). These corner points give the following values of z .

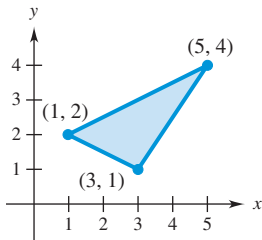
Corner Point	Value of $z = x + 2y$
(0, 3)	$0 + 2(3) = 6$
(0, 10)	$0 + 2(10) = 20$
(10, 0)	$10 + 2(0) = 10$
(2, 0)	$2 + 2(0) = 2$ (minimum)

The minimum value of z is 2; it occurs at (2, 0).

Checkpoint 5

The given sketch shows a feasible region. Let $z = x + 3y$. Use the sketch to find the values of x and y that

- (a) minimize z ;
- (b) maximize z .



Example 4

Solve the following linear programming problem:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Minimize } & z = 2x + 4y \\ \text{subject to } & x + 2y \geq 10 \\ & 3x + y \geq 10 \\ & x \geq 0, y \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Solution Figure 7.22 shows the hand-drawn graph with corner points (0, 10), (2, 4), and (10, 0), as well as the calculator graph with the corner point (2, 4). Find the value of z for each point.

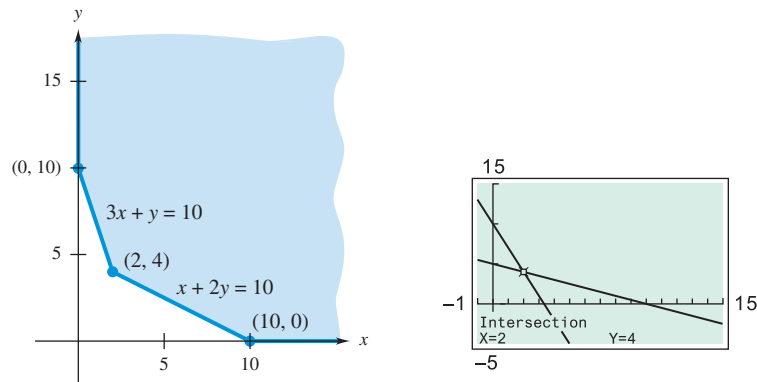


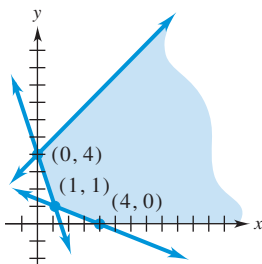
Figure 7.22

Corner Point	Value of $z = 2x + 4y$
(0, 10)	$2(0) + 4(10) = 40$
(2, 4)	$2(2) + 4(4) = 20$ (minimum)
(10, 0)	$2(10) + 4(0) = 20$ (minimum)

In this case, both (2, 4) and (10, 0), as well as all the points on the boundary line between them, give the same optimum value of z . So there is an infinite number of equally “good” values of x and y that give the same minimum value of the objective function $z = 2x + 4y$. The minimum value is 20.

Checkpoint 6

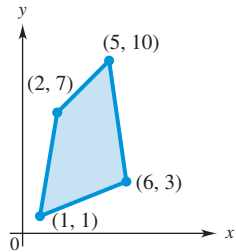
The sketch shows a region of feasible solutions. From the sketch, decide what ordered pair would minimize $z = 2x + 4y$.



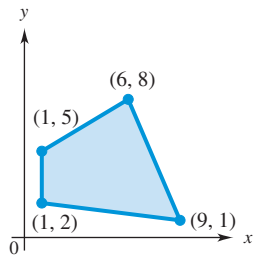
7.2 Exercises

Exercises 1–6 show regions of feasible solutions. Use these regions to find maximum and minimum values of each given objective function. (See Examples 1 and 2.)

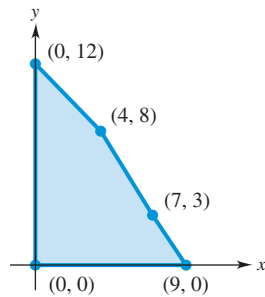
1. $z = 6x + y$



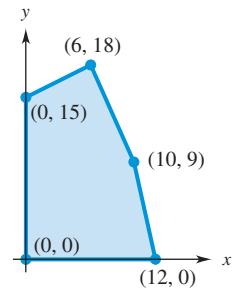
2. $z = 4x + y$



3. $z = .3x + .5y$



4. $z = .35x + 1.25y$

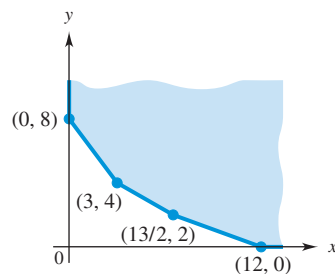


5. (a) $z = x + 5y$

(b) $z = 2x + 3y$

(c) $z = 2x + 4y$

(d) $z = 4x + y$

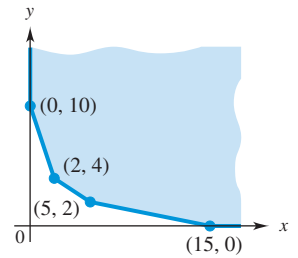


6. (a) $z = 5x + 2y$

(b) $z = 5x + 6y$

(c) $z = x + 2y$

(d) $z = x + y$



Use graphical methods to solve Exercises 7–12. (See Examples 2–4.)

7. Maximize $z = 4x + 3y$
 subject to $2x + 3y \leq 6$
 $4x + y \leq 6$
 $x \geq 0, y \geq 0$.

8. Minimize $z = x + 3y$
 subject to $2x + y \leq 10$
 $5x + 2y \geq 20$
 $-x + 2y \geq 0$
 $x \geq 0, y \geq 0$.

9. Minimize $z = 2x + y$
 subject to $3x - y \geq 12$
 $x + y \leq 15$
 $x \geq 2, y \geq 3$.

10. Maximize $z = x + 3y$
 subject to $2x + 3y \leq 100$
 $5x + 4y \leq 200$
 $x \geq 10, y \geq 20$.

11. Maximize $z = 5x + y$
 subject to $x - y \leq 10$
 $5x + 3y \leq 75$
 $x \geq 0, y \geq 0$.

12. Maximize $z = 4x + 5y$
 subject to $10x - 5y \leq 100$
 $20x + 10y \geq 150$
 $x \geq 0, y \geq 0$.

Find the minimum and maximum values of $z = 3x + 4y$ (if possible) for each of the given sets of constraints. (See Examples 2–4.)

13. $3x + 2y \geq 6$
 $x + 2y \geq 4$
 $x \geq 0, y \geq 0$

14. $2x + y \leq 20$
 $10x + y \geq 36$
 $2x + 5y \geq 36$

15. $x + y \leq 6$
 $-x + y \leq 2$
 $2x - y \leq 8$

16. $-x + 2y \leq 6$
 $3x + y \geq 3$
 $x \geq 0, y \geq 0$

17. Find values of $x \geq 0$ and $y \geq 0$ that maximize $z = 10x + 12y$, subject to each of the following sets of constraints.

- (a) $x + y \leq 20$
 $x + 3y \leq 24$
 (c) $x + 2y \geq 10$
 $2x + y \geq 12$
 $x - y \leq 8$

18. Find values of $x \geq 0$ and $y \geq 0$ that minimize $z = 3x + 2y$, subject to each of the following sets of constraints.

- (a) $10x + 7y \leq 42$
 $4x + 10y \geq 35$
 (c) $2x + 5y \geq 22$
 $4x + 3y \leq 28$
 $2x + 2y \leq 17$

19. Explain why it is impossible to maximize the function $z = 3x + 4y$ subject to the constraints

- $x + y \geq 8$
 $2x + y \leq 10$
 $x + 2y \leq 8$
 $x \geq 0, y \geq 0$.

20. You are given the following multiple-choice linear programming problem.*

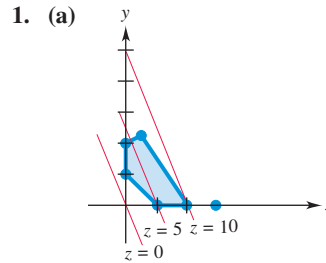
Maximize $z = c_1x_1 + c_2x_2$
 subject to $2x_1 + x_2 \leq 11$
 $-x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 2$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.

*Problem from "Course 130 Examination Operations Research" of the Education and Examination Committee of the Society of Actuaries. Reprinted by permission of the Society of Actuaries.

If $c_2 > 0$, determine the range of c_1/c_2 for which $(x_1, x_2) = (4, 3)$ is an optimal solution.

- (a) $[-2, 1/2]$
 (b) $[-1/2, 2]$
 (c) $[-11, -1]$
 (d) $[1, 11]$
 (e) $[-11, 11]$

Checkpoint Answers



- (b) $(2, 0)$
 2. (a) $(0, 4), (1, 1), (4, 0)$
 (b) $(1, 1)$
 3. $D = (5, 12)$
 4. (a) $(5, 2)$ (b) 8
 (c) $(1, 1)$ (d) 7
 5. (a) $(3, 1)$ (b) $(5, 4)$
 6. $(1, 1)$

7.3 Applications of Linear Programming

In this section, we show several applications of linear programming with two variables.

Example 1 Business An office manager needs to purchase new filing cabinets. He knows that Ace cabinets cost \$40 each, require 6 square feet of floor space, and hold 8 cubic feet of files. On the other hand, each Excello cabinet costs \$80, requires 8 square feet of floor space, and holds 12 cubic feet. His budget permits him to spend no more than \$560, while the office has room for no more than 72 square feet of cabinets. The manager desires the greatest storage capacity within the limitations imposed by funds and space. How many of each type of cabinet should he buy?

Solution Let x represent the number of Ace cabinets to be bought, and let y represent the number of Excello cabinets. The information given in the problem can be summarized as follows.

	Number	Cost of Each	Space Required	Storage Capacity
Ace	x	\$40	6 sq ft	8 cu ft
Excello	y	\$80	8 sq ft	12 cu ft
Maximum Available		\$560	72 sq ft	

The constraints imposed by cost and space are

$$40x + 80y \leq 560 \quad \text{Cost}$$

$$6x + 8y \leq 72. \quad \text{Floor space}$$

The number of cabinets cannot be negative, so $x \geq 0$ and $y \geq 0$. The objective function to be maximized gives the amount of storage capacity provided by some combination of Ace and Excello cabinets. From the information in the chart, the objective function is

$$z = \text{Storage capacity} = 8x + 12y.$$

In sum, the given problem has produced the following linear programming problem:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Maximize } z = 8x + 12y \\ &\text{subject to } 40x + 80y \leq 560 \\ &\quad \quad \quad 6x + 8y \leq 72 \\ &\quad \quad \quad x \geq 0, y \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

A graph of the feasible region is shown in Figure 7.23. Three of the corner points can be identified from the graph as $(0, 0)$, $(0, 7)$, and $(12, 0)$. The fourth corner point, labeled Q in the figure, can be found algebraically or with a graphing calculator to be $(8, 3)$. ✓₁

✓ **Checkpoint 1**

Find the corner point labeled P on the region of feasible solutions in the given graph.

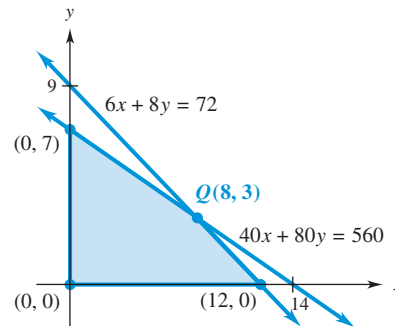
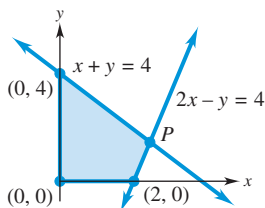


Figure 7.23

Use the corner point theorem to find the maximum value of z .

Corner Point	Value of $z = 8x + 12y$
$(0, 0)$	0
$(0, 7)$	84
$(8, 3)$	100 (maximum)
$(12, 0)$	96

✓ **Checkpoint 2**

A popular cereal combines oats and corn. At least 27 tons of the cereal are to be made. For the best flavor, the amount of corn should be no more than twice the amount of oats. Oats cost \$300 per ton, and corn costs \$200 per ton. How much of each grain should be used to minimize the cost?

- Make a chart to organize the information given in the problem.
- Write an equation for the objective function.
- Write four inequalities for the constraints.

The objective function, which represents storage space, is maximized when $x = 8$ and $y = 3$. The manager should buy 8 Ace cabinets and 3 Excello cabinets. ✓₂

Example 2 Health Certain laboratory animals must have at least 30 grams of protein and at least 20 grams of fat per feeding period. These nutrients come from food A, which costs 18¢ per unit and supplies 2 grams of protein and 4 of fat, and food B, with 6 grams of protein and 2 of fat, costing 12¢ per unit. Food B is bought under a long-term contract requiring that at least 2 units of B be used per serving. How much of each food must be bought to produce the minimum cost per serving?

Solution Let x represent the amount of food A needed and y the amount of food B. Use the given information to produce the following table.

Food	Number of Units	Grams of Protein	Grams of Fat	Cost
A	x	2	4	18¢
B	y	6	2	12¢
Minimum Required		30	20	

Use the table to develop the linear programming problem. Since the animals must have *at least* 30 grams of protein and 20 grams of fat, use \geq in the constraint inequalities for protein and fat. The long-term contract provides a constraint not shown in the table, namely, $y \geq 2$. So we have the following problem:

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 \text{Minimize} & z = .18x + .12y & \text{Cost} \\
 \text{subject to} & 2x + 6y \geq 30 & \text{Protein} \\
 & 4x + 2y \geq 20 & \text{Fat} \\
 & y \geq 2 & \text{Contract} \\
 & x \geq 0, y \geq 0. &
 \end{array}$$

(The constraint $y \geq 0$ is redundant because of the constraint $y \geq 2$.) A graph of the feasible region with the corner points identified is shown in Figure 7.24.

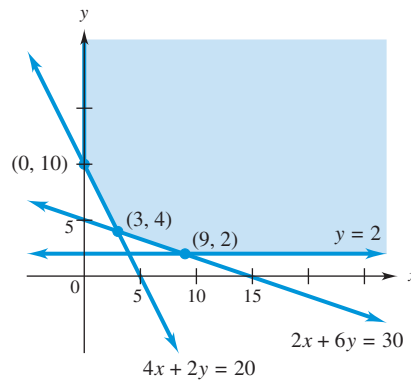



Figure 7.24

Use the corner point theorem to find the minimum value of z as shown in the table.

Corner Points	$z = .18x + .12y$
(0, 10)	$.18(0) + .12(10) = 1.20$
(3, 4)	$.18(3) + .12(4) = 1.02$ (minimum)
(9, 2)	$.18(9) + .12(2) = 1.86$

The minimum value of 1.02 occurs at (3, 4). Thus, 3 units of food A and 4 units of food B will produce a minimum cost of \$1.02 per serving. 

Checkpoint 3

Use the information in Checkpoint 2 to do the following.

- Graph the feasible region and find the corner points.
- Determine the minimum value of the objective function and the point where it occurs.
- Is there a maximum cost?

The feasible region in Figure 7.24 is an unbounded one: The region extends indefinitely to the upper right. With this region, it would not be possible to *maximize* the objective function, because the total cost of the food could always be increased by encouraging the animals to eat more.

One measure of the risk involved in investing in a stock or mutual fund is called the standard deviation. The standard deviation measures the volatility of investment returns relative to an historical average. If the return of an investment tool fluctuates a great deal from the historical average return, then there will be a higher standard deviation value for that stock. If an investment tool's value stays near the historical average, then it will have a small standard

deviation value. Thus, a higher standard deviation for an investment tool can be one measure of higher risk. Investors often wish to obtain the highest profit while minimizing risk.

Example 3 Finance Carolyn Behr-Jerome wants to invest up to \$5000 in stocks. The share price for the Costco Whole Corporation (COST) is \$108, and it has a standard deviation value of 15.9. The share price for CVS Caremark Corporation (CVS) is \$59, and the standard deviation value is 19.5. Based on the average of 10-year returns, Costco would produce in a year a profit of \$15 per share and CVS would produce a profit of \$10 a share. Carolyn would like to obtain at least \$800 in profit. How many shares of each stock should she purchase to minimize the risk as measured by the standard deviation? What is the minimum value of the risk? (Data from: www.morningstar.com and www.abg-analytics.com as of April 2013.)

Solution Let x represent the number of shares of Costco stock to be purchased, and let y be the number of shares of CVS stock to be purchased. The information in the problem can be summarized as follows:

	Number of Shares	Cost of Each	Profit	Risk
Costco	x	\$108	\$15	15.9
CVS	y	\$59	\$10	19.5
Constraints		\$5000	\$800	

The constraints imposed by the cost of the shares and the profits are

$$108x + 59y \leq 5000$$

$$15x + 10y \geq 800.$$

The number of stocks to be purchased cannot be negative, so $x \geq 0$ and $y \geq 0$. The objective function to be minimized gives the amount of risk provided by some combination of shares in Costco and CVS stocks. From the information in the chart, the objective function is

$$z = \text{standard deviation} = 15.9x + 19.5y.$$

In sum, the given problem has produced the following linear programming problem:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Minimize } & z = 15.9x + 19.5y \\ \text{subject to } & 108x + 59y \leq 5000 \\ & 15x + 10y \geq 800 \\ & x \geq 0, y \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

A graph of the feasible region with the corner points identified is shown in Figure 7.25.

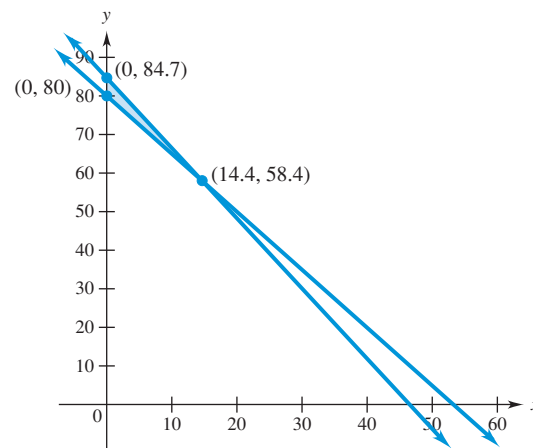


Figure 7.25

Use the corner point theorem to find the minimum value of z as shown in the table.

Corner Points	$z = 15.9x + 19.5y$
(0, 84.7)	$15.9(0) + 19.5(84.7) = 1651.65$
(0, 80)	$15.9(0) + 19.5(80) = 1560.0$
(14.4, 58.4)	$15.9(14.4) + 19.5(58.4) = 1367.76$

The minimum value of 1367.76 occurs at (14.4, 58.4). Since Carolyn must buy a whole share of stock, she would buy 14 shares of Costco stock and 58 shares of CVS stock.

7.3 Exercises

Write the constraints in Exercises 1–4 as linear inequalities and identify all variables used. In some instances, not all of the information is needed to write the constraints. (See Examples 1–3.)

1. A canoe requires 8 hours of fabrication and a rowboat 5 hours. The fabrication department has at most 110 hours of labor available each week.
2. Doug Gilbert needs at least 2800 milligrams of vitamin C per day. Each Supervite pill provides 250 milligrams, and each Vitahealth pill provides 350 milligrams.
3. A candidate can afford to spend no more than \$9500 on radio and TV advertising. Each radio spot costs \$250, and each TV ad costs \$750.
4. A hospital dietician has two meal choices: one for patients on solid food that costs \$2.75 and one for patients on liquids that costs \$3.75. There is a maximum of 600 patients in the hospital.

Solve these linear programming problems, which are somewhat simpler than the examples in the text.

5. **Business** A chain saw requires 4 hours of assembly and a wood chipper 6 hours. A maximum of 48 hours of assembly time is available. The profit is \$150 on a chain saw and \$220 on a chipper. How many of each should be assembled for maximum profit?
6. **Health** Mark Donovan likes to snack frequently during the day, but he wants his snacks to provide at least 24 grams of protein per day. Each Snack-Pack provides 4 grams of protein, and each Minibite provides 1 gram. Snack-Packs cost 50 cents each and Minibites 12 cents. How many of each snack should he use to minimize his daily cost?
7. **Business** Deluxe coffee is to be mixed with regular coffee to make at least 50 pounds of a blended coffee. The mixture must contain at least 10 pounds of deluxe coffee. Deluxe coffee costs \$6 per pound and regular coffee \$5 per pound. How many pounds of each kind of coffee should be used to minimize costs?
8. **Business** The company in Exercise 1 cannot sell more than 10 canoes each week and always sells at least 6 rowboats. The profit on a canoe is \$400, and the profit on a rowboat is \$225. Assuming the same situation as in Exercise 1, how many of each should be made per week to maximize profits?

9. Kevin Chagin is an auto mechanic. He spends 3 hours when he replaces the shocks on a car and 2 hours when he replaces the brakes. He works no more than 48 hours a week. He routinely completes at least 2 shocks replacements and 6 brake replacements a week. If he charges \$500 for labor replacing shocks and \$300 in labor for replacing brakes, how many jobs of each type should he complete a week to maximize his income?
10. **Health** Doug Gilbert of Exercise 2 pays 3 cents for each Supervite pill and 4 cents for each Vitahealth pill. Because of its other ingredients, he cannot take more than 7 Supervite pills per day. Assuming the same conditions as in Example 2, how many of each pill should he take to provide the desired level of vitamin C at minimum cost?
11. **Social Science** The candidate in Exercise 3 wants to have at least 8 radio spots and at least 3 TV ads. A radio spot reaches 600 people, and a TV ad reaches 2000 people. Assuming the monetary facts given in Exercise 3, how many of each kind should be used to reach the largest number of people?
12. **Health** The hospital in Exercise 4 always has at least 100 patients on solid foods and at least 100 on liquids. Assuming the facts in Exercise 4, what number of each type of patient would minimize food costs?

Solve the following linear programming problems. (See Examples 1–3.)

13. **Health** Mike May has been told that each day he needs at least 16 units of vitamin A, at least 5 units of vitamin B-1, and at least 20 units of vitamin C. Each Brand X pill contains 8 units of vitamin A, 1 of vitamin B-1, and 2 of vitamin C, while each Brand Z pill contains 2 units of vitamin A, 1 of vitamin B-1, and 7 of vitamin C. A Brand X pill costs 15 cents, and a Brand Z pill costs 30 cents. How many pills of each brand should he buy to minimize his daily cost? What is the minimum cost?
14. **Business** The manufacturing process requires that oil refineries manufacture at least 2 gallons of gasoline for every gallon of fuel oil. To meet the winter demand for fuel oil, at least 3 million gallons a day must be produced. The demand for gasoline is no more than 12 million gallons per day. It takes .25 hour to ship each million gallons of gasoline and 1 hour to ship each million gallons of fuel oil out of the warehouse. No more than 6.6 hours are available for shipping. If the refinery sells gasoline

for \$1.25 per gallon and fuel oil for \$1 per gallon, how much of each should be produced to maximize revenue? Find the maximum revenue.

15. **Business** A machine shop manufactures two types of bolts. The bolts require time on each of three groups of machines, but the time required on each group differs, as shown in the table:

		MACHINE GROUP		
		I	II	III
Bolts	Type 1	.1 min	.1 min	.1 min
	Type 2	.1 min	.4 min	.02 min

Production schedules are made up one day at a time. In a day, there are 240, 720, and 160 minutes available, respectively, on these machines. Type 1 bolts sell for 10¢ and type 2 bolts for 12¢. How many of each type of bolt should be manufactured per day to maximize revenue? What is the maximum revenue?

16. **Health** Kim Walrath has a nutritional deficiency and is told to take at least 2400 mg of iron, 2100 mg of vitamin B-1, and 1500 mg of vitamin B-2. One Maxivite pill contains 40 mg of iron, 10 mg of vitamin B-1, and 5 mg of vitamin B-2 and costs 6¢. One Healthovite pill provides 10 mg of iron, 15 mg of vitamin B-1, and 15 mg of vitamin B-2 and costs 8¢.
- What combination of Maxivite and Healthovite pills will meet Kim's requirements at lowest cost? What is the lowest cost?
 - In your solution for part (a), does Kim receive more than the minimum amount she needs of any vitamin? If so, which vitamin is it?
 - Is there any way that Kim can avoid receiving more than the minimum she needs and still meet the other constraints and minimize the cost? Explain.
17. **Business** A greeting card manufacturer has 500 boxes of a particular card in warehouse I and 290 boxes of the same card in warehouse II. A greeting card shop in San Jose orders 350 boxes of the card, and another shop in Memphis orders 250 boxes. The shipping costs per box to these shops from the two warehouses are shown in the following table:

		DESTINATION	
		San Jose	Memphis
Warehouse	I	\$.25	\$.22
	II	\$.23	\$.21

How many boxes should be shipped to each city from each warehouse to minimize shipping costs? What is the minimum cost? (*Hint:* Use x , $350 - x$, y , and $250 - y$ as the variables.)

18. **Business** *Hotnews Magazine* publishes a U.S. and a Canadian edition each week. There are 30,000 subscribers in the United States and 20,000 in Canada. Other copies are sold at newsstands. Postage and shipping costs average \$80 per thousand copies for the United States and \$60 per thousand copies for Canada. Surveys show that no more than 120,000 copies of

each issue can be sold (including subscriptions) and that the number of copies of the Canadian edition should not exceed twice the number of copies of the U.S. edition. The publisher can spend at most \$8400 a month on postage and shipping. If the profit is \$200 for each thousand copies of the U.S. edition and \$150 for each thousand copies of the Canadian edition, how many copies of each version should be printed to earn as large a profit as possible? What is that profit?

19. **Finance** A pension fund manager decides to invest at most \$50 million in U.S. Treasury Bonds paying 4% annual interest and in mutual funds paying 6% annual interest. He plans to invest at least \$20 million in bonds and at least \$6 million in mutual funds. Bonds have an initial fee of \$300 per million dollars, while the fee for mutual funds is \$100 per million. The fund manager is allowed to spend no more than \$8400 on fees. How much should be invested in each to maximize annual interest? What is the maximum annual interest?
20. **Natural Science** A certain predator requires at least 10 units of protein and 8 units of fat per day. One prey of Species I provides 5 units of protein and 2 units of fat; one prey of Species II provides 3 units of protein and 4 units of fat. Capturing and digesting each Species II prey requires 3 units of energy, and capturing and digesting each Species I prey requires 2 units of energy. How many of each prey would meet the predator's daily food requirements with the least expenditure of energy? Are the answers reasonable? How could they be interpreted?
21. **Social Science** Students at Upscale U. are required to take at least 4 humanities and 4 science courses. The maximum allowable number of science courses is 12. Each humanities course carries 4 credits and each science course 5 credits. The total number of credits in science and humanities cannot exceed 92. Quality points for each course are assigned in the usual way: the number of credit hours times 4 for an A grade, times 3 for a B grade, and times 2 for a C grade. Susan Katz expects to get B's in all her science courses. She expects to get C's in half her humanities courses, B's in one-fourth of them, and A's in the rest. Under these assumptions, how many courses of each kind should she take in order to earn the maximum possible number of quality points?
22. **Social Science** In Exercise 21, find Susan's grade point average (the total number of quality points divided by the total number of credit hours) at each corner point of the feasible region. Does the distribution of courses that produces the highest number of quality points also yield the highest grade point average? Is this a contradiction?
23. **Finance** The ClearBridge Aggressive Growth Fund sells at \$162 a share and has a 3-year average annual return of \$30 per share. The risk measure of standard deviation is 19.4. The American Century Mid Cap Fund sells at \$12 a share and has a 3-year average annual return of \$2 a share. The risk measure of standard deviation is 13.7. Joe Burke wants to spend no more than \$9000 investing in these two funds, but he wants to obtain at least \$1600 in annual revenue. Joe also wants to minimize his risk. Determine how many shares of each stock Joe should buy. (Data from: www.morningstar.com as of May 2013.)
24. **Finance** The John Hancock III Disciplined Value Mid Cap A Fund sells at \$15 a share and has a 3-year average annual return

of \$2 per share. The risk measure of standard deviation is 17.6. The HighMark Geneva Small Cap Fund sells at \$36 a share and has a 3-year average annual return of \$6 a share. The risk measure of standard deviation is 16.7. Sandy Grady wants to spend no more than \$6000 investing in these two funds, but she wants to obtain at least \$600 in annual revenue. Sandy also wants to minimize her risk. Determine how many shares of each stock Sandy should buy. (Data from: www.morningstar.com as of May 2013.)

25. **Finance** The Franklin MicroCap Value ADV Fund sells at \$36 a share and has a 3-year average annual return of \$3 per share. The risk measure of standard deviation is 17.1. The Delaware Select Growth Fund sells at \$46 a share and has a 3-year average annual return of \$8 a share. The risk measure of standard deviation is 15.5. Sally Burkhardt wants to spend no more than \$8000 investing in these two funds, but she wants to obtain at least \$800 in annual revenue. Sally also wants to minimize her risk. Determine how many shares of each stock Sally should buy. (Data from: www.morningstar.com as of May 2013.)
26. **Finance** The Wells Fargo Advantage Growth A Fund sells at \$43 a share and has a 3-year average annual return of \$7 per share. The risk measure of standard deviation is 17.4. The Nuveen Symphony Optimized Alpha Fund sells at \$24 a share and has a 3-year average annual return of \$3 a share. The risk measure of standard deviation is 13.0. Robert Cenni wants to spend no more than \$75,000 investing in these two funds, but he wants to obtain at least \$11,000 in annual revenue. Robert also wants to minimize his risk. Determine how many shares of each stock Robert should buy. (Data from: www.morningstar.com as of May 2013.)

*The importance of linear programming is shown by the inclusion of linear programming problems on most qualification examinations for Certified Public Accountants. Exercises 27–29 are reprinted from one such examination.**

The Random Company manufactures two products: Zeta and Beta. Each product must pass through two processing operations. All materials are introduced at the start of Process No. 1. There are no work-in-process inventories. Random may produce either one product exclusively or various combinations of both products, subject to the following constraints:

	Process No. 1	Process No. 2	Contribution Margin per Unit
Hours required to produce 1 unit of:			
Zeta	1 hour	1 hour	\$4.00
Beta	2 hours	3 hours	\$5.25
Total capacity in hours per day	1000 hours	1275 hours	

A shortage of technical labor has limited Beta production to 400 units per day. There are no constraints on the production of Zeta other than the hour constraints shown in the schedule. Assume that all the relationships between capacity and production are linear.

27. Given the objective to maximize total contribution margin, what is the production constraint for Process No. 1?
- Zeta + Beta ≤ 1000
 - Zeta + 2 Beta ≤ 1000
 - Zeta + Beta ≥ 1000
 - Zeta + 2 Beta ≥ 1000
28. Given the objective to maximize total contribution margin, what is the labor constraint for production of Beta?
- Beta ≤ 400
 - Beta ≥ 400
 - Beta ≤ 425
 - Beta ≥ 425
29. What is the objective function of the data presented?
- Zeta + 2 Beta = \$9.25
 - \$4.00 Zeta + 3(\$5.25) Beta = total contribution margin
 - \$4.00 Zeta + \$5.25 Beta = total contribution margin
 - 2(\$4.00) Zeta + 3(\$5.25) Beta = total contribution margin

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. $(\frac{8}{3}, \frac{4}{3})$

2. (a)

	Number of Tons	Cost/Ton
Oats	x	\$300
Corn	y	\$200
	27	

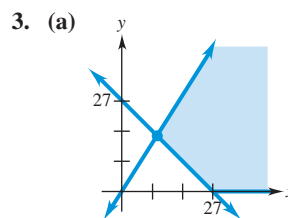
(b) $z = 300x + 200y$

(c) $x + y \geq 27$

$y \leq 2x$

$x \geq 0$

$y \geq 0$



Corner points: (27, 0), (9, 18)

(b) \$6300 at (9, 18)

(c) No

*Material from *Uniform CPA Examinations and Unofficial Answers*, copyright © 1973, 1974, 1975 by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, Inc., is reprinted with permission.

7.4 The Simplex Method: Maximization

For linear programming problems with more than two variables or with two variables and many constraints, the graphical method is usually inefficient or impossible, so the **simplex method** is used. This method, which is introduced in this section, was developed for the U.S. Air Force by George B. Danzig in 1947. It is now used in industrial planning, factory design, product distribution networks, sports scheduling, truck routing, resource allocation, and a variety of other ways.

Because the simplex method is used for problems with many variables, it usually is not convenient to use letters such as x , y , z , or w as variable names. Instead, the symbols x_1 (read “ x -sub-one”), x_2 , x_3 , and so on, are used. In the simplex method, all constraints must be expressed in the linear form

$$a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + a_3x_3 + \cdots \leq b,$$

where x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots are variables, a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots are coefficients, and b is a constant.

We first discuss the simplex method for linear programming problems such as the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } & z = 2x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3 \\ \text{subject to } & x_1 + x_2 + 4x_3 \leq 100 \\ & x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 \leq 150 \\ & 3x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 \leq 320, \\ \text{with } & x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

This example illustrates *standard maximum form*, which is defined as follows.

Standard Maximum Form

A linear programming problem is in **standard maximum form** if

1. the objective function is to be maximized;
2. all variables are nonnegative ($x_i \geq 0, i = 1, 2, 3, \dots$);
3. all constraints involve \leq ;
4. the constants on the right side in the constraints are all nonnegative ($b \geq 0$).

Problems that do not meet all of these conditions are considered in Sections 7.6 and 7.7.


The “mechanics” of the simplex method are demonstrated in Examples 1–5. Although the procedures to be followed will be made clear, as will the fact that they result in an optimal solution, the reasons these procedures are used may not be immediately apparent. Examples 6 and 7 will supply these reasons and explain the connection between the simplex method and the graphical method used in Section 7.3.

Setting up the Problem

The first step is to convert each constraint, a linear inequality, into a linear equation. This is done by adding a nonnegative variable, called a **slack variable**, to each constraint. For example, convert the inequality $x_1 + x_2 \leq 10$ into an equation by adding the slack variable s_1 , to get

$$x_1 + x_2 + s_1 = 10, \quad \text{where } s_1 \geq 0.$$

The inequality $x_1 + x_2 \leq 10$ says that the sum $x_1 + x_2$ is less than or equal to 10. The variable s_1 “takes up any slack” and represents the amount by which $x_1 + x_2$ fails to equal 10. For example, if $x_1 + x_2$ equals 8, then s_1 is 2. If $x_1 + x_2 = 10$, the value of s_1 is 0.

 **CAUTION** A different slack variable must be used for each constraint.

Example 1 Restate the following linear programming problem by introducing slack variables:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= 2x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3 \\ \text{subject to } x_1 + x_2 + 4x_3 &\leq 100 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 &\leq 150 \\ 3x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 &\leq 320, \\ \text{with } x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Solution Rewrite the three constraints as equations by introducing nonnegative slack variables $s_1, s_2,$ and s_3 , one for each constraint. Then the problem can be restated as

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= 2x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3 \\ \text{subject to } x_1 + x_2 + 4x_3 + s_1 &= 100 && \text{Constraint 1} \\ x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 + s_2 &= 150 && \text{Constraint 2} \\ 3x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 + s_3 &= 320, && \text{Constraint 3} \\ \text{with } x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0, s_1 \geq 0, s_2 \geq 0, s_3 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 1

Rewrite the following set of constraints as equations by adding nonnegative slack variables:

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &\leq 12 \\ 2x_1 + 4x_2 &\leq 15 \\ x_2 + 3x_3 &\leq 10. \end{aligned}$$


Adding slack variables to the constraints converts a linear programming problem into a system of linear equations. These equations should have all variables on the left of the equals sign and all constants on the right. All the equations of Example 1 satisfy this condition except for the objective function, $z = 2x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3$, which may be written with all variables on the left as

$$-2x_1 - 3x_2 - x_3 + z = 0. \quad \text{Objective Function}$$

Now the equations of Example 1 (with the constraints listed first and the objective function last) can be written as the following augmented matrix.

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 4 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 100 \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 150 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 320 \\ \hline -2 & -3 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right].$$

Indicators

This matrix is the initial **simplex tableau**. Except for the last entries—the 1 and 0 on the right end—the numbers in the bottom row of a simplex tableau are called **indicators**. 

This simplex tableau represents a system of four linear equations in seven variables. Since there are more variables than equations, the system is dependent and has infinitely many solutions. Our goal is to find a solution in which all the variables are nonnegative and z is as large as possible. This will be done by using row operations to replace the given system by an equivalent one in which certain variables are eliminated from some of the equations. The process will be repeated until the optimum solution can be read from the matrix, as explained next.

Selecting the Pivot

Recall how row operations are used to eliminate variables in the Gauss–Jordan method: A particular nonzero entry in the matrix is chosen and changed to a 1; then all other entries in that column are changed to zeros. A similar process is used in the simplex method. The chosen entry is called the **pivot**. If we were interested only in solving the system, we could choose the various pivots in many different ways, as in Chapter 6. Here, however, it is not

✓ Checkpoint 2

Set up the initial simplex tableau for the following linear programming problem:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= 2x_1 + 3x_2 \\ \text{subject to } x_1 + 2x_2 &\leq 85 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 &\leq 92 \\ x_1 + 4x_2 &\leq 104, \\ \text{with } x_1 \geq 0 \text{ and } x_2 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Locate and label the indicators.

Example 3 Use the indicated pivot, 2, to perform the pivoting on the simplex tableau of Example 2:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 4 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 100 \\ 1 & \mathbf{2} & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 150 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 320 \\ \hline -2 & -3 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array}.$$

Solution Start by multiplying each entry of row 2 by $\frac{1}{2}$ in order to change the pivot to 1:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 4 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 100 \\ \frac{1}{2} & \mathbf{1} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 75 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 320 \\ \hline -2 & -3 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \quad \frac{1}{2}R_2$$

Now use row operations to make the entry in row 1, column 2, a 0:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{7}{2} & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 25 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 1 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 75 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 320 \\ \hline -2 & -3 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \quad -R_2 + R_1$$

Change the 2 in row 3, column 2, to a 0 by a similar process:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{7}{2} & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 25 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 1 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 75 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 170 \\ \hline -2 & -3 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \quad -2R_2 + R_3$$

Finally, add 3 times row 2 to the last row in order to change the indicator -3 to 0:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{7}{2} & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 25 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 1 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 75 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 170 \\ \hline -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{3}{2} & 0 & 1 & 225 \end{array} \quad 3R_2 + R_4$$

The pivoting is now complete, because the pivot column variable x_2 has been eliminated from all equations except the one represented by the pivot row. The initial simplex tableau has been replaced by a new simplex tableau, which represents an equivalent system of equations.

✓ Checkpoint 4

For the given simplex tableau,

- (a) find the pivot;
 (b) perform the pivoting and write the new tableau.

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 6 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 16 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 25 \\ \hline -1 & -4 & -3 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array}$$

CAUTION During pivoting, do not interchange rows of the matrix. Make the pivot entry 1 by multiplying the pivot row by an appropriate constant, as in Example 3. ✓₄

When at least one of the indicators in the last row of a simplex tableau is negative (as is the case with the tableau obtained in Example 3), the simplex method requires that a new pivot be selected and the pivoting be performed again. This procedure is repeated until a simplex tableau with no negative indicators in the last row is obtained or a tableau is reached in which no pivot row can be chosen.

Example 4 In the simplex tableau obtained in Example 3, select a new pivot and perform the pivoting.

Solution First, locate the pivot column by finding the most negative indicator in the last row. Then locate the pivot row by computing the necessary quotients and finding the smallest one, as shown here:

x_1	x_2	x_3	s_1	s_2	s_3	z	|		Quotients
$\frac{1}{2}$	0	$\frac{7}{2}$	1	$-\frac{1}{2}$	0	0	|	25	$\frac{25}{\frac{1}{2}} = 50$ Smallest
$\frac{1}{2}$	1	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	0	|	75	$\frac{75}{\frac{1}{2}} = 150$
2	0	0	0	-1	1	0	|	170	$\frac{170}{\frac{1}{2}} = 85$
$-\frac{1}{2}$	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	$\frac{3}{2}$	0	1	|	225	

Pivot row \longrightarrow Pivot column \longleftarrow

So the pivot is the number $\frac{1}{2}$ in row 1, column 1. Begin the pivoting by multiplying every entry in row 1 by 2. Then continue as indicated to obtain the following simplex tableau:

x_1	x_2	x_3	s_1	s_2	s_3	z	|		
1	0	7	2	-1	0	0	|	50	$2R_1$
0	1	-3	-1	1	0	0	|	50	$-\frac{1}{2}R_1 + R_2$
0	0	-14	-4	1	1	0	|	70	$-2R_1 + R_3$
0	0	4	1	1	0	1	|	250	$\frac{1}{2}R_1 + R_4$

Since there are no negative indicators in the last row, no further pivoting is necessary, and we call this the **final simplex tableau**.

Reading the Solution

The next example shows how to read an optimal solution of the original linear programming problem from the final simplex tableau.

Example 5 Solve the linear programming problem introduced in Example 1.

Solution Look at the final simplex tableau for this problem, which was obtained in Example 4:

x_1	x_2	x_3	s_1	s_2	s_3	z	|	
1	0	7	2	-1	0	0	|	50
0	1	-3	-1	1	0	0	|	50
0	0	-14	-4	1	1	0	|	70
0	0	4	1	1	0	1	|	250

The last row of this matrix represents the equation

$$4x_3 + s_1 + s_2 + z = 250, \quad \text{or equivalently,} \quad z = 250 - 4x_3 - s_1 - s_2.$$

If x_3 , s_1 , and s_2 are all 0, then the value of z is 250. If any one of x_3 , s_1 , or s_2 is positive, then z will have a smaller value than 250. (Why?) Consequently, since we want a solution for this system in which all the variables are nonnegative and z is as large as possible, we must have

$$x_3 = 0, \quad s_1 = 0, \quad s_2 = 0.$$

When these values are substituted into the first equation (represented by the first row of the final simplex tableau), the result is

$$x_1 + 7 \cdot 0 + 2 \cdot 0 - 1 \cdot 0 = 50; \quad \text{that is,} \quad x_1 = 50.$$

Similarly, substituting 0 for x_3 , s_1 , and s_2 in the last three equations represented by the final simplex tableau shows that

$$x_2 = 50, \quad s_3 = 70, \quad \text{and} \quad z = 250.$$


Therefore, the maximum value of $z = 2x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3$ occurs when

$$x_1 = 50, \quad x_2 = 50, \quad \text{and} \quad x_3 = 0,$$

in which case $z = 2 \cdot 50 + 3 \cdot 50 + 0 = 250$. (The values of the slack variables are irrelevant in stating the solution of the original problem.)

In any simplex tableau, some columns look like columns of an identity matrix (one entry is 1 and the rest are 0). The variables corresponding to these columns are called **basic variables** and the variables corresponding to the other columns are referred to as **nonbasic variables**. In the tableau of Example 5, for instance, the basic variables are x_1, x_2, s_3 , and z (shown in blue), and the nonbasic variables are x_3, s_1 , and s_2 :

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 0 & 7 & 2 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 50 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 50 \\ 0 & 0 & -14 & -4 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 70 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 4 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 250 \end{array}.$$


The optimal solution in Example 5 was obtained from the final simplex tableau by setting the nonbasic variables equal to 0 and solving for the basic variables. Furthermore, the values of the basic variables are easy to read from the matrix: Find the 1 in the column representing a basic variable; the last entry in that row is the value of that basic variable in the optimal solution. In particular, *the entry in the lower right-hand corner of the final simplex tableau is the maximum value of z .* 

Checkpoint 5

A linear programming problem with slack variables s_1 and s_2 has the following final simplex tableau:

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & z & \\ \hline 0 & 3 & 1 & 5 & 2 & 0 & 9 \\ 1 & -2 & 0 & 4 & 1 & 0 & 6 \\ \hline 0 & 5 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 21 \end{array}.$$

What is the optimal solution?


 **CAUTION** If there are two identical columns in a tableau, each of which is a column in an identity matrix, only one of the variables corresponding to these columns can be a basic variable. The other is treated as a nonbasic variable. You may choose either one to be the basic variable, unless one of them is z , in which case z must be the basic variable.

The steps involved in solving a standard maximum linear programming problem by the simplex method have been illustrated in Examples 1–5 and are summarized here.

Simplex Method

1. Determine the objective function.
2. Write down all necessary constraints.
3. Convert each constraint into an equation by adding a slack variable.
4. Set up the initial simplex tableau.

5. Locate the most negative indicator. If there are two such indicators, choose one. This indicator determines the pivot column.
6. Use the positive entries in the pivot column to form the quotients necessary for determining the pivot. If there are no positive entries in the pivot column, no maximum solution exists. If two quotients are equally the smallest, let either determine the pivot.*
7. Multiply every entry in the pivot row by the reciprocal of the pivot to change the pivot to 1. Then use row operations to change all other entries in the pivot column to 0 by adding suitable multiples of the pivot row to the other rows.
8. If the indicators are all positive or 0, you have found the final tableau. If not, go back to Step 5 and repeat the process until a tableau with no negative indicators is obtained.†
9. In the final tableau, the *basic* variables correspond to the columns that have one entry of 1 and the rest 0. The *nonbasic* variables correspond to the other columns. Set each nonbasic variable equal to 0 and solve the system for the basic variables. The maximum value of the objective function is the number in the lower right-hand corner of the final tableau.

The solution found by the simplex method may not be unique, especially when choices are possible in steps 5, 6, or 9. There may be other solutions that produce the same maximum value of the objective function. (See Exercises 37 and 38 at the end of this section.) 

Checkpoint 6

A linear programming problem has the following initial tableau:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 40 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 24 \\ \hline -300 & -200 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right].$$

Use the simplex method to solve the problem.

The Simplex Method with Technology

Unless indicated otherwise, the simplex method is carried out by hand in the examples and exercises of this chapter, so you can see how and why it works. Once you are familiar with the method, however,

we strongly recommend that you use technology to apply the simplex method.

Doing so will eliminate errors that occur in manual computations. It will also give you a better idea of how the simplex method is used in the real world, where applications involve so many variables and constraints that the manual approach is impractical. Readily available technology includes the following:

Graphing Calculators As noted in the Graphing Calculator Appendix of this book, a simplex program exists. It pauses after each round of pivoting, so you can examine the intermediate simplex tableau.

Spreadsheets Most spreadsheets have a built-in simplex method program. Figure 7.26, on the next page, shows the Solver of Microsoft Excel (Microsoft Corporation Excel © 2013). Spreadsheets also provide a sensitivity analysis, which allows you to see how much the constraints can be varied without changing the maximal solution.

Other Computer Programs A variety of simplex method programs, many of which are free, can be downloaded on the Internet. Google “simplex method program” for some possibilities.

*It may be that the first choice of a pivot does not produce a solution. In that case, try the other choice.

†Some special circumstances are noted at the end of Section 7.7.

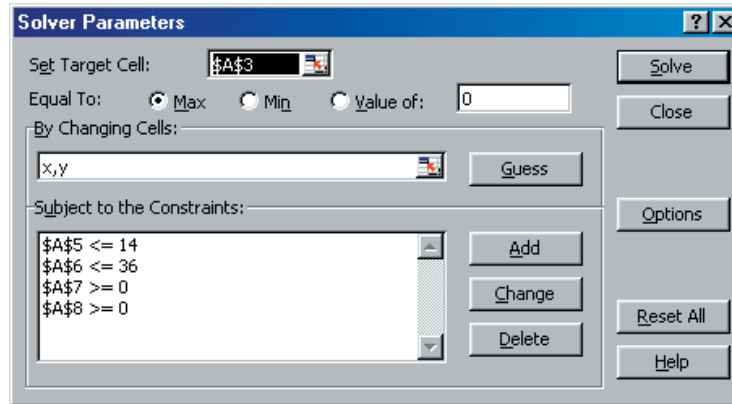


Figure 7.26

Geometric Interpretation of the Simplex Method

Although it may not be immediately apparent, the simplex method is based on the same geometrical considerations as the graphical method. This can be seen by looking at a problem that can be readily solved by both methods.

Example 6 In Example 1 of Section 7.3, the following problem was solved graphically (using x and y instead of x_1 and x_2 , respectively):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= 8x_1 + 12x_2 \\ \text{subject to } 40x_1 + 80x_2 &\leq 560 \\ 6x_1 + 8x_2 &\leq 72 \\ x_1 \geq 0, x_2 &\geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Graphing the feasible region (Figure 7.27) and evaluating z at each corner point shows that the maximum value of z occurs at $(8, 3)$.

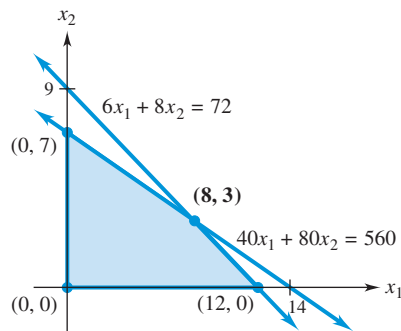


Figure 7.27

Corner Point	Value of $z = 8x_1 + 12x_2$
(0, 0)	0
(0, 7)	84
(8, 3)	100 (maximum)
(12, 0)	96

To solve the same problem by the simplex method, add a slack variable to each constraint:

$$\begin{aligned} 40x_1 + 80x_2 + s_1 &= 560 \\ 6x_1 + 8x_2 + s_2 &= 72. \end{aligned}$$

Then write the initial simplex tableau:

$$\begin{array}{c|cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & z & \\ \hline 40 & 80 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 560 \\ 6 & 8 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 72 \\ \hline -8 & -12 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array}$$

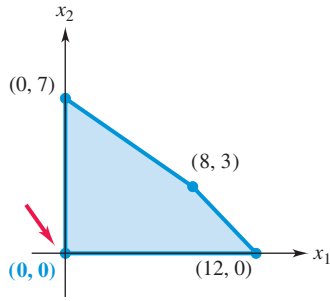


Figure 7.28

In this tableau, the basic variables are $s_1, s_2,$ and z . (Why?) By setting the nonbasic variables (namely, x_1 and x_2) equal to 0 and solving for the basic variables, we obtain the following solution (which will be called a **basic feasible solution**):

$$x_1 = 0, \quad x_2 = 0, \quad s_1 = 560, \quad s_2 = 72, \quad \text{and} \quad z = 0.$$

Since $x_1 = 0$ and $x_2 = 0$, this solution corresponds to the corner point at the origin in the graphical solution (Figure 7.28).

The basic feasible solution $(0, 0)$ given by the initial simplex tableau has $z = 0$, which is obviously not maximal. Each round of pivoting in the simplex method will produce another corner point, with a larger value of z , until we reach a corner point that provides the maximum solution.

The most negative indicator in the initial tableau is -12 , and it determines the pivot column. Then we form the necessary quotients and determine the pivot row:

	x_1	x_2	s_1	s_2	z	|		Quotients
Pivot row \rightarrow	40	80	1	0	0	|	560	$560/80 = 7$ smallest
	6	8	0	1	0	|	72	$72/8 = 9$
	-8	-12	0	0	1	|	0	

\uparrow Pivot column

Thus, the pivot is 80 in row 1, column 2. Performing the pivoting leads to this tableau:

	x_1	x_2	s_1	s_2	z	|		
	$\frac{1}{2}$	1	$\frac{1}{80}$	0	0	|	7	$\frac{1}{80}R_1$
	2	0	$-\frac{1}{10}$	1	0	|	16	$-8R_1 + R_2$
	-2	0	$\frac{3}{20}$	0	1	|	84	$12R_1 + R_3$

The basic variables here are $x_2, s_2,$ and z , and the basic feasible solution (found by setting the nonbasic variables equal to 0 and solving for the basic variables) is

$$x_1 = 0, \quad x_2 = 7, \quad s_1 = 0, \quad s_2 = 16, \quad \text{and} \quad z = 84,$$

which corresponds to the corner point $(0, 7)$ in Figure 7.29. Note that the new value of the pivot variable x_2 is precisely the smallest quotient, 7, that was used to select the pivot row. Although this value of z is better, further improvement is possible.

Now the most negative indicator is -2 . We form the necessary quotients and determine the pivot as usual:

	x_1	x_2	s_1	s_2	z	|		Quotients
Pivot row \rightarrow	$\frac{1}{2}$	1	$\frac{1}{80}$	0	0	|	7	$\frac{7}{1/2} = 14$
	2	0	$-\frac{1}{10}$	1	0	|	16	$\frac{16}{2} = 8$ smallest
	-2	0	$\frac{3}{20}$	0	1	|	84	

\uparrow Pivot column

The pivot is 2 in row 2, column 1. Pivoting now produces the final tableau:

	x_1	x_2	s_1	s_2	z	|		
	0	1	$\frac{3}{80}$	$-\frac{1}{4}$	0	|	3	$-\frac{1}{2}R_2 + R_1$
	1	0	$-\frac{1}{20}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	0	|	8	$\frac{1}{2}R_2$
	0	0	$\frac{1}{20}$	1	1	|	100	$2R_2 + R_3$

Here, the basic feasible solution is

$$x_1 = 8, \quad x_2 = 3, \quad s_1 = 0, \quad s_2 = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad z = 100,$$

which corresponds to the corner point $(8, 3)$ in Figure 7.30. Once again, the new value of the pivot variable x_1 is the smallest quotient, 8, that was used to select the pivot. Because all the indicators in the last row of the final tableau are nonnegative, $(8, 3)$ is the maximum

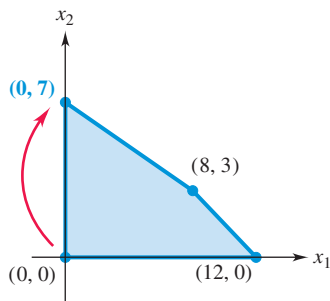


Figure 7.29

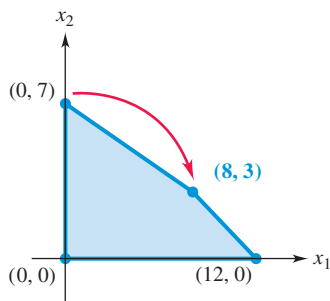


Figure 7.30

solution according to the simplex method. We know that this is the case, since this is the maximum solution found by the graphical method. An algebraic argument similar to the one in Example 5 could also be made.

As illustrated in Example 6, the basic feasible solution obtained from a simplex tableau corresponds to a corner point of the feasible region. Pivoting, which replaces one tableau with another, is a systematic way of moving from one corner point to another, each time improving the value of the objective function. The simplex method ends when a corner point that produces the maximum value of the objective function is reached (or when it becomes clear that the problem has no maximum solution).

When there are three or more variables in a linear programming problem, it may be difficult or impossible to draw a picture, but it can be proved that the optimal value of the objective function occurs at a basic feasible solution (corresponding to a corner point in the two-variable case). The simplex method provides a means of moving from one basic feasible solution to another until one that produces the optimal value of the objective function is reached.

Explanation of Pivoting

The rules for selecting the pivot in the simplex method can be understood by examining how the first pivot was chosen in Example 6.

Example 7 The initial simplex tableau of Example 6 provides a basic feasible solution with $x_1 = 0$ and $x_2 = 0$:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & z & \\ \hline 40 & 80 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 560 \\ 6 & 8 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 72 \\ \hline -8 & -12 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right].$$

This solution certainly does not give a maximum value for the objective function $z = 8x_1 + 12x_2$. Since x_2 has the largest coefficient, z will be increased most if x_2 is increased. In other words, the most negative indicator in the tableau (which corresponds to the largest coefficient in the objective function) identifies the variable that will provide the greatest change in the value of z .

To determine how much x_2 can be increased without leaving the feasible region, look at the first two equations,

$$\begin{aligned} 40x_1 + 80x_2 + s_1 &= 560 \\ 6x_1 + 8x_2 + s_2 &= 72, \end{aligned}$$

and solve for the basic variables s_1 and s_2 :

$$\begin{aligned} s_1 &= 560 - 40x_1 - 80x_2 \\ s_2 &= 72 - 6x_1 - 8x_2. \end{aligned}$$

Now x_2 is to be increased while x_1 is to keep the value 0. Hence,

$$\begin{aligned} s_1 &= 560 - 80x_2 \\ s_2 &= 72 - 8x_2. \end{aligned}$$

Since $s_1 \geq 0$ and $s_2 \geq 0$, we must have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &\leq s_1 & 0 &\leq s_2 \\ 0 &\leq 560 - 80x_2 & \text{and} & 0 \leq 72 - 8x_2 \\ 80x_2 &\leq 560 & & 8x_2 \leq 72 \\ x_2 &\leq \frac{560}{80} = 7 & & x_2 \leq \frac{72}{8} = 9. \end{aligned}$$

The right sides of these last inequalities are the quotients used to select the pivot row. Since x_2 must satisfy both inequalities, x_2 can be at most 7. In other words, the smallest quotient formed from positive entries in the pivot column identifies the value of x_2 that produces the largest change in z while remaining in the feasible region. By pivoting with the pivot determined in this way, we obtain the second tableau and a basic feasible solution in which $x_2 = 7$, as was shown in Example 6.

An analysis similar to that in Example 7 applies to each occurrence of pivoting in the simplex method. The idea is to improve the value of the objective function by adjusting one variable at a time. The most negative indicator identifies the variable that will account for the largest increase in z . The smallest quotient determines the largest value of that variable which will produce a feasible solution. Pivoting leads to a solution in which the selected variable has this largest value.

7.4 Exercises

In Exercises 1–4, (a) determine the number of slack variables needed; (b) name them; (c) use the slack variables to convert each constraint into a linear equation. (See Example 1.)

- Maximize $z = 32x_1 + 9x_2$
subject to $4x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 20$
 $5x_1 + x_2 \leq 50$
 $2x_1 + 3x_2 \leq 25$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.
- Maximize $z = 3.7x_1 + 4.3x_2$
subject to $2.4x_1 + 1.5x_2 \leq 10$
 $1.7x_1 + 1.9x_2 \leq 15$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.
- Maximize $z = 8x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3$
subject to $3x_1 - x_2 + 4x_3 \leq 95$
 $7x_1 + 6x_2 + 8x_3 \leq 118$
 $4x_1 + 5x_2 + 10x_3 \leq 220$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$.
- Maximize $z = 12x_1 + 15x_2 + 10x_3$
subject to $2x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 \leq 8$
 $x_1 + 4x_2 + 3x_3 \leq 12$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$.

Introduce slack variables as necessary and then write the initial simplex tableau for each of these linear programming problems.

- Maximize $z = 5x_1 + x_2$
subject to $2x_1 + 5x_2 \leq 6$
 $4x_1 + x_2 \leq 6$
 $5x_1 + 3x_2 \leq 15$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.
- Maximize $z = 5x_1 + 3x_2 + 7x_3$
subject to $4x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 \leq 60$
 $3x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3 \leq 24$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$.

- Maximize $z = x_1 + 5x_2 + 10x_3$
subject to $x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 \leq 10$
 $2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 8$
 $3x_1 + 4x_3 \leq 6$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$.

- Maximize $z = 5x_1 - x_2 + 3x_3$
subject to $3x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 \leq 36$
 $x_1 + 6x_2 + x_3 \leq 24$
 $x_1 - x_2 - x_3 \leq 32$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$.

Find the pivot in each of the given simplex tableaus. (See Example 2.)

- | x_1 | x_2 | x_3 | s_1 | s_2 | z | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|----|
| 2 | 2 | 0 | 3 | 1 | 0 | 15 |
| 3 | 4 | 1 | 6 | 0 | 0 | 20 |
| -2 | -3 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 10 |

- | x_1 | x_2 | x_3 | s_1 | s_2 | z | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|----|
| 0 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 0 | 5 |
| 1 | -5 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 0 | 8 |
| 0 | -2 | 0 | -3 | 1 | 1 | 10 |

- | x_1 | x_2 | x_3 | s_1 | s_2 | s_3 | z | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|----|
| 6 | 2 | 1 | 3 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 8 |
| 0 | 2 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 7 |
| 6 | 1 | 0 | 3 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 6 |
| -3 | -2 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 12 |

- | x_1 | x_2 | x_3 | s_1 | s_2 | s_3 | z | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|----|
| 0 | 2 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 0 | 3 |
| 0 | 3 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 0 | 4 |
| 1 | 4 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 5 | 0 | 5 |
| 0 | -4 | 0 | 0 | 4 | 3 | 1 | 20 |

In Exercises 13–16, use the indicated entry as the pivot and perform the pivoting. (See Examples 3 and 4.)

13.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 4 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 56 \\ 2 & \mathbf{2} & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 40 \\ \hline -1 & -3 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

14.
$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline 2 & 2 & \mathbf{1} & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 12 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 45 \\ \hline 3 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 20 \\ \hline -2 & -1 & -3 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

15.
$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 60 \\ 3 & 1 & \mathbf{2} & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 100 \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 200 \\ \hline -1 & -1 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

16.
$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline 4 & 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 22 \\ 2 & 2 & \mathbf{5} & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 28 \\ \hline 1 & 3 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 45 \\ \hline -3 & -2 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

For each simplex tableau in Exercises 17–20, (a) list the basic and the nonbasic variables, (b) find the basic feasible solution determined by setting the nonbasic variables equal to 0, and (c) decide whether this is a maximum solution. (See Examples 5 and 6.)

17.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & z & \\ \hline 3 & 2 & 0 & -3 & 1 & 0 & 29 \\ 4 & 0 & 1 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 16 \\ \hline -5 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 11 \end{array} \right]$$

18.
$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline -3 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 22 \\ 2 & 0 & -3 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 10 \\ \hline 4 & 1 & 4 & 0 & \frac{3}{4} & 0 & 0 & 17 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 120 \end{array} \right]$$

19.
$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 0 & 2 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 6 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 5 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 13 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{3}{2} & 1 & -\frac{1}{3} & 0 & 21 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 2 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 3 & 1 & 18 \end{array} \right]$$

20.
$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & x_4 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 3 & -2 & 0 & 47 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 2 & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 37 \\ \hline 3 & 5 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 6 & 0 & 43 \\ \hline 4 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 6 & 0 & 1 & 86 \end{array} \right]$$

Use the simplex method to solve Exercises 21–36.

21. Maximize $z = x_1 + 3x_2$
 subject to $x_1 + x_2 \leq 10$
 $5x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 20$
 $x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 36$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0.$

22. Maximize $z = 5x_1 + x_2$
 subject to $2x_1 + 3x_2 \leq 8$
 $4x_1 + 8x_2 \leq 12$
 $5x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 30$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0.$

23. Maximize $z = 2x_1 + x_2$
 subject to $x_1 + 3x_2 \leq 12$
 $2x_1 + x_2 \leq 10$
 $x_1 + x_2 \leq 4$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0.$

24. Maximize $z = 4x_1 + 2x_2$
 subject to $-x_1 - x_2 \leq 12$
 $3x_1 - x_2 \leq 15$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0.$

25. Maximize $z = 5x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3$
 subject to $-2x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 \leq 3$
 $x_1 - x_2 + x_3 \leq 1$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

26. Maximize $z = 3x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3$
 subject to $2x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 \leq 10$
 $x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 \leq 15$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

27. Maximize $z = 2x_1 + x_2 + x_3$
 subject to $x_1 - 3x_2 + x_3 \leq 3$
 $x_1 - 2x_2 + 2x_3 \leq 12$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

28. Maximize $z = 4x_1 + 5x_2 + x_3$
 subject to $x_1 + 2x_2 + 4x_3 \leq 10$
 $2x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 \leq 10$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

29. Maximize $z = 2x_1 + 2x_2 - 4x_3$
 subject to $3x_1 + 3x_2 - 6x_3 \leq 51$
 $5x_1 + 5x_2 + 10x_3 \leq 99$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

30. Maximize $z = 4x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3$
 subject to $x_1 + 3x_3 \leq 6$
 $6x_1 + 3x_2 + 12x_3 \leq 40$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

31. Maximize $z = 300x_1 + 200x_2 + 100x_3$
 subject to $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 100$
 $2x_1 + 3x_2 + 4x_3 \leq 320$
 $2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 160$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

32. Maximize $z = x_1 + 5x_2 - 10x_3$
 subject to $8x_1 + 4x_2 + 12x_3 \leq 18$
 $x_1 + 6x_2 + 2x_3 \leq 45$
 $5x_1 + 7x_2 + 3x_3 \leq 60$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

33. Maximize $z = 4x_1 - 3x_2 + 2x_3$
 subject to $2x_1 - x_2 + 8x_3 \leq 40$
 $4x_1 - 5x_2 + 6x_3 \leq 60$
 $2x_1 - 2x_2 + 6x_3 \leq 24$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

34. Maximize $z = 3x_1 + 2x_2 - 4x_3$
 subject to $x_1 - x_2 + x_3 \leq 10$
 $2x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 \leq 30$
 $-3x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3 \leq 40$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

35. Maximize $z = x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 + 5x_4$
 subject to $x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 + x_4 \leq 50$
 $3x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 + x_4 \leq 100$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0, x_4 \geq 0.$

36. Maximize $z = x_1 + x_2 + 4x_3 + 5x_4$
 subject to $x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 + x_4 \leq 115$
 $2x_1 + x_2 + 8x_3 + 5x_4 \leq 200$
 $x_1 + x_3 \leq 50$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0, x_4 \geq 0.$

37. The initial simplex tableau of a linear programming problem is

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 12 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 30 \\ \hline -2 & -2 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array}$$

(a) Use the simplex method to solve the problem with column 1 as the first pivot column.

- (b) Now use the simplex method to solve the problem with column 2 as the first pivot column.
 (c) Does this problem have a unique maximum solution? Why?

38. The final simplex tableau of a linear programming problem is

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 24 \\ 2 & 0 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 8 \\ \hline 4 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 40 \end{array}$$

- (a) What is the solution given by this tableau?
 (b) Even though all the indicators are nonnegative, perform one more round of pivoting on this tableau, using column 3 as the pivot column and choosing the pivot row by forming quotients in the usual way.
 (c) Show that there is more than one solution to the linear programming problem by comparing your answer in part (a) with the basic feasible solution given by the tableau found in part (b). Does it give the same value of z as the solution in part (a)?

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + s_1 = 12$
 $2x_1 + 4x_2 + s_2 = 15$
 $x_2 + 3x_3 + s_3 = 10$

2.
$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 85 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 92 \\ 1 & 4 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 104 \\ \hline -2 & -3 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array}$$

 Indicators

3. 2 (in first column)

4. (a) 2

(b)
$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & z & \\ \hline \frac{1}{2} & 1 & 3 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 8 \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & -9 & -\frac{3}{2} & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ \hline 1 & 0 & 9 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 32 \end{array}$$

5. $z = 21$ when $x_1 = 6, x_2 = 0,$ and $x_3 = 9.$

6. $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 24, s_1 = 16, s_2 = 0, z = 4800$

7.5 Maximization Applications

Applications of the simplex method are considered in this section. First, however, we make a slight change in notation. You have noticed that the column representing the variable z in a simplex tableau never changes during pivoting. (Since all the entries except the last one in this column are 0, performing row operations has no effect on these entries—

they remain 0.) Consequently, this column is unnecessary and can be omitted without causing any difficulty.

Hereafter in this text, the column corresponding to the variable z (representing the objective function) will be omitted from all simplex tableaus.

Example 1

Business A farmer has 110 acres of available land he wishes to plant with a mixture of potatoes, corn, and cabbage. It costs him \$400 to produce an acre of potatoes, \$160 to produce an acre of corn, and \$280 to produce an acre of cabbage. He has a maximum of \$20,000 to spend. He makes a profit of \$120 per acre of potatoes, \$40 per acre of corn, and \$60 per acre of cabbage.

(a) How many acres of each crop should he plant to maximize his profit?

Solution Let the number of acres allotted to each of potatoes, corn, and cabbage be x_1 , x_2 , and x_3 , respectively. Then summarize the given information as follows:

Crop	Number of Acres	Cost per Acre	Profit per Acre
Potatoes	x_1	\$400	\$120
Corn	x_2	\$160	\$ 40
Cabbage	x_3	\$280	\$ 60
Maximum Available	110	\$20,000	

The constraints can be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &\leq 110 && \text{Number of acres} \\ 400x_1 + 160x_2 + 280x_3 &\leq 20,000, && \text{Production costs} \end{aligned}$$

where x_1 , x_2 , and x_3 are all nonnegative. The first of these constraints says that $x_1 + x_2 + x_3$ is less than or perhaps equal to 110. Use s_1 as the slack variable, giving the equation

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + s_1 = 110.$$

Here, s_1 represents the amount of the farmer's 110 acres that will not be used. (s_1 may be 0 or any value up to 110.)

In the same way, the constraint $400x_1 + 160x_2 + 280x_3 \leq 20,000$ can be converted into an equation by adding a slack variable s_2 :

$$400x_1 + 160x_2 + 280x_3 + s_2 = 20,000.$$

The slack variable s_2 represents any unused portion of the farmer's \$20,000 capital. (Again, s_2 may have any value from 0 to 20,000.)

The farmer's profit on potatoes is the product of the profit per acre (\$120) and the number x_1 of acres, that is, $120x_1$. His profits on corn and cabbage are computed similarly. Hence, his total profit is given by

$$\begin{aligned} z &= \text{profit on potatoes} + \text{profit on corn} + \text{profit on cabbage} \\ z &= 120x_1 + 40x_2 + 60x_3. \end{aligned}$$

The linear programming problem can now be stated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } & z = 120x_1 + 40x_2 + 60x_3 \\ \text{subject to } & x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + s_1 = 110 \\ & 400x_1 + 160x_2 + 280x_3 + s_2 = 20,000, \\ \text{with } & x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0, s_1 \geq 0, s_2 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

The initial simplex tableau (without the z column) is

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 110 \\ 400 & 160 & 280 & 0 & 1 & 20,000 \\ \hline -120 & -40 & -60 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right].$$

The most negative indicator is -120 ; column 1 is the pivot column. The quotients needed to determine the pivot row are $110/1 = 110$ and $20,000/400 = 50$. So the pivot is 400 in row 2, column 1. Multiplying row 2 by $1/400$ and completing the pivoting leads to the final simplex tableau:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 0 & .6 & .3 & 1 & -.0025 & 60 \\ 1 & .4 & .7 & 0 & .0025 & 50 \\ \hline 0 & 8 & 24 & 0 & .3 & 6000 \end{array} \right]. \quad \begin{array}{l} -1R_2 + R_1 \\ \frac{1}{400}R_2 \\ 120R_2 + R_3 \end{array}$$

Setting the nonbasic variables x_2 , x_3 , and s_2 equal to 0, solving for the basic variables x_1 and s_1 , and remembering that the value of z is in the lower right-hand corner leads to this maximum solution:

$$x_1 = 50, \quad x_2 = 0, \quad x_3 = 0, \quad s_1 = 60, \quad s_2 = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad z = 6000.$$

Therefore, the farmer will make a maximum profit of \$6000 by planting 50 acres of potatoes and no corn or cabbage.

(b) If the farmer maximizes his profit, how much land will remain unplanted? What is the explanation for this?

Solution Since 50 of 110 acres are planted, 60 acres will remain unplanted. Alternatively, note that the unplanted acres of land are represented by s_1 , the slack variable in the “number of acres” constraint. In the maximal solution found in part (a), $s_1 = 60$, which means that 60 acres are left unplanted.

The amount of unused cash is represented by s_2 , the slack variable in the “production costs” constraint. Since $s_2 = 0$, all the available money has been used. By using the maximal solution in part (a), the farmer has used his \$20,000 most effectively. If he had more cash, he would plant more crops and make a larger profit.

Example 2

Business Ana Pott, who is a candidate for the state legislature, has \$96,000 to buy TV advertising time. Ads cost \$400 per minute on a local cable channel, \$4000 per minute on a regional independent channel, and \$12,000 per minute on a national network channel. Because of existing contracts, the TV stations can provide at most a total of 30 minutes of advertising time, with a maximum of 6 minutes on the national network channel. At any given time during the evening, approximately 100,000 people watch the cable channel, 200,000 the independent channel, and 600,000 the network channel. To get maximum exposure, how much time should Ana buy from each station?

(a) Set up the initial simplex tableau for this problem.

Solution Let x_1 be the number of minutes of ads on the cable channel, x_2 the number of minutes on the independent channel, and x_3 the number of minutes on the network channel. Exposure is measured in viewer-minutes. For instance, 100,000 people watching x_1 minutes of ads on the cable channel produces $100,000x_1$ viewer-minutes. The amount of exposure is given by the total number of viewer-minutes for all three channels, namely,

$$100,000x_1 + 200,000x_2 + 600,000x_3.$$

Since 30 minutes are available,

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 30.$$

The fact that only 6 minutes can be used on the network channel means that

$$x_3 \leq 6.$$

Expenditures are limited to \$96,000, so

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Cable cost} + \text{independent cost} + \text{network cost} &\leq 96,000 \\ 400x_1 + 4000x_2 + 12,000x_3 &\leq 96,000. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, Ana must solve the following linear programming problem:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= 100,000x_1 + 200,000x_2 + 600,000x_3 \\ \text{subject to } x_1 + x_2 + x_3 &\leq 30 \\ x_3 &\leq 6 \\ 400x_1 + 4000x_2 + 12,000x_3 &\leq 96,000, \\ \text{with } x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 &\geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Introducing slack variables s_1 , s_2 , and s_3 (one for each constraint), rewriting the constraints as equations, and expressing the objective function as

$$-100,000x_1 - 200,000x_2 - 600,000x_3 + z = 0$$

leads to the initial simplex tableau:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 30 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 6 \\ 400 & 4000 & 12,000 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 96,000 \\ \hline -100,000 & -200,000 & -600,000 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right].$$

(b) Use the simplex method to find the final simplex tableau.

Solution Work by hand, or use a graphing calculator's simplex program or a spreadsheet, to obtain this final tableau:


$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{10}{9} & \frac{20}{9} & -\frac{25}{90,000} & 20 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 6 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -\frac{1}{9} & -\frac{29}{9} & \frac{25}{90,000} & 4 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{800,000}{9} & \frac{1,600,000}{9} & \frac{250}{9} & 6,400,000 \end{array} \right].$$

Therefore, the optimal solution is

$$x_1 = 20, \quad x_2 = 4, \quad x_3 = 6, \quad s_1 = 0, \quad s_2 = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad s_3 = 0.$$

Ana should buy 20 minutes of time on the cable channel, 4 minutes on the independent channel, and 6 minutes on the network channel.

(c) What do the values of the slack variables in the optimal solution tell you?

Solution All three slack variables are 0. This means that all the available minutes have been used ($s_1 = 0$ in the first constraint), the maximum possible 6 minutes on the national network have been used ($s_2 = 0$ in the second constraint), and all of the \$96,000 has been spent ($s_3 = 0$ in the third constraint). 

Checkpoint 1

In Example 2, what is the number of viewer-minutes in the optimal solution?

Example 3

Business A chemical plant makes three products—glaze, solvent, and clay—each of which brings in different revenue per truckload. Production is limited, first by the number of air pollution units the plant is allowed to produce each

day and second by the time available in the evaporation tank. The plant manager wants to maximize the daily revenue. Using information not given here, he sets up an initial simplex tableau and uses the simplex method to produce the following final simplex tableau:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline -10 & -25 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 60 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 0 & .1 & 24 \\ \hline 7 & 13 & 0 & 0 & .4 & 96 \end{array} \right].$$

The three variables represent the number of truckloads of glaze, solvent, and clay, respectively. The first slack variable comes from the air pollution constraint and the second slack variable from the time constraint on the evaporation tank. The revenue function is given in hundreds of dollars.

(a) What is the optimal solution?

Solution

$$x_1 = 0, \quad x_2 = 0, \quad x_3 = 24, \quad s_1 = 60, \quad s_2 = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad z = 96.$$

(b) Interpret this solution. What do the variables represent, and what does the solution mean?

Solution The variable x_1 is the number of truckloads of glaze, x_2 the number of truckloads of solvent, x_3 the number of truckloads of clay to be produced, and z the revenue produced (in hundreds of dollars). The plant should produce 24 truckloads of clay and no glaze or solvent, for a maximum revenue of \$9600. The first slack variable, s_1 , represents the number of air pollution units below the maximum number allowed. Since $s_1 = 60$, the number of air pollution units will be 60 less than the allowable maximum. The second slack variable, s_2 , represents the unused time in the evaporation tank. Since $s_2 = 0$, the evaporation tank is fully used.

7.5 Exercises

Set up the initial simplex tableau for each of the given problems. You will be asked to solve these problems in Exercises 19–22.

- Business** A cat breeder has the following amounts of cat food: 90 units of tuna, 80 units of liver, and 50 units of chicken. To raise a Siamese cat, the breeder must use 2 units of tuna, 1 of liver, and 1 of chicken per day, while raising a Persian cat requires 1, 2, and 1 units, respectively, per day. If a Siamese cat sells for \$12 while a Persian cat sells for \$10, how many of each should be raised in order to obtain maximum gross income? What is the maximum gross income?
- Business** Banal, Inc., produces art for motel rooms. Its painters can turn out mountain scenes, seascapes, and pictures of clowns. Each painting is worked on by three different artists: T , D , and H . Artist T works only 25 hours per week, while D and H work 45 and 40 hours per week, respectively. Artist T spends 1 hour on a mountain scene, 2 hours on a seascape, and 1 hour on a clown. Corresponding times for D and H are 3, 2, and 2 hours and 2, 1, and 4 hours, respectively. Banal makes \$20 on a mountain scene, \$18 on a seascape, and \$22 on a clown. The head painting packer can't stand clowns, so that no more than 4 clown paintings may be done in a week. Find the number of each type of painting that should be made weekly in order to maximize profit. Find the maximum possible profit.

- Health** A biologist has 500 kilograms of nutrient A , 600 kilograms of nutrient B , and 300 kilograms of nutrient C . These nutrients will be used to make 4 types of food— P , Q , R , and S —whose contents (in percent of nutrient per kilogram of food) and whose “growth values” are as shown in the following table:

	P	Q	R	S
A	0	0	37.5	62.5
B	0	75	50	37.5
C	100	25	12.5	0
Growth Value	90	70	60	50

How many kilograms of each food should be produced in order to maximize total growth value? Find the maximum growth value.

- Natural Science** A lake is stocked each spring with three species of fish: A , B , and C . The average weights of the fish are 1.62, 2.12, and 3.01 kilograms for the three species, respectively. Three foods—I, II, and III—are available in the lake. Each fish of species A requires 1.32 units of food I, 2.9 units of food II, and 1.75 units of food III, on the average, each day. Species B fish require 2.1 units of food I, .95 units of food II,

and .6 units of food III daily. Species C fish require .86, 1.52, and 2.01 units of I, II, and III per day, respectively. If 490 units of food I, 897 units of food II, and 653 units of food III are available daily, how should the lake be stocked to maximize the weight of the fish it supports?



In each of the given exercises, (a) use the simplex method to solve the problem and (b) explain what the values of the slack variables in the optimal solution mean in the context of the problem. (See Examples 1–3).

5. **Business** A manufacturer of bicycles builds 1-, 3-, and 10-speed models. The bicycles are made of both aluminum and steel. The company has available 91,800 units of steel and 42,000 units of aluminum. The 1-, 3-, and 10-speed models need, respectively, 20, 30, and 40 units of steel and 12, 21, and 16 units of aluminum. How many of each type of bicycle should be made in order to maximize profit if the company makes \$8 per 1-speed bike, \$12 per 3-speed bike, and \$24 per 10-speed bike? What is the maximum possible profit?
6. **Business** Liz is working to raise money for breast cancer research by sending informational letters to local neighborhood organizations and church groups. She discovered that each church group requires 2 hours of letter writing and 1 hour of follow-up, while each neighborhood group needs 2 hours of letter writing and 3 hours of follow-up. Liz can raise \$1000 from each church group and \$2000 from each neighborhood organization, and she has a maximum of 16 hours of letter-writing time and a maximum of 12 hours of follow-up time available per month. Determine the most profitable mixture of groups she should contact and the most money she can raise in a month.
7. **Business** A local news channel plans a 27-minute Saturday morning news show. The show will be divided into three segments involving sports, news, and weather. Market research has shown that the sports segment should be twice as long as the weather segment. The total time taken by the sports and weather segments should be twice the time taken by the news segment. On the basis of the market research, it is believed that 40, 60, and 50 (in thousands) viewers will watch the program for each minute the sports, news, and weather segments, respectively, are on the air. Find the time that should be allotted to each segment in order to get the maximum number of viewers. Find the number of viewers.
8. **Business** A food wholesaler has three kinds of individual bags of potato chips: regular, barbeque, and salt and vinegar. She wants to sell the bags of chips in bulk packages. The bronze package consists of 20 bags of regular and 10 bags of barbeque. The silver package contains 20 bags of regular, 10 bags of barbeque, and 10 bags of salt and vinegar. The gold package consists of 30 bags of regular, 10 bags of barbeque, and 10 bags of salt and vinegar. The profit is \$30 on each bronze package, \$40 on each silver package, and \$60 on each gold package. The food wholesaler has a total of 8000 bags of regular chips, 4000 bags of barbeque, and 2000 bags of salt and vinegar. Assuming all the packages will be sold, how many gold, silver, and bronze packages should be made up in order to maximize profit? What is the maximum profit?
9. **Business** Mario Cekada owns a tree nursery business. Mario can sell a weeping Japanese maple of a certain size for \$350 in profit. He can sell tri-color beech trees of a certain size for \$500 profit. The travel time to acquire the Japanese maple trees is 5 hours while the travel time for the beech trees is 7 hours. The digging process takes 1 hour for the Japanese maple trees and 2 hours for the beech trees. Both kinds of trees require 4 hours of time to deliver to the client. In a particular season, Mario has available 3600 work hours for travel time to acquire the trees, 900 work-hours for digging, and 2600 work-hours for delivery to the clients. How many trees of each kind should he acquire to make a maximum profit? What is the maximum profit?
10. **Business** The Texas Poker Company assembles three different poker sets. Each Royal Flush poker set contains 1000 poker chips, 4 decks of cards, 10 dice, and 2 dealer buttons. Each Deluxe Diamond poker set contains 600 poker chips, 2 decks of cards, 5 dice, and 1 dealer button. The Full House poker set contains 300 poker chips, 2 decks of cards, 5 dice, and 1 dealer button. The Texas Poker Company has 2,800,000 poker chips, 10,000 decks of cards, 25,000 dice, and 6000 dealer buttons in stock. It earns a profit of \$38 for each Royal Flush poker set, \$22 for each Deluxe Diamond poker set, and \$12 for each Full House poker set. How many of each type of poker set should it assemble to maximize profit? What is the maximum profit?


Use the simplex method to solve the given problems. (See Examples 1–3.)

11. **Business** The Fancy Fashions Store has \$8000 available each month for advertising. Newspaper ads cost \$400 each, and no more than 20 can be run per month. Radio ads cost \$200 each, and no more than 30 can run per month. TV ads cost \$1200 each, with a maximum of 6 available each month. Approximately 2000 women will see each newspaper ad, 1200 will hear each radio commercial, and 10,000 will see each TV ad. How much of each type of advertising should be used if the store wants to maximize its ad exposure?
12. **Business** Caroline's Quality Candy Confectionery is famous for fudge, chocolate cremes, and pralines. Its candy-making equipment is set up to make 100-pound batches at a time. Currently there is a chocolate shortage, and the company can get only 120 pounds of chocolate in the next shipment. On a week's run, the confectionery's cooking and processing equipment is available for a total of 42 machine hours. During the same period, the employees have a total of 56 work hours available for packaging. A batch of fudge requires 20 pounds of chocolate, while a batch of cremes uses 25 pounds of chocolate. The cooking and processing take 120 minutes for fudge, 150 minutes for chocolate cremes, and 200 minutes for pralines. The packaging times, measured in minutes per 1-pound box, are 1, 2, and 3, respectively, for fudge, cremes, and pralines. Determine how many batches of each type of candy the confectionery

should make, assuming that the profit per 1-pound box is 50¢ on fudge, 40¢ on chocolate cremes, and 45¢ on pralines. Also, find the maximum profit for the week.

13. Finance A political party is planning its fund-raising activities for a coming election. It plans to raise money through large fund-raising parties, letters requesting funds, and dinner parties where people can meet the candidate personally. Each large fund-raising party costs \$3000, each mailing costs \$1000, and each dinner party costs \$12,000. The party can spend up to \$102,000 for these activities. From experience, it is known that each large party will raise \$200,000, each letter campaign will raise \$100,000, and each dinner party will raise \$600,000. The party is able to carry out as many as 25 of these activities.

(a) How many of each should the party plan to raise the maximum amount of money? What is the maximum amount?

 (b) Dinner parties are more expensive than letter campaigns, yet the optimum solution found in part (a) includes dinner parties, but no letter campaigns. Explain how this is possible.

14. Business A baker has 60 units of flour, 132 units of sugar, and 102 units of raisins. A loaf of raisin bread requires 1 unit of flour, 1 unit of sugar, and 2 units of raisins, while a raisin cake needs 2, 4, and 1 units, respectively. If raisin bread sells for \$3 a loaf and a raisin cake for \$4, how many of each should be baked so that the gross income is maximized? What is the maximum gross income?

15. Health Rachel Reeve, a fitness trainer, has an exercise regimen that includes running, biking, and walking. She has no more than 15 hours per week to devote to exercise, including at most 3 hours for running. She wants to walk at least twice as many hours as she bikes. A 130-pound person like Rachel will burn on average 531 calories per hour running, 472 calories per hour biking, and 354 calories per hour walking. How many hours per week should Rachel spend on each exercise to maximize the number of calories she burns? What is the maximum number of calories she will burn? (*Hint*: Write the constraint involving walking and biking in the form ≤ 0 .)

16. Health Joe Vetere's exercise regimen includes light calisthenics, swimming, and playing the drums. He has at most 10 hours per week to devote to these activities. He wants the total time he does calisthenics and plays the drums to be at least twice as long as he swims. His neighbors, however, will tolerate no more than 4 hours per week on the drums. A 190-pound person like Joe will burn an average of 388 calories per hour doing calisthenics, 518 calories per hour swimming, and 345 calories per hour playing the drums. How many hours per week should Joe spend on each exercise to maximize the number of calories he burns? What is the maximum number of calories he will burn?

Business *The next two problems come from past CPA examinations.* Select the appropriate answer for each question.*

17. The Ball Company manufactures three types of lamps, labeled A, B, and C. Each lamp is processed in two departments: I and

II. Total available person-hours per day for departments I and II are 400 and 600, respectively. No additional labor is available. Time requirements and profit per unit for each type of lamp are as follows:

	A	B	C
Person-Hours in I	2	3	1
Person-Hours in II	4	2	3
Profit per Unit	\$5	\$4	\$3

The company has assigned you as the accounting member of its profit-planning committee to determine the numbers of types of A, B, and C lamps that it should produce in order to maximize its total profit from the sale of lamps. The following questions relate to a linear programming model that your group has developed:

- (a) The coefficients of the objective function would be
- (1) 4, 2, 3;
 - (2) 2, 3, 1;
 - (3) 5, 4, 3;
 - (4) 400,600.
- (b) The constraints in the model would be
- (1) 2, 3, 1;
 - (2) 5, 4, 3;
 - (3) 4, 2, 3;
 - (4) 400,600.
- (c) The constraint imposed by the available number of person-hours in department I could be expressed as
- (1) $4X_1 + 2X_2 + 3X_3 \leq 400$;
 - (2) $4X_1 + 2X_2 + 3X_3 \geq 400$;
 - (3) $2X_1 + 3X_2 + 1X_3 \leq 400$;
 - (4) $2X_1 + 3X_2 + 1X_3 \geq 400$.

18. The Golden Hawk Manufacturing Company wants to maximize the profits on products A, B, and C. The contribution margin for each product is as follows:

Product	Contribution Margin
A	\$2
B	5
C	4

The production requirements and the departmental capacities are as follows:

Department	Production Requirements by Product (Hours)			Departmental Capacity (Total Hours)
	A	B	C	
Assembling	2	3	2	30,000
Painting	1	2	2	38,000
Finishing	2	3	1	28,000

- (a) What is the profit-maximization formula for the Golden Hawk Company?
- (1) $\$2A + \$5B + \$4C = X$ (where $X = \text{profit}$)
 - (2) $5A + 8B + 5C \leq 96,000$

*Problem No. 17, The Ball Company Manufactures from Uniform CPA Examinations and Unofficial Answers. Copyright © 1973 American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, Inc. (AICPA). Reproduced by permission of American Institute of Certified Public Accountants, Inc. (AICPA).

(3) $\$2A + \$5B + \$4C \leq X$

(4) $\$2A + \$5B + \$4C = 96,000$

(b) What is the constraint for the Painting Department of the Golden Hawk Company?


(1) $1A + 2B + 2C \geq 38,000$

(2) $\$2A + \$5B + \$4C \geq 38,000$

(3) $1A + 2B + 2C \leq 38,000$

(4) $2A + 3B + 2C \leq 30,000$

19. Solve the problem in Exercise 1.

 Use a graphing calculator or a computer program for the simplex method to solve the given linear programming problems.

20. Exercise 2. Your final answer should consist of whole numbers (because Banal can't sell half a painting).


21. Exercise 3

22. Exercise 4

Checkpoint Answer

1. $z = 6,400,000$

7.6 The Simplex Method: Duality and Minimization

 **NOTE** Sections 7.6 and 7.7 are independent of each other and may be read in either order.

Here, we present a method of solving *minimization* problems in which all constraints involve \geq and all coefficients of the objective function are positive. When it applies, this method may be more efficient than the method discussed in Section 7.7. However, the method in Section 7.7 applies to a wider variety of problems—both minimization and maximization problems, even those that involve *mixed constraints* (\leq , $=$, or \geq)—and it has no restrictions on the objective function.

We begin with a necessary tool from matrix algebra: if A is a matrix, then the **transpose** of A is the matrix obtained by interchanging the rows and columns of A .


Example 1 Find the transpose of each matrix.

(a) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 5 \\ 6 & 8 & 0 \\ -3 & 7 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution Write the rows of matrix A as the columns of the transpose:

$$\text{Transpose of } A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 6 & -3 \\ -1 & 8 & 7 \\ 5 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

(b) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 4 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 7 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution The transpose of $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 4 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 7 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ is $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 7 \\ 0 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$. 

Checkpoint 1


Give the transpose of each matrix.

(a) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 6 & 3 \\ 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

(b) $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & 7 & 10 \\ 3 & 2 & 6 \\ 5 & 8 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$

$$[A]^T = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 6 & -3 \\ -1 & 8 & 7 \\ 5 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Figure 7.31

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** Most graphing calculators can find the transpose of a matrix. Look for this feature in the MATRIX MATH menu (TI) or the OPTN MAT menu (Casio). The transpose of matrix A from Example 1(a) is shown in Figure 7.31.

We now consider linear programming problems satisfying the following conditions:

1. The objective function is to be minimized.
2. All the coefficients of the objective function are nonnegative.
3. All constraints involve \geq .
4. All variables are nonnegative.

The method of solving minimization problems presented here is based on an interesting connection between maximization and minimization problems: Any solution of a maximizing problem produces the solution of an associated minimizing problem, and vice versa. Each of the associated problems is called the **dual** of the other. Thus, duals enable us to solve minimization problems of the type just described by the simplex method introduced in Section 7.4.

When dealing with minimization problems, we use y_1, y_2, y_3 , etc., as variables and denote the objective function by w . The next two examples show how to construct the dual problem. Later examples will show how to solve both the dual problem and the original one.

Example 2 Construct the dual of this problem:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Minimize} & w = 8y_1 + 16y_2 \\ \text{subject to} & y_1 + 5y_2 \geq 9 \\ & 2y_1 + 2y_2 \geq 10 \\ & y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0. \end{array}$$

Solution Write the augmented matrix of the system of inequalities *and* include the coefficients of the objective function (not their negatives) as the last row of the matrix:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Objective function} \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 5 & 9 \\ 2 & 2 & 10 \\ \hline 8 & 16 & 0 \end{array} \right] \end{array}$$

↙ Constants

Now form the transpose of the preceding matrix:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 2 & 8 \\ 5 & 2 & 16 \\ \hline 9 & 10 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

In this last matrix, think of the first two rows as constraints and the last row as the objective function. Then the dual maximization problem is as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Maximize} & z = 9x_1 + 10x_2 \\ \text{subject to} & x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 8 \\ & 5x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 16 \\ & x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0. \end{array}$$

Example 3 Write the duals of the given minimization linear programming problems.

(a) Minimize $w = 10y_1 + 8y_2$
 subject to $y_1 + 2y_2 \geq 2$
 $y_1 + y_2 \geq 5$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0.$

Solution Begin by writing the augmented matrix for the given problem:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 5 \\ \hline 10 & 8 & 0 \end{array} \right].$$

Form the transpose of this matrix to get

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 1 & 10 \\ 2 & 1 & 8 \\ \hline 2 & 5 & 0 \end{array} \right].$$

The dual problem is stated from this second matrix as follows (using x instead of y):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= 2x_1 + 5x_2 \\ \text{subject to } x_1 + x_2 &\leq 10 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 &\leq 8 \\ x_1 \geq 0, x_2 &\geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

(b) Minimize $w = 7y_1 + 5y_2 + 8y_3$
 subject to $3y_1 + 2y_2 + y_3 \geq 10$
 $y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \geq 8$
 $4y_1 + 5y_2 \geq 25$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

Solution Find the augmented matrix for this problem, as in part (a). Form the dual matrix, which represents the following problem:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= 10x_1 + 8x_2 + 25x_3 \\ \text{subject to } 3x_1 + x_2 + 4x_3 &\leq 7 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 + 5x_3 &\leq 5 \\ x_1 + x_2 &\leq 8 \\ x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 &\geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

 **Checkpoint 2**

Write the dual of the following linear programming problem:

Minimize $w = 2y_1 + 5y_2 + 6y_3$
 subject to $2y_1 + 3y_2 + y_3 \geq 15$
 $y_1 + y_2 + 2y_3 \geq 12$
 $5y_1 + 3y_2 \geq 10$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

In Example 3, all the constraints of the minimization problems were \geq inequalities, while all those in the dual maximization problems were \leq inequalities. This is generally the case; inequalities are reversed when the dual problem is stated.

The following table shows the close connection between a problem and its dual.

Given Problem	Dual Problem
m variables	n variables
n constraints	m constraints (m slack variables)
Coefficients from objective function	Constraint constants
Constraint constants	Coefficients from objective function

Now that you know how to construct the dual problem, we examine how it is related to the original problem and how both may be solved.

Example 4

Solve this problem and its dual:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Minimize } w &= 8y_1 + 16y_2 \\ \text{subject to } y_1 + 5y_2 &\geq 9 \\ 2y_1 + 2y_2 &\geq 10 \\ y_1 \geq 0, y_2 &\geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Solution In Example 2, we saw that the dual problem is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= 9x_1 + 10x_2 \\ \text{subject to } x_1 + 2x_2 &\leq 8 \\ 5x_1 + 2x_2 &\leq 16 \\ x_1 \geq 0, x_2 &\geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

In this case, both the original problem and the dual may be solved geometrically, as in Section 7.2. Figure 7.32(a) shows the region of feasible solutions for the original minimization problem, and Checkpoint 3 shows that

✓ Checkpoint 3

Use the corner points in Figure 7.32(a) to find the minimum value of $w = 8y_1 + 16y_2$ and where it occurs.

the minimum value of w is 48 at the vertex $(4, 1)$. ✓₃

Figure 7.32(b) shows the region of feasible solutions for the dual maximization problem, and Checkpoint 4 shows that

✓ Checkpoint 4

Use Figure 7.32(b) to find the maximum value of $z = 9x_1 + 10x_2$ and where it occurs.

the maximum value of z is 48 at the vertex $(2, 3)$. ✓₄

Even though the regions and the corner points are different, the minimization problem and its dual have the same solution, 48.

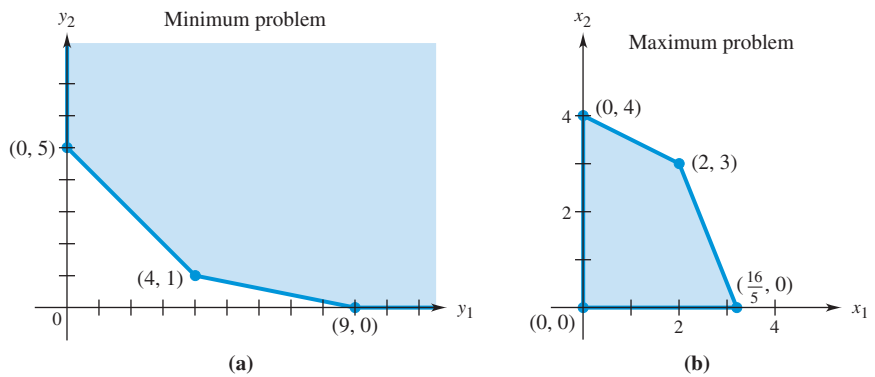


Figure 7.32

The next theorem, whose proof requires advanced methods, guarantees that what happened in Example 4 happens in the general case as well.

Theorem of Duality

The objective function w of a minimizing linear programming problem takes on a minimum value if, and only if, the objective function z of the corresponding dual maximizing problem takes on a maximum value. The maximum value of z equals the minimum value of w .

Geometric solution methods were used in Example 4, but the simplex method can also be used. In fact, the final simplex tableau shows the solutions for both the original minimization problem and the dual maximization problem, as illustrated in the next example.

Example 5

Use the simplex method to solve the minimization problem in Example 4.

Solution First, set up the dual problem, as in Example 4:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= 9x_1 + 10x_2 \\ \text{subject to } x_1 + 2x_2 &\leq 8 \\ 5x_1 + 2x_2 &\leq 16 \\ x_1 \geq 0, x_2 &\geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

This is a maximization problem in standard form, so it can be solved by the simplex method. Use slack variables to write the inequalities and the objective function as equations:


$$\begin{aligned}x_1 + 2x_2 + s_1 &= 8 \\5x_1 + 2x_2 + s_2 &= 16 \\-9x_1 - 10x_2 + z &= 0,\end{aligned}$$

with $x_1 \geq 0$, $x_2 \geq 0$, $s_1 \geq 0$, and $s_2 \geq 0$. So the initial tableau is

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & \text{Quotients} \\ 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 8 \\ 5 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 16 \\ -9 & -10 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]. \quad \begin{array}{l} 8/2 = 4 \\ 16/2 = 8 \end{array}$$

The quotients show that the first pivot is the 2 shaded in blue. Pivoting is done as follows:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \frac{1}{2} & 1 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 4 \\ 4 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 8 \\ -4 & 0 & 5 & 0 & 40 \end{array} \right]. \quad \begin{array}{l} \frac{1}{2}R_1 \\ -2R_1 + R_2 \\ 10R_1 + R_3 \end{array}$$

Checkpoint 5 shows that the new pivot is the 4 in row 2, column 1.  Pivoting leads to the final simplex tableau:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{8} & -\frac{1}{8} & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{4} & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 4 & 1 & 48 \end{array} \right]. \quad \begin{array}{l} -\frac{1}{2}R_2 + R_1 \\ \frac{1}{4}R_2 \\ 4R_2 + R_3 \end{array}$$

The final simplex tableau shows that the maximum value of 48 occurs when $x_1 = 2$ and $x_2 = 3$. In Example 4, we saw that the minimum value of 48 occurs when $y_1 = 4$ and $y_2 = 1$. Note that this information appears in the last row (shown in blue). The minimum value of 48 is in the lower right-hand corner, and the values where this occurs ($y_1 = 4$ and $y_2 = 1$) are in the last row at the bottom of the slack-variable columns.

A minimization problem that meets the conditions listed after Example 1 can be solved by the method used in Example 5 and summarized here.

Solving Minimization Problems with Duals

1. Find the dual standard maximization problem.*
2. Use the simplex method to solve the dual maximization problem.
3. Read the optimal solution of the original minimization problem from the final simplex tableau:

y_1 is the last entry in the column corresponding to the first slack variable;

y_2 is the last entry in the column corresponding to the second slack variable; and so on.

These values of y_1, y_2, y_3 , etc., produce the minimum value of w , which is the entry in the lower right-hand corner of the tableau.

*The coefficients of the objective function in the minimization problem are the constants on the right side of the constraints in the dual maximization problem. So when all these coefficients are nonnegative (condition 2), the dual problem is in standard maximum form.

✓ Checkpoint 5

In the second tableau, find the next pivot.

Example 6

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Minimize} & w = 3y_1 + 2y_2 \\ \text{subject to} & y_1 + 3y_2 \geq 6 \\ & 2y_1 + y_2 \geq 3 \\ & y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0. \end{array}$$

Solution Use the given information to write the matrix:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 3 & 6 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \\ \hline 3 & 2 & 0 \end{array} \right].$$

Transpose to get the following matrix for the dual problem:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ \hline 6 & 3 & 0 \end{array} \right].$$

Write the dual problem from this matrix as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Maximize} & z = 6x_1 + 3x_2 \\ \text{subject to} & x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 3 \\ & 3x_1 + x_2 \leq 2 \\ & x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0. \end{array}$$

Solve this standard maximization problem by the simplex method. Start by introducing slack variables, giving the system

$$\begin{array}{rclcl} x_1 + 2x_2 + s_1 & = & 3 & & \\ 3x_1 + x_2 + s_2 & = & 2 & & \\ -6x_1 - 3x_2 - 0s_1 - 0s_2 + z & = & 0 & & \end{array}$$

with $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, s_1 \geq 0,$ and $s_2 \geq 0$.


The initial tableau for this system is

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 3 \\ \mathbf{3} & 1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ \hline -6 & -3 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right], \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{Quotients} \\ 3/1 = 3 \\ 2/3 \end{array}$$

with the pivot as indicated. Two rounds of pivoting produce the following final tableau:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 0 & 1 & \frac{3}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} & \frac{7}{5} \\ 1 & 0 & -\frac{1}{5} & \frac{2}{5} & \frac{1}{5} \\ \hline 0 & 0 & \frac{3}{5} & \frac{9}{5} & \frac{27}{5} \\ & & y_1 & y_2 & w \end{array} \right].$$

As indicated in blue below the final tableau, the last entries in the columns corresponding to the slack variables (s_1 and s_2) give the values of the original variables y_1 and y_2 that produce the minimal value of w . This minimal value of w appears in the lower right-hand corner (and is the same as the maximal value of z in the dual problem). So the solution of the given minimization problem is as follows:

The minimum value of $w = 3y_1 + 2y_2$, subject to the given constraints, is $\frac{27}{5}$ and occurs when $y_1 = \frac{3}{5}$ and $y_2 = \frac{9}{5}$. 

 **Checkpoint 6**

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Minimize} & w = 10y_1 + 8y_2 \\ \text{subject to} & y_1 + 2y_2 \geq 2 \\ & y_1 + y_2 \geq 5 \\ & y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0. \end{array}$$

Example 7

A minimization problem in three variables was solved by the use of duals. The final simplex tableau for the dual maximization problem is shown here:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 3 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 9 & 0 & 1 \\ 13 & -1 & 0 & 1 & -2 & 0 & 10 \\ 9 & 10 & 0 & 0 & 7 & 1 & 7 \\ \hline 5 & 1 & 0 & 4 & 1 & 7 & 28 \end{array} \right].$$

(a) What is the optimal solution of the dual minimization problem?

Solution Looking at the bottom of the columns corresponding to the slack variables s_1 , s_2 , and s_3 , we see that the solution of the minimization problem is

$$y_1 = 4, \quad y_2 = 1, \quad \text{and} \quad y_3 = 7, \quad \text{with a minimal value of } w = 28.$$

(b) What is the optimal solution of the dual maximization problem?

Solution Since s_1 , s_2 , and s_3 are slack variables by part (a), the variables in the dual problem are x_1 , x_2 , and x_3 . Read the solution from the final tableau, as in Sections 7.4 and 7.5:

$$x_1 = 0, \quad x_2 = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad x_3 = 1, \quad \text{with a maximal value of } z = 28.$$

Further Uses of the Dual

The dual is useful not only in solving minimization problems, but also in seeing how small changes in one variable will affect the value of the objective function. For example, suppose an animal breeder needs at least 6 units per day of nutrient A and at least 3 units of nutrient B and that the breeder can choose between two different feeds: feed 1 and feed 2. Find the minimum cost for the breeder if each bag of feed 1 costs \$3 and provides 1 unit of nutrient A and 2 units of B , while each bag of feed 2 costs \$2 and provides 3 units of nutrient A and 1 of B .

If y_1 represents the number of bags of feed 1 and y_2 represents the number of bags of feed 2, the given information leads to the following minimization problem:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Minimize} \quad & w = 3y_1 + 2y_2 \\ \text{subject to} \quad & y_1 + 3y_2 \geq 6 \\ & 2y_1 + y_2 \geq 3 \\ & y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

This minimization linear programming problem is the one we solved in Example 6 of this section. In that example, we formed the dual and reached the following final tableau:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 0 & 1 & \frac{3}{5} & -\frac{1}{5} & \frac{7}{5} \\ 1 & 0 & -\frac{1}{5} & \frac{2}{5} & \frac{1}{5} \\ \hline 0 & 0 & \frac{3}{5} & \frac{9}{5} & \frac{27}{5} \end{array} \right].$$

This final tableau shows that the breeder will obtain minimum feed costs by using $\frac{3}{5}$ bag of feed 1 and $\frac{9}{5}$ bags of feed 2 per day, for a daily cost of $\frac{27}{5} = 5.40$ dollars.

Now look at the data from the feed problem shown in the following table:

	Units of Nutrient (per Bag)		Cost per Bag
	A	B	
Feed 1	1	2	\$3
Feed 2	3	1	\$2
Minimum Nutrient Needed	6	3	

If x_1 and x_2 are the cost *per unit* of nutrients A and B, the constraints of the dual problem can be stated as follows (see pages 403–404):

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Cost of feed 1:} & \quad x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 3 \\ \text{Cost of feed 2:} & \quad 3x_1 + x_2 \leq 2.\end{aligned}$$

The solution of the dual problem, which maximizes nutrients, also can be read from the final tableau above:

$$x_1 = \frac{1}{5} = .20 \quad \text{and} \quad x_2 = \frac{7}{5} = 1.40.$$

This means that a unit of nutrient A costs $\frac{1}{5}$ of a dollar = \$.20, while a unit of nutrient B costs $\frac{7}{5}$ dollars = \$1.40. The minimum daily cost, \$5.40, is found as follows.

$$\begin{aligned}(\$.20 \text{ per unit of } A) \times (6 \text{ units of } A) &= \$1.20 \\ + (\$1.40 \text{ per unit of } B) \times (3 \text{ units of } B) &= \$4.20 \\ \hline \text{Minimum daily cost} &= \$5.40.\end{aligned}$$

The numbers .20 and 1.40 are called the **shadow costs** of the nutrients. These two numbers from the dual, \$.20 and \$1.40, also allow the breeder to estimate feed costs for “small” changes in nutrient requirements. For example, an increase of 1 unit in the requirement for each nutrient would produce a total cost as follows:

$$\begin{array}{rll} \$5.40 & & \text{6 units of } A, \text{ 3 of } B \\ .20 & & \text{1 extra unit of } A \\ \hline 1.40 & & \text{1 extra unit of } B \\ \hline \$7.00. & & \text{Total cost per day} \end{array}$$

7.6 Exercises

Find the transpose of each matrix. (See Example 1.)

1. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -4 & 5 \\ 1 & 10 & 7 \\ 0 & 3 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$

2. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -5 & 9 & 4 \\ 1 & 6 & -7 & 0 \\ 4 & 18 & 11 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & 14 & -5 & 3 \\ 4 & 17 & 8 & -6 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $\begin{bmatrix} 15 & -6 & -2 \\ 13 & -1 & 11 \\ 10 & 12 & -3 \\ 24 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

State the dual problem for each of the given problems, but do not solve it. (See Examples 2 and 3.)

5. Minimize $w = 3y_1 + 5y_2$
subject to $3y_1 + y_2 \geq 4$
 $-y_1 + 2y_2 \geq 6$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0.$

6. Minimize $w = 4y_1 + 7y_2$
subject to $y_1 + y_2 \geq 17$
 $3y_1 + 6y_2 \geq 21$
 $2y_1 + 4y_2 \geq 19$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0.$

7. Minimize $w = 2y_1 + 8y_2$
subject to $y_1 + 7y_2 \geq 18$
 $4y_1 + y_2 \geq 15$
 $5y_1 + 3y_2 \geq 20$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0.$

8. Minimize $w = y_1 + 2y_2 + 6y_3$
subject to $3y_1 + 4y_2 + 6y_3 \geq 8$
 $y_1 + 5y_2 + 2y_3 \geq 12$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

9. Minimize $w = 5y_1 + y_2 + 3y_3$
subject to $7y_1 + 6y_2 + 8y_3 \geq 18$
 $4y_1 + 5y_2 + 10y_3 \geq 20$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

10. Minimize $w = 4y_1 + 3y_2 + y_3$
subject to $y_1 + 2y_2 + 3y_3 \geq 115$
 $2y_1 + y_2 + 8y_3 \geq 200$
 $y_1 - y_3 \geq 50$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

11. Minimize $w = 8y_1 + 9y_2 + 3y_3$
 subject to $y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \geq 5$
 $y_1 + y_2 \geq 4$
 $2y_1 + y_2 + 3y_3 \geq 15$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

12. Minimize $w = y_1 + 2y_2 + y_3 + 5y_4$
 subject to $y_1 + y_2 + y_3 + y_4 \geq 50$
 $3y_1 + y_2 + 2y_3 + y_4 \geq 100$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0, y_4 \geq 0.$

Use duality to solve the problem that was set up in the given exercise.

13. Exercise 9

14. Exercise 8

15. Exercise 11

16. Exercise 12

Use duality to solve the given problems. (See Examples 5 and 6.)

17. Minimize $w = 2y_1 + y_2 + 3y_3$
 subject to $y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \geq 100$
 $2y_1 + y_2 \geq 50$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

18. Minimize $w = 2y_1 + 4y_2$
 subject to $4y_1 + 2y_2 \geq 10$
 $4y_1 + y_2 \geq 8$
 $2y_1 + y_2 \geq 12$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0.$

19. Minimize $w = 3y_1 + y_2 + 4y_3$
 subject to $2y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \geq 6$
 $y_1 + 2y_2 + y_3 \geq 8$
 $2y_1 + y_2 + 2y_3 \geq 12$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

20. Minimize $w = y_1 + y_2 + 3y_3$
 subject to $2y_1 + 6y_2 + y_3 \geq 8$
 $y_1 + 2y_2 + 4y_3 \geq 12$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

21. Minimize $w = 6y_1 + 4y_2 + 2y_3$
 subject to $2y_1 + 2y_2 + y_3 \geq 2$
 $y_1 + 3y_2 + 2y_3 \geq 3$
 $y_1 + y_2 + 2y_3 \geq 4$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

22. Minimize $w = 12y_1 + 10y_2 + 7y_3$
 subject to $2y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \geq 7$
 $y_1 + 2y_2 + y_3 \geq 4$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

23. Minimize $w = 20y_1 + 12y_2 + 40y_3$
 subject to $y_1 + y_2 + 5y_3 \geq 20$
 $2y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \geq 30$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

24. Minimize $w = 4y_1 + 5y_2$
 subject to $10y_1 + 5y_2 \geq 100$
 $20y_1 + 10y_2 \geq 150$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0.$

25. Minimize $w = 4y_1 + 2y_2 + y_3$
 subject to $y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \geq 4$
 $3y_1 + y_2 + 3y_3 \geq 6$
 $y_1 + y_2 + 3y_3 \geq 5$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

26. Minimize $w = 3y_1 + 2y_2$
 subject to $2y_1 + 3y_2 \geq 60$
 $y_1 + 4y_2 \geq 40$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0.$

27. **Health** Glenn Russell, who is dieting, requires two food supplements: I and II. He can get these supplements from two different products—A and B—as shown in the following table:

		Supplement (Grams per Serving)	
		I	II
Product	A	4	2
	B	2	5

Glenn's physician has recommended that he include at least 20 grams of supplement I and 18 grams of supplement II in his diet. If product A costs 24¢ per serving and product B costs 40¢ per serving, how can he satisfy these requirements most economically?

28. **Business** An animal food must provide at least 54 units of vitamins and 60 calories per serving. One gram of soybean meal provides at least 2.5 units of vitamins and 5 calories. One gram of meat by-products provides at least 4.5 units of vitamins and 3 calories. One gram of grain provides at least 5 units of vitamins and 10 calories. If a gram of soybean meal costs 8¢, a gram of meat by-products 9¢, and a gram of grain 10¢, what mixture of these three ingredients will provide the required vitamins and calories at minimum cost?

29. **Business** A brewery produces regular beer and a lower-carbohydrate "light" beer. Steady customers of the brewery buy 12 units of regular beer and 10 units of light beer monthly. While setting up the brewery to produce the beers, the management decides to produce extra beer, beyond the need to satisfy the steady customers. The cost per unit of regular beer is \$36,000, and the cost per unit of light beer is \$48,000. Every unit of regular beer brings in \$100,000 in revenue, while every unit of light beer brings in \$300,000. The brewery wants at least \$7,000,000 in revenue. At least 20 additional units of beer can be sold. How much of each type of beer should be made so as to minimize total production costs?

30. **Business** Joan McKee has a part-time job conducting public-opinion interviews. She has found that a political interview takes 45 minutes and a market interview takes 55 minutes. To allow more time for her full-time job, she needs to minimize

the time she spends doing interviews. Unfortunately, to keep her part-time job, she must complete at least 8 interviews each week. Also, she must earn at least \$60 per week at this job, at which she earns \$8 for each political interview and \$10 for each market interview. Finally, to stay in good standing with her supervisor, she must earn at least 40 bonus points per week; she receives 6 bonus points for each political interview and 5 points for each market interview. How many of each interview should she do each week to minimize the time spent?

31. You are given the following linear programming problem (P)*:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= x_1 + 2x_2 \\ \text{subject to } -2x_1 + x_2 &\geq 1 \\ x_1 - 2x_2 &\geq 1 \\ x_1 \geq 0, x_2 &\geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

The dual of (P) is (D). Which of the following statements is true?

- (a) (P) has no feasible solution and the objective function of (D) is unbounded.
 (b) (D) has no feasible solution and the objective function of (P) is unbounded.
 (c) The objective functions of both (P) and (D) are unbounded.
 (d) Both (P) and (D) have optimal solutions.
 (e) Neither (P) nor (D) has a feasible solution.
32. **Business** Refer to the end of this section in the text, on minimizing the daily cost of feeds.
- (a) Find a combination of feeds that will cost \$7.00 and give 7 units of *A* and 4 units of *B*.
 (b) Use the dual variables to predict the daily cost of feed if the requirements change to 5 units of *A* and 4 units of *B*. Find a combination of feeds to meet these requirements at the predicted price.
33. **Business** A small toy-manufacturing firm has 200 squares of felt, 600 ounces of stuffing, and 90 feet of trim available to make two types of toys: a small bear and a monkey. The bear requires 1 square of felt and 4 ounces of stuffing. The monkey requires 2 squares of felt, 3 ounces of stuffing, and 1 foot of trim. The firm makes \$1 profit on each bear and \$1.50 profit on

each monkey. The linear programming problem to maximize profit is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= x_1 + 1.5x_2 \\ \text{subject to } x_1 + 2x_2 &\leq 200 \\ 4x_1 + 3x_2 &\leq 600 \\ x_2 &\leq 90 \\ x_1 \geq 0, x_2 &\geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

The final simplex tableau is

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 0 & -.6 & .4 & 0 & 120 \\ 0 & 0 & -.8 & .2 & 1 & 50 \\ 0 & 1 & .8 & -.2 & 0 & 40 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & .6 & .1 & 0 & 180 \end{array} \right]$$

- (a) What is the corresponding dual problem?
 (b) What is the optimal solution to the dual problem?
 (c) Use the shadow values to estimate the profit the firm will make if its supply of felt increases to 210 squares.
 (d) How much profit will the firm make if its supply of stuffing is cut to 590 ounces and its supply of trim is cut to 80 feet?
34. Refer to Example 1 in Section 7.5.
- (a) Give the dual problem.
 (b) Use the shadow values to estimate the farmer's profit if land is cut to 90 acres, but capital increases to \$21,000.
 (c) Suppose the farmer has 110 acres, but only \$19,000. Find the optimal profit and the planting strategy that will produce this profit.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 6 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & 3 & 5 \\ 7 & 2 & 8 \\ 10 & 6 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$

2. Maximize $z = 15x_1 + 12x_2 + 10x_3$
 subject to $2x_1 + x_2 + 5x_3 \leq 2$
 $3x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3 \leq 5$
 $x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 6$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

3. 48 when $y_1 = 4$ and $y_2 = 1$ 4. 48 when $x_1 = 2$ and $x_2 = 3$
 5. The 4 in row 2, column 1
 6. $y_1 = 0$ and $y_2 = 5$, for a minimum of 40

*Problem 2 from "November 1989 course 130 Examination Operations Research" of the Education and Examination Committee of the Society of Actuaries. Reprinted by permission of the Society of Actuaries.

7.7 The Simplex Method: Nonstandard Problems

 **NOTE** Section 7.7 is independent of Section 7.6 and may be read first, if desired.

So far, the simplex method has been used to solve problems in which the variables are non-negative and all the other constraints are of one type (either all \leq or all \geq). Now we extend

the simplex method to linear programming problems with nonnegative variables and mixed constraints (\leq , $=$, and \geq).

The solution method to be used here requires that all inequality constraints be written so that the constant on the right side is nonnegative. For instance, the inequality

$$4x_1 + 5x_2 - 12x_3 \leq -30$$

can be replaced by the equivalent one obtained by multiplying both sides by -1 and reversing the direction of the inequality sign:

$$-4x_1 - 5x_2 + 12x_3 \geq 30.$$

Maximization with \leq and \geq Constraints

As is always the case when the simplex method is involved, each inequality constraint must be written as an equation. Constraints involving \leq are converted to equations by adding a nonnegative slack variable, as in Section 7.4. Similarly, constraints involving \geq are converted to equations by *subtracting* a nonnegative **surplus variable**. For example, the inequality $2x_1 - x_2 + 5x_3 \geq 12$ is written as

$$2x_1 - x_2 + 5x_3 - s_1 = 12,$$

where $s_1 \geq 0$. The surplus variable s_1 represents the amount by which $2x_1 - x_2 + 5x_3$ exceeds 12.

Example 1 Restate the following problem in terms of equations, and write its initial simplex tableau:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= 4x_1 + 10x_2 + 6x_3 \\ \text{subject to } x_1 + 4x_2 + 4x_3 &\geq 8 \\ x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 &\leq 6 \\ 3x_1 + 4x_2 + 8x_3 &\leq 22 \\ x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 &\geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Solution In order to write the constraints as equations, subtract a surplus variable from the \geq constraint and add a slack variable to each \leq constraint. So the problem becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= 4x_1 + 10x_2 + 6x_3 \\ \text{subject to } x_1 + 4x_2 + 4x_3 - s_1 &= 8 \\ x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 + s_2 &= 6 \\ 3x_1 + 4x_2 + 8x_3 + s_3 &= 22 \\ x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0, s_1 \geq 0, s_2 \geq 0, s_3 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Write the objective function as $-4x_1 - 10x_2 - 6x_3 + z = 0$ and use the coefficients of the four equations to write the initial simplex tableau (omitting the z column):

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 4 & 4 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 8 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 6 \\ 3 & 4 & 8 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 22 \\ -4 & -10 & -6 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \cdot \begin{array}{c} \checkmark \\ 1 \end{array}$$

✓ Checkpoint 1

- (a) Restate this problem in terms of equations:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= 3x_1 - 2x_2 \\ \text{subject to } 2x_1 + 3x_2 &\leq 8 \\ 6x_1 - 2x_2 &\geq 3 \\ x_1 + 4x_2 &\geq 1 \\ x_1 \geq 0, x_2 &\geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

- (b) Write the initial simplex tableau.

The tableau in Example 1 resembles those which have appeared previously, and similar terminology is used. The variables whose columns have one entry that is ± 1 and the rest that are 0 will be called **basic variables**; the other variables are nonbasic. A solution

obtained by setting the nonbasic variables equal to 0 and solving for the basic variables (by looking at the constants in the right-hand column) will be called a **basic solution**. A basic solution that is feasible is called a **basic feasible solution**. In the tableau of Example 1, for instance, the basic variables are $s_1, s_2,$ and s_3 , and the basic solution is

$$x_1 = 0, \quad x_2 = 0, \quad x_3 = 0, \quad s_1 = -8, \quad s_2 = 6, \quad \text{and} \quad s_3 = 22.$$

However, because one variable is negative, this solution is not feasible. 

The solution method for problems such as the one in Example 1 consists of two stages. **Stage I** consists of finding a *basic feasible* solution that can be used as the starting point for the simplex method. (This stage is unnecessary in a standard maximization problem, because the solution given by the initial tableau is always feasible.) There are many systematic ways of finding a feasible solution, all of which depend on the fact that row operations produce a tableau that represents a system with the same solutions as the original one. One such technique is explained in the next example. Since the immediate goal is to find a feasible solution, not necessarily an optimal one, the procedures for choosing pivots differ from those in the ordinary simplex method.

Checkpoint 2

State the basic solution given by each tableau. Is it feasible?

$$(a) \begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & & \\ \hline 3 & -5 & 1 & 0 & 0 & & 12 \\ 4 & 7 & 0 & 1 & 0 & & 6 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 & 0 & -1 & & 5 \\ \hline -7 & 4 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & 0 \end{array}$$

$$(b) \begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & & \\ \hline 9 & 8 & -1 & 1 & 0 & & 12 \\ -5 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 1 & & 7 \\ \hline 4 & 2 & 3 & 0 & 0 & & 0 \end{array}$$

Example 2

Find a basic feasible solution for the problem in Example 1, whose initial tableau is

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 4 & 4 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 8 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 6 \\ 3 & 4 & 8 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 22 \\ \hline -4 & -10 & -6 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}.$$

Solution In the basic solution given by this tableau, s_1 has a negative value. The only nonzero entry in its column is the -1 in row 1. Choose any *positive* entry in row 1 except the entry on the far right. The column that the chosen entry is in will be the pivot column. We choose the first positive entry in row 1: the 1 in column 1. The pivot row is determined in the usual way by considering quotients (the constant at the right end of the row, divided by the positive entry in the pivot column) in each row except the objective row:

$$\frac{8}{1} = 8, \quad \frac{6}{1} = 6, \quad \frac{22}{3} = 7\frac{1}{3}.$$

The smallest quotient is 6, so the pivot is the 1 in row 2, column 1. Pivoting in the usual way leads to the tableau

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 0 & 1 & 2 & -1 & -1 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 6 \\ 0 & -5 & 2 & 0 & -3 & 1 & 4 \\ \hline 0 & 2 & 2 & 0 & 4 & 0 & 24 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} -R_2 + R_1 \\ \\ -3R_2 + R_3 \\ 4R_2 + R_4 \end{array}$$

and the basic solution

$$x_1 = 6, \quad x_2 = 0, \quad x_3 = 0, \quad s_1 = -2, \quad s_2 = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad s_3 = 4.$$

Since the basic variable s_1 is negative, this solution is not feasible. So we repeat the pivoting process. The s_1 column has a -1 in row 1, so we choose a positive entry in that row, namely, the 1 in row 1, column 2. This choice makes column 2 the pivot column. The pivot row is determined by the quotients $\frac{2}{1} = 2$ and $\frac{6}{3} = 2$. (Negative entries in the pivot column and the entry in the objective row are not used.) Since there is a tie, we can choose either

row 1 or row 2. We choose row 1 and use the 1 in row 1, column 2, as the pivot. Pivoting produces the tableau

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 0 & 1 & 2 & -1 & -1 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & -4 & 3 & 4 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 12 & -5 & -8 & 1 & 14 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & -2 & 2 & 6 & 0 & 20 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} -3R_1 + R_2 \\ 5R_1 + R_3 \\ -2R_1 + R_4 \end{array}$$


and the basic *feasible* solution

$$x_1 = 0, \quad x_2 = 2, \quad x_3 = 0, \quad s_1 = 0, \quad s_2 = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad s_3 = 14.$$

Once a basic feasible solution has been found, Stage I is ended. The procedures used in Stage I are summarized here.*

Finding a Basic Feasible Solution

1. If any basic variable has a negative value, locate the -1 in that variable's column and note the row it is in.
2. In the row determined in Step 1, choose a positive entry (other than the one at the far right) and note the column it is in. This is the pivot column.
3. Use the positive entries in the pivot column (except in the objective row) to form quotients and select the pivot.
4. Pivot as usual, which results in the pivot column having one entry that is 1 and the rest that are 0's.
5. Repeat Steps 1–4 until every basic variable is nonnegative, so that the basic solution given by the tableau is feasible. If it ever becomes impossible to continue, then the problem has no feasible solution.

One way to make the required choices systematically is to choose the first possibility in each case (going from the top for rows and from the left for columns). However, any choice meeting the required conditions may be used. For maximum efficiency, it is usually best to choose the pivot column in Step 2, so that the pivot is in the same row chosen in Step 1, if this is possible. 

In **Stage II**, the simplex method is applied as usual to the tableau that produced the basic feasible solution in Stage I. Just as in Section 7.4, each round of pivoting replaces the basic feasible solution of one tableau with the basic feasible solution of a new tableau in such a way that the value of the objective function is increased, until an optimal value is obtained (or it becomes clear that no optimal solution exists).

✓ Checkpoint 3

The initial tableau of a maximization problem is shown. Use column 1 as the pivot column for carrying out Stage I, and state the basic feasible solution that results.

$$\begin{array}{cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 1 & 3 & 1 & 0 & 70 \\ 2 & 4 & 0 & -1 & 50 \\ \hline -8 & -10 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}$$

Example 3

Solve the linear programming problem in Example 1 of this section.

Solution A basic feasible solution for this problem was found in Example 2 by using the tableau shown below. However, this solution is not maximal, because there is a negative indicator in the objective row. So we use the simplex method. The most negative

*Except in rare cases that do not occur in this book, this method either eventually produces a basic feasible solution or shows that one does not exist. The *two-phase method* using artificial variables, which is discussed in more advanced texts, works in all cases and often is more efficient.

indicator determines the pivot column, and the usual quotients determine that the number 2 in row 1, column 3, is the pivot:

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \text{Quotients} \\ \hline 0 & 1 & \mathbf{2} & -1 & -1 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & -4 & 3 & 4 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 12 & -5 & -8 & 1 & 14/12 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & -2 & 2 & 6 & 0 & 20 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} 2/2 \leftarrow \text{Smallest} \\ \\ \\ \end{array}$$

↑
Most negative indicator

Pivoting leads to the final tableau:

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 0 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & -4 & 3 & 4 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 12 & -5 & -8 & 1 & 14 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & -2 & 2 & 6 & 0 & 20 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} \frac{1}{2}R_1 \\ \\ \\ \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 0 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & -6 & 0 & 1 & -2 & 1 & 2 \\ \hline 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 5 & 0 & 22 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} 4R_1 + R_2 \\ -12R_1 + R_3 \\ 2R_1 + R_4 \end{array}$$

Therefore, the maximum value of z occurs when $x_1 = 4$, $x_2 = 0$, and $x_3 = 1$, in which case $z = 22$. 4

Checkpoint 4

Complete Stage II and find an optimal solution for Checkpoint 3 on page 410. What is the optimal value of the objective function z ?

Minimization Problems

When dealing with minimization problems, we use y_1, y_2, y_3 , etc., as variables and denote the objective function by w . The two-stage method for maximization problems illustrated in Examples 1–3 also provides a means of solving minimization problems. To see why, consider this simple fact: When a number t gets smaller, $-t$ gets larger, and vice versa. For instance, if t goes from 6 down to -8 , then $-t$ goes from -6 up to 8. Thus, if w is the objective function of a linear programming problem, the feasible solution that produces the minimum value of w also produces the maximum value of $-w$, and vice versa. Therefore, to solve a minimization problem with objective function w , we need only solve the maximization problem with the same constraints and objective function $z = -w$.

Example 4

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Minimize} & w = 2y_1 + y_2 - y_3 \\ \text{subject to} & -y_1 - y_2 + y_3 \leq -4 \\ & y_1 + 3y_2 + 3y_3 \geq 6 \\ & y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0. \end{array}$$

Solution Make the constant in the first constraint positive by multiplying both sides by -1 . Then solve this maximization problem:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Maximize} & z = -w = -2y_1 - y_2 + y_3 \\ \text{subject to} & y_1 + y_2 - y_3 \geq 4 \\ & y_1 + 3y_2 + 3y_3 \geq 6 \\ & y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0. \end{array}$$

Convert the constraints to equations by subtracting surplus variables, and set up the first tableau:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc|c} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 0 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & 3 & 0 & -1 & 6 \\ \hline 2 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}$$

The basic solution given by this tableau, namely, $y_1 = 0, y_2 = 0, y_3 = 0, s_1 = -4,$ and $s_2 = -6,$ is not feasible, so the procedures of Stage I must be used to find a basic feasible solution. In the column of the negative basic variable s_1 , there is a -1 in row 1; we choose the first positive entry in that row, so that column 1 will be the pivot column. The quotients $\frac{4}{1} = 4$ and $\frac{6}{1} = 6$ show that the pivot is the 1 in row 1, column 1. Pivoting produces this tableau:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc|c} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ \hline 0 & -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & -8 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} -R_1 + R_2 \\ -2R_1 + R_3 \end{array}$$

The basic solution $y_1 = 4, y_2 = 0, y_3 = 0, s_1 = 0,$ and $s_2 = -2$ is not feasible because s_2 is negative, so we repeat the process. We choose the first positive entry in row 2 (the row containing the -1 in the s_2 column), which is in column 2, so that column 2 is the pivot column. The relevant quotients are $\frac{4}{1} = 4$ and $\frac{2}{2} = 1$, so the pivot is the 2 in row 2, column 2. Pivoting produces a new tableau:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc|c} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \\ \hline 0 & -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & -8 \end{array} \quad \frac{1}{2}R_2$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc|c} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 1 & 0 & -3 & -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 3 & \frac{5}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & -7 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} -R_2 + R_1 \\ R_2 + R_3 \end{array}$$


The basic solution $y_1 = 3, y_2 = 1, y_3 = 0, s_1 = 0,$ and $s_2 = 0$ is feasible, so Stage I is complete. However, this solution is not optimal, because the objective row contains the negative indicator $-\frac{1}{2}$ in column 5. According to the simplex method, column 5 is the next pivot column. The only positive ratio, $3/\frac{1}{2} = 6,$ is in row 1, so the pivot is $\frac{1}{2}$ in row 1, column 5. Pivoting produces the final tableau:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc|c} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 2 & 0 & -6 & -3 & 1 & 6 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 3 & \frac{5}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & -7 \end{array} \quad 2R_1$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc|c} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 2 & 0 & -6 & -3 & 1 & 6 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 0 & 4 \\ \hline 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & -4 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} \frac{1}{2}R_1 + R_2 \\ \frac{1}{2}R_1 + R_3 \end{array}$$

✓ Checkpoint 5

Minimize $w = 2y_1 + 3y_2$
 subject to $y_1 + y_2 \geq 10$
 $2y_1 + y_2 \geq 16$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0.$

Since there are no negative indicators, the solution given by this tableau ($y_1 = 0, y_2 = 4, y_3 = 0, s_1 = 0,$ and $s_2 = 6$) is optimal. The maximum value of $z = -w$ is -4 . Therefore, the minimum value of the original objective function w is $-(-4) = 4$, which occurs when $y_1 = 0, y_2 = 4,$ and $y_3 = 0.$ 

Equation Constraints

Recall that, for any real numbers a and b ,

$$a = b \quad \text{exactly when } a \geq b \text{ and simultaneously } a \leq b.$$

Thus, an equation such as $y_1 + 3y_2 + 3y_3 = 6$ is equivalent to this pair of inequalities:

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 + 3y_2 + 3y_3 &\geq 6 \\ y_1 + 3y_2 + 3y_3 &\leq 6. \end{aligned}$$

In a linear programming problem, each equation constraint should be replaced in this way by a pair of inequality constraints. Then the problem can be solved by the two-stage method.

Example 5

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Minimize } w &= 2y_1 + y_2 - y_3 \\ \text{subject to } & -y_1 - y_2 + y_3 \leq -4 \\ & y_1 + 3y_2 + 3y_3 = 6 \\ & y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Solution Multiply the first inequality by -1 and replace the equation by an equivalent pair of inequalities, as just explained, to obtain this problem:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Maximize } z &= -w = -2y_1 - y_2 + y_3 \\ \text{subject to } & y_1 + y_2 - y_3 \geq 4 \\ & y_1 + 3y_2 + 3y_3 \geq 6 \\ & y_1 + 3y_2 + 3y_3 \leq 6 \\ & y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

Convert the constraints to equations by subtracting surplus variables s_1 and s_2 from the first two inequalities and adding a slack variable s_3 to the third. Then the first tableau is

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & 3 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 6 \\ 1 & 3 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 6 \\ \hline 2 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}.$$

The basic solution given by this tableau is $y_1 = 0, y_2 = 0, y_3 = 0, s_1 = -4, s_2 = -6$, and $s_3 = 6$, which is not feasible. So we begin Stage I. The basic variable s_1 has a negative value because of the -1 in row 1. We choose the first positive entry in that row. So column 1 will be the pivot column. The quotients are $\frac{4}{1} = 4$ in row 1 and $\frac{6}{1} = 6$ in rows 2 and 3, which means that the pivot is the 1 in row 1, column 1. Pivoting produces this tableau:

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ \hline 0 & -1 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & -8 \end{array}.$$

Now the basic variable s_2 has a negative value because of the -1 in row 2. We choose the first nonzero entry in this row and form the quotients $\frac{4}{1} = 4$ in row 1 and $\frac{2}{2} = 1$ in rows 2

and 3. Thus, there are two choices for the pivot, and we take the 2 in row 2, column 2. Pivoting produces the tableau

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 0 & -3 & -1.5 & .5 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & .5 & -.5 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 3 & 2.5 & -.5 & 0 & -7 \end{array}$$

This tableau gives the basic feasible solution $y_1 = 3, y_2 = 1, y_3 = 0, s_1 = 0, s_2 = 0,$ and $s_3 = 0$, so Stage I is complete. Now apply the simplex method. One round of pivoting produces the final tableau:

$$\begin{array}{cccccc|c} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 0 & -3 & -1.5 & 0 & -.5 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & .5 & 0 & .5 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 3 & 2.5 & 0 & .5 & -7 \end{array}$$


Therefore, the minimum value of $w = -z$ is $w = -(-7) = 7$, which occurs when $y_1 = 3, y_2 = 1,$ and $y_3 = 0$.

You may have noticed that Example 5 is just Example 4 with the last inequality constraint replaced by an equation constraint. Note, however, that the optimal solutions are different in the two examples. The minimal value of w found in Example 4 is smaller than the one found in Example 5, but does not satisfy the equation constraint in Example 5.

The two-stage method used in Examples 1–5 is summarized here.

Solving Nonstandard Problems

1. Replace each equation constraint by an equivalent pair of inequality constraints.
2. If necessary, write each constraint with a positive constant.
3. Convert a minimization problem to a maximization problem by letting $z = -w$.
4. Add slack variables and subtract surplus variables as needed to convert the constraints into equations.
5. Write the initial simplex tableau.
6. Find a basic feasible solution for the problem if such a solution exists (Stage I).
7. When a basic feasible solution is found, use the simplex method to solve the problem (Stage II).

 **NOTE** It may happen that the tableau which gives the basic feasible solution in Stage I has no negative indicators in its last row. In this case, the solution found is already optimal and Stage II is not necessary.

Applications

Many real-world applications of linear programming involve mixed constraints. Since they typically include a large number of variables and constraints, technology is normally required to solve such problems.

Example 6

Business A college textbook publisher has received orders from two colleges: C_1 and C_2 . C_1 needs 500 books, and C_2 needs 1000. The publisher can supply the books from either of two warehouses. Warehouse W_1 has 900 books available, and warehouse W_2 has 700. The costs to ship a book from each warehouse to each college are as follows:

		To	
		C_1	C_2
From	W_1	\$1.20	\$1.80
	W_2	\$2.10	\$1.50

How many books should be sent from each warehouse to each college to minimize the shipping costs?

Solution To begin, let

- y_1 = the number of books shipped from W_1 to C_1 ;
- y_2 = the number of books shipped from W_2 to C_1 ;
- y_3 = the number of books shipped from W_1 to C_2 ;
- y_4 = the number of books shipped from W_2 to C_2 .

C_1 needs 500 books, so $y_1 + y_2 = 500$, which is equivalent to this pair of inequalities:

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 + y_2 &\geq 500 \\ y_1 + y_2 &\leq 500. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, $y_3 + y_4 = 1000$, which is equivalent to

$$\begin{aligned} y_3 + y_4 &\geq 1000 \\ y_3 + y_4 &\leq 1000. \end{aligned}$$

Since W_1 has 900 books available and W_2 has 700 available,

$$y_1 + y_3 \leq 900 \quad \text{and} \quad y_2 + y_4 \leq 700.$$

The company wants to minimize shipping costs, so the objective function is

$$w = 1.20y_1 + 2.10y_2 + 1.80y_3 + 1.50y_4.$$

Now write the problem as a system of linear equations, adding slack or surplus variables as needed, and let $z = -w$:

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 + y_2 - s_1 &= 500 \\ y_1 + y_2 + s_2 &= 500 \\ y_3 + y_4 - s_3 &= 1000 \\ y_3 + y_4 + s_4 &= 1000 \\ y_1 + y_3 + s_5 &= 900 \\ y_2 + y_4 + s_6 &= 700 \\ 1.20y_1 + 2.10y_2 + 1.80y_3 + 1.50y_4 + z &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Set up the initial simplex tableau:

	y_1	y_2	y_3	y_4	s_1	s_2	s_3	s_4	s_5	s_6	
	1	1	0	0	-1	0	0	0	0	0	500
	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	500
	0	0	1	1	0	0	-1	0	0	0	1000
	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1000
	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	900
	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	700
	1.20	2.10	1.80	1.50	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

The basic solution here is not feasible, because $s_1 = -500$ and $s_3 = -1000$. Stages I and II could be done by hand here, but because of the large size of the matrix, it is more efficient to use technology, such as the program in the Graphing Calculator Appendix. Stage I takes four rounds of pivoting and produces the feasible solution in Figure 7.33.

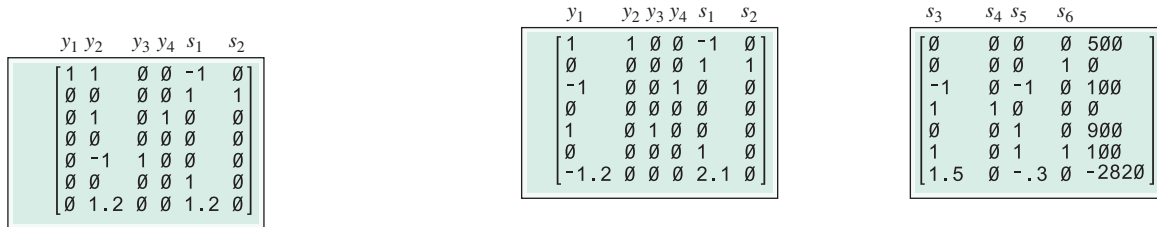


Figure 7.33

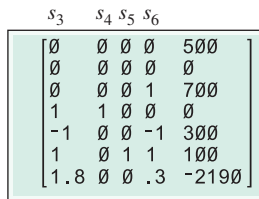


Figure 7.34

Because of the small size of a calculator screen, you must scroll to the right to see the entire matrix. Now Stage II begins. Two rounds of pivoting produce the final tableau (Figure 7.34).

The optimal solution is $y_1 = 500$, $y_2 = 0$, $y_3 = 300$, and $y_4 = 700$, which results in a minimum shipping cost of \$2190. (Remember that the optimal value for the original minimization problem is the negative of the optimal value of the associated maximization problem.)

7.7 Exercises

In Exercises 1–4, (a) restate the problem in terms of equations by introducing slack and surplus variables and (b) write the initial simplex tableau. (See Example 1.)

1. Maximize $z = -5x_1 + 4x_2 - 2x_3$
 subject to $-2x_2 + 5x_3 \geq 8$
 $4x_1 - x_2 + 3x_3 \leq 12$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$.

2. Maximize $z = -x_1 + 4x_2 - 2x_3$
 subject to $2x_1 + 2x_2 + 6x_3 \leq 10$
 $-x_1 + 2x_2 + 4x_3 \geq 7$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$.

3. Maximize $z = 2x_1 - 3x_2 + 4x_3$
 subject to $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 100$
 $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \geq 75$
 $x_1 + x_2 \geq 27$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$.

4. Maximize $z = -x_1 + 5x_2 + x_3$
 subject to $2x_1 + x_3 \leq 40$
 $x_1 + x_2 \geq 18$
 $x_1 + x_3 = 20$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$.

Convert Exercises 5–8 into maximization problems with positive constants on the right side of each constraint, and write the initial simplex tableau. (See Examples 4 and 5.)

5. Minimize $w = 2y_1 + 5y_2 - 3y_3$
 subject to $y_1 + 2y_2 + 3y_3 \geq 115$
 $2y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \leq 200$
 $y_1 + y_3 \geq 50$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0$.

6. Minimize $w = 7y_1 + 6y_2 + y_3$
 subject to $y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \geq 5$
 $-y_1 + y_2 \leq -4$
 $2y_1 + y_2 + 3y_3 \geq 15$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0$.

7. Minimize $w = 10y_1 + 8y_2 + 15y_3$
 subject to $y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \geq 12$
 $5y_1 + 4y_2 + 9y_3 \geq 48$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0$.





8. Minimize $w = y_1 + 2y_2 + y_3 + 5y_4$
 subject to $-y_1 - y_2 + y_3 - y_4 \leq -50$
 $3y_1 + y_2 + 2y_3 + y_4 = 100$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0, y_4 \geq 0$.

Use the two-stage method to solve Exercises 9–20. (See Examples 1–5.)

9. Maximize $z = 12x_1 + 10x_2$
 subject to $x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 24$
 $x_1 + x_2 \leq 40$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.
10. Find $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$, and $x_3 \geq 0$ such that
 $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 150$
 $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \geq 100$
 and $z = 2x_1 + 5x_2 + 3x_3$ is maximized.
11. Find $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$, and $x_3 \geq 0$ such that
 $x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 \leq 38$
 $2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \geq 24$
 and $z = 3x_1 + 2x_2 + 2x_3$ is maximized.
12. Maximize $z = 6x_1 + 8x_2$
 subject to $3x_1 + 12x_2 \geq 48$
 $2x_1 + 4x_2 \leq 60$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.
13. Find $x_1 \geq 0$ and $x_2 \geq 0$ such that
 $x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 18$
 $x_1 + 3x_2 \geq 12$
 $2x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 30$
 and $z = 5x_1 + 10x_2$ is maximized.
14. Find $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0$ such that
 $10y_1 + 5y_2 \geq 100$
 $20y_1 + 10y_2 \geq 160$
 and $w = 4y_1 + 5y_2$ is minimized.
15. Minimize $w = 3y_1 + 2y_2$
 subject to $2y_1 + 3y_2 \geq 60$
 $y_1 + 4y_2 \geq 40$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0$.
16. Minimize $w = 3y_1 + 4y_2$
 subject to $y_1 + 2y_2 \geq 10$
 $y_1 + y_2 \geq 8$
 $2y_1 + y_2 \leq 22$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0$.
17. Maximize $z = 3x_1 + 2x_2$
 subject to $x_1 + x_2 = 50$
 $4x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 120$
 $5x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 200$
 with $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.
18. Maximize $z = 10x_1 + 9x_2$
 subject to $x_1 + x_2 = 30$
 $x_1 + x_2 \geq 25$
 $2x_1 + x_2 \leq 40$
 with $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.

19. Minimize $w = 32y_1 + 40y_2$
 subject to $20y_1 + 10y_2 = 700$
 $25y_1 + 40y_2 \leq 500$
 $18y_1 + 24y_2 \geq 300$
 with $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0$.
20. Minimize $w = 15y_1 + 12y_2$
 subject to $y_1 + 2y_2 \leq 12$
 $3y_1 + y_2 \geq 18$
 $y_1 + y_2 = 10$
 with $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0$.

Use the two-stage method to solve the problem that was set up in the given exercise.

21. Exercise 1 22. Exercise 2
 23. Exercise 3 24. Exercise 4
 25. Exercise 5  26. Exercise 6
 27. Exercise 7  28. Exercise 8

In Exercises 29–32, set up the initial simplex tableau, but do not solve the problem. (See Example 6.)

29. **Business** A company is developing a new additive for gasoline. The additive is a mixture of three liquid ingredients: I, II, and III. For proper performance, the total amount of additive must be at least 10 ounces per barrel of gasoline. However, for safety reasons, the amount of additive should not exceed 15 ounces per barrel of gasoline. At least $\frac{1}{4}$ ounce of ingredient I must be used for every ounce of ingredient II, and at least 1 ounce of ingredient III must be used for every ounce of ingredient I. If the costs of I, II, and III are \$.30, \$.09, and \$.27 per ounce, respectively, find the mixture of the three ingredients that produces the minimum cost of the additive. What is the minimum cost?
30. **Business** A popular soft drink called Sugarlo, which is advertised as having a sugar content of no more than 10%, is blended from five ingredients, each of which has some sugar content. Water may also be added to dilute the mixture. The sugar content of the ingredients and their costs per gallon are given in the table:

	Ingredient					
	1	2	3	4	5	Water
Sugar content (%)	.28	.19	.43	.57	.22	0
Cost (\$/gal.)	.48	.32	.53	.28	.43	.04

At least .01 of the content of Sugarlo must come from ingredient 3 or 4, .01 must come from ingredient 2 or 5, and .01 from ingredient 1 or 4. How much of each ingredient should be used in preparing at least 15,000 gallons of Sugarlo to minimize the cost? What is the minimum cost?

31. **Business** The manufacturer of a popular personal computer has orders from two dealers. Dealer D_1 wants 32 computers, and dealer D_2 wants 20 computers. The manufacturer can fill the orders from either of two warehouses, W_1 or W_2 . W_1 has 25 of the computers on hand, and W_2 has 30. The costs (in dollars)

to ship one computer to each dealer from each warehouse are as follows:

		To	
		D_1	D_2
From	W_1	\$14	\$22
	W_2	\$12	\$10

How should the orders be filled to minimize shipping costs? What is the minimum cost?

- 32. Natural Science** Mark, who is ill, takes vitamin pills. Each day, he must have at least 16 units of vitamin A, 5 units of vitamin B₁, and 20 units of vitamin C. He can choose between pill 1, which costs 10¢ and contains 8 units of vitamin A, 1 unit of vitamin B₁, and 2 units of vitamin C, and pill 2, which costs 20¢ and contains 2 units of vitamin A, 1 unit of vitamin B₁, and 7 units of vitamin C. How many of each pill should he buy in order to minimize his cost?

Use the two-stage method to solve Exercises 33–40. (See Examples 5 and 6.)

- 33. Business** Southwestern Oil supplies two distributors in the Northwest from two outlets: S_1 and S_2 . Distributor D_1 needs at least 3000 barrels of oil, and distributor D_2 needs at least 5000 barrels. The two outlets can each furnish up to 5000 barrels of oil. The costs per barrel to ship the oil are given in the table:

		Distributors	
		D_1	D_2
Outlets	S_1	\$30	\$20
	S_2	\$25	\$22

There is also a shipping tax per barrel as given in the table below.

	D_1	D_2
S_1	\$2	\$6
S_2	\$5	\$4

Southwestern Oil is determined to spend no more than \$40,000 on shipping tax. How should the oil be supplied to minimize shipping costs?


- 34. Business** Change Exercise 33 so that the two outlets each furnish exactly 5000 barrels of oil, with everything else the same. Solve the problem as in Example 5.
- 35. Business** Topgrade Turf lawn seed mixture contains three types of seeds: bluegrass, rye, and Bermuda. The costs per pound of the three types of seed are 12¢, 15¢, and 5¢, respectively. In each batch, there must be at least 20% bluegrass seed, and the amount of Bermuda seed must be no more than two-thirds the amount of rye seed. To fill current orders, the company must make at least 5000 pounds of the mixture. How much of each kind of seed should be used to minimize costs?
- 36. Business** Change Exercise 35 so that the company must make exactly 5000 pounds of the mixture. Solve the problem as in Example 5.

- 37. Finance** A bank has set aside a maximum of \$25 million for commercial and home loans. Every million dollars in commercial loans requires 2 lengthy application forms, while every million dollars in home loans requires 3 lengthy application forms. The bank cannot process more than 72 application forms at this time. The bank's policy is to loan at least four times as much for home loans as for commercial loans. Because of prior commitments, at least \$10 million will be used for these two types of loans. The bank earns 12% on home loans and 10% on commercial loans. What amount of money should be allotted for each type of loan to maximize the interest income?

- 38. Finance** Virginia Keleske has decided to invest a \$100,000 inheritance in government securities that earn 7% per year, municipal bonds that earn 6% per year, and mutual funds that earn an average of 10% per year. She will spend at least \$40,000 on government securities, and she wants at least half the inheritance to go to bonds and mutual funds. Government securities have an initial fee of 2%, municipal bonds an initial fee of 1%, and mutual funds an initial fee of 3%. Virginia has \$2400 available to pay initial fees. How much money should go into each type of investment to maximize the interest while meeting the constraints? What is the maximum interest she can earn?

- 39. Business** A brewery produces regular beer and a lower-carbohydrate "light" beer. Steady customers of the brewery buy 12 units of regular beer and 10 units of light beer. While setting up the brewery to produce the beers, the management decides to produce extra beer, beyond that needed to satisfy the steady customers. The cost per unit of regular beer is \$36,000, and the cost per unit of light beer is \$48,000. The number of units of light beer should not exceed twice the number of units of regular beer. At least 20 additional units of beer can be sold. How much of each type of beer should be made so as to minimize total production costs?

- 40. Business** The chemistry department at a local college decides to stock at least 800 small test tubes and 500 large test tubes. It wants to buy at least 1500 test tubes to take advantage of a special price. Since the small tubes are broken twice as often as the large, the department will order at least twice as many small tubes as large. If the small test tubes cost 15¢ each and the large ones, made of a cheaper glass, cost 12¢ each, how many of each size should the department order to minimize cost?

 **Business** Use technology to solve the following exercises, whose initial tableaus were set up in Exercises 29–31.

41. Exercise 29 42. Exercise 30
43. Exercise 31

Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) Maximize $z = 3x_1 - 2x_2$
subject to $2x_1 + 3x_2 + s_1 = 8$
 $6x_1 - 2x_2 - s_2 = 3$
 $x_1 + 4x_2 - s_3 = 1$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, s_1 \geq 0, s_2 \geq 0, s_3 \geq 0.$

$$(b) \left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 8 \\ 6 & -2 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 3 \\ \hline 1 & 4 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 \\ -3 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

2. (a) $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, s_1 = 12, s_2 = 6, s_3 = -5$; no
 (b) $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 0, s_1 = 12, s_2 = 7$; yes

$$3. \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 0 & 1 & 1 & \frac{1}{2} & 45 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2} & 25 \\ \hline 0 & 6 & 0 & -4 & 200 \end{array} \right]$$

- $x_1 = 25, x_2 = 0, s_1 = 45,$ and $s_2 = 0$.
 4. The optimal value $z = 560$ occurs when $x_1 = 70, x_2 = 0, s_1 = 0,$ and $s_2 = 90$
 5. $y_1 = 10$ and $y_2 = 0; w = 20$

CHAPTER 7 Summary and Review

Key Terms and Symbols

- | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|
| <p>7.1 linear inequality
graphs of linear inequalities
boundary
half-plane
system of inequalities
region of feasible solutions (feasible region)</p> <p>7.2 linear programming
objective function</p> | <p>constraints
corner point
bounded feasible region
unbounded feasible region
corner point theorem</p> <p>7.3 applications of linear programming</p> <p>7.4 standard maximum form
slack variable
simplex tableau</p> | <p>indicator
pivot and pivoting
final simplex tableau
basic variables
nonbasic variables
basic feasible solution</p> <p>7.6 transpose of a matrix
dual
theorem of duality
shadow costs</p> | <p>7.7 surplus variable
basic variables
basic solution
basic feasible solution
Stage I
Stage II</p> |
|---|--|---|--|

Chapter 7 Key Concepts

Graphing a Linear Inequality

Graph the boundary line as a solid line if the inequality includes “or equal to,” and as a dashed line otherwise. Shade the half-plane for which the inequality is true. The graph of a system of inequalities, called the **region of feasible solutions**, includes all points that satisfy all the inequalities of the system at the same time.

Solving Linear Programming Problems

Graphical Method: Determine the objective function and all necessary constraints. Graph the region of feasible solutions. The maximum or minimum value will occur at one or more of the corner points of this region.

Simplex Method: Determine the objective function and all necessary constraints. Convert each constraint into an equation by adding slack variables. Set up the initial simplex tableau. Locate the most negative indicator. Form the quotients to determine the pivot. Use row operations to change the pivot to 1 and all other numbers in that column to 0. If the indicators are all positive or 0, this is the final tableau. If not, choose a new pivot and repeat the process until no indicators are negative. Read the solution from the final tableau. The optimum value of the objective function is the number in the lower right corner of the final tableau. For problems with **mixed constraints**, replace each equation constraint by a pair of inequality constraints. Then add slack variables and subtract surplus variables as needed to convert each constraint into an equation. In Stage I, use row operations to transform the matrix until the solution is feasible. In Stage II, use the simplex method as just described. For **minimization** problems, let the objective function be w and set $-w = z$. Then proceed as with mixed constraints.

Solving Minimization Problems with Duals

Find the dual maximization problem. Solve the dual problem with the simplex method. The minimum value of the objective function w is the maximum value of the dual objective function z . The optimal solution is found in the entries in the bottom row of the columns corresponding to the slack variables.

Chapter 7 Review Exercises

Graph each of the given linear inequalities.

- $y \leq 3x + 2$
- $2x - y \geq 6$
- $3x + 4y \geq 12$
- $y \leq 4$

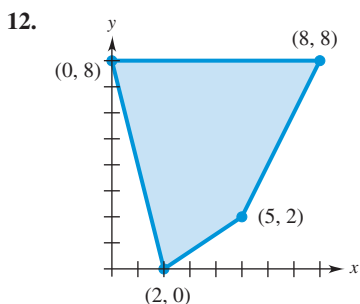
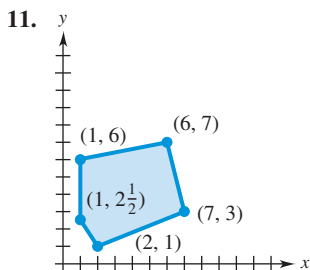
Graph the solution of each of the given systems of inequalities.

- $x + y \leq 6$
 $2x - y \geq 3$
- $4x + y \geq 8$
 $2x - 3y \leq 6$
- $2 \leq x \leq 5$
 $1 \leq y \leq 6$
 $x - y \leq 3$
- $x + 2y \leq 4$
 $2x - 3y \leq 6$
 $x \geq 0, y \geq 0$

Set up a system of inequalities for each of the given problems, and then graph the region of feasible solutions.

- Business** A company produces three types of engineering components: pistons, rings, and valves. These are sold at \$10, \$6, and \$4, respectively. A piston requires an hour for manufacturing, 10 hours for machining, and 2 hours for packing. The rings need an hour for manufacturing, 4 hours for machining, and 2 hours for packing, while the valves need an hour for manufacturing, 5 hours for machining, and 6 hours for packing. The total time taken for preparing, machining, and packing are 200, 600, and 300 hours, respectively. Determine the most profitable mix.
- Business** A company makes two kinds of pizza: basic (cheese and tomatoes) and margherita (cheese, tomatoes, and basil). The company sells at least 60 units a day of the pizza margherita and 40 units a day of the basic. The cost of the tomatoes and basil is \$2 per unit for the pizza margherita and the cost of tomatoes is \$1 per unit for the basic. No more than \$320 a day can be spent on tomatoes and basil together. The cheese used for the pizza margherita is \$5 per unit, and the cheese for the basic is \$4 per unit. The company spends no more than \$1000 a day on cheese.

Use the given regions to find the maximum and minimum values of the objective function $z = 3x + 4y$.



Use the graphical method to solve Exercises 13–16.

- Maximize $z = 6x + 2y$
subject to $2x + 7y \leq 14$
 $2x + 3y \leq 10$
 $x \geq 0, y \geq 0$.

- Find $x \geq 0$ and $y \geq 0$ such that
 $8x + 9y \geq 72$
 $6x + 8y \geq 72$
and $w = 2x + 10y$ is minimized.

- Find $x \geq 0$ and $y \geq 0$ such that
 $x + y \leq 50$
 $2x + y \geq 20$
 $x + 2y \geq 30$
and $w = 5x + 2y$ is minimized.

- Maximize $z = 5x - 2y$
subject to $3x + 2y \leq 12$
 $5x + y \geq 5$
 $x \geq 0, y \geq 0$.

- Business** How many of each kind of statistical report (summary or inference) should Linda Quinn create in Exercise 9 in order to maximize profit if the summary reports earn a profit of \$500 and the inference reports produce a profit of \$750? (Assume it is possible to complete a fractional part of a project.)

- How many units of each pizza in Exercise 10 should the company make in order to maximize revenue if the basic pizza sells for \$15 per unit and the pizza margherita sells for \$20 per unit.

- Finance** Rajesh wanted to invest \$100,000 in two bonds. The maximum investment allowed in each is \$75,000. Past record says the first and the second bond give returns of 10% and 30%, with a risk of 4 and 9 (on a scale of 0–10), respectively. Rajesh wishes to maximize his return, but not accept an average return below 15% or a risk factor above 6. How much should he invest in each bond?

- Finance** The Alger Spectra Z Fund sells at \$15 a share and has a 3-year average annual return of \$2 per share. The risk measure of standard deviation is 17. The Dynamic US Growth Fund sells for \$22 a share and has a 3-year average annual return of \$3.50 a share. The risk measure of standard deviation is 20. Kimberly Bramer wants to spend no more than \$5016 investing in these two funds, but she wants to obtain at least \$700 in annual revenue. Kimberly also wants to minimize her risk. Determine how many shares of each stock Kimberly should buy. (Data from: www.morningstar.com as of May 2013.)

For each of the following problems, (a) add slack variables and (b) set up the initial simplex tableau.

21. Maximize $z = 5x_1 + 6x_2 + 3x_3$
 subject to $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 100$
 $2x_1 + 3x_2 \leq 500$
 $x_1 + 2x_3 \leq 350$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

22. Minimize $z = x_1 - 3x_2 + 2x_3$
 subject to $3x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 \leq 7$
 $-2x_1 + 4x_2 \leq 12$
 $-4x_1 + 3x_2 + 8x_3 \leq 10$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

23. Maximize $z = x_1 + 8x_2 + 2x_3$
 subject to $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 90$
 $2x_1 + 5x_2 + x_3 \leq 120$
 $x_1 + 3x_2 \leq 80$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0.$

24. Maximize $z = 15x_1 + 12x_2$
 subject to $2x_1 + 5x_2 \leq 50$
 $x_1 + 3x_2 \leq 25$
 $4x_1 + x_2 \leq 18$
 $x_1 + x_2 \leq 12$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0.$

For each of the following, use the simplex method to solve the maximization linear programming problems with initial tableaus as given.

25.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 & 28 \\ 2 & 4 & 8 & 0 & 1 & 32 \\ \hline -5 & -2 & -3 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

26.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 10 \\ 9 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 15 \\ \hline -2 & -3 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

27.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 50 \\ 4 & 24 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 20 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 15 \\ \hline -5 & -3 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

28.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 38 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 12 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 30 \\ \hline -1 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

Use the simplex method to solve the problem that was set up in the given exercise.

29. Exercise 21 30. Exercise 22
 31. Exercise 23 32. Exercise 24

For Exercises 33–36, (a) select appropriate variables, (b) write the objective function, and (c) write the constraints as inequalities.

33. **Business** Roberta Hernandez sells three items—A, B, and C—in her gift shop. Each unit of A costs her \$2 to buy, \$1 to sell, and \$2 to deliver. For each unit of B, the costs are \$3, \$2, and \$2, respectively, and for each unit of C, the costs are \$6, \$2, and \$4, respectively. The profit on A is \$4, on B it is \$3, and on C it is \$3. How many of each item should she order to maximize her profit if she can spend \$1200 to buy, \$800 to sell, and \$500 to deliver?

34. **Business** A chemical factory produces two products A and B that involves two operations. Three units of a by-product, C, is also produced along one unit of B. The company earns \$3, \$8, and \$2 profit per unit of A, B, and C. Product A requires 3 hours each for both the operations; B requires 4 and 5 hours for the two operations, respectively. The total time available for both operations is 18 and 21 hours, respectively. The company can sell a maximum of 5 units of C. How much A and B should be produced to maximize the company's profit?

35. **Business** The Aged Wood Winery makes two white wines—Fruity and Crystal—from two kinds of grapes and sugar. The wines require the amounts of each ingredient per gallon and produce a profit per gallon as shown in the following table:

	Grape A (bushels)	Grape B (bushels)	Sugar (pounds)	Profit (dollars)
Fruity	2	2	2	12
Crystal	1	3	1	15

The winery has available 110 bushels of grape A, 125 bushels of grape B, and 90 pounds of sugar. How much of each wine should be made to maximize profit?

36. **Business** A company makes three sizes of plastic bags: 5 gallon, 10 gallon, and 20 gallon. The production time in hours for cutting, sealing, and packaging a unit of each size is as follows:

Size	Cutting	Sealing	Packaging
5 gallon	1	1	2
10 gallon	1.1	1.2	3
20 gallon	1.5	1.3	4

There are at most 8 hours available each day for each of the three operations. If the profit per unit is \$1 for 5-gallon bags, \$.90 for 10-gallon bags, and \$.95 for 20-gallon bags, how many of each size should be made per day to maximize the profit?

37. When is it necessary to use the simplex method rather than the graphical method?
 38. What types of problems can be solved with the use of slack variables and surplus variables?

39. What kind of problem can be solved with the method of duals?
40. In solving a linear programming problem, you are given the following initial tableau:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 4 & 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 & 9 \\ 5 & 4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 10 \\ -6 & -7 & -5 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right].$$

- (a) What is the problem being solved?
- (b) If the 1 in row 1, column 4, were a -1 rather than a 1, how would it change your answer to part (a)?
- (c) After several steps of the simplex algorithm, the following tableau results:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} .6 & 0 & 1 & .4 & -.2 & 1.6 \\ 1.1 & 1 & 0 & -.1 & .3 & 2.1 \\ 4.7 & 0 & 0 & 1.3 & 1.1 & 22.7 \end{array} \right].$$

What is the solution? (List only the values of the original variables and the objective function. Do not include slack or surplus variables.)

- (d) What is the dual of the problem you found in part (a)?
- (e) What is the solution of the dual you found in part (d)? [Do not perform any steps of the simplex algorithm; just examine the tableau given in part (c).]

The tableaus in Exercises 41–43 are the final tableaus of minimization problems solved by the method of duals. State the solution and the minimum value of the objective function for each problem.

41.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 12 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 & 5 & 3 & 5 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -2 & 7 & -6 & 8 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 5 & 7 & 3 & 172 \end{array} \right]$$

42.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 0 & 0 & 1 & 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 4 & -2 & 2 & 8 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 10 & 7 & 0 & 12 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 9 & 5 & 8 & 62 \end{array} \right]$$

43.
$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 7 & -1 & 100 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 3 & 27 \\ 0 & 0 & 7 & 2 & 640 \end{array} \right]$$

Use the method of duals to solve these minimization problems.

44. Minimize $z = x_1 - 3x_2 - 2x_3$
subject to $3x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 \leq 7$
 $2x_1 - 4x_2 \geq 12$
 $-4x_1 + 3x_2 + 8x_3 = 10$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3$ is unrestricted.
45. Maximize $z = 10x_1 + 8x_2$
subject to $x_1 + 2x_2 \geq 5$
 $2x_1 - x_2 \geq 12$
 $x_1 + 3x_2 \geq 4$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2$ is unrestricted.

46. Maximize $z = 10x_1 + 6x_2$
subject to $x_1 + x_2 \leq 100$
 $10x_1 + 4x_2 \leq 600$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.

Write the initial simplex tableau for each of these mixed-constraint problems.

47. Maximize $z = 3x_1 - x_2$
subject to $2x_1 + x_2 \geq 2$
 $x_1 + 3x_2 \leq 2$
 $x_2 \leq 4$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.
48. Minimize $w = 4y_1 + 2y_2$
subject to $y_1 + 3y_2 \geq 6$
 $2y_1 + 8y_2 \leq 21$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0$.
49. Minimize $w = 12y_1 + 20y_2 - 8y_3$
subject to $y_1 + y_2 + 2y_3 \geq 48$
 $y_1 + y_2 \leq 12$
 $y_3 \geq 10$
 $3y_1 + y_3 \geq 30$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0$.
50. Maximize $w = 6x_1 - 3x_2 + 4x_3$
subject to $2x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 112$
 $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \geq 80$
 $x_1 + x_2 \leq 45$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$.

The given tableaus are the final tableaus of minimization problems solved by letting $w = -z$. Give the solution and the minimum value of the objective function for each problem.

51.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 5 & 0 & 17 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 & 1 & 1 & 25 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 4 & 2 & \frac{1}{2} & 8 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 2 & 5 & 0 & -427 \end{array} \right]$$

52.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 0 & 0 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 6 & 6 & 92 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 2 & 47 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 68 \\ 0 & 0 & 4 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 3 & 35 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 & 0 & 0 & 2 & 9 & -1957 \end{array} \right]$$

Use the two-stage method to solve these mixed-constraint problems.

53. Exercise 47
54. Exercise 48
55. Minimize $z = x_1 + x_2$
subject to $2x_1 + x_2 \geq 4$
 $x_1 + 7x_2 \geq 7$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.

56. Maximize $z = 2x_1 + 4x_2$
 subject to $3x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 12$
 $5x_1 + x_2 \geq 5$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.

Business Solve the following maximization problems, which were begun in Exercises 33–36.

57. Exercise 33 58. Exercise 34
 59. Exercise 35 60. Exercise 36

Business Solve the following minimization problems.

61. Cauchy Cannery produces canned corn, beans, and carrots. Demand for vegetables requires the company to produce at least 1000 cases per month. Based on past sales, it should produce at least twice as many cases of corn as of beans and at least 340 cases of carrots. It costs \$10 to produce a case of corn, \$15 to produce a case of beans, and \$25 to produce a case of carrots. How many cases of each vegetable should be produced to minimize costs? What is the minimum cost?
62. A contractor builds boathouses in two basic models: the Atlantic and the Pacific. Each Atlantic model requires 1000 feet of framing lumber, 3000 cubic feet of concrete, and \$2000 for advertising. Each Pacific model requires 2000 feet of framing lumber, 3000 cubic feet of concrete, and \$3000 for advertising. Contracts call for using at least 8000 feet of framing lumber, 18,000 cubic feet of concrete, and \$15,000 worth of advertising. If the total spent on each Atlantic model is \$3000 and the total

spent on each Pacific model is \$4000, how many of each model should be built to minimize costs?

Business Solve these mixed-constraint problems.

63. Brand X Cannery produces canned whole tomatoes and tomato sauce. This season, the company has available 3,000,000 kilograms of tomatoes for these two products. To meet the demands of regular customers, it must produce at least 80,000 kilograms of sauce and 800,000 kilograms of whole tomatoes. The cost per kilogram is \$4 to produce canned whole tomatoes and \$3.25 to produce tomato sauce. Labor agreements require that at least 110,000 person-hours be used. Each 1-kilogram can of sauce requires 3 minutes for one worker to produce, and each 1-kilogram can of whole tomatoes requires 6 minutes for one worker. How many kilograms of tomatoes should Brand X use for each product to minimize cost? (For simplicity, assume that the production of y_1 kilograms of canned whole tomatoes and y_2 kilograms of tomato sauce requires $y_1 + y_2$ kilograms of tomatoes.)
64. A steel company produces two types of alloys. A run of type I requires 3000 pounds of molybdenum and 2000 tons of iron ore pellets, as well as \$2000 in advertising. A run of type II requires 3000 pounds of molybdenum and 1000 tons of iron ore pellets, as well as \$3000 in advertising. Total costs are \$15,000 on a run of type I and \$6000 on a run of type II. The company has on hand 18,000 pounds of molybdenum and 7000 tons of iron ore pellets and wants to use all of it. It plans to spend at least \$14,000 on advertising. How much of each type should be produced to minimize cost? What is the minimum cost?

Case Study 7 Cooking with Linear Programming

Constructing a nutritious recipe can be a difficult task. The recipe must produce food that tastes good, and it must also balance the nutrients that each ingredient brings to the dish. This balancing of nutrients is very important in several diet plans that are currently popular. Many of these plans restrict the intake of certain nutrients (usually fat) while allowing for large amounts of other nutrients (protein and carbohydrates are popular choices). The number of calories in the dish is also often minimized. Linear programming can be used to help create recipes that balance nutrients.

In order to develop solutions to this type of problem, we will need to have nutritional data for the ingredients in our recipes. This data can be found in the U.S. Department of Agriculture's USDA Nutrient Database for Standard Reference, available at www.ndb.nal.usda.gov. This database contains the nutrient levels for hundreds of basic foods. The nutrient levels are given per 100 grams of food. Unfortunately, grams are not often used in recipes; instead, kitchen measures like cups, tablespoons, and fractions of vegetables are used. Table 1 shows the conversion factors from grams to more familiar kitchen units and gives serving sizes for various food.

Table 1 Serving Sizes of Various Food

Food	Serving Size
Beef	6 oz = 170 g
Egg	1 egg = 61 g
Feta Cheese	$\frac{1}{4}$ cup = 38 g
Lettuce	$\frac{1}{2}$ cup = 28 g
Milk	1 cup = 244 g
Oil	1 Tbsp = 13.5 g
Onion	1 onion = 110 g
Salad Dressing	1 cup = 250 g
Soy Sauce	1 Tbsp = 18 g
Spinach	1 cup = 180 g
Tomato	1 tomato = 123 g



Consider creating a recipe for a spinach omelet from eggs, milk, vegetable oil, and spinach. The nutrients of interest will be protein,

fat, and carbohydrates. Calories will also be monitored. The amounts of the nutrients and calories for these ingredients are given in Table 2.

Table 2 Nutritional Values per 100 g of Food

Nutrient (units)	Eggs	Milk	Oil	Spinach
Calories (kcal)	152	61.44	884	23
Protein (g)	10.33	3.29	0	2.9
Fat (g)	11.44	3.34	100	.26
Carbohydrates (g)	1.04	4.66	0	3.75

Let x_1 be the number of 100-gram units of eggs to use in the recipe, x_2 be the number of 100-gram units of milk, x_3 be the number of 100-gram units of oil, and x_4 be the number of 100-gram units of spinach. We will want to minimize the number of calories in the dish while providing at least 15 grams of protein, 4 grams of carbohydrates, and 20 grams of fat. The cooking technique specifies that at least $\frac{1}{8}$ of a cup of milk (30.5 grams) must be used in the recipe. We should thus minimize the objective function (using 100-gram units of food)

$$z = 152x_1 + 61.44x_2 + 884x_3 + 23x_4$$

subject to

$$10.33x_1 + 3.29x_2 + 0x_3 + 2.90x_4 \geq 15$$

$$11.44x_1 + 3.34x_2 + 100x_3 + .26x_4 \geq 20$$

$$1.04x_1 + 4.66x_2 + 0x_3 + 3.75x_4 \geq 4$$

$$0x_1 + 1x_2 + 0x_3 + 0x_4 \geq .305.$$

Of course, all variables are subject to nonnegativity constraints:

$$x_1 \geq 0, \quad x_2 \geq 0, \quad x_3 \geq 0, \quad \text{and} \quad x_4 \geq 0.$$

Using a graphing calculator or a computer with linear programming software, we get the following solution:

$$x_1 = 1.2600, \quad x_2 = .3050, \quad x_3 = .0448, \quad \text{and} \quad x_4 = .338.$$

This recipe produces an omelet with 257.63 calories. The amounts of each ingredient are 126 grams of eggs, 30.5 grams of milk, 4.48 grams of oil, and 33.8 grams of spinach. Converting to kitchen units using Table 1, we find the recipe to be approximately 2 eggs, $\frac{1}{8}$ cup milk, 1 teaspoon oil, and $\frac{1}{4}$ cup spinach.

Exercises

1. Consider preparing a high-carbohydrate Greek salad using feta cheese, lettuce, salad dressing, and tomato. The amount

of carbohydrates in the salad should be maximized. In addition, the salad should have less than 260 calories, over 210 milligrams of calcium, and over 6 grams of protein. The salad should also weigh less than 400 grams and be dressed with at least 2 tablespoons ($\frac{1}{8}$ cup) of salad dressing. The amounts of the nutrients and calories for these ingredients are given in Table 3.

Table 3 Nutritional Values per 100 g of Food

Nutrient (units)	Feta Cheese	Lettuce	Salad Dressing	Tomato
Calories (kcal)	263	14	448.8	21
Calcium (mg)	492.5	36	0	5
Protein (g)	10.33	1.62	0	.85
Carbohydrates (g)	4.09	2.37	2.5	4.64

Use linear programming to find the number of 100-gram units of each ingredient in such a Greek salad, and convert to kitchen units by using Table 1. (*Hint:* Since the ingredients are measured in 100-gram units, the constant in the weight constraint is 4, not 400.)

2. Consider preparing a stir-fry using beef, oil, onion, and soy sauce. A low-calorie stir-fry is desired, which contains less than 10 grams of carbohydrates, more than 50 grams of protein, and more than 3.5 grams of vitamin C. In order for the wok to function correctly, at least one teaspoon (or 4.5 grams) of oil must be used in the recipe. The amounts of the nutrients and calories for these ingredients are given in Table 4.

Table 4 Nutritional Values per 100 g of Food

Nutrient (units)	Beef	Oil	Onion	Soy Sauce
Calories (kcal)	215	884	38	60
Protein (g)	26	0	1.16	10.51
Carbohydrates (g)	0	1	8.63	5.57
Vitamin C (g)	0	0	6.4	0

Use linear programming to find the number of 100-gram units of each ingredient to be used in the stir-fry, and convert to kitchen units by using Table 1.

Extended Project

Use the USDA Nutrient Database for Standard Reference to determine the calorie content and the amount of protein, fat, and carbohydrates for a recipe of your choice. You can set your own constraints on the total amounts of calories, protein, fat, and car-

bohydrates desired. Determine the amount of each of the ingredients that make up the recipe that satisfies your constraints. Do you think the meal would taste good if you actually made the recipe?



Sets and Probability

8

CHAPTER

CHAPTER OUTLINE

- 8.1** Sets
- 8.2** Applications of Venn Diagrams and Contingency Tables
- 8.3** Introduction to Probability
- 8.4** Basic Concepts of Probability
- 8.5** Conditional Probability and Independent Events
- 8.6** Bayes' Formula

CASE STUDY 8

Medical Diagnosis

We often use the relative frequency of an event from a survey to estimate unknown probabilities. For example, we can estimate the probability that a high-earning chief executive officer is in his sixties; see Example 10 in Section 8.4. Other applications of probability occur in the health and social sciences. Examples include estimating the probability a business has less than 20 employees, an adult has health insurance, or an adult works full time; see Exercises 35, 45, and 55 on page 460.

Federal officials cannot predict exactly how the number of traffic deaths is affected by the trend toward fewer drunken drivers and the increased use of seat belts. Economists cannot tell exactly how stricter federal regulations on bank loans affect the U.S. economy. The number of traffic deaths and the growth of the economy are subject to many factors that cannot be predicted precisely.

Probability theory enables us to deal with uncertainty. The basic concepts of probability are discussed in this chapter, and applications of probability are discussed in the next chapter. Sets and set operations are the basic tools for the study of probability, so we begin with them.

8.1 Sets

Think of a **set** as a well-defined collection of objects. A set of coins might include one of each type of coin now put out by the U.S. government. Another set might be made up of all the students in your English class. By contrast, a collection of young adults does not

constitute a set unless the designation “young adult” is clearly defined. For example, this set might be defined as those aged 18–29.

In mathematics, sets are often made up of numbers. The set consisting of the numbers 3, 4, and 5 is written as

$$\{3, 4, 5\},$$

where **set braces**, $\{ \}$, are used to enclose the numbers belonging to the set. The numbers 3, 4, and 5 are called the **elements**, or **members**, of this set. To show that 4 is an element of the set $\{3, 4, 5\}$, we use the symbol \in and write

$$4 \in \{3, 4, 5\},$$

read, “4 is an element of the set containing 3, 4, and 5.”

Also, $5 \in \{3, 4, 5\}$. Place a slash through the symbol \in to show that 8 is *not* an element of this set:

$$8 \notin \{3, 4, 5\}.$$

This statement is read, “8 is not an element of the set $\{3, 4, 5\}$.”

Sets are often named with capital letters, so that if

$$B = \{5, 6, 7\},$$

then, for example, $6 \in B$ and $10 \notin B$. 

Sometimes a set has no elements. Some examples are the set of female presidents of the United States in the period 1788–2012, the set of counting numbers less than 1, and the set of men more than 10 feet tall. A set with no elements is called the **empty set**. The symbol \emptyset is used to represent the empty set.



CAUTION Be careful to distinguish between the symbols 0, \emptyset , and $\{0\}$. The symbol 0 represents a *number*; \emptyset represents a *set* with no elements; and $\{0\}$ represents a *set* with one element, the number 0. Do not confuse the empty set symbol \emptyset with the zero symbol $\mathbf{0}$ on a computer screen or printout.

Two sets are **equal** if they contain exactly the same elements. The sets $\{5, 6, 7\}$, $\{7, 6, 5\}$, and $\{6, 5, 7\}$ all contain exactly the same elements and are equal. In symbols,

$$\{5, 6, 7\} = \{7, 6, 5\} = \{6, 5, 7\}.$$

This means that the ordering of the elements in a set is unimportant. Sets that do not contain exactly the same elements are *not* equal. For example, the sets $\{5, 6, 7\}$ and $\{5, 6, 7, 8\}$ do not contain exactly the same elements and are not equal. We show this by writing

$$\{5, 6, 7\} \neq \{5, 6, 7, 8\}.$$

Sometimes we describe a set by a common property of its elements rather than by a list of its elements. This common property can be expressed with **set-builder notation**; for example,

$$\{x \mid x \text{ has property } P\}$$

(read, “the set of all elements x such that x has property P ”) represents the set of all elements x having some property P .

Checkpoint 1

Indicate whether each statement is *true* or *false*.

- (a) $9 \in \{8, 4, -3, -9, 6\}$.
- (b) $4 \notin \{3, 9, 7\}$.
- (c) If $M = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$, then $0 \in M$.

Answers to Checkpoint exercises are found at the end of the section.

Checkpoint 2

List the elements in the given sets.

- (a) $\{x \mid x \text{ is a counting number more than 5 and less than 8}\}$
- (b) $\{x \mid x \text{ is an integer and } -3 < x \leq 1\}$

Example 1

List the elements belonging to each of the given sets.

- (a) $\{x \mid x \text{ is a natural number less than 5}\}$

Solution The natural numbers less than 5 make up the set $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$.

- (b) $\{x \mid x \text{ is a state that borders Florida}\}$

Solution The states that border Florida make up the set $\{\text{Alabama, Georgia}\}$. 

The **universal set** in a particular discussion is a set that contains all of the objects being discussed. In primary school arithmetic, for example, the set of whole numbers might be the universal set, whereas in a college calculus class the universal set might be the set of all real numbers. When it is necessary to consider the universal set being used, it will be clearly specified or easily understood from the context of the problem.

Sometimes, every element of one set also belongs to another set. For example, if

$$A = \{3, 4, 5, 6\}$$

and

$$B = \{2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8\},$$

then every element of A is also an element of B . This is an example of the following definition.

A set A is a **subset** of a set B (written $A \subseteq B$) provided that every element of A is also an element of B .

Example 2 For each case, decide whether $M \subseteq N$.

(a) M is the set of all businesses making a profit in the last calendar year. N is the set of all businesses.

Solution Each business making a profit is also a business, so $M \subseteq N$.

(b) M is the set of all first-year students at a college at the end of the academic year, and N is the set of all 18-year-old students at the college at the end of the academic year.

Solution At the beginning and end of the academic year, some first-year students are older than 18, so there are elements in M that are not in N . Thus, M is not a subset of N , written $M \not\subseteq N$.

Every set A is a subset of itself, because the statement “every element of A is also an element of A ” is always true. It is also true that the empty set is a subset of every set.*

For any set A ,

$$\emptyset \subseteq A \quad \text{and} \quad A \subseteq A.$$

A set A is said to be a **proper subset** of a set B (written $A \subset B$) if every element of A is an element of B , but B contains at least one element that is not a member of A .

Example 3 Decide whether $E \subset F$.

(a) $E = \{2, 4, 6, 8\}$ and $F = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$.


Solution Since each element of E is an element of F and F contains several elements not in E , $E \subset F$.

*This fact is not intuitively obvious to most people. If you wish, you can think of it as a convention that we agree to adopt in order to simplify the statements of several results later.

(b) E is the set of registered voters in Texas. F is the set of adults aged 18 years or older.

Solution To register to vote, one must be at least 18 years old. Not all adults at least 18 years old, however, are registered. Thus, every element of E is contained in F and F contains elements not in E . Therefore, $E \subset F$.

(c) E is the set of diet soda drinks. F is the set of diet soda drinks sweetened with Nutrasweet®.

Solution Some diet soda drinks are sweetened with the sugar substitute Splenda®. In this case, E is not a proper subset of F (written $E \not\subset F$), nor is it a subset of F at all ($E \not\subseteq F$). 

 **Checkpoint 3**

Indicate whether each statement is true or false.

- (a) $\{10, 20, 30\} \subseteq \{20, 30, 40, 50\}$.
- (b) $\{x|x \text{ is a minivan}\} \subseteq \{x|x \text{ is a motor vehicle}\}$.
- (c) $\{a, e, i, o, u\} \subset \{a, e, i, o, u, y\}$.
- (d) $\{x|x \text{ is a U.S. state that begins with the letter "A"}\} \subset \{\text{Alabama, Alaska, Arizona, Arkansas}\}$.

 **Checkpoint 4**

List all subsets of $\{w, x, y, z\}$.

Example 4

List all possible subsets for each of the given sets.

(a) $\{7, 8\}$

Solution A good way to find the subsets of $\{7, 8\}$ is to use a **tree diagram**—a systematic way of listing all the subsets of a given set. The tree diagram in Figure 8.1(a) shows there are four subsets of $\{7, 8\}$:

$$\emptyset, \{7\}, \{8\}, \text{ and } \{7, 8\}.$$

(b) $\{a, b, c\}$

Solution The tree diagram in Figure 8.1(b) shows that there are 8 subsets of $\{a, b, c\}$:

$$\emptyset, \{a\}, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{a, b\}, \{a, c\}, \{b, c\}, \text{ and } \{a, b, c\}.$$

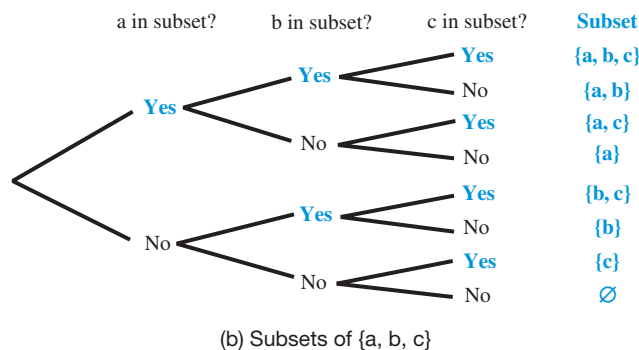
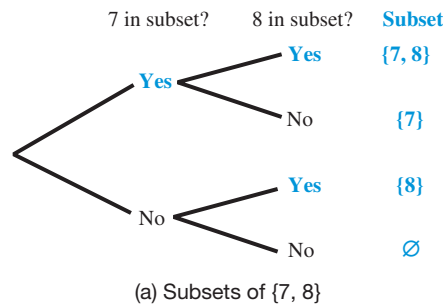


Figure 8.1

By using the fact that there are two possibilities for each element (either it is in the subset or it is not), we have found that a set with 2 elements has 4 ($=2^2$) subsets and a set with 3 elements has 8 ($=2^3$) subsets. Similar arguments work for any finite set and lead to the following conclusion.

✓ Checkpoint 5

Find the number of subsets for each of the given sets.

- (a) $\{x \mid x \text{ is a season of the year}\}$
 (b) $\{-6, -5, -4, -3, -2, -1, 0\}$
 (c) $\{6\}$

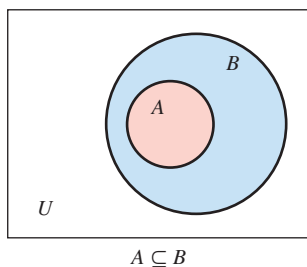
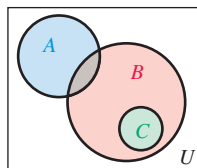


Figure 8.2

✓ Checkpoint 6

Refer to sets A , B , C , and U in the diagram.



- (a) Is $A \subseteq B$?
 (b) Is $C \subseteq B$?
 (c) Is $C \subseteq U$?
 (d) Is $\emptyset \subseteq A$?

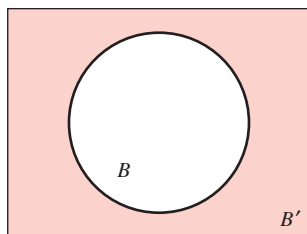


Figure 8.3

✓ Checkpoint 7

Let $U = \{a, b, c, d, e, f, g\}$, with $K = \{c, d, f, g\}$ and $R = \{a, c, d, e, g\}$. Find

- (a) K' ;
 (b) R' .

A set of n distinct elements has 2^n subsets.

Example 5

Find the number of subsets for each of the given sets.

- (a) $\{\text{blue, brown, hazel, green}\}$

Solution Since this set has 4 elements, it has $2^4 = 16$ subsets.

- (b) $\{x \mid x \text{ is a month of the year}\}$

Solution This set has 12 elements and therefore has $2^{12} = 4096$ subsets.

- (c) \emptyset

Solution Since the empty set has 0 elements, it has $2^0 = 1$ subset, \emptyset itself. ✓₅

Venn diagrams are sometimes used to illustrate relationships among sets. The Venn diagram in Figure 8.2 shows a set A that is a subset of a set B , because A is entirely in B . (The areas of the regions are not meant to be proportional to the sizes of the corresponding sets.) The rectangle represents the universal set U . ✓₆

Some sets have infinitely many elements. We often use the notation “ \dots ” to indicate such sets. One example of an infinite set is the set of natural numbers, $\{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots\}$. Another infinite set is the set of integers, $\{\dots, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$.

Operations on Sets

Given a set A and a universal set U , the set of all elements of U that do *not* belong to A is called the **complement** of set A . For example, if A is the set of all the female students in your class and U is the set of all students in the class, then the complement of A would be the set of all male students in the class. The complement of set A is written A' (read “A-prime”). The Venn diagram in Figure 8.3 shows a set B . Its complement, B' , is shown in color.

Some textbooks use \bar{A} to denote the complement of A . This notation conveys the same meaning as A' .

Example 6

Let $U = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$, $A = \{1, 3, 5, 7\}$, and $B = \{3, 4, 6\}$. Find the given sets.

- (a) A'

Solution Set A' contains the elements of U that are not in A :

$$A' = \{2, 4, 6\}.$$

- (b) B'

Solution $B' = \{1, 2, 5, 7\}$.

- (c) \emptyset' and U'

Solution $\emptyset' = U$ and $U' = \emptyset$. ✓₇

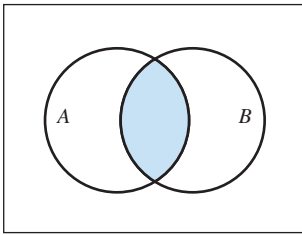
 $A \cap B$

Figure 8.4

Given two sets A and B , the set of all elements belonging to *both* set A and set B is called the **intersection** of the two sets, written $A \cap B$. For example, the elements that belong to both $A = \{1, 2, 4, 5, 7\}$ and $B = \{2, 4, 5, 7, 9, 11\}$ are 2, 4, 5, and 7, so

$$\begin{aligned} A \text{ and } B &= A \cap B \\ &= \{1, 2, 4, 5, 7\} \cap \{2, 4, 5, 7, 9, 11\} \\ &= \{2, 4, 5, 7\}. \end{aligned}$$

The Venn diagram in Figure 8.4 shows two sets A and B , with their intersection, $A \cap B$, shown in color.

Example 7

Find the given sets.

(a) $\{9, 15, 25, 36\} \cap \{15, 20, 25, 30, 35\}$

Solution $\{15, 25\}$. The elements 15 and 25 are the only ones belonging to both sets.

(b) $\{x|x \text{ is a teenager}\} \cap \{x|x \text{ is a senior citizen}\}$

Solution \emptyset since no teenager is a senior citizen.

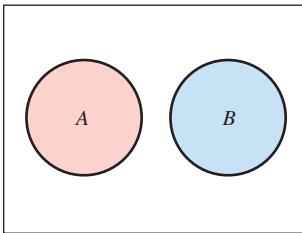
Two sets that have no elements in common are called **disjoint sets**. For example, there are no elements common to both $\{50, 51, 54\}$ and $\{52, 53, 55, 56\}$, so these two sets are disjoint, and

$$\{50, 51, 54\} \cap \{52, 53, 55, 56\} = \emptyset.$$

The result of this example can be generalized as follows.

For any sets A and B ,

if A and B are disjoint sets, then $A \cap B = \emptyset$.



A and B are disjoint sets.

Figure 8.5

Figure 8.5 is a Venn diagram of disjoint sets.

The set of all elements belonging to set A or to set B , or to both sets, is called the **union** of the two sets, written $A \cup B$. For example, for sets $A = \{1, 3, 5\}$ and $B = \{3, 5, 7, 9\}$,

$$\begin{aligned} A \text{ or } B &= A \cup B \\ &= \{1, 3, 5\} \cup \{3, 5, 7, 9\} \\ &= \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}. \end{aligned}$$

The Venn diagram in Figure 8.6 shows two sets A and B , with their union, $A \cup B$, shown in color.

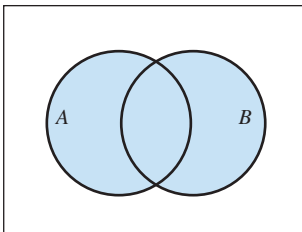
 $A \cup B$

Figure 8.6

Example 8

Find the given sets.

(a) $\{1, 2, 5, 9, 14\} \cup \{1, 3, 4, 8\}$.

Solution Begin by listing the elements of the first set, $\{1, 2, 5, 9, 14\}$. Then include any elements from the second set *that are not already listed*. Doing this gives

$$\{1, 2, 5, 9, 14\} \cup \{1, 3, 4, 8\} = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 8, 9, 14\}.$$

(b) $\{\text{terriers, spaniels, chows, dalmatians}\} \cup \{\text{spaniels, collies, bulldogs}\}$

Solution $\{\text{terriers, spaniels, chows, dalmatians, collies, bulldogs}\}$.

Checkpoint 8

Find $\{1, 2, 3, 4\} \cap \{3, 5, 7, 9\}$.

Checkpoint 9

Find $\{a, b, c\} \cup \{a, c, e\}$.

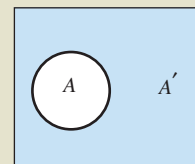
Finding the complement of a set, the intersection of two sets, or the union of two sets is an example of a *set operation*.

Operations on Sets

Let A and B be any sets, with U signifying the universal set. Then

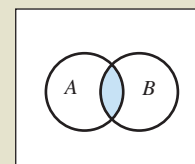
the **complement** of A , written A' , is

$$A' = \{x \mid x \notin A \text{ and } x \in U\};$$



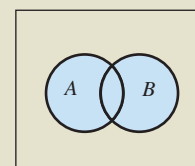
the **intersection** of A and B is

$$A \cap B = \{x \mid x \in A \text{ and } x \in B\};$$



the **union** of A and B is

$$A \cup B = \{x \mid x \in A \text{ or } x \in B \text{ or both}\}.$$



CAUTION As shown in the preceding definitions, an element is in the intersection of sets A and B if it is in *both* A and B at the same time, but an element is in the union of sets A and B if it is in *either* set A or set B , or in both sets A and B .

Example 9 Business The following table gives the 52-week high and low prices, the last price, and the change in price from the day before for six stocks on a recent day.

Stock	High	Low	Last	Change
First Solar	47.78	11.43	43.43	-4.26
Ford	14.30	8.82	14.19	+ .10
IBM	215.90	181.85	203.63	+ .85
JP Morgan Chase	51.00	30.83	49.14	+ .96
Netflix	224.30	52.81	206.25	-4.44
Procter & Gamble	82.54	59.07	77.94	.19

Let the universal set U consist of the six stocks listed in the table. Let A contain all stocks with a high price greater than \$50, B all stocks with a last price between \$25 and \$80, and C all stocks with a negative value for the change. Find the results of the given set operations. (Data from: www.morningstar.com on May 7, 2013.)

(a) B'

Solution Set B consists of First Solar, JP Morgan Chase, and Procter & Gamble. Set B' contains all the listed stocks that are not in set B , so

$$B' = \{\text{Ford, IBM, Netflix}\}.$$

(b) $A \cap C$

Solution Set A consists of IBM, JP Morgan Chase, Netflix, and Procter & Gamble, and set C consists of First Solar and Netflix. Hence the stock in both A and C is

$$A \cap C = \{\text{Netflix}\}.$$

 **Checkpoint 10**

In Example 9, find the given set of stocks.

(a) $B \cap C$

(b) $B \cup C$


(c) $A \cup B$

Solution $A \cup B = \{\text{First Solar, IBM, JP Morgan Chase, Netflix, and Procter & Gamble}\}$ 

8.1 Exercises

Write true or false for each statement. (See Example 1.)

1. $3 \in \{2, 5, 7, 9, 10\}$
2. $6 \in \{-2, 6, 9, 5\}$
3. $9 \notin \{2, 1, 5, 8\}$
4. $3 \notin \{7, 6, 5, 4\}$
5. $\{2, 5, 8, 9\} = \{2, 5, 9, 8\}$
6. $\{3, 7, 12, 14\} = \{3, 7, 12, 14, 0\}$
7. $\{\text{all whole numbers greater than 7 and less than 10}\} = \{8, 9\}$
8. $\{\text{all counting numbers not greater than 3}\} = \{0, 1, 2\}$
9. $\{x|x \text{ is an odd integer, } 6 \leq x \leq 18\} = \{7, 9, 11, 15, 17\}$
10. $\{x|x \text{ is a vowel}\} = \{a, e, i, o, u\}$

 11. The elements of a set may be sets themselves, as in $\{1, \{1, 3\}, \{2\}, 4\}$. Explain why the set $\{\emptyset\}$ is not the same set as $\{0\}$.

 12. What is set-builder notation? Give an example.

Let $A = \{-3, 0, 3\}$, $B = \{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$, $C = \{-3, -1\}$, $D = \{0\}$, $E = \{-2\}$, and $U = \{-3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3\}$. Insert \subseteq or $\not\subseteq$ to make the given statements true. (See Example 2.)


13. $A \subseteq U$
14. $E \subseteq A$
15. $A \subseteq E$
16. $B \subseteq C$
17. $\emptyset \subseteq A$
18. $\{0, 2\} \subseteq D$
19. $D \subseteq B$
20. $A \subseteq C$

Find the number of subsets of the given set. (See Example 5.)

21. $\{A, B, C\}$
22. $\{\text{red, yellow, blue, black, white}\}$
23. $\{x|x \text{ is an integer strictly between 0 and 8}\}$
24. $\{x|x \text{ is a whole number less than 4}\}$


Find the complement of each set. (See Example 6.)

25. The set in Exercise 23 if U is the set of all integers.
26. The set in Exercise 24 if U is the set of all whole numbers.

 27. Describe the intersection and union of sets. How do they differ?

Insert \cap or \cup to make each statement true. (See Examples 7 and 8.)

28. $\{5, 7, 9, 19\} \underline{\hspace{1cm}} \{7, 9, 11, 15\} = \{7, 9\}$
29. $\{8, 11, 15\} \underline{\hspace{1cm}} \{8, 11, 19, 20\} = \{8, 11\}$
30. $\{2, 1, 7\} \underline{\hspace{1cm}} \{1, 5, 9\} = \{1\}$
31. $\{6, 12, 14, 16\} \underline{\hspace{1cm}} \{6, 14, 19\} = \{6, 14\}$
32. $\{3, 5, 9, 10\} \underline{\hspace{1cm}} \emptyset = \emptyset$
33. $\{3, 5, 9, 10\} \underline{\hspace{1cm}} \emptyset = \{3, 5, 9, 10\}$
34. $\{1, 2, 4\} \underline{\hspace{1cm}} \{1, 2, 4\} = \{1, 2, 4\}$
35. $\{1, 2, 4\} \underline{\hspace{1cm}} \{1, 2\} = \{1, 2, 4\}$

 36. Is it possible for two nonempty sets to have the same intersection and union? If so, give an example.

Let $U = \{a, b, c, d, e, f, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$, $X = \{a, b, c, 1, 2, 3\}$, $Y = \{b, d, f, 1, 3, 5\}$, and $Z = \{b, d, 2, 3, 5\}$.

List the members of each of the given sets, using set braces. (See Examples 6–8.)

37. $X \cap Y$
38. $X \cup Y$
39. X'
40. Y'
41. $X' \cap Y'$
42. $X' \cap Z$
43. $X \cup (Y \cap Z)$
44. $Y \cap (X \cup Z)$

Let $U = \{\text{all students in this school}\}$,
 $M = \{\text{all students taking this course}\}$,
 $N = \{\text{all students taking accounting}\}$, and
 $P = \{\text{all students taking philosophy}\}$.

Describe each of the following sets in words.

45. M'
46. $M \cup N$
47. $N \cap P$
48. $N' \cap P'$

49. Refer to the sets listed in the directions for Exercises 13–20. Which pairs of sets are disjoint?
50. Refer to the sets listed in the directions for Exercises 37–44. Which pairs of sets are disjoint?

Refer to Example 9 in the text. Describe each of the sets in Exercises 51–54 in words; then list the elements of each set.

51. A' 52. $B \cup C$
 53. $A' \cap B'$ 54. $B' \cup C$

Business A stock broker classifies her clients by sex, marital status, and employment status. Let the universal set be the set of all clients, M be the set of male clients, S be the set of single clients, and E be the set of employed clients. Describe the following sets in words.

55. $M \cap E$ 56. $M' \cap S$
 57. $M' \cup S'$ 58. $E' \cup S'$

Business The U.S. advertising volume (in millions of dollars) collected by certain types of national media in the years 2009 and 2010 is shown in the following table. (Data from: ProQuest Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2013.)

Medium	2009	2010
Television	33,723	36,210
Magazines	15,554	15,623
Digital/Online	5549	7144
Network/Satellite Radio	1100	1145
National Newspapers	873	887

List the elements of each set.

59. The set of all media that collected more than \$10,000 million in both 2009 and 2010.
60. The set of all media that collected less than \$6000 million in 2009 or 2010.
61. The set of all media that had revenues fall from 2009 to 2010.
62. The set of all media that rose in revenue and had at least \$5000 million in revenue in both years.

Business The top six basic cable television providers in the year 2012 are listed in the following table. Use this information for Exercises 63–70.

Rank	Cable Provider	Basic Cable Subscribers
1	Comcast	21,995,000
2	Direct TV	20,080,000
3	Dish Network	14,056,000
4	Time Warner	12,218,000
5	Verizon	4,726,000
6	Cox	4,540,280

List the elements of the following sets. (Data from: www.ncta.com.)

63. F , the set of cable providers with more than 5 million subscribers.
64. G , the set of cable providers with between 10 million and 20 million subscribers.
65. H , the set of cable providers with less than 20 million subscribers.
66. I , the set of cable providers with more than 13 million subscribers.
67. $F \cup G$ 68. $H \cap F$
 69. I' 70. $I' \cap H$

Business The following table gives the amount of several farm products (in millions of metric tons) exported from the United States in the years 2000 and 2011. (Data from: U.S. Department of Agriculture.)

Product	2000	2011
Wheat	28.9	28.6
Corn	49.3	39.4
Soybeans	27.1	36.7
Rice	2.6	3.2
Cotton	6.7	11.7

List the elements of the following sets.

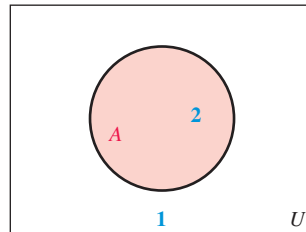
71. The set of farm products where exports increased from 2000 to 2011.
72. The set of farm products that had more than 20 million metric tons of exports in both 2000 and 2011.
73. The set of farm products that had less than 40 million metric tons of exports in either 2000 or 2011.
74. The set of farm products that had an increase of 4 million metric tons or more from 2000 to 2011.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) False (b) True (c) True
2. (a) $\{6, 7\}$ (b) $\{-2, -1, 0, 1\}$
3. (a) False (b) True (c) True (d) False
4. $\emptyset, \{w\}, \{x\}, \{y\}, \{z\}, \{w, x\}, \{w, y\}, \{w, z\}, \{x, y\}, \{x, z\}, \{y, z\}, \{w, x, y\}, \{w, x, z\}, \{w, y, z\}, \{x, y, z\}, \{w, x, y, z\}$
5. (a) 16 (b) 128 (c) 2
6. (a) No (b) Yes (c) Yes (d) Yes
7. (a) $\{a, b, e\}$ (b) $\{b, f\}$
8. $\{3\}$
9. $\{a, b, c, e\}$
10. (a) $\{\text{First Solar}\}$
 (b) $\{\text{First Solar, JP Morgan Chase, Netflix, Procter \& Gamble}\}$

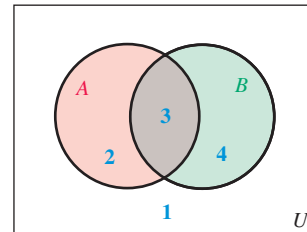
8.2 Applications of Venn Diagrams and Contingency Tables

We used Venn diagrams in the previous section to illustrate set union and intersection. The rectangular region in a Venn diagram represents the universal set U . Including only a single set A inside the universal set, as in Figure 8.7, divides U into two nonoverlapping regions. Region 1 represents A' , those elements outside set A , while region 2 represents those elements belonging to set A . (The numbering of these regions is arbitrary.)



One set leads to 2 regions.
(Numbering is arbitrary.)

Figure 8.7



Two sets lead to 4 regions.
(Numbering is arbitrary.)

Figure 8.8

The Venn diagram of Figure 8.8 shows two sets inside U . These two sets divide the universal set into four nonoverlapping regions. As labeled in Figure 8.8, region 1 includes those elements outside both set A and set B . Region 2 includes those elements belonging to A and not to B . Region 3 includes those elements belonging to both A and B . Which elements belong to region 4? (Again, the numbering is arbitrary.)


Example 1

Draw a Venn diagram similar to Figure 8.8, and shade the regions representing the given sets.

(a) $A' \cap B$

Solution Set A' contains all the elements outside set A . As labeled in Figure 8.8, A' is represented by regions 1 and 4. Set B is represented by the elements in regions 3 and 4. The intersection of sets A' and B , the set $A' \cap B$, is given by the region common to regions 1 and 4 and regions 3 and 4. The result, region 4, is shaded in Figure 8.9.

(b) $A' \cup B'$

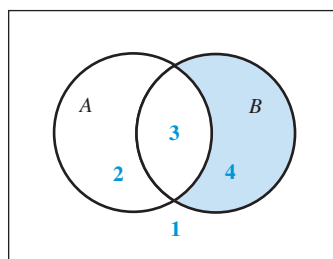
Solution Again, set A' is represented by regions 1 and 4 and set B' by regions 1 and 2. To find $A' \cup B'$, identify the region that represents the set of all elements in A' , B' , or both. The result, which is shaded in Figure 8.10, includes regions 1, 2, and 4. 

✓ Checkpoint 1

Draw Venn diagrams for the given set operations.

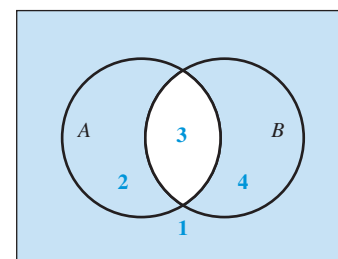
(a) $A \cup B'$

(b) $A' \cap B'$



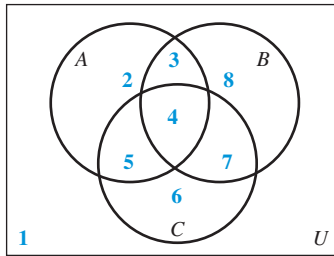
$A' \cap B$

Figure 8.9



$A' \cup B'$

Figure 8.10



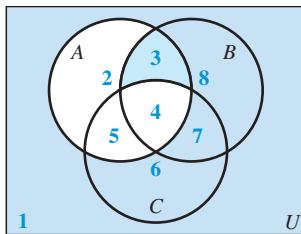
Three sets lead to 8 regions.

Figure 8.11

Checkpoint 2

Draw Venn diagrams for the given set operations.

- (a) $(B' \cap A) \cup C$
- (b) $(A \cup B)' \cap C$



$A' \cup (B \cap C')$

Figure 8.12

Checkpoint 3

- (a) Place numbers in the regions on a Venn diagram if the data on the 100 households in Example 3 showed 78 with cable television; 52 with high-speed Internet; 48 with both.
- (b) How many have high-speed Internet, but not cable television?

Venn diagrams also can be drawn with three sets inside U . These three sets divide the universal set into eight nonoverlapping regions that can be numbered (arbitrarily) as in Figure 8.11.

Example 2 Shade $A' \cup (B \cap C')$ in a Venn diagram.

Solution First find $B \cap C'$. Set B is represented by regions 3, 4, 7, and 8, and set C' by regions 1, 2, 3, and 8. The overlap of these regions, regions 3 and 8, represents the set $B \cap C'$. Set A' is represented by regions 1, 6, 7, and 8. The union of regions 3 and 8 and regions 1, 6, 7, and 8 contains regions 1, 3, 6, 7, and 8, which are shaded in Figure 8.12.

Venn diagrams can be used to solve problems that result from surveying groups of people.

Example 3 Business A market researcher collecting data on 100 household finds that

- 81 have cable television (CT);
- 65 have high-speed Internet (HSI);
- 56 have both.

The researcher wants to answer the following questions:

- (a) How many households do not have high-speed Internet?
- (b) How many households have neither cable television nor high-speed Internet?
- (c) How many have cable television, but not high-speed Internet?

Solution A Venn diagram like the one in Figure 8.13 will help sort out the information. In Figure 8.13(a), we place the number 56 in the region common to both cable television and high-speed Internet, because 56 households have both. Of the 81 with cable television, $81 - 56 = 25$ do not have high-speed Internet, so in Figure 8.13(b) we place 25 in the region for cable television, but not high-speed Internet. Similarly, $65 - 56 = 9$ households have high-speed Internet, but not cable television, so we place 9 in that region. Finally, the diagram shows that $100 - 9 - 56 - 25 = 10$ have neither high-speed Internet nor cable television. Now we can answer the questions.

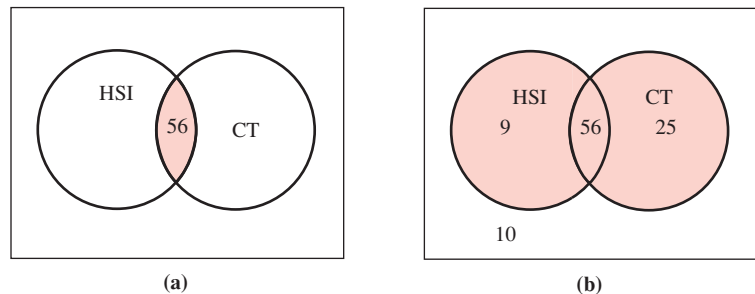


Figure 8.13

- (a) $10 + 25 = 35$ do not have high-speed Internet.
- (b) 10 have neither.
- (c) 25 have cable television, but not high-speed Internet.

Example 4 Social Science A group of 60 first-year business students at a large university was surveyed, with the following results:

- 19 of the students read *Business Week*;
- 18 read the *Wall Street Journal*;
- 50 read *Fortune*;
- 13 read *Business Week* and the *Journal*;
- 11 read the *Journal* and *Fortune*;
- 13 read *Business Week* and *Fortune*;
- 9 read all three magazines.

Use the preceding data to answer the following questions:

- (a) How many students read none of the publications?
- (b) How many read only *Fortune*?
- (c) How many read *Business Week* and the *Journal*, but not *Fortune*?

Solution Once again, use a Venn diagram to represent the data. Since 9 students read all three publications, begin by placing 9 in the area in Figure 8.14(a) that belongs to all three regions.

Of the 13 students who read *Business Week* and *Fortune*, 9 also read the *Journal*. Therefore, only $13 - 9 = 4$ students read just *Business Week* and *Fortune*. So place a 4 in the region common only to *Business Week* and *Fortune* readers, as in Figure 8.14(b).

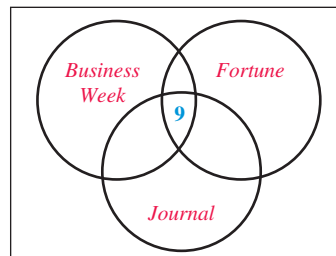


Figure 8.14(a)

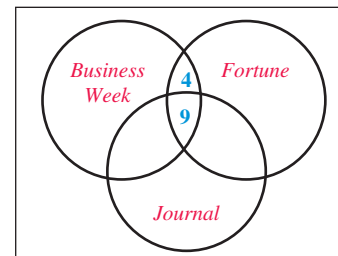


Figure 8.14(b)

In the same way, place a 4 in the region of Figure 8.14(c) common only to *Business Week* and the *Journal* readers, and 2 in the region common only to *Fortune* and the *Journal* readers.

The data shows that 19 students read *Business Week*. However, $4 + 9 + 4 = 17$ readers have already been placed in the *Business Week* region. The balance of this region in Figure 8.14(d) will contain only $19 - 17 = 2$ students. These 2 students read *Business Week* only—not *Fortune* and not the *Journal*.

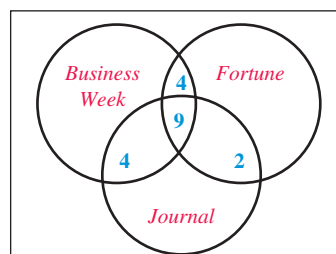


Figure 8.14(c)

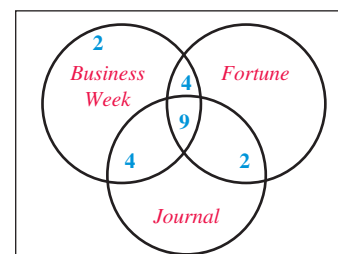


Figure 8.14(d)

In the same way, 3 students read only the *Journal* and 35 read only *Fortune*, as shown in Figure 8.14(e).

A total of $2 + 4 + 3 + 4 + 9 + 2 + 35 = 59$ students are placed in the various regions of Figure 8.14(e). Since 60 students were surveyed, $60 - 59 = 1$ student reads none of the three publications, and so 1 is placed outside the other regions in Figure 8.14(f).

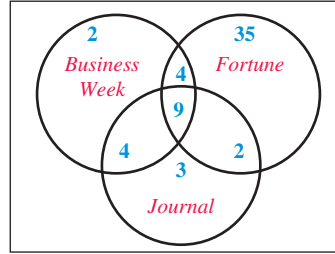


Figure 8.14(e)

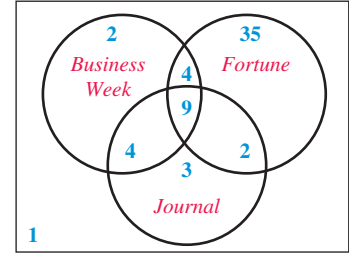


Figure 8.14(f)

Figure 8.14(f) can now be used to answer the questions asked at the beginning of this example:

- (a) Only 1 student reads none of the publications.
- (b) There are 35 students who read only *Fortune*.
- (c) The overlap of the regions representing *Business Week* and the *Journal* shows that 4 students read *Business Week* and the *Journal*, but not *Fortune*. ✓₄

✓ **Checkpoint 4**

In Example 4, how many students read exactly,

- (a) 1 of the publications?
- (b) 2 of the publications?

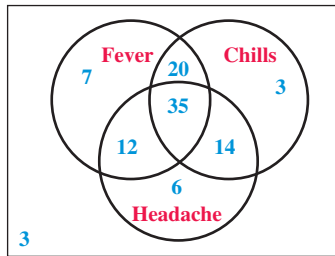


Figure 8.15

✓ **Checkpoint 5**

In Example 5, suppose 75 patients reported a fever and only 2 thought they had the flu, but did not report fever, chills, or headache. Then how many

- (a) reported only a fever?
- (b) reported a fever or chills?
- (c) reported a fever, chills, or headache?

Example 5 **Health** Mark McCloney, M.D., saw 100 patients exhibiting flu symptoms such as fever, chills, and headache. Dr. McCloney reported the following information on patients exhibiting symptoms:

- Of the 100 patients,
- 74 reported a fever;
- 72 reported chills;
- 67 reported a headache;
- 55 reported both a fever and chills;
- 47 reported both a fever and a headache;
- 49 reported both chills and a headache;
- 35 reported all three;
- 3 thought they had the flu, but did not report fever, chills, or headache.

Create a Venn diagram to represent this data. It should show the number of people in each region.

Solution Begin with the 35 patients who reported all three symptoms. This leaves $55 - 35 = 20$ who reported fever and chills, but not headache; $47 - 35 = 12$ who reported fever and headache, but not chills; and $49 - 35 = 14$ who reported chills and headache, but not fever. With this information, we have $74 - (35 + 20 + 12) = 7$ who reported fever alone; $72 - (35 + 20 + 14) = 3$ with chills alone; and $67 - (35 + 12 + 14) = 6$ with headache alone. The remaining 3 patients who thought they had the flu, but did not report fever, chills, or headache are denoted outside the 3 circles. See Figure 8.15. ✓₅

NOTE In all the preceding examples, we started in the innermost region with the intersection of the categories. This is usually the best way to begin solving problems of this type.

We use the symbol $n(A)$ to denote the *number* of elements in A . For instance, if $A = \{w, x, y, z\}$, then $n(A) = 4$. Next, we prove the following useful fact.

Addition Rule for Counting

$$n(A \cup B) = n(A) + n(B) - n(A \cap B).$$

For example, if $A = \{r, s, t, u, v\}$ and $B = \{r, t, w\}$, then $A \cap B = \{r, t\}$, so that $n(A) = 5$, $n(B) = 3$, and $n(A \cap B) = 2$. By the formula in the box, $n(A \cup B) = 5 + 3 - 2 = 6$, which is certainly true, since $A \cup B = \{r, s, t, u, v, w\}$.

Here is a proof of the statement in the box: Let x be the number of elements in A that are not in B , y be the number of elements in $A \cap B$, and z be the number of elements in B that are not in A , as indicated in Figure 8.16. That diagram shows that $n(A \cup B) = x + y + z$. It also shows that $n(A) = x + y$ and $n(B) = y + z$, so that

$$\begin{aligned} n(A) + n(B) - n(A \cap B) &= (x + y) + (z + y) - y \\ &= x + y + z \\ &= n(A \cup B). \end{aligned}$$

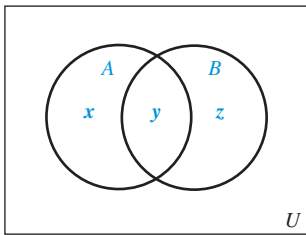


Figure 8.16

Example 6 Social Science A group of 10 students meets to plan a school function. All are majoring in accounting or economics or both. Five of the students are economics majors, and 7 are majors in accounting. How many major in both subjects?

Solution Let A represent the set of economics majors and B represent the set of accounting majors. Use the union rule, with $n(A) = 5$, $n(B) = 7$, and $n(A \cup B) = 10$. We must find $n(A \cap B)$:

$$\begin{aligned} n(A \cup B) &= n(A) + n(B) - n(A \cap B) \\ 10 &= 5 + 7 - n(A \cap B). \end{aligned}$$

So,

$$n(A \cap B) = 5 + 7 - 10 = 2. \quad \checkmark_6$$

✓ Checkpoint 6

If $n(A) = 10$, $n(B) = 7$, and $n(A \cap B) = 3$, find $n(A \cup B)$.

In addition to Venn diagrams, we can use a contingency table, which is sometimes called a cross tabulation, to summarize counts from several different groups. A contingency table is a table in a matrix format that gives the frequency distribution of several variables. With such tables, we can compute the number of elements in sets of interest, the intersection of two sets, and the union of two sets.

Example 7 Economics The following contingency table gives the number (in thousands) of males (denoted with M) and females (denoted with F) who were working full-time (denoted A), working part-time (denoted B), or not working (denoted C) in the year 2010. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

	A Worked Full-time	B Worked Part-time	C Did Not Work
M Males	56,414	24,659	35,729
F Females	42,834	29,232	51,047

Find the number of people in the given sets.

(a) A

Solution The set A consists of males and females who worked full-time. From the table, we see that there were 56,414 thousand males and 42,834 thousand females, which yields 99,248 thousand people who worked full-time in the year 2010.

(b) $F \cap A$

Solution The set $F \cap A$ consists of all the people who are female *and* who worked full-time. We see that there are 42,834 thousand females who worked full-time.

(c) $M \cup C$

Solution The set $M \cup C$ consists of people who are male or who did not work. Using the addition rule for counting, we have

$$n(M \cup C) = n(M) + n(C) - n(M \cap C).$$

From the table, we have $n(M) = 56,414 + 24,659 + 35,729 = 116,802$ thousand males. Also from the table we have $n(C) = 35,729 + 51,047 = 86,776$ thousand people who did not work. We also have that $n(M \cap C)$, the number who are male and who did work, is 35,729 thousand. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} n(M \cup C) &= n(M) + n(C) - n(M \cap C) \\ &= 116,802 + 86,776 - 35,729 \\ &= 167,849 \text{ thousand people.} \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 7

Refer to Example 7 and find the number of people in the following sets.

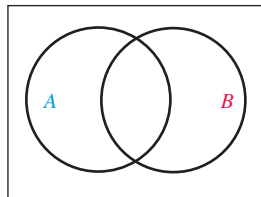
- (a) $A \cup B$
 (b) $F \cup B$

(d) $(B \cup C) \cap F$

Solution Begin with the set $B \cup C$, which contains all those who worked part-time or not at all. Of this set, take only those who were females for a total of $29,232 + 51,047 = 80,279$ thousand. ✓₇

8.2 Exercises

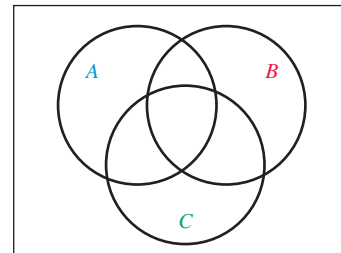
Sketch a Venn diagram like the one shown, and use shading to show each of the given sets. (See Example 1.)



- $A \cap B'$
- $A \cup B'$
- $B' \cup A'$
- $A' \cap B'$
- $B' \cup (A \cap B')$
- $(A \cap B) \cup A'$
- U'
- \emptyset'
- Three sets divide the universal set into at most _____ regions.

10. What does the notation $n(A)$ represent?

Sketch a Venn diagram like the one shown, and use shading to show each of the given sets. (See Example 2.)



- $(A \cap C') \cup B$
- $A \cap (B \cup C')$
- $A' \cap (B \cap C)$
- $(A' \cap B') \cap C$
- $(A \cap B') \cup C$
- $(A \cap B') \cap C$

Use Venn diagrams to answer the given questions. (See Examples 2 and 4.)

17. **Health** In 2010, the percentage of assisted living residents who had both high blood pressure and dementia was 24%, the percentage with only high blood pressure was 33%, and the percentage with neither condition was 25%. What percentage of

assisted living residents had only dementia? (Data from: National Center for Health Statistics.)

18. **Health** In 2010, the percentage of assisted living residents who had both heart disease and depression was 9%, the percentage with only heart disease was 25%, and the percentage with neither condition was 48%. What percentage of assisted living residents had only depression? (Data from: National Center for Health Statistics.)

19. **Business** The human resources director for a commercial real estate company received the following numbers of applications from people with the given information:

- 66 with sales experience;
- 40 with a college degree;
- 23 with a real estate license;
- 26 with sales experience and a college degree;
- 16 with sales experience and a real estate license;
- 15 with a college degree and a real estate license;
- 11 with sales experience, a college degree, and a real estate license;
- 22 with neither sales experience, a college degree, nor a real estate license.

- (a) How many applicants were there?
- (b) How many applicants did not have sales experience?
- (c) How many had sales experience and a college degree, but not a real estate license?
- (d) How many had only a real estate license?

20. **Business** A pet store keeps track of the purchases of customers over a four-hour period. The store manager classifies purchases as containing a dog product, a cat product, a fish product, or a product for a different kind of pet. She found that:

- 83 customers purchased a dog product;
- 101 customers purchased a cat product;
- 22 customers purchased a fish product;
- 31 customers purchased a dog and a cat product;
- 8 customers purchased a dog and a fish product;
- 10 customers purchased a cat and a fish product;
- 6 customers purchased a dog, a cat, and a fish product;
- 34 customers purchased a product for a pet other than a dog, cat, or fish.

- (a) How many purchases were for a dog product only?
- (b) How many purchases were for a cat product only?
- (c) How many purchases were for a dog or fish product?
- (d) How many purchases were there in total?

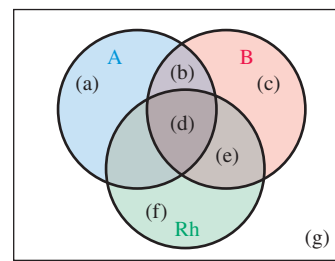
21. **Natural Science** A marine biologist surveys people who fish on Lake Erie and caught at least one fish to determine whether they had caught a walleye, a smallmouth bass, or a yellow perch in the last year. He finds:

- 124 caught at least one walleye;
- 133 caught at least one smallmouth bass;

- 146 caught at least one yellow perch;
- 75 caught at least one walleye and at least one smallmouth bass;
- 67 caught at least one walleye and at least one yellow perch;
- 79 caught at least one smallmouth bass and at least one yellow perch;
- 45 caught all three.

- (a) Find the total number of people surveyed.
- (b) How many caught at least one walleye or at least one smallmouth bass?
- (c) How many caught only walleye?

22. **Health** Human blood can contain either no antigens, the A antigen, the B antigen, or both the A and B antigens. A third antigen, called the Rh antigen, is important in human reproduction and, like the A and B antigens, may or may not be present in an individual. Blood is called type A positive if the individual has the A and Rh antigens, but not the B antigen. A person having only the A and B antigens is said to have type AB-negative blood. A person having only the Rh antigen has type O-positive blood. Other blood types are defined in a similar manner. Identify the blood type of the individuals in regions (a)–(g) of the Venn diagram.



23. **Natural Science** Use the diagram from Exercise 22. In a certain hospital, the following data was recorded:

- 25 patients had the A antigen;
- 17 had the A and B antigens;
- 27 had the B antigen;
- 22 had the B and Rh antigens;
- 30 had the Rh antigen;
- 12 had none of the antigens;
- 16 had the A and Rh antigens;
- 15 had all three antigens.

How many patients

- (a) were represented?
- (b) had exactly one antigen?
- (c) had exactly two antigens?
- (d) had O-positive blood?
- (e) had AB-positive blood?
- (f) had B-negative blood?
- (g) had O-negative blood?
- (h) had A-positive blood?

- 24. Business** In reviewing the portfolios of 365 of its clients, a mutual funds company categorized whether the clients were invested in international stock funds, domestic stock funds, or bond funds. It found that,
- 125 were invested in domestic stocks, international stocks, and bond funds;
 - 145 were invested in domestic stocks and bond funds;
 - 300 were invested in domestic stocks;
 - 200 were invested in international and domestic stocks;
 - 18 were invested in international stocks and bond funds, but not domestic stocks;
 - 35 were invested in bonds, but not in international or domestic stocks;
 - 87 were invested in international stocks, but not in bond funds.
- (a) How many were invested in international stocks?
 - (b) How many were invested in bonds, but not international stocks?
 - (c) How many were not invested in bonds?
 - (d) How many were invested in international or domestic stocks?

For Exercises 25–28, use the given contingency tables. (See Example 6.)

- 25. Business** The contingency table lists the cross tabulation of the number of business partnerships by industry and whether the partnership reported net income or net loss for the year 2009. (Data from: U.S. Internal Revenue Service.)

Industry	Partnerships with Net Income (A)	Partnerships with Net Loss (B)
Construction (C)	90,000	92,000
Wholesale Trade (W)	23,000	22,000
Finance and Insurance (F)	209,000	104,000

Using the letters given in the table, find the number of partnerships in each set.

- (a) $B \cup C$
- (b) F'
- (c) $C \cap B$
- (d) $(C \cup W) \cap A$

- 26. Social Science** The contingency table lists the cross tabulation of whether adults feel their life is exciting, routine, or dull for males and females among the adults chosen for the 2012 General Social Survey. (Data from: www3.norc.og/gss+website.)

Life Classification	Males (M)	Females (F)
Exciting (E)	316	356
Routine (R)	234	328
Dull (D)	28	34

Using the letters given in the table, find the number of respondents in each set.


- (a) $E \cap F$
- (b) $R \cup M$
- (c) D'
- (d) $(R \cup D) \cap M$

Education In Exercises 27 and 28, the given contingency table gives the number (in thousands) of U.S. households classified by educational attainment (high school graduate or less denoted with A , some college with no degree denoted B , an associate's degree denoted with C , and a bachelor's degree or higher denoted with D) and household income ($\$0$ – $\$34,999$ denoted with E , $\$35,000$ – $\$49,999$ denoted with F , $\$50,000$ – $\$74,999$ denoted G , and $\$75,000$ and over denoted H).

		Household Income				Total
		E \$0–\$34,999	F \$35,000–\$49,999	G \$50,000–\$74,999	H \$75,000 and Over	
A	High School Graduate or Less	23,682	7040	7350	7801	45,873
B	Some College, No Degree	7196	3149	4054	5824	20,223
C	Associate's Degree	3149	1614	2241	3951	10,955
D	Bachelor's Degree or Higher	5767	3707	6509	19,513	35,496
Total		39,794	15,510	20,154	37,089	112,547

Find the number of households in the given sets. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

27. (a) $A \cap E$ (b) $A \cup H$ (c) $B \cap H'$ (d) $(A \cup B) \cap G$
28. (a) $C \cup D$ (b) $C \cap H$ (c) $D \cap E'$ (d) $(G \cup H) \cap C$

-  **29.** Restate the union rule in words.

Use Venn diagrams to answer the given questions. (See Example 5.)

30. If $n(A) = 5$, $n(B) = 8$, and $n(A \cap B) = 4$, what is $n(A \cup B)$?
31. If $n(A) = 12$, $n(B) = 27$, and $n(A \cup B) = 30$, what is $n(A \cap B)$?
32. Suppose $n(B) = 7$, $n(A \cap B) = 3$, and $n(A \cup B) = 20$. What is $n(A)$?

33. Suppose $n(A \cap B) = 5$, $n(A \cup B) = 35$, and $n(A) = 13$. What is $n(B)$?

Draw a Venn diagram and use the given information to fill in the number of elements for each region.

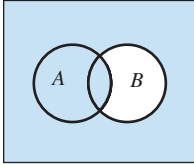
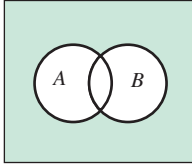
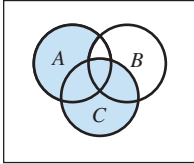
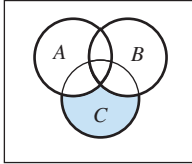
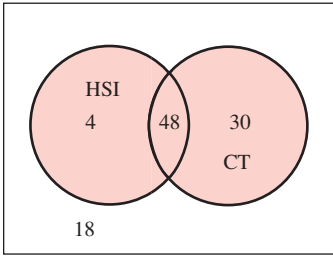
34. $n(U) = 48$, $n(A) = 26$, $n(A \cap B) = 12$, $n(B') = 30$
 35. $n(A) = 28$, $n(B) = 12$, $n(A \cup B) = 30$, $n(A') = 19$
 36. $n(A \cup B) = 17$, $n(A \cap B) = 3$, $n(A) = 8$, $n(A' \cup B') = 21$
 37. $n(A') = 28$, $n(B) = 25$, $n(A' \cup B') = 45$, $n(A \cap B) = 12$
 38. $n(A) = 28$, $n(B) = 34$, $n(C) = 25$, $n(A \cap B) = 14$, $n(B \cap C) = 15$, $n(A \cap C) = 11$, $n(A \cap B \cap C) = 9$, $n(U) = 59$
 39. $n(A) = 54$, $n(A \cap B) = 22$, $n(A \cup B) = 85$, $n(A \cap B \cap C) = 4$, $n(A \cap C) = 15$, $n(B \cap C) = 16$, $n(C) = 44$, $n(B') = 63$

In Exercises 40–43, show that the statements are true by drawing Venn diagrams and shading the regions representing the sets on each side of the equals signs.*

40. $(A \cup B)' = A' \cap B'$ 41. $(A \cap B)' = A' \cup B'$
 42. $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$
 43. $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$
 44. Explain in words the statement about sets in question 40.
 45. Explain in words the statement about sets in question 41.
 46. Explain in words the statement about sets in question 42.
 47. Explain in words the statement about sets in question 43.

*The statements in Exercises 40 and 41 are known as De Morgan's laws. They are named for the English mathematician Augustus De Morgan (1806–1871).

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a)  $A \cup B'$ (b)  $A' \cap B'$
2. (a)  $(B' \cap A) \cup C$ (b)  $(A \cup B)' \cap C$
3. (a)  (b) 4
4. (a) 40 (b) 10
 5. (a) 8 (b) 92 (c) 98
 6. 14
 7. (a) 153,139 thousand
 (b) 147,772 thousand

8.3 Introduction to Probability

If you go to a pizzeria and order two large pizzas at \$14.99 each, you can easily find the *exact* price of your purchase: \$29.98. For the manager at the pizzeria, however, it is impossible to predict the *exact* number of pizzas to be purchased daily. The number of pizzas purchased during a day is *random*: The quantity cannot be predicted exactly. A great many problems that come up in applications of mathematics involve random phenomena—phenomena for which exact prediction is impossible. The best that we can do is determine the *probability* of the possible outcomes.

Random Experiments and Sample Spaces

A **random experiment** (sometimes called a random phenomenon) has outcomes that we cannot predict, but that nonetheless have a regular distribution in a large number of repetitions. We call a repetition from a random experiment a **trial**. The possible results of each trial are called **outcomes**. For instance, when we flip a coin, the outcomes are heads and tails. We do not know whether a particular flip will yield heads or tails, but we do know that if we flip the coin a large a number of times, about half the flips will be heads and half will be tails. Each flip of the coin is a trial. The **sample space** (denoted by S) for a random experiment is the set of all possible outcomes. For the coin flipping, the sample space is

$$S = \{\text{heads, tails}\}.$$

Example 1

Give the sample space for each random experiment.

- (a) Use the spinner in Figure 8.17.



Figure 8.17

Solution The 7 outcomes are 1, 2, 3, . . . 7, so the sample space is

$$\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}.$$

- (b) For the purposes of a public opinion poll, respondents are classified as young, middle aged, or senior and as male or female.

Solution A sample space for this poll could be written as a set of ordered pairs:

$$\{(young, male), (young, female), (middle\ aged, male), \\ (middle\ aged, female), (senior, male), (senior, female)\}.$$

- (c) An experiment consists of studying the numbers of boys and girls in families with exactly 3 children. Let
- b
- represent
- boy*
- and
- g
- represent
- girl*
- .

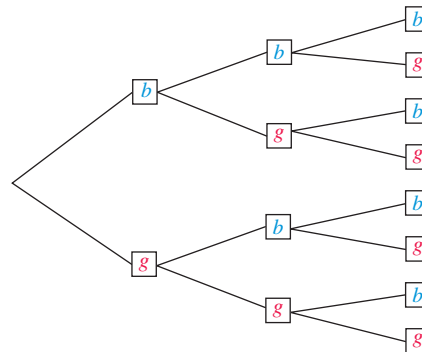
Solution For this experiment, drawing a tree diagram can be helpful. First, we draw two starting branches to the left to indicate that the first child can be either a boy or a girl. From each of those outcomes, we draw two branches to indicate that the second child can be either a boy or girl. Last, we draw two branches from each of those outcomes to indicate that after the second child, the third child can be either a boy or a girl. The result is the tree in Figure 8.18.

Figure 8.18

We can now easily list the members of the sample space S . We follow the eight paths of the branches to yield

$$S = \{bbb, bbg, bgb, bgg, gbb, gbg, ggb, ggg\}. \quad \checkmark 1$$

✓ Checkpoint 1

Draw a tree diagram for the random experiment of flipping a coin two times, and determine the sample space.

Events

An **event** is an outcome, or a set of outcomes, of a random experiment. Thus, an event is a subset of the sample space. For example, if the sample space for tossing a coin is $S = \{h, t\}$, then one event is $E = \{h\}$, which represents the outcome “heads.”

An ordinary die is a cube whose six different faces show the following numbers of dots: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6. If the die is fair (not “loaded” to favor certain faces over others), then any one of the faces is equally likely to come up when the die is rolled. The sample space for the experiment of rolling a single fair die is $S = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$. Some possible events are as follows:

The die shows an even number: $E_1 = \{2, 4, 6\}$.

The die shows a 1: $E_2 = \{1\}$.

The die shows a number less than 5: $E_3 = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$.

The die shows a multiple of 3: $E_4 = \{3, 6\}$.

Example 2

For the sample space S in Example 1(c) on the previous page, write the given events in set notation.

(a) Event H : The family has exactly two girls.

Solution Families with three children can have exactly two girls with either bgg , gbg , or ggb , so that event H is

$$H = \{bgg, gbg, ggb\}.$$

(b) Event K : The three children are the same sex.

Solution Two outcomes satisfy this condition: all boys and all girls, or

$$K = \{bbb, ggg\}.$$

(c) Event J : The family has three girls.

Solution Only ggg satisfies this condition, so

$$J = \{ggg\}. \quad \checkmark_2$$

✓ Checkpoint 2

Suppose a die is tossed. Write the given events in set notation.

- (a) The number showing is less than 3.
- (b) The number showing is 5.
- (c) The number showing is 8.

If an event E equals the sample space S , then E is a **certain event**. If event $E = \emptyset$, then E is an **impossible event**.

Example 3

Suppose a fair die is rolled. Then the sample space is $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$. Find the requested events.

(a) The event “the die shows a 4.”

Solution $\{4\}$.

(b) The event “the number showing is less than 10.”

Solution The event is the entire sample space $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$. This event is a certain event; if a die is rolled, the number showing (either 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6) must be less than 10.

(c) The event “the die shows a 7.”

Solution The empty set, \emptyset ; this is an impossible event. \checkmark_3

✓ Checkpoint 3

Which of the events listed in Checkpoint 2 is

- (a) certain?
- (b) impossible?

Since events are sets, we can use set operations to find unions, intersections, and complements of events. Here is a summary of the set operations for events.

Set Operations for Events

Let E and F be events for a sample space S . Then

$E \cap F$ occurs when both E **and** F occur;

$E \cup F$ occurs when E **or** F **or both** occur;

E' occurs when E does **not** occur.

Example 4

A study of college students grouped the students into various categories that can be interpreted as events when a student is selected at random. Consider the following events:

E : The student is under 20 years old;

F : The student is male;

G : The student is a business major.

Describe each of the following events in words.


(a) E'

Solution E' is the event that the student is 20 years old or older.

(b) $F' \cap G$

Solution $F' \cap G$ is the event that the student is not male and the student is a business major—that is, the student is a female business major.

(c) $E' \cup G$

Solution $E' \cup G$ is the event that the student is 20 or over or is a business major. Note that this event includes all students 20 or over, regardless of major. 

✓ Checkpoint 4

Write the set notation for the given events for the experiment of rolling a fair die if $E = \{1, 3\}$ and $F = \{2, 3, 4, 5\}$.

- (a) $E \cap F$
- (b) $E \cup F$
- (c) E'

✓ Checkpoint 5

In Example 5, let $F = \{2, 4, 6\}$, $K = \{1, 3, 5\}$, and G remain the same. Are the given events disjoint?

- (a) F and K
- (b) F and G

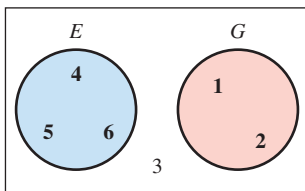


Figure 8.19


Disjoint Events

Events E and F are disjoint events if $E \cap F = \emptyset$.

For any event E , E and E' are disjoint events.

Example 5

Let $S = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$, the sample space for tossing a die. Let $E = \{4, 5, 6\}$, and let $G = \{1, 2\}$. Are E and G disjoint events?

Solution Yes, because they have no outcomes in common; $E \cap G = \emptyset$. See Figure 8.19. 

Probability


For sample spaces with *equally likely* outcomes, the probability of an event is defined as follows.

Basic Probability Principle

Let S be a sample space of equally likely outcomes, and let event E be a subset of S . Then the **probability that event E occurs** is

$$P(E) = \frac{n(E)}{n(S)}.$$

By this definition, the **probability of an event** is a number that indicates the relative likelihood of the event.

 **CAUTION** The basic probability principle applies only when the outcomes are equally likely.

Example 6

Suppose a single fair die is rolled, with the sample space $S = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$. Give the probability of each of the following events.

(a) E : The die shows an even number.

Solution Here, $E = \{2, 4, 6\}$, a set with three elements. Because S contains six elements,

$$P(E) = \frac{3}{6} = \frac{1}{2}.$$

(b) F : The die shows a number less than 10.

Solution Event F is a certain event, with

$$F = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\},$$

so that

$$P(F) = \frac{6}{6} = 1.$$

(c) G : The die shows an 8.

Solution This event is impossible, so

$$P(G) = \frac{0}{6} = 0. \quad \checkmark_6$$

✓ Checkpoint 6

A fair die is rolled. Find the probability of rolling

- (a) an odd number;
- (b) 2, 4, 5, or 6;
- (c) a number greater than 5;
- (d) the number 7.

A standard deck of 52 cards has four suits—hearts (♥), clubs (♣), diamonds (♦), and spades (♠)—with 13 cards in each suit. The hearts and diamonds are red, and the spades and clubs are black. Each suit has an ace (A), a king (K), a queen (Q), a jack (J), and cards numbered from 2 to 10. The jack, queen, and king are called face cards and for many purposes can be thought of as having values 11, 12, and 13, respectively. The ace can be thought of as the low card (value 1) or the high card (value 14). See Figure 8.20. We will refer to this standard deck of cards often in our discussion of probability.

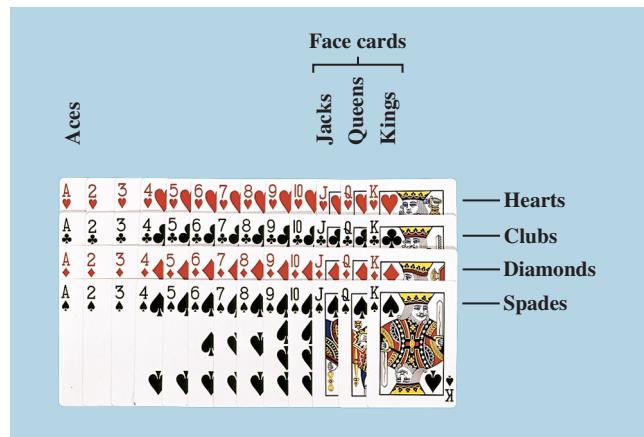


Figure 8.20

Example 7

If a single card is drawn at random from a standard, well-shuffled, 52-card deck, find the probability of each of the given events.

(a) Drawing an ace

Solution There are 4 aces in the deck. The event “drawing an ace” is

$$\{\text{heart ace, diamond ace, club ace, spade ace}\}.$$

Therefore,

$$P(\text{ace}) = \frac{4}{52} = \frac{1}{13}.$$

(b) Drawing a face card

Solution Since there are 12 face cards,

$$P(\text{face card}) = \frac{12}{52} = \frac{3}{13}.$$

(c) Drawing a spade

Solution The deck contains 13 spades, so

$$P(\text{spade}) = \frac{13}{52} = \frac{1}{4}.$$

(d) Drawing a spade or a heart

Solution Besides the 13 spades, the deck contains 13 hearts, so

$$P(\text{spade or heart}) = \frac{26}{52} = \frac{1}{2}. \quad \checkmark_7$$

✓ Checkpoint 7

A single playing card is drawn at random from an ordinary 52-card deck. Find the probability of drawing

- (a) a queen;
- (b) a diamond;
- (c) a red card.

In the preceding examples, the probability of each event was a number between 0 and 1, inclusive. The same thing is true in general. Any event E is a subset of the sample space S , so $0 \leq n(E) \leq n(S)$. Since $P(E) = n(E)/n(S)$, it follows that $0 \leq P(E) \leq 1$.

For any event E ,

$$0 \leq P(E) \leq 1.$$

In many real-life problems, the events in the sample space are not all equally likely. When this is the case, we can estimate probabilities by determining the long-run proportion that an outcome of interest will occur given many repetitions under identical, and independent, circumstances. We do this often when we perform a statistical study. The long-run proportion is called the **relative frequency probability**. Estimates based on relative frequency probability are sometimes called *empirical probabilities*. Independence in this context refers to the idea that what occurs in one run has no effect on the outcome of a subsequent run.

For example, imagine that we want to determine the probability that a newly manufactured porcelain sink contains a defect. We examine the first sink before it is shipped and see that it has no defects. So we estimate the probability of a defect as 0 because the relative frequency of defects is 0 out of 1 trial. The second sink, however, has a defect. Now our number of defects is 1 out of two trials, so our relative frequency is 1 out of 2, which is .5. The table shows the results for these two sinks and eight additional sinks.

Sink Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Defect Y/N	N	Y	N	N	N	Y	Y	N	N	N
Relative Frequency	$0/1 = 0$	$1/2 = .5$	$1/3 \approx .333$	$1/4 = .25$	$1/5 = .2$	$2/6 \approx .333$	$3/7 \approx .429$	$3/8 = .375$	$3/9 \approx .333$	$3/10 = .3$

Notice that the relative frequency fluctuates a great deal. To get a better estimate of the probability of a defect, we need to examine the *long-run* proportion of defects. When the same conditions are repeated a large number of times, the relative frequency will stabilize to the long-run frequency. Figure 8.21 shows how the relative frequency stabilizes to some degree after 50 trials and Figure 8.22 shows the relative frequency after 1000 trials. We can see in Figure 8.22 that the long-run proportion of defects is close to .25.

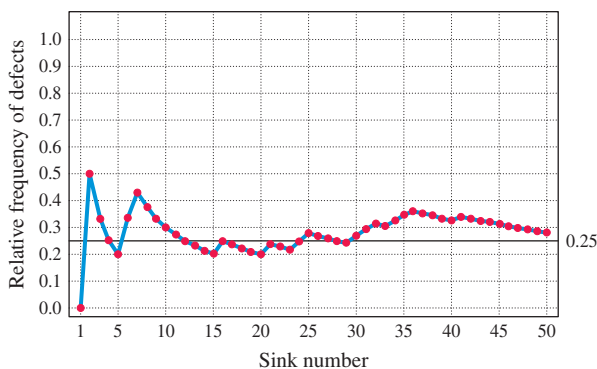


Figure 8.21

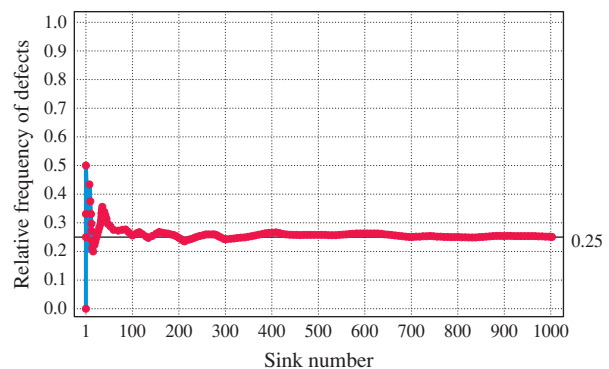


Figure 8.22



NOTE Independence here pertains to the assumption that one sink having, or not having, a defect has no influence on whether another sink has a defect or not. We will investigate independence in greater depth in Section 8.5.

Thus, when we examine many trials of a given phenomenon of interest we can obtain a long-run estimate of the probability of interest. The next example shows one approach to finding such relative frequency probabilities.

Example 8

Social Science The General Social Survey picks U.S. residents at random and asks them a great many questions. One of the questions they asked respondents in 2012 was “Do you feel your standard of living is much better, somewhat better, about

the same, somewhat worse or much worse than your parents?” The table categorizes the responses.

Response	Frequency
Much Better	413
Somewhat Better	368
About the Same	296
Somewhat Worse	162
Much Worse	69

- (a) Estimate the probability a U.S. resident feels his or her standard of living is much better than that of his or her parents.

Solution Let us define the set A to be the event that a resident feels his or her standard of living is much better. To find the relative frequency probability, we first need to find the total number of respondents. This is $413 + 368 + 296 + 162 + 69 = 1308$. We then divide the frequency in the much better category (in this case 413) by 1308 to obtain

$$P(A) = \frac{413}{1308} \approx .3157.$$

We use this relative frequency as our estimate of the long-run frequency and say that the estimated probability that a U.S. resident feels his or her standard of living is much better is approximately .3157.

- (b) Estimate the probability of the event B that a U.S. resident feels that his or her standard of living is somewhat worse or worse.

Solution Here, we add together the number of respondents in the categories of somewhat worse and worse ($162 + 69 = 231$) to obtain

$$P(B) = \frac{162 + 69}{1308} = \frac{231}{1308} \approx .1766. \quad \checkmark_8$$

✓ Checkpoint 8

From the data given in Example 8, estimate the probability that a U.S. resident believes his or her standard of living is much better, somewhat better, or about the same as that of his or her parents.

After conducting a study such as the General Social Survey where respondents are chosen at random, we can assume independence because one person’s response should have no relation to another person’s response. We also use the term “estimated probability” or just “probability” rather than “relative frequency probability.”

A table of frequencies, as in Example 8, sets up a probability distribution; that is, for each possible outcome of an experiment, a number, called the probability of that outcome, is assigned. This assignment may be done in any reasonable way (on a relative frequency basis, as in Example 8, or by theoretical reasoning, as in Example 6), provided that it satisfies the following conditions.

Properties of Probability

Let S be a sample space consisting of n distinct outcomes s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n . An acceptable probability assignment consists of assigning to each outcome s_i a number p_i (the probability of s_i) according to the following rules:

1. The probability of each outcome is a number between 0 and 1:

$$0 \leq p_1 \leq 1, \quad 0 \leq p_2 \leq 1, \dots, \quad 0 \leq p_n \leq 1.$$

2. The sum of the probabilities of all possible outcomes is 1:

$$p_1 + p_2 + p_3 + \dots + p_n = 1.$$

8.3 Exercises

1. What is meant by a “fair” coin or die?
2. What is the sample space for a random experiment?

Write sample spaces for the random experiments in Exercises 3–9. (See Example 1.)

3. A month of the year is chosen for a wedding.
4. A day in April is selected for a bicycle race.
5. A student is asked how many points she earned on a recent 80-point test.
6. A person is asked the number of hours (to the nearest hour) he watched television yesterday.
7. The management of an oil company must decide whether to go ahead with a new oil shale plant or to cancel it.
8. A coin is tossed and a die is rolled.
9. The quarter of the year in which a company’s profits were highest.
10. Define an event.
11. Define disjoint events in your own words.

Decide whether the events are disjoint. (See Example 5.)

12. Owning an SUV and owning a Hummer
13. Wearing a hat and wearing glasses
14. Being married and being under 30 years old
15. Being a doctor and being under 5 years old
16. Being male and being a nurse
17. Being female and being a pilot

For the random experiments in Exercises 18–20, write out an equally likely sample space, and then write the indicated events in set notation. (See Examples 2 and 3.)

18. A marble is drawn at random from a bowl containing 3 yellow, 4 white, and 8 blue marbles.
 - (a) A yellow marble is drawn.
 - (b) A blue marble is drawn.
 - (c) A white marble is drawn.
 - (d) A black marble is drawn.
19. Six people live in a dorm suite. Two are to be selected to go to the campus café to pick up a pizza. Of course, no one wants to go, so the six names (Connie, Kate, Lindsey, Jackie, Taisa, and Nicole) are placed in a hat. After the hat is shaken, two names are selected.
 - (a) Taisa is selected.
 - (b) The two names selected have the same number of letters.
20. An unprepared student takes a three-question true-or-false quiz in which he flips a coin to guess the answers. If the coin is heads, he guesses true, and if the coin is tails, he guesses false.

- (a) The student guesses true twice and guesses false once.
- (b) The student guesses all false.
- (c) The student guesses true once and guesses false twice.

In Exercises 21–23, write out the sample space and assume each outcome is equally likely. Then give the probability of the requested outcomes. (See Examples 7 and 8.)

21. In deciding what color and style to paint a room, Greg has narrowed his choices to three colors—forest sage, evergreen whisper, and opaque emerald—and two styles—rag painting and colorwash.
 - (a) Greg picks a combination with colorwash.
 - (b) Greg picks a combination with opaque emerald or rag painting.
22. Tami goes shopping and sees three kinds of shoes: flats, 2” heels, and 3” heels. They come in two shades of beige (light and dark) and black.
 - (a) The shoe selected has a heel and is black.
 - (b) The shoe selected has no heel and is beige.
 - (c) The shoe selected has a heel and is beige.
23. Doug Hall is shopping for a new patio umbrella. There is a 10-foot and a 12-foot model, and each is available in beige, forest green, and rust.
 - (a) Doug buys a 12-foot forest green umbrella.
 - (b) Doug buys a 10-foot umbrella.
 - (c) Doug buys a rust-colored umbrella.
24. Kathy Little is deciding between four brands of cell phones: Samsung, Motorola, Nokia, and Sony. Each of these phones comes with the option of insurance or no insurance.
 - (a) Kathy picks a phone with insurance.
 - (b) Kathy picks a phone that begins with the letter “S” and no insurance.

A single fair die is rolled. Find the probabilities of the given events. (See Example 6.)

25. Getting a number less than 4
26. Getting a number greater than 4
27. Getting a 2 or a 5
28. Getting a multiple of 3

David Klein wants to adopt a puppy from an animal shelter. At the shelter, he finds eight puppies that he likes: a male and female puppy from each of the four breeds of beagle, boxer, collie, and Labrador. The puppies are each so cute that Dave cannot make up his mind, so he decides to pick the dog randomly.

29. Write the sample space for the outcomes, assuming each outcome is equally likely.

Find the probability that Dave chooses the given puppy.

30. A male boxer
31. A male puppy

- 32. A collie
- 33. A female Labrador
- 34. A beagle or a boxer
- 35. Anything except a Labrador
- 36. Anything except a male beagle or male boxer.

Business The following table gives the number of fatal work injuries categorized by cause from 2010. (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics.)

Cause	Number of Fatalities
Transportation accidents	1857
Assaults and violent acts	832
Contacts with objects and equipment	738
Falls	646
Exposure to harmful substances or environments	414
Fires and explosions	191
Other	12

Find the probability that a randomly chosen work fatality had the given cause. (See Example 8.)

- 37. A fall
- 38. Fires and explosions
- 39. **Social Science** Respondents to the 2012 General Social Survey (GSS) indicated the following categorizations pertaining to attendance at religious services: (Data from: www3.norc.org/gss+website.)

Attendance	Number of Respondents
Never	496
Less than once a year	111
Once a year	264
Several times a year	191
Once a month	133
2–3 times a month	168
Nearly every week	83
Every week	380
More than once a week	140
Don't know/no answer	8
Total	1974

Find the probability that a randomly chosen person in the United States attends religious services

- (a) several times a year;
- (b) 2–3 times a month;
- (c) nearly every week or more frequently.
- 40. **Social Science** Respondents to the 2012 General Social Survey (GSS) indicated whether they strongly agreed, agreed, disagreed, or strongly disagreed with the question, “It is better for men to work and for women to tend to the home.” The responses are categorized in the following table. (Data from: www3.norc.org/gss+website.)

Response	Number of Respondents
Strongly Agree	87
Agree	313
Disagree	636
Strongly Disagree	249

Find the probability that a person in the United States

- (a) strongly agreed or agreed with the statement;
- (b) strongly disagreed with the statement;
- (c) did not strongly agree with the statement.
- 41. **Health** For a medical experiment, people are classified as to whether they smoke, have a family history of heart disease, or are overweight. Define events E , F , and G as follows:
 E : person smokes;
 F : person has a family history of heart disease;
 G : person is overweight.
 Describe each of the following events in words.
 - (a) G'
 - (b) $F \cap G$
 - (c) $E \cup G'$
- 42. **Health** Refer to Exercise 41. Describe each of the events that follow in words.
 - (a) $E \cup F$
 - (b) $E' \cap F$
 - (c) $F' \cup G'$
- 43. **Health** The National Health and Nutrition Examination Study (NHANES) is conducted every several years by the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. The following table gives the results from the 2010 survey of U.S. residents. The table shows the counts of women between the ages of 21 and 79 for various height (in inches) categories. (Data from: www.cdc.gov/nchs/.)

Height (Inches)	Count of Females
Less than 60	354
60–62.99	924
63–65.99	1058
66–68.99	421
69–71.99	65
72–74.99	3
75 or more	1

Find the probability that a female U.S. resident is

- (a) six feet tall or taller;
- (b) less than 63 inches tall;
- (c) between 63 and 68.99 inches tall.
- 44. **Health** The same study as in Exercise 43 generates the following table for males age 21 to 79.

Height (Inches)	Count of Males
Less than 60	7
60–62.99	60
63–65.99	439
66–68.99	890
69–71.99	872
72–74.99	337
75 or more	59

Find the probability that a male U.S. resident is

- (a) under 66 inches tall;
- (b) more than 69 inches tall;
- (c) between 66 and 74.99 inches tall.

An experiment is conducted for which the sample space is $S = \{s_1, s_2, s_3, s_4, s_5\}$. Which of the probability assignments in Exercises 45–50 is possible for this experiment? If an assignment is not possible, tell why.

45.

Outcomes	s_1	s_2	s_3	s_4	s_5
Probabilities	.09	.32	.21	.25	.13

46.

Outcomes	s_1	s_2	s_3	s_4	s_5
Probabilities	.92	.03	0	.02	.03

47.

Outcomes	s_1	s_2	s_3	s_4	s_5
Probabilities	1/3	1/4	1/6	1/8	1/10

48.

Outcomes	s_1	s_2	s_3	s_4	s_5
Probabilities	1/5	1/3	1/4	1/5	1/10

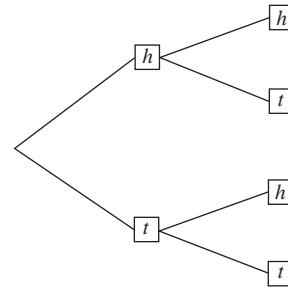
49.

Outcomes	s_1	s_2	s_3	s_4	s_5
Probabilities	.64	-.08	.30	.12	.02

50.

Outcomes	s_1	s_2	s_3	s_4	s_5
Probabilities	.05	.35	.5	.2	-.3

✓ Checkpoint Answers



1. $\{hh, ht, th, tt\}$
2. (a) $\{1, 2\}$ (b) $\{5\}$ (c) \emptyset
3. (a) None (b) Part (c)
4. (a) $\{3\}$ (b) $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$ (c) $\{2, 4, 5, 6\}$
5. (a) Yes (b) No
6. (a) 1/2 (b) 2/3 (c) 1/6 (d) 0
7. (a) 1/13 (b) 1/4 (c) 1/2
8. About .8234

8.4 Basic Concepts of Probability

We determine the probability of more complex events in this section.

To find the probability of the union of two sets E and F in a sample space S , we use the union rule for counting given in Section 8.2:

$$n(E \cup F) = n(E) + n(F) - n(E \cap F).$$

Dividing both sides by $n(S)$ yields

$$\frac{n(E \cup F)}{n(S)} = \frac{n(E)}{n(S)} + \frac{n(F)}{n(S)} - \frac{n(E \cap F)}{n(S)}$$

$$P(E \cup F) = P(E) + P(F) - P(E \cap F).$$

This discussion is summarized in the next rule.

Addition Rule for Probability

For any events E and F from a sample space S ,

$$P(E \cup F) = P(E) + P(F) - P(E \cap F).$$

In words, we have

$$P(E \text{ or } F) = P(E) + P(F) - P(E \text{ and } F).$$

(Although the addition rule applies to any events E and F from any sample space, the derivation we have given is valid only for sample spaces with equally likely simple events.)

Example 1 When playing American roulette, the croupier (attendant) spins a marble that lands in one of the 38 slots in a revolving turntable. The slots are numbered 1 to 36, with two additional slots labeled 0 and 00 that are painted green. Half the remaining slots are colored red, and half are black. (See Figure 8.23.)

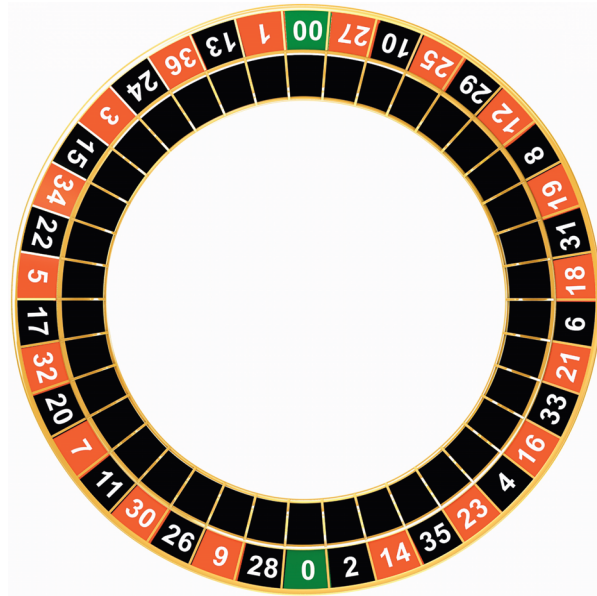


Figure 8.23

In roulette, the slots labeled 0 or 00 are not considered as even or odd. Find the probability that the marble will land in a red or even number.

Solution Let R represent the event of the marble landing in a red slot and E the event of the marble landing in an even-numbered slot. There are 18 slots that are colored red, so $P(R) = 18/38$. There are also 18 even numbers between 1 and 36, so $P(E) = 18/38$. In order to use the addition rule, we also need to know the number of slots that are red and even numbered. Looking at Figure 8.23, we can see there are 8 such slots, which implies that $P(R \cap E) = 8/38$. Using the addition rule, we find the probability that the marble will land in a slot that is red or even numbered is

$$\begin{aligned} P(R \cup E) &= P(R) + P(E) - P(R \cap E) \\ &= \frac{18}{38} + \frac{18}{38} - \frac{8}{38} = \frac{28}{38} = \frac{14}{19}. \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 1

If an American roulette wheel is spun, find the probability of the marble landing in a black slot or a slot (excluding 0 and 00) whose number is divisible by 3.

Example 2 Suppose two fair dice (plural of *die*) are rolled. Find each of the given probabilities.

(a) The first die shows a 2 or the sum of the results is 6 or 7.

Solution The sample space for the throw of two dice is shown in Figure 8.24, on the following page, where 1-1 represents the event “the first die shows a 1 and the second die shows a 1,” 1-2 represents the event “the first die shows a 1 and the second die shows a 2,” and so on. Let A represent the event “the first die shows a 2” and B represent the event “the sum of

the results is 6 or 7.” These events are indicated in color in Figure 8.24. From the diagram, event A has 6 elements, B has 11 elements, and the sample space has 36 elements. Thus,

$$P(A) = \frac{6}{36}, \quad P(B) = \frac{11}{36}, \quad \text{and} \quad P(A \cap B) = \frac{2}{36}.$$

By the addition rule,

$$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B),$$

$$P(A \cup B) = \frac{6}{36} + \frac{11}{36} - \frac{2}{36} = \frac{15}{36} = \frac{5}{12}.$$

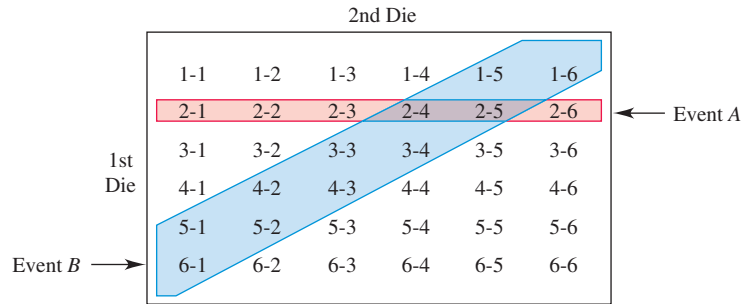


Figure 8.24

(b) The sum is 11 or the second die shows a 5.

Solution $P(\text{sum is 11}) = 2/36$, $P(\text{second die shows 5}) = 6/36$, and $P(\text{sum is 11 and second die shows 5}) = 1/36$, so

$$P(\text{sum is 11 or second die shows 5}) = \frac{2}{36} + \frac{6}{36} - \frac{1}{36} = \frac{7}{36}. \quad \checkmark_2$$

✓ Checkpoint 2

In the random experiment of Example 2, find the given probabilities.

- (a) The sum is 5 or the second die shows a 3.
- (b) Both dice show the same number, or the sum is at least 11.

If events E and F are disjoint, then $E \cap F = \emptyset$ by definition; hence, $P(E \cap F) = 0$. Applying the addition rule yields the useful fact that follows.

Addition Rule for Disjoint Events

For disjoint events E and F ,

$$P(E \cup F) = P(E) + P(F).$$

Example 3

Assume that the probability of a couple having a baby boy is the same as the probability of the couple having a baby girl. If the couple has 3 children, find the probability that at least 2 of them are girls.

Solution The event of having at least 2 girls is the union of the disjoint events $E =$ “the family has exactly 2 girls” and $F =$ “the family has exactly 3 girls.” Using the equally likely sample space

$$\{ggg, ggb, gbg, bgg, gbb, bgb, bbg, bbb\},$$

where b represents a boy and g represents a girl, we see that $P(2 \text{ girls}) = 3/8$ and $P(3 \text{ girls}) = 1/8$. Therefore,

$$P(\text{at least 2 girls}) = P(2 \text{ girls}) + P(3 \text{ girls})$$

$$= \frac{3}{8} + \frac{1}{8} = \frac{1}{2}. \quad \checkmark_3$$

✓ Checkpoint 3

In Example 3, find the probability of having no more than 2 girls.

By definition of E' , for any event E from a sample space S ,

$$E \cup E' = S \quad \text{and} \quad E \cap E' = \emptyset.$$

Because $E \cap E' = \emptyset$, events E and E' are disjoint, so that

$$P(E \cup E') = P(E) + P(E').$$

However, $E \cup E' = S$, the sample space, and $P(S) = 1$. Thus,

$$P(E \cup E') = P(E) + P(E') = 1.$$

Rearranging these terms gives the following useful rule.

Complement Rule

For any event E ,

$$P(E') = 1 - P(E) \quad \text{and} \quad P(E) = 1 - P(E').$$

✓ Checkpoint 4

- (a) Let $P(K) = 2/3$. Find $P(K')$.
 (b) If $P(X') = 3/4$, find $P(X)$.

Example 4 If a fair die is rolled, what is the probability that any number but 5 will come up?

Solution If E is the event that 5 comes up, then E' is the event that any number but 5 comes up. $P(E) = 1/6$, so we have $P(E') = 1 - 1/6 = 5/6$. ✓₄

Example 5 If two fair dice are rolled, find the probability that the sum of the numbers showing is greater than 3.

Solution To calculate this probability directly, we must find each of the probabilities that the sum is 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, and 12 and then add them. It is much simpler to first find the probability of the complement, the event that the sum is less than or equal to 3:

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{sum} \leq 3) &= P(\text{sum is } 2) + P(\text{sum is } 3) \\ &= \frac{1}{36} + \frac{2}{36} = \frac{3}{36} = \frac{1}{12}. \end{aligned}$$

Now use the fact that $P(E) = 1 - P(E')$ to get

$$P(\text{sum} > 3) = 1 - P(\text{sum} \leq 3) = 1 - \frac{1}{12} = \frac{11}{12}. \quad \checkmark_5$$

✓ Checkpoint 5

In Example 5, find the probability that the sum of the numbers rolled is at least 5.

Odds

Sometimes probability statements are given in terms of **odds**: a comparison of $P(E)$ with $P(E')$. For example, suppose $P(E) = \frac{4}{5}$. Then $P(E') = 1 - \frac{4}{5} = \frac{1}{5}$. These probabilities predict that E will occur 4 out of 5 times and E' will occur 1 out of 5 times. Then we say that the **odds in favor** of E are 4 to 1, or 4:1.

Odds

The **odds in favor** of an event E are defined as the ratio of $P(E)$ to $P(E')$, or

$$\frac{P(E)}{P(E')}, \quad P(E') \neq 0.$$

Example 6

Suppose the weather forecaster says that the probability of rain tomorrow is $1/3$. Find the odds in favor of rain tomorrow.

Solution Let E be the event “rain tomorrow.” Then E' is the event “no rain tomorrow.” Since $P(E) = 1/3$, $P(E') = 2/3$. By the definition of odds, the odds in favor of rain are

$$\frac{1/3}{2/3} = \frac{1}{2}, \quad \text{written 1 to 2 or 1:2.}$$

On the other hand, the odds that it will *not* rain, or the odds *against* rain, are

$$\frac{2/3}{1/3} = \frac{2}{1}, \quad \text{written 2 to 1.}$$

If the odds in favor of an event are, say, 3 to 5, then the probability of the event is $3/8$, while the probability of the complement of the event is $5/8$. (Odds of 3 to 5 indicate 3 outcomes in favor of the event out of a total of 8 outcomes.) The above example suggests the following generalization:

If the odds favoring event E are m to n , then


$$P(E) = \frac{m}{m+n} \quad \text{and} \quad P(E') = \frac{n}{m+n}.$$

Example 7

Often, weather forecasters give probability in terms of percentage. Suppose the weather forecaster says that there is a 40% chance that it will snow tomorrow. Find the odds of snow tomorrow.

Solution In this case, we can let E be the event “snow tomorrow.” Then E' is the event “no snow tomorrow.” Now, we have $P(E) = .4 = 4/10$ and $P(E') = .6 = 6/10$. By the definition of odds in favor, the odds in favor of snow are

$$\frac{4/10}{6/10} = \frac{4}{6} = \frac{2}{3}, \quad \text{written 2 to 3 or 2:3.}$$

It is important to put the final fraction into lowest terms in order to communicate the odds. 

 **Checkpoint 6**

In Example 7, suppose $P(E) = 9/10$. Find the odds

- (a) in favor of E ;
- (b) against E .

Suppose the chance of snow is 80%. Find the odds

- (c) in favor of snow;
- (d) against snow.

 **Checkpoint 7**

If the odds in favor of event E are 1 to 5, find

- (a) $P(E)$;
- (b) $P(E')$.

Example 8

The odds that a particular bid will be the low bid are 4 to 5.

- (a) Find the probability that the bid will be the low bid.


Solution Odds of 4 to 5 show 4 favorable chances out of $4 + 5 = 9$ chances altogether, so

$$P(\text{bid will be low bid}) = \frac{4}{4+5} = \frac{4}{9}.$$

- (b) Find the odds against that bid being the low bid.

Solution There is a $5/9$ chance that the bid will not be the low bid, so the odds against a low bid are

$$\frac{P(\text{bid will not be low})}{P(\text{bid will be low})} = \frac{5/9}{4/9} = \frac{5}{4},$$

or 5:4. 

Applications

Example 9 Social Science Let A represent that the driver in a fatal crash was age 24 or younger and let B represent that the driver had a blood alcohol content (BAC) of .08% or higher. From data on fatal crashes in the year 2010 from the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, we have the following probabilities.

$$P(A) = .2077, \quad P(B) = .2180, \quad P(A \cap B) = .0536.$$

- (a) Find the probability that the driver was 25 or older and had a BAC level below .08%.

Solution Place the given information on a Venn diagram, starting with .0536 in the intersection of the regions A and B . (See Figure 8.25.) As stated earlier, event A has probability .2077. Since .0536 has already been placed inside the intersection of A and B ,

$$.2077 - .0536 = .1541$$

goes inside region A , but outside the intersection of A and B . In the same way,

$$.2180 - .0536 = .1644$$

goes inside region B , but outside the overlap.

Since being age 25 or older is the complement of event A and having a BAC below .08% is the complement of event B , we need to find $P(A' \cap B')$. From the Venn diagram in Figure 8.25, the labeled regions have a total probability of

$$.1541 + .0536 + .1644 = .3721.$$

Since the entire region of the Venn diagram must have probability 1, the region outside A and B , namely $A' \cap B'$, has the probability

$$1 - .3721 = .6279.$$

The probability that a driver of a fatal crash is 25 or older and has a BAC below .08% is .6279.

- (b) Find the probability that a driver in a fatal crash is 25 or older or has a BAC below .08%.

Solution The corresponding region for $A' \cup B'$ from Figure 8.25 has probability

$$.6279 + .1541 + .1644 = .9464. \quad \checkmark_8$$

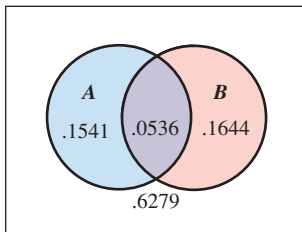


Figure 8.25

✓ Checkpoint 8

Using the data from Example 9, find the probability that a driver in a fatal crash

- (a) has a BAC below .08%;
- (b) is age 25 or older and has a BAC of .08% or higher.

Example 10 Business Data from the 2012 *Forbes* magazine survey of the 100 highest paid chief executive officers (CEOs) is cross classified by age (in years) and annual compensation (in millions of dollars). Let E be the event the CEO earns less than \$25 million and F be the event the CEO's age is in the 60s.

		Annual Compensation (Millions of Dollars)			
		Less than 25	25–34.99	35 or more	Total
Age (Years)	Under 60	28	12	12	52
	60s	31	7	7	45
	70 or older	1	1	1	3
	Total	60	20	20	100

(a) Find $P(E)$.

Solution We need to find the total number where the pay is less than \$25 million down the different age groups (see shaded column below).

		Annual Compensation (Millions of Dollars)			
		Less than 25	25–34.99	35 or more	Total
Age (Years)	Under 60	28	12	12	52
	60s	31	7	7	45
	70 or older	1	1	1	3
	Total	60	20	20	100

Thus we have $28 + 31 + 1 = 60$ is the total number who earned less than \$25 million dollars and

$$P(E) = 60/100 = .60.$$

(b) Find $P(E \cap F)$

Solution We look to find the number that satisfies both conditions. We see there are 31 responses in the column for less than 25 and the row for age in the 60s (see area shaded in bright blue below).

		Annual Compensation (Millions of Dollars)			
		Less than 25	25–34.99	35 or more	Total
Age (Years)	Under 60	28	12	12	52
	60s	31	7	7	45
	70 or older	1	1	1	3
	Total	60	20	20	100

Thus,

$$P(E \cap F) = 31/100 = .31.$$

(c) Find $P(E \cup F)$.

Solution We can use the Additive Rule for Probability to find $P(E \cup F)$. We know from part (a) that $P(E) = .60$. In a similar manner to part (a), we can find $P(F)$. There are $31 + 7 + 7 = 45$ CEOs whose age is in the 60s, so $P(F) = 45/100 = .45$. With the answer to (b), using the Additive Rule yields

$$P(E \cup F) = P(E) + P(F) - P(E \cap F) = .60 + .45 - .31 = .74. \quad \checkmark_9$$

✓ Checkpoint 9

Let G be the event the CEO earns \$35 million or more and H be the event the CEO's age is under 60. Find the following.

- (a) $P(G)$
- (b) $P(G \cap H)$
- (c) $P(G \cup H)$

8.4 Exercises

Assume a single spin of the roulette wheel is made. Find the probability for the given events. (See Example 1.)

1. The marble lands in a green or black slot.
2. The marble lands in a green or even slot.
3. The marble lands in an odd or black slot.

Also with a single spin of the roulette wheel, find the probability of winning with the given bets.

4. The marble will land in a slot numbered 13–18.

5. The marble will land in slots 0, 00, 1, 2, or 3.
6. The marble will land in a slot that is a positive multiple of 3.
7. The marble will land in a slot numbered 25–36.

Two dice are rolled. Find the probabilities of rolling the given sums. (See Examples 2, 4, and 5.)

8. (a) 2 (b) 4 (c) 5 (d) 6
9. (a) 8 (b) 9 (c) 10 (d) 13

10. (a) 9 or more
(b) Less than 7
(c) Between 5 and 8 (exclusive)
11. (a) Not more than 5
(b) Not less than 8
(c) Between 3 and 7 (exclusive)

Tami goes shopping and sees three kinds of shoes: flats, 2" heels, and 3" heels. The shoes come in two shades of beige (light and dark) and black. If each option has an equal chance of being selected, find the probabilities of the given events.

12. The shoes Tami buys have a heel.
13. The shoes Tami buys are black.
14. The shoes Tami buys have a 2" heel and are beige.

Ms. Elliott invites 10 relatives to a party: her mother, 3 aunts, 2 uncles, 2 sisters, 1 male cousin, and 1 female cousin. If the chances of any one guest arriving first are equally likely, find the probabilities that the given guests will arrive first.

15. (a) A sister or an aunt
(b) A sister or a cousin
(c) A sister or her mother
16. (a) An aunt or a cousin
(b) A male or an uncle
(c) A female or a cousin

Use Venn diagrams to work Exercises 17–21. (See Example 9.)

17. Suppose $P(E) = .30$, $P(F) = .51$, and $P(E \cap F) = .19$. Find each of the given probabilities.
(a) $P(E \cup F)$ (b) $P(E' \cap F)$
(c) $P(E \cap F')$ (d) $P(E' \cup F')$
18. Let $P(Z) = .40$, $P(Y) = .30$, and $P(Z \cup Y) = .58$. Find each of the given probabilities.
(a) $P(Z' \cap Y')$ (b) $P(Z' \cup Y')$
(c) $P(Z' \cup Y)$ (d) $P(Z \cap Y')$
19. **Economics** According to data from the 2011 American Community Survey, the probability that a U.S. resident earns \$75,000 or more a year (event A) is .325. The probability that a U.S. resident lives in an owner-occupied home (event B) is .646. The probability that a U.S. resident earns \$75,000 or more and lives in an owner-occupied home is .272. Find the probability of the given events. (Data from: factfinder2.census.gov.)
(a) $A \cup B$ (b) $A' \cap B$
(c) $A' \cap B'$ (d) $A' \cup B'$

20. **Economics** According to data from the 2011 American Community Survey, the probability that a U.S. resident earns less than \$20,000 a year (event C) is .192. The probability that a U.S. resident lives in a rented home (event D) is .354. The probability that a U.S. resident earns less than \$20,000 and lives in a rented home is .119. Find the probability of the given events. (Data from: factfinder2.census.gov.)

- (a) $C \cup D$ (b) $C \cap D'$
(c) $C' \cap D'$ (d) $C' \cup D'$

21. **Social Science** According to the 2012 General Social Survey, the probability that a U.S. resident is currently married is .457 and the probability that a U.S. resident describes himself or herself as very happy is .302. The probability of being married and being very happy is .191. Find the probability of the described events. (Data from: www3.norc.org/gss+website.)
(a) Not being very happy and being married
(b) Not being married and not being very happy
(c) Not being married or not being very happy
22. **Social Science** According to the 2012 General Social Survey, the probability that a U.S. resident has a great deal of confidence in medicine is .389 and the probability that a U.S. resident has a great deal of confidence in major companies is .166. The probability of having a great deal of confidence in both medicine and major companies is .111. Find the probability of the described events. (Data from: www3.norc.org/gss+website.)
(a) Not having a great deal of confidence in medicine and having a great deal of confidence in major companies.
(b) Having a great deal of confidence in medicine or not having a great deal of confidence in major companies.
(c) Not having a great deal of confidence in medicine and not having a great deal of confidence in major companies.

A single fair die is rolled. Find the odds in favor of getting the results in Exercises 23–26. (See Examples 6 and 7.)

23. 2 24. 2, 3, 4
25. 2, 3, 5, or 6 26. Some number greater than 5
27. A marble is drawn from a box containing 3 yellow, 4 white, and 8 blue marbles. Find the odds in favor of drawing the given marbles.
(a) A yellow marble
(b) A blue marble
(c) A white marble
28. Find the odds of *not* drawing a white marble in Exercise 27.
29. Two dice are rolled. Find the odds of rolling a 7 or an 11.
30. Define what is meant by odds.


Education For Exercises 31–34, find the odds of the event occurring from the given probability that a bachelor's degree recipient in 2011 majored in the given discipline. (Data from: Digest of Educational Statistics.)

31. Business; probability 21/100.
32. Biological or biomedical sciences; probability 1/20.
33. Education; probability 6/100.
34. Health professions; probability 2/25.

Business For Exercises 35–38, convert the given odds to the probability of the event. (Data from: The ProQuest Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2013.)

35. The odds that a business in 2009 had less than 20 employees are 43:7.

- 36. The odds that a business in 2009 had 500 or more employees are 1:499.
- 37. The odds that a corporation that filed a tax return in 2009 was in the field of manufacturing are 6:19.
- 38. The odds that a corporation that filed a tax return in 2009 was in the field of wholesale retail and trade are 3:7.

 **One way to solve a probability problem is to repeat the experiment many times, keeping track of the results. Then the probability can be approximated by using the basic definition of the probability of an event E , which is $P(E) = n(E)/n(S)$, where E occurs $n(E)$ times out of $n(S)$ trials of an experiment. This is called the Monte Carlo method of finding probabilities. If physically repeating the experiment is too tedious, it may be simulated with the use of a random-number generator, available on most computers and scientific or graphing calculators. To simulate a coin toss or the roll of a die on a graphing calculator, change the setting to fixed decimal mode with 0 digits displayed. To simulate multiple tosses of a coin, press **RAND** (or **RANDOM** or **RND#**) in the **PROB** submenu of the **MATH** (or **OPTN**) menu, and then press **ENTER** repeatedly. Interpret 0 as a head and 1 as a tail. To simulate multiple rolls of a die, press $\text{RAND} \times 6 + .5$, and then press **ENTER** repeatedly.**

- 39. Suppose two dice are rolled. Use the Monte Carlo method with at least 50 repetitions to approximate the given probabilities. Compare them with the results of Exercise 10.
 - (a) $P(\text{the sum is 9 or more})$
 - (b) $P(\text{the sum is less than 7})$
- 40. Suppose two dice are rolled. Use the Monte Carlo method with at least 50 repetitions to approximate the given probabilities. Compare them with the results of Exercise 11.
 - (a) $P(\text{the sum is not more than 5})$
 - (b) $P(\text{the sum is not less than 8})$
- 41. Suppose three dice are rolled. Use the Monte Carlo method with at least 100 repetitions to approximate the given probabilities.
 - (a) $P(\text{the sum is 5 or less})$
 - (b) $P(\text{neither a 1 nor a 6 is rolled})$
- 42. Suppose a coin is tossed 5 times. Use the Monte Carlo method with at least 50 repetitions to approximate the given probabilities.
 - (a) $P(\text{exactly 4 heads})$
 - (b) $P(\text{2 heads and 3 tails})$

Health For Exercises 43–48, use the following table that is based on numbers from the 2011 American Community Survey. The table represents 2023 randomly chosen U.S. residents age 25 years or older in regard to educational attainment and health insurance status.

Educational Attainment	Has Health Insurance	Does Not Have Health Insurance
Less than High School Graduate	192	87
High School Graduate (or GED)	459	113
Some College or an Associate's Degree	498	90
Bachelor's Degree or Higher	544	40

Find the probability of the described events. (Data from: factfinder2.census.gov)

- 43. Having health insurance.
- 44. Not having health insurance.
- 45. Being a high school graduate and having health insurance.
- 46. Having a bachelor's degree or not having health insurance.
- 47. Not having a bachelor's degree or not having health insurance.
- 48. Not being a high school graduate or having health insurance.

Business For Exercises 49–54, use the table in Example 10 that cross classifies the age and salary of the top 100 earning CEOs from 2012 according to Forbes Magazine. Find the described probabilities regarding the CEO. (Data from: www.forbes.com.)

- 49. Is under age 60 and earns \$35 million or more.
- 50. Is under age 60 or earns \$35 million or more.
- 51. Is not under age 60 and earns between \$25 and \$34.99 million.
- 52. Is not under age 60 and earns less than \$35 million.
- 53. Is age 60 or older or earns \$35 million or more.
- 54. Is not in his or her 60s and earns less than 25 million.

Business Data from the 2012 General Social Survey can allow us to estimate how much part-time and full-time employees work per week. Use the following table to find the probabilities of the events in Exercises 55–58. (Data from: www3.norc.ORG/gss+website.)

Labor Force Status	Hours Worked in the last Week						Total
	0–19	20–29	30–39	40–49	50–59	60 or more	
Working Full-Time	155	31	99	468	127	141	1021
Working Part-Time	171	54	60	32	5	9	331
Total	326	85	159	500	132	150	1352

- 55. Working full-time
- 56. Working part-time and 0–19 hours
- 57. Working full-time and 40–49 hours
- 58. Working part-time or working less than 30 hours
- 59. **Natural Science** Color blindness is an inherited characteristic that is more common in males than in females. If M represents male and C represents red–green color blindness, we use the relative frequencies of the incidences of males and red–green color blindness as probabilities to get

$$P(C) = .039, \quad P(M \cap C) = .035, \quad \text{and} \quad P(M \cup C) = .495.*$$

*The probabilities of a person being male or female are from *The World Almanac and Book of Facts*, 2002. The probabilities of a male and female being color blind are from *Parsons' Diseases of the Eye* (18th ed.), by Stephen J. H. Miller (Churchill Livingstone, 1990), p. 269. This reference gives a range of 3 to 4% for the probability of gross color blindness in men; we used the midpoint of that range.

Find the given probabilities.

- (a) $P(C')$ (b) $P(M)$
- (c) $P(M')$ (d) $P(M' \cap C')$
- (e) $P(C \cap M')$ (f) $P(C \cup M')$

60. Natural Science Gregor Mendel, an Austrian monk, was the first to use probability in the study of genetics. In an effort to understand the mechanism of characteristic transmittal from one generation to the next in plants, he counted the number of occurrences of various characteristics. Mendel found that the flower color in certain pea plants obeyed this scheme:

Pure red crossed with pure white produces red.

From its parents, the red offspring received genes for both red (R) and white (W), but in this case red is *dominant* and white *recessive*, so the offspring exhibits the color red. However, the offspring still carries both genes, and when two such offspring are crossed, several things can happen in the third generation. The following table, called a *Punnett square*, shows the equally likely outcomes:

		Second Parent	
		R	W
First Parent	R	RR	RW
	W	WR	WW

Use the fact that red is dominant over white to find each of the given probabilities. Assume that there are an equal number of red and white genes in the population.

- (a) $P(\text{a flower is red})$ (b) $P(\text{a flower is white})$

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. $13/19$
2. (a) $1/4$ (b) $2/9$
3. $7/8$
4. (a) $1/3$ (b) $1/4$
5. $5/6$
6. (a) 9 to 1 (b) 1 to 9
(c) 4 to 1 (d) 1 to 4
7. (a) $1/6$ (b) $5/6$
8. (a) .782 (b) .1644
9. (a) .20 (b) .12
(c) .60

8.5 Conditional Probability and Independent Events

Did you ever wonder what salary the president of your college or university earns per year? The *Chronicle of Higher Education* conducted surveys in 2010 and 2011 to examine that question. The table examines whether the president earned \$400,000 or more in total compensation for public and private universities and colleges. (Data from: www.chronicle.com.)

	Earned Less Than \$400,000	Earned \$400,000 or More	Total
Public University	102	97	199
Private University or College	249	270	519
Total	351	367	718

✓ Checkpoint 1

Use the data in the table to find

- (a) $P(B)$;
- (b) $P(A')$;
- (c) $P(B')$.

Let A be the event “earned less than \$400,000” and let B be the event “public university president.” We can find $P(A)$, $P(A')$, $P(B)$, and $P(B')$. For example, the table shows that a total of 351 presidents earned less than \$400,000, so $P(A) = \frac{351}{718} \approx .4889$. ✓₁

Suppose we want to know the probability that a public university president earns less than \$400,000. From the table, there were a total of 199 total public university presidents, of which 102 earned less than \$400,000. Thus,

$$P(\text{public university president earns less than } \$400,000) = \frac{102}{199} \approx .5126.$$

This probability (.5126) is a different number from the probability of making less than \$400,000 or more (.4889) because *we have additional information* (the president is the president of a public university) *that has reduced the sample space*. In other words, we

found the probability of earning less than \$400,000, A , given the additional information that the president is a public university president, B . This is called the *conditional probability* of event A , given that event B has occurred, written $P(A|B)$, which is often read as “the probability of A given B .”

In the preceding example,

$$P(A|B) = \frac{102}{199} \approx .5126.$$

If we divide the numerator and denominator by 718 (the size of the sample space), this can be written as

$$P(A|B) = \frac{\frac{102}{718}}{\frac{199}{718}} = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)},$$

where $P(A \cap B)$ represents, as usual, the probability that both A and B will occur.

To generalize this result, assume that E and F are two events for a particular experiment. Assume also that the sample space S for the experiment has n possible equally likely outcomes. Suppose event F has m elements and $E \cap F$ has k elements ($k \leq m$). Then, using the fundamental principle of probability yields

$$P(F) = \frac{m}{n} \quad \text{and} \quad P(E \cap F) = \frac{k}{n}.$$

We now want to find $P(E|F)$: the probability that E occurs, given that F has occurred. Since we assume that F has occurred, we reduce the sample space to F ; that is, we look only at the m elements inside F . (See Figure 8.26.) Of these m elements, there are k elements for which E also occurs, because $E \cap F$ has k elements. This yields

$$P(E|F) = \frac{k}{m}.$$

Divide numerator and denominator by n to get

$$P(E|F) = \frac{k/n}{m/n} = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)}.$$

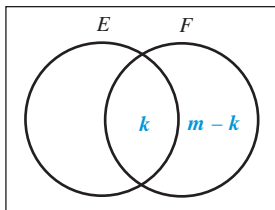
The last result motivates the following definition of conditional probability. The **conditional probability** of an event E , given event F , written $P(E|F)$, is

$$P(E|F) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)} = \frac{P(E \text{ and } F)}{P(F)}, \quad P(F) \neq 0.$$

This definition tells us that, for equally likely outcomes, conditional probability is found by *reducing the sample space to event F* and then finding the number of outcomes in F that are also in event E . Thus,

$$P(E|F) = \frac{n(E \cap F)}{n(F)}.$$

Although the definition of conditional probability was motivated by an example with equally likely outcomes, it is valid in all cases. For an intuitive explanation, think of the formula as giving the probability that both E and F occur, compared with the entire probability of F occurring.



Event F has a total of m elements.

Figure 8.26

Example 1

Business

Use the information at the beginning of this section from the table on the salary of public and private university and college presidents to find the following probabilities.

✓ Checkpoint 2

The table shows the results of the 2012 General Social Survey regarding happiness for married and never married respondents.

	Very Happy	Partially Happy or Not Happy	Total
Married	375	522	897
Never Married	109	416	525
Total	484	938	1422

Let M represent married respondents and V represent very happy respondents. Find each of the given probabilities.

- (a) $P(V|M)$
- (b) $P(V|M')$
- (c) $P(M|V)$
- (d) $P(M'|V')$
- (e) State the probability of part (d) in words.

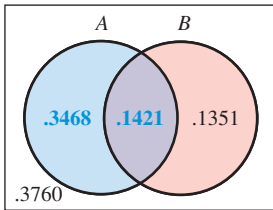


Figure 8.27

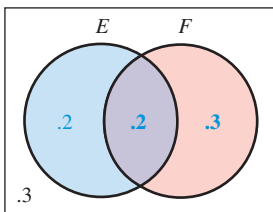


Figure 8.28

✓ Checkpoint 3

Find $P(F|E)$ if $P(E) = .3$, $P(F) = .4$, and $P(E \cup F) = .6$.

(a) $P(A|B')$

Solution In words, $P(A|B')$ is the probability of earning less than \$400,000, given that the president is not a public university president (which means he or she is a private university or college president).

$$P(A|B') = \frac{n(A \cap B')}{n(B')} = \frac{249}{519} \approx .4798.$$

(b) $P(B|A)$

Solution $P(B|A)$ represents the probability that the president is a public university president, given that he or she makes less than \$400,000. Reduce the sample space to A . Then find $n(A \cap B)$ and $n(A)$.

$$P(B|A) = \frac{n(A \cap B)}{n(A)} = \frac{102}{351} \approx .2906.$$

(c) $P(B'|A')$

Solution Here, we want the probability that the president is a private university or college president, given that he or she earns \$400,000 or more.

$$P(B'|A') = \frac{n(B' \cap A')}{n(A')} = \frac{270}{367} \approx .7357. \quad \checkmark_2$$

Venn diagrams can be used to illustrate problems in conditional probability. A Venn diagram for Example 1, in which the probabilities are used to indicate the number in the set defined by each region, is shown in Figure 8.27. In the diagram, $P(B|A)$ is found by *reducing the sample space to just set A*. Then $P(B|A)$ is the ratio of the number in that part of set B which is also in A to the number in set A , or $.1421 / (.1421 + .3468) = .1421 / .4889 \approx .2907$. [This differs slightly from (b) because of rounding.]

Example 2

Given $P(E) = .4$, $P(F) = .5$, and $P(E \cup F) = .7$, find $P(E|F)$.

Solution Find $P(E \cap F)$ first. Then use a Venn diagram to find $P(E|F)$. By the addition rule,

$$\begin{aligned} P(E \cup F) &= P(E) + P(F) - P(E \cap F) \\ .7 &= .4 + .5 - P(E \cap F) \\ P(E \cap F) &= .2. \end{aligned}$$

Now use the probabilities to indicate the number in each region of the Venn diagram in Figure 8.28. $P(E|F)$ is the ratio of the probability of that part of E which is in F to the probability of F , or

$$P(E|F) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)} = \frac{.2}{.5} = \frac{2}{5} = .4. \quad \checkmark_3$$

Example 3

Two fair coins were tossed, and it is known that at least one was a head. Find the probability that both were heads.

Solution The sample space has four equally likely outcomes: $S = \{hh, ht, th, tt\}$. Define two events

$$E_1 = \text{at least 1 head} = \{hh, ht, th\}$$

and

$$E_2 = \text{2 heads} = \{hh\}.$$

Because there are four equally likely outcomes, $P(E_1) = 3/4$. Also, $P(E_1 \cap E_2) = 1/4$. We want the probability that both were heads, given that at least one was a head; that is, we want to find $P(E_2|E_1)$. Because of the condition that at least one coin was a head, the reduced sample space is

$$\{hh, ht, th\}.$$

Since only one outcome in this reduced sample space is two heads,

$$P(E_2|E_1) = \frac{1}{3}.$$

Alternatively, use the definition given earlier:

$$P(E_2|E_1) = \frac{P(E_2 \cap E_1)}{P(E_1)} = \frac{1/4}{3/4} = \frac{1}{3}. \quad \checkmark_4$$

✓ Checkpoint 4

In Example 3, find the probability that exactly one coin showed a head, given that at least one was a head.

It is important not to confuse $P(A|B)$ with $P(B|A)$. For example, in a criminal trial, a prosecutor may point out to the jury that the probability of the defendant's DNA profile matching that of a sample taken at the scene of the crime, given that the defendant is innocent, is very small. What the jury must decide, however, is the probability that the defendant is innocent, given that the defendant's DNA profile matches the sample. Confusing the two is an error sometimes called "the prosecutor's fallacy," and the 1990 conviction of a rape suspect in England was overturned by a panel of judges who ordered a retrial, because the fallacy made the original trial unfair.* This mistake is often called "confusion of the inverse."

In the next section, we will see how to compute $P(A|B)$ when we know $P(B|A)$.

Product Rule

If $P(E) \neq 0$ and $P(F) \neq 0$, then the definition of conditional probability shows that

$$P(E|F) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)} \quad \text{and} \quad P(F|E) = \frac{P(F \cap E)}{P(E)}.$$

Using the fact that $P(E \cap F) = P(F \cap E)$, and solving each of these equations for $P(E \cap F)$, we obtain the following rule.

Product Rule of Probability

If E and F are events, then $P(E \cap F)$ may be found by either of these formulas:

$$P(E \cap F) = P(F) \cdot P(E|F) \quad \text{or} \quad P(E \cap F) = P(E) \cdot P(F|E).$$

The **product rule** gives a method for finding the probability that events E and F both occur. Here is a simple way to remember the ordering of E and F in the probability rule:

$$P(E \cap F) = P(F) \cdot P(E|F) \quad \text{or} \quad P(E \cap F) = P(E) \cdot P(F|E).$$

Example 4

Business

According to data from the U.S. Census Bureau, we can estimate the probability that a business is female owned as .282. We can also estimate the probability that a female-owned business has one to four employees as .504. What is the probability that a business is female owned *and* has one to four employees?

*David Pringle, "Who's the DNA Fingerprinting Pointing At?," *New Scientist*, January 29, 1994, pp. 51–52.

Solution Let F represent the event of “having a female-owned business” and E represent the event of “having one to four employees.” We want to find $P(F \cap E)$. By the product rule,

$$P(F \cap E) = P(F)P(E|F).$$

From the given information, $P(F) = .282$, and the probability that a female-owned business has one to four employees is $P(E|F) = .504$. Thus,

$$P(F \cap E) = .282(.504) \approx .142. \quad \checkmark_5$$

✓ Checkpoint 5

In a litter of puppies, 3 were female and 4 were male. Half the males were black. Find the probability that a puppy chosen at random from the litter would be a black male.

In Section 8.1, we used a tree diagram to find the number of subsets of a given set. By including the probabilities for each branch of a tree diagram, we convert it to a **probability tree**. The following examples show how a probability tree is used with the product rule to find the probability of a sequences of events.

Example 5

A company needs to hire a new director of advertising. It has decided to try to hire either person A or person B , both of whom are assistant advertising directors for its major competitor. To decide between A and B , the company does research on the campaigns managed by A or B (none are managed by both) and finds that A is in charge of twice as many advertising campaigns as B . Also, A 's campaigns have yielded satisfactory results three out of four times, while B 's campaigns have yielded satisfactory results only two out of five times. Suppose one of the competitor's advertising campaigns (managed by A or B) is selected randomly.

We can represent this situation schematically as follows: Let A denote the event “Person A does the job” and B the event “Person B does the job.” Let S be the event “satisfactory results” and U the event “unsatisfactory results.” Then the given information can be summarized in the probability tree in Figure 8.29. Since A does twice as many jobs as B , $P(A) = 2/3$ and $P(B) = 1/3$, as noted on the first-stage branches of the tree. When A does a job, the probability of satisfactory results is $3/4$ and of unsatisfactory results $1/4$, as noted on the second-stage branches. Similarly, the probabilities when B does the job are noted on the remaining second-stage branches. The composite branches labeled 1–4 represent the four disjoint possibilities for the running and outcome of the campaign.

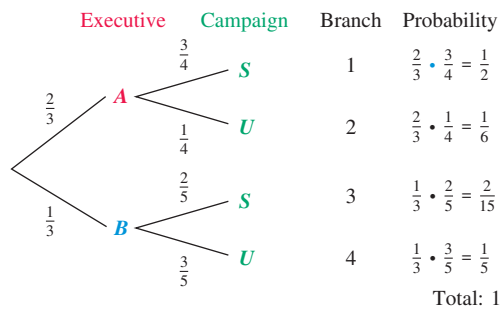


Figure 8.29

(a) Find the probability that A is in charge of a campaign that produces satisfactory results.

Solution We are asked to find $P(A \cap S)$. We know that when A does the job, the probability of success is $3/4$; that is, $P(S|A) = 3/4$. Hence, by the product rule,

$$P(A \cap S) = P(A) \cdot P(S|A) = \frac{2}{3} \cdot \frac{3}{4} = \frac{1}{2}.$$

The event $(A \cap S)$ is represented by branch 1 of the tree, and as we have just seen, its probability is the product of the probabilities that make up that branch.

(b) Find the probability that B runs a campaign that produces satisfactory results.

Solution We must find $P(B \cap S)$. This event is represented by branch 3 of the tree, and as before, its probability is the product of the probabilities of the pieces of that branch:

$$P(B \cap S) = P(B) \cdot P(S|B) = \frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{2}{5} = \frac{2}{15}.$$

(c) What is the probability that the selected campaign is satisfactory?

Solution The event S is the union of the disjoint events $A \cap S$ and $B \cap S$, which are represented by branches 1 and 3 of the tree diagram. By the addition rule,

$$P(S) = P(A \cap S) + P(B \cap S) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{15} = \frac{19}{30}.$$

Thus, the probability of an event that appears on several branches is the sum of the probabilities of each of these branches.

(d) What is the probability that the selected campaign is unsatisfactory?

Solution $P(U)$ can be read from branches 2 and 4 of the tree:

$$P(U) = \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{5} = \frac{11}{30}.$$

Alternatively, because U is the complement of S ,

$$P(U) = 1 - P(S) = 1 - \frac{19}{30} = \frac{11}{30}.$$

(e) Find the probability that either A runs the campaign or the results are satisfactory (or possibly both).

Solution Event A combines branches 1 and 2, while event S combines branches 1 and 3, so use branches 1, 2, and 3:

$$P(A \cup S) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{6} + \frac{2}{15} = \frac{4}{5}. \quad \checkmark_6$$

✓ Checkpoint 6

Find each of the given probabilities for the scenario in Example 5.

- (a) $P(U|A)$
 (b) $P(U|B)$

Example 6

Suppose 6 potential jurors remain in a jury pool and 2 are to be selected to sit on the jury for the trial. The races of the 6 potential jurors are 1 Hispanic, 3 Caucasian, and 2 African-American. If we select one juror at a time, find the probability that one Caucasian and one African-American are drawn.

Solution A probability tree showing the various possible outcomes is given in Figure 8.30 on the next page. In this diagram, C represents the event “selecting a Caucasian juror” and A represents “selecting an African-American juror.” On the first draw, $P(C \text{ on the 1st}) = 3/6 = 1/2$ because three of the six jurors are Caucasian. On the second draw, $P(A \text{ on the 2nd} | C \text{ on the 1st}) = 2/5$. One Caucasian juror has been removed, leaving 5, of which 2 are African-American.

We want to find the probability of selecting exactly one Caucasian and exactly one African-American. Two events satisfy this condition: selecting a Caucasian first and then selecting an African-American (branch 2 of the tree) and drawing an African-American juror first and then selecting a Caucasian juror (branch 4). For branch 2,

$$P(C \text{ on 1st}) \cdot P(A \text{ on 2nd} | C \text{ on 1st}) = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{2}{5} = \frac{1}{5}. \quad \checkmark_7$$

✓ Checkpoint 7

In Example 6, find the probability of selecting an African-American juror and then a Caucasian juror.

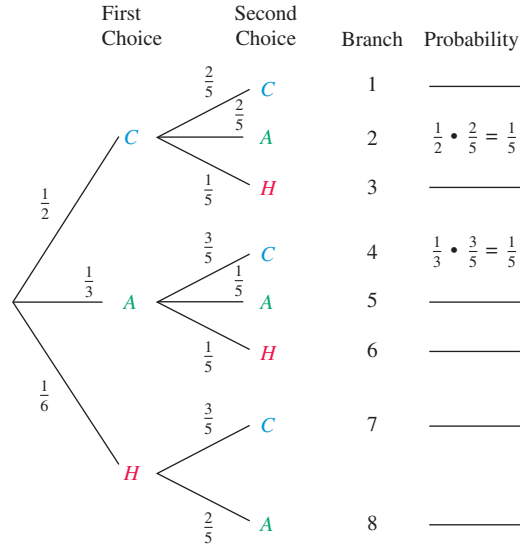


Figure 8.30

For branch 4, on which the African-American juror is selected first,

$$P(A \text{ first}) \cdot P(C \text{ second} | A \text{ first}) = \frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{3}{5} = \frac{1}{5}.$$

Since these two events are disjoint, the final probability is the sum of the two probabilities.

$$P(\text{one } C \text{ and one } A) = P(C \text{ on 1st}) \cdot P(A \text{ on 2nd} | C \text{ on 1st}) + P(A \text{ on 1st}) \cdot P(C \text{ on 2nd} | A \text{ on 1st}) = \frac{2}{5} \checkmark_8$$

✓ Checkpoint 8

In Example 6, find the probability of selecting a Caucasian juror and then a Hispanic juror.

The product rule is often used in dealing with *stochastic processes*, which are mathematical models that evolve over time in a probabilistic manner. For example, selecting different jurors is such a process, because the probabilities change with each successive selection. (Particular stochastic processes are studied further in Section 9.5.)

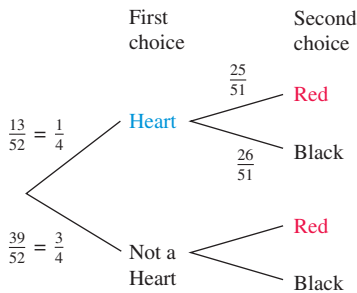


Figure 8.31

✓ Checkpoint 9

Find the probability of drawing a heart on the first draw and a black card on the second if two cards are drawn without replacement.

Example 7

Two cards are drawn without replacement from an ordinary deck (52 cards). Find the probability that the first card is a heart and the second card is red.

Solution Start with the probability tree of Figure 8.31. (You may wish to refer to the deck of cards shown on page 447.) On the first draw, since there are 13 hearts in the 52 cards, the probability of drawing a heart first is $13/52 = 1/4$. On the second draw, since a (red) heart has been drawn already, there are 25 red cards in the remaining 51 cards. Thus, the probability of drawing a red card on the second draw, given that the first is a heart, is $25/51$. By the product rule of probability,

$$P(\text{heart on 1st and red on 2nd}) = P(\text{heart on 1st}) \cdot P(\text{red on 2nd} | \text{heart on 1st}) = \frac{1}{4} \cdot \frac{25}{51} = \frac{25}{204} \approx .123. \checkmark_9$$

Example 8

Three cards are drawn, without replacement, from an ordinary deck. Find the probability that exactly 2 of the cards are red.

Solution Here, we need a probability tree with three stages, as shown in Figure 8.32. The three branches indicated with arrows produce exactly 2 red cards from the draws. Multiply the probabilities along each of these branches and then add:

$$\begin{aligned}
 P(\text{exactly 2 red cards}) &= \frac{26}{52} \cdot \frac{25}{51} \cdot \frac{26}{50} + \frac{26}{52} \cdot \frac{26}{51} \cdot \frac{25}{50} + \frac{26}{52} \cdot \frac{26}{51} \cdot \frac{25}{50} \\
 &= \frac{50,700}{132,600} = \frac{13}{34} \approx .382. \quad \checkmark_{10}
 \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 10

Use the tree in Example 8 to find the probability that exactly one of the cards is red.

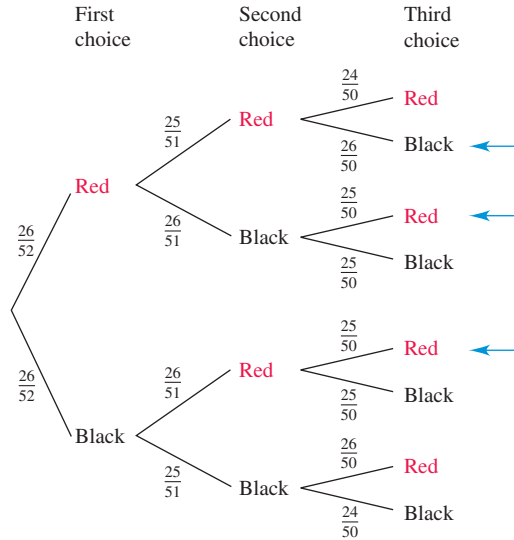


Figure 8.32

Independent Events

Suppose in Example 7 that we draw the two cards *with* replacement rather than without replacement. (That is, we put the first card back, shuffle the deck, and then draw the second card.) If the first card is a heart, then the probability of drawing a red card on the second draw is $26/52$, rather than $25/51$, because there are still 52 cards in the deck, 26 of them red. In this case, $P(\text{red second} | \text{heart first})$ is the same as $P(\text{red second})$. The value of the second card is not affected by the value of the first card. We say that the event that the second card is red is *independent* of the event that the first card is a heart, since knowledge of the first card does not influence what happens to the second card. On the other hand, when we draw *without* replacement, the events that the first card is a heart and the second is red are *dependent* events. The fact that the first card is a heart means that there is one fewer red card in the deck, influencing the probability that the second card is red.

As another example, consider tossing a fair coin twice. If the first toss shows heads, the probability that the next toss is heads is still $1/2$. Coin tosses are independent events, since the outcome of one toss does not influence the outcome of the next toss. Similarly, rolls of a fair die are independent events. On the other hand, the events “the milk is old” and “the milk is sour” are dependent events: If the milk is old, there is an increased chance that it is sour. Also, in the example at the beginning of this section, the events A (the president earned less than \$400,000) and B (the president was the head of a public university) are dependent events, because information about the institution type affects the probability of salary level. That is, $P(A|B)$ is different from $P(A)$.

If events E and F are independent, then the knowledge that E has occurred gives no (probability) information about the occurrence or nonoccurrence of event F . That is, $P(F)$ is exactly the same as $P(F|E)$, or

$$P(F|E) = P(F).$$

This, in fact, is the formal definition of independent events.

E and F are **independent events** if

$$P(F|E) = P(F) \quad \text{or} \quad P(E|F) = P(E).$$

If the events are not independent, they are **dependent events**.

When E and F are independent events, $P(F|E) = P(F)$, and the product rule becomes

$$P(E \cap F) = P(E) \cdot P(F|E) = P(E) \cdot P(F).$$

Conversely, if this equation holds, it follows that $P(F) = P(F|E)$. Consequently, we have the useful rule that follows.

Product Rule for Independent Events

E and F are independent events if and only if

$$P(E \cap F) = P(E) \cdot P(F).$$

Example 9

Business A USB flash drive requires a two-step manufacturing process. The first step involves the circuit board, and let us assume that 98% of the circuit board assemblies are satisfactory. The second step involves the plastic casing. Assume that 96.5% of the casings are satisfactory. Assume the manufacturing process of the circuit boards has no relationship with the manufacturing of the plastic casings, and find the probability that both components are satisfactory.

Solution Since the manufacturing processes of the two components have no relationship, we can assume that event A (the circuit board is satisfactory) and event B (the plastic casing is satisfactory) are two independent events. Thus, the probability that both components are satisfactory is

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A) \cdot P(B) = (.98)(.965) = .9457. \quad \checkmark_{11}$$

✓ Checkpoint 11

Find the probability of getting 4 successive heads on 4 tosses of a fair coin.

CAUTION It is common to confuse the ideas of *disjoint* events and *independent* events. Events E and F are disjoint if $E \cap F = \emptyset$. For example, if a family has exactly one child, the only possible outcomes are $B = \{\text{boy}\}$ and $G = \{\text{girl}\}$. The events B and G are disjoint and $P(B) = P(G) = .5$. However, the events are *not* independent, since $P(G|B) = 0$ (if a family with only one child has a boy, the probability that it has a girl is then 0). Since $P(G|B) \neq P(G)$, the events are not independent. Of all the families with exactly *two* children, the events $G_1 = \{\text{first child is a girl}\}$ and $G_2 = \{\text{second child is a girl}\}$ are independent, because $P(G_2|G_1)$ equals $P(G_2)$. However, G_1 and G_2 are not disjoint, since $G_1 \cap G_2 = \{\text{both children are girls}\} \neq \emptyset$.

To show that two events E and F are independent, we can show that $P(F|E) = P(F)$, that $P(E|F) = P(E)$, or that $P(E \cap F) = P(E) \cdot P(F)$. Another way is to observe that knowledge of one outcome does not influence the probability of the other outcome, as we did for coin tosses.

NOTE In some cases, it may not be apparent from the physical description of the problem whether two events are independent or not. For example, it is not obvious whether the event that a baseball player gets a hit tomorrow is independent of the event that he got a hit today. In such cases, it is necessary to use the definition and calculate whether $P(F|E) = P(F)$, or, equivalently, whether $P(E \cap F) = P(E) \cdot P(F)$.

Example 10

Business Among partnerships and corporations that file tax returns in the United States, the probability that the enterprise consists of a firm dedicated to real estate, rentals, or leasing is .241. The probability that the firm is a partnership is .352. The probability that a firm is dedicated to real estate, rentals, or leasing or is a partnership is .424. Are the events of a firm being dedicated to real estate, rentals, or leasing and a firm being a partnership independent?

Solution Let E represent the event the firm is dedicated to real estate, rentals, or leasing and let F represent the event the firm is a partnership. We must determine whether

$$P(E|F) = P(E) \quad \text{or} \quad P(F|E) = P(F).$$

We know that $P(E) = .241$, $P(F) = .352$, and $P(E \cup F) = .424$. By the addition rule, we know that


$$\begin{aligned} P(E) + P(F) - P(E \cap F) &= P(E \cup F) \\ .241 + .352 - P(E \cap F) &= .424 \\ .593 - P(E \cap F) &= .424 \\ P(E \cap F) &= .169. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$P(E|F) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)} = \frac{.169}{.352} \approx .480 \neq .241 = P(E).$$

Also,

$$P(F|E) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(E)} = \frac{.169}{.241} \approx .701 \neq .352 = P(F).$$

Since $P(E|F) \neq P(E)$ and $P(F|E) \neq P(F)$ these two events are not independent. 

 **Checkpoint 12**

The probability of living in Texas is .08, the probability of speaking English at home is .83, and the probability of living in Texas or speaking English at home is .854. Are the events “speaking English at home” and “living in Texas” independent?




NOTE Although we showed that $P(E|F) \neq P(E)$ and $P(F|E) \neq P(F)$ in Example 10, only one of these results is needed to establish independence.


8.5 Exercises

If a single fair die is rolled, find the probability of rolling the given events. (See Examples 1 and 2.)

- 3, given that the number rolled was odd
- 5, given that the number rolled was even
- An odd number, given that the number rolled was 3

 If two fair dice are rolled (recall the 36-outcome sample space), find the probability of rolling the given events.


- A sum of 8, given that the sum was greater than 7
- A sum of 6, given that the roll was a “double” (two identical numbers)
- A double, given that the sum was 9


 If two cards are drawn without replacement from an ordinary deck, find the probabilities of the given event. (See Example 7.)


- The second is a heart, given that the first is a heart
- The second is black, given that the first is a spade


9. A jack and a 10 are drawn.

10. An ace and a 4 are drawn.

 11. In your own words, explain how to find the conditional probability $P(E|F)$.

 12. Your friend asks you to explain how the product rule for independent events differs from the product rule for dependent events. How would you respond?

 13. Another friend asks you to explain how to tell whether two events are dependent or independent. How would you reply? (Use your own words.)

 14. A student reasons that the probability in Example 3 of both coins being heads is just the probability that the other coin is a head—that is, $1/2$. Explain why this reasoning is wrong.

Decide whether the two events listed are independent.

15. S is the event that it is snowing and L is the event that the instructor is late for class.

- 16. R is the event that four semesters of theology are required to graduate from a certain college and A is the event that the college is a religiously affiliated school.
- 17. R is the event that it rains in the Amazon jungle and H is the event that an instructor in New York City writes a difficult exam.
- 18. T is the event that Tom Cruise’s next movie grosses over \$200 million and R is the event that the Republicans have a majority in Congress in the year 2020.
- 19. In a two-child family, if we assume that the probabilities of a child being male and a child being female are each .5, are the events “the children are the same sex” and “at most one child is male” independent? Are they independent for a three-child family?
- 20. Let A and B be independent events with $P(A) = \frac{1}{4}$ and $P(B) = \frac{1}{5}$. Find $P(A \cap B)$ and $P(A \cup B)$.

Business According to data from the U.S. Internal Revenue Service, the probability that a firm has less than \$25,000 in revenue if it is a partnership is .551. If the firm is a corporation, the probability of reporting less than \$25,000 in revenue is .258. The probability that a firm is a partnership is .352 and the probability that a firm is a corporation is .648. Find the following probabilities.

- 21. A firm with less than \$25,000 in revenue is a partnership.
- 22. A firm has less than \$25,000 in revenue.
- 23. **Business** According to the Bureau of Labor Statistics, for 2011, 48.5% of the civilian population 16 years or older was male, 34% was not in the labor force, and 70.1% was male or not in the labor force. Find the probability of not being in the labor force, given that the person is male.
- 24. **Business** Using the information from Exercise 23 and the fact that 21.6% of the population is female and not in the labor force, find the probability of not being in the labor force, given that the person is female.

Economics For Exercises 25–28, use the following table that is based on numbers from the 2011 American Community Survey. The table represents 2023 randomly chosen U.S. residents age 25 years or older in regard to educational attainment and health insurance status.

Educational Attainment	Has Health Insurance	Does Not Have Health Insurance
Less than High School Graduate	192	87
High School Graduate (or GED)	459	113
Some College or an Associate’s Degree	498	90
Bachelor’s Degree or Higher	544	40

Find the probability of the described events. (Data from: factfinder2.census.gov.)

- 25. Having health insurance given that the person is not a high school graduate
- 26. Having health insurance given that the person has a bachelor’s degree or higher
- 27. Being a high school graduate given that the person does not have health insurance
- 28. Having some college or an associate’s degree given that the person does have health insurance

Business The 2012 General Social Survey asked respondents about their confidence in banks and financial institutions as well as their confidence in major corporations. Each question allowed three responses: “a great deal, only some, or hardly any.” The table below summarizes the responses.

Confidence in Banks and Financial Institutions	Confidence in Major Corporations			Total
	A Great Deal	Only Some	Hardly Any	
A Great Deal	69	59	14	142
Only Some	123	465	74	662
Hardly Any	23	288	183	494
Total	215	812	271	1298

Find the probability of the described events. (Data from: www3.norc.org/gss+website.)

- 29. A respondent has a great deal of confidence in banks and financial institutions given that he or she has hardly any confidence in major corporations.
- 30. A respondent has hardly any confidence in banks and financial institutions given that he or she has hardly any confidence in major corporations.
- 31. A respondent has a great deal of confidence in major corporations given that he or she has only some confidence in banks and financial institutions.
- 32. A respondent has hardly any confidence in major corporations given that he or she has hardly any confidence in banks and financial institutions.

Natural Science The following table shows frequencies for red–green color blindness, where M represents that a person is male and C represents that a person is color blind.

	M	M'	Totals
C	.042	.007	.049
C'	.485	.466	.951
Totals	.527	.473	1.000

Use the table to find the given probabilities.

- 33. $P(M)$
- 34. $P(C)$
- 35. $P(M \cap C)$
- 36. $P(M \cup C)$

37. $P(M|C)$ 38. $P(M'|C)$
39. Are the events C and M dependent? Recall that two events E and F are dependent if $P(E|F) \neq P(E)$. (See Example 10.)
40. Are the events M' and C dependent?

Natural Science A scientist wishes to determine whether there is any dependence between color blindness (C) and deafness (D). Use the probabilities in the table to answer Exercises 41 and 42.

	D	D'	Total
C	.0004	.0796	.0800
C'	.0046	.9154	.9200
Total	.0050	.9950	1.0000

41. Find $P(C)$, $P(D)$, $P(C \cap D)$, and $P(C|D)$. Does $P(C) = P(C|D)$? What does that result imply regarding independence of C and D ?
42. Find $P(D')$, $P(C)$, $P(D' \cap C)$, and $P(D'|C)$. Does $P(D') = P(D'|C)$? What does that result imply regarding independence of D' and C ?

Social Science The Motor Vehicle Department in a certain state has found that the probability of a person passing the test for a driver's license on the first try is .75. The probability that an individual who fails on the first test will pass on the second try is .80, and the probability that an individual who fails the first and second tests will pass the third time is .70. Find the probability of the given event.

43. A person fails both the first and second tests
44. A person will fail three times in a row

Business The numbers of domestic and international flights for American, Delta, and United Airlines for the year 2012 are given in the following table.

Airline	Domestic	International	Total
American	517,971	120,976	638,947
Delta	729,997	96,611	826,608
United	527,769	135,211	662,980
Total	1,775,737	352,798	2,128,535

Find the probability of the described event. (Data from: www.transtats.bts.gov.)

45. An American flight was domestic
46. A United flight was international
47. A domestic flight was Delta
48. An international flight was United

Business The 2012 General Social Survey determined annual household income and whether the respondent found work stressful. The household income variable is categorized below and the responses regarding stress at work were always, often, sometimes, hardly ever, and never. The results appear in the table.

Income	Stress at Work					Totals
	Always	Often	Sometimes	Hardly Ever	Never	
\$50,000 or less	66	128	238	97	35	564
\$50,001–\$100,000	30	113	145	42	14	344
More than \$100,000	16	54	57	10	5	142
Total	112	295	440	149	54	1050

Find the probability of the described events. (Data from: www3.norc.org/gss+website.)

49. Given that the respondent earns \$50,000 or less, what is the probability of never having stress?
50. Given that the respondent earns \$50,000 or less, what is the probability of always having stress?
51. Given that the respondent earns more than \$100,000, what is the probability of never having stress?
52. Given that the respondent earns more than \$100,000, what is the probability of sometimes having stress?
53. Given that the respondent sometimes has stress, what is the probability of earning \$50,000 or less?
54. Given that the respondent always has stress, what is the probability that the respondent earns between \$50,001–\$100,000?

Suppose the probability that the first record by a singing group will be a hit is .32. If the first record is a hit, so are all the group's subsequent records. If the first record is not a hit, the probability of the group's second record and all subsequent ones being hits is .16. If the first two records are not hits, the probability that the third is a hit is .08. The probability that a record is a hit continues to decrease by half with each successive nonhit record. Find the probability of the given event.

55. The group will have at least one hit in its first four records.
56. The group will have a hit in its first six records if the first three are not hits.

Work the given problems on independent events. (See Examples 9 and 10.)

57. **Business** Corporations such as banks, where a computer is essential to day-to-day operations, often have a second, backup computer in case of failure by the main computer. Suppose that there is a .003 chance that the main computer will fail in a given period and a .005 chance that the backup computer will fail while the main computer is being repaired. Suppose these failures represent independent events, and find the fraction of the time the corporation can assume that it will have computer service. How realistic is our assumption of independence?
58. **Business** According to data from the U.S. Department of Transportation, Delta Airlines was on time approximately

87% of the time in 2012. Use this information, and assume that the event that a given flight takes place on time is independent of the event that another flight is on time to answer the following questions

- (a) Elisabeta Gueyara plans to visit her company's branch offices; her journey requires 3 separate flights on Delta Airlines. What is the probability that all of these flights will be on time?
 - (b) How reasonable do you believe it is to suppose the independence of being on time from flight to flight?
59. **Natural Science** The probability that a key component of a space rocket will fail is .03.
- (a) How many such components must be used as backups to ensure that the probability that at least one of the components will work is .999999?
 - (b) Is it reasonable to assume independence here?
60. **Natural Science** A medical experiment showed that the probability that a new medicine is effective is .75, the probability that a patient will have a certain side effect is .4, and the probability that both events will occur is .3. Decide whether these events are dependent or independent.

61. **Social Science** A teacher has found that the probability that a student studies for a test is .6, the probability that a student gets a good grade on a test is .7, and the probability that both events occur is .52. Are these events independent?
62. Refer to Exercises 49–54. Are the events of having an income of greater than \$100,000 and never having stress at work independent?

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- 1. (a) About .2772 (b) About .5111 (c) About .7228
- 2. (a) About .4181 (b) About .2076 (c) About .7748
- (d) About .4435
- (e) The probability of never being married, given that the person is partially or not happy
- 3. 1/3 4. 2/3 5. 2/7
- 6. (a) 1/4 (b) 3/5
- 7. 1/5 8. 1/10 9. 13/102 ≈ .1275
- 10. 13/34 ≈ .382 11. 1/16 12. No

8.6 Bayes' Formula

Suppose the probability that a person gets lung cancer, given that the person smokes a pack or more of cigarettes daily, is known. For a research project, it might be necessary to know the probability that a person smokes a pack or more of cigarettes daily, given that the person has lung cancer. More generally, if $P(E|F)$ is known for two events E and F , can $P(F|E)$ be found? The answer is yes, we can find $P(F|E)$ by using the formula to be developed in this section. To develop this formula, we can use a probability tree to find $P(F|E)$. Since $P(E|F)$ is known, the first outcome is either F or F' . Then, for each of these outcomes, either E or E' occurs, as shown in Figure 8.33.

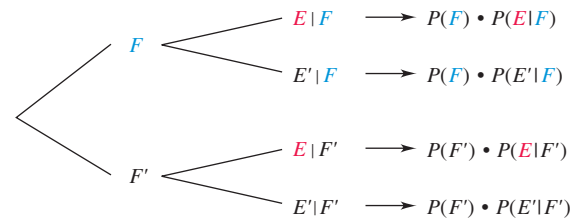


Figure 8.33

The four cases have the probabilities shown on the right. By the definition of conditional probability and the product rule,

$$P(E) = P(F \cap E) + P(F' \cap E),$$


$$P(F \cap E) = P(F) \cdot P(E|F), \text{ and } P(F' \cap E) = P(F') \cdot P(E|F').$$

By substitution,

$$P(E) = P(F) \cdot P(E|F) + P(F') \cdot P(E|F')$$

and

$$P(F|E) = \frac{P(F \cap E)}{P(E)} = \frac{P(F) \cdot P(E|F)}{P(F) \cdot P(E|F) + P(F') \cdot P(E|F')}$$

We have proved a special case of Bayes' formula, which is generalized later in this section. 

 **Checkpoint 1**

Use the special case of Bayes' formula to find $P(F|E)$ if $P(F) = .2$, $P(E|F) = .1$, and $P(E|F') = .3$. [Hint: $P(F') = 1 - P(F)$.]

Bayes' Formula (Special Case)

$$P(F|E) = \frac{P(F) \cdot P(E|F)}{P(F) \cdot P(E|F) + P(F') \cdot P(E|F')}$$

Example 1

Business For a fixed length of time, the probability of worker error on a certain production line is .1, the probability that an accident will occur when there is a worker error is .3, and the probability that an accident will occur when there is no worker error is .2. Find the probability of a worker error if there is an accident.

Solution Let E represent the event of an accident, and let F represent the event of a worker error. From the given information,

$$P(F) = .1, \quad P(F') = 1 - .1 = .9 \quad P(E|F) = .3, \quad \text{and} \quad P(E|F') = .2.$$

These probabilities are shown on the probability tree in Figure 8.34.

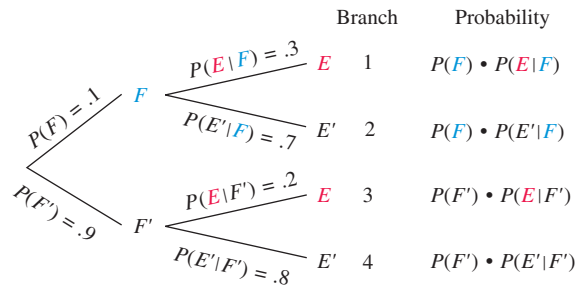


Figure 8.34

Applying Bayes' formula, we find that

$$\begin{aligned} P(F|E) &= \frac{P(F) \cdot P(E|F)}{P(F) \cdot P(E|F) + P(F') \cdot P(E|F')} \\ &= \frac{(.1)(.3)}{(.1)(.3) + (.9)(.2)} \approx .143. \end{aligned}$$

 **Checkpoint 2**

In Example 1, find $P(F'|E)$.

If we rewrite the special case of Bayes' formula, replacing F by F_1 and F' by F_2 , then it says:

$$P(F_1|E) = \frac{P(F_1) \cdot P(E|F_1)}{P(F_1) \cdot P(E|F_1) + P(F_2) \cdot P(E|F_2)}$$

Since $F_1 = F$ and $F_2 = F'$ we see that F_1 and F_2 are disjoint and that their union is the entire sample space. The generalization of Bayes' formula to more than two possibilities follows this same pattern.

Bayes' Formula

Suppose F_1, F_2, \dots, F_n are pairwise disjoint events (meaning that any two of them are disjoint) whose union is the sample space. Then for an event E and for each i with $1 \leq i \leq n$,

$$P(F_i|E) = \frac{P(F_i) \cdot P(E|F_i)}{P(F_1) \cdot P(E|F_1) + \dots + P(F_n) \cdot P(E|F_n)}$$

This result is known as Bayes' formula, after the Reverend Thomas Bayes (1702–61), whose paper on probability was published in 1764 after his death.

The statement of Bayes' formula can be daunting. It may be easier to remember the formula by thinking of the probability tree that produced it. Go through the following steps.

Using Bayes' Formula

- Step 1** Start a probability tree with branches representing events F_1, F_2, \dots, F_n . Label each branch with its corresponding probability.
- Step 2** From the end of each of these branches, draw a branch for event E . Label this branch with the probability of getting to it, or $P(E|F_i)$.
- Step 3** There are now n different paths that result in event E . Next to each path, put its probability: the product of the probabilities that the first branch occurs, $P(F_i)$, and that the second branch occurs, $P(E|F_i)$; that is, $P(F_i) \cdot P(E|F_i)$.
- Step 4** $P(F_i|E)$ is found by dividing the probability of the branch for F_i by the sum of the probabilities of all the branches producing event E .

Example 2 illustrates this process.

Example 2 **Social Science** The 2012 General Social Survey of women who are age 18 or older indicated that 87% of married women have one or more children, 48% of never married women have one or more children, and 89% of women who are divorced, separated, or widowed have one or more children. The survey also indicated that 45% of women age 18 or older were currently married, 24% had never been married, and 31% were divorced, separated, or widowed (labeled “other”). Find the probability that a woman who has one or more children is married.

Solution Let E represent the event “having one or more children,” with F_1 representing “married women,” F_2 representing “never married women,” and F_3 “other.” Then

$$\begin{aligned} P(F_1) &= .45; & P(E|F_1) &= .87; \\ P(F_2) &= .24; & P(E|F_2) &= .48; \\ P(F_3) &= .31; & P(E|F_3) &= .89. \end{aligned}$$

We need to find $P(F_1|E)$, the probability that a woman is married, given that she has one or more children. First, draw a probability tree using the given information, as in Figure 8.35 on the next page. The steps leading to event E are shown.

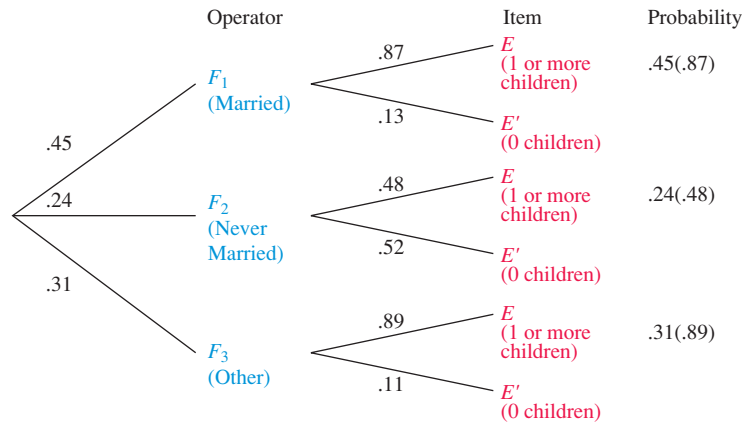


Figure 8.35

Find $P(F_1|E)$, using the top branch of the tree shown in Figure 8.35, by dividing the probability of this branch by the sum of the probabilities of all the branches leading to E :

$$P(F_1|E) = \frac{.45(.87)}{.45(.87) + .24(.48) + .31(.89)} = \frac{.3915}{.7826} \approx .500. \quad \checkmark_3$$

✓Checkpoint 3

In Example 2, find

- (a) $P(F_2|E)$;
- (b) $P(F_3|E)$.

Example 3

Business

A manufacturer buys items from six different suppliers. The fraction of the total number of items obtained from each supplier, along with the probability that an item purchased from that supplier is defective, is shown in the following table:

Supplier	Fraction of Total Supplied	Probability of Being Defective
1	.05	.04
2	.12	.02
3	.16	.07
4	.23	.01
5	.35	.03
6	.09	.05

Find the probability that a defective item came from supplier 5.

Solution Let F_1 be the event that an item came from supplier 1, with $F_2, F_3, F_4, F_5,$ and F_6 defined in a similar manner. Let E be the event that an item is defective. We want to find $P(F_5|E)$. By Bayes' formula,

$$P(F_5|E) = \frac{(.35)(.03)}{(.05)(.04) + (.12)(.02) + (.16)(.07) + (.23)(.01) + (.35)(.03) + (.09)(.05)} = \frac{.0105}{.0329} \approx .319.$$

✓Checkpoint 4

In Example 3, find the probability that the defective item came from

- (a) supplier 3;
- (b) supplier 6.

There is about a 32% chance that a defective item came from supplier 5. Even though supplier 5 has only 3% defectives, his probability of being “guilty” is relatively high, about 32%, because of the large fraction of items he supplies. \checkmark_4

8.6 Exercises

For two events M and N , $P(M) = .4$, $P(N|M) = .3$, and $P(N|M') = .4$. Find each of the given probabilities. (See Example 1.)

- $P(M|N)$
- $P(M'|N)$

For disjoint events R_1 , R_2 , and R_3 , $P(R_1) = .05$, $P(R_2) = .6$, and $P(R_3) = .35$. In addition, $P(Q|R_1) = .40$, $P(Q|R_2) = .30$, and $P(Q|R_3) = .60$. Find each of the given probabilities. (See Examples 2 and 3.)

- $P(R_1|Q)$
- $P(R_2|Q)$
- $P(R_3|Q)$
- $P(R_1'|Q)$

Suppose three jars have the following contents: 2 black balls and 1 white ball in the first; 1 black ball and 2 white balls in the second; 1 black ball and 1 white ball in the third. If the probability of selecting one of the three jars is $1/2$, $1/3$, and $1/6$, respectively, find the probability that if a white ball is drawn, it came from the given jar.

- The second jar
- The third jar

Business According to *Forbes'* list of the top 100 earning Chief Executive Officers (CEOs) of 2012, the probability of being under 60 years old was .52. The probability of earning \$35 million or more for those under age 60 was .2308. The probability of earning \$35 million or more for those age 60 or older was .1667. Find the following probabilities.

- A CEO who was earning \$35 million or more was under age 60
- A CEO who was earning less than \$35 million was age 60 or older

Economics Data from the Bureau of Labor Statistics indicates that for the year 2012, 40.8% of the labor force had a high school diploma or fewer years of education, 27.7% had some college or an associate's degree, and 31.5% had a bachelor's degree or more education. Of those with a high school diploma or fewer years of education, 17.0% earned \$75,000 or more annually. Of those with some college or an associate's degree, 31.4% earned \$75,000 or more, and of those with a bachelor's degree or more education, 55.0% earned \$75,000 or more. Find the following probabilities that a randomly chosen labor force participant has the given characteristics.

- Some college or an associate's degree, given that he or she earns \$75,000 or more annually
- A bachelor's degree or more education, given that he or she earns \$75,000 or more annually
- A high school diploma or less education, given that he or she earns less than \$75,000 annually
- A bachelor's degree or more education, given that he or she earns less than \$75,000 annually

Business In 2011, the probability that the president of a 4-year college or university earned \$400,000 or more in total compensation was .5111. The probability that a college or university president who earned \$400,000 or more presided over a public

institution was .2643. The probability that a college or university president who earned less than \$400,000 presided over a public institution was .2906. Find the probability that a president had the given characteristics.

- Earned \$400,000 or more given at a public institution.
- Earned less than \$400,000 given at a private institution.

Social Science Using data from the U.S. Census Bureau and the 2012 General Social Survey, the probability of being male in the United States was .493. The probability that a male considered himself "Very Happy" was .291, "Pretty Happy" was .569, and "Not Too Happy" was .139. The probability that a female considered herself "Very Happy" was .311, "Pretty Happy" was .547, and "Not Too Happy" was .142. Find the probability that a person selected at random had the given characteristics.

- Male, given that he is "Not Too Happy"
- Female, given that she is "Very Happy"
- Business** The following information pertains to three shipping terminals operated by Krag Corp. (Data from: Uniform CPA Examination, November 1989.)

Terminal	Percentage of Cargo Handled	Percent Error
Land	50	2
Air	40	4
Sea	10	14

Krag's internal auditor randomly selects one set of shipping documents and ascertains that the set selected contains an error. Which of the following gives the probability that the error occurred in the Land Terminal?

- .02
- .10
- .25
- .50

- Health** The probability that a person with certain symptoms has hepatitis is .8. The blood test used to confirm this diagnosis gives positive results for 90% of people with the disease and 5% of those without the disease. What is the probability that an individual who has the symptoms and who reacts positively to the test actually has hepatitis?

Health In a test for toxemia, a disease that affects pregnant women, a woman lies on her left side and then rolls over on her back. The test is considered positive if there is a 20-mm rise in her blood pressure within 1 minute. The results have produced the following probabilities, where T represents having toxemia at some time during the pregnancy and N represents a negative test:

$$P(T'|N) = .90 \quad \text{and} \quad P(T|N') = .75.$$

Assume that $P(N') = .11$, and find each of the given probabilities.

- $P(N|T)$
- $P(N'|T)$

Business In April 2013, the total sales from General Motors, Ford, or Chrysler was 606,334 cars or light trucks. The probability

that the vehicle sold was made by General Motors was .392, by Ford .350, and by Chrysler .258. Additionally, the probability that a General Motors vehicle sold was a car was .395, a Ford vehicle sold was a car was .370, and a Chrysler vehicle sold was a car was .332.

23. Given the vehicle sold was a car, find the probability it was made by General Motors.
24. Given the vehicle sold was a car, find the probability it was made by Chrysler.
25. Given the vehicle sold was a light truck, find the probability it was made by Ford.
26. Given the vehicle sold was a light truck, find the probability it was made by General Motors.

Business At the close of the markets on May 17, 2013, there were 5905 companies listed with the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE) and NASDAQ. For the day May 17, 2013, based on data from the Wall Street Journal, the probabilities of advancing, declining, and unchanged company stocks appears below for the two exchanges.

Exchange	Percentage of Companies Listed	Probability of Stock Advancing	Probability of Stock Declining	Probability the Stocks Remains Unchanged
NYSE	54.7%	.692	.267	.041
NASDAQ	45.3%	.657	.297	.046

Find the probability of each of the following events.

27. An advancing stock was listed on the NYSE
28. A declining stock was listed on the NASDAQ
29. An unchanged stock was listed on the NYSE
30. An advancing stock was listed on the NASDAQ

Social Science The table gives proportions of people over age 15 in the U.S. population, and proportions of people that live alone, in a recent year. Use this table for Exercises 31–34. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

Age	Proportion in Population Age 15 or Higher	Proportion Living Alone
15–24	.173	.034
25–34	.170	.100
35–44	.163	.089
45–64	.332	.152
65 and higher	.161	.289

31. Find the probability that a randomly selected person age 15 or older who lives alone is between the ages of 45 and 64.
32. Find the probability that a randomly selected person age 15 or older who lives alone is age 65 or older.
33. Find the probability of not living alone for a person age 15 or higher.
34. Find the probability of not living alone for a person age 15–24.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. $1/13 \approx .077$
2. $6/7 \approx .857$
3. (a) About .147 (b) About .353
4. (a) About .340 (b) About .137

CHAPTER 8 Summary and Review

Key Terms and Symbols

{ }	set braces	8.1	set	8.2	addition rule for counting	8.4	addition rule for probability
\in	is an element of		element (member)	8.3	experiment		complement rule
\notin	is not an element of		empty set		trial		odds
\emptyset	empty set		set-builder notation		outcome	8.5	conditional probability
\subseteq	is a subset of		universal set		sample space		product rule of probability
$\not\subseteq$	is not a subset of		subset		event		probability tree
\subset	is a proper subset of		set operations		certain event		independent events
A'	complement of set A		tree diagram		impossible event		dependent events
\cap	set intersection		Venn diagram		disjoint events	8.6	Bayes' formula
\cup	set union		complement		basic probability principle		
$P(E)$	probability of event E		intersection		relative frequency		
$P(F|E)$	probability of event F , given that event E has occurred		disjoint sets		probability		
			union		probability distribution		

Chapter 8 Key Concepts

Sets

Set A is a **subset** of set B if every element of A is also an element of B . A set of n elements has 2^n subsets.

Let A and B be any sets with universal set U .

The **complement** of A is $A' = \{x|x \notin A \text{ and } x \in U\}$.

The **intersection** of A and B is $A \cap B = \{x|x \in A \text{ and } x \in B\}$.

The **union** of A and B is $A \cup B = \{x|x \in A \text{ or } x \in B \text{ or both}\}$.

$n(A \cup B) = n(A) + n(B) - n(A \cap B)$, where $n(X)$ is the number of elements in set X .

Basic Probability Principle

Let S be a sample space of equally likely outcomes, and let event E be a subset of S . Then the probability that event E occurs is

$$P(E) = \frac{n(E)}{n(S)}.$$

Addition Rule

For any events E and F from a sample space S ,

$$P(E \cup F) = P(E) + P(F) - P(E \cap F).$$

For disjoint events E and F ,

$$P(E \cup F) = P(E) + P(F).$$

Complement Rule

$P(E) = 1 - P(E')$ and $P(E') = 1 - P(E)$.

Odds

The odds in favor of event E are $\frac{P(E)}{P(E')}$, $P(E') \neq 0$.

Properties of Probability

1. For any event E in sample space S , $0 \leq P(E) \leq 1$.
2. The sum of the probabilities of all possible distinct outcomes is 1.

Conditional Probability

The conditional probability of event E , given that event F has occurred, is

$$P(E|F) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)}, \text{ where } P(F) \neq 0.$$

For equally likely outcomes, conditional probability is found by reducing the sample space to event F ; then

$$P(E|F) = \frac{n(E \cap F)}{n(F)}.$$

Product Rule of Probability

If E and F are events, then $P(E \cap F)$ may be found by either of these formulas:

$$P(E \cap F) = P(F) \cdot P(E|F) \text{ or } P(E \cap F) = P(E) \cdot P(F|E).$$

Product Rule for Independent Events

E and F are independent events if and only if

$$P(E \cap F) = P(E)P(F).$$

Bayes' Formula

$$P(F_i|E) = \frac{P(F_i) \cdot P(E|F_i)}{P(F_1) \cdot P(E|F_1) + P(F_2) \cdot P(E|F_2) + \cdots + P(F_n) \cdot P(E|F_n)}.$$

Chapter 8 Review Exercises

Write true or false for each of the given statements.

1. $9 \in \{8, 4, -3, -9, 6\}$

2. $4 \in \{3, 9, 7\}$

3. $2 \notin \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$

4. $0 \notin \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$

5. $\{3, 4, 5\} \subseteq \{2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$

6. $\{1, 2, 5, 8\} \subseteq \{1, 2, 5, 10, 11\}$

7. $\emptyset \subset \cup$

8. $0 \subseteq \emptyset$

List the elements in the given sets.

9. $\{x|x \text{ is a national holiday}\}$

10. $\{x|x \text{ is an integer, } -3 \leq x < 1\}$

11. {all counting numbers less than 5}
12. $\{x|x \text{ is a leap year between 1989 and 2006}\}$

Let $U = \{\text{Vitamins } A, B_1, B_2, B_3, B_6, B_{12}, C, D, E\}$, $M = \{\text{Vitamins } A, C, D, E\}$, and $N = \{\text{Vitamins } A, B_1, B_2, C, E\}$. Find the given sets.

13. M'
14. N'
15. $(M \cup N)'$
16. $M \cup N$
17. $M \cup N'$
18. $M' \cap N$

Consider these sets:

$U = \{\text{Students taking Intermediate Accounting}\}$;
 $A = \{\text{Females}\}$;
 $B = \{\text{Finance majors}\}$;
 $C = \{\text{Students older than 22}\}$;
 $D = \{\text{Students with a GPA} > 3.5\}$.

Describe each of the following in words.

19. $A \cap C$
20. $B \cap D$
21. $A \cup D$
22. $A' \cap D$
23. $B' \cap C'$

Draw a Venn diagram and shade the given set in it.

24. $B \cup A'$
25. $A' \cap B$
26. $A' \cap (B' \cap C)$

Business As of May 2013, the 50 highest grossing movies as measured by domestic box office receipts could be categorized as follows. (Data from: www.the-movie-times.com.)

- 27 were action movies;
 - 34 were rated PG-13;
 - 38 were made in the year 2000 or more recently;
 - 22 were action and rated PG-13;
 - 23 were action and made in the year 2000 or more recently;
 - 28 were rated PG-13 and made in the year 2000 or more recently;
 - 21 were action, rated PG-13, and made in the year 2000 or more recently.
27. How many movies were action movies but not rated PG-13?
 28. How many movies were action or rated PG-13?
 29. How many movies were made in the year 2000 or more recently or rated PG-13?
 30. How many movies were not action, not rated PG-13, and made prior to the year 2000?

Write sample spaces for the given scenarios.

31. A die is rolled and the number of dots showing is noted.
32. A color is selected from the set {red, blue, green}, and then a number is chosen from the set {10, 20, 30}.

Business A student purchases a digital music player and installs 10 songs on the device to see how it works. The genres of the songs are rock (3 songs), pop (4 songs), and alternative (3 songs). She listens to the first two songs on shuffle mode.

33. Write the sample space for the genre if shuffle mode picks songs at random. (Note: Shuffle mode is allowed to play the same song twice in a row.)
34. Are the outcomes in the sample space for Exercise 33 equally likely?

Business A customer wants to purchase a computer and printer. She has narrowed her selection among 2 Dell models, 1 Gateway model, and 2 HP models for the computer and 2 Epson models and 3 HP models for the printer.

35. Write the sample space for the brands among which she can choose for the computer and printer.
36. Are the outcomes in the sample space for Exercise 35 equally likely?

Business A company sells computers and copiers. Let E be the event “a customer buys a computer,” and let F be the event “a customer buys a copier.” In Exercises 37 and 38, write each of the given scenarios, using \cap , \cup , or $'$ as necessary.

37. A customer buys only a computer.
38. A customer buys either computer or a copier.
39. A student writes that the probability of having rain is -0.5 . Explain why this answer must be incorrect?

40. If $P(A \cap B) = P(A)P(B)$, the A and B are mutually.
41. Describe what is meant by mutually exclusive events, and give an example.
42. How are disjoint sets and mutually exclusive events related?

Finance The Standard and Poor's 500 index had the following allocations, as of December 31, 2008. (Data from: www.standardandpoors.com.)

Sector	Percent
Consumer Discretionary	11.87
Consumer Staples	10.84
Energy	10.58
Financials	16.46
Health Care	12.63
Industrials	10.01
Information Technology	17.93
Materials	3.38
Telecommunication Services	2.93
Utilities	3.39

Find the probability that a company chosen at random from the S&P 500 was from the given sectors.

43. Consumer Discretionary or Consumer Staples
44. Information Technology or Telecommunication Services

Finance The sector weightings for the investments in the American Century Growth Fund as of May 13, 2013 are presented in the following table. (Data from: www.americancentury.com.)

Sector	Percent
Information Technology	28.33
Consumer Discretionary	16.04
Consumer Staples	13.79
Health Care	13.50
Industrials	13.43
Energy	4.99
Financials	4.55
Materials	3.57
Utilities	.35

Find the probability that an investment selected at random from this fund is

45. Materials or Utilities 46. Not in Health Care

Education According to data from the U.S. National Center for Education Statistics, the number (in thousands) of degree awardees for the year 2011 can be summarized in the following table.

Degree	Number (in thousands)
Associate's	895
Bachelor's	1781
Master's	730
Doctoral	77
First-professional	103

Find the probability that a graduate selected at random has the described degree.

47. Not Associate's 48. Bachelor's or Master's

Finance The following table gives the number of institutions insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) cross-classified by asset size and institution type, as of June 30, 2012. (Data from: www2.fdic.gov/sod.)

Asset Size	Commercial Banks	Saving Institutions	Total
Less than \$25 million	319	48	367
\$25 million–\$49.99 million	732	99	831
\$50 million–\$99.99 million	1419	176	1595
\$100 million–\$299.99 million	2276	343	2619
\$300 million–\$499.99 million	613	133	746
\$500 million–\$999.99 million	434	122	556
\$1 billion or greater	429	102	531
Total	6222	1023	7245

If a FDIC-insured institution is chosen at random, find the probability that the institution has the following characteristics.

49. \$1 billion or greater in assets
 50. \$25 million–\$49.99 million in assets and is a savings institution
 51. \$300 million–\$499.99 million in assets and is a commercial bank
 52. Less than \$25 million in assets or is a savings institution
 53. \$1 billion or greater in assets or is a commercial bank
 54. \$500 million–\$999.99 million in assets, given that it is a savings institution
 55. \$500 million–\$999.99 million in assets, given that it is a commercial bank
 56. Given that an institution has \$1 billion or greater in assets, what is the probability that it is a savings institution?
 57. Given that an institution has less than \$25 million in assets, what is the probability that it is a commercial bank?
 58. Given that the institution is a commercial bank, what is the probability that it has less than \$25 million in assets?

Finance An organization collects data on stocks and notes, whether dividends were paid or not, and whether the price of stocks increased or not over a given period.

	Price Increased	Remain same	Total
Dividends paid	34	78	112
No dividends paid	85	49	134
Total	119	127	246

59. If a stock is randomly selected, what is the probability that its price increased?
 60. If a stock is randomly selected, what is the probability that its price increased and dividends were paid?
 61. What is the probability that a randomly selected stock neither paid dividends nor did its price increase?
 62. If a stock is known not to have paid dividends, what is the probability that its price increased?

Find the probabilities for the given sums when two fair dice are rolled.

63. 8 64. No more than 4
 65. At least 9 66. Odd and greater than 8
 67. 2, given that the sum is less than 4
 68. 7, given that at least one die shows a 4

Suppose $P(A) = .41$, $P(B) = 0.22$, and $P(A \cup B) = .48$. Find each of the given probabilities.

69. $P(A \cup B)'$ 70. $P(A \cap B)$
 71. $P\left(\frac{A}{B}\right)$ 72. $P\left(\frac{B}{A}\right)$

For the events E and F , $P(E) = .2$, $P(E|F) = .3$, and $P(F) = .4$. Find each of the given probabilities.

73. $P(E'|F)$

74. $P(E|F')$

75. Define independent events, and give an example of one.

76. Give an example of events which are independent in pairs, but not as a whole.

77. **Social Science** As reported by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in 2011, the state of Washington had the highest rate of seat belt compliance; the odds that a driver was using a seat belt were 39:1.

(a) What is the probability that a driver in Washington in 2011 was *not* using a seat belt?

(b) The probability of wearing a seat belt in the state of Maryland was .942. What are the odds of wearing a seat belt in Maryland?

78. **Social Science** The report cited in Exercise 77 stated that Massachusetts had the lowest rates of seat belt compliance.

(a) The probability of a randomly selected driver in Massachusetts using a seat belt was .732. What are the odds that a driver was using a seat belt?

(b) In North Dakota, the odds of wearing a seatbelt were 373:127. What is the probability of wearing a seat belt in North Dakota?

Physical Science It is found that in manufacturing a certain product, defects of type one occurred with the probability of 0.1, and defects of type two occurred with the probability of 0.05. Assume the two types of defects are independent of each other. What is the probability that

79. An article does not have both kinds of defects.

80. An article is defective.

81. An article has type one defect, given that it is defective.

82. An article has type two defect, given that it is defective.

Education Students are allowed to take either mathematics or computers as an optional course in the third semester of a newly-introduced degree programme in the University of Delhi. Of all the students, 40% get Grade A, 35% get Grade B, and 25% get Grade C. Of the students who get Grade A, B, and C, 30%, 60% and 50%, respectively, had chosen mathematics.:

83. What is the probability that a student who chose mathematics got Grade B?

84. If a student chose mathematics, what is the probability that he scored Grade C in the second semester?.

Social Science The following tables list the number of passengers who were on the Titanic and the number of passengers who survived, according to class of ticket.*

	CHILDREN		WOMEN	
	On	Survived	On	Survived
First Class	6	6	144	140
Second Class	24	24	165	76
Third Class	79	27	93	80
Total	109	57	402	296

	MEN		TOTALS	
	On	Survived	On	Survived
First Class	175	57	325	203
Second Class	168	14	357	114
Third Class	462	75	634	182
Total	805	146	1316	499

Use this information to determine the given probabilities. (Round answers to three decimal places.)

85. What is the probability that a randomly selected passenger was in second class?

86. What is the overall probability of surviving?

87. What is the probability of a first-class passenger surviving?

88. What is the probability of a child who was in third class surviving?

89. Given that a survivor is from first class, what is the probability that she was a woman?

90. Given that a male has survived, what is the probability that he was in third class?

91. Are the events “third-class survival” and “male survival” independent events? What does this imply?

92. Are the events “first-class survival” and “child survival” independent events? What does this imply?

Social Science According to data from the 2012 American Community Survey, among workers that did not work at home, the proportion that were men was 52.8%. The following table shows the percentage of males and females whose commuting times fit the various categories. (Data from: factfinder2.census.gov)

Travel Time to Work	Males	Females
Less than 15 minutes	25.9%	29.9%
15–29 minutes	35.4%	37.5%
30–44 minutes	21.0%	19.2%
45–59 minutes	8.2%	6.8%
60 or more minutes	9.6%	6.6%

*Sandra L. Takis, “Titanic: A Statistical Exploration,” *Mathematics Teacher* 92, no. 8, (November 1999): pp. 660–664. Reprinted with permission. ©1999 by the National Council of Teachers of Mathematics. All rights reserved.

- 93. What is the probability that a worker commuted less than 15 minutes?
- 94. What is the probability that a worker commuted 60 or more minutes?
- 95. What is the probability that a worker is female and commutes between 30 and 44 minutes?
- 96. What is the probability that a worker is male and commutes between 45 and 59 minutes?
- 97. Given that the worker commutes 60 or more minutes, what is the probability that the worker is male?
- 98. Given that the worker commutes 30 to 44 minutes, what is the probability that the worker is female?
- 99. Given that the worker commutes 29 minutes or less, what is the probability that the worker is female?
- 100. Given that the worker commutes 45 minutes or more, what is the probability that the worker is male?

Case Study 8 Medical Diagnosis



When patients undergo medical testing, a positive test result for a disease or condition can be emotionally devastating. In many cases, however, testing positive does not necessarily imply that the patient actually has the disease. Bayes' formula can be very helpful in determining the probability of actually having the disease when a patient tests positive.

Let us label the event of having the disease as D and not having the disease as D' . We will denote testing positive for the disease as T and testing negative as T' . Suppose a medical test is calibrated on patients so that we know that among patients with the disease, the test is positive 99.95% of the time. (This quantity is often called the **sensitivity** of the test.) Among patients known not to have the disease, 99.90% of the time the test gave a negative result. (This quantity is often called the **specificity** of the test.) In summary, we have

$$\text{Sensitivity} = P(T|D) = .9995 \text{ and } \text{Specificity} = P(T'|D') = .9990.$$

Using the complement rule, we find that the probability the test will give a negative result when a patient has the disease is

$$P(T'|D) = 1 - P(T|D) = 1 - .9995 = .0005.$$

Similarly, for those patients without the disease, the probability of testing positive is .0010, calculated by

$$P(T|D') = 1 - P(T'|D') = 1 - .9990 = .0010.$$

These results do not yet answer the question of interest: If a patient tests positive for the disease, what is the probability the patient actually has the disease? Using our notation, we want to know $P(D|T)$. There are two steps to finding this probability. The first is that we need an estimate of the prevalence of the disease in the general population. Let us assume that one person in a thousand has the disease. We can then calculate that

$$P(D) = \frac{1}{1000} = .001 \text{ and } P(D') = 1 - .001 = .999.$$

With this information, and the previous results from testing, we can now use Bayes' formula to find $P(D|T)$:

$$P(D|T) = \frac{P(D)P(T|D)}{P(D)P(T|D) + P(D')P(T|D')}.$$

Using $P(D) = .001$, $P(D') = .999$, the sensitivity $P(T|D) = .9995$ and the complement to the specificity $P(T|D') = .0010$, we have

$$P(D|T) = \frac{(.001)(.9995)}{(.001)(.9995) + (.999)(.0010)} = \frac{.0009995}{.0019985} \approx .5001.$$

Hence, the probability the patient actually has the disease after testing positive for the disease is only about .5. This is approximately the same probability as guessing "heads" when flipping a coin. It seems paradoxical that a test which has such high sensitivity (in this case, .9995) and specificity (in this case, .999) could lead to a probability of merely .5 that a person who tests positive for the disease actually has the disease. This is why it is imperative to have confirmatory tests run after testing positive.

The other factor in the calculation is the prevalence of the disease among the general population. In our example, we used $P(D) = .001$. Often, it is very difficult to know how prevalent a disease is among the general population. If the disease is more prevalent, such as 1 in 100, or $P(D) = .01$, we find the probability of a patient's having the disease, given that the patient tests positive, as

$$P(D|T) = \frac{(.01)(.9995)}{(.01)(.9995) + (.99)(.0010)} = \frac{.009995}{.010985} \approx .9099.$$

So when the disease has higher prevalence, then the probability of having the disease after testing positive is also higher. If the disease has a lower prevalence (as in the case of our first example), then the probability of having the disease after testing positive could be much lower than one might otherwise think.

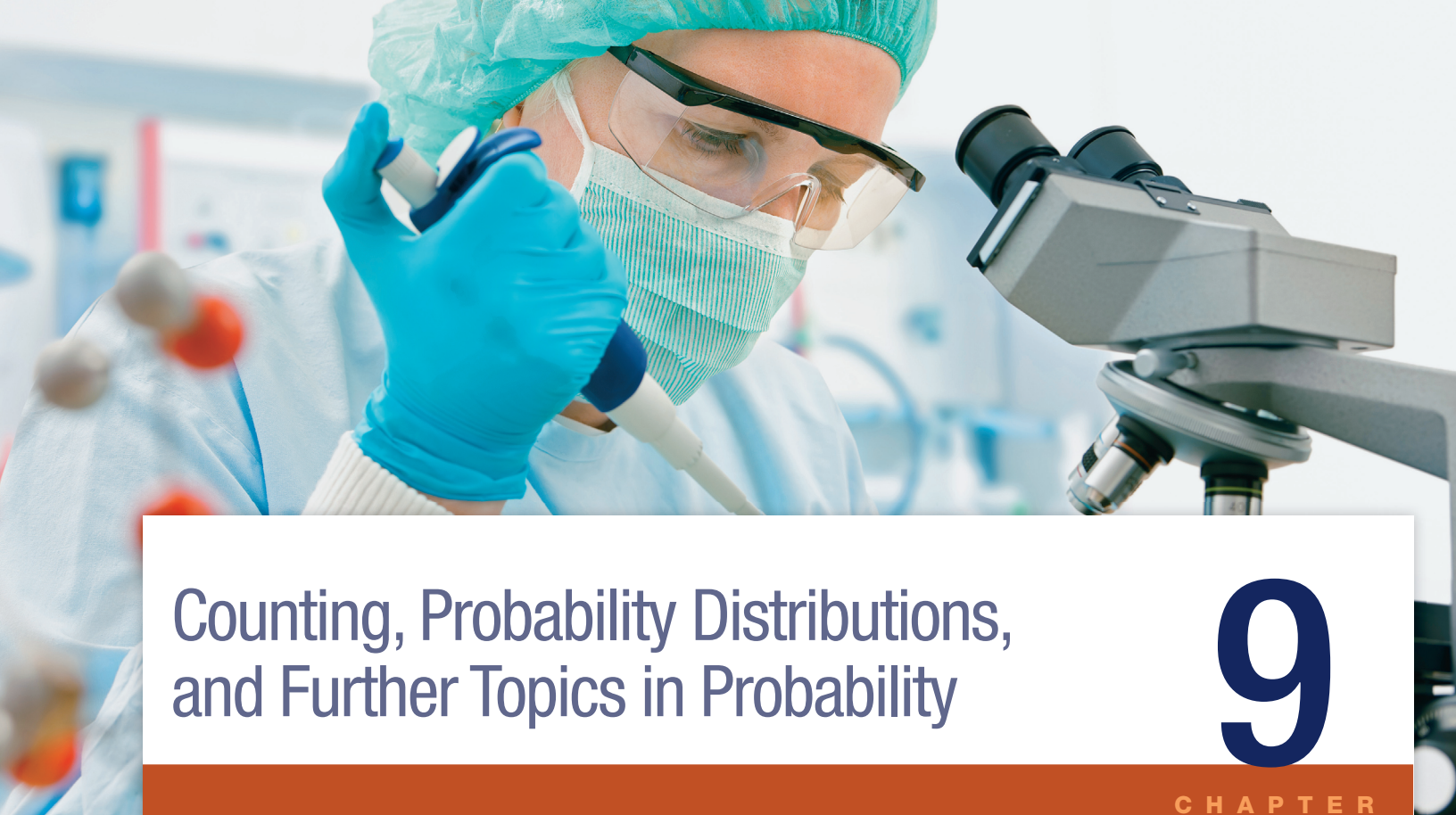
Exercises

1. Suppose the specificity of a test is 0.999. Find $P(T|D')$.
2. If the sensitivity of a test for a disease is .99 and the prevalence of the disease is .005, use your answer to Exercise 1 to find the probability of a patient's having the disease, given that the patient tested positive, or $P(D|T)$.
3. Recalculate your answer to Exercise 2 using a prevalence of disease of .0005.

Extended Project

For a disease or ailment of interest, find in the medical literature the prevalence of the disease or ailment among the general population, the specificity of a particular test to detect the disease or ailment, and the sensitivity of the same test. Then find the probability

that a patient actually has the disease, given that the patient tested positive with the particular test. Did your results surprise you? Why or why not?



Counting, Probability Distributions, and Further Topics in Probability

9

CHAPTER

CHAPTER OUTLINE

- 9.1** Probability Distributions and Expected Value
- 9.2** The Multiplication Principle, Permutations, and Combinations
- 9.3** Applications of Counting
- 9.4** Binomial Probability
- 9.5** Markov Chains
- 9.6** Decision Making

CASE STUDY 9

Quick Draw[®] from the New York State Lottery

Probability has applications to quality control in manufacturing and to decision making in business. It plays a role in testing new medications, in evaluating DNA evidence in criminal trials, and in a host of other situations. See Exercises 41–43 on pages 493–494. Sophisticated counting techniques are often necessary for determining the probabilities used in these applications. See Exercises 29–30 on page 518.

Probability distributions enable us to compute the “average value” or “expected outcome” when an experiment or process is repeated a number of times. These distributions are introduced in Section 9.1 and used in Sections 9.4 and 9.6. The other focus of this chapter is the development of effective ways to count the possible outcomes of an experiment without actually listing them all (which can be *very* tedious when large numbers are involved). These counting techniques are introduced in Section 9.2 and are used to find probabilities throughout the rest of the chapter.

9.1 Probability Distributions and Expected Value

Probability distributions were introduced briefly in Section 8.4. Now we take a more complete look at them. In this section, we shall see that the *expected value* of a probability distribution is a type of average. A probability distribution depends on the idea of a *random variable*, so we begin with that.

Random Variables

One of the questions asked in the 2010 National Health and Nutrition Examination Study (NHANES) had to do with respondents' daily hours of TV or video use. The answer to that question, which we will label x , is one of the numbers 0 through 6 (corresponding to the numbers of hours of use). Since the value of x is random, x is called a random variable.

Random Variable

A **random variable** is a function that assigns a real number to each outcome of an experiment.

The following table gives each possible outcome of the study question on TV and video use together with the probability $P(x)$ of each outcome x . (Data from: www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhanes.htm.)

x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
$P(x)$	.13	.24	.33	.14	.07	.07	.02

A table that lists all the outcomes with the corresponding probabilities is called a **probability distribution**. The sum of the probabilities in a probability distribution must always equal 1. (The sum in some distributions may vary slightly from 1 because of rounding.)

Instead of writing the probability distribution as a table, we could write the same information as a set of ordered pairs:

$$\{(0, .13), (1, .24), (2, .33), (3, .14), (4, .07), (5, .07), (6, .02)\}.$$

There is just one probability for each value of the random variable.

The information in a probability distribution is often displayed graphically as a special kind of bar graph called a **histogram**. The bars of a histogram all have the same width, usually 1 unit. The heights of the bars are determined by the probabilities. A histogram for the data in the probability distribution presented above is given in Figure 9.1. A histogram shows important characteristics of a distribution that may not be readily apparent in tabular form, such as the relative sizes of the probabilities and any symmetry in the distribution.

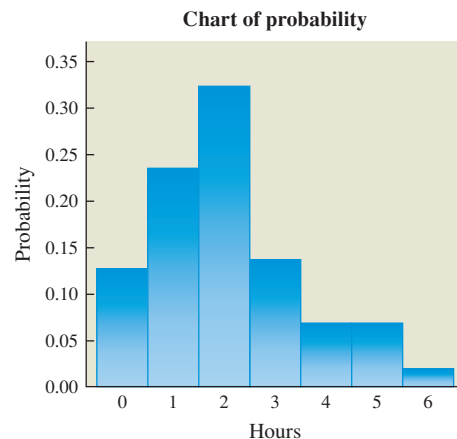


Figure 9.1

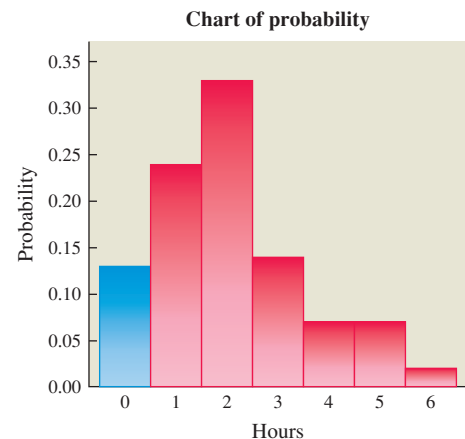


Figure 9.2

The area of the bar above $x = 0$ in Figure 9.1 is the product of 1 and .13, or $1 \cdot .13 = .13$. Since each bar has a width of 1, its area is equal to the probability that corresponds to its x -value. The probability that a particular value will occur is thus given

by the area of the appropriate bar of the graph. For example, the probability that one or more hours are spent watching TV or a video is the sum of the areas for $x = 1, x = 2, x = 3, x = 4, x = 5,$ and $x = 6$. This area, shown in red in Figure 9.2 on the previous page, corresponds to .87 of the total area, since

$$\begin{aligned} P(x \geq 1) &= P(x = 1) + P(x = 2) + P(x = 3) + P(x = 4) \\ &\quad + P(x = 5) + P(x = 6) \\ &= .24 + .33 + .14 + .07 + .07 + .02 \\ &= .87. \end{aligned}$$

Example 1

- (a) Give the probability distribution for the number of heads showing when two coins are tossed.

Solution Let x represent the random variable “number of heads.” Then x can take on the value 0, 1, or 2. Now find the probability of each outcome. When two coins are tossed, the sample space is {TT, TH, HT, HH}. So the probability of getting one head is $2/4 = 1/2$. Similar analysis of the other cases produces this table.

x	0	1	2
$P(x)$	1/4	1/2	1/4

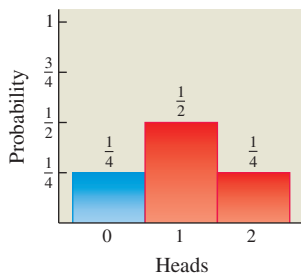


Figure 9.3

- (b) Draw a histogram for the distribution in the table. Find the probability that at least one coin comes up heads.

Solution The histogram is shown in Figure 9.3. The portion in red represents

$$\begin{aligned} P(x \geq 1) &= P(x = 1) + P(x = 2) \\ &= \frac{3}{4} \end{aligned}$$

Checkpoint 1

- (a) Give the probability distribution for the number of heads showing when three coins are tossed.
- (b) Draw a histogram for the distribution in part (a). Find the probability that no more than one coin comes up heads.

Answers to Checkpoint exercises are found at the end of the section.

TECHNOLOGY TIP Virtually all graphing calculators can produce histograms. The procedures differ on various calculators, but you usually are required to enter the outcomes in one list and the corresponding frequencies in a second list. For specific details, check your instruction manual under “statistics graphs” or “statistical plotting.” To get the histogram in Figure 9.3 with a TI-84+ calculator, we entered the outcomes 0, 1, and 2 in the first list and entered the probabilities .25, .5, and .25 in a second list. Two versions of the histogram are shown in Figure 9.4. They differ slightly because different viewing windows were used. With some calculators, the probabilities must be entered as integers, so make the entries in the second list 1, 2, and 1 (corresponding to 1/4, 2/4, and 1/4, respectively), and use a window with $0 \leq y \leq 4$.

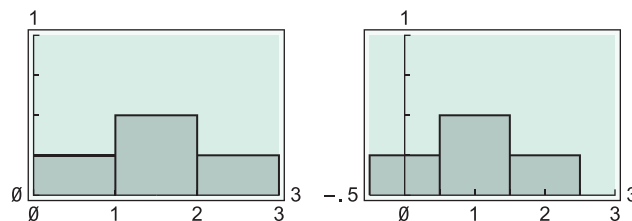


Figure 9.4

Expected Value

In working with probability distributions, it is useful to have a concept of the typical or average value that the random variable takes on. In Example 1, for instance, it seems

reasonable that, on the average, one head shows when two coins are tossed. This does not tell what will happen the next time we toss two coins; we may get two heads, or we may get none. If we tossed two coins many times, however, we would expect that, in the long run, we would average about one head for each toss of two coins.

A way to solve such problems in general is to imagine flipping two coins 4 times. Based on the probability distribution in Example 1, we would expect that 1 of the 4 times we would get 0 heads, 2 of the 4 times we would get 1 head, and 1 of the 4 times we would get 2 heads. The total number of heads we would get, then, is

$$0 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 2 + 2 \cdot 1 = 4.$$

The expected number of heads per toss is found by dividing the total number of heads by the total number of tosses:

$$\frac{0 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 2 + 2 \cdot 1}{4} = 0 \cdot \frac{1}{4} + 1 \cdot \frac{1}{2} + 2 \cdot \frac{1}{4} = 1.$$

Notice that the expected number of heads turns out to be the sum of the three values of the random variable x , multiplied by their corresponding probabilities. We can use this idea to define the *expected value* of a random variable as follows.

Expected Value


Suppose that the random variable x can take on the n values $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$. Suppose also that the probabilities that these values occur are, respectively, $p_1, p_2, p_3, \dots, p_n$. Then the **expected value** of the random variable is

$$E(x) = x_1p_1 + x_2p_2 + x_3p_3 + \cdots + x_np_n.$$

Example 2 **Social Science** In the example with the TV and video usage on page 486, find the expected number of hours per day of viewing.

Solution Multiply each outcome in the table on page 486 by its probability, and sum the products:

$$\begin{aligned} E(x) &= 0 \cdot .13 + 1 \cdot .24 + 2 \cdot .33 + 3 \cdot .14 + 4 \cdot .07 + 5 \cdot .07 + 6 \cdot .02 \\ &= 2.07. \end{aligned}$$

On the average, a respondent of the survey will indicate 2.07 hours of TV or video usage. 

Physically, the expected value of a probability distribution represents a balance point. If we think of the histogram in Figure 9.1 as a series of weights with magnitudes represented by the heights of the bars, then the system would balance if supported at the point corresponding to the expected value.

Example 3 **Business** Suppose a local symphony decides to raise money by raffling off a microwave oven worth \$400, a dinner for two worth \$80, and two books worth \$20 each. A total of 2000 tickets are sold at \$1 each. Find the expected value of winning for a person who buys one ticket in the raffle.

Solution Here, the random variable represents the possible amounts of net winnings, where net winnings = amount won – cost of ticket. For example, the net winnings of the person winning the oven are \$400 (amount won) – \$1 (cost of ticket) = \$399, and the net winnings for each losing ticket are \$0 – \$1 = –\$1.

Checkpoint 2

Find the expected value of the number of heads showing when four coins are tossed.


The net winnings of the various prizes, as well as their respective probabilities, are shown in the table below. The probability of winning \$19 is $2/2000$, because there are 2 prizes worth \$20. (We have not reduced the fractions in order to keep all the denominators equal.) Because there are 4 winning tickets, there are 1996 losing tickets, so the probability of winning $-\$1$ is $1996/2000$.

x	\$399	\$79	\$19	$-\$1$
$P(x)$	$1/2000$	$1/2000$	$2/2000$	$1996/2000$

The expected winnings for a person buying one ticket are

$$399\left(\frac{1}{2000}\right) + 79\left(\frac{1}{2000}\right) + 19\left(\frac{2}{2000}\right) + (-1)\left(\frac{1996}{2000}\right) = -\frac{1480}{2000} = -.74.$$

On average, a person buying one ticket in the raffle will lose \$.74, or 74¢.

It is not possible to lose 74¢ in this raffle: Either you lose \$1, or you win a prize worth \$400, \$80, or \$20, minus the \$1 you paid to play. But if you bought tickets in many such raffles over a long time, you would lose 74¢ per ticket, on average. It is important to note that the expected value of a random variable may be a number that can never occur in any one trial of the experiment. 

 **Checkpoint 3**

Suppose you buy 1 of 10,000 tickets at \$1 each in a lottery where the prize is \$5,000. What are your expected net winnings? What does this answer mean?



NOTE An alternative way to compute expected value in this and other such examples is to calculate the expected amount won and then subtract the cost of the ticket afterward. The amount won is either \$400 (with probability $1/2000$), \$80 (with probability $1/2000$), \$20 (with probability $2/2000$), or \$0 (with probability $1996/2000$). The expected winnings for a person buying one ticket are then

$$400\left(\frac{1}{2000}\right) + 80\left(\frac{1}{2000}\right) + 20\left(\frac{2}{2000}\right) + 0\left(\frac{1996}{2000}\right) - 1 = -\frac{1480}{2000} = -.74.$$

Example 4

Each day, Lynette and Tanisha toss a coin to see who buys coffee (at \$1.75 a cup). One tosses, while the other calls the outcome. If the person who calls the outcome is correct, the other buys the coffee; otherwise the caller pays. Find Lynette's expected winnings.

Solution Assume that an honest coin is used, that Tanisha tosses the coin, and that Lynette calls the outcome. The possible results and corresponding probabilities are shown in the following table:


	Possible Results			
Result of Toss	Heads	Heads	Tails	Tails
Call	Heads	Tails	Heads	Tails
Caller Wins?	Yes	No	No	Yes
Probability	$1/4$	$1/4$	$1/4$	$1/4$

Lynette wins a \$1.75 cup of coffee whenever the results and calls match, and she loses \$1.75 when there is no match. Her expected winnings are

$$1.75\left(\frac{1}{4}\right) + (-1.75)\left(\frac{1}{4}\right) + (-1.75)\left(\frac{1}{4}\right) + 1.75\left(\frac{1}{4}\right) = 0.$$

 **Checkpoint 4**

Find Tanisha's expected winnings.

On the average, over the long run, Lynette breaks even. 

A game with an expected value of 0 (such as the one in Example 4) is called a **fair game**. Casinos do not offer fair games. If they did, they would win (on the average) \$0 and have a hard time paying their employees! Casino games have expected winnings for the house that vary from 1.5 cents per dollar to 60 cents per dollar. The next example examines the popular game of roulette.

**Example 5**


Business As we saw in Chapter 8, an American roulette wheel has 38 slots. Two of the slots are marked 0 and 00 and are colored green. The remaining slots are numbered 1–36 and are colored red and black (18 slots are red and 18 slots are black). One simple wager is to bet \$1 on the color red. If the marble lands in a red slot, the player gets his or her dollar back, plus \$1 of winnings. Find the expected winnings for a \$1 bet on red.

Solution For this bet, there are only two possible outcomes: winning or losing. The random variable has outcomes +1 if the marble lands in a red slot and -1 if it does not. We need to find the probability for these two outcomes. Since there are 38 total slots, 18 of which are colored red, the probability of winning a dollar is $18/38$. The player will lose if the marble lands in any of the remaining 20 slots, so the probability of losing the dollar is $20/38$. Thus, the probability distribution is

x	-1	+1
$P(x)$	$\frac{20}{38}$	$\frac{18}{38}$

The expected winnings are

$$E(x) = -1\left(\frac{20}{38}\right) + 1\left(\frac{18}{38}\right) = -\frac{2}{38} \approx -.053.$$

The winnings on a dollar bet for red average out to losing about a nickel on every spin of the roulette wheel. In other words, a casino earns, on average, 5.3 cents on every dollar bet on red. 

 **Checkpoint 5**

A gambling game requires a \$5 bet. If the player wins, she gets \$1000, but if she loses, she loses her \$5. The probability of winning is .001. What are the expected winnings of this game?

Exercises 17–20 at the end of the section ask you to find the expected winnings for other bets on games of chance. The idea of expected value can be very useful in decision making, as shown by the next example.

Example 6

Finance Suppose that, at age 50, you receive a letter from Mutual of Mauritania Insurance Company. According to the letter, you must tell the company immediately which of the following two options you will choose: Take \$50,000 at age 60 (if you are alive, and \$0 otherwise), or take \$65,000 at age 70 (again, if you are alive, and \$0 otherwise). Based *only* on the idea of expected value, which should you choose?

Solution Life insurance companies have constructed elaborate tables showing the probability of a person living a given number of years into the future. From a recent such table, the probability of living from age 50 to age 60 is .88, while the probability of living from age 50 to 70 is .64. The expected values of the two options are as follows.

$$\text{First Option: } (50,000)(.88) + (0)(.12) = 44,000;$$

$$\text{Second Option: } (65,000)(.64) + (0)(.36) = 41,600.$$

Strictly on the basis of expected value, choose the first option. 

 **Checkpoint 6**

After college, a person is offered two jobs. With job A, after five years, there is a 50% chance of making \$60,000 per year and a 50% chance of making \$45,000. With job B, after five years, there is a 30% chance of making \$80,000 per year and a 70% chance of making \$35,000. Based strictly on expected value, which job should be taken?

Example 7 Social Science The table gives the probability distribution for the number of children of respondents to the 2012 General Social Survey, for those with 7 or fewer children. (Data from: www.norc.org/gss+website.)

x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$P(x)$	.275	.141	.292	.155	.086	.028	.017	.006

Find the expected value for the number of children.

Solution Using the formula for the expected value, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 E(x) &= 0(.275) + 1(.141) + 2(.292) + 3(.155) \\
 &\quad + 4(.086) + 5(.028) + 6(.017) + 7(.006) \\
 &= 1.818.
 \end{aligned}$$

For those respondents with 7 or fewer children, the number of children, on average, is 1.818.

9.1 Exercises

For each of the experiments described, let x determine a random variable and use your knowledge of probability to prepare a probability distribution. (Hint: Use a tree diagram.)

- Four children are born, and the number of boys is noted. (Assume an equal chance of a boy or a girl for each birth.)
- Two dice are rolled, and the total number of dots is recorded.
- Three cards are drawn from a deck. The number of Queens are counted.
- Two names are drawn from a hat, signifying who should go pick up pizza. Three of the names are on the swim team and two are not. The number of swimmers selected is counted.

Draw a histogram for each of the given exercises, and shade the region that gives the indicated probability. (See Example 1.)

- Exercise 1; $P(x \leq 2)$
- Exercise 2; $P(x \geq 11)$
- Exercise 3; $P(\text{at least one queen})$
- Exercise 4; $P(\text{fewer than two swimmers})$

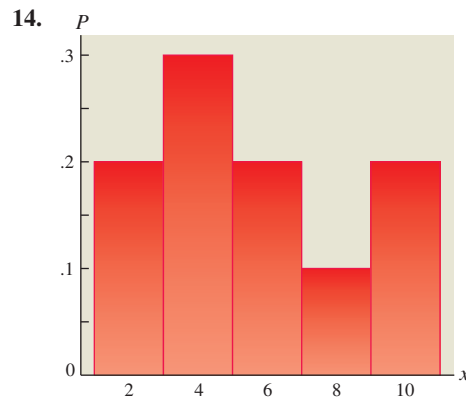
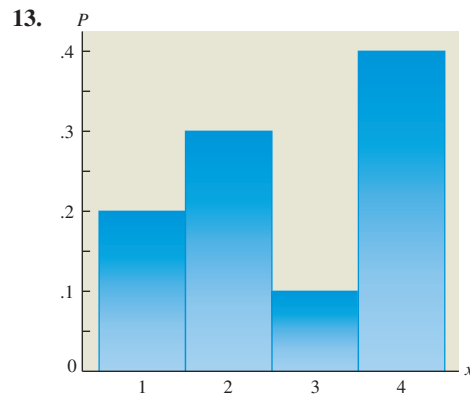
Find the expected value for each random variable. (See Example 2.)

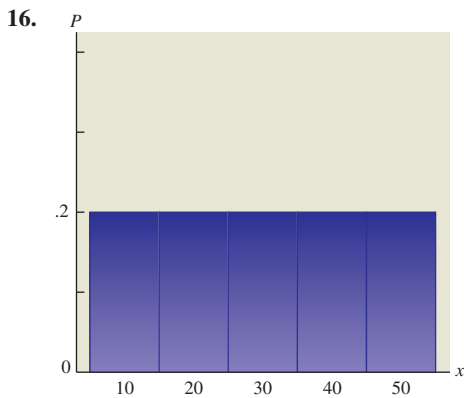
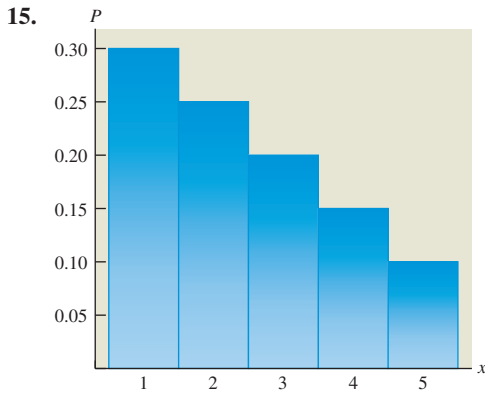
- | | | | | |
|--------|----|----|----|----|
| x | 1 | 3 | 5 | 7 |
| $P(x)$ | .1 | .5 | .2 | .2 |
- | | | | | |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| y | 0 | 15 | 30 | 40 |
| $P(y)$ | .15 | .20 | .40 | .25 |
- | | | | | | |
|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| z | 0 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16 |
| $P(z)$ | .21 | .24 | .21 | .17 | .17 |

12.

x	5	10	15	20	25
$P(x)$	.40	.30	.15	.10	.05

Find the expected values for the random variables x whose probability functions are graphed.





Find the expected winnings for the games of chance described in Exercises 17–20. (See Example 5.)

17. In one form of roulette, you bet \$1 on “even.” If one of the 18 positive even numbers comes up, you get your dollar back, plus another one. If one of the 20 other numbers (18 odd, 0, and 00) comes up, you lose your dollar.
18. Repeat Exercise 17 if there are only 19 noneven numbers (no 00).
19. *Numbers* is a game in which you bet \$1 on any three-digit number from 000 to 999. If your number comes up, you get \$500.
20. In one form of the game Keno, the house has a pot containing 80 balls, each marked with a different number from 1 to 80. You buy a ticket for \$1 and mark one of the 80 numbers on it. The house then selects 20 numbers at random. If your number is among the 20, you get \$3.20 (for a net winning of \$2.20).
21. **Business** An online gambling site offers a first prize of \$50,000 and two second prizes of \$10,000 each for registered users when they place a bet. A random bet will be selected over a 24-hour period. Two million bets are received in the contest. Find the expected winnings if you can place one registered bet of \$1 in the given period.
22. **Business** An online gambling site offers a lottery with a first prize of \$25,000, a second prize of \$10,000, and a third prize of \$5000. It takes \$5 to enter and a winner is selected at random. What are the expected winnings if 20,000 people enter the lottery?

Business A contest at a fast-food restaurant offered the following cash prizes and probabilities of winning when one buys a large order of French fries for \$1.89:

Prize	Probability
\$100,000	1/8,504,860
\$50,000	1/302,500
\$10,000	1/282,735
\$1000	1/153,560
\$100	1/104,560
\$25	1/9,540

23. Find the expected winnings if the player buys one large order of French fries.
24. Find the expected winnings if the player buys 25 large orders of French fries in multiple visits.
25. **Finance** According to the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), 28.3% of all U.S. households conduct some or all of their financial transactions outside of the mainstream banking system. Such people are sometimes called the “unbanked.” If we select four households at random, and let x denote the number of unbanked households, the probability distribution of x is:

x	0	1	2	3	4
$P(x)$	.2643	.4173	.2470	.0650	.0064

Find the expected value for the number of unbanked households.

26. **Finance** Approximately 54% of U.S. residents own individual stocks, stock mutual funds, or stocks in a retirement fund. If we select five U.S. residents at random and let x denote the number who own stocks, the probability distribution of x is:

x	0	1	2	3	4	5
$P(x)$	.0206	.1209	.2838	.3332	.1956	.0459

Find the expected value for the number of U.S. residents who own stocks. (Data from: www.gallup.com.)

For Exercises 27–30, determine whether the probability distributions are valid or not. If not, explain why.

27.

x	5	10	15	20	25	30	35
$P(x)$	.01	.09	.25	.45	.05	.20	-.05

28.

x	-2	-1	0	1	2	3	4
$P(x)$	.05	.10	.75	.02	.03	.04	.01

29.

x	1	3	5	7	9	11
$P(x)$	.01	.02	.03	.04	.05	.85

30.

x	-10	-5	0	5	10
$P(x)$	.50	.10	-.20	.30	.30

For Exercises 31–35, fill in the missing value(s) to make a valid probability distribution.

31.

x	5	10	15	20	25	30
$P(x)$	.01	.09	.25	.45	.05	

32.

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
$P(x)$		.15	.15	.15	.15	.15	.15

33.

x	10	20	30	40
$P(x)$	.20		.25	.30

34.

x	-50	-40	-30	-20	-10	0	10
$P(x)$	.05	.25	.10	.10	.05		

35.

x	1	2	3	6	12	24	48
$P(x)$	.10	.10	.20	.25	.05		

36. **Business** During the month of July, a home improvement store sold a great many air-conditioning units, but some were returned. The following table shows the probability distribution for the daily number of returns of air-conditioning units sold in July:

x	0	1	2	3	4	5
$P(x)$	.55	.31	.08	.04	.01	.01

Find the expected number of returns per day.

37. **Finance** An insurance company has written 100 policies of \$15,000, 250 of \$10,000, and 500 of \$5000 for people age 20. If experience shows that the probability that a person will die in the

next year at age 20 is .0007, how much can the company expect to pay out during the year after the policies were written?

38. **Business** A market researcher came upon a recent survey by the Pew Research Center that found that 47% of U.S. teenagers owned a smartphone. If six teens are selected at random, the probability distribution for x , the number of teens with smartphones, is as follows.

x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
$P(x)$	.0222	.1179	.2615	.3091	.2056	.0729	.0108

Find the expected number of teens with smartphones.

39. **Business** In April 2013, Toyota captured 13.7% of U.S. new auto sales. If 3 new cars are selected at random, the probability distribution for x , the number of new Toyota vehicles, is given in the following table.

x	0	1	2	3
$P(x)$	.6427	.3061	.0486	.0026

Find the expected number of Toyota new vehicles. (Data from: www.wsj.com.)

40. **Business** About 65.4 percent of Americans own homes. If 5 Americans are selected at random, the probability distribution for x , the number of Americans who own homes, is given in the following table.

x	0	1	2	3	4	5
$P(x)$	.0050	.0469	.1772	.3349	.3165	.1196

Find the expected number of Americans who own homes. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

41. **Business** Levi Strauss and Company uses expected value to help its salespeople rate their accounts.* For each account, a salesperson estimates potential additional volume and the probability of getting it. The product of these figures gives the expected value of the potential, which is added to the existing volume. The totals are then classified as A, B, or C as follows: \$40,000 or below, class C; above \$40,000, up to and including \$55,000, class B; above \$55,000, class A. Complete the chart.

Account Number	Existing Volume	Potential Additional Volume	Probability of Additional Volume	Expected Value of Potential	Existing Volume + Expected Value of Potential	Class
1	\$15,000	\$10,000	.25	\$2,500	\$17,500	C
2	40,000	0	—	—	40,000	C
3	20,000	10,000	.20			
4	50,000	10,000	.10			
5	5,000	50,000	.50			
6	0	100,000	.60			
7	30,000	20,000	.80			

42. According to Len Pasquarelli, in the first 10 games of the 2004 professional football season in the United States, two-point conversions were successful 51.2% of the time.† We can

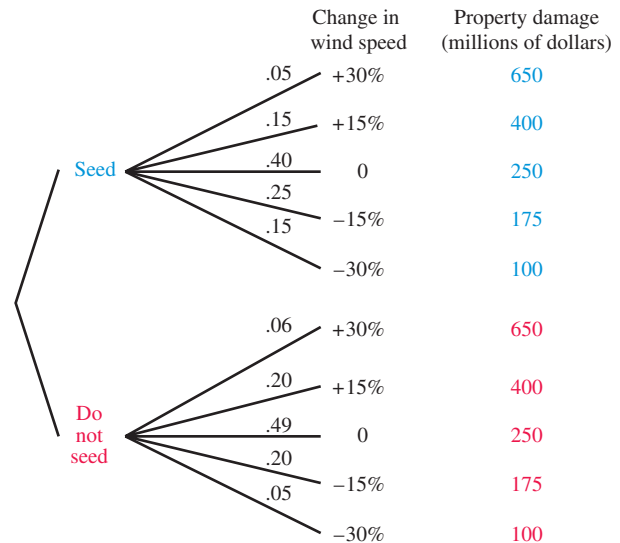
compare this rate with the historical success rate of extra-point kicks of 94%.‡

*This example was supplied by James McDonald, Levi Strauss and Company, San Francisco.

†Len Pasquarelli, “Teams More Successful Going for Two,” November 18, 2004, www.espn.com.

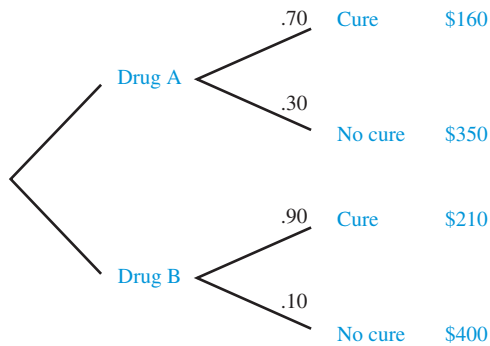
‡David Leonhardt, “In Football, 6 + 2 Often Equals 6,” *New York Times*, January 16, 2000, p. 4-2.

- (a) Calculate the expected value of each strategy.
- (b) Over the long run, which strategy will maximize the number of points scored?
- (c) From this information, should a team always use only one strategy? Explain.



43. Health Two antibiotics are used to treat common infections. Researchers wish to compare the two antibiotics—Drug A and Drug B—for their cost effectiveness. Drug A is inexpensive, safe, and effective. Drug B is also safe. However, it is considerably more expensive and is generally more effective. Use the given tree diagram (in which costs are estimated as the total cost of the medication, a visit to a medical office, and hours of lost work) to complete the following tasks:

- (a) Find the expected cost of using each antibiotic to treat a middle-ear infection.
- (b) To minimize the total expected cost, which antibiotic should be chosen?



44. Physical Science One of the few methods that can be used in an attempt to cut the severity of a hurricane is to *seed* the storm. In this process, silver iodide crystals are dropped into the storm in order to decrease the wind speed. Unfortunately, silver iodide crystals sometimes cause the storm to *increase* its speed. Wind speeds may also increase or decrease even with no seeding. Use the given tree diagram to complete the following tasks.

- (a) Find the expected amount of damage under each of the options, “seed” and “do not seed.”
- (b) To minimize total expected damage, which option should be chosen?

45. In the 2008 Wimbledon Championships, Roger Federer and Rafeal Nadal played in the finals. The prize money for the winner was £750,000 (British pounds sterling), and the prize money for the runner-up was £350,000. Find the expected winnings for Rafeal Nadal if

- (a) we assume both players had an equal chance of winning;
- (b) we use the players’ prior head-to-head match record, whereby Nadal had a .67 probability of winning.

46. Bryan Miller has two cats and a dog. Each pet has a 35% probability of climbing into the chair in which Bryan is sitting, independently of how many pets are already in the chair with Bryan.

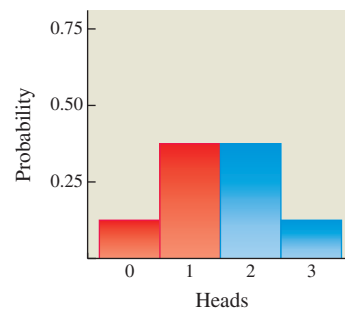
- (a) Find the probability distribution for the number of pets in the chair with Bryan. (*Hint:* List the sample space.)
- (b) Use the probability distribution in part (a) to find the expected number of pets in the chair with Bryan.

✓Checkpoint Answers

1. (a)

x	$P(x)$
0	1/8
1	3/8
2	3/8
3	1/8

(b) 1/2



2. 2
3. $-\$0.50$. On the average, you lose $\$0.50$ per ticket purchased.
4. 0
5. $-\$4$
6. Job A has an expected salary of $\$52,500$, and job B has an expected salary of $\$48,500$. Take job A.

9.2 The Multiplication Principle, Permutations, and Combinations

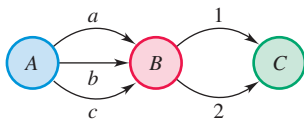


Figure 9.5

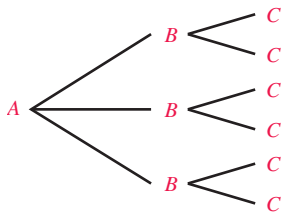


Figure 9.6

We begin with a simple example. If there are three roads from town A to town B and two roads from town B to town C , in how many ways can someone travel from A to C by way of B ? We can solve this simple problem with the help of Figure 9.5, which lists all the possible ways to go from A to C .

The possible ways to go from A through B to C are $a1$, $a2$, $b1$, $b2$, $c1$, and $c2$. So there are 6 possible ways. Note that 6 is the product of $3 \cdot 2$, 3 is the number of ways to go from A to B , and 2 is the number of ways to go from B to C .

Another way to solve this problem is to use a tree diagram, as shown in Figure 9.6. This diagram shows that, for each of the 3 roads from A , there are 2 different routes leading from B to C , making $3 \cdot 2 = 6$ different ways.

This example is an illustration of the *multiplication principle*.

Multiplication Principle

Suppose n choices must be made, with

$$\begin{aligned} & m_1 \text{ ways to make choice 1,} \\ & m_2 \text{ ways to make choice 2,} \\ & \quad \vdots \\ & m_n \text{ ways to make choice } n. \end{aligned}$$

Then there are

$$m_1 \cdot m_2 \cdot \cdots \cdot m_n$$

different ways to make the entire sequence of choices.

Example 1

Suppose Angela has 9 skirts, 8 blouses, and 13 different pairs of shoes. If she is willing to wear any combination, how many different skirt–blouse–shoe choices does she have?

Solution By the multiplication principle, there are 9 skirt choices, 8 blouse choices, and 13 shoe choices, for a total of $9 \cdot 8 \cdot 13 = 936$ skirt–blouse–shoe outfits.

Example 2

Business In May 2013, there were 731 sink faucets, 543 bath vanities, and 607 medicine cabinets available to order at the Home Depot® Web site. How many different ways could you buy one sink faucet, bath vanity, and medicine cabinet?


Solution A tree (or other diagram) would be far too complicated to use here, but the multiplication principle easily answers the question. There are

$$731 \cdot 543 \cdot 607 = 240,938,331$$

ways.

Example 3

A combination lock can be set to open to any 3-letter sequence.

(a) How many sequences are possible?**Solution** Since there are 26 letters of the alphabet, there are 26 choices for each of the 3 letters, and, by the multiplication principle, $26 \cdot 26 \cdot 26 = 17,576$ different sequences.**(b)** How many sequences are possible if no letter is repeated?**Solution** There are 26 choices for the first letter. It cannot be used again, so there are 25 choices for the second letter and then 24 choices for the third letter. Consequently, the number of such sequences is $26 \cdot 25 \cdot 24 = 15,600$.  **Checkpoint 1**

- (a)** In how many ways can 6 business tycoons line up their golf carts at the country club?
- (b)** How many ways can 4 pupils be seated in a row with 4 seats?

Factorial Notation

The use of the multiplication principle often leads to products such as $5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1$, the product of all the natural numbers from 5 down to 1. If n is a natural number, the symbol $n!$ (read “ n factorial”) denotes the product of all the natural numbers from n down to 1. The factorial is an algebraic shorthand. For example, instead of writing $5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1$, we simply write $5!$. If $n = 1$, this formula is understood to give $1! = 1$.


 n -FactorialFor any natural number n ,

$$n! = n(n - 1)(n - 2) \cdots (3)(2)(1).$$

By definition, $0! = 1$.

Note that $6! = 6 \cdot 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 = 6 \cdot (5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1) = 6 \cdot 5!$. Similarly, the definition of $n!$ shows that

$$n! = n \cdot (n - 1)!$$

One reason that $0!$ is defined to be 1 is to make the preceding formula valid when $n = 1$, for when $n = 1$, we have $1! = 1$ and $1 \cdot (1 - 1)! = 1 \cdot 0! = 1 \cdot 1 = 1$, so $n! = n \cdot (n - 1)!$. 

Almost all calculators have an $n!$ key. A calculator with a 10-digit display and scientific-notation capability will usually give the exact value of $n!$ for $n \leq 13$ and approximate values of $n!$ for $14 \leq n \leq 69$. The value of $70!$ is approximately $1.198 \cdot 10^{100}$, which is too large for most calculators. So how would you simplify $\frac{100!}{98!}$? Depending on the type of calculator, there may be an overflow problem. The next two examples show how to avoid this problem.

 **Checkpoint 2**

Evaluate:

- (a)** $4!$
- (b)** $6!$
- (c)** $1!$
- (d)** $6!/4!$

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP**

The factorial key on a graphing calculator is usually located in the PRB or PROB submenu of the MATH or OPTN menu.

Example 4

Evaluate

$$\frac{100!}{98!}$$

Solution We use the fact that $n! = n \cdot (n - 1)!$ several times:

$$\frac{100!}{98!} = \frac{100 \cdot 99!}{98!} = \frac{100 \cdot 99 \cdot 98!}{98!} = 100 \cdot 99 = 9900.$$

Example 5 Evaluate


$$\frac{5!}{2! 3!}$$

Solution $\frac{5!}{2! 3!} = \frac{5 \cdot 4!}{2! 3!} = \frac{5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3!}{2! 3!} = \frac{5 \cdot 4}{2 \cdot 1} = 10.$

Example 6 Morse code uses a sequence of dots and dashes to represent letters and words. How many sequences are possible with at most 3 symbols?

Solution “At most 3” means “1 or 2 or 3.” Each symbol may be either a dot or a dash. Thus, the following numbers of sequences are possible in each case:

Number of Symbols	Number of Sequences
1	2
2	$2 \cdot 2 = 4$
3	$2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 = 8$

Altogether, $2 + 4 + 8 = 14$ different sequences of at most 3 symbols are possible. Because there are 26 letters in the alphabet, some letters must be represented by sequences of 4 symbols in Morse code. 

 **Checkpoint 3**

How many Morse code sequences are possible with at most 4 symbols?

Permutations

A **permutation** of a set of elements is an ordering of the elements. For instance, there are six permutations (orderings) of the letters A , B , and C , namely,

$$ABC, ACB, BAC, BCA, CAB, \text{ and } CBA,$$

as you can easily verify. As this listing shows, order counts when determining the number of permutations of a set of elements. By saying “order counts,” we mean that the event ABC is indeed distinct from CBA or any other ordering of the three letters. We can use the multiplication principle to determine the number of possible permutations of any set.

Example 7 How many batting orders are possible for a 9-person baseball team?

Solution There are 9 possible choices for the first batter, 8 possible choices for the second batter, 7 for the third batter, and so on, down to the eighth batter (2 possible choices) and the ninth batter (1 possibility). So the total number of batting orders is

$$9 \cdot 8 \cdot 7 \cdot 6 \cdot 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 = 362,880.$$

In other words, the number of permutations of a 9-person set is $9!$.


The argument in Example 7 applies to any set, leading to the conclusion that follows.

The number of permutations of an n element set is $n!$.

Sometimes we want to order only some of the elements in a set, rather than all of them.

Example 8

A teacher has 5 books and wants to display 3 of them side by side on her desk. How many arrangements of 3 books are possible?

Solution The teacher has 5 ways to fill the first space, 4 ways to fill the second space, and 3 ways to fill the third space. Because she wants only 3 books on the desk, there are only 3 spaces to fill, giving $5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 = 60$ possible arrangements. 

 **Checkpoint 4**

How many ways can a merchant with limited space display 4 fabric samples side by side from her collection of 8?

In Example 8, we say that the possible arrangements are *the permutations of 5 things taken 3 at a time*, and we denote the number of such permutations by ${}_5P_3$. In other words, ${}_5P_3 = 60$. More generally, an ordering of r elements from a set of n elements is called a **permutation of n things taken r at a time**, and the number of such permutations is denoted ${}_nP_r$.^{*} To see how to compute this number, look at the answer in Example 8, which can be expressed like this:


$${}_5P_3 = 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 = 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot \frac{2 \cdot 1}{2 \cdot 1} = \frac{5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1}{2 \cdot 1} = \frac{5!}{2!} = \frac{5!}{(5 - 3)!}$$

A similar analysis in the general case leads to this useful fact:

Permutations

If ${}_nP_r$ (where $r \leq n$) is the number of permutations of n elements taken r at a time, then

$${}_nP_r = \frac{n!}{(n - r)!}$$

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** The permutation function on a graphing calculator is in the same menu as the factorial key. For large values of n and r , the calculator display for ${}_nP_r$ may be an approximation.


To find ${}_nP_r$, we can either use the preceding rule or apply the multiplication principle directly, as the next example shows.

Example 9

Early in 2012, 7 candidates sought the Republican nomination for president at the Iowa caucus. In a poll, how many ways could voters rank their first, second, and third choices?

Solution This is the same as finding the number of permutations of 7 elements taken 3 at a time. Since there are 3 choices to be made, the multiplication principle gives ${}_7P_3 = 7 \cdot 6 \cdot 5 = 210$. Alternatively, by the formula for ${}_nP_r$,

$${}_7P_3 = \frac{7!}{(7 - 3)!} = \frac{7!}{4!} = \frac{7 \cdot 6 \cdot 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1}{4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1} = 7 \cdot 6 \cdot 5 = 210.$$

Figure 9.7 shows this result on a TI-84+ graphing calculator. 

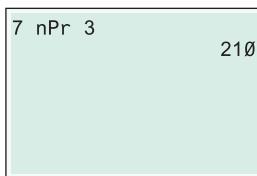


Figure 9.7

 **Checkpoint 5**

Find the number of permutations of

- (a) 5 things taken 2 at a time;
- (b) 9 things taken 3 at a time.

Find each of the following:

- (c) ${}_3P_1$;
- (d) ${}_7P_3$;
- (e) ${}_{12}P_2$.

Example 10

In a college admissions forum, 5 female and 4 male sophomore panelists discuss their college experiences with high school seniors.

- (a) In how many ways can the panelists be seated in a row of 9 chairs?

^{*}Another notation that is sometimes used is $P(n, r)$.

Solution Find ${}_9P_9$, the total number of ways to seat 9 panelists in 9 chairs:

$${}_9P_9 = \frac{9!}{(9-9)!} = \frac{9!}{0!} = \frac{9!}{1} = 9 \cdot 8 \cdot 7 \cdot 6 \cdot 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 = 362,880.$$

So, there are 362,880 ways to seat the 9 panelists.

(b) In how many ways can the panelists be seated if the males and females are to be alternated?

Solution Use the multiplication principle. In order to alternate males and females, a female must be seated in the first chair (since there are 5 females and only 4 males), any of the males next, and so on. Thus, there are 5 ways to fill the first seat, 4 ways to fill the second seat, 4 ways to fill the third seat (with any of the 4 remaining females), and so on, or

$$5 \cdot 4 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 \cdot 1 = 2880.$$

So, there are 2880 ways to seat the panelists.

(c) In how many ways can the panelists be seated if the males must sit together and the females sit together?

Solution Use the multiplication principle. We first must decide how to arrange the two groups (males and females). There are $2!$ ways of doing this. Next, there are $5!$ ways of arranging the females and $4!$ ways of arranging the men, for a total of

$$2! 5! 4! = 2 \cdot 120 \cdot 24 = 5760$$

ways. 

Checkpoint 6

A collection of 3 paintings by one artist and 2 by another is to be displayed. In how many ways can the paintings be shown

- in a row?
- if the works of the artists are to be alternated?
- if one painting by each artist is displayed?

Combinations

In Example 8, we found that there are 60 ways a teacher can arrange 3 of 5 different books on a desk. That is, there are 60 permutations of 5 things taken 3 at a time. Suppose now that the teacher does not wish to arrange the books on her desk, but rather wishes to choose, at random, any 3 of the 5 books to give to a book sale to raise money for her school. In how many ways can she do this?

At first glance, we might say 60 again, but that is incorrect. The number 60 counts all possible *arrangements* of 3 books chosen from 5. However, the following arrangements, for example, would all lead to the same set of 3 books being given to the book sale:

mystery–biography–textbook	biography–textbook–mystery
mystery–textbook–biography	textbook–biography–mystery
biography–mystery–textbook	textbook–mystery–biography

The foregoing list shows 6 different *arrangements* of 3 books, but only one *subset* of 3 books. A subset of items selected *without regard to order* is called a **combination**. The number of combinations of 5 things taken 3 at a time is written ${}_5C_3$. Since they are subsets, combinations are *not ordered*.

To evaluate ${}_5C_3$, start with the $5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3$ *permutations* of 5 things taken 3 at a time. Combinations are unordered; therefore, we find the number of combinations by dividing the number of permutations by the number of ways each group of 3 can be ordered—that is, by $3!$:

$${}_5C_3 = \frac{5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3}{3!} = \frac{5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3}{3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1} = 10.$$

There are 10 ways that the teacher can choose 3 books at random for the book sale.

Generalizing this discussion gives the formula for the number of combinations of n elements taken r at a time, written ${}_nC_r$.^{*} In general, a set of r elements can be ordered in $r!$ ways, so we divide ${}_nP_r$ by $r!$ to get ${}_nC_r$:

$$\begin{aligned} {}nC_r &= \frac{{}_nP_r}{r!} \\ &= {}nP_r \frac{1}{r!} \\ &= \frac{n!}{(n-r)!} \cdot \frac{1}{r!} \quad \text{Definition of } {}nP_r \\ &= \frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}. \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 7

Evaluate $\frac{{}_nP_r}{r!}$ for the given values.

- (a) $n = 6, r = 2$
- (b) $n = 8, r = 4$
- (c) $n = 7, r = 0$

This last form is the most useful for setting up the calculation. ✓₇

Combinations

The number of combinations of n elements taken r at a time, where $r \leq n$, is


$${}_nC_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}.$$

Example 11

From a group of 10 students, a committee is to be chosen to meet with the dean. How many different 3-person committees are possible?

Solution A committee is not ordered, so we compute

$${}_{10}C_3 = \frac{10!}{(10-3)!3!} = \frac{10!}{7!3!} = \frac{10 \cdot 9 \cdot 8 \cdot 7!}{7!3!} = \frac{10 \cdot 9 \cdot 8}{3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1} = 120.$$

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** The key for obtaining ${}_nC_r$ on a graphing calculator is located in the same menu as the key for obtaining ${}_nP_r$.

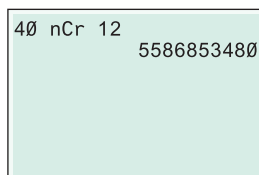


Figure 9.8

✓ Checkpoint 8

Use $\frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}$ to evaluate ${}_nC_r$.

- (a) ${}_6C_2$
- (b) ${}_8C_4$
- (c) ${}_7C_0$

Compare your answers with the answers to Checkpoint 7.

Example 12

In how many ways can a 12-person jury be chosen from a pool of 40 people?

Solution Since the order in which the jurors are chosen does not matter, we use combinations. The number of combinations of 40 things taken 12 at a time is

$${}_{40}C_{12} = \frac{40!}{(40-12)!12!} = \frac{40!}{28!12!}.$$

Using a calculator to compute this number (Figure 9.8), we see that there are 5,586,853,480 possible ways to choose a jury. ✓₈

Example 13

Three managers are to be selected from a group of 30 to work on a special project.

(a) In how many different ways can the managers be selected?

^{*}Another notation that is sometimes used in place of ${}_nC_r$ is $\binom{n}{r}$.

Solution Here, we wish to know the number of 3-element combinations that can be formed from a set of 30 elements. (We want combinations, not permutations, since order within the group of 3 does not matter.) So, we calculate

$${}_{30}C_3 = \frac{30!}{27! 3!} = 4060.$$

There are 4060 ways to select the project group.

(b) In how many ways can the group of 3 be selected if a certain manager must work on the project?

Solution Since 1 manager has already been selected for the project, the problem is reduced to selecting 2 more from the remaining 29 managers:

$${}_{29}C_2 = \frac{29!}{27! 2!} = 406.$$

In this case, the project group can be selected in 406 ways.

(c) In how many ways can a nonempty group of at most 3 managers be selected from these 30 managers?

Solution The group is to be nonempty; therefore, “at most 3” means “1 or 2 or 3.” Find the number of ways for each case:

Case	Number of Ways
1	${}_{30}C_1 = \frac{30!}{29! 1!} = \frac{30 \cdot 29!}{29! 1!} = 30$
2	${}_{30}C_2 = \frac{30!}{28! 2!} = \frac{30 \cdot 29 \cdot 28!}{28! \cdot 2 \cdot 1} = 435$
3	${}_{30}C_3 = \frac{30!}{27! 3!} = \frac{30 \cdot 29 \cdot 28 \cdot 27!}{27! \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1} = 4060$

The total number of ways to select at most 3 managers will be the sum

$$30 + 435 + 4060 = 4525. \quad \checkmark_9$$

✓ Checkpoint 9

Five orchids from a collection of 20 are to be selected for a flower show.

- In how many ways can this be done?
- In how many different ways can the group of 5 be selected if 2 particular orchids must be included?
- In how many ways can at least 1 and at most 5 orchids be selected? (*Hint:* Use a calculator.)

Choosing a Method

The formulas for permutations and combinations given in this section will be very useful in solving probability problems in later sections. Any difficulty in using these formulas usually comes from being unable to differentiate among them. Both permutations and combinations give the number of ways to choose r objects from a set of n objects. The differences between permutations and combinations are outlined in the following summary.

Permutations

Different orderings or arrangements of the r objects are different permutations.

$${}_n P_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$$

Clue words: arrangement, schedule, order
Order matters!

Combinations

Each choice or subset of r objects gives 1 combination. Order within the r objects does not matter.

$${}_n C_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)! r!}$$

Clue words: group, committee, set, sample
Order does not matter!

In the examples that follow, concentrate on recognizing which of the formulas should be applied.

Example 14

For each of the given problems, tell whether permutations or combinations should be used to solve the problem.

- (a) How many 4-digit numbers are possible if no digits are repeated?

Solution Since changing the order of the 4 digits results in a different number, we use permutations.


- (b) A sample of 3 lightbulbs is randomly selected from a batch of 15 bulbs. How many different samples are possible?

Solution The order in which the 3 lightbulbs are selected is not important. The sample is unchanged if the bulbs are rearranged, so combinations should be used.

- (c) In a basketball conference with 8 teams, how many games must be played so that each team plays every other team exactly once?

Solution The selection of 2 teams for a game is an *unordered* subset of 2 from the set of 8 teams. Use combinations again.

- (d) In how many ways can 4 patients be assigned to 6 hospital rooms so that each patient has a private room?

Solution The room assignments are an *ordered* selection of 4 rooms from the 6 rooms. Exchanging the rooms of any 2 patients within a selection of 4 rooms gives a different assignment, so permutations should be used. 

 **Checkpoint 10**

Solve the problems in Example 14.

Example 15

A manager must select 4 employees for promotion. Twelve employees are eligible.


- (a) In how many ways can the 4 employees be chosen?

Solution Because there is no reason to consider the order in which the 4 are selected, we use combinations:

$${}_{12}C_4 = \frac{12!}{4!8!} = 495.$$

- (b) In how many ways can 4 employees be chosen (from 12) to be placed in 4 different jobs?

Solution In this case, once a group of 4 is selected, its members can be assigned in many different ways (or arrangements) to the 4 jobs. Therefore, this problem requires permutations:

$${}_{12}P_4 = \frac{12!}{8!} = 11,880. \quad \text{$$

 **Checkpoint 11**

A postal worker has special-delivery mail for 7 customers.

- (a) In how many ways can he arrange his schedule to deliver to all 7?
- (b) In how many ways can he schedule deliveries if he can deliver to only 4 of the 7?

Example 16

Business Powerball is a lottery game played in 43 states (plus the District of Columbia and the U.S. Virgin Islands). For a \$2 ticket, a player selects five different numbers from 1 to 59 and one powerball number from 1 to 35 (which may be the same as one of the first five chosen). A match of all six numbers wins the jackpot. How many different selections are possible?

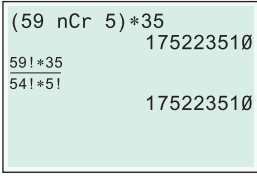


Figure 9.9

Checkpoint 12

Under earlier Powerball rules, you had to choose five different numbers from 1 to 53 and then choose one powerball number from 1 to 42. Under those rules, how many different selections were possible?

Checkpoint 13

Lacy wants to pack 4 of her 10 blouses and 2 of her 4 pairs of jeans for her trip to Europe. How many ways can she choose the blouses and jeans?

Solution The order in which the first five numbers are chosen does not matter. So we use combinations to find the number of combinations of 59 things taken 5 at a time—that is, ${}_{59}C_5$. There are 35 ways to choose one powerball number from 1 to 35. So, by the multiplication principle, the number of different selections is

$${}_{59}C_5 \cdot 35 = \frac{59!}{(59 - 5)! 5!} \cdot 35 = \frac{59! \cdot 35}{54! 5!} = 175,223,510,$$

as shown in two ways on a graphing calculator in Figure 9.9.

Example 17

A male student going on spring break at Daytona Beach has 8 tank tops and 12 pairs of shorts. He decides he will need 5 tank tops and 6 pairs of shorts for the trip. How many ways can he choose the tank tops and the shorts?

Solution We can break this problem into two parts: finding the number of ways to choose the tank tops, and finding the number of ways to choose the shorts. For the tank tops, the order is not important, so we use combinations to obtain

$${}_8C_5 = \frac{8!}{3! 5!} = 56.$$

Likewise, order is not important for the shorts, so we use combinations to obtain

$${}_{12}C_6 = \frac{12!}{6! 6!} = 924.$$

We now know there are 56 ways to choose the tank tops and 924 ways to choose the shorts. The total number of ways to choose the tank tops and shorts can be found using the multiplication principle to obtain $56 \cdot 924 = 51,744$.

As Examples 16 and 17 show, often both combinations and the multiplication principle must be used in the same problem.

Example 18

To illustrate the differences between permutations and combinations in another way, suppose 2 cans of soup are to be selected from 4 cans on a shelf: noodle (*N*), bean (*B*), mushroom (*M*), and tomato (*T*). As shown in Figure 9.10(a), there are 12 ways to select 2 cans from the 4 cans if the order matters (if noodle first and bean second is considered different from bean and then noodle, for example). However, if order is unimportant, then there are 6 ways to choose 2 cans of soup from the 4, as illustrated in Figure 9.10(b).

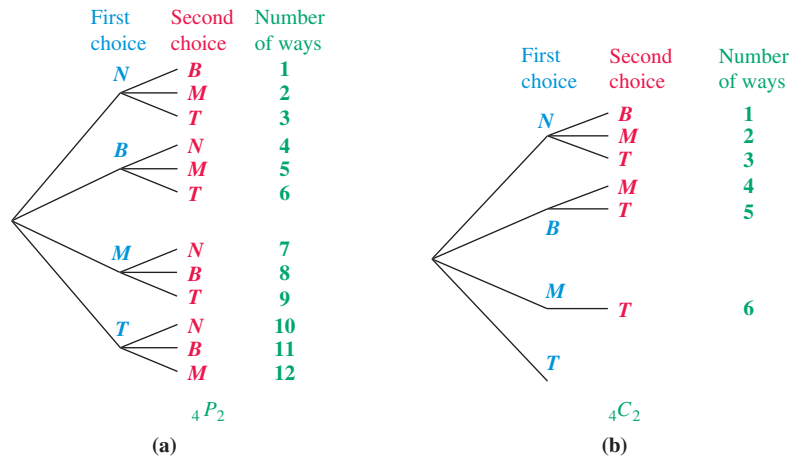


Figure 9.10

CAUTION It should be stressed that not all counting problems lend themselves to either permutations or combinations.

9.2 Exercises

Evaluate the given factorials, permutations, and combinations.

- | | | |
|---------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1. ${}_4P_2$ | 2. $3!$ | 3. ${}_8C_5$ |
| 4. $7!$ | 5. ${}_8P_1$ | 6. ${}_7C_2$ |
| 7. $4!$ | 8. ${}_4P_4$ | 9. ${}_9C_6$ |
| 10. ${}_8C_2$ | 11. ${}_{13}P_3$ | 12. ${}_9P_5$ |

Use a calculator to find values for Exercises 13–20.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 13. ${}_{25}P_5$ | 14. ${}_{40}P_5$ |
| 15. ${}_{14}P_5$ | 16. ${}_{17}P_8$ |
| 17. ${}_{18}C_5$ | 18. ${}_{32}C_9$ |
| 19. ${}_{28}C_{14}$ | 20. ${}_{35}C_{30}$ |

21. Some students find it puzzling that $0! = 1$, and they think that $0!$ should equal 0. If this were true, what would be the value of ${}_4P_4$ according to the permutations formula?
22. If you already knew the value of $8!$, how could you find the value of $9!$ quickly?

Use the multiplication principle to solve the given problems. (See Examples 1–6.)

23. **Social Science** An ancient Chinese philosophical work known as the *I Ching (Book of Changes)* is often used as an oracle from which people can seek and obtain advice. The philosophy describes the duality of the universe in terms of two primary forces: *yin* (passive, dark, receptive) and *yang* (active, light, creative). See the accompanying figure. The yin energy is represented by a broken line (–) and the yang by a solid line (—). These lines are written on top of one another in groups of three, known as *trigrams*. For example, the trigram \equiv is called *Tui*, the Joyous, and has the image of a lake.



- (a) How many trigrams are there altogether?
- (b) The trigrams are grouped together, one on top of the other, in pairs known as hexagrams. Each hexagram represents one aspect of the *I Ching* philosophy. How many hexagrams are there?
24. **Business** How many different heating–cooling units are possible if a home owner has 3 choices for the efficiency rating of the furnace, 3 options for the fan speed, and 6 options for the air condenser?
25. **Business** An auto manufacturer produces 6 models, each available in 8 different colors, with 4 different upholstery fabrics and 3 interior colors. How many varieties of the auto are available?

26. **Business** How many different 4-letter radio station call letters can be made
- (a) if the first letter must be K or W and no letter may be repeated?
- (b) if repeats are allowed (but the first letter still must be K or W)?
- (c) How many of the 4-letter call letters (starting with K or W) with no repeats end in R?
27. **Social Science** A Social Security number has 9 digits. How many Social Security numbers are possible? The U.S. population in 2012 was approximately 314 million. Was it possible for every U.S. resident to have a unique Social Security number? (Assume no restrictions.)
28. **Social Science** The United States Postal Service currently uses 5-digit zip codes in most areas. How many zip codes are possible if there are no restrictions on the digits used? How many would be possible if the first number could not be 0?
29. **Social Science** The Postal Service is encouraging the use of 9-digit zip codes in some areas, adding 4 digits after the usual 5-digit code. How many such zip codes are possible with no restrictions?
30. **Social Science** For many years, the state of California used 3 letters followed by 3 digits on its automobile license plates.
- (a) How many different license plates are possible with this arrangement?
- (b) When the state ran out of new numbers, the order was reversed to 3 digits followed by 3 letters. How many new license plate numbers were then possible?
- (c) Several years ago, the numbers described in part (b) were also used up. The state then issued plates with 1 letter followed by 3 digits and then 3 letters. How many new license plate numbers will this arrangement provide?
31. **Business** A recent trip to the drug store revealed 12 different kinds of Pantene[®] shampoo and 10 different kinds of Pantene[®] conditioner. How many ways can Sherri buy 1 Pantene[®] shampoo and 1 Pantene[®] conditioner?
32. **Business** A pharmaceutical salesperson has 6 doctors' offices to call on.
- (a) In how many ways can she arrange her schedule if she calls on all 6 offices?
- (b) In how many ways can she arrange her schedule if she decides to call on 4 of the 6 offices?
- Social Science** *The United States is rapidly running out of telephone numbers. In large cities, telephone companies have introduced new area codes as numbers are used up.*
33. (a) Until recently, all area codes had a 0 or a 1 as the middle digit and the first digit could not be 0 or 1. How many area codes were possible with this arrangement? How many telephone numbers does the current 7-digit sequence permit per area code? (The 3-digit sequence that follows the area code cannot start with 0 or 1. Assume that there are no other restrictions.)

(b) The actual number of area codes under the previous system was 152. Explain the discrepancy between this number and your answer to part (a).

34. The shortage of area codes under the previous system was avoided by removing the restriction on the second digit. How many area codes are available under this new system?
35. A problem with the plan in Exercise 34 was that the second digit in the area code had been used to tell phone company equipment that a long-distance call was being made. To avoid changing all equipment, an alternative plan proposed a 4-digit area code and restricted the first and second digits as before. How many area codes would this plan have provided?
36. Still another solution to the area-code problem is to increase the local dialing sequence to 8 digits instead of 7. How many additional numbers would this plan create? (Assume the same restrictions.)

 37. Define permutation in your own words.

Use permutations to solve each of the given problems. (See Examples 7–10.)

38. A baseball team has 15 players. How many 9-player batting orders are possible?
39. Tim is a huge fan of the latest album by country-music singer Kenny Chesney. If Tim has time to listen to only 5 of the 12 songs on the album, how many ways can he listen to the 5 songs?
40. **Business** From a cooler with 8 cans of different kinds of soda, 3 are selected for 3 people. In how many ways can this be done?
41. The Greek alphabet has 24 letters. How many ways can one name a fraternity using 3 Greek letters (with no repeats)?
42. **Finance** A customer speaks to his financial advisor about investment products. The advisor has 9 products available, but knows he will only have time to speak about 4. How many different ways can he give the details on 4 different investment products to the customer?
43. The student activity club at the college has 32 members. In how many different ways can the club select a president, a vice president, a treasurer, and a secretary?
44. A student can take only one class a semester, and she needs to take 4 more electives in any order. If there are 20 courses from which she can choose, how many ways can she take her 4 electives?
45. In a club with 17 members, how many ways can the club elect a president and a treasurer?

Use combinations to solve each of the given problems. (See Examples 11–13.)


46. **Business** Four items are to be randomly selected from the first 25 items on an assembly line in order to determine the defect rate. How many different samples of 4 items can be chosen?
47. **Social Science** A group of 4 students is to be selected from a group of 10 students to take part in a class in cell biology.
- (a) In how many ways can this be done?
- (b) In how many ways can the group that will *not* take part be chosen?

48. **Natural Science** From a group of 15 smokers and 21 non-smokers, a researcher wants to randomly select 7 smokers and 6 nonsmokers for a study. In how many ways can the study group be selected?

49. The college football team has 11 seniors. The team needs to elect a group of 4 senior co-captains. How many different 4-person groups of co-captains are possible?

50. The drama department holds auditions for a play with a cast of 5 roles. If 33 students audition, how many casts of 5 people are possible?

 51. Explain the difference between a permutation and a combination.

 52. Padlocks with digit dials are often referred to as “combination locks.” According to the mathematical definition of combination, is this an accurate description? Explain.

Exercises 53–70 are mixed problems that may require permutations, combinations, or the multiplication principle. (See Examples 14–18.)

53. Use a tree diagram to find the number of ways 2 letters can be chosen from the set $\{P, Q, R\}$ if order is important and

(a) if repetition is allowed;

(b) if no repeats are allowed.

(c) Find the number of combinations of 3 elements taken 2 at a time. Does this answer differ from that in part (a) or (b)?

54. Repeat Exercise 53, using the set $\{P, Q, R, S\}$ and 4 in place of 3 in part (c).

55. **Social Science** The U.S. Senate Foreign Relations Committee in 2013 had 10 Democrats and 8 Republicans. A delegation of 5 people is to be selected to visit Iraq.

(a) How many delegations are possible?

(b) How many delegations would have all Republicans?

(c) How many delegations would have 3 Democrats and 2 Republicans?

(d) How many delegations would have at least one Democrat?

56. **Natural Science** In an experiment on plant hardiness, a researcher gathers 6 wheat plants, 5 barley plants, and 3 rye plants. She wishes to select 4 plants at random.

(a) In how many ways can this be done?

(b) In how many ways can this be done if exactly 2 wheat plants must be included?

57. **Business** According to the Baskin-Robbins[®] Web site, there are 21 “classic flavors” of ice cream.

(a) How many different double-scoop cones can be made if order does not matter (for example, putting chocolate on top of vanilla is equivalent to putting vanilla on top of chocolate)?

(b) How many different triple-scoop cones can be made if order does matter?

58. **Finance** A financial advisor offers 8 mutual funds in the high-risk category, 7 in the moderate-risk category, and 10 in the low-risk category. An investor decides to invest in 3 high-risk funds, 4 moderate-risk funds, and 3 low-risk funds. How many ways can the investor do this?

59. A lottery game requires that you pick 6 different numbers from 1 to 99. If you pick all 6 winning numbers, you win \$4 million.
- How many ways are there to choose 6 numbers if order is not important?
 - How many ways are there to choose 6 numbers if order matters?
60. In Exercise 59, if you pick 5 of the 6 numbers correctly, you win \$5,000. In how many ways can you pick exactly 5 of the 6 winning numbers without regard to order?
61. The game of Set^{*} consists of a special deck of cards. Each card has on it either one, two, or three shapes. The shapes on each card are all the same color, either green, purple, or red. The shapes on each card are the same style, either solid, shaded, or outline. There are three possible shapes—squiggle, diamond, and oval—and only one type of shape appears on a card. The deck consists of all possible combinations of shape, color, style, and number. How many cards are in a deck?
62. **Health** Over the course of the previous nursing shift, 16 new patients were admitted onto a hospital ward. If a nurse begins her shift by caring for 6 of the new patients, how many possible ways could the 6 patients be selected from the 16 new arrivals?
63. **Natural Science** A biologist is attempting to classify 52,000 species of insects by assigning 3 initials to each species. Is it possible to classify all the species in this way? If not, how many initials should be used?
64. One play in a state lottery consists of choosing 6 numbers from 1 to 44. If your 6 numbers are drawn (in any order), you win the jackpot.
- How many possible ways are there to draw the 6 numbers?
 - If you get 2 plays for a dollar, how much would it cost to guarantee that one of your choices would be drawn?
 - Assuming that you work alone and can fill out a betting ticket (for 2 plays) every second, and assuming that the lotto drawing will take place 3 days from now, can you place enough bets to guarantee that 1 of your choices will be drawn?
65. A cooler contains 5 cans of Pepsi[®], 1 can of Diet Coke[®], and 3 cans of 7UP[®]; you pick 3 cans at random. How many samples are possible in which the soda cans picked are
- only Pepsi;
 - only Diet Coke;
 - only 7UP;
 - 2 Pepsi, 1 Diet Coke;
 - 2 Pepsi, 1 7UP;
 - 2 7UP, 1 Pepsi;
 - 2 Diet Coke, 1 7UP?
66. A class has 9 male students and 8 female students. How many ways can the class select a committee of four people to petition the teacher not to make the final exam cumulative if the committee has to have 2 males and 2 females?

67. **Health** A hospital wants to test the viability of a new medication for attention deficit disorder. It has 35 adults volunteer for the study, but can only enroll 20 in the study. How many ways can it choose the 20 volunteers to enroll in the study?
68. Suppose a pizza shop offers 4 choices of cheese and 9 toppings. If the order of the cheeses and toppings does not matter, how many different pizza selections are possible when choosing two cheeses and 2 toppings?
69. In the game of bingo, each card has 5 columns. Column 1 has spaces for 5 numbers, chosen from 1 to 15. Column 2 similarly has 5 numbers, chosen from 16 to 30. Column 3 has a free space in the middle, plus 4 numbers chosen from 31 to 45. The 5 numbers in columns 4 and 5 are chosen from 46 to 60 and from 61 to 75, respectively. The numbers in each card can be in any order. How many different bingo cards are there?
70. A television commercial for Little Caesars[®] pizza announced that, with the purchase of two pizzas, one could receive free any combination of up to five toppings on each pizza. The commercial shows a young child waiting in line at one of the company's stores who calculates that there are 1,048,576 possibilities for the toppings on the two pizzas. Verify the child's calculation. Use the fact that Little Caesars has 11 toppings to choose from. Assume that the order of the two pizzas matters; that is, if the first pizza has combination 1 and the second pizza has combination 2, that arrangement is different from combination 2 on the first pizza and combination 1 on the second.[†]

If the n objects in a permutations problem are not all distinguishable—that is, if there are n_1 of type 1, n_2 of type 2, and so on, for r different types—then the number of distinguishable permutations is

$$\frac{n!}{n_1! n_2! \cdots n_r!}$$

Example *In how many ways can you arrange the letters in the word Mississippi?*

This word contains 1 m, 4 i's, 4 s's, and 2 p's. To use the formula, let $n = 11$, $n_1 = 1$, $n_2 = 4$, $n_3 = 4$, and $n_4 = 2$ to get

$$\frac{11!}{1! 4! 4! 2!} = 34,650$$

arrangements. The letters in a word with 11 different letters can be arranged in $11! = 39,916,800$ ways.

71. Find the number of distinguishable permutations of the letters in each of the given words.
- martini
 - nunnery
 - grinding
72. A printer has 5 W's, 4 X's, 3 Y's, and 2 Z's. How many different "words" are possible that use all these letters? (A "word" does not have to have any meaning here.)

[†]Joseph F. Heiser, "Pascal and Gauss meet Little Caesars," *Mathematics Teacher*, 87 (September 1994): 389. In a letter to *Mathematics Teacher*, Heiser argued that the two combinations should be counted as the same, so the child has actually overcounted. In that case, there would be 524,288 possibilities.

^{*}SET is a registered trademark of Cannei, LLC.

73. Shirley is a shelf stocker at the local grocery store. She has 4 varieties of Stouffer's[®] frozen dinners, 3 varieties of Lean Cuisine[®] frozen dinners, and 5 varieties of Weight Watchers[®] frozen dinners. In how many distinguishable ways can she stock the shelves if
- the dinners can be arranged in any order?
 - dinners from the same company are considered alike and have to be shelved together?
 - dinners from the same company are considered alike, but do not have to be shelved together?
74. A child has a set of different-shaped plastic objects. There are 2 pyramids, 5 cubes, and 6 spheres. In how many ways can she arrange them in a row
- if they are all different colors?
 - if the same shapes must be grouped?
 - In how many distinguishable ways can they be arranged in a row if objects of the same shape are also the same color, but need not be grouped?

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- (a) 720 (b) 24
- (a) 24 (b) 720 (c) 1 (d) 30
- 30
- $8 \cdot 7 \cdot 6 \cdot 5 = 1680$
- (a) 20 (b) 504 (c) 3 (d) 210 (e) 132
- (a) 120 (b) 12 (c) 6
- (a) 15 (b) 70 (c) 1
- (a) 15 (b) 70 (c) 1
- (a) 15,504 (b) 816 (c) 21,699
- (a) 5040 (b) 455 (c) 28 (d) 360
- (a) 5040 (b) 840
- 120,526,770 13. 1260

9.3 Applications of Counting



Many of the probability problems involving *dependent* events that were solved with probability trees in Chapter 8 can also be solved by using counting principles—that is, permutations and combinations. Permutations and combinations are especially helpful when the number of choices is large. The use of counting rules to solve probability problems depends on the basic probability principle introduced in Section 8.3 and repeated here.

If event E is a subset of sample space S with equally likely outcomes then the probability that event E occurs, written $P(E)$, is

$$P(E) = \frac{n(E)}{n(S)}.$$

Example 1

From a potential jury pool with 1 Hispanic, 3 Caucasian, and 2 African-American members, 2 jurors are selected one at a time without replacement. Find the probability that 1 Caucasian and 1 African-American are selected.

Solution In Example 6 of Section 8.5, it was necessary to consider the order in which the jurors were selected. With combinations, it is not necessary: Simply count the number of ways in which 1 Caucasian and 1 African-American juror can be selected. The Caucasian can be selected in 3C_1 ways, and the African-American juror can be selected in 2C_1 ways. By the multiplication principle, both results can occur in

$${}^3C_1 \cdot {}^2C_1 = 3 \cdot 2 = 6 \text{ ways,}$$

giving the numerator of the probability fraction. For the denominator, 2 jurors are selected from a total of 6 candidates. This can occur in ${}^6C_2 = 15$ ways. The required probability is

$$P(1 \text{ Caucasian and 1 African American}) = \frac{{}^3C_1 \cdot {}^2C_1}{{}^6C_2} = \frac{3 \cdot 2}{15} = \frac{6}{15} = \frac{2}{5} = .40.$$

This result agrees with the answer found earlier.

Example 2

From a baseball team of 15 players, 4 are to be selected to present a list of grievances to the coach.

(a) In how many ways can this be done?

Solution Four players from a group of 15 can be selected in ${}_{15}C_4$ ways. (Use combinations, since the order in which the group of 4 is selected is unimportant.) So,

$${}_{15}C_4 = \frac{15!}{4! 11!} = \frac{15(14)(13)(12)}{4(3)(2)(1)} = 1365.$$

There are 1365 ways to choose 4 players from 15.

(b) One of the players is Michael Branson. Find the probability that Branson will be among the 4 selected.

Solution The probability that Branson will be selected is the number of ways the chosen group includes him, divided by the total number of ways the group of 4 can be chosen. If Branson must be one of the 4 selected, the problem reduces to finding the number of ways the additional 3 players can be chosen. There are 3 chosen from 14 players; this can be done in

$${}_{14}C_3 = \frac{14!}{3! 11!} = 364$$


ways. The number of ways 4 players can be selected from 15 is

$$n = {}_{15}C_4 = 1365.$$

The probability that Branson will be one of the 4 chosen is

$$P(\text{Branson is chosen}) = \frac{364}{1365} \approx .267.$$

(c) Find the probability that Branson will not be selected.

Solution The probability that he will not be chosen is $1 - .267 = .733$. 

 **Checkpoint 1**

The ski club has 8 women and 7 men. What is the probability that if the club elects 3 officers at random, all 3 of them will be women?

Example 3

Business A manufacturing company performs a quality-control analysis on the ceramic tile it produces. It produces the tile in batches of 24 pieces. In the quality-control analysis, the company tests 3 pieces of tile per batch. Suppose a batch of 24 tiles has 4 defective tiles.

(a) What is the probability that exactly 1 of the 3 tested tiles is defective?

Solution Let $P(1 \text{ defective})$ represent the probability of there being exactly 1 defective tile among the 3 tested tiles. To find this probability, we need to know how many ways we can select 3 tiles for testing. Since order does not matter, there are ${}_{24}C_3$ ways to choose 3 tiles:

$${}_{24}C_3 = \frac{24!}{21! 3!} = \frac{24 \cdot 23 \cdot 22}{3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1} = 2024.$$

There are ${}_4C_1$ ways of choosing 1 defective tile from the 4 in the batch. If we choose 1 defective tile, we must then choose 2 good tiles among the 20 good tiles in the batch. We can do this in ${}_{20}C_2$ ways. By the multiplication principle, there are

$${}_4C_1 \cdot {}_{20}C_2 = \frac{4!}{3! 1!} \cdot \frac{20!}{18! 2!} = 4 \cdot 190 = 760$$

ways to choose exactly 1 defective tile.

Thus,

$$P(1 \text{ defective}) = \frac{760}{2024} \approx .3755.$$

- (b) If at least one of the tiles in a batch is defective, the company will not ship the batch. What is the probability that the batch is not shipped?

Solution The batch will not be shipped if 1, 2, or 3 of the tiles sampled are defective. We already found the probability of there being exactly 1 defective tile in part (a). We now need to find $P(2 \text{ defective})$ and $P(3 \text{ defective})$. To find $P(2 \text{ defective})$, we need to count the number of ways to choose 2 from the 4 defective tiles in the batch and choose 1 from the 20 good tiles in the batch:

$${}_4C_2 \cdot {}_{20}C_1 = \frac{4!}{2!2!} \cdot \frac{20!}{19!1!} = 6 \cdot 20 = 120.$$

To find $P(3 \text{ defective})$, we need to count the number of ways to choose 3 from the 4 defective tiles in the batch and choose 0 from the 20 good tiles in the batch:

$${}_4C_3 \cdot {}_{20}C_0 = \frac{4!}{1!3!} \cdot \frac{20!}{20!0!} = 4 \cdot 1 = 4.$$

We now have

$$P(2 \text{ defective}) = \frac{120}{2024} \approx .0593 \text{ and } P(3 \text{ defective}) = \frac{4}{2024} \approx .0020.$$

Thus, the probability of rejecting the batch because 1, 2, or 3 tiles are defective is

$$P(1 \text{ defective}) + P(2 \text{ defective}) + P(3 \text{ defective}) \approx .3755 + .0593 + .0020 \\ = .4368.$$

- (c) Use the complement rule to find the probability the batch will be rejected.

Solution We reject the batch if at least 1 of the sampled tiles is defective. The opposite of at least 1 tile being defective is that none are defective. We can find the probability that none of the 3 sampled tiles is defective by choosing 0 from the 4 defective tiles and choosing 3 from the 20 good tiles:


$${}_4C_0 \cdot {}_{20}C_3 = 1 \cdot 1140 = 1140.$$

Therefore, the probability that none of the sampled tiles is defective is

$$P(0 \text{ defective}) = \frac{1140}{2024} \approx .5632.$$

Using the complement rule, we have

$$P(\text{at least 1 defective}) \approx 1 - .5632 = .4368,$$

the same answer as in part (b). Using the complement rule can often save time when multiple probabilities need to be calculated for problems involving “at least 1.” 

Checkpoint 2

A batch of 15 granite slabs is mined, and 4 have defects. If the manager spot-checks 3 slabs at random, what is the probability that at least 1 slab is defective?

Example 4

In a common form of 5-card draw poker, a hand of 5 cards is dealt to each player from a deck of 52 cards. (For a review of a standard deck, see Figure 8.20 in Section 8.3.) There is a total of

$${}_{52}C_5 = \frac{52!}{5!47!} = 2,598,960$$

such hands possible. Find the probability of being dealt each of the given hands.

- (a) Heart-flush hand (5 hearts)

Solution There are 13 hearts in a deck; there are

$${}_{13}C_5 = \frac{13!}{5!8!} = \frac{13(12)(11)(10)(9)}{5(4)(3)(2)(1)} = 1287$$

different hands containing only hearts. The probability of a heart flush is

$$P(\text{heart flush}) = \frac{1287}{2,598,960} \approx .000495.$$

(b) A flush of any suit (5 cards, all from 1 suit)

Solution There are 4 suits to a deck, so

$$P(\text{flush}) = 4 \cdot P(\text{heart flush}) = 4(.000495) \approx .00198.$$

(c) A full house of aces and eights (3 aces and 2 eights)

Solution There are ${}_4C_3$ ways to choose 3 aces from among the 4 in the deck and ${}_4C_2$ ways to choose 2 eights, so

$$P(3 \text{ aces, 2 eights}) = \frac{{}_4C_3 \cdot {}_4C_2}{{}_{52}C_5} \approx .00000923.$$

(d) Any full house (3 cards of one value, 2 of another)

Solution There are 13 values in a deck, so there are 13 choices for the first value mentioned, leaving 12 choices for the second value. (Order *is* important here, since a full house of aces and eights, for example, is not the same as a full house of eights and aces.)

$$P(\text{full house}) = \frac{13 \cdot {}_4C_3 \cdot 12 \cdot {}_4C_2}{{}_{52}C_5} \approx .00144. \quad \checkmark_3$$

✓ Checkpoint 3

Find the probability of being dealt a poker hand (5 cards) with 4 kings.

Example 5

A cooler contains 8 different kinds of soda, among which 3 cans are Pepsi[®], Coke[®], and Sprite[®]. What is the probability, when picking at random, of selecting the 3 cans in the particular order listed in the previous sentence?

Solution Use permutations to find the number of arrangements in the sample, because order matters:

$$n = {}_8P_3 = 8(7)(6) = 336.$$

Since each can is different, there is only 1 way to choose Pepsi, Coke, and Sprite in that order, so the probability is

$$\frac{1}{336} = .0030. \quad \checkmark_4$$

✓ Checkpoint 4

Martha, Leonard, Calvin, and Sheila will be handling the officer duties of president, vice president, treasurer, and secretary.

- (a) If the offices are assigned randomly, what is the probability that Calvin is the president?
- (b) If the offices are assigned randomly, what is the probability that Sheila is vice president, Martha is treasurer, Calvin is secretary, and Leonard is secretary?

Example 6

Suppose a group of 5 people is in a room. Find the probability that at least 2 of the people have the same birthday.

Solution “Same birthday” refers to the month and the day, not necessarily the same year. Also, ignore leap years, and assume that each day in the year is equally likely as a birthday. First find the probability that *no 2 people* among 5 people have the same birthday. There are 365 different birthdays possible for the first of the 5 people, 364 for the second (so that the people have different birthdays), 363 for the third, and so on. The number of ways the 5 people can have different birthdays is thus the number of permutations of 365 things (days) taken 5 at a time, or

$${}_{365}P_5 = 365 \cdot 364 \cdot 363 \cdot 362 \cdot 361.$$

The number of ways that the 5 people can have the same or different birthdays is

$$365 \cdot 365 \cdot 365 \cdot 365 \cdot 365 = (365)^5.$$

Finally, the *probability* that none of the 5 people have the same birthday is

$$\frac{{}_{365}P_5}{(365)^5} = \frac{365 \cdot 364 \cdot 363 \cdot 362 \cdot 361}{365 \cdot 365 \cdot 365 \cdot 365 \cdot 365} \approx .973.$$

The probability that at least 2 of the 5 people *do* have the same birthday is $1 - .973 = .027$.

Example 6 can be extended for more than 5 people. In general, the probability that no 2 people among n people have the same birthday is

$$\frac{{}_{365}P_n}{(365)^n}.$$

The probability that at least 2 of the n people *do* have the same birthday is

$$1 - \frac{{}_{365}P_n}{(365)^n} \quad \checkmark_5$$

✓ Checkpoint 5

Evaluate $1 - \frac{{}_{365}P_n}{(365)^n}$ for

- (a) $n = 3$;
- (b) $n = 6$.

The following table shows this probability for various values of n :

Number of People, n	Probability That at Least 2 Have the Same Birthday
5	.027
10	.117
15	.253
20	.411
22	.476
23	.507
25	.569
30	.706
35	.814
40	.891
50	.970

✓ Checkpoint 6

Set up (but do not calculate) the probability that at least 2 of the 9 members of the Supreme Court have the same birthday.

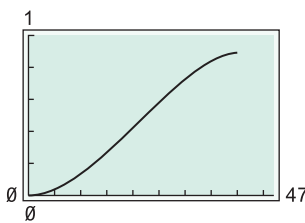


Figure 9.11

The probability that 2 people among 23 have the same birthday is .507, a little more than half. Many people are surprised at this result; somehow it seems that a larger number of people should be required. \checkmark_6

Using a graphing calculator, we can graph the probability formula in the previous example as a function of n , but the graphing calculator must be set to evaluate the function at integer points. Figure 9.11 was produced on a TI-84+ by letting $Y_1 = 1 - (365 \text{ nPr } X) / 365^X$ on the interval $0 \leq x \leq 47$. (This domain ensures integer values for x .) Notice that the graph does not extend past $x = 39$. This is because $P(365, n)$ and 365^n are too large for the calculator when $n \geq 40$.

9.3 Exercises

Business Suppose in Example 3 that the number of defective tiles in a batch of 24 is 5 rather than 4. If 3 tiles are sampled at random, the management would like to know the probability that

1. exactly 1 of the sampled tiles is defective;
2. the batch is rejected (that is, at least 1 sampled tile is defective).

Business A shipment of 8 computers contains 3 with defects. Find the probability that a sample of the given size, drawn from the 8, will not contain a defective computer. (See Example 3.)

3. 1
4. 2
5. 3
6. 5

A radio station runs a promotion at an auto show with a money box with 10 \$100 tickets, 12 \$50 tickets, and 20 \$25 tickets. The box contains an additional 200 “dummy” tickets with no value. Three tickets are randomly drawn. Find the given probabilities. (See Examples 1 and 2.)

7. All \$100 tickets
8. All \$50 tickets
9. Exactly two \$25 tickets and no other money winners
10. One ticket of each money amount
11. No tickets with money
12. At least one money ticket

Two cards are drawn at random from an ordinary deck of 52 cards. (See Example 4.)

13. How many 2-card hands are possible?

Find the probability that the 2-card hand in Exercise 13 contains the given cards.

14. 2 kings
15. No deuces (2's)
16. 2 face cards
17. Different suits
18. At least 1 black card
19. No more than 1 diamond

20. Discuss the relative merits of using probability trees versus combinations to solve probability problems. When would each approach be most appropriate?

21. Several examples in this section used the rule $P(E') = 1 - P(E)$. Explain the advantage (especially in Example 6) of using this rule.

Natural Science A shipment contains 8 igneous, 7 sedimentary, and 7 metamorphic rocks. If we select 5 rocks at random, find the probability that

22. all 5 are igneous;
23. exactly 3 are sedimentary;
24. only 1 is metamorphic.
25. In Exercise 59 in Section 9.2, we found the number of ways to pick 6 different numbers from 1 to 99 in a state lottery.
 - (a) Assuming that order is unimportant, what is the probability of picking all 6 numbers correctly to win the big prize?
 - (b) What is the probability if order matters?
26. In Exercise 25 (a), what is the probability of picking exactly 5 of the 6 numbers correctly?
27. Example 16 in Section 9.2 shows that the probability of winning the Powerball lottery is $1/175,223,510$. If Juanita and Michelle each play Powerball on one particular evening, what is the probability that both will select the winning numbers if they make their selections independently of each other?
28. **Business** A cell phone manufacturer randomly selects 5 phones from every batch of 50 produced. If at least one of the phones is found to be defective, then each phone in the batch is tested individually. Find the probability that the entire batch will need testing if the batch contains

- (a) 8 defective phones;
- (b) 2 defective phones.

29. **Social Science** Of the 15 members of President Barack Obama's first Cabinet, 4 were women. Suppose the president randomly selected 4 advisors from the cabinet for a meeting. Find the probability that the group of 4 would be composed as follows:

- (a) 3 woman and 1 man;
- (b) All men;
- (c) At least one woman.

30. **Business** A car dealership has 8 red, 9 silver, and 5 black cars on the lot. Ten cars are randomly chosen to be displayed in front of the dealership. Find the probability that

- (a) 4 are red and the rest are silver;
- (b) 5 are red and 5 are black;
- (c) exactly 8 are red.



31. **Health** Twenty subjects volunteer for a study of a new cold medicine. Ten of the volunteers are ages 20–39, 8 are ages 40–59, and 2 are age 60 or older. If we select 7 volunteers at random, find the probability that

- (a) all the volunteers selected are ages 20–39;
- (b) 5 of the volunteers are ages 20–39 and 2 are age 60 or older;
- (c) exactly 3 of the volunteers are ages 40–59.

For Exercises 32–34, refer to Example 6 in this section.

32. Set up the probability that at least 2 of the 43 men who have served as president of the United States have had the same birthday.*
33. Set up the probability that at least 2 of the 100 U.S. senators have the same birthday.
34. Set up the probability that at least 2 of the 50 U.S. governors have the same birthday.

One version of the New York State lottery game *Quick Draw* has players selecting 4 numbers at random from the numbers 1–80. The state picks 20 winning numbers. If the player's 4 numbers are selected by the state, the player wins \$55. (Data from: www.nylottery.org.)

35. What is the probability of winning?
36. If the state picks 3 of the player's numbers, the player wins \$5. What is the probability of winning \$5?

*In fact, James Polk and Warren Harding were both born on November 2. Although Barack Obama is the 44th president, the 22nd and 24th presidents were the same man: Grover Cleveland.

37. What is the probability of having none of your 4 numbers selected by the state?
38. During the 1988 college football season, the Big Eight Conference ended the season in a “perfect progression,” as shown in the following table:*

Won	Lost	Team
7	0	Nebraska (NU)
6	1	Oklahoma (OU)
5	2	Oklahoma State (OSU)
4	3	Colorado (CU)
3	4	Iowa State (ISU)
2	5	Missouri (MU)
1	6	Kansas (KU)
0	7	Kansas State (KSU)

Someone wondered what the probability of such an outcome might be.

- (a) Assuming no ties and assuming that each team had an equally likely probability of winning each game, find the probability of the perfect progression shown in the table.
- (b) Under the same assumptions, find a general expression for the probability of a perfect progression in an n -team league.

*From Richard Madsen, “On the Probability of a Perfect Progression.” *American Statistician* 45, no. 3 (August 1991): 214. Reprinted with permission from the American Statistician. Copyright 1991 by the American Statistical Association. All rights reserved.

39. Use a computer or a graphing calculator and the Monte Carlo method with $n = 50$ to estimate the probabilities of the given hands at poker. (See the directions for Exercises 39–43 on page 460.) Assume that aces are either high or low. Since each hand has 5 cards, you will need $50 \cdot 5 = 250$ random numbers to “look at” 50 hands. Compare these experimental results with the theoretical results.

- (a) A pair of aces
 (b) Any two cards of the same value
 (c) Three of a kind

40. Use a computer or a graphing calculator and the Monte Carlo method with $n = 20$ to estimate the probabilities of the given 13-card bridge hands. Since each hand has 13 cards, you will need $20 \cdot 13 = 260$ random numbers to “look at” 20 hands.

- (a) No aces
 (b) 2 kings and 2 aces
 (c) No cards of one particular suit—that is, only 3 suits represented

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. .123 2. About .637 3. .00001847
 4. (a) 1/4 (b) 1/24
 5. (a) .008 (b) .040
 6. $1 - {}_{365}P_9/365^9$

9.4 Binomial Probability

In Section 9.1, we learned about probability distributions where we listed each outcome and its associated probability. After learning in Sections 9.2 and 9.3 how to count the number of possible outcomes, we are now ready to understand a special probability distribution known as the *binomial distribution*. This distribution occurs when the same experiment is repeated many times and each repetition is independent of previous ones. One outcome is designated a success and any other outcome is considered a failure. For example, you might want to find the probability of rolling 8 twos in 12 rolls of a die (rolling two is a success; rolling anything else is a failure). The individual trials (rolling the die once) are called **Bernoulli trials**, or **Bernoulli processes**, after the Swiss mathematician Jakob Bernoulli (1654–1705).

If the probability of a success in a single trial is p , then the probability of failure is $1 - p$ (by the complement rule). When Bernoulli trials are repeated a fixed number of times, and each trial’s outcome is independent of the other trials’ outcomes, the resulting distribution of outcomes is called a **binomial distribution**, or a **binomial experiment**. A binomial experiment must satisfy the following conditions.

Binomial Experiment

1. The same experiment is repeated a fixed number of times.
2. There are only two possible outcomes: success and failure.
3. The probability of success for each trial is constant.
4. The repeated trials are independent.

The basic characteristics of binomial experiments are illustrated by a recent poll of small businesses (250 employees or fewer) conducted by the National Federation of Independent Businesses. The poll found that 36% of small businesses pay for the health insurance of all or almost all full-time employees. (Data from: www.nfib.com.) We use Y to denote the event that a small business does this, and N to denote the event that it does not. If we sample 5 small businesses at random and use .36 as the probability for Y , we will generate a binomial experiment, since all of the requirements are satisfied:

- The sampling is repeated a fixed number of times (5);
- there are only two outcomes of interest (Y or N);
- the probability of success is constant ($p = .36$);
- “at random” guarantees that the trials are independent.

To calculate the probability that all 5 randomly chosen businesses pay for health insurance, we use the product rule for independent events (Section 8.5) and $P(Y) = .36$ to obtain

$$P(YYYYY) = P(Y) \cdot P(Y) \cdot P(Y) \cdot P(Y) \cdot P(Y) = (.36)^5 \approx .006.$$

Determining the probability that 4 out of 5 businesses chose to pay for health insurance is slightly more complicated. The business that does not pay could be the first, second, third, fourth, or fifth business surveyed. So we have the following possible outcomes:

$NYYYY$
 $YNYYY$
 $YYNY Y$
 $YYYNY$
 $YYYYN$

So the total number of ways in which 4 successes (and 1 failure) can occur is 5, which is the number ${}_5C_4$. The probability of each of these 5 outcomes is

$$P(Y) \cdot P(Y) \cdot P(Y) \cdot P(Y) \cdot P(N) = (.36)^4(1 - .36)^1 = (.36)^4(.64).$$

Since the 5 outcomes where there are 4 Y s and one N represent disjoint events, we multiply by ${}_5C_4 = 5$:

$$P(4 \text{ Ys out of 5 trials}) = {}_5C_4(.36)^4(.64)^{5-4} = 5(.36)^4(.64)^1 \approx .054.$$

The probability of obtaining exactly 3 Y s and 2 N s can be computed in a similar way. The probability of any one way of achieving 3 Y s and 2 N s will be

$$(.36)^3(.64)^2.$$

Again, the desired outcome can occur in more than one way. Using combinations, we find that the number of ways in which 3 Y s and 2 N s can occur is ${}_5C_3 = 10$. So, we have

$$P(3 \text{ Ys out of 5 trials}) = {}_5C_3(.36)^3(.64)^{5-3} = 10(.36)^3(.64)^2 \approx .191. \quad \checkmark_1$$

With the probabilities just generated and the answers to Checkpoint 1, we can write the probability distribution for the number of small businesses that pay for health insurance for all or almost all their full-time employees when 5 businesses are selected at random:

x	0	1	2	3	4	5
$P(x)$	.107	.302	.340	.191	.054	.006

When the outcomes and their associated probabilities are written in this form, it is very easy to calculate answers to questions such as, What is the probability that 3 or more businesses pay for the health insurance of their full-time employees? We see from the table that

$$P(3 \text{ or more Ys}) = .191 + .054 + .006 = .251.$$

Checkpoint 1

Find the probability of obtaining

- (a) exactly 2 businesses that pay for health insurance;
- (b) exactly 1 business that pays for health insurance;
- (c) exactly no business that pays for health insurance.

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP**

On the TI-84+ calculator, use “binompdf(n, p, x)” in the DISTR menu to compute the probability of exactly x successes in n trials (where p is the probability of success in a single trial). Use “binomcdf(n, p, x)” to compute the probability of at most x successes in n trials. Figure 9.12 shows the probability of exactly 3 successes in 5 trials and the probability of at most 3 successes in 5 trials, with the probability of success set at .36 for each case.

```
binompdf(5, .36, 3)
.191102976
binomcdf(5, .36, 3)
.9402056704
```

Figure 9.12

 **Checkpoint 2**

According to the study in Example 1, 72% of employees were satisfied with how their work contributed to their organization’s business goals. If 4 employees are selected at random, find the probability that exactly the given number were satisfied with how their work contributed to their organization’s business goals:

- (a) 1 of the 4;
- (b) 3 of the 4.

Similarly, the probability of one or fewer businesses paying for health insurance is

$$P(1 \text{ or fewer } Ys) = .302 + .107 = .409.$$

The example illustrates the following fact.

Binomial Probability

If p is the probability of success in a single trial of a binomial experiment, the probability of x successes and $n - x$ failures in n independent repeated trials of the experiment is

$${}_n C_x p^x (1 - p)^{n-x}.$$

Example 1 Business According to a 2012 study conducted by the Society for Human Resource Management, 81% of U.S. employees reported overall job satisfaction. Suppose a random sample of 6 employees is chosen. Find the probability of the given scenarios. (Data from: www.shrm.org.)

- (a) Exactly 4 of the 6 employees have overall job satisfaction.

Solution We can think of the 6 employees as independent trials, and a success occurs if a worker has overall job satisfaction. This is a binomial experiment with $p = .81$, $n = 6$, and $x = 4$. By the binomial probability rule,

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{exactly } 4) &= {}_6 C_4 (.81)^4 (1 - .81)^{6-4} \\ &= 15 (.81)^4 (.19)^2 \\ &\approx .233. \end{aligned}$$

- (b) All 6 employees have overall job satisfaction.

Solution Let $x = 6$. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{exactly } 6) &= {}_6 C_6 (.81)^6 (1 - .81)^{6-6} \\ &= 1 (.81)^6 (.19)^0 \\ &\approx .282. \quad \checkmark_2 \end{aligned}$$

Example 2 Suppose a family has 3 children.

- (a) Find the probability distribution for the number of girls.

Solution Let $x =$ the number of girls in three births. According to the binomial probability rule, the probability of exactly one girl being born is

$$P(x = 1) = {}_3 C_1 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^1 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = 3 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^3 = \frac{3}{8}.$$

The other probabilities in this distribution are found similarly, as shown in the following table:

x	0	1	2	3
$P(x)$	${}_3 C_0 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^0 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^3 = \frac{1}{8}$	${}_3 C_1 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^1 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{3}{8}$	${}_3 C_2 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^1 = \frac{3}{8}$	${}_3 C_3 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^3 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^0 = \frac{1}{8}$

✓ Checkpoint 3

Find the probability of getting 2 fours in 8 tosses of a die.

(b) Find the expected number of girls in a 3-child family.

Solution For a binomial distribution, we can use the following method (which is presented here with a “plausibility argument,” but not a full proof): Because 50% of births are girls, it is reasonable to expect that 50% of a sample of children will be girls. Since 50% of 3 is $3(.50) = 1.5$, we conclude that the expected number of girls is 1.5. ✓₃

The expected value in Example 2(b) was the product of the number of births and the probability of a single birth being a girl—that is, the product of the number of trials and the probability of success in a single trial. The same conclusion holds in the general case.

Expected Value for a Binomial Distribution

When an experiment meets the four conditions of a binomial experiment with n fixed trials and constant probability of success p , the expected value is

$$E(x) = np.$$

Example 3

Business According to real estate data provider CoreLogic, as presented in the *Los Angeles Times* on March 13, 2013, approximately 21.5% of U.S. households with a mortgage owed more on their mortgage than the value of the home (commonly known as being underwater). If we select 15 U.S. households with a mortgage at random, find the following probabilities.

(a) The probability that exactly 5 of the households had a mortgage that was underwater.

Solution The experiment is repeated 15 times, with having an underwater mortgage being considered a success. The probability of success is .215. Since the selection is done at random, the trials are considered independent. Thus, we have a binomial experiment, and

$$P(x = 5) = {}_{15}C_5(.215)^5(.785)^{10} \approx .123.$$

(b) The probability that at most 3 households had a mortgage that was underwater.

Solution “At most 3” means 0, 1, 2, or 3 successes. We must find the probability for each case and then use the addition rule for disjoint events:

$$P(x = 0) = {}_{15}C_0(.215)^0(.785)^{15} \approx .026;$$

$$P(x = 1) = {}_{15}C_1(.215)^1(.785)^{14} \approx .109;$$

$$P(x = 2) = {}_{15}C_2(.215)^2(.785)^{13} \approx .209;$$

$$P(x = 3) = {}_{15}C_3(.215)^3(.785)^{12} \approx .248.$$

Thus,

$$P(\text{at most } 3) = .026 + .109 + .209 + .248 = .592.$$

(c) The expected number of households with mortgages that are underwater.

Solution Because this is a binomial experiment, we can use the formula $E(x) = np = 15(.215) = 3.225$. In repeated samples of 15 households, the average number of households with underwater mortgages is 3.225. ✓₄

✓ Checkpoint 4

In the article described in Example 3, the *Los Angeles Times* reported that 24% of households with mortgages in Los Angeles were underwater. If 10 households with mortgages are selected at random, find the probability that

- exactly 2 are underwater;
- at most 2 are underwater.
- What is the expected number of households that are underwater?

Example 4

Business According to the Small Business Administration, 1/3 (about .333) of new businesses fail within two years. If 10 new businesses are selected at random, what is the probability that at least one business will fail within two years?

Solution We can treat this problem as a binomial experiment with $n = 10$, $p = .333$, and x representing the number of business that fail within two years. “At least 1 of 10” means 1 or 2 or 3, etc., up to all 10. It is simpler here to find the probability that none of the 10 selected business failed [namely: $P(x = 0)$] and then find the probability that at least one of the businesses failed by calculating $1 - P(x = 0)$. The calculations are:

$$P(x = 0) = {}_{10}C_0(.333)^0(.667)^{10} \approx .017;$$

$$P(x \geq 1) = 1 - P(x = 0) \approx 1 - .017 = .983. \quad \checkmark_5$$

 **Checkpoint 5**

In Example 4, find the probability that

- (a) at least 2 businesses fail within 2 years;
- (b) at most 4 of the businesses fail within 2 years.
- (c) What is the expected value?

Example 5

If each member of a 9-person jury acts independently of the other members and makes the correct determination of guilt or innocence with probability .65, find the probability that the majority of the jurors will reach a correct verdict.*

Solution Since the jurors in this particular situation act independently, we can treat the problem as a binomial experiment. Thus, the probability that the majority of the jurors will reach the correct verdict is given by

$$P(\text{at least 5}) = {}_9C_5(.65)^5(.35)^4 + {}_9C_6(.65)^6(.35)^3 + {}_9C_7(.65)^7(.35)^2$$

$$+ {}_9C_8(.65)^8(.35)^1 + {}_9C_9(.65)^9$$

$$\approx .2194 + .2716 + .2162 + .1004 + .0207$$

$$= .8283.$$



TECHNOLOGY TIP Some spreadsheets provide binomial probabilities. In Microsoft Excel, for example, the command “=BINOMDIST (5, 9, .65, 0)” gives .21939, which is the probability for $x = 5$ in Example 5. Alternatively, the command “= BINOMDIST (4, 9, .65, 1)” gives .17172 as the probability that 4 or fewer jurors will make the correct decision. Subtract .17172 from 1 to get .82828 as the probability that the majority of the jurors will make the correct decision. This value agrees with the value found in Example 5.

*Bernard Grofman, “A Preliminary Model of Jury Decision Making as a Function of Jury Size, Effective Jury Decision Rule, and Mean Juror Judgmental Competence,” *Frontiers in Economics* (1979), pp. 98–110.

9.4 Exercises

In Exercises 1–39, see Examples 1–5.

Business According to a report from the U.S. Department of Commerce, approximately 70% of U.S. households subscribed to broadband Internet services in the year 2010. Find the probabilities that the given number of households selected at random from 10 households have broadband Internet.

- 1. Exactly 6
- 2. Exactly 5
- 3. None
- 4. All
- 5. At least 1
- 6. At most 4



Business The report cited for Exercises 1–6 reported that the state of Utah had the highest rate of broadband Internet subscriptions with 80% of households. Find the probabilities that the given

number of households selected at random from 8 households in Utah have broadband Internet.

- 7. Exactly 2
- 8. Exactly 1
- 9. None
- 10. All
- 11. At least 1
- 12. At most 2

A coin is tossed 5 times. Find the probability of getting

- 13. all heads;
- 14. exactly 3 heads;
- 15. no more than 3 heads;
- 16. at least 3 heads.

-  17. How do you identify a probability problem that involves a binomial experiment?
-  18. Why do combinations occur in the binomial probability formula?

Business According to the U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, 48% of employed U.S. college graduates are in jobs that require less than a 4-year college education. For Exercises 19–21, find the probability for the described number of graduates in jobs that require less than a 4-year college education if 15 employed college graduates were selected at random.

19. exactly 3;
20. none;
21. at most 2.
22. If 200 employed college graduates were selected at random, what would be the expected number of graduates in jobs that require less than a 4-year college education?

Business In a poll conducted by Gallup in early 2013, 54% of small-business owners indicated that health care costs are hurting the operating environment of their business “a lot.” If 9 small-business owners were selected at random, find the probability that the given number of business owners feel that health care costs were hurting the operating environment a lot.

23. all 9 businesses;
24. all but 1 business;
25. at most 3 businesses;
26. exactly 5 businesses.
27. If 500 small-business owners were selected at random, what is the expected number that indicate that health care costs were harming the operating environment of their business a lot?
28. In Exercise 27, what would the number be if 1250 small-business owners were selected?

Natural Science The probability that a birth will result in twins is .027. Assuming independence (perhaps not a valid assumption), what are the probabilities that, out of 100 births in a hospital, there will be the given numbers of sets of twins? (Data from: *The World Almanac and Book of Facts, 2001.*)

29. Exactly 2 sets of twins
30. At most 2 sets of twins


Social Science According to the Web site *Answers.com*, 10–13% of Americans are left handed. Assume that the percentage is 11%. If we select 9 people at random, find the probability that the number who are left handed is

31. exactly 2;
32. at least 2;
33. none;
34. at most 3.

35. In a class of 35 students, how many left-handed students should the instructor expect?

Business The 2012 General Social Survey indicated that 11% of U.S. residents have a great deal of confidence in banks and financial institutions. If 16 U.S. residents were chosen at random, find the probability that the number given had a great deal of confidence in banks and financial institutions. (Data from: www3.norc.org/gss+website.)

36. exactly 2;
37. at most 3;
38. at least 4.
39. If we select 300 U.S. residents at random, what is the expected number who have a great deal of confidence in banks and financial institutions?
40. If we select 800 U.S. residents at random, what is the expected number who have a great deal of confidence in banks and financial institutions?

 **Business** In the state of Texas, pickup trucks account for 23% of the state’s registered vehicles. If 100 registered vehicles are selected at random, determine the following. (Data from: www.wsj.com.)

41. What is the probability that 20 or less of the selected vehicles are pickup trucks?
42. What is the probability that 30 or more of the selected vehicles are pickup trucks?
43. What is the expected number of pickup trucks?
44. If 1000 registered vehicles are selected at random, what is the expected number of pickup trucks?

Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) About .340 (b) About .302 (c) About .107
2. (a) About .063 (b) About .418
3. About .2605
4. (a) About .288 (b) About .556 (c) 2.4
5. (a) About .896 (b) About .786 (c) 3.33

9.5 Markov Chains

In Section 8.5, we touched on **stochastic processes**—mathematical models that evolve over time in a probabilistic manner. In the current section, we study a special kind of stochastic process called a **Markov chain**, in which the outcome of an experiment depends only on the outcome of the previous experiment. In other words, the next state of the system depends only on the present state, not on preceding states. Such experiments are common enough in applications to make their study worthwhile. Markov chains are named after the Russian mathematician A. A. Markov (1856–1922), who started the theory of stochastic processes. To see how Markov chains work, we look at an example.

Example 1

Business A small town has only two dry cleaners: Johnson and NorthClean. Johnson’s manager hopes to increase the firm’s market share by an extensive advertising campaign. After the campaign, a market research firm finds that there is a probability of .8 that a Johnson customer will bring his next batch of dirty items to Johnson and a .35 chance that a NorthClean customer will switch to Johnson for his next batch. Assume that the probability that a customer comes to a given cleaner depends only on where the last load of clothes was taken. If there is a .8 chance that a Johnson customer will return to Johnson, then there must be a $1 - .8 = .2$ chance that the customer will switch to NorthClean. In the same way, there is a $1 - .35 = .65$ chance that a NorthClean customer will return to NorthClean. If an individual bringing a load to Johnson is said to be in state 1 and an individual bringing a load to NorthClean is said to be in state 2, then these probabilities of change from one cleaner to the other are as shown in the following table:

		Second Load	
		1	2
First Load	1	.8	.2
	2	.35	.65

The information from the table can be written in other forms. Figure 9.13 is a **transition diagram** that shows the two states and the probabilities of going from one to another.

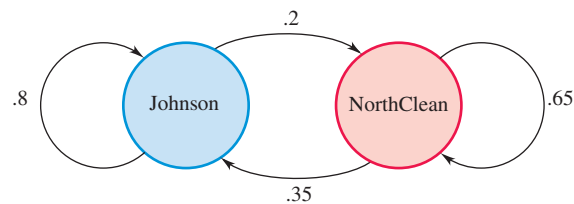


Figure 9.13

In a **transition matrix**, the states are indicated at the side and top, as follows:

		Second Load	
		Johnson	NorthClean
First Load	Johnson	.8	.2
	NorthClean	.35	.65

✓ Checkpoint 1

You are given the transition matrix

$$\begin{matrix} & \text{State} \\ & \begin{matrix} 1 & 2 \end{matrix} \\ \text{State} & \begin{matrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{matrix} \end{matrix} \begin{bmatrix} .3 & .7 \\ .1 & .9 \end{bmatrix}$$

- (a) What is the probability of changing from state 1 to state 2?
- (b) What does the number .1 represent?
- (c) Draw a transition diagram for this information.

A **transition matrix** has the following features:

1. It is square, since all possible states must be used both as rows and as columns.
2. All entries are between 0 and 1, inclusive, because all entries represent probabilities.
3. The sum of the entries in any row must be 1, because the numbers in the row give the probability of changing from the state at the left to one of the states indicated across the top.

Example 2

Business Suppose that when the new promotional campaign began, Johnson had 40% of the market and NorthClean had 60%. Use the probability tree in Figure 9.14 to find how these proportions would change after another week of advertising.

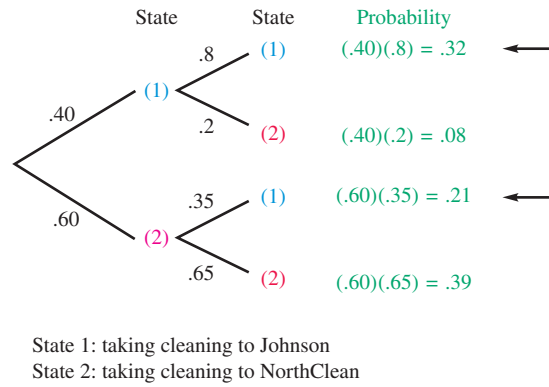


Figure 9.14

Solution Add the numbers indicated with arrows to find the proportion of people taking their cleaning to Johnson after one week:

$$.32 + .21 = .53$$

Similarly, the proportion taking their cleaning to NorthClean is


$$.08 + .39 = .47.$$

The initial distribution of 40% and 60% becomes 53% and 47%, respectively, after 1 week.


These distributions can be written as the *probability vectors*


$$[.40 \ .60] \text{ and } [.53 \ .47].$$

A **probability vector** is a one-row matrix, with nonnegative entries, in which the sum of the entries is equal to 1.

 The results from the probability tree of Figure 9.14 are exactly the same as the result of multiplying the initial probability vector by the transition matrix (multiplication of matrices was discussed in Section 6.4):

$$[.4 \ .6] \begin{bmatrix} .8 & .2 \\ .35 & .65 \end{bmatrix} = [.53 \ .47].$$

If v denotes the original probability vector $[.4 \ .6]$ and P denotes the transition matrix, then the market share vector after one week is $vP = [.53 \ .47]$. To find the market share vector after two weeks, multiply the vector $vP = [.53 \ .47]$ by P ; this amounts to finding vP^2 . 

Checkpoint 2 shows that after 2 weeks, the market share vector is $vP^2 = [.59 \ .41]$. To get the market share vector after three weeks, multiply this vector by P ; that is, find vP^3 . Do not use the rounded answer from Checkpoint 2. 

Continuing this process gives each cleaner's share of the market after additional weeks:

Weeks after Start	Johnson	NorthClean	
0	.4	.6	v
1	.53	.47	vP^1
2	.59	.41	vP^2
3	.61	.39	vP^3
4	.63	.37	vP^4
12	.64	.36	vP^{12}
13	.64	.36	vP^{13}

The results seem to approach the probability vector $[.64 \ .36]$.

✓ Checkpoint 2

Find the product

$$[.53 \ .47] \begin{bmatrix} .8 & .2 \\ .35 & .65 \end{bmatrix}.$$

✓ Checkpoint 3

Find each cleaner's market share after three weeks.

What happens if the initial probability vector is different from $[\.4 \ .6]$? Suppose $[\.75 \ .25]$ is used; then the same powers of the transition matrix as before give the following results:

Week after Start	Johnson	NorthClean	
0	.75	.25	v
1	.69	.31	vP^1
2	.66	.34	vP^2
3	.65	.35	vP^3
4	.64	.36	vP^4
5	.64	.36	vP^5
6	.64	.36	vP^6

The results again seem to be approaching the numbers in the probability vector $[\.64 \ .36]$, the same numbers approached with the initial probability vector $[\.4 \ .6]$. In either case, the long-range trend is for a market share of about 64% for Johnson and 36% for NorthClean. The example suggests that this long-range trend does not depend on the initial distribution of market shares. This means that if the initial market share for Johnson was less than 64%, the advertising campaign has paid off in terms of a greater long-range market share. If the initial share was more than 64%, the campaign did not pay off.

Regular Transition Matrices

One of the many applications of Markov chains is in finding long-range predictions. It is not possible to make long-range predictions with all transition matrices, but for a large set of transition matrices, long-range predictions *are* possible. Such predictions are always possible with **regular transition matrices**. A transition matrix is **regular** if some power of the matrix contains all positive entries. A Markov chain is a **regular Markov chain** if its transition matrix is regular.

Example 3

Decide whether the given transition matrices are regular.

$$(a) \ A = \begin{bmatrix} .3 & .1 & .6 \\ 0 & .2 & .8 \\ .3 & .7 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution Square A :

$$A^2 = \begin{bmatrix} .27 & .47 & .26 \\ .24 & .60 & .16 \\ .09 & .17 & .74 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Since all entries in A^2 are positive, matrix A is regular.

$$(b) \ B = \begin{bmatrix} .3 & 0 & .7 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution Find various powers of B :

$$B^2 = \begin{bmatrix} .09 & 0 & .91 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}; \quad B^3 = \begin{bmatrix} .027 & 0 & .973 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}; \quad B^4 = \begin{bmatrix} .0081 & 0 & .9919 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

✓ Checkpoint 4

Decide whether the given transition matrices are regular.

(a) $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

(b) $\begin{bmatrix} .45 & .55 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

Notice that all of the powers of B shown here have zeros in the same locations. Thus, further powers of B will still give the same zero entries, so that no power of matrix B contains all positive entries. For this reason, B is not regular. ✓₄

NOTE If a transition matrix P has some zero entries, and P^2 does as well, you may wonder how far you must compute P^n to be certain that the matrix is not regular. The answer is that if zeros occur in identical places in both P^n and P^{n+1} for any n , then they will appear in those places for all higher powers of P , so P is not regular.

Suppose that v is any probability vector. It can be shown that, for a regular Markov chain with a transition matrix P , there exists a single vector V that does not depend on v , such that $v \cdot P^n$ gets closer and closer to V as n gets larger and larger.

Equilibrium Vector of a Markov Chain

If a Markov chain with transition matrix P is regular, then there is a unique vector V such that, for any probability vector v and for large values of n ,

$$v \cdot P^n \approx V.$$

Vector V is called the equilibrium vector, or the fixed vector, of the Markov chain.

In the example with Johnson Cleaners, the equilibrium vector V is approximately $[\text{.64} \quad \text{.36}]$. Vector V can be determined by finding P^n for larger and larger values of n and then looking for a vector that the product $v \cdot P^n$ approaches. Such a strategy can be very tedious, however, and is prone to error. To find a better way, start with the fact that, for a large value of n ,

$$v \cdot P^n \approx V,$$

as mentioned in the preceding box. We can multiply both sides of this result by P , $v \cdot P^n \cdot P \approx V \cdot P$, so that

$$v \cdot P^n \cdot P = v \cdot P^{n+1} \approx VP.$$

Since $v \cdot P^n \approx V$ for large values of n , it is also true that $v \cdot P^{n+1} \approx V$ for large values of n . (The product $v \cdot P^n$ approaches V , so that $v \cdot P^{n+1}$ must also approach V .) Thus, $v \cdot P^{n+1} \approx V$ and $v \cdot P^{n+1} \approx VP$, which suggests that

$$VP = V.$$

If a Markov chain with transition matrix P is regular, then the equilibrium vector V satisfies

$$VP = V.$$

The equilibrium vector V can be found by solving a system of linear equations, as shown in the remaining examples.

Example 4 Find the long-range trend for the Markov chain in Examples 1 and 2, with transition matrix

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} .8 & .2 \\ .35 & .65 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Solution This matrix is regular, since all entries are positive. Let P represent this transition matrix and let V be the probability vector $[v_1 \ v_2]$. We want to find V such that

$$VP = V,$$

or

$$[v_1 \ v_2] \begin{bmatrix} .8 & .2 \\ .35 & .65 \end{bmatrix} = [v_1 \ v_2].$$

Multiply on the left to get

$$[.8v_1 + .35v_2 \ .2v_1 + .65v_2] = [v_1 \ v_2].$$

Set corresponding entries from the two matrices equal to obtain

$$.8v_1 + .35v_2 = v_1; \quad .2v_1 + .65v_2 = v_2.$$

Simplify each of these equations:

$$-.2v_1 + .35v_2 = 0; \quad .2v_1 - .35v_2 = 0.$$

These last two equations are really the same. (The equations in the system obtained from $VP = V$ are always dependent.) To find the values of v_1 and v_2 , recall that $V = [v_1 \ v_2]$ is a probability vector, so that

$$v_1 + v_2 = 1.$$

Find v_1 and v_2 by solving the system

$$\begin{aligned} -.2v_1 + .35v_2 &= 0 \\ v_1 + v_2 &= 1. \end{aligned}$$

We can rewrite the second equation as $v_1 = 1 - v_2$. Now substitute for v_1 in the first equation:

$$-.2(1 - v_2) + .35v_2 = 0.$$

Solving for v_2 yields

$$\begin{aligned} -.2 + .2v_2 + .35v_2 &= 0 \\ -.2 + .55v_2 &= 0 \\ .55v_2 &= .2 \\ v_2 &\approx .364. \end{aligned}$$

Since $v_2 \approx .364$ and $v_1 = 1 - v_2$, it follows that $v_1 \approx 1 - .364 = .636$, and the equilibrium vector is $[\.636 \ .364] \approx [\.64 \ .36]$.

Example 5

Business The probability that a complex assembly line works correctly depends on whether the line worked correctly the last time it was used. The various probabilities are as given in the following transition matrix:

	Works	
	Properly Now	Does Not
Worked Properly Before	.79	.21
Did Not	.68	.32

Find the long-range probability that the assembly line will work properly.

Solution Begin by finding the equilibrium vector $[v_1 \ v_2]$, where

$$[v_1 \ v_2] \begin{bmatrix} .79 & .21 \\ .68 & .32 \end{bmatrix} = [v_1 \ v_2].$$

Multiplying on the left and setting corresponding entries equal gives the equations

$$.79v_1 + .68v_2 = v_1 \quad \text{and} \quad .21v_1 + .32v_2 = v_2,$$

or

$$-.21v_1 + .68v_2 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad .21v_1 - .68v_2 = 0.$$

Substitute $v_1 = 1 - v_2$ in the first of these equations to get

$$-.21(1 - v_2) + .68v_2 = 0$$


$$-.21 + .21v_2 + .68v_2 = 0$$

$$-.21 + .89v_2 = 0$$

$$.89v_2 = .21$$

$$v_2 = \frac{.21}{.89} = \frac{21}{89},$$

and $v_1 = 1 - \frac{21}{89} = \frac{68}{89}$. The equilibrium vector is $[\frac{68}{89} \quad \frac{21}{89}]$. In the long run, the

company can expect the assembly line to run properly $\frac{68}{89} \approx 76\%$ of the time. 

Checkpoint 5

In Example 5, suppose the company modifies the line so that the transition matrix becomes

$$\begin{bmatrix} .85 & .15 \\ .75 & .25 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Find the long-range probability that the assembly line will work properly.



Example 6

Business

Data from the *Wall Street Journal* web site showed that the probability that a vehicle purchased in the United States in April 2013 was from General Motors (*GM*) was .185, from Ford (*F*) was .165, from Chrysler (*C*) was .122, and from other car manufacturers (*O*) was .528. The following transition matrix indicates market share changes from year to year.

$$\begin{matrix} & \begin{matrix} GM & F & C & O \end{matrix} \\ \begin{matrix} GM \\ F \\ C \\ O \end{matrix} & \begin{bmatrix} .85 & .04 & .05 & .06 \\ .02 & .91 & .03 & .04 \\ .01 & .01 & .95 & .03 \\ .03 & .02 & .06 & .89 \end{bmatrix} \end{matrix}$$

(a) Find the probability that a vehicle purchased in the next year was from Ford.

Solution To find the market share for each company in the next year we multiply the current market share vector $[\frac{.185 \quad .165 \quad .122 \quad .528}]$ by the transition matrix. We obtain

$$\begin{aligned} & [\frac{.185 \quad .165 \quad .122 \quad .528}] \begin{bmatrix} .85 & .04 & .05 & .06 \\ .02 & .91 & .03 & .04 \\ .01 & .01 & .95 & .03 \\ .03 & .02 & .06 & .89 \end{bmatrix} \\ & = [.17761 \quad .16933 \quad .16178 \quad .49128]. \end{aligned}$$

The second entry (.16933) indicates that the probability that the vehicle purchased in the next year was from Ford is .16933.

(b) If the trend continues, find the long-term probability that when a new vehicle is purchased, it is from Ford.

Solution We need to find the equilibrium vector $[v_1 \quad v_2 \quad v_3 \quad v_4]$ where

$$[v_1 \quad v_2 \quad v_3 \quad v_4] \begin{bmatrix} .85 & .04 & .05 & .06 \\ .02 & .91 & .03 & .04 \\ .01 & .01 & .95 & .03 \\ .03 & .02 & .06 & .89 \end{bmatrix} = [v_1 \quad v_2 \quad v_3 \quad v_4].$$

Multiplying on the left side and setting corresponding entries equal gives the equations:

$$\begin{aligned} .85v_1 + .02v_2 + .01v_3 + .03v_4 &= v_1 \\ .04v_1 + .91v_2 + .01v_3 + .02v_4 &= v_2 \\ .05v_1 + .03v_2 + .95v_3 + .06v_4 &= v_3 \\ .06v_1 + .04v_2 + .03v_3 + .89v_4 &= v_4. \end{aligned}$$

Simplifying these equations yields:

$$\begin{aligned} -.15v_1 + .02v_2 + .01v_3 + .03v_4 &= 0 \\ .04v_1 - .09v_2 + .01v_3 + .02v_4 &= 0 \\ .05v_1 + .03v_2 - .05v_3 + .06v_4 &= 0 \\ .06v_1 + .04v_2 + .03v_3 - .11v_4 &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Since V is a probability vector, the entries have to add up to 1, so we have

$$v_1 + v_2 + v_3 + v_4 = 1.$$

This gives five equations and four unknown values:

$$\begin{aligned} v_1 + v_2 + v_3 + v_4 &= 1 \\ -.15v_1 + .02v_2 + .01v_3 + .03v_4 &= 0 \\ .04v_1 - .09v_2 + .01v_3 + .02v_4 &= 0 \\ .05v_1 + .03v_2 - .05v_3 + .06v_4 &= 0 \\ .06v_1 + .04v_2 + .03v_3 - .11v_4 &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

The system can be solved with the Gauss-Jordan method set forth in Section 6.2. Start with the augmented matrix

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ -.15 & .02 & .01 & .03 & 0 \\ .04 & -.09 & .01 & .02 & 0 \\ .05 & .03 & -.05 & .06 & 0 \\ .06 & .04 & .03 & -.11 & 0 \end{array} \right].$$

The solution of this system is

$$V \approx [.103 \quad .156 \quad .494 \quad .248].$$

The second entry (.156) tells us the long-term probability that a purchased vehicle is from Ford. 

Checkpoint 6

Find the equilibrium vector for the transition matrix

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} .3 & .7 \\ .5 & .5 \end{bmatrix}.$$

In Example 4, we found that [.64 .36] was the equilibrium vector for the regular transition matrix

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} .8 & .2 \\ .35 & .65 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Observe what happens when you take powers of the matrix P (the displayed entries have been rounded for easy reading, but the full decimals were used in the calculations):

$$\begin{aligned} P^2 &= \begin{bmatrix} .71 & .29 \\ .51 & .49 \end{bmatrix}; & P^3 &= \begin{bmatrix} .67 & .33 \\ .58 & .42 \end{bmatrix}; & P^4 &= \begin{bmatrix} .65 & .35 \\ .61 & .39 \end{bmatrix}; \\ P^5 &= \begin{bmatrix} .64 & .36 \\ .62 & .38 \end{bmatrix}; & P^6 &= \begin{bmatrix} .64 & .36 \\ .63 & .37 \end{bmatrix}; & P^{10} &= \begin{bmatrix} .64 & .36 \\ .64 & .36 \end{bmatrix}. \end{aligned}$$

As these results suggest, higher and higher powers of the transition matrix P approach a matrix having all identical rows—rows that have as entries the entries of the equilibrium vector V .

If you have the technology to compute matrix powers easily (such as a graphing calculator), you can approximate the equilibrium vector by taking higher and higher powers of the transition matrix until all its rows are identical. Figure 9.15 shows part of this process for the transition matrix

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} .79 & .21 \\ .68 & .32 \end{bmatrix}$$

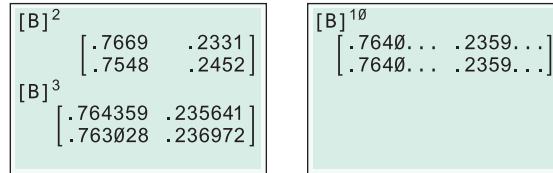


Figure 9.15

Figure 9.15 indicates that the equilibrium vector is approximately $[\text{.764} \quad \text{.236}]$, which is what was found algebraically in Example 5.

The results of this section can be summarized as follows.

Properties of Regular Markov Chains

Suppose a regular Markov chain has a transition matrix P .

1. As n gets larger and larger, the product $v \cdot P^n$ approaches a unique vector V for any initial probability vector v . Vector V is called the *equilibrium vector*, or *fixed vector*.
2. Vector V has the property that $VP = V$.
3. To find V , solve a system of equations obtained from the matrix equation $VP = V$ and from the fact that the sum of the entries of V is 1.
4. The powers P^n come closer and closer to a matrix whose rows are made up of the entries of the equilibrium vector V .

9.5 Exercises

Decide which of the given vectors could be a probability vector.

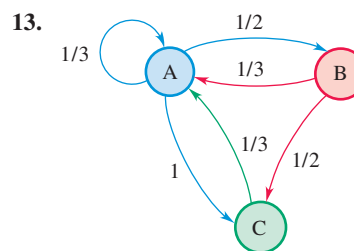
1. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4} & \frac{3}{4} \end{bmatrix}$
2. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{11}{16} & \frac{5}{16} \end{bmatrix}$
3. $[0 \quad 1]$
4. $[\text{.3} \quad \text{.3} \quad \text{.3}]$
5. $[\text{.3} \quad \text{-.1} \quad \text{.6}]$
6. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{2}{5} & \frac{3}{10} & \text{.3} \end{bmatrix}$

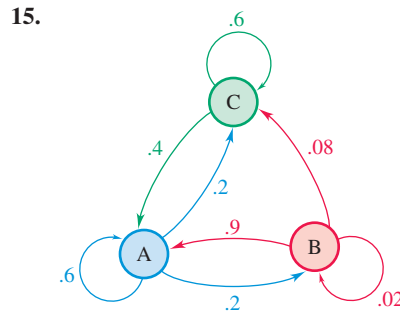
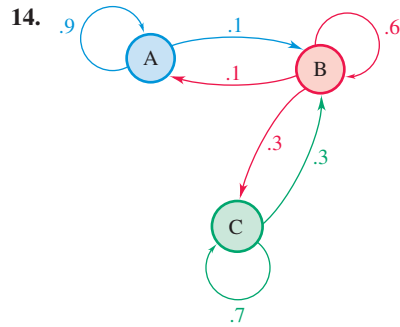
11. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{4} & 1 \\ \frac{2}{3} & 0 & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{3} & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$
12. $\begin{bmatrix} \text{.2} & \text{.3} & \text{.5} \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ \text{.1} & \text{.9} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

Decide which of the given matrices could be a transition matrix. Sketch a transition diagram for any transition matrices.

7. $\begin{bmatrix} \text{.7} & \text{.2} \\ \text{.5} & \text{.5} \end{bmatrix}$
8. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4} & \frac{3}{4} \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$
9. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{4}{9} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{5} & \frac{7}{10} \end{bmatrix}$
10. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \text{.3} & \text{.3} & \text{.3} \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 13–15, write any transition diagrams as transition matrices.





Decide whether the given transition matrices are regular. (See Example 3.)

16. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ .25 & .75 \end{bmatrix}$

17. $\begin{bmatrix} .2 & .8 \\ .9 & .1 \end{bmatrix}$

18. $\begin{bmatrix} .3 & .5 & .2 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ .5 & .1 & .4 \end{bmatrix}$

19. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ .3 & .3 & .4 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

20. $\begin{bmatrix} .25 & .40 & .30 & .05 \\ .18 & .23 & .59 & 0 \\ 0 & .15 & .36 & .49 \\ .28 & .32 & .24 & .16 \end{bmatrix}$

21. $\begin{bmatrix} .23 & .41 & 0 & .36 \\ 0 & .27 & .21 & .52 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ .48 & 0 & .39 & .13 \end{bmatrix}$

Find the equilibrium vector for each of the given transition matrices. (See Examples 4 and 5.)

22. $\begin{bmatrix} .3 & .7 \\ .4 & .6 \end{bmatrix}$

23. $\begin{bmatrix} .55 & .45 \\ .19 & .81 \end{bmatrix}$

24. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{5}{8} & \frac{3}{8} \\ \frac{7}{9} & \frac{2}{9} \end{bmatrix}$

25. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{8} & \frac{7}{8} \end{bmatrix}$

26. $\begin{bmatrix} .25 & .35 & .4 \\ .1 & .3 & .6 \\ .55 & .4 & .05 \end{bmatrix}$

27. $\begin{bmatrix} .16 & .28 & .56 \\ .43 & .12 & .45 \\ .86 & .05 & .09 \end{bmatrix}$

28. $\begin{bmatrix} .15 & .15 & .70 \\ .42 & .38 & .20 \\ .16 & .28 & .56 \end{bmatrix}$

29. $\begin{bmatrix} .44 & .31 & .25 \\ .80 & .11 & .09 \\ .26 & .31 & .43 \end{bmatrix}$

For each of the given transition matrices, use a graphing calculator or computer to find the first five powers of the matrix. Then find the probability that state 2 changes to state 4 after 5 repetitions of the experiment.

30. $\begin{bmatrix} .1 & .2 & .2 & .3 & .2 \\ .2 & .1 & .1 & .2 & .4 \\ .2 & .1 & .4 & .2 & .1 \\ .3 & .1 & .1 & .2 & .3 \\ .1 & .3 & .1 & .1 & .4 \end{bmatrix}$

31. $\begin{bmatrix} .3 & .2 & .3 & .1 & .1 \\ .4 & .2 & .1 & .2 & .1 \\ .1 & .3 & .2 & .2 & .2 \\ .2 & .1 & .3 & .2 & .2 \\ .1 & .1 & .4 & .2 & .2 \end{bmatrix}$

32. **Health** In a recent year, the percentage of patients at a doctor's office who received a flu shot was 26%. A campaign by the doctors and nurses was designed to increase the percentage of patients who obtain a flu shot. The doctors and nurses believed there was an 85% chance that someone who received a shot in year 1 would obtain a shot in year 2. They also believed that there was a 40% chance that a person who did not receive a shot in year 1 would receive a shot in year 2.

- (a) Give the transition matrix for this situation.
- (b) Find the percentages of patients in year 2 who received, and did not receive, a flu shot.
- (c) Find the long-range trend for the Markov chain representing receipt of flu shots at the doctor's office.

33. **Social Science** Six months prior to an election, a poll found that only 35% of state voters planned to vote for a casino gambling initiative. After a media blitz emphasizing the new jobs that are created as a result of casinos, a new poll found that among those who did not favor it previously, 30% now favored the initiative. Among those who favored the initiative initially, 90% still favored it.

- (a) Give the transition matrix for this situation.
- (b) Find the percentage who favored the gambling initiative after the media blitz.
- (c) Find the long-term percentage who favor the initiative if the trends and media blitz continue.

34. **Business** The probability that a complex assembly line works correctly depends on whether the line worked correctly the last time it was used. There is a .91 chance that the line will work correctly if it worked correctly the time before and a .68 chance that it will work correctly if it did *not* work correctly the time before. Set up a transition matrix with this information, and find the long-run probability that the line will work correctly. (See Example 5.)

35. **Business** Suppose something unplanned occurred to the assembly line of Exercise 34, so that the transition matrix becomes

	Works	Doesn't Work
Works	.81	.19
Doesn't Works	.77	.23

Find the new long-run probability that the line will work properly.

36. **Natural Science** In Exercise 60 of Section 8.4 (p. 461), we discussed the effect on flower color of cross-pollinating pea plants. As shown there, since the gene for red is dominant and the gene for white is recessive, 75% of the pea plants have red flowers and 25% have white flowers, because plants with 1 red and 1 white gene appear red. If a red-flowered plant is crossed with a red-flowered plant known to have 1 red and 1 white gene, then 75% of the offspring will be red and 25% will be white. Crossing a red-flowered plant that

has 1 red and 1 white gene with a white-flowered plant produces 50% red-flowered offspring and 50% white-flowered offspring.

- (a) Write a transition matrix using this information.
- (b) Write a probability vector for the initial distribution of colors.
- (c) Find the distribution of colors after 4 generations.
- (d) Find the long-range distribution of colors.

37. Natural Science Snapdragons with 1 red gene and 1 white gene produce pink-flowered offspring. If a red snapdragon is crossed with a pink snapdragon, the probabilities that the offspring will be red, pink, or white are $1/2$, $1/2$, and 0, respectively. If 2 pink snapdragons are crossed, the probabilities of red, pink, or white offspring are $1/4$, $1/2$, and $1/4$, respectively. For a cross between a white and a pink snapdragon, the corresponding probabilities are 0, $1/2$, and $1/2$. Set up a transition matrix and find the long-range prediction for the fraction of red, pink, and white snapdragons.

38. Natural Science Markov chains can be utilized in research into earthquakes. Researchers in Italy give the following example of a transition table in which the rows are magnitudes of an earthquake and the columns are magnitudes of the next earthquake in the sequence.*

	2.5	2.6	2.7	2.8
2.5	$3/7$	$1/7$	$2/7$	$1/7$
2.6	$1/2$	0	$1/4$	$1/4$
2.7	$1/3$	$1/3$	0	$1/3$
2.8	$1/4$	$1/2$	0	$1/4$

Thus, the probability of a 2.5-magnitude earthquake being followed by a 2.8-magnitude earthquake is $1/7$. If these trends were to persist, find the long-range trend for the probabilities of each magnitude for the subsequent earthquake.

39. Social Science An urban center finds that 60% of the population own a home (*O*), 39.5% are renters (*R*), and .5% are homeless (*H*). The study also finds the following transition probabilities per year.

	<i>O</i>	<i>R</i>	<i>H</i>
<i>O</i>	$.90$	$.10$	0
<i>R</i>	$.09$	$.909$	$.001$
<i>H</i>	0	$.34$	$.66$

- (a) Find the probability that residents own, rent, and are homeless after one year.
- (b) Find the long-range probabilities for the three categories.

40. Business An insurance company classifies its drivers into three groups: G_0 (no accidents), G_1 (one accident), and G_2 (more than one accident). The probability that a driver in G_0 will stay in G_0 after 1 year is .85, that he will become a G_1 is .10, and that he will become a G_2 is .05. A driver in G_1 cannot move to G_0 . (This insurance company has a long memory!) There is a .80 probability that a G_1 driver will stay in G_1 and a

.20 probability that he will become a G_2 . A driver in G_2 must stay in G_2 .

- (a) Write a transition matrix using this information.

Suppose that the company accepts 50,000 new policy-holders, all of whom are in group G_0 . Find the number in each group

- (b) after 1 year;
- (c) after 2 years;
- (d) after 3 years;
- (e) after 4 years.

- (f) Find the equilibrium vector here. Interpret your result.

41. Business The difficulty with the mathematical model of Exercise 40 is that no “grace period” is provided; there should be a certain probability of moving from G_1 or G_2 back to G_0 (say, after 4 years with no accidents). A new system with this feature might produce the following transition matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} .85 & .10 & .05 \\ .15 & .75 & .10 \\ .10 & .30 & .60 \end{bmatrix}$$

Suppose that when this new policy is adopted, the company has 50,000 policyholders in group G_0 . Find the number in each group

- (a) after 1 year;
- (b) after 2 years;
- (c) after 3 years.
- (d) Find the equilibrium vector here. Interpret your result.

42. Business Suppose research on three major cell phone companies revealed the following transition matrix for the probability that a person with one cell phone carrier switches to another.

		Will Switch to		
		Company A	Company B	Company C
Now has	Company A	$.91$	$.07$	$.02$
	Company B	$.03$	$.87$	$.10$
	Company C	$.14$	$.04$	$.82$

The current share of the market is $[.26, .36, .38]$ for Companies A, B, and C, respectively. Find the share of the market held by each company after

- (a) 1 year;
- (b) 2 years;
- (c) 3 years.
- (d) What is the long-range prediction?

43. Business Using data similar to those in Example 6, the probability that a new vehicle purchased was from Toyota (*T*) was .137, American Honda Motor Corporation (*H*) was .102, and all other manufacturers (*O*) was .761. Use the transition matrix below for market share changes from year to year.

$$\begin{matrix} & T & H & O \\ T & \begin{bmatrix} .95 & .02 & .03 \\ .04 & .92 & .04 \\ .09 & .07 & .84 \end{bmatrix} \end{matrix}$$

- (a) Find the probability that a new vehicle purchased in the next year was from Toyota.
- (b) Find the long-term probability that a new vehicle purchase was from Honda.

*Michele Lovallo, Vincenzo Lapenna, and Luciano Telesca, “Transition matrix analysis of earthquake magnitude sequences,” *Chaos, Solitons, and Fractals* 24 (2005): 33–43.

44. **Social Science** At one liberal arts college, students are classified as humanities majors, science majors, or undecided. There is a 23% chance that a humanities major will change to a science major from one year to the next and a 40% chance that a humanities major will change to undecided. A science major will change to humanities with probability .12 and to undecided with probability .38. An undecided student will switch to humanities or science with probabilities of .45 and .28, respectively. Find the long-range prediction for the fraction of students in each of these three majors.

45. **Business** In a queuing chain, we assume that people are queuing up to be served by, say, a bank teller. For simplicity, let us assume that once two people are in line, no one else can enter the line. Let us further assume that one person is served every minute, as long as someone is in line. Assume further that, in any minute, there is a probability of .4 that no one enters the line, a probability of .3 that exactly one person enters the line, and a probability of .3 that exactly two people enter the line, assuming that there is room. If there is not enough room for two people, then the probability that one person enters the line is .5. Let the state be given by the number of people in line.

- (a) Give the transition matrix for the number of people in line:

$$\begin{matrix} & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ \begin{matrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{matrix} & \begin{bmatrix} ? & ? & ? \\ ? & ? & ? \\ ? & ? & ? \end{bmatrix} \end{matrix}$$

- (b) Find the transition matrix for a 2-minute period.
 (c) Use your result from part (b) to find the probability that a queue with no one in line has two people in line 2 minutes later.

Use a graphing calculator or computer for Exercises 46 and 47.

46. **Business** A company with a new training program classified each employee in one of four states: s_1 , never in the program; s_2 ,

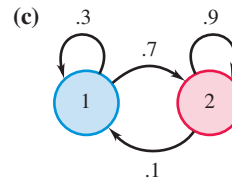
currently in the program; s_3 , discharged; s_4 , completed the program. The transition matrix for this company is as follows.

$$\begin{matrix} & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & s_4 \\ \begin{matrix} s_1 \\ s_2 \\ s_3 \\ s_4 \end{matrix} & \begin{bmatrix} .4 & .2 & .05 & .35 \\ 0 & .45 & .05 & .5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{matrix}$$

- (a) What percentage of employees who had never been in the program (state s_1) completed the program (state s_4) after the program had been offered five times?
 (b) If the initial percentage of employees in each state was $[\.5 \ .5 \ 0 \ 0]$, find the corresponding percentages after the program had been offered four times.
47. **Business** Find the long-range prediction for the percentage of employees in each state for the company training program in Exercise 46.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) .7
 (b) The probability of changing from state 2 to state 1



2. $[\.59 \ .41]$ (rounded)
 3. $[\.61 \ .39]$ (rounded)
 4. (a) No (b) Yes
 5. $5/6 \approx 83\%$
 6. $[5/12 \ 7/12]$

9.6 Decision Making

John F. Kennedy once remarked that he had assumed that, as president, it would be difficult to choose between distinct, opposite alternatives when a decision needed to be made. Actually, he found that such decisions were easy to make; the hard decisions came when he was faced with choices that were not as clear cut. Most decisions fall into this last category—decisions that must be made under conditions of uncertainty. In Section 9.1, we saw how to use expected values to help make a decision. Those ideas are extended in this section, where we consider decision making in the face of uncertainty. We begin with an example.

Example 1

Business Freezing temperatures are endangering the orange crop in central California. A farmer can protect his crop by burning smudge pots; the heat from the pots keeps the oranges from freezing. However, burning the pots is expensive, costing \$20,000. The farmer knows that if he burns smudge pots, he will be able to sell his crop for a net profit (after the costs of the pots are deducted) of \$50,000, provided that the

freeze does develop and wipes out other orange crops in California. If he does nothing, he will either lose the \$10,000 he has already invested in the crop if it does freeze or make a profit of \$46,000 if it does not freeze. (If it does not freeze, there will be a large supply of oranges, and thus his profit will be lower than if there were a small supply.) What should the farmer do?

Solution He should begin by carefully defining the problem. First, he must decide on the **states of nature**—the possible alternatives over which he has no control. Here, there are two: freezing temperatures and no freezing temperatures. Next, the farmer should list the things he can control—his actions or **strategies**. He has two possible strategies: to use smudge pots or not. The consequences of each action under each state of nature, called **payoffs**, are summarized in a **payoff matrix**, as follows, where the payoffs in this case are the profits for each possible combination of events:

		<i>States of Nature</i>	
		Freeze	No Freeze
<i>Strategies of Farmer</i>	Use Smudge Pots	\$50,000	\$26,000
	Do Not Use Pots	−\$10,000	\$46,000

To get the \$26,000 entry in the payoff matrix, use the profit if there is no freeze, namely, \$46,000, and subtract the \$20,000 cost of using the pots. ✓₁

Once the farmer makes the payoff matrix, what then? The farmer might be an optimist (some might call him a gambler); in this case, he might assume that the best will happen and go for the biggest number of the matrix (\$50,000). For that profit, he must adopt the strategy “use smudge pots.”

On the other hand, if the farmer is a pessimist, he would want to minimize the worst thing that could happen. If he uses smudge pots, the worst thing that could happen to him would be a profit of \$26,000, which will result if there is no freeze. If he does not use smudge pots, he might face a loss of \$10,000. To minimize the worst, he once again should adopt the strategy “use smudge pots.”

Suppose the farmer decides that he is neither an optimist nor a pessimist, but would like further information before choosing a strategy. For example, he might call the weather forecaster and ask for the probability of a freeze. Suppose the forecaster says that this probability is only .2. What should the farmer do? He should recall the discussion of expected value and work out the expected profit for each of his two possible strategies. If the probability of a freeze is .2, then the probability that there is no freeze is .8. This information leads to the following expected values:

$$\text{If smudge pots are used: } 50,000(.2) + 26,000(.8) = 30,800;$$

$$\text{If no smudge pots are used: } -10,000(.2) + 46,000(.8) = 34,800.$$

Here, the maximum expected profit, \$34,800, is obtained if smudge pots are not used. ✓₂

As the example shows, the farmer’s beliefs about the probabilities of a freeze affect his choice of strategies.

✓ Checkpoint 1

Explain how each of the given payoffs in the matrix were obtained.

- (a) −\$10,000
- (b) \$50,000

✓ Checkpoint 2

What should the farmer do if the probability of a freeze is .6? What is his expected profit?

Example 2

Business An owner of several greeting-card stores must decide in July about the type of displays to emphasize for Sweetest Day in October. He has three possible choices: emphasize chocolates, emphasize collectible gifts, or emphasize gifts that can be engraved. His success is dependent on the state of the economy in October. If the economy is strong, he will do well with the collectible gifts, while in a weak economy, the chocolates do very well. In a mixed economy, the gifts that can be engraved will do well. He first prepares a payoff matrix for all

three possibilities, where the numbers in the matrix represent his profits in thousands of dollars:

		<i>States of Nature</i>		
		Weak Economy	Mixed Economy	Strong Economy
<i>Strategies</i>	Chocolates	85	30	75
	Collectibles	45	45	110
	Engraved	60	95	85

(a) What would an optimist do?

Solution If the owner is an optimist, he should aim for the biggest number on the matrix, 110 (representing \$110,000 in profit). His strategy in this case would be to display collectibles.

(b) How would a pessimist react?

Solution A pessimist wants to find the best of the worst things that can happen. If he displays collectibles, the worst that can happen is a profit of \$45,000. For displaying engravable items, the worst is a profit of \$60,000, and for displaying chocolates, the worst is a profit of \$30,000. His strategy here is to use the engravable items.

(c) Suppose the owner reads in a business magazine that leading experts believe that there is a 50% chance of a weak economy in October, a 20% chance of a mixed economy, and a 30% chance of a strong economy. How might he use this information?

Solution The owner can now find his expected profit for each possible strategy.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Chocolates} & 85(.5) + 30(.20) + 75(.30) = 71; \\
 \text{Collectibles} & 45(.5) + 45(.20) + 110(.30) = 64.5; \\
 \text{Engraved} & 60(.5) + 95(.20) + 85(.30) = 74.5.
 \end{aligned}$$

Here, the best strategy is to display gifts that can be engraved; the expected profit is 74.5, or \$74,500. 3

✓ Checkpoint 3

Suppose the owner reads another article, which gives the following predictions: a 35% chance of a weak economy, a 25% chance of an in-between economy, and a 40% chance of a strong economy. What is the best strategy now? What is the expected profit?

9.6 Exercises

1. **Business** A developer has \$100,000 to invest in land. He has a choice of two parcels (at the same price): one on the highway and one on the coast. With both parcels, his ultimate profit depends on whether he faces light opposition from environmental groups or heavy opposition. He estimates that the payoff matrix is as follows (the numbers represent his profit):

	<i>Opposition</i>	
	Light	Heavy
Highway	\$70,000	\$30,000
Coast	\$150,000	-\$40,000

What should the developer do if he is

- (a) an optimist?
- (b) a pessimist?
- (c) Suppose the probability of heavy opposition is .8. What is his best strategy? What is the expected profit?
- (d) What is the best strategy if the probability of heavy opposition is only .4?

2. **Business** Mount Union College has sold out all tickets for a jazz concert to be held in the stadium. If it rains, the show will have to be moved to the gym, which has a much smaller seating capacity. The dean must decide in advance whether to set up the seats and the stage in the gym, in the stadium, or in both, just in case. The following payoff matrix shows the net profit in each case:

	<i>States of Nature</i>	
	Rain	No Rain
Set up in Stadium	-\$1550	\$1500
Set up in Gym	\$1000	\$1000
Set up in Both	\$750	\$1400

What strategy should the dean choose if she is

- (a) an optimist?
- (b) a pessimist?
- (c) If the weather forecaster predicts rain with a probability of .6, what strategy should she choose to maximize the expected profit? What is the maximum expected profit?

3. **Business** An analyst must decide what fraction of the automobile tires produced at a particular manufacturing plant are defective. She has already decided that there are three possibilities for the fraction of defective items: .02, .09, and .16. She may recommend two courses of action: upgrade the equipment at the plant or make no upgrades. The following payoff matrix represents the *costs* to the company in each case, in hundreds of dollars:

		Defectives		
		.02	.09	.16
Strategies	Upgrade	130	130	130
	No Upgrade	28	180	450

What strategy should the analyst recommend if she is

- (a) an optimist?
 (b) a pessimist?
 (c) Suppose the analyst is able to estimate probabilities for the three states of nature as follows:

Fraction of Defectives	Probability
.02	.70
.09	.20
.16	.10

Which strategy should she recommend? Find the expected cost to the company if that strategy is chosen.

4. **Business** The research department of the Allied Manufacturing Company has developed a new process that it believes will result in an improved product. Management must decide whether to go ahead and market the new product or not. The new product may be better than the old one, or it may not be better. If the new product is better and the company decides to market it, sales should increase by \$50,000. If it is not better and the old product is replaced with the new product on the market, the company will lose \$25,000 to competitors. If management decides not to market the new product, the company will lose \$40,000 if it is better and will lose research costs of \$10,000 if it is not.

- (a) Prepare a payoff matrix.
 (b) If management believes that the probability that the new product is better is .4, find the expected profits under each strategy and determine the best action.
5. **Business** A businessman is planning to ship a used machine to his plant in Nigeria. He would like to use it there for the next 4 years. He must decide whether to overhaul the machine before sending it. The cost of overhaul is \$2600. If the machine fails when it is in operation in Nigeria, it will cost him \$6000 in lost production and repairs. He estimates that the probability that it will fail is .3 if he does not overhaul it and .1 if he does overhaul it. Neglect the possibility that the machine might fail more than once in the 4 years.

- (a) Prepare a payoff matrix.
 (b) What should the businessman do to minimize his expected costs?
6. **Business** A contractor prepares to bid on a job. If all goes well, his bid should be \$25,000, which will cover his costs plus his usual profit margin of \$4000. However, if a threatened labor

strike actually occurs, his bid should be \$35,000 to give him the same profit. If there is a strike and he bids \$25,000, he will lose \$5500. If his bid is too high, he may lose the job entirely, while if it is too low, he may lose money.

- (a) Prepare a payoff matrix.
 (b) If the contractor believes that the probability of a strike is .6, how much should he bid?
7. **Business** An artist travels to craft fairs all summer long. She must book her booth at a June craft show six months in advance and decide if she wishes to rent a tent for an extra \$500 in case it rains on the day of the show. If it does not rain, she believes she will earn \$3000 at the show. If it rains, she believes she will earn only \$2000, provided she has a tent. If she does not have a tent and it does rain, she will have to pack up and go home and will thus earn \$0. Weather records over the last 10 years indicate that there is a .4 probability of rain in June.
- (a) Prepare a profit matrix.
 (b) What should the artist do to maximize her expected revenue?
8. **Business** An investor has \$50,000 to invest in stocks. She has two possible strategies: buy conservative blue-chip stocks or buy highly speculative stocks. There are two states of nature: the market goes up and the market goes down. The following payoff matrix shows the net amounts she will have under the various circumstances.

		Market Up	Market Down
Buy Blue Chip	\$60,000	\$46,000	
	\$80,000	\$32,000	

What should the investor do if she is

- (a) an optimist?
 (b) a pessimist?
 (c) Suppose there is a .6 probability of the market going up. What is the best strategy? What is the expected profit?
 (d) What is the best strategy if the probability of a market rise is .2?

Sometimes the numbers (or payoffs) in a payoff matrix do not represent money (profits or costs, for example). Instead, they may represent utility. A utility is a number that measures the satisfaction (or lack of it) that results from a certain action. Utility numbers must be assigned by each individual, depending on how he or she feels about a situation. For example, one person might assign a utility of +20 for a week's vacation in San Francisco, with -6 being assigned if the vacation were moved to Sacramento. Work the problems that follow in the same way as the preceding ones.

9. **Social Science** A politician must plan her reelection strategy. She can emphasize jobs or she can emphasize the environment. The voters can be concerned about jobs or about the environment. Following is a payoff matrix showing the utility of each possible outcome.

		Voters	
		Jobs	Environment
Candidate	Jobs	+40	-10
	Environment	-12	+30

The political analysts feel that there is a .35 chance that the voters will emphasize jobs. What strategy should the candidate adopt? What is its expected utility?

10. In an accounting class, the instructor permits the students to bring a calculator or a reference book (but not both) to an examination. The examination itself can emphasize either numbers or definitions. In trying to decide which aid to take to an examination, a student first decides on the utilities shown in the following payoff matrix:

		<i>Exam Emphasizes</i>	
		Numbers	Definition
<i>Student Chooses</i>	Calculator	+50	0
	Book	+15	+35

- (a) What strategy should the student choose if the probability that the examination will emphasize numbers is .6? What is the expected utility in this case?
- (b) Suppose the probability that the examination emphasizes numbers is .4. What strategy should the student choose?

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- (a) If the crop freezes and smudge pots are not used, the farmer's profit is $-\$10,000$ for labor costs.
(b) If the crop freezes and smudge pots are used, the farmer makes a profit of $\$50,000$.
- Use smudge pots; $\$40,400$
- Engravable; $\$78,750$

CHAPTER 9 Summary and Review

Key Terms and Symbols

9.1 random variable	permutations	state	equilibrium vector (fixed vector)
probability distribution	combinations	transition diagram	
histogram	9.4 Bernoulli trials (processes)	transition matrix	9.6 states of nature
expected value	binomial experiment	probability vector	strategies
fair game	binomial probability	regular transition matrix	payoffs
9.2 $n!$ (n factorial)	9.5 stochastic processes	regular Markov chain	payoff matrix
multiplication principle	Markov chain		

Chapter 9 Key Concepts

Expected Value

For a random variable x with values x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n and probabilities p_1, p_2, \dots, p_n , the expected value is

$$E(x) = x_1p_1 + x_2p_2 + \dots + x_np_n.$$

Multiplication Principle

If there are m_1 ways to make a first choice, m_2 ways to make a second choice, and so on, then there are $m_1m_2 \dots m_n$ different ways to make the entire sequence of choices.

Permutations

The number of **permutations** of n elements taken r at a time is ${}_nP_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$.

Combinations

The number of **combinations** of n elements taken r at a time is

$${}_nC_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}.$$

Binomial Experiments

Binomial Experiments have the following characteristics: (1) The same experiment is repeated a finite number of times; (2) there are only *two* outcomes, labeled success and failure; (3) the probability of success is the same for each trial; and (4) the trials are independent. If the probability of success in a single trial is p , the probability of x successes in n trials is

$${}_nC_x p^x (1-p)^{n-x}.$$

Markov Chains

A **transition matrix** must be square, with all entries between 0 and 1 inclusive, and the sum of the entries in any row must be 1. A Markov chain is *regular* if some power of its transition matrix P contains all positive entries. The long-range probabilities for a regular Markov chain are given by the **equilibrium**, or **fixed, vector** V , where, for any initial probability vector v , the products vP^n approach V as n gets larger and $VP = V$. To find V , solve the system of equations formed by $VP = V$ and the fact that the sum of the entries of V is 1.

Decision Making

A **payoff matrix**, which includes all available strategies and states of nature, is used in decision making to define the problem and the possible solutions. The expected value of each strategy can help to determine the best course of action.

Chapter 9 Review Exercises

In Exercises 1–4, (a) sketch the histogram of the given probability distribution, and (b) find the expected value.

1. x	0	1	2	3
$P(x)$	.22	.54	.16	.08

2. x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
$P(x)$	.15	.20	.25	.18	.12	.06	.04

3. x	-10	0	10
$P(x)$	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{3}$

4. x	0	2	4	6
$P(x)$	.35	.15	.2	.3

5. **Business** The probability distribution of the number of mortgages held on a household is given below. Find the expected number of mortgages. (Data from: www.census.gov/housing/ahs.)

x	1	2	3	4
$P(x)$	.84513	.15221	.00251	.00014

6. A random variable x has the following probability functions:

x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$P(x)$	0	$2k$	$3k$	k	$2k$	k^2	$7k^2$	$2k^2 + k$

Find the value of k and then evaluate $P(x < 6)$, $P(x > 6)$, and $P(0 < x < 5)$.

In Exercises 7 and 8, (a) give the probability distribution, and (b) find the expected value.

7. **Business** A grocery store has 10 bouquets of flowers for sale, 3 of which are rose displays. Two bouquets are selected at random, and the number of rose bouquets is noted.
8. **Social Science** In a class of 10 students, 3 did not do their homework. The professor selects 3 members of the class to present solutions to homework problems on the board and records how many of those selected did not do their homework.

Solve the given problems.

9. Suppose someone offers to pay you \$100 if you draw 3 cards from a standard deck of 52 cards and all the cards are hearts. What should you pay for the chance to win if it is a fair game?
10. You pay \$2 to play a game of “Over/Under,” in which you will roll two dice and note the sum of the results. You can bet that the sum will be less than 7 (under), exactly 7, or greater than 7 (over). If you bet “under” and you win, you get your \$2 back, plus \$2 more. If you bet 7 and you win, you get your \$2 back, plus \$4, and if you bet “over” and win, you get your \$2 back, plus \$2 more. What are the expected winnings for each type of bet?

11. **Business** Daily demand of transistors has the following probability distribution:

Demand:	1	2	3	4	5	6
Probability:	.10	.15	.20	.25	.18	.12

Determine the expected daily demand for transistors. Obtain the variance of the demand.

12. **Social Science** According to data from the American Housing Survey, approximately 20% of U.S. residents do not have a vehicle available at the residence for personal use. If we select 5 people at random and define x to be the number that do not have access to a vehicle, the following probability distribution is given. Find the expected value for x . (Data from: www.census.gov/housing/ahs.)

x	0	1	2	3	4	5
$P(x)$	0.3277	0.4096	0.2048	0.0512	0.0064	0.0003

13. In how many ways can 8 different taxis line up at the airport?
14. How many variations are possible for gold, silver, and bronze medalists in the 50-meter swimming race if there are 8 finalists?
15. In how many ways can a sample of 3 computer monitors be taken from a batch of 12 identical monitors?
16. If 4 of the 12 monitors in Exercise 15 are broken, in how many ways can the sample of 3 include the following?
- 1 broken monitor;
 - no broken monitors;
 - at least 1 broken monitor.
17. How many seven-letter words can be formed using the letters of the word “BENZENE”?
18. Find the number of ways 10 persons can arrange themselves in a row during an award ceremony.
19. Five boys and five girls are to be seated in a row. How many ways can they be seated if
- All boys and all girls are to be seated together.
 - No two girls should be seated together.
20. Explain under what circumstances a permutation should be used in a probability problem and under what circumstances a combination should be used.
21. Discuss under what circumstances the binomial probability formula should be used in a probability problem.

Suppose 2 cards are drawn without replacement from an ordinary deck of 52 cards. Find the probabilities of the given results.

- Both cards are red.
- Both cards are king.
- At least one card is red.
- One card is ace and another is queen.

An ice cream stand contains 4 custard flavors, 6 ice cream flavors, and 2 frozen yogurt selections. Three customers come to the window. If each customer's selection is random, find the probability that the selections include

26. all ice cream;
27. all custard;
28. at least one frozen yogurt;
29. one custard, one ice cream, and one frozen yogurt;
30. at most one ice cream.

Q In Exercises 31 and 32, we study the connection between sets (from Chapter 8) and combinations.

31. Given a set with n elements,
 - (a) what is the number of subsets of size 0? of size 1? of size 2? of size n ?
 - (b) Using your answer from part (a) give an expression for the total number of subsets of a set with n elements.
32. Using your answers from Exercise 31 and the results from Chapter 8
 - (a) explain why the following equation must be true:

$${}_nC_0 + {}nC_1 + {}nC_2 + \dots + {}nC_n = 2^n.$$
 - (b) verify the equation in part (a) for $n = 4$ and $n = 5$.

Business According to the *Wall Street Journal*, the drug company Actavis obtains 75% of its revenue from the sales of generic drugs.

33. Suppose 7 Actavis drug sales are selected at random. Find the probability distribution for x , the number of Actavis generic drug sales. Find the expected number of drug sales that are from generic drugs.
34. Suppose 10 Actavis drug sales are selected at random. Find the probability distribution for x , the number of Actavis generic drug sales. Find the expected number of generic drug sales. (*Hint*: Carry your calculations to six decimal places.)
35. **Finance** As of May 2013, the Vanguard Capital Value Fund had 14.5% of its assets invested in energy stocks. If 6 stocks are selected at random from the fund, find the probability that the given numbers of stocks are energy stocks.

- (a) None of the stocks
- (b) At least 2 of the stocks
- (c) At most 4 of the stocks

36. **Finance** An insurance salesman sells policies to 5 men of the same age and similar health conditions. According to the actuarial tables, the probability that a man of this age and health condition will be alive 30 years hence is $2/3$. Find the probability that 30 years hence
 - (a) At least one man will be alive.
 - (b) At least 3 men will be alive.
37. **Business** In 2013, the percentage of banking institutions insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC) with total assets of \$100 million or more was 61.4%. Suppose that we select 5 insured banking institutions at random. (Data from: www2.fdic.gov/sod.)
 - (a) Give the probability distribution for x , the number of banking institutions with \$100 million or more in assets.
 - (b) Give the expected value for the number of banking institutions with \$100 million or more in assets.

Decide whether each matrix is a regular transition matrix.

$$38. \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ .77 & .23 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$39. \begin{bmatrix} -.2 & .4 \\ .3 & .7 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$40. \begin{bmatrix} .21 & .15 & .64 \\ .50 & .12 & .38 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$41. \begin{bmatrix} .22 & 0 & .78 \\ .40 & .33 & .27 \\ 0 & .61 & .39 \end{bmatrix}$$

Social Science A sociologist developed a model to represent the class mobility of a generation. According to his research, 48% of the people born in families with low income go on to become members of middle- or high-income groups. Of the people born in middle-income families, 5% descend into lower-income groups, where as 25% are promoted to higher-income groups. Among the people born in high-income families, 1% and 50% descend to the lower- and middle-income groups, respectively.

42. Draw the transition diagram and corresponding transition matrix.
43. If the distribution of the population is 20%, 75%, and 5% in the lower-, middle-, and high-income families, respectively, for the first generation, what will be their distribution in the third generation?

44. **Social Science** A candidate for city council can come out in favor of a new factory, be opposed to it, or waffle on the issue. The change in votes for the candidate depends on what her opponent does, with payoffs as shown in the following matrix:

		Opponent		
		Favors	Waffles	Opposes
Candidate	Favors	0	-1000	-4000
	Waffles	1000	0	-500
	Opposes	5000	2000	0

- (a) What should the candidate do if she is an optimist?
- (b) What should she do if she is a pessimist?
- (c) Suppose the candidate's campaign manager feels that there is a 40% chance that the opponent will favor the plant and a 35% chance that he will waffle. What strategy should the candidate adopt? What is the expected change in the number of votes?
- (d) The opponent conducts a new poll that shows strong opposition to the new factory. This changes the probability that he will favor the factory to 0 and the probability that he will waffle to .7. What strategy should our candidate adopt? What is the expected change in the number of votes now?
45. **Social Science** When teaching, an instructor can adopt a strategy using either active learning or lecturing to help students learn best. A class often reacts very differently to these two strategies. A class can prefer lecturing or active learning. A department chair constructs the following payoff matrix of the average point gain (out of 500 possible points) on the final exam after studying many classes that use active learning and many that use lecturing and polling students as to their preference:

		Students in class prefer	
		Lecture	Active Learning
Instructor uses	Lecture	50	-80
	Active Learning	-30	100

- (a) If the department chair uses the preceding information to decide how to teach her own classes, what should she do if she is an optimist?
- (b) What about if she is a pessimist?
- (c) If the polling data shows that there is a 75% chance that a class will prefer the lecture format, what strategy should she adopt? What is the expected payoff?
- (d) If the chair finds out that her next class has had more experience with active learning, so that there is now a 60% chance that the class will prefer active learning, what strategy should she adopt? What is the expected payoff?

*Exercises 46 and 47 are taken from actuarial examinations given by the Society of Actuaries.**

46. **Business** A company is considering the introduction of a new product that is believed to have probability .5 of being successful and probability .5 of being unsuccessful. Successful products pass quality control 80% of the time. Unsuccessful products pass quality control 25% of the time. If the

product is successful, the net profit to the company will be \$40 million; if unsuccessful, the net loss will be \$15 million. Determine the expected net profit if the product passes quality control.

- (a) \$23 million
- (b) \$24 million
- (c) \$25 million
- (d) \$26 million
- (e) \$27 million
47. **Business** A merchant buys boxes of fruit from a grower and sells them. Each box of fruit is either Good or Bad. A Good box contains 80% excellent fruit and will earn \$200 profit on the retail market. A Bad box contains 30% excellent fruit and will produce a loss of \$1000. The a priori probability of receiving a Good box of fruit is .9. Before the merchant decides to put the box on the market, he can sample one piece of fruit to test whether it is excellent. Based on that sample, he has the option of rejecting the box without paying for it. Determine the expected value of the right to sample. (*Hint:* If the merchant samples the fruit, what are the probabilities of accepting a Good box, accepting a Bad box, and not accepting the box? What are these probabilities if he does not sample the fruit?)
- (a) 0
- (b) \$16
- (c) \$34
- (d) \$72
- (e) \$80
48. **Business** An issue of *Mathematics Teacher* included "Overbooking Airline Flights," an article by Joe Dan Austin. In this article, Austin developed a model for the expected income for an airline flight. With appropriate assumptions, the probability that exactly x of n people with reservations show up at the airport to buy a ticket is given by the binomial probability formula. Assume the following: Six reservations have been accepted for 3 seats, $p = .6$ is the probability that a person with a reservation will show up, a ticket costs \$100, and the airline must pay \$100 to anyone with a reservation who does not get a ticket. Complete the following table:

Number Who Show Up (x)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Airline's Income							
$P(x)$							

- (a) Use the table to find $E(I)$, the expected income from the 3 seats.
- (b) Find $E(I)$ for $n = 3$, $n = 4$, and $n = 5$. Compare these answers with $E(I)$ for $n = 6$. For these values of n , how many reservations should the airline book for the 3 seats in order to maximize the expected revenue?

*Problems No. 46 and 47: Business from Course 130 Examination, Operations Research. Copyright © Society of Actuaries. Reproduced by permission of Society of Actuaries.

Case Study 9 Quick Draw[®] from the New York State Lottery



At bars and restaurants in the state of New York, patrons can play an electronic lottery game called Quick Draw.* A similar game is available in many other states. There are 10 ways for a patron to play this game. Prior to the draw, a person may bet \$1 on games called 10-spot, 9-spot, 8-spot, 7-spot, 6-spot, 5-spot, 4-spot, 3-spot, 2-spot, and 1-spot. Depending on the game, the player will choose numbers from 1 to 80. For the 10-spot game, the player chooses 10 numbers; for a 9-spot game, the player chooses 9 numbers; etc. Every four minutes, the State of New York chooses 20 numbers at random from the numbers 1 to 80. For example, if a player chose the 6-spot game, he or she will have picked 6 numbers. If 3, 4, 5, or 6 of the numbers the player picked are also numbers the state picked randomly, then the player will win money. Each game has different ways to win, with differing payoff amounts. Notice with the 10-spot, 9-spot, 8-spot, and 7-spot, a player can win by matching 0 numbers correctly. The accompanying tables show the payoffs for the different games. Notice that a player does not have to match all the numbers he or she picked in order to win.

10-spot Game	
Numbers Matched	Winnings per \$1 Played
10	\$100,000
9	\$5000
8	\$300
7	\$45
6	\$10
5	\$2
0	\$5

9-spot Game	
Numbers Matched	Winnings per \$1 Played
9	\$30,000
8	\$3000
7	\$125
6	\$20
5	\$5
0	\$2

8-spot Game	
Numbers Matched	Winnings per \$1 Played
8	\$10,000
7	\$550
6	\$75
5	\$6
0	\$2

7-spot Game	
Numbers Matched	Winnings per \$1 Played
7	\$5000
6	\$100
5	\$20
4	\$2
0	\$1

6-spot Game	
Numbers Matched	Winnings per \$1 Played
6	\$1000
5	\$55
4	\$6
3	\$1

5-spot Game	
Numbers Matched	Winnings per \$1 Played
5	\$300
4	\$20
3	\$2

4-spot Game	
Numbers Matched	Winnings per \$1 Played
4	\$55
3	\$5
2	\$1

3-spot Game	
Numbers Matched	Winnings per \$1 Played
3	\$23
2	\$2

2-spot Game	
Numbers Matched	Winnings per \$1 Played
2	\$10

1-spot Game	
Numbers Matched	Winnings per \$1 Played
1	\$2

With our knowledge of counting, it is possible for us to calculate the probability of winning for these different games.

Example 1 Find the probability distribution for the number of matches for the 6-spot game.

Solution Let us define x to be the number of matches when playing 6-spot. The outcomes of x are then 0, 1, 2, . . . , 6. To find the probabilities of these matches, we need to do a little thinking. First, we need to know how many ways a player can pick 6 numbers from the selection of 1 to 80. Since the order in which the player picks the numbers does not matter, the number of ways to pick 6 numbers is

$${}_{80}C_6 = \frac{80!}{74! 6!} = 300,500,200.$$

To find the probability of the outcomes of 0 to 6, we can think of the 80 choices broken into groups: 20 winning numbers the state picked and 60 losing numbers the state did not pick. If x , the number of matches, is 0, then the player picked 0 numbers from the 20 winning numbers and 6 from the 60 losing numbers. Using the multiplication principle, we find that this quantity is

$${}_{20}C_0 \cdot {}_{60}C_6 = \left(\frac{20!}{20! 0!}\right) \left(\frac{60!}{54! 6!}\right) = (1)(50,063,860) = 50,063,860.$$

*More information on Quick Draw can be found at www.nylottery.org; click on "Daily Games."

Therefore,

$$P(x = 0) = \frac{{}^{20}C_0 \cdot {}^{60}C_6}{{}^{80}C_6} = \frac{50,063,860}{300,500,200} \approx .16660.$$

Similarly for $x = 1, 2, \dots, 6$, and completing the probability distribution table, we have

x	$P(x)$
0	$\frac{{}^{20}C_0 \cdot {}^{60}C_6}{{}^{80}C_6} \approx .16660$
1	$\frac{{}^{20}C_1 \cdot {}^{60}C_5}{{}^{80}C_6} \approx .36349$
2	$\frac{{}^{20}C_2 \cdot {}^{60}C_4}{{}^{80}C_6} \approx .30832$
3	$\frac{{}^{20}C_3 \cdot {}^{60}C_3}{{}^{80}C_6} \approx .12982$
4	$\frac{{}^{20}C_4 \cdot {}^{60}C_2}{{}^{80}C_6} \approx .02854$
5	$\frac{{}^{20}C_5 \cdot {}^{60}C_1}{{}^{80}C_6} \approx .00310$
6	$\frac{{}^{20}C_6 \cdot {}^{60}C_0}{{}^{80}C_6} \approx .00013$

Example 2

Find the expected winnings for a \$1 bet on the 6-spot game.

Solution To find the expected winnings, we take the winnings for each number of matches and subtract our \$1 initial payment fee. Thus, we have the following:

x	Net Winnings	$P(x)$
0	−\$1	.16660
1	−\$1	.36349
2	−\$1	.30832
3	\$0	.12982
4	\$5	.02854
5	\$54	.00310
6	\$999	.00013

The expected winnings are

$$\begin{aligned} E(\text{winnings}) &= (-1) \cdot .16660 + (-1) \cdot .36349 \\ &\quad + (-1) \cdot .30832 + 0 \cdot .12982 + 5(.02854) \\ &\quad + 54(.00310) + 999(.00013) \\ &= -.39844. \end{aligned}$$

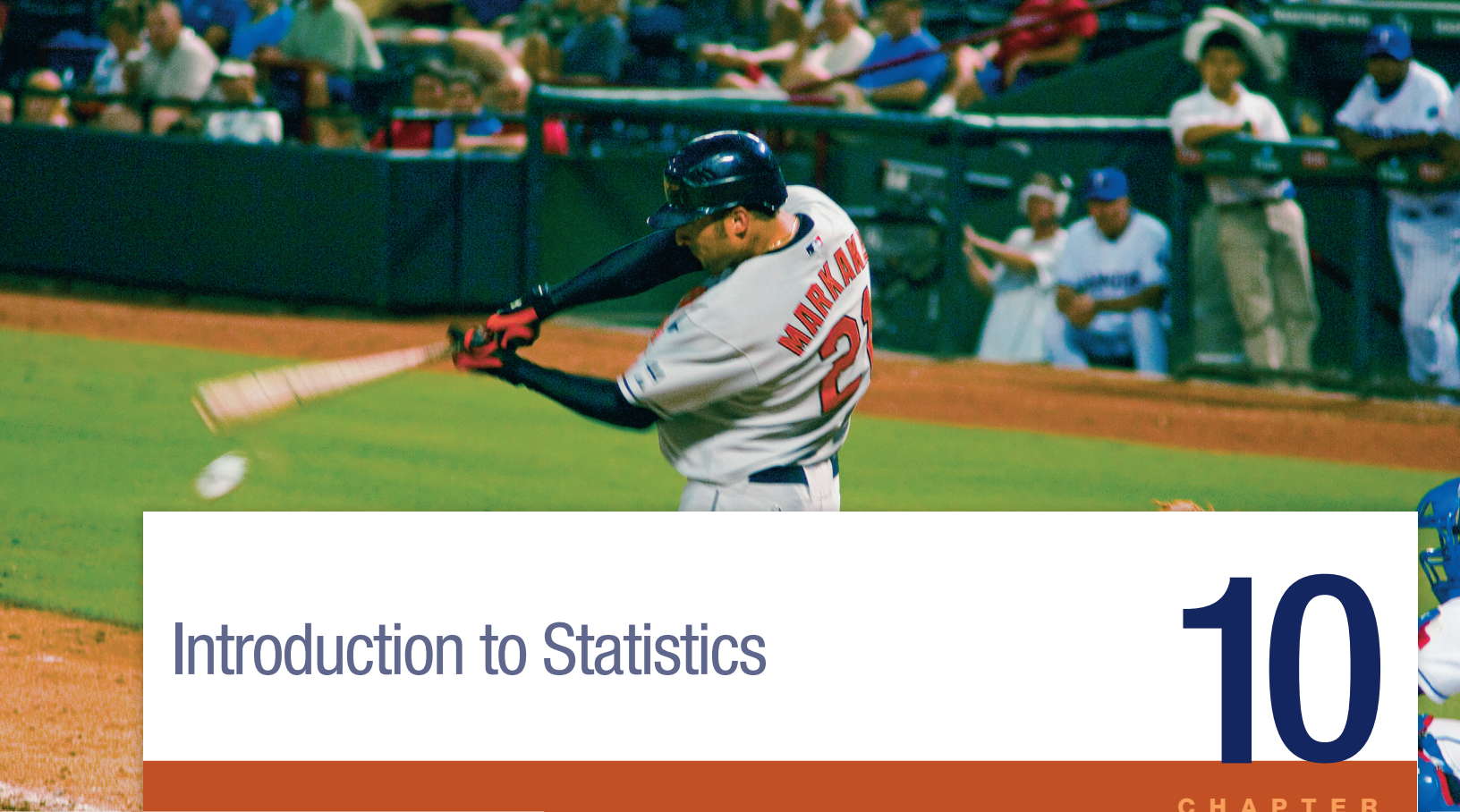
Thus, for every \$1 bet on the 6-spot game, a player would lose about 40 cents. Put another way, the state gets about 40 cents, on average, from every \$1 bet on 6-spot.

Exercises

1. If New York State initiates a promotion where players earn “double payoffs” for the 6-spot game (that is, if a player matched 3 numbers, she would win \$2; if she matched 4 numbers, she would win \$12; etc.), find the expected winnings.
2. Would it be in the state’s interest to offer such a promotion? Why or why not?
3. Find the probability distribution for the 4-spot game.
4. Find the expected winnings for the 4-spot game.
5. If the state offers double payoffs for the 4-spot game, what are the expected winnings?

Extended Projects

1. In Ohio, a game similar to Quick Draw is KENO. Investigate the rules, bets, and payoffs of this game. Determine in what ways it is similar to Quick Draw and in what way it differs. Examine the expected value if any of the games were to offer double payoffs. Are any of the expected values with double payoffs positive?
2. Investigate whether your own state or a state near you has a game similar to Quick Draw. Determine if the rules, bets, and payoffs of this game are similar to Quick Draw. Determine in what ways the game in your state is similar to Quick Draw and in what way it differs. Examine the consequences on the expected value if the games were to offer double payoffs.



Introduction to Statistics

10

CHAPTER

CHAPTER OUTLINE

- 10.1 Frequency Distributions
- 10.2 Measures of Center
- 10.3 Measures of Variation
- 10.4 Normal Distributions and Boxplots
- 10.5 Normal Approximation to the Binomial Distribution

CASE STUDY 10

Standard Deviation as a Measure of Risk

Statistics has applications to almost every aspect of modern life. The digital age is creating a wealth of data that needs to be summarized, visualized, and analyzed, from the earnings of major-league baseball teams to movies' box-office receipts and the sales for the soft-drink industry. See Exercises 25 and 26 on pages 554 and 555, and Exercises 51–56 on page 576.

Statistics is the science that deals with the collection and summarization of data. Methods of statistical analysis make it possible to draw conclusions about a population on the basis of data from a sample of the population. Statistical models have become increasingly useful in manufacturing, government, agriculture, medicine, and the social sciences and in all types of research. An Indianapolis race-car team, for example, is using statistics to improve its performance by gathering data on each run around the track. The team samples data 300 times a second and uses computers to process the data. In this chapter, we give a brief introduction to some of the key topics from statistical methodology.

10.1 Frequency Distributions

Researchers often wish to learn characteristics or traits of a specific **population** of individuals, objects, or units. The traits of interest are called **variables**, and it is these that we measure or label. Often, however, a population of interest is very large or constantly changing, so measuring each unit is impossible. Thus, researchers are forced to collect data on a subset of the population of interest, called a **sample**.

Sampling is a complex topic, but the universal aim of all sampling methods is to obtain a sample that “represents” the population of interest. One common way of obtaining a representative sample is to perform simple random sampling, in which every unit of the population has an equal chance to be selected to be in the sample. Suppose we wanted to study the height of students enrolled in a class. To obtain a random sample, we could place slips of paper containing the names of everyone in class in a hat, mix the papers, and draw 10 names blindly. We would then record the height (the variable of interest) for each student selected.

A simple random sample can be difficult to obtain in real life. For example, suppose you want to take a random sample of voters in your congressional district to see which candidate they prefer in the next election. If you do a telephone survey, you have a representative sample of people who are at home to answer the telephone, but those who are rarely home to answer the phone, those who have an unlisted number or only a cell phone, those who cannot afford a telephone, and those who refuse to answer telephone surveys are underrepresented. Such people may have an opinion different from those of the people you interview.

A famous example of an inaccurate poll was made by the *Literary Digest* in 1936. Its survey indicated that Alfred Landon would win the presidential election; in fact, Franklin Roosevelt won with 62% of the popular vote. The *Digest's* major error was mailing its surveys to a sample of those listed in telephone directories. During the Depression, many poor people did not have telephones, and the poor voted overwhelmingly for Roosevelt. Modern pollsters use sophisticated techniques to ensure that their sample is as representative as possible.

Once a sample has been collected and all data of interest are recorded, the data must be organized so that conclusions may be more easily drawn. With numeric responses, one method of organization is to group the data into intervals, usually of equal size.

Example 1 **Education** The following list gives the 2011–2012 annual tuition (in thousands of dollars) for a random sample of 40 community colleges. (Data from: www.collegeboard.org.)

3.8	1.1	2.5	3.5	4.0	3.8	3.9	4.2	3.1	3.9
5.0	1.1	2.0	3.4	3.5	1.1	2.3	4.8	1.1	3.1
3.5	5.1	3.3	3.2	2.1	5.3	2.6	2.3	2.5	3.6
4.9	3.0	2.4	3.6	3.1	3.7	5.1	3.5	2.0	4.4

Identify the population and the variable, group the data into intervals, and find the frequency of each interval.

Solution The population is all community colleges. The variable of interest is the tuition (in thousands of dollars). The lowest value is 1.1 (corresponding to \$1100) and the highest value is 5.3 (corresponding to \$5300). One convenient way to group the intervals is in intervals of size .5, starting with 1.0–1.4 and ending with 5.0–5.4. This grouping provides an interval for each value in the list and results in 9 equally sized intervals of a convenient size. Too many intervals of smaller size would not simplify the data enough, while too few intervals of larger size would conceal information that the data might provide.

The first step in summarizing the data is to tally the number of schools in each interval. Then total the tallies in each interval, as in the following table:

Tuition Amount (in thousands of dollars)	Tally	Frequency
1.0–1.4	||||	4
1.5–1.9		0
2.0–2.4	||| |	6
2.5–2.9	|||	3
3.0–3.4	||| ||	7
3.5–3.9	||| ||| |	11
4.0–4.4	|||	3
4.5–4.9	||	2
5.0–5.4	||||	4

✓ Checkpoint 1

An accounting firm selected 24 complex tax returns prepared by a certain tax preparer. The data on the number of errors per return were as follows:

8 12 0 6 10 8 0 14
8 12 14 16 4 14 7 11
9 12 7 15 11 21 22 19

Prepare a grouped frequency distribution for these data. Use intervals 0–4, 5–9, and so on.

Answers to Checkpoint exercises are found at the end of the section.



This table is an example of a **grouped frequency distribution**.

The frequency distribution in Example 1 shows information about the data that might not have been noticed before. For example, the interval with the largest number of colleges is 3.5–3.9. However, some information has been lost; for example, we no longer know exactly how many colleges charged 3.9 (\$3900) for tuition.

Picturing Data

The information in a grouped frequency distribution can be displayed graphically with a **histogram**, which is similar to a bar graph. In a histogram, the number of observations in each interval determines the height of each bar, and the size of each interval determines the width of each bar. If equally sized intervals are used, all the bars have the same width.

A **frequency polygon** is another form of graph that illustrates a grouped frequency distribution. The polygon is formed by joining consecutive midpoints of the tops of the histogram bars with straight-line segments. Sometimes the midpoints of the first and last bars are joined to endpoints on the horizontal axis where the next midpoint would appear. (See Figure 10.1.)

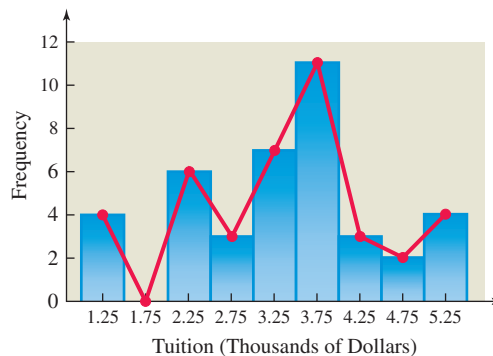




Figure 10.1

Example 2 **Education** A grouped frequency distribution of community college tuition was found in Example 1. Draw a histogram and a frequency polygon for this distribution.

Solution First, draw a histogram, shown in blue in Figure 10.1. To get a frequency polygon, connect consecutive midpoints of the tops of the bars. The frequency polygon is shown in red. 

Checkpoint 2

Make a histogram and a frequency polygon for the distribution found in Checkpoint 1.

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** As noted in Section 9.1, most graphing calculators can display histograms. Many will also display frequency polygons (which are usually labeled LINE or xyLINE in calculator menus). When dealing with grouped frequency distributions, however, certain adjustments must be made on a calculator:

1. *The histogram's bar width affects the shape of the graph.* If you use a bar width of .4 in Example 1, the calculator may produce a histogram with gaps in it. To avoid this, use the interval $1.0 \leq x < 1.5$ in place of $1.1 \leq x \leq 1.4$, and similarly for other intervals, and make .5 the bar width.
2. *A calculator list of outcomes must consist of single numbers, not intervals.* The table in Example 1, for instance, cannot be entered as shown. To convert the first column of the table for calculator use, choose the midpoint number in each interval—1.25 for the first interval, 1.75 for the second interval, 2.25 for the third interval, etc. Then use 1.25, 1.75, 2.25, . . . , 5.25 as the list of outcomes to be entered into the calculator. The frequency list (the last column of the table) remains the same.

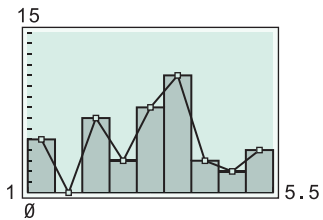


Figure 10.2

Following this procedure, we obtain the calculator-generated histogram and frequency polygon in Figure 10.2 for the data from Example 1. Note that the width of each histogram bar is .5. Some calculators cannot display both the histogram and the frequency polygon on the same screen, as is done here.


Stem-and-leaf plots allow us to organize the data into a distribution without the disadvantage of losing the original information. In a **stem-and-leaf plot**, we separate the digits in each data point into two parts consisting of the first one or two digits (the stem) and the remaining digit (the leaf). We also provide a key to show the reader the units of the data that were recorded.

Example 3

Education Construct a stem-and-leaf plot for the data in Example 1.

Solution Since the data is made up of two-digit numbers, we use the first digit for the stems: 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 (which in this case represents thousands of dollars). The second digit provides the leaves (which here represents hundreds of dollars). For example, if we look at the seventh row of the stem-and-leaf plot, we have a stem value of 4 and leaf values of 0, 2, and 4. These values correspond to entries of 4.0, 4.2, and 4.4, meaning that one college had tuition of \$4000, another had tuition of \$4200, and a third college had tuition of \$4400. In this example, each row corresponds to an interval in the frequency table. The stems and leaves are separated by a vertical line.

Stem	Leaves
1	1111
1	
2	001334
2	556
3	0111234
3	55556678899
4	024
4	89
5	0113
<i>Units: 5|3 = \$5300</i>	

If we turn the page on its side, the distribution looks like a histogram, but a stem-and-leaf plot still retains each of the original data values. We used each stem digit twice (except the last one), because, as with a histogram, using too few intervals conceals useful information about the shape of the distribution. 

✓ Checkpoint 3

Make a stem-and-leaf plot for the data in Example 1, using one stem each for 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.



NOTE In this example we have split the leaves into two groups: those with leaf values of 0–4 and 5–9. We leave a row empty if there are no data values. For example, since there were no schools in Example 1 with tuition between \$1500 and \$1900, that row is left blank. We do not put a zero, however, as that would imply that a school had tuition of \$1000. Not all stem-and-leaf plots split the leaves with two rows per stem, but it can help the reader discern the values more easily. Often there is only a single row per stem, but another common approach is to use five rows per stem where leaves of 0–1, 2–3, 4–5, 6–7, and 8–9 are grouped together.

Example 4

Health List the original data for the following stem-and-leaf plot of resting pulses taken on the first day of class for 36 students:

Stem	Leaves
4	8
5	278
6	034455688888
7	02222478
8	2269
9	00002289

Units: 9|0 = 90 beats per minute

✓ Checkpoint 4

List the original data for the following heights (inches) of students:

Stem	Leaves
5	9
6	00012233334444
6	55567777799
7	0111134
7	558

Units: 7|5 = 75 inches

The first stem and its leaf correspond to the data point 48 beats per minute. Similarly, the rest of the data are 52, 57, 58, 60, 63, 64, 64, 65, 65, 66, 68, 68, 68, 68, 70, 72, 72, 72, 72, 74, 77, 78, 82, 82, 86, 89, 90, 90, 90, 90, 92, 92, 98, and 99 beats per minute. 4

Assessing the Shape of a Distribution

Histograms and stem-and-leaf plots are very useful in assessing what is called the **shape** of the distribution. One common shape of data is seen in Figure 10.3(a). When all the bars of a histogram are approximately the same height, we say the data has a **uniform** shape. In Figure 10.3(b), we see a histogram that is said to be bell shaped, or **normal**. We use the “normal” label when the frequency peaks in the middle and tapers off equally on each side. When the data do not taper off equally on each side, we say the data are **skewed**. If the data taper off further to the left, we say the data are **left skewed** (Figure 10.3(c)). When the data taper off further to the right, we say the data are **right skewed** (Figure 10.3(d)). (Notice that with skewed data, we say “left skewed” or “right skewed” to refer to the tail, and not the peak of the data.)

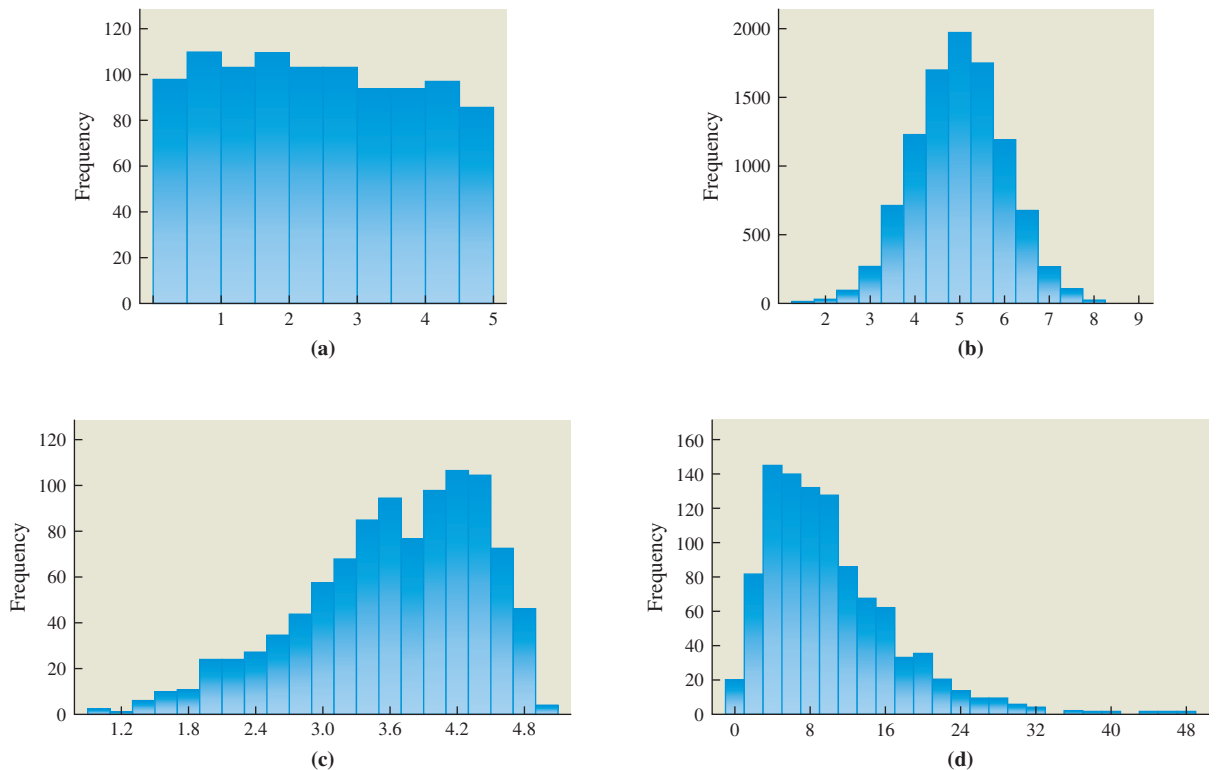


Figure 10.3

Example 5 **Health** Characterize the shapes of the given distributions for 1000 adult males. (Data from: www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhanes.htm.)

(a) Height (inches); see Figure 10.4.

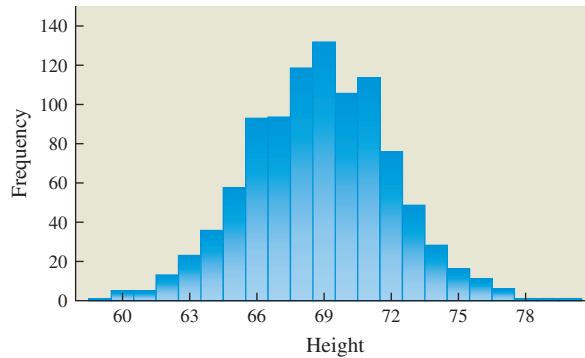


Figure 10.4

Solution The shape is **normal** because the shape peaks in the middle and tapers equally on each side.

(b) Body mass index (kg/m^2); see Figure 10.5.

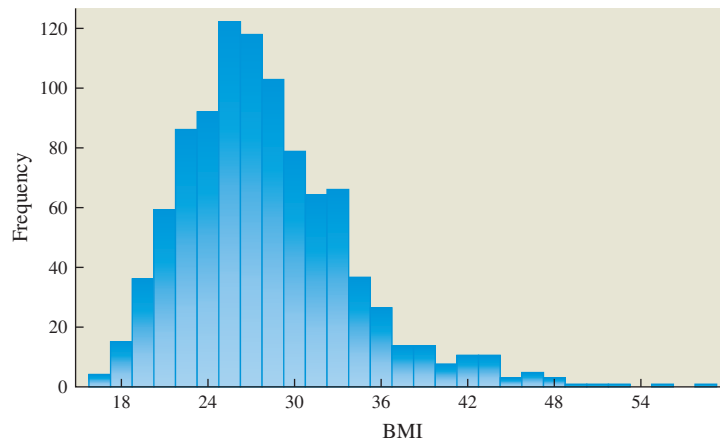


Figure 10.5

Solution The shape is **right skewed** because the tail is to the right. 5

It is important to note that most data are *not* normal, as we will see in the upcoming exercises and the next section. Using the label “normal” is a bit of a misnomer, because many important distributions, such as income, house prices, and infant birth weights, are skewed. It is also important to know that not all distributions have an easy-to-classify shape. This is especially true when samples are small.

Checkpoint 5

Characterize the shape of the distribution from the following stem-and-leaf plot of ages (years):

Stem	Leaves
1	88888
2	22334
2	5579
3	333344
3	59
4	3344
4	667779
5	34
5	5679
6	1
6	
7	13
7	678

Units: 7|8 = 78 years

10.1 Exercises

Finance The data for Exercises 1–4 consist of a random sample of 40 companies that were part of the S&P 500 and information was current as of May 24, 2013. For each variable, (a) group the data as indicated; (b) prepare a frequency distribution with columns for intervals and frequencies; (c) construct a histogram. (See Examples 1 and 2.) (Data from: compiled by author from www.morningstar.com.)

1. The variable is volume of shares traded (in millions). Use 9 intervals, starting with 0–.9, 1.0–1.9, etc.

5.4	1.2	1.8	0.1	4.6	1.3	1.4	5.6	0.4	2.4
1.1	8.7	5.6	0.4	1.3	3.7	1.3	1.9	0.7	5.6
3.0	0.9	0.4	1.7	1.7	0.9	1.2	0.6	0.5	3.5
1.7	1.8	2.6	3.1	4.5	0.3	2.0	1.4	0.5	1.3

2. The variable is forward P/E (forward price to earnings ratio calculated as market price per share divided by the expected earnings per share). Use 9 intervals, starting with 0–9.9, 10.0–19.9, etc.

13.1 21.9 11.3 13.0 9.3 14.3 33.4 9.6 14.3 14.1
 26.0 18.4 7.1 12.3 13.8 51.1 20.7 21.6 13.7 14.2
 14.0 8.8 20.4 8.8 73.9 16.1 13.7 16.5 12.3 13.7
 12.6 9.6 13.4 20.4 6.3 81.0 7.2 30.0 9.7 14.1

3. The variable is earnings per share. Use 6 intervals, starting with –5.00 to –.01, 0 to 4.99, etc.

3.72 1.12 1.43 23.48 8.48 1.3 0.87 13.32 5.47 2.67
 1.22 1.64 0.65 4.57 2.55 0.98 0.89 –0.24 2.94 0.35
 2.54 3.44 3.04 4.99 0.29 2.81 1.58 6.06 3.15 2.67
 3.48 1.58 5.66 3.16 3.75 –0.41 6.58 2.52 5.06 0.97

4. The variable is P/B (price to book ratio calculated as the market price of the stock divided by the quantity total assets minus liabilities). Use 7 intervals, starting with –15.0 to –10.1, –10.0 to –5.1, etc.

2.6 3.4 1.2 –9.7 3.1 1.4 –0.7 1.7 3.5 3.9
 3.3 8.4 0.3 2.1 4.2 2.1 12.5 2.9 1.8 1.2
 –14.1 1.1 5.7 1.3 15.8 1.8 1.9 4.7 1.6 2.2
 1.9 1.5 3.3 5.3 1.2 1.9 1.7 5.4 2.3 1.0

Economics The data for Exercises 5–8 consist of random samples of 30 households from the 2011 American Housing Survey. Construct a frequency distribution and a histogram for each data set.

5. Annual household income (in thousands of dollars).

75 83 16 181 79 8 153 64 1 25
 80 10 11 12 13 15 114 39 1 16
 65 74 15 62 61 197 36 37 70 95

6. Square feet (in hundreds) of the housing unit.

15 9 14 14 8 30 14 9 17 18
 10 23 11 9 25 14 7 8 15 19
 30 12 20 10 27 7 19 15 21 34

7. Amount (in dollars) of monthly electric bill.

104 85 34 38 60 36 224 82 37 134
 115 112 72 53 71 167 133 151 54 30
 108 147 315 140 109 218 159 156 104 51

8. Amount (in dollars) of annual water and sewage bill.

1137 78 510 1200 414 45 425 420 520 990
 515 600 360 400 493 70 1890 800 396 1226
 1320 800 1200 480 540 600 360 600 360 600

Construct a frequency distribution and a histogram for the data in Exercises 9 and 10.

9. **Business** The ages (in years) of the 30 highest-earning chief executive officers in 2012, according to *Forbes*.

53 72 55 67 59 57 55 59 61 60
 59 56 63 58 58 52 61 65 61 50
 65 59 58 66 57 64 58 59 66 56

10. **Business** The number of hours worked in a week for 30 workers selected at random from the 2012 General Social Survey. (Data from: www3.norc.org/gss+website.)

30 45 16 20 70 40 48 40 50 50
 40 60 21 5 45 35 44 40 20 53
 45 28 45 72 20 48 15 40 15 30

For Exercises 11–20, construct a stem-and-leaf plot for the data in the indicated exercise. (See Examples 3 and 4.)

11. Exercise 1
 12. Exercise 2 (round to nearest whole number)
 13. Exercise 5 (round to the nearest ten)
 14. Exercise 6
 15. Exercise 7 (round to the nearest ten)
 16. Exercise 8 (round to the nearest hundred)
 17. Exercise 9
 18. Exercise 10

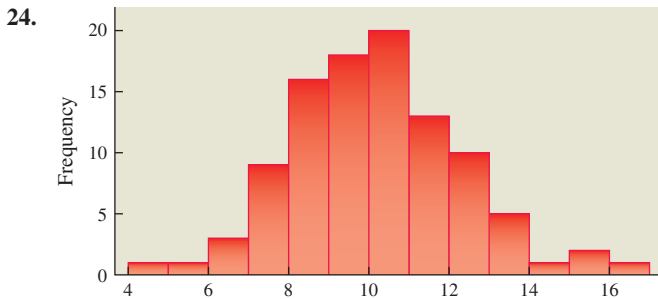
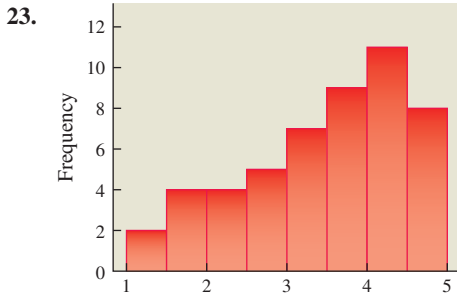
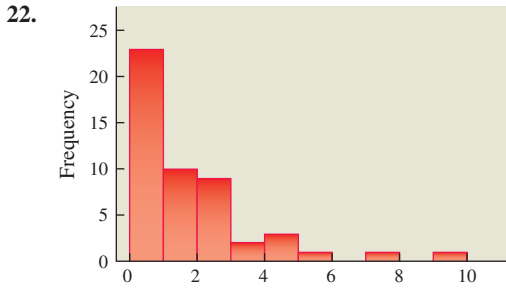
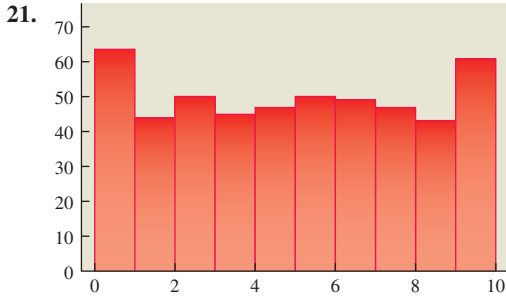
19. **Social Science** The following data give the percentage of residents with a high school education or more for the 50 states in the year 2010. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

83 87 81 90 91
 81 91 87 88 91
 90 89 92 86 87
 89 82 90 89 90
 88 82 85 88 83
 86 90 92 84 90
 84 86 88 84 92
 90 89 83 90 82
 88 89 85 84 91
 87 92 85 81 86

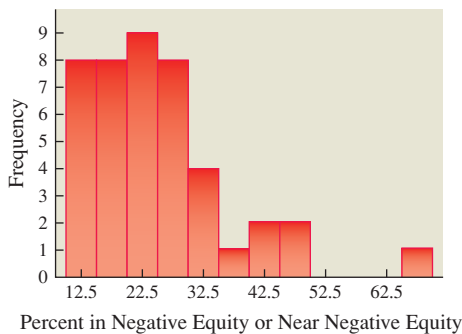
20. **Social Science** The following data give the percentage of residents with a bachelor’s degree or more for the 50 states in the year 2010. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

22 30 39 25 26
 28 24 25 33 23
 26 31 32 27 26
 20 23 20 28 29
 30 25 26 25 34
 36 30 29 23 34
 36 21 29 29 31
 28 21 22 27 18
 26 27 33 30 24
 27 36 35 25 22

Describe the shape of each of the given histograms. (See Example 5.)



25. **Economics** The following histogram shows the percentage of residential properties in negative equity or near negative equity for 43 states for which data were available in July 2012. (Data from: www.corelogic.com.)



- (a) Describe the shape of the distribution.
- (b) How many states had their percentage between 10% and 14.9%?
- (c) How many states had their percentage above 30%?

26. **Business** The number of FDIC insured savings institutions (as opposed to commercial banks) in each state (with DC and Guam) is presented in the histogram below. (Data from: www2.fdic.gov.)



- (a) Describe the shape of the histogram.
- (b) How many states have fewer than 10 savings institutions?
- (c) How many states have more than 60 savings institutions?

27. **Business** The stem-and-leaf plot below summarizes the total deposits (in hundreds of millions of dollars) for the savings institutions in the state of Maryland in 2012. (Data from: www2.fdic.gov.)

Stem	Leaves
0	122344
0	5667899
1	0123344
1	777
2	
2	5788
3	12
3	
4	3
4	78
5	
5	
6	4
6	5

Units: 6|5 = \$65 hundred million (\$6.5 billion)

- (a) Describe the shape of the distribution.
- (b) How many savings institutions had total deposits below \$100 million?

(c) How many savings institutions had total deposits above \$400 million?

28. **Business** The percentage of mortgage loan applications that were denied in the year 2010 is summarized by state in the following stem-and-leaf plot. (Data from: www.ffiec.gov.)

Stem	Leaves
1	4
1	6667777
1	88888899999
2	0001
2	2233333
2	444455
2	667777
2	8889
3	000
3	2

Units: 3|2 = 32%

- (a) Describe the shape of the distribution.
- (b) How many states have a denial percentage higher than 25%?
- (c) How many states have a denial percentage below 20%?

29. **Business** For the 20 states that produce a large number of broiler chickens, the following stem-and-leaf plot gives the production in billions of pounds for the year 2011. (Data from: U.S. Department of Agriculture.)

Stem	Leaves
0	223449
1	03455567
2	
3	6
4	6
5	679
6	
7	4

Units: 7|4 = 7.4 billion pounds

- (a) Describe the shape of the distribution.
- (b) How many states had production below 1 billion pounds?
- (c) How many states had production above 2 billion pounds?

30. The grade distribution for scores on a final exam is shown in the following stem-and-leaf plot:

Stem	Leaves
2	7
3	
3	
4	01
4	899
5	4
5	5
6	122
6	58
7	00124
7	9
8	0044
8	5679
9	00223334
9	5788

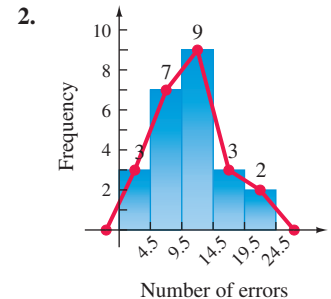
Units: 9|8 = 98%

- (a) What is the shape of the grade distribution?
- (b) How many students earned 90% or better?
- (c) How many students earned less than 60%?

Checkpoint Answers

1.

Interval	Frequency
0–4	3
5–9	7
10–14	9
15–19	3
20–24	2
Total: 24	



3.

Stem	Leaves
1	1111
2	001334556
3	011123455556678899
4	02489
5	0113

Units: 5|3 = \$5300

- 4. 59, 60, 60, 60, 61, 62, 62, 63, 63, 63, 63, 64, 64, 64, 64, 65, 65, 65, 66, 67, 67, 67, 67, 67, 69, 69, 70, 71, 71, 71, 71, 73, 74, 75, 75, 78
- 5. Right skewed

10.2 Measures of Center

Often, we want to summarize data numerically with a measure that represents a “typical” outcome. There are several ways to do this, and we generally call such a summary a “measure of center.” In this section, we learn about the three most common measures of center: the mean, median, and mode.

Mean

The three most important measures of center are the mean, the median, and the mode. The most used of these is the mean, which is similar to the expected value of a probability distribution. The **arithmetic mean** (or just the “mean”) of a set of numbers is the sum of the numbers, divided by the total number of numbers. We write the sum of n numbers $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$ in a compact way with **summation notation**, also called **sigma notation**. With the Greek letter Σ (sigma), the sum

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \cdots + x_n$$

is written

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \cdots + x_n = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i.$$

In statistics, $\sum_{i=1}^n x_i$ is often abbreviated as just Σx . The symbol \bar{x} (read “x-bar”) is used to represent the mean of a sample.

Mean

The mean of the n numbers $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$ is

$$\bar{x} = \frac{x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n}{n} = \frac{\Sigma x}{n}.$$


TECHNOLOGY TIP

The mean of the five numbers in Example 1 is easily found by using the \bar{x} key on a scientific calculator or the one-variable statistics key on a graphing calculator. A graphing calculator will also display additional information, which will be discussed in the next section.

✓ Checkpoint 1

Find the mean dollar amount of the following purchases of eight students selected at random at the campus bookstore during the first week of classes:

\$250.56	\$567.32
\$45.29	\$321.56
\$120.22	\$561.04
\$321.07	\$226.90

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** Computing the mean is greatly simplified by the statistical capabilities of most scientific and graphing calculators. Calculators vary considerably in how data are entered, so read your instruction manual to learn how to enter lists of data and the corresponding frequencies. On scientific calculators with statistical capabilities, there are keys for finding most of the measures of center discussed in this section. On graphing calculators, most or all of these measures can be obtained with a single keystroke. (Look for a *one-variable statistics* option, which is often labeled 1-VAR, in the STAT menu or its CALC submenu.)

Example 1 **Business** Corporate profits (in billions of dollars) for the years 2008–2012 are given in the following table:

Year	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012
Profits	1248	1362	1800	1943	1951

Find the mean amount of corporate profits for the 5 years. (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Economic Analysis.)

Solution Let $x_1 = 1248, x_2 = 1362, x_3 = 1800, x_4 = 1943,$ and $x_5 = 1951$. Here, $n = 5$ since there are 5 numbers in the list. Thus,

$$\bar{x} = \frac{1248 + 1362 + 1800 + 1943 + 1951}{5} = 1660.8$$

The mean amount of corporate profits in the 5-year period was \$1,660,800,000,000. 

The mean of data that have been arranged into a frequency distribution is found in a similar way. For example, suppose the following quiz score data are collected:

Value	Frequency
84	2
87	4
88	7
93	4
99	3
	Total: 20

The value 84 appears twice, 87 four times, and so on. To find the mean, first add 84 two times, 87 four times, and so on; or get the same result faster by multiplying 84 by 2, 87 by 4, and so on, and then adding the results. Dividing the sum by 20, the total of the frequencies, gives the mean:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{x} &= \frac{(84 \cdot 2) + (87 \cdot 4) + (88 \cdot 7) + (93 \cdot 4) + (99 \cdot 3)}{20} \\ &= \frac{168 + 348 + 616 + 372 + 297}{20} \\ &= \frac{1801}{20} \\ \bar{x} &= 90.05.\end{aligned}$$

Verify that your calculator gives the same result.

Example 2 Social Science An instructor of a finite-mathematics class at a small liberal-arts college collects data on the age of her students. The data are recorded in the following frequency distribution:

Age	Frequency	Age \times Frequency
18	12	$18 \cdot 12 = 216$
19	9	$19 \cdot 9 = 171$
20	5	$20 \cdot 5 = 100$
21	2	$21 \cdot 2 = 42$
22	2	$22 \cdot 2 = 44$
	Total: 30	$\text{Total: } 573$

✓ Checkpoint 2

Find \bar{x} for the following frequency distribution for the variable of years of schooling for a sample of construction workers.

Years	Frequency
7	2
9	3
11	6
13	4
15	4
16	1

Find the mean age.

Solution The age 18 appears 12 times, 19 nine times, and so on. To find the mean, first multiply 18 by 12, 19 by 9, and so on, to get the column “Age \times Frequency,” which has been added to the frequency distribution. Adding the products from this column gives a total of 573. The total from the frequency column is 30. The mean age is

$$\bar{x} = \frac{573}{30} = 19.1. \quad \checkmark_2$$

The mean of grouped data is found in a similar way. For grouped data, intervals are used, rather than single values. To calculate the mean, it is assumed that all of the values in a given interval are located at the midpoint of the interval. The letter x is used to represent the midpoints, and f represents the frequencies, as shown in the next example.

**Example 3****Business**

The grouped frequency distribution for annual tuition (in thousands of dollars) for the 40 community colleges described in Example 1 of Section 10.1 is as follows:

Tuition Amount (in thousands of dollars)	Midpoint, x	Frequency, f	Product, xf
1.0–1.4	1.2	4	4.8
1.5–1.9	1.7	0	0
2.0–2.4	2.2	6	13.2
2.5–2.9	2.7	3	8.1
3.0–3.4	3.2	7	22.4
3.5–3.9	3.7	11	40.7
4.0–4.4	4.2	3	12.6
4.5–4.9	4.7	2	9.4
5.0–5.4	5.2	4	20.8
		Total: 40	Total: 132

✓ Checkpoint 3

Find the mean of the following grouped frequency distribution for the number of classes completed thus far in the college careers of a random sample of 52 students:

Classes	Frequency
0–5	6
6–10	10
11–20	12
21–30	15
31–40	9

Find the mean from the grouped frequency distribution.

Solution A column for the midpoint of each interval has been added. The numbers in this column are found by adding the endpoints of each interval and dividing by 2. For the interval 1.0–1.4, the midpoint is $(1.0 + 1.4)/2 = 1.2$. The numbers in the product column on the right are found by multiplying each frequency by its corresponding midpoint. Finally, we divide the total of the product column by the total of the frequency column to get

$$\bar{x} = \frac{132}{40} = 3.3.$$

It is important to know that information is always lost when the data are grouped. It is more accurate to use the original data, rather than the grouped frequency, when calculating the mean, but the original data might not be available. Furthermore, the mean based upon the grouped data is typically not too different from the mean based upon the original data, and there may be situations in which the extra accuracy is not worth the effort. ✓₃

✓ Checkpoint 4

Find the mean for the college tuition data using the following intervals for the grouped frequency distribution:

Tuition Amount	Frequency
1.0–1.9	4
2.0–2.9	9
3.0–3.9	18
4.0–4.9	5
5.0–5.9	4



NOTE If we had used different intervals in Example 3, the mean would have come out to be a slightly different number. This is demonstrated in Checkpoint 4. ✓₄

The formula for the mean of a grouped frequency distribution is as follows.

Mean of a Grouped Distribution

The mean of a distribution in which x represents the midpoints, f denotes the frequencies, and $n = \sum f$ is

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum(xf)}{n}.$$

The mean of a random sample is a random variable, and for this reason it is sometimes called the **sample mean**. The sample mean is a random variable because it assigns a number to the experiment of taking a random sample. If a different random sample were taken, the mean would probably have a different value, with some values being more probable

than others. For example, if another set of 40 community colleges were selected in Example 3, the mean tuition amount might have been 3.4.

We saw in Section 9.1 how to calculate the expected value of a random variable when we know its probability distribution. The expected value is sometimes called the **population mean**, denoted by the Greek letter μ . In other words,

$$E(x) = \mu.$$

Furthermore, it can be shown that the expected value of \bar{x} is also equal to μ ; that is,

$$E(\bar{x}) = \mu.$$


For instance, consider again the 40 community colleges in Example 3. We found that $\bar{x} = 3.3$, but the value of μ , the average for all tuition amounts, is unknown. If a good estimate of μ were needed, the best guess (based on these data) is 3.3.

Median



Asked by a reporter to give the average height of the players on his team, a Little League coach lined up his 15 players by increasing height. He picked out the player in the middle and pronounced this player to be of average height. This kind of average, called the **median**, is defined as the middle entry in a set of data arranged in either increasing or decreasing order. If the number of entries is even, the median is defined to be the mean of the two middle entries. The following table shows how to find the median for the two sets of data $\{8, 7, 4, 3, 1\}$ and $\{2, 3, 4, 7, 9, 12\}$ after each set has been arranged in increasing order.

Odd Number of Entries	Even Number of Entries
1	2
3	3
<i>Median = 4</i>	4 } <i>Median = $\frac{4 + 7}{2} = 5.5$</i>
7	7 }
8	9
	12

 **NOTE** As shown in the table, when the number of entries is even, the median is not always equal to one of the data entries.

Example 4 Find the median number of hours worked per week

(a) for a sample of 7 male students whose work hours were

0, 7, 10, **20**, 22, 25, 30.

Solution The median is the middle number, in this case 20 hours per week. (Note that the numbers are already arranged in numerical order.) In this list, three numbers are smaller than 20 and three are larger.

(b) for a sample of 11 female students whose work hours were

20, 0, 20, 30, 35, 30, 20, 23, 16, 38, 25.

Solution First, arrange the numbers in numerical order, from smallest to largest, or vice versa:

0, 16, 20, 20, 20, **23**, 25, 30, 30, 35, 38.

The middle number can now be determined; the median is 23 hours per week.

(c) for a sample of 10 students of either gender whose work hours were

25, 18, 25, 20, 16, 12, 10, 0, 35, 32.

Solution Write the numbers in numerical order:

0, 10, 12, 16, **18, 20**, 25, 25, 32, 35.

There are 10 numbers here; the median is the mean of the two middle numbers, or

$$\text{median} = \frac{18 + 20}{2} = 19.$$

The median is 19 hours per week.


✓ Checkpoint 5

Find the median for the given heights in inches.

- (a) 60, 72, 64, 75, 72, 65, 68, 70
 (b) 73, 58, 77, 66, 69, 69, 66, 68, 67

TECHNOLOGY TIP

Many graphing calculators (including most TI- and Casio models) display the median when doing one-variable statistics. You may have to scroll down to a second screen to find it.

CAUTION Remember, the data must be arranged in numerical order before you locate the median. 

Both the mean and the median of a sample are examples of a **statistic**, which is simply a number that gives summary information about a sample. In some situations, the median gives a truer representative or typical element of the data than the mean does. For example, suppose that in an office there are 10 salespersons, 4 secretaries, the sales manager, and Ms. Daly, who owns the business. Their annual salaries are as follows: support staff, \$30,000 each; salespersons, \$50,000 each; manager, \$70,000; and owner, \$400,000. The mean salary is

$$\bar{x} = \frac{(30,000)4 + (50,000)10 + 70,000 + 400,000}{16} = \$68,125.$$

However, since 14 people earn less than \$68,125 and only 2 earn more, the mean does not seem very representative. The median salary is found by ranking the salaries by size: \$30,000, \$30,000, \$30,000, \$30,000, \$50,000, \$50,000, . . . , \$400,000. There are 16 salaries (an even number) in the list, so the mean of the 8th and 9th entries will give the value of the median. The 8th and 9th entries are both \$50,000, so the median is \$50,000. In this example, the median is more representative of the distribution than the mean is.

When the data include extreme values (such as \$400,000 in the preceding example), the mean may not provide an accurate picture of a typical value. So the median is often a better measure of center than the mean for data with extreme values, such as income levels and house prices. In general, the median is a better measure of center whenever we see right-skewed or left-skewed distributions.

Mode

Sue's scores on 10 class quizzes include one 7, two 8's, six 9's, and one 10. She claims that her average grade on quizzes is 9, because most of her scores are 9's. This kind of "average," found by selecting the most frequent entry, is called the **mode**.

Example 5

Find the mode for the given data sets.


- (a) Ages of retirement: 55, 60, 63, 63, 70, 55, 60, 65, 68, 65, 65, 71, 65, 65

Solution The number 65 occurs more often than any other, so it is the mode. It is sometimes convenient, but not necessary, to place the numbers in numerical order when looking for the mode.

- (b) Total cholesterol score: 180, 200, 220, 260, 220, 205, 255, 240, 190, 300, 240

Solution Both 220 and 240 occur twice. This list has *two* modes, so it is bimodal.

- (c) Prices of new cars: \$25,789, \$43,231, \$33,456, \$19,432, \$22,971, \$29,876

Solution No number occurs more than once. This list has no mode. 

✓ Checkpoint 6

Find the mode for each of the given data sets.

- (a) Highway miles per gallon of an automobile: 25, 28, 32, 19, 15, 25, 30, 25
 (b) Price paid for last haircut or styling: \$11, \$35, \$35, \$10, \$0, \$12, \$0, \$35, \$38, \$42, \$0, \$25
 (c) Class enrollment in six sections of calculus: 30, 35, 26, 28, 29, 19

The mode has the advantages of being easily found and not being influenced by data that are extreme values. It is often used in samples where the data to be “averaged” are not numerical. A major disadvantage of the mode is that there may be more than one, in case of ties, or there may be no mode at all when all entries occur with the same frequency.

The mean is the most commonly used measure of center. Its advantages are that it is easy to compute, it takes all the data into consideration, and it is reliable—that is, repeated samples are likely to give similar means. A disadvantage of the mean is that it is influenced by extreme values, as illustrated in the salary example.

The median can be easy to compute and is influenced very little by extremes. A disadvantage of the median is the need to rank the data in order; this can be tedious when the number of items is large.

Example 6 Business A sample of 10 working adults was asked “How many hours did you work last week?” Their responses appear below. (Data from: www.norc.org/gss+website.)


40, 35, 43, 40, 30, 40, 45, 40, 55, 20.

Find the mean, median, and mode of the data.

Solution The mean number of hours worked is

$$\bar{x} = \frac{40 + 35 + 43 + 40 + 30 + 40 + 45 + 40 + 55 + 20}{10} = 38.8 \text{ hours.}$$

After the numbers are arranged in order from smallest to largest, the middle number, or median, is 40 hours.

The number 40 occurs more often than any other, so it is the mode. 

 **Checkpoint 7**

Following is a list of the number of movies seen at a theater in the last three months by nine students selected at random:

1, 0, 2, 5, 2, 0, 0, 1, 4

- (a) Find the mean.
- (b) Find the median.
- (c) Find the mode.

10.2 Exercises

Find the mean for each data set. Round to the nearest tenth. (See Example 1.)

1. **Business** Secretarial salaries (U.S. dollars):
\$21,900, \$22,850, \$24,930, \$29,710, \$28,340, \$40,000.
2. **Business** Starting teaching salaries (U.S. dollars):
\$38,400, \$39,720, \$28,458, \$29,679, \$33,679.
3. **Physical Science** Earthquakes on the Richter scale:
3.5, 4.2, 5.8, 6.3, 7.1, 2.8, 3.7, 4.2, 4.2, 5.7.
4. **Health** Body temperatures of self-classified “healthy” students (degrees Fahrenheit):
96.8, 94.1, 99.2, 97.4, 98.4, 99.9, 98.7, 98.6.
5. **Health** Lengths of foot (inches) for adult men:
9.2, 10.4, 13.5, 8.7, 9.7.

Find the mean for each distribution. Round to the nearest tenth. (See Examples 2 and 3.)

6. **Education** Scores on a quiz, on a scale from 0 to 10:

Value	Frequency
7	4
8	6
9	7
10	11

7. **Education** Age (years) of students in an introductory accounting class:

Value	Frequency
19	3
20	5
21	25
22	8
23	2
24	1
28	1

8. **Social Science** Commuting distance (miles) for students at a university:

Value	Frequency
0	15
1	12
2	8
5	6
10	5
17	2
20	1
25	1

9. **Business** Estimated miles per gallon of automobiles:

Value	Frequency
9	5
11	10
15	12
17	9
20	6
28	1

10–14. Find the median of the data in Exercises 1–5. (See Example 4.)

Find the mode or modes for each of the given lists of numbers. (See Example 5.)

15. **Health** Ages (years) of children in a day-care facility:

1, 2, 2, 1, 2, 2, 1, 1, 2, 2, 3, 4, 2, 3, 4, 2, 3, 2, 3.

16. **Health** Ages (years) in the intensive care unit at a local hospital:

68, 64, 23, 68, 70, 72, 72, 68.

17. **Education** Heights (inches) of students in a statistics class:

62, 65, 71, 74, 71, 76, 71, 63, 59, 65, 65, 64, 72, 71, 77, 63, 65.

18. **Health** Minutes of pain relief from acetaminophen after childbirth:

60, 240, 270, 180, 240, 210, 240, 300, 330, 360, 240, 120.

19. **Education** Grade point averages for 5 students:

3.2, 2.7, 1.9, 3.7, 3.9.

20. When is the median the most appropriate measure of center?

21. When would the mode be an appropriate measure of center?

Finance The data for Exercises 22–23 come from a random sample of 40 companies that were part of the S&P 500 and the information was current as of May 24, 2013. For grouped data, the modal class is the interval containing the most data values. Give the mean and modal class for each of the given collections of grouped data. (See Example 3. Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

22. The variable is volume of shares traded (in millions).

Interval	Frequency
0–.9	11
1.0–1.9	15
2.0–2.9	3
3.0–3.9	4
4.0–4.9	2
5.0–5.9	4
6.0–6.9	0
7.0–7.9	0
8.0–8.9	1

23. The variable is forward P/E (forward price to earnings ratio calculated as market price per share divided by the expected earnings per share).

Interval	Frequency
0–9.9	9
10.0–19.9	20
20.0–29.9	6
30.0–39.9	2
40.0–49.9	0
50.0–59.9	1
60.0–69.9	0
70.0–79.9	1
80.0–89.9	1

24. To predict the outcome of the next congressional election, you take a survey of your friends. Is this a random sample of the voters in your congressional district? Explain why or why not.

Work each problem. (See Example 6.)

25. **Business** The following table gives the value (in millions of dollars) of the 10 most valued baseball teams, as estimated by *Forbes* in 2012.

Rank	Team	Value
1	New York Yankees	2300
2	Los Angeles Dodgers	1615
3	Boston Red Sox	1312
4	Chicago Cubs	1000
5	Philadelphia Phillies	893
6	New York Mets	811
7	San Francisco Giants	786
8	Texas Rangers	764
9	Los Angeles Angels of Anaheim	718
10	St. Louis Cardinals	716

Find the following statistics for these data:

- (a) mean;
(b) median.

26. **Business** The following table gives the value (in millions of dollars) of the 10 most valued National Football League teams, as estimated by *Forbes* in 2012.

Rank	Team	Value
1	Dallas Cowboys	2100
2	New England Patriots	1635
3	Washington Redskins	1600
4	New York Giants	1468
5	Houston Texans	1305
6	New York Jets	1284
7	Philadelphia Eagles	1260
8	Chicago Bears	1190
9	San Francisco 49ers	1175
10	Green Bay Packers	1161

Find the following statistics for these data:

- (a) mean;
(b) median.

27. **Business** The 12 movies that have earned the most revenue (in millions of dollars) from U.S. domestic box-office receipts are given in the table. (Data from: www.boxofficemojo.com.)

Rank	Title	U.S. Box-Office Receipts
1	Avatar	761
2	Titanic	659
3	Marvel's The Avengers	623
4	The Dark Knight	535
5	Star Wars	475
6	Star Wars: Episode—The Phantom Menace	461
7	The Dark Knight Rises	448
8	Shrek 2	441
9	E.T.: The Extra-Terrestrial	435
10	Pirates of the Caribbean: Dead Man's Chest	423
11	The Lion King	423
12	Toy Story 3	415

- (a) Find the mean value in dollars for this group of movies.
(b) Find the median value in dollars for this group of movies.

28. **Natural Science** The number of recognized blood types varies by species, as indicated in the following table.*

Animal	Number of Blood Types
Pig	16
Cow	12
Chicken	11
Horse	9
Human	8
Sheep	7
Dog	7
Rhesus Monkey	6
Mink	5
Rabbit	5
Mouse	4
Rat	4
Cat	2

Find the mean, median, and mode of this data.

29. **Business** The revenue (in millions of dollars) for the Starbucks Corporation for the years 2003–2012 is given in the table. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

Year	Revenue
2003	4075.5
2004	5294.3
2005	6369.3
2006	7786.9
2007	9411.5
2008	10,383.0
2009	9775.0
2010	10,707.0
2011	11,700.0
2012	13,300.0

- (a) Calculate the mean and median for these data.
(b) What year's revenue is closest to the mean?

Natural Science The table gives the average monthly high and low temperatures, in degrees Fahrenheit, for Raleigh, North Carolina, over the course of a year. (Data from: www.weather.com.)

Month	High	Low
January	49	30
February	53	32
March	61	40
April	71	48
May	78	57
June	84	65
July	88	69
August	86	68
September	80	62
October	70	49
November	61	42
December	52	33

*The Handy Science Answer Book, Carnegie Library of Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, p. 264.

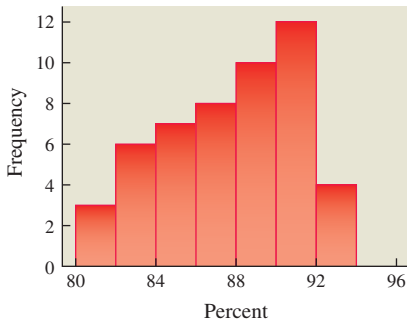
Find the mean and median for each of the given subgroups.

30. The high temperatures 31. The low temperatures

For Exercises 32–33 determine the shape of the distribution from the histogram and then decide whether the mean or median is a better measure of center. If the mean is the better measure, calculate the value. If the median is the better measure, give the midpoint of the interval that contains it.

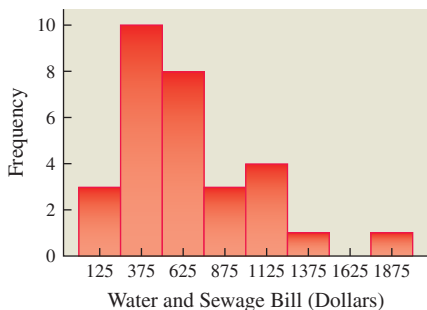
32. **Education** The percentage of United States residents with a high school diploma or higher for the 50 states in the year 2010 are given below. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

Interval	Frequency
80–81.9	3
82–83.9	6
84–85.9	7
86–87.9	8
88–89.9	10
90–91.9	12
92–93.9	4



33. **Economics** The following frequency distribution and histogram represent the amount (in dollars) of the annual water and sewage bill. (Data from: U.S. Housing Survey.)

Interval	Frequency
0–249	3
250–499	10
500–749	8
750–999	3
1000–1249	4
1250–1499	1
1500–1749	0
1750–1999	1



34. **Business** The stem-and-leaf plot below summarizes the total deposits (in hundreds of millions of dollars) for the savings institutions in the state of Maryland in 2012. (Data from: www2.fdic.gov.)

Stem	Leaves
0	122344
0	5667899
1	0123344
1	777
2	
2	5788
3	12
3	
4	3
4	78
5	
5	
6	4
6	5

Units: 6|5 = \$65 hundred million

- (a) Describe the shape of the distribution.
 (b) Find the median.

35. **Business** The percentage of mortgage loan applications that were denied in the year 2010 is summarized by state in the following stem-and-leaf plot. (Data from: www.ffiec.gov.)

Stem	Leaves
1	4
1	6667777
1	88888899999
2	0001
2	2233333
2	444455
2	667777
2	8889
3	000
3	2

Units: 3|2 = 32%

- (a) Describe the shape of the distribution.
 (b) Find the median percentage.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. \$301.75 2. $\bar{x} = 11.75$ 3. 18.90 4. 3.35
 5. (a) 69 inches (b) 68 inches
 6. (a) 25 miles per gallon (b) \$0 and \$35
 (c) No mode
 7. (a) About 1.7 (b) 1 (c) 0

10.3 Measures of Variation

The mean, median, and mode are measures of center for a list of numbers, but tell nothing about the *spread* of the numbers in the list. For example, look at the following data sets of number of times per week three people ate meals at restaurants over the course of five weeks:

Jill:	3	5	6	3	3
Miguel:	4	4	4	4	4
Sharille:	10	1	0	0	9

Each of these three data sets has a mean of 4, but the amount of dispersion or variation within the lists is different. This difference may reflect different dining patterns over time. Thus, in addition to a measure of center, another kind of measure is needed that describes how much the numbers vary.

The largest number of restaurant meals for Jill is 6, while the smallest is 3, a difference of 3. For Miguel, the difference is 0; for Sharille, it is 10. The difference between the largest and smallest number in a sample is called the **range**, one example of a measure of variation. The range is 3 for Jill, 0 for Miguel, and 10 for Sharille. The range has the advantage of being very easy to compute and gives a rough estimate of the variation among the data in the sample. However, it depends only on the two extremes and tells nothing about how the other data are distributed between the extremes.



TECHNOLOGY TIP

Many graphing calculators show the largest and smallest numbers in a list when displaying one-variable statistics, usually on the second screen of the display.



Checkpoint 1

Find the range for this sample of the number of miles from students' homes to college: 15, 378, 5, 210, 125.



Checkpoint 2

Find the deviations from the mean for the following sample of number of miles traveled by various people to a vacation location:

135, 60, 50, 425, 380.

Example 1

Business Find the range for each given data set for a small sample of people.

- (a) Price paid for last haircut (with tip): 10, 0, 15, 30, 20, 18, 50, 120, 75, 95, 0, 5

Solution The highest number here is 120; the lowest is 0. The range is the difference of these numbers, or

$$120 - 0 = 120.$$

- (b) Amount spent for last vehicle servicing: 30, 19, 125, 150, 430, 50, 225

Solution Range = $430 - 19 = 411$.

To find another useful measure of variation, we begin by finding the **deviations from the mean**—the differences found by subtracting the mean from each number in a distribution.

Example 2

Find the deviations from the mean for the following sample of ages.

32, 41, 47, 53, 57.

Solution Adding these numbers and dividing by 5 gives a mean of 46 years. To find the deviations from the mean, subtract 46 from each number in the sample. For example, the first deviation from the mean is $32 - 46 = -14$; the last is $57 - 46 = 11$ years. All of the deviations are listed in the following table.

Age	Deviation from Mean
32	-14
41	-5
47	1
53	7
57	11

To check your work, find the sum of the deviations. It should always equal 0. (The answer is always 0 because the positive and negative deviations cancel each other out.)

To find a measure of variation, we might be tempted to use the mean of the deviations. However, as just mentioned, this number is always 0, no matter how widely the data are dispersed. To avoid the problem of the positive and negative deviations averaging to 0, we could take absolute values and find $\sum |x - \bar{x}|$ and then divide it by n to get the *mean absolute deviation*. However, statisticians generally prefer to square each deviation to get nonnegative numbers and then take the square root of the mean of the squared variations in order to preserve the units of the original data (such as inches, pounds). (Using squares instead of absolute values allows us to take advantage of some algebraic properties that make other important statistical methods much easier.) The squared deviations for the data in Example 2 are shown in the following table:

Number	Deviation from Mean	Square of Deviation
32	-14	196
41	-5	25
47	1	1
53	7	49
57	11	121

In this case, the mean of the squared deviations is

$$\frac{196 + 25 + 1 + 49 + 121}{5} = \frac{392}{5} = 78.4.$$

This number is called the **population variance**, because the sum was divided by $n = 5$, the number of items in the original list.

Since the deviations from the mean must add up to 0, if we know any 4 of the 5 deviations, the 5th can be determined. That is, only $n - 1$ of the deviations are free to vary, so we really have only $n - 1$ independent pieces of information, or *degrees of freedom*. Using $n - 1$ as the divisor in the formula for the mean gives

$$\frac{196 + 25 + 1 + 49 + 121}{5 - 1} = \frac{392}{4} = 98.$$

This number, 98, is called the **sample variance** of the distribution and is denoted s^2 , because it is found by averaging a list of squares. In this case, the population and sample variances differ by quite a bit. But when n is relatively large, as is the case in real-life applications, the difference between them is rather small.

Sample Variance

The variance of a sample of n numbers $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$, with mean \bar{x} , is

$$s^2 = \frac{\sum(x - \bar{x})^2}{n - 1}.$$

When computing the sample variance by hand, it is often convenient to use the following shortcut formula, which can be derived algebraically from the definition in the preceding box:

$$s^2 = \frac{\sum x^2 - n\bar{x}^2}{n - 1}.$$

To find the sample variance, we square the deviations from the mean, so the variance is in squared units. To return to the same units as the data, we use the *square root* of the variance, called the **sample standard deviation**, denoted s .

Sample Standard Deviation


The standard deviation of a sample of n numbers $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$, with mean \bar{x} , is

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\sum(x - \bar{x})^2}{n - 1}}$$


 **NOTE** The **population standard deviation** is

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{\sum(x - \mu)^2}{n}}$$

where n is the population size.

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** When a graphing calculator computes one-variable statistics for a list of data, it usually displays the following information (not necessarily in this order, and sometimes on two screens) and possibly other information as well:

Information	Notation
Number of data entries	n or $N\Sigma$
Mean	\bar{x} or mean Σ
Sum of all data entries	Σx or TOT Σ
Sum of the squares of all data entries	Σx^2
Sample standard deviation	Sx or sx or $x\sigma_{n-1}$ or SSDEV
Population standard deviation	σx or $x\sigma_n$ or PSDEV
Largest/smallest data entries	maxX/minX or MAX Σ /MIN Σ
Median	Med or MEDIAN

 **NOTE** In the rest of this section, we shall deal exclusively with the sample variance and the sample standard deviation. So whenever standard deviation is mentioned, it means “sample standard deviation,” not population standard deviation.

As its name indicates, the standard deviation is the most commonly used measure of variation. The standard deviation is a measure of the variation from the mean. The size of the standard deviation indicates how spread out the data are from the mean.

Time	Square of the Time
2	4
8	64
3	9
2	4
6	36
11	121
31	961
<u>9</u>	<u>81</u>
72	1280

Example 3 Social Science Find the standard deviation for the following sample of the lengths (in minutes) of eight consecutive cell phone conversations by one person:

2, 8, 3, 2, 6, 11, 31, 9.

Work by hand, using the shortcut variance formula on page 558.

Solution Arrange the work in columns, as shown in the table in the margin. Now use the first column to find the mean:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum x}{8} = \frac{72}{8} = 9 \text{ minutes.}$$

The total of the second column gives $\sum x^2 = 1280$. The variance is

$$\begin{aligned} s^2 &= \frac{\sum x^2 - n\bar{x}^2}{n - 1} \\ &= \frac{1280 - 8(9)^2}{8 - 1} \\ &\approx 90.3 \end{aligned}$$


and the standard deviation is

$$s \approx \sqrt{90.3} \approx 9.5 \text{ minutes. } \checkmark_3$$

✓ Checkpoint 3

Find the standard deviation for a sample of the number of miles traveled by various people to a vacation location:

135, 60, 50, 425, 380.

 **TECHNOLOGY TIP** The screens in Figure 10.6 show two ways to find variance and standard deviation on a TI-84+ calculator: with the LIST menu and with the STAT menu. The data points are first entered in a list—here, L_5 . See your instruction book for details.

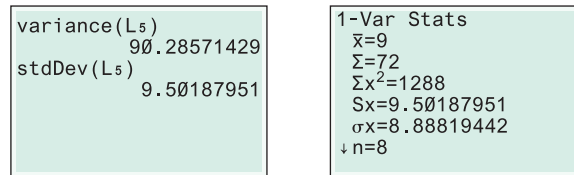



Figure 10.6

In a spreadsheet, enter the data in cells A1 through A8. Then, in cell A9, type “=VAR(A1:A8)” and press Enter. The standard deviation can be calculated either by taking the square root of cell A9 or by typing “=STDEV(A1:A8)” in cell A10 and pressing Enter.

 **CAUTION** We must be careful to divide by $n - 1$, not n , when calculating the standard deviation of a sample. Many calculators are equipped with statistical keys that compute the variance and standard deviation. Some of these calculators use $n - 1$, and others use n for these computations; some may have keys for both. Check your calculator’s instruction book before using a statistical calculator for the exercises.

One way to interpret the standard deviation uses the fact that, for many populations, most of the data are within three standard deviations of the mean. (See Section 10.4.) This implies that, in Example 3, most of the population data from which this sample is taken are between

$$\bar{x} - 3s = 9 - 3(9.5) = -19.5$$

and

$$\bar{x} + 3s = 9 + 3(9.5) = 37.5.$$

For Example 3, the preceding calculations imply that most phone conversations are less than 37.5 minutes long. This approach of determining whether sample observations are beyond 3 standard deviations of the mean is often employed in conducting quality control in many industries.


For data in a grouped frequency distribution, a slightly different formula for the standard deviation is used.

Standard Deviation for a Grouped Distribution

The standard deviation for a sample distribution with mean \bar{x} , where x is an interval midpoint with frequency f and $n = \sum f$, is

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\sum fx^2 - n\bar{x}^2}{n - 1}}.$$

The formula indicates that the product fx^2 is to be found for each interval. Then all the products are summed, n times the square of the mean is subtracted, and the difference is divided by one less than the total frequency—that is, by $n - 1$. The square root of this result is s , the standard deviation. The standard deviation found by this formula may (and probably will) differ somewhat from the standard deviation found from the original data.

 **CAUTION** In calculating the standard deviation for either a grouped or an ungrouped distribution, using a rounded value for the mean or variance may produce an inaccurate value.

Tuition Amount (in thousands of dollars)	Frequency
1.0–1.4	4
1.5–1.9	0
2.0–2.4	6
2.5–2.9	3
3.0–3.4	7
3.5–3.9	11
4.0–4.4	3
4.5–4.9	2
5.0–5.4	4

Example 4 Business The following frequency distribution gives the 2011–2012 annual tuition (in thousands of dollars) for a random sample of 40 community colleges. (Data from: www.collegeboard.org.)

Find the sample standard deviation s for these data.

Solution We first need to find the mean \bar{x} for these grouped data. We find the midpoint of each interval and label it x . We multiply the frequency by the midpoint x to obtain fx :

Tuition Amount (in thousands of dollars)	Frequency f	Midpoint x	fx
1.0–1.4	4	1.2	4.8
1.5–1.9	0	1.7	0
2.0–2.4	6	2.2	13.2
2.5–2.9	3	2.7	8.1
3.0–3.4	7	3.2	22.4
3.5–3.9	11	3.7	40.7
4.0–4.4	3	4.2	12.6
4.5–4.9	2	4.7	9.4
5.0–5.4	4	5.2	20.8
	Total = 40		Total = 132

Therefore,

$$\bar{x} = \frac{132}{40} = 3.3.$$

Now that we have the mean value, we can modify our table to include columns for x^2 and fx^2 . We obtain the following results:

Tuition Amount (in thousands of dollars)	Frequency f	Midpoint x	fx	x^2	fx^2
1.0–1.4	4	1.2	4.8	1.44	5.76
1.5–1.9	0	1.7	0	2.89	0
2.0–2.4	6	2.2	13.2	4.84	29.04
2.5–2.9	3	2.7	8.1	7.29	21.87
3.0–3.4	7	3.2	22.4	10.24	71.68
3.5–3.9	11	3.7	40.7	13.69	150.59
4.0–4.4	3	4.2	12.6	17.64	52.92
4.5–4.9	2	4.7	9.4	22.09	44.18
5.0–5.4	4	5.2	20.8	27.04	108.16
	Total = 40				Total = 484.2

We now use the formula for the standard deviation with $n = 40$ to find s :

$$\begin{aligned}
 s &= \sqrt{\frac{\sum fx^2 - n\bar{x}^2}{n - 1}} \\
 &= \sqrt{\frac{484.2 - 40(3.3)^2}{40 - 1}} \\
 &\approx 1.1. \quad \checkmark_4
 \end{aligned}$$

✓ Checkpoint 4

Find the standard deviation for the following grouped frequency distribution of the number of classes completed thus far in the college careers of a random sample of 52 students:

Classes	Frequency
0–5	6
6–10	10
11–20	12
21–30	15
31–40	9

Another way to interpret the standard deviation is to think of it as an *approximation* of the average deviation from the mean. In Example 4, the mean tuition was \$3300 and the standard deviation was \$1100. One way to think of what the value \$1100 represents is as the approximate average deviation from \$3300 for the 40 community colleges in the sample. Some colleges charge tuition close to \$3300 and some charge tuition further from \$3300, but the approximate average deviation from \$3300 is \$1100.

NOTE A calculator is almost a necessity for finding a standard deviation. With a nongraphing calculator, a good procedure to follow is first to calculate \bar{x} . Then, for each x , square that number, and multiply the result by the appropriate frequency. If your calculator has a key that accumulates a sum, use it to accumulate the total in the last column of the table. With a graphing calculator, simply enter the midpoints and the frequencies, and then ask for the one-variable statistics.

10.3 Exercises

- How are the variance and the standard deviation related?
- Why can't we use the sum of the deviations from the mean as a measure of dispersion of a distribution?

Finance Use the following table for Exercises 3–10, which lists expenditures (in billions of dollars with the exception of Parks and Recreation, which is in millions of dollars) for a random sample of seven states. Find the range and standard deviation among the seven states for each category of government expenditure. (See Examples 1–3.) (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

Type of Expenditure	State						
	GA	IL	LA	MI	NH	OH	PA
Education	24.9	34.8	12.0	29.1	3.6	32.8	35.1
Public Welfare	9.7	17.8	6.4	12.9	2.0	18.4	24.5
Hospitals	5.1	2.6	4.6	3.5	0.1	4.0	3.0
Health	2.0	3.1	0.9	3.8	0.1	3.9	3.8
Highways	3.4	8.2	2.9	3.7	0.7	4.8	8.6
Police Protection	2.2	4.6	1.4	2.4	0.3	3.3	3.1
Fire Protection	1.0	2.3	0.6	2.3	0.2	1.8	0.7
Parks and Recreation	964	2552	709	725	107	1226	1194

- Hospitals
- Health
- Highways
- Police Protection
- Fire Protection
- Parks and Recreation

Education Find the standard deviation for the grouped data in Exercises 11 and 12. (See Example 4.)

- Number of credits for a sample of college students:

College Credits	Frequency
0–24	4
25–49	3
50–74	6
75–99	3
100–124	5
125–149	9

- Scores on a calculus exam:

Scores	Frequency
30–39	1
40–49	6
50–59	13
60–69	22
70–79	17
80–89	13
90–99	8

- Education
- Public Welfare

Finance The data for Exercises 13–14 come from a random sample of 40 companies that were part of the S&P 500 and information was current as of May 24, 2013. (Hint: Do not round the mean when calculating the standard deviation.) (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

13. Closing stock price (dollars).

37.76	56.94	54.99	156.83
46.04	80.58	17.35	51.33
28.26	55.81	49.79	45.20
415.81	10.35	30.65	79.60
86.21	51.62	73.83	24.87
34.41	47.16	61.58	95.04
15.34	74.04	228.74	180.45
125.45	29.19	57.31	40.06
125.12	13.07	45.22	53.75
62.30	104.80	129.19	27.49

Find the mean and standard deviation of the closing stock price.

14. Market capitalization (billions of dollars).

58.9	12.1	14.3	19.4
8.2	85.1	11.2	8.8
3.1	5.1	9.7	87.4
15	3.5	11.8	142.9
56.7	6.1	12.8	21.8
7.6	19.4	13.7	7
4.1	7.9	14.4	14.7
243.2	3.1	22.4	19.4
13.2	7.2	7.2	10.2
40.9	8.8	39.3	5.1

Find the mean and standard deviation of the market capitalization.

An application of standard deviation is given by Chebyshev’s theorem. (P. L. Chebyshev was a Russian mathematician who lived from 1821 to 1894.) This theorem, which applies to any distribution of numerical data, states,

For any distribution of numerical data, at least $1 - 1/k^2$ of the numbers lie within k standard deviations of the mean.

Example For any distribution, at least

$$1 - \frac{1}{3^2} = 1 - \frac{1}{9} = \frac{8}{9}$$

of the numbers lie within 3 standard deviations of the mean. Find the fraction of all the numbers of a data set lying within the given numbers of standard deviations from the mean.

15. 2 16. 4 17. 1.5

In a certain distribution of numbers, the mean is 50, with a standard deviation of 6. Use Chebyshev’s theorem to tell what percent of the numbers are

18. between 32 and 68;

19. between 26 and 74;
 20. less than 38 or more than 62;
 21. less than 32 or more than 68;
 22. less than 26 or more than 74.

Business For Exercises 23–28 use the following table, which gives the total amounts of sales (in millions of dollars) for aerobic, basketball, cross-training, and walking shoes in the United States for the years 2005–2011. (Hint: Use a mean value calculated to at least 4 decimal places when calculating the standard deviation.) (Data from: ProQuest Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2013.)

Year	Aerobic	Basketball	Cross-training	Walking
2005	261	878	1437	3673
2006	262	964	1516	4091
2007	280	892	1584	4197
2008	260	718	1626	4204
2009	223	741	2071	4416
2010	249	721	2121	4256
2011	252	729	2143	4299

Find the mean and standard deviation for the type of shoe listed.

23. Aerobic shoes
 24. Basketball shoes
 25. Cross-training shoes
 26. Walking shoes
 27. Which type of shoe shows greater variation: aerobic or cross-training?
 28. Which type of shoe shows greater variation: basketball or walking?

For Exercises 29–32, see Example 4.

29. **Economics** A sample of 40 households from the American Housing Survey generates the following frequency table of household income (in thousands). Find the standard deviation.

Interval	Frequency
0–29	12
30–59	3
60–89	10
90–119	2
120–149	0
150–179	1
180–209	2

30. **Business** The number of hours worked in a week for 30 workers selected at random from the 2012 General Social Survey

appears in the following frequency table. Find the standard deviation. (Data from: www3.norc.org/gss+website.)

Interval	Frequency
0–9	1
10–19	3
20–29	5
30–39	3
40–49	12
50–59	3
60–69	1
70–79	2

31. **Natural Science** The number of recognized blood types of various animal species is given in the following table:

Animal	Number of Blood Types
Pig	16
Cow	12
Chicken	11
Horse	9
Human	8
Sheep	7
Dog	7
Rhesus Monkey	6
Mink	5
Rabbit	5
Mouse	4
Rat	4
Cat	2

In Exercise 28 of the previous section, the mean was found to be 7.38.

- (a) Find the variance and the standard deviation of this data.
 (b) How many of these animals have blood types that are within 1 standard deviation of the mean?
32. **Business** The Quaker Oats Company conducted a survey to determine whether a proposed premium, to be included with purchases of the firm's cereal, was appealing enough to generate new sales.* Four cities were used as test markets, where the cereal was distributed with the premium, and four cities were used as control markets, where the cereal was distributed without the premium. The eight cities were chosen on the basis of their similarity in terms of population, per-capita income, and total cereal purchase volume. The results were as follows:

		Percent Change in Average Market Shares per Month
Test Cities	1	+18
	2	+15
	3	+7
	4	+10
Control Cities	1	+1
	2	-8
	3	-5
	4	0

- (a) Find the mean of the change in market share for the four test cities.
 (b) Find the mean of the change in market share for the four control cities.
 (c) Find the standard deviation of the change in market share for the test cities.
 (d) Find the standard deviation of the change in market share for the control cities.
 (e) Find the difference between the mean of part (a) and the mean of part (b). This represents the estimate of the percent change in sales due to the premium.
 (f) The two standard deviations from part (c) and part (d) were used to calculate an “error” of ± 7.95 for the estimate in part (e). With this amount of error, what is the smallest and largest estimate of the increase in sales? (*Hint*: Use the answer to part (e).)

On the basis of the results of this exercise, the company decided to mass-produce the premium and distribute it nationally.

33. **Business** The following table gives 10 samples of three measurements made during a production run:

SAMPLE NUMBER									
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
2	3	-2	-3	-1	3	0	-1	2	0
-2	-1	0	1	2	2	1	2	3	0
1	4	1	2	4	2	2	3	2	2

- (a) Find the mean \bar{x} for each sample of three measurements.
 (b) Find the standard deviation s for each sample of three measurements.
 (c) Find the mean $\bar{\bar{x}}$ of the sample means.
 (d) Find the mean \bar{s} of the sample standard deviations.
 (e) The upper and lower control limits of the sample means here are $\bar{\bar{x}} \pm 1.954\bar{s}$. Find these limits. If any of the measurements are outside these limits, the process is out of control. Decide whether this production process is out of control.
34. Discuss what the standard deviation tells us about a distribution.

*This example was supplied by Jeffery S. Berman, senior analyst, Marketing Information, Quaker Oats Company.

Social Science Shown in the following table are the reading scores of a second-grade class given individualized instruction

and the reading scores of a second-grade class given traditional instruction in the same school:

Scores	Individualized Instruction	Traditional Instruction
50–59	2	5
60–69	4	8
70–79	7	8
80–89	9	7
90–99	8	6

35. Find the mean and standard deviation for the individualized-instruction scores.

36. Find the mean and standard deviation for the traditional-instruction scores.

37. Discuss a possible interpretation of the differences in the means and the standard deviations in Exercises 35 and 36.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- 373
- Mean is 210; deviations are $-75, -150, -160, 215,$ and 170 .
- 179.5 miles
- 10.91 classes

10.4 Normal Distributions and Boxplots

Suppose a bank is interested in improving its services to customers. The manager decides to begin by finding the amount of time tellers spend on each transaction, rounded to the nearest minute. The times for 75 different transactions are recorded, with the results shown in the following table, where the frequencies listed in the second column are divided by 75 to find the empirical probabilities:

Time	Frequency	Probability
1	3	$3/75 = .04$
2	5	$5/75 \approx .07$
3	9	$9/75 = .12$
4	12	$12/75 = .16$
5	15	$15/75 = .20$
6	11	$11/75 \approx .15$
7	10	$10/75 \approx .13$
8	6	$6/75 = .08$
9	3	$3/75 = .04$
10	1	$1/75 \approx .01$

Figure 10.7(a), on the following page, shows a histogram and frequency polygon for the data. The heights of the bars are the empirical probabilities, rather than the frequencies. The transaction times are given to the nearest minute. Theoretically, at least, they could have been timed to the nearest tenth of a minute, or hundredth of a minute, or even more precisely. In each case, a histogram and frequency polygon could be drawn. If the times are measured with smaller and smaller units, there are more bars in the histogram and the frequency polygon begins to look more and more like the curve in Figure 10.7(b) instead of a polygon. Actually, it is possible for the transaction times to take on any real-number value greater than 0. A distribution in which the outcomes can take on any real-number value within some interval is a **continuous distribution**. The graph of a continuous distribution is a curve.

The distribution of heights (in inches) of college women is another example of a continuous distribution, since these heights include infinitely many possible measurements,

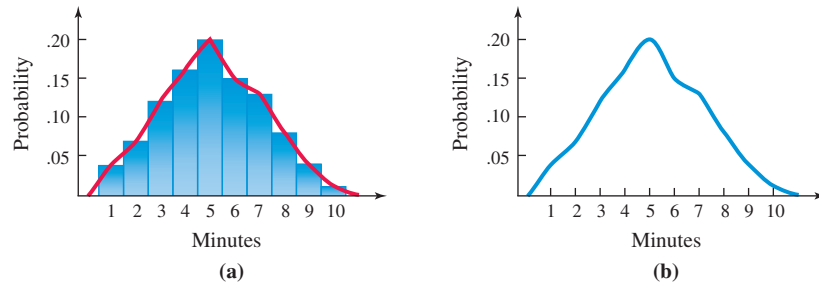


Figure 10.7

such as 53, 58.5, 66.3, 72.666, and so on. Figure 10.8 shows the continuous distribution of heights of college women. Here, the most frequent heights occur near the center of the interval displayed.

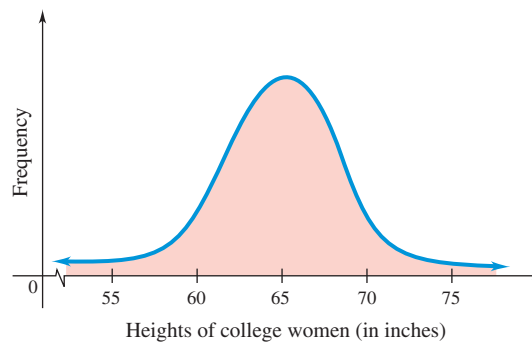


Figure 10.8

Normal Distributions

As discussed on page 543, we say that data are normal (or normally distributed) when their graph is well approximated by a bell-shaped curve. (See Figure 10.9.) We call the graphs of such distributions **normal curves**. Examples of distributions that are approximately normal are the heights of college women and cholesterol levels in adults. We use the Greek letters μ (mu) to denote the mean and σ (sigma) to denote the standard deviation of a normal distribution.

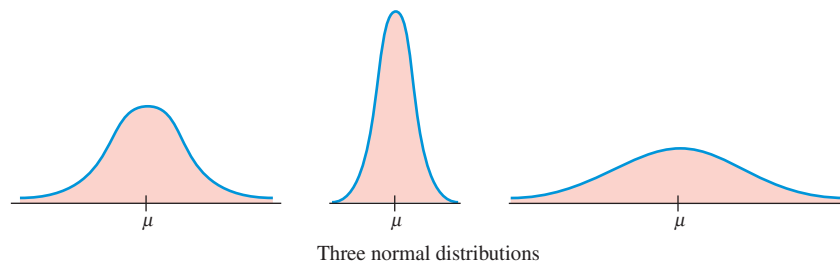


Figure 10.9

There are many normal distributions, depending on μ and σ . Some of the corresponding normal curves are tall and thin, and others short and wide, as shown in Figure 10.9. But every normal curve has the following properties:

1. Its peak occurs directly above the mean μ .
2. The curve is symmetric about the vertical line through the mean. (That is, if you fold the graph along this line, the left half of the graph will fit exactly on the right half.)

3. The curve never touches the x -axis—it extends indefinitely in both directions.
4. The area under the curve (and above the horizontal axis) is 1. (As can be shown with calculus, this is a consequence of the fact that the sum of the probabilities in any distribution is 1.)

A normal distribution is completely determined by its mean μ and standard deviation σ .^{*} A small standard deviation leads to a tall, narrow curve like the one in the center of Figure 10.9, because most of the data are close to the mean. A large standard deviation means the data are very spread out, producing a flat, wide curve like the one on the right in Figure 10.9.

Since the area under a normal curve is 1, parts of this area can be used to determine certain probabilities. For instance, Figure 10.10(a) is the probability distribution of the annual rainfall in a certain region. The probability that the annual rainfall will be between 25 and 35 inches is the area under the curve from 25 to 35. The general case, shown in Figure 10.10(b), can be stated as follows.

The area of the shaded region under the normal curve from a to b is the probability that an observed data value will be between a and b .

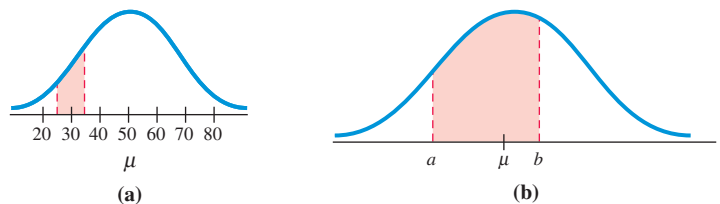


Figure 10.10

To use normal curves effectively, we must be able to calculate areas under portions of them. These calculations have already been done for the normal curve with mean $\mu = 0$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 1$ (which is called the **standard normal curve**) and are available in Table 2 at the back of the book. Examples 1 and 2 demonstrate how to use Table 2 to find such areas. Later, we shall see how the standard normal curve may be used to find areas under any normal curve.

The horizontal axis of the standard normal curve is usually labeled z . Since the standard deviation of the standard normal curve is 1, the numbers along the horizontal axis (the z -values) measure the number of standard deviations above or below the mean $z = 0$.

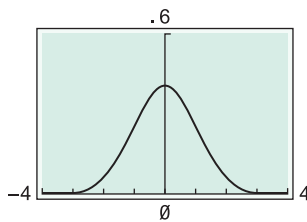


Figure 10.11

TECHNOLOGY TIP Some graphing calculators (such as the TI-84+ and most Casios) have the ability to graph a normal distribution, given its mean and standard deviation, and to find areas under the curve between two x -values. For an area under the curve, some calculators will give the corresponding z -value. For details, see your instruction book. (Look for “distribution” or “probability distribution.”) A calculator-generated graph of the standard normal curve is shown in Figure 10.11.

^{*}As shown in more advanced courses, its graph is the graph of the function

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-(x-\mu)^2/(2\sigma^2)},$$

where $e \approx 2.71828$ is the real number introduced in Section 4.1.

Example 1

Find the given areas under the standard normal curve.

- (a) The area between $z = 0$ and $z = 1$, the shaded region in Figure 10.12

Solution Find the entry 1 in the z -column of Table 2. The entry next to it in the A -column is .3413, which means that the area between $z = 0$ and $z = 1$ is .3413. Since the total area under the curve is 1, the shaded area in Figure 10.12 is 34.13% of the total area under the normal curve.

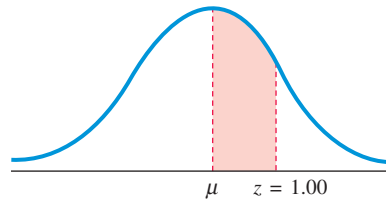


Figure 10.12

- (b) The area between $z = -2.43$ and $z = 0$

Solution Table 2 lists only positive values of z . But the normal curve is symmetric around the mean $z = 0$, so the area between $z = 0$ and $z = -2.43$ is the same as the area between $z = 0$ and $z = 2.43$. Find 2.43 in the z -column of Table 2. The entry next to it in the A -column shows that the area is .4925. Hence, the shaded area in Figure 10.13 is 49.25% of the total area under the curve. ✓₁ ✓₂

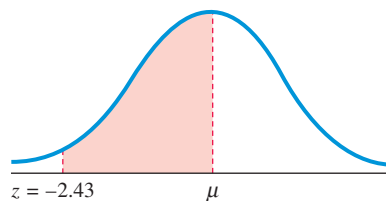
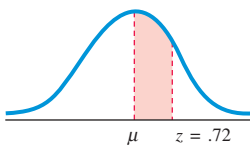


Figure 10.13

✓ **Checkpoint 1**

Find the percent of the area between the mean and

- (a) $z = 1.51$;
 (b) $z = -2.04$.
 (c) Find the percent of the area in the shaded region.



✓ **Checkpoint 2**

If your calculator can graph probability distributions and find areas, use it to find the areas requested in Example 1.

Scrolled

```
normalcdf(-2.43, 0, 0, 1)
.4924505896
normalcdf(-1E99, -2.43, 0, 1)
.007549411
```

Figure 10.14



TECHNOLOGY TIP

Because of their convenience and accuracy, graphing calculators and computers have made normal-curve tables less important. Figure 10.14 shows how part (b) of Example 1 can be done on a TI-84+ calculator using a command from the DISTR menu. The second result in the calculator screen gives the area between $-\infty$ and $z = -2.43$; the entry $-1E99$ represents $-1 \cdot 10^{99}$, which is used to approximate $-\infty$.

Many statistical software packages are widely used today. All of these packages are set up in a way that is similar to a spreadsheet, and they all can be used to generate normal curve values. In addition, most spreadsheets can perform a wide range of statistical calculations.

Example 2

Use technology or Table 2 to find the percent of the total area for the given areas under the standard normal curve.

- (a) The area between .88 standard deviations *below* the mean and 2.35 standard deviations *above* the mean (that is, between $z = -.88$ and $z = 2.35$)

Solution First, draw a sketch showing the desired area, as in Figure 10.15. From Table 2, the area between the mean and .88 standard deviations below the mean is .3106. Also,

the area from the mean to 2.35 standard deviations above the mean is .4906. As the figure shows, the total desired area can be found by *adding* these numbers:

$$\begin{array}{r} .3106 \\ +.4906 \\ \hline .8012. \end{array}$$

The shaded area in Figure 10.15 represents 80.12% of the total area under the normal curve.

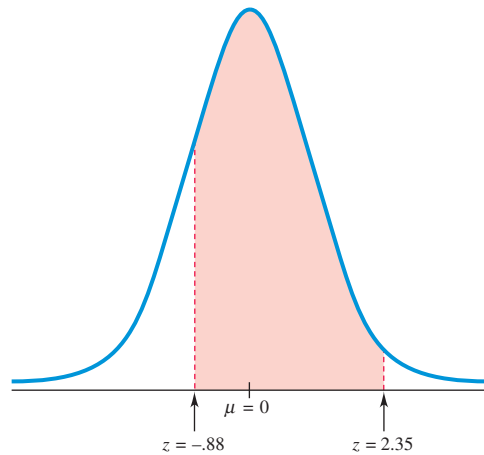


Figure 10.15

(b) The area between .58 standard deviations above the mean and 1.94 standard deviations above the mean

Solution Figure 10.16 shows the desired area. The area between the mean and .58 standard deviations above the mean is .2190. The area between the mean and 1.94 standard deviations above the mean is .4738. As the figure shows, the desired area is found by *subtracting* one area from the other:

$$\begin{array}{r} .4738 \\ - .2190 \\ \hline .2548. \end{array}$$

The shaded area of Figure 10.16 represents 25.48% of the total area under the normal curve.

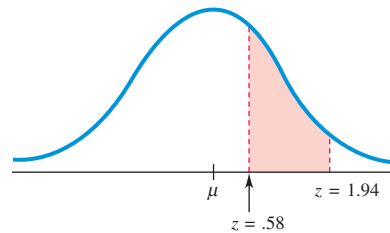


Figure 10.16

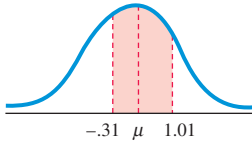
(c) The area to the right of 2.09 standard deviations above the mean

Solution The total area under a normal curve is 1. Thus, the total area to the right of the mean is 1/2, or .5000. From Table 2, the area from the mean to 2.09 standard deviations

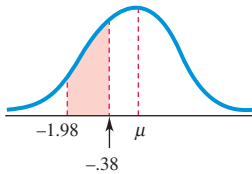
✓ Checkpoint 3

Find the given standard normal-curve areas as percentages of the total area.

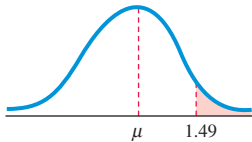
- (a) Between .31 standard deviations below the mean and 1.01 standard deviations above the mean



- (b) Between .38 standard deviations and 1.98 standard deviations below the mean



- (c) To the right of 1.49 standard deviations above the mean



- (d) What percent of the area is within 1 standard deviation of the mean? within 2 standard deviations of the mean? within 3 standard deviations of the mean? What can you conclude from the last answer?

✓ Checkpoint 4

Find each z -score, using the information in Example 3.

- (a) $x = 36$
 (b) $x = 55$

above the mean is .4817. The area to the right of 2.09 standard deviations is found by subtracting .4817 from .5000:

$$\begin{array}{r} .5000 \\ - .4817 \\ \hline .0183 \end{array}$$

A total of 1.83% of the total area is to the right of 2.09 standard deviations above the mean. Figure 10.17 (which is not to scale) shows the desired area. ✓₃

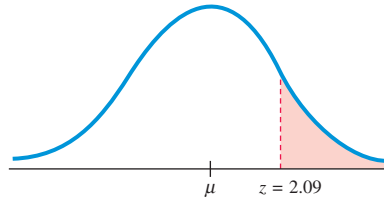


Figure 10.17

The key to finding areas under *any* normal curve is to express each number x on the horizontal axis in terms of standard deviations above or below the mean. The z -score for x is the number of standard deviations that x lies from the mean (positive if x is above the mean, negative if x is below the mean).

Example 3

If a normal distribution has mean 60 and standard deviation 5, find the given z -scores.

- (a) The z -score for $x = 65$

Solution Since 65 is 5 units above 60 and the standard deviation is 5, 65 is 1 standard deviation above the mean. So its z -score is 1.

- (b) The z -score for $x = 52.5$

Solution The z -score is -1.5 , because 52.5 is 7.5 units below the mean (since $52.5 - 60 = -7.5$) and 7.5 is 1.5 standard deviations (since $7.5/5 = 1.5$). ✓₄

In Example 3(b) we found the z -score by taking the difference between 52.5 and the mean and dividing this difference by the standard deviation. The same procedure works in the general case.

Z-Score

If a normal distribution has mean μ and standard deviation σ , then the z -score for the number x is

$$z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma}$$

The importance of z -scores is the following fact, whose proof is omitted.

Area under a Normal Curve

The area under a normal curve between $x = a$ and $x = b$ is the same as the area under the standard normal curve between the z -score for a and the z -score for b .

Therefore, by converting to z -scores and using a graphing calculator or Table 2 for the standard normal curve, we can find areas under any normal curve. Since these areas are probabilities (as explained earlier), we can now handle a variety of applications.

Graphing calculators, computer programs, and CAS programs (such as DERIVE) can be used to find areas under the normal curve and, hence, probabilities. The equation of the standard normal curve, with $\mu = 0$ and $\sigma = 1$, is

$$f(x) = (1/\sqrt{2\pi})e^{-x^2/2}.$$

A good approximation of the area under this curve (and above $y = 0$) can be found by using the x -interval $[-4, 4]$. However, calculus is needed to find such areas.

Example 4 Business Dixie Office Supplies finds that its sales force drives an average of 1200 miles per month per person, with a standard deviation of 150 miles. Assume that the number of miles driven by a salesperson is closely approximated by a normal distribution.

(a) Find the probability that a salesperson drives between 1200 and 1600 miles per month.

Solution Here, $\mu = 1200$ and $\sigma = 150$, and we must find the area under the normal distribution curve between $x = 1200$ and $x = 1600$. We begin by finding the z -score for $x = 1200$:

$$z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma} = \frac{1200 - 1200}{150} = \frac{0}{150} = 0.$$

The z -score for $x = 1600$ is

$$z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma} = \frac{1600 - 1200}{150} = \frac{400}{150} = 2.67.*$$

So the area under the curve from $x = 1200$ to $x = 1600$ is the same as the area under the standard normal curve from $z = 0$ to $z = 2.67$, as indicated in Figure 10.18. A graphing calculator or Table 2 shows that this area is .4962. Therefore, the probability that a salesperson drives between 1200 and 1600 miles per month is .4962.

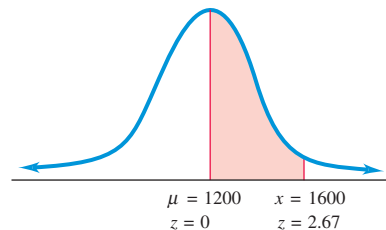


Figure 10.18

(b) Find the probability that a salesperson drives between 1000 and 1500 miles per month.

Solution As shown in Figure 10.19, z -scores for both $x = 1000$ and $x = 1500$ are needed.

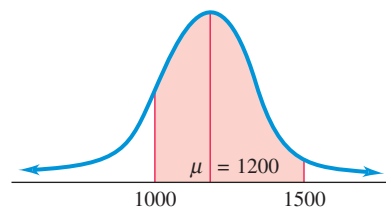



Figure 10.19

*All z -scores here are rounded to two decimal places.

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 \text{For } x = 1000, & & \text{For } x = 1500, \\
 z = \frac{1000 - 1200}{150} & & z = \frac{1500 - 1200}{150} \\
 = \frac{-200}{150} & & = \frac{300}{150} \\
 = -1.33. & & = 2.00.
 \end{array}$$

From Table 2, $z = 1.33$ leads to an area of .4082, while $z = 2.00$ corresponds to .4773. A total of $.4082 + .4773 = .8855$, or 88.55%, of all drivers travel between 1000 and 1500 miles per month. From this calculation, the probability that a driver travels between 1000 and 1500 miles per month is .8855. 

Checkpoint 5

With the data from Example 4, find the probability that a salesperson drives between 1000 and 1450 miles per month.

Example 5 **Health** With data from the 2009–2010 National Health and Nutritional Examination Survey (NHANES), we can use 186 (mg/dL) as an estimate of the mean total cholesterol level for all Americans and 41 (mg/dL) as an estimate of the standard deviation. Assuming total cholesterol levels to be normally distributed, what is the probability that an American chosen at random has a cholesterol level higher than 250? If 200 Americans are chosen at random, how many can we expect to have total cholesterol higher than 250? (Data from: www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhanes.htm.)


Solution Here, $\mu = 186$ and $\sigma = 41$. The probability that a randomly chosen American has cholesterol higher than 250 is the area under the normal curve to the right of $x = 250$. The z -score for $x = 250$ is

$$z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma} = \frac{250 - 186}{41} = \frac{64}{41} = 1.56.$$

From Table 2, we see that the area to the right of 1.56 is $.5 - .4406 = .0594$, which is 5.94% of the total area under the curve. Therefore, the probability of a randomly chosen American having cholesterol higher than 250 is .0594.


With 5.94% of Americans having total cholesterol higher than 250, selecting 200 Americans at random yields


$$5.94\% \text{ of } 200 = .0594 \cdot 200 = 11.88.$$

Approximately 12 of these Americans can be expected to have a total cholesterol level higher than 250. 

Checkpoint 6

Using the mean and standard deviation from Example 5, find the probability that an adult selected at random has a cholesterol level below 150.

 **NOTE** Notice in Example 5 that $P(z \geq 1.56) = P(z > 1.56)$. The area under the curve is the same whether we include the endpoint or not. Notice also that $P(z = 1.56) = 0$, because no area is included.

 **CAUTION** When calculating the normal probability, it is wise to draw a normal curve with the mean and the z -scores every time. This practice will avoid confusion as to whether you should add or subtract probabilities.

As mentioned earlier, z -scores are standard deviations, so $z = 1$ corresponds to 1 standard deviation above the mean, and so on. As found in Checkpoint 3(d) of this section, 68.26% of the area under a normal curve lies within 1 standard deviation of the mean. Also, 95.46% lies within 2 standard deviations of the mean, and 99.74% lies within 3 standard deviations of the mean. These results, summarized in Figure 10.20, can be used to get quick estimates when you work with normal curves.

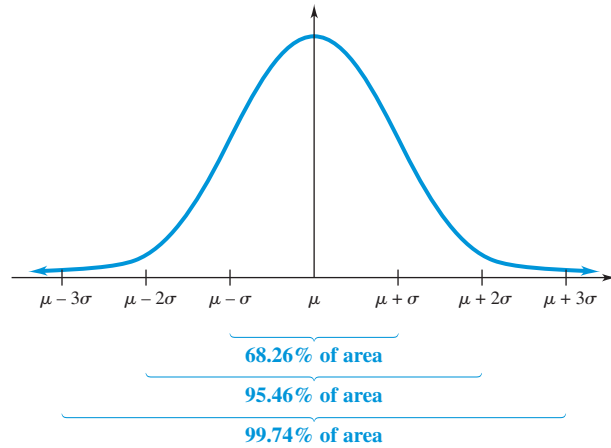
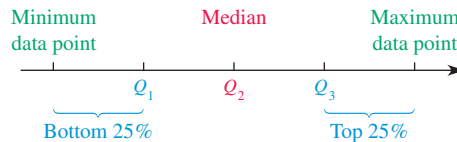


Figure 10.20

Boxplots

The normal curve is useful because you can easily read various characteristics of the data from the picture. Boxplots are another graphical means of presenting key characteristics of a data set. The idea is to arrange the data in increasing order and choose three numbers Q_1 , Q_2 , and Q_3 that divide it into four equal parts, as indicated schematically in the following diagram:



The number Q_1 is called the **first quartile**, the median Q_2 is called the **second quartile**, and Q_3 is called the **third quartile**. The minimum, Q_1 , Q_2 , Q_3 , and the maximum are often called the **five-number summary**, and they are used to construct a boxplot, as illustrated in Examples 6 and 7.

Example 6

The following table gives the revenue (in billions of dollars) for Home Depot and Lowe’s home improvement corporations for the given years. Construct a boxplot for the Home Depot revenue data. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

Year	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013
Home Depot	64.8	73.1	81.5	90.8	77.3	71.3	66.2	68.0	70.4	74.8
Lowe’s	30.8	36.5	43.2	46.9	48.3	48.2	47.2	48.8	50.2	50.5

Solution First, we have to order the revenues from low to high:

64.8, 66.2, 68.0, 70.4, **71.3, 73.1**, 74.8, 77.3, 81.5, 90.8,

The minimum revenue is 64.8, and the maximum revenue is 90.8. Since there is an even number of data points, the median revenue Q_2 is 72.2 (halfway between the two center entries). To find Q_1 , which separates the lower 25% of the data from the rest, we first calculate

$$25\% \text{ of } n \text{ (rounded up to the nearest integer),}$$

where n is the number of data points. Here, $n = 10$, and so $.25(10) = 2.5$, which rounds up to **3**. Now count to the **third** revenue (in order) to get $Q_1 = 68.0$.

Similarly, since Q_3 separates the lower 75% of the data from the rest, we calculate

75% of n (rounded up to the nearest integer).

When $n = 10$, we have $.75(10) = 7.5$, which rounds up to **8**. Count to the *eighth* observation (in order), getting $Q_3 = 77.3$.

The five key numbers for constructing the boxplot are as follows:

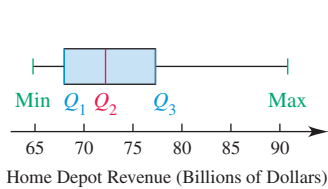


Figure 10.21

Minimum, Q_1 , Q_2 , Q_3 , Maximum
 64.8, 68.0, 72.2, 77.3, 90.8

Draw a horizontal axis that will include the minimum and maximum values. Draw a box with left boundary at Q_1 and a right boundary at Q_3 . Mark the location of the median Q_2 by drawing a vertical line in the box as shown in Figure 10.21.

Boxplots are useful in showing the location of the middle 50% of the data. This is the region of the box between Q_1 and Q_3 . Boxplots are also quite useful in comparing two distributions that are measured on the same scale, as we will see in Example 7.

Example 7 Business Construct a boxplot for the Lowe's revenue data in Example 6 with the Home Depot revenue boxplot on the same graph.

Solution The Lowe's data first need to be sorted low to high:

30.8, 36.5, 43.2, 46.9, 47.2, 48.2, 48.3, 48.8, 50.2, 50.5.

The minimum is 30.8, the maximum is 50.5, and the median $Q_2 = 47.7$. Again, $n = 10$, and so

25% of $n = .25(10) = 2.5$, which rounds up to **3**,

so that $Q_1 = 43.2$ (the *third* revenue). Similarly,

75% of $n = .75(10) = 7.5$, which rounds up to **8**,

so that $Q_3 = 48.8$ (the *eighth* revenue).

We can now use the minimum, Q_1 , Q_2 , and Q_3 , and the maximum to place the boxplot of Lowe's data below the Home Depot boxplot, as shown in Figure 10.22.

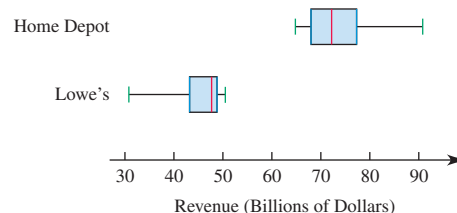


Figure 10.22

When we compare the revenue distributions in this way, we see how much more revenue Home Depot generated in the studied years than Lowe's. Because the box for Home Depot is wider, and the distance from the minimum to the maximum is also wider for Home Depot, we can also say that there is a greater degree of variability for Home Depot.

✓ Checkpoint 7

Create a boxplot for the weights (in kilograms) for eight first-year students:

88, 79, 67, 69, 58, 53, 89, 57.

TECHNOLOGY TIP Many graphing calculators can graph boxplots for single-variable data. The procedure is similar to plotting data with the STAT PLOT menu.

10.4 Exercises

- The peak in a normal curve occurs directly above _____.
- The total area under a normal curve (above the horizontal axis) is _____.
- How are z -scores found for normal distributions with $\mu \neq 0$ or $\sigma \neq 1$?
- How is the standard normal curve used to find probabilities for normal distributions?

Find the percentage of the area under a normal curve between the mean and the given number of standard deviations from the mean. (See Example 1.)

- 1.75
- .26
- .43
- 2.4

Find the percentage of the total area under the standard normal curve between the given z -scores. (See Examples 1 and 2.)

- $z = 1.41$ and $z = 2.83$
- $z = .64$ and $z = 2.11$
- $z = -2.48$ and $z = -.05$
- $z = -1.63$ and $z = -1.08$
- $z = -3.05$ and $z = 1.36$
- $z = -2.91$ and $z = -.51$

Find a z -score satisfying each of the given conditions. (Hint: Use Table 2 backward or a graphing calculator.)

- 5% of the total area is to the right of z .
- 1% of the total area is to the left of z .
- 15% of the total area is to the left of z .
- 25% of the total area is to the right of z .
- For any normal distribution, what is the value of $P(x \leq \mu)$? of $P(x \geq \mu)$?
- Using Chebyshev's theorem and the normal distribution, compare the probability that a number will lie within 2 standard deviations of the mean of a probability distribution. (See Exercises 15–22 of Section 10.3.) Explain what you observe.
- Repeat Exercise 20, using 3 standard deviations.

Assume the distributions in Exercises 22–30 are all normal. (See Example 4.)

- Business** According to the label, a regular can of Campbell's™ soup holds an average of 305 grams, with a standard deviation of 4.2 grams. What is the probability that a can will be sold that holds more than 306 grams?
- Business** A jar of Adams Old Fashioned Peanut Butter contains 453 grams, with a standard deviation of 10.1 grams. Find the probability that one of these jars contains less than 450 grams.
- Business** A General Electric soft-white three-way lightbulb has an average life of 1200 hours, with a standard deviation of 50 hours. Find the probability that the life of one of these bulbs will be between 1150 and 1300 hours.

- Business** A 100-watt lightbulb has an average brightness of 1640 lumens, with a standard deviation of 62 lumens. What is the probability that a 100-watt bulb will have a brightness between 1600 and 1700 lumens?
- Social Science** The scores on a standardized test in a suburban high school have a mean of 80, with a standard deviation of 12. What is the probability that a student will have a score less than 60?
- Health** Using the data from the same study as in Example 5, we find that the average HDL cholesterol level is 52.6 mg/dL, with a standard deviation of 15.5 mg/dL. Find the probability that an individual will have an HDL cholesterol level greater than 60 mg/dL.
- Business** The production of cars per day at an assembly plant has mean 120.5 and standard deviation 6.2. Find the probability that fewer than 100 cars are produced on a random day.
- Business** Starting salaries for accounting majors have mean \$53,300, with standard deviation \$3,200. What is the probability an individual will start at a salary above \$56,000?
- Social Science** The driving distance to work for residents of a certain community has mean 21 miles and standard deviation 3.6 miles. What is the probability that an individual drives between 10 and 20 miles to work?

Business Scores on the Graduate Management Association Test (GMAT) are approximately normally distributed. The mean score for 2007–2008 is 540, with a standard deviation of 100. For the following exercises, find the probability that a GMAT test taker selected at random earns a score in the given range, using the normal distribution as a model. (Data from: www.gmac.com.)

- Between 540 and 700
- Between 300 and 540
- Between 300 and 700
- Less than 400
- Greater than 750
- Between 600 and 700
- Between 300 and 400

Social Science New studies by Federal Highway Administration traffic engineers suggest that speed limits on many thoroughfares are set arbitrarily and often are artificially low. According to traffic engineers, the ideal limit should be the “85th-percentile speed,” the speed at or below which 85% of the traffic moves. Assuming that speeds are normally distributed, find the 85th-percentile speed for roads with the given conditions.




38. The mean speed is 55 mph, with a standard deviation of 10 mph.
39. The mean speed is 40 mph, with a standard deviation of 5 mph.

Education One professor uses the following system for assigning letter grades in a course:

Grade	Total Points
A	Greater than $\mu + \frac{3}{2}\sigma$
B	$\mu + \frac{1}{2}\sigma$ to $\mu + \frac{3}{2}\sigma$
C	$\mu - \frac{1}{2}\sigma$ to $\mu + \frac{1}{2}\sigma$
D	$\mu - \frac{3}{2}\sigma$ to $\mu - \frac{1}{2}\sigma$
F	Below $\mu - \frac{3}{2}\sigma$

What percentage of the students receive the given grades?

40. A 41. B 42. C

-  43. Do you think the system in Exercises 40–42 would be more likely to be fair in a large first-year class in psychology or in a graduate seminar of five students? Why?

Health In nutrition, the recommended daily allowance of vitamins is a number set by the government as a guide to an individual's daily vitamin intake. Actually, vitamin needs vary drastically from person to person, but the needs are very closely approximated by a normal curve. To calculate the recommended daily allowance, the government first finds the average need for vitamins among people in the population and then the standard deviation. The recommended daily allowance is defined as the mean plus 2.5 times the standard deviation.

44. What percentage of the population will receive adequate amounts of vitamins under this plan?

Find the recommended daily allowance for the following vitamins.

45. Mean = 550 units, standard deviation = 46 units
46. Mean = 1700 units, standard deviation = 120 units
47. Mean = 155 units, standard deviation = 14 units
48. Mean = 1080 units, standard deviation = 86 units

Education The mean performance score of a large group of fifth-grade students on a math achievement test is 88. The scores are known to be normally distributed. What percentage of the students had scores as follows?

49. More than 1 standard deviation above the mean
50. More than 2 standard deviations above the mean

Business The table gives the annual revenue for Pepsi Co. and Coca-Cola Co. (in billions of U.S. dollars) for a 10-year

period. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.) (See Examples 6 and 7.)

Year	Pepsi	Coca-Cola
2003	27.0	21.0
2004	29.3	22.0
2005	32.6	23.1
2006	35.1	24.1
2007	39.5	28.9
2008	43.3	31.9
2009	43.2	31.0
2010	57.8	35.1
2011	66.6	46.5
2012	65.5	48.0

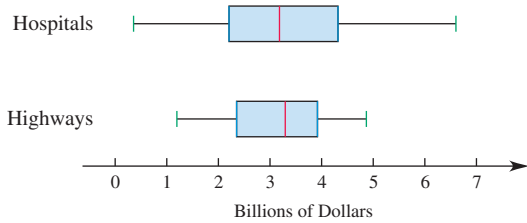
51. What is the five-number summary for Pepsi?
52. What is the five-number summary for Coca-Cola?
53. Construct a boxplot for Pepsi.
54. Construct a boxplot for Coca-Cola.
55. Graph the boxplots for Pepsi and Coca-Cola on the same scale. Are the distributions similar?
56. Which company has the higher median of sales over the 10-year period?

Finance Use the following table for Exercises 57–60. The table contains data from a random sample of 12 states and lists expenditures (in billions of dollars) by category spent by states and local communities. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)

State	Education	Public Welfare
AL	13.2	6.0
AR	13.4	8.5
CO	13.2	4.2
GA	25.0	9.7
IA	9.3	4.6
MI	29.1	12.9
MO	14.2	7.4
NC	23.7	11.2
NJ	31.8	14.0
OH	32.8	18.4
WA	18.4	14.0
WV	5.3	3.0

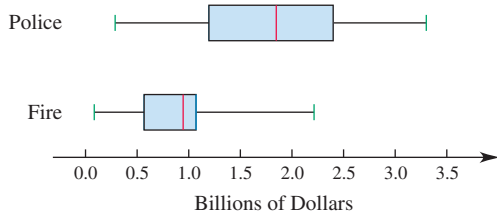
57. What is the five-number summary for the expenditures on education?
58. What is the five-number summary for the expenditures on public welfare?
59. Construct a boxplot for the expenditures on education.
60. Construct a boxplot for the expenditures on public welfare.

Finance For Exercises 61–62, use the boxplots below from data similar to Exercises 57–60 for state and local community expenditures on hospitals and highways.



61. Estimate Q_1 , Q_2 , and Q_3 for hospital and highway spending.
62. Is there greater variability in hospital spending or highway spending? How do you know?

Finance For Exercises 63–64, use the boxplots below constructed from data similar to those in Exercises 57–60 for state and local community expenditures on police and fire protection.



63. Is there greater variability in spending on police or fire protection? How do you know?
64. Estimate Q_1 , Q_2 , and Q_3 for police and fire protection spending.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

1. (a) 43.45% (b) 47.93% (c) 26.42%
2. (a) 34.13% (b) 49.25%
3. (a) 46.55% (b) 32.82% (c) 6.81%
- (d) 68.26%, 95.46%, 99.74%;
almost all the data lie within 3 standard deviations of the mean.
4. (a) -4.8 (b) -1
5. .8607
6. .1894
- 7.

10.5 Normal Approximation to the Binomial Distribution

As we saw in Section 9.4, many practical experiments have only two possible outcomes, sometimes referred to as success or failure. Such experiments are called Bernoulli trials or Bernoulli processes. Examples of Bernoulli trials include flipping a coin (with heads being a success, for instance, and tails a failure) and testing a computer chip coming off the assembly line to see whether it is defective. A binomial experiment consists of repeated independent Bernoulli trials, such as flipping a coin 10 times or taking a random sample of 20 computer chips from the assembly line. In Section 9.4, we found the probability distribution for several binomial experiments, such as sampling five people with bachelor's degrees in education and counting how many are women. The probability distribution for a binomial experiment is known as a **binomial distribution**.

As another example, it is reported that 44% of registered vehicles in the United States are vans, pickup trucks, or sport utility vehicles (SUVs). (Data from: *The Statistical Abstract of the United States: 2012*.) Suppose an auto insurance agent wants to verify this statistic and records the type of vehicle for 10 randomly selected drivers. The agent finds that 3 out of 10, or 30%, are vans, pickups, or SUVs. How likely is this result if the figure for all vehicles is truly 44%? We can answer that question with the binomial probability formula

$${}_n C_x \cdot p^x (1 - p)^{n-x},$$

where n is the sample size (10 in this case); x is the number of vans, pickups, or SUVs (3 in this case); and p is the probability that a vehicle is a van, pickup, or SUV (.44 in this case). We obtain

$$\begin{aligned} P(x = 3) &= {}_{10}C_3 \cdot (.44)^3(1 - .44)^7 \\ &\approx 120(.085184)(.017271) \\ &\approx .1765. \end{aligned}$$

The probability is approximately 18%, so this result is not unusual.


Suppose that the insurance agent takes a larger random sample, say, of 100 drivers. What is the probability that 30 or fewer vehicles are vans, pickups, or SUVs if the 44% figure is accurate? Calculating $P(x = 0) + P(x = 1) + \cdots + P(x = 30)$ is a formidable task. One solution is provided by graphing calculators or computers. There is, however, a low-tech method that has the advantage of connecting two different distributions: the normal and the binomial. The normal distribution is continuous, since the random variable can be any real number. The binomial distribution is *discrete*, because the random variable can take only integer values between 0 and n . Nevertheless, the normal distribution can be used to give a good approximation to binomial probability. We call this approximation the **normal approximation**.

In order to use the normal approximation, we first need to know the mean and standard deviation of the binomial distribution. Recall from Section 9.4 that, for the binomial distribution, $E(x) = np$. In Section 10.2, we referred to $E(x)$ as μ , and that notation will be used here. It is shown in more advanced courses in statistics that the standard deviation of the binomial distribution is given by $\sigma = \sqrt{np(1 - p)}$.

Mean and Standard Deviation for the Binomial Distribution

For the binomial distribution, the mean and standard deviation are respectively given by

$$\mu = np \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma = \sqrt{np(1 - p)},$$

where n is the number of trials and p is the probability of success on a single trial. 

Checkpoint 1

Find μ and σ for a binomial distribution having $n = 120$ and $p = 1/6$.

Example 1

Suppose a fair coin is flipped 15 times.

(a) Find the mean and standard deviation for the number of heads.

Solution With $n = 15$ and $p = 1/2$, the mean is

$$\mu = np = 15\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = 7.5.$$

The standard deviation is

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma &= \sqrt{np(1 - p)} = \sqrt{15\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right)} \\ &= \sqrt{15\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)} = \sqrt{3.75} \approx 1.94. \end{aligned}$$

We expect, on average, to get 7.5 heads out of 15 tosses. Most of the time, the number of heads will be within three standard deviations of the mean, or between $7.5 - 3(1.94) = 1.68$ and $7.5 + 3(1.94) = 13.32$.

(b) Find the probability distribution for the number of heads, and draw a histogram of the probabilities.

Solution The probability distribution is found by putting $n = 15$ and $p = 1/2$ into the formula for binomial probability. For example, the probability of getting 9 heads is given by

$$P(x = 9) = {}_{15}C_9 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^9 \left(1 - \frac{1}{2}\right)^6 \approx .15274.$$

Probabilities for the other values of x between 0 and 15, as well as a histogram of the probabilities, are shown in Figure 10.23.

x	$P(x)$
0	.00003
1	.00046
2	.00320
3	.01389
4	.04166
5	.09164
6	.15274
7	.19638
8	.19638
9	.15274
10	.09164
11	.04166
12	.01389
13	.00320
14	.00046
15	.00003

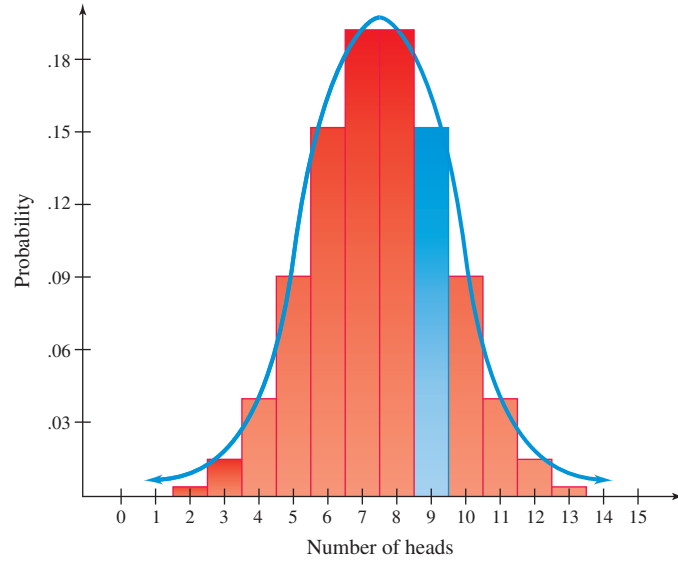


Figure 10.23

In Figure 10.23, we have superimposed the normal curve with $\mu = 7.5$ and $\sigma = 1.94$ over the histogram of the distribution. Notice how well the normal distribution fits the binomial distribution. This approximation was first discovered in 1718 by Abraham De Moivre (1667–1754) for the case $p = 1/2$. The result was generalized by the French mathematician Pierre-Simon Laplace (1749–1827) in a book published in 1812. As n becomes larger and larger, a histogram for the binomial distribution looks more and more like a normal curve. Figures 10.24(a) and (b), show histograms of the binomial distribution with $p = .3$, using $n = 8$ and $n = 50$, respectively.

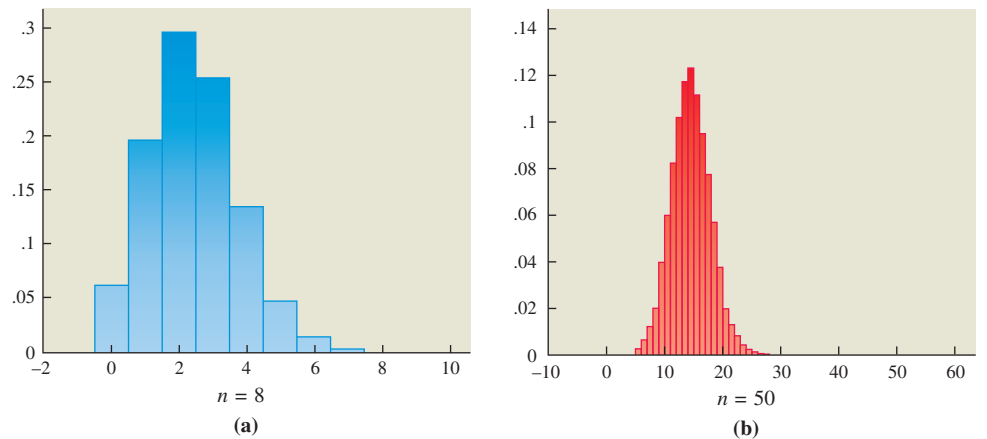


Figure 10.24

The probability of getting exactly 9 heads in the 15 tosses, or .15274, is the same as the area of the blue bar in Figure 10.23. As the graph suggests, the blue area is approximately

equal to the area under the normal curve from $x = 8.5$ to $x = 9.5$. The normal curve is higher than the top of the bar in the left half, but lower in the right half.

To find the area under the normal curve from $x = 8.5$ to $x = 9.5$, first find z -scores, as in the previous section. Use the mean and the standard deviation for the distribution, which we have already calculated, to get z -scores for $x = 8.5$ and $x = 9.5$:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{For } x = 8.5, & \text{For } x = 9.5, \\ z = \frac{8.5 - 7.5}{1.94} & z = \frac{9.5 - 7.5}{1.94} \\ = \frac{1.00}{1.94} & = \frac{2.00}{1.94} \\ z \approx .52. & z \approx 1.03. \end{array}$$

From Table 2, $z = .52$ gives an area of .1985, and $z = 1.03$ gives .3485. The difference between these two numbers is the desired result:


$$.3485 - .1985 = .1500.$$

This answer is not far from the more accurate answer of .15274 found earlier. 

Checkpoint 2

Use the normal distribution to find the probability of getting exactly the given number of heads in 15 tosses of a coin.

- (a) 7
(b) 10

 **CAUTION** The normal-curve approximation to a binomial distribution is quite accurate, provided that n is large and p is not close to 0 or 1. As a rule of thumb, the normal-curve approximation can be used as long as both np and $n(1 - p)$ are at least 5.

Example 2 Business Consider the previously discussed sample of 100 vehicles selected at random, where 44% of the registered vehicles are vans, pickups, or SUVs.

(a) Use the normal distribution to approximate the probability that at least 61 vehicles are vans, pickups, or SUVs.

Solution First, find the mean and the standard deviation, using $n = 100$ and $p = .44$:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \mu = 100(.44) & \sigma = \sqrt{100(.44)(1 - .44)} \\ = 44. & = \sqrt{100(.44)(.56)} \\ & \approx 4.96. \end{array}$$

As the graph in Figure 10.25 shows, we need to find the area to the right of $x = 60.5$ (since we want 61 or more vehicles to be vans, pickups, or SUVs). The z -score corresponding to $x = 60.5$ is

$$z = \frac{60.5 - 44}{4.96} \approx 3.33.$$

From Table 2, $z = 3.33$ corresponds to an area of .4996, so

$$P(z > 3.33) = .5 - .4996 = .0004.$$

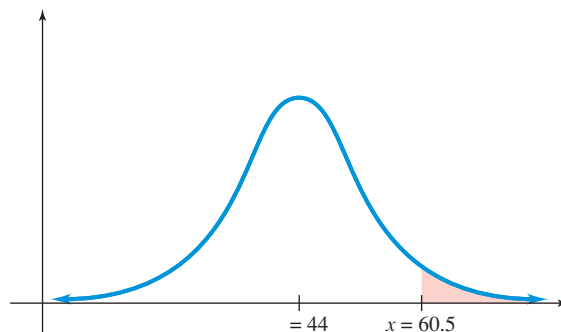


Figure 10.25

This is an extremely low probability. If an insurance agent obtained 61 vehicles that were vans, pickups, or SUVs in a sample of 100, she would suspect that either her sample is not truly random or the 44% figure is too low.

- (b) Calculate the probability of finding between 51 and 58 vehicles that were vans, pickups, or SUVs in a random sample of 100.

Solution As Figure 10.26 shows, we need to find the area between $x = 50.5$, and $x = 58.5$:

$$\text{If } x = 50.5, \text{ then } z = \frac{50.5 - 44}{4.96} \approx .131.$$

$$\text{If } x = 58.5, \text{ then } z = \frac{58.5 - 44}{4.96} \approx 2.92.$$

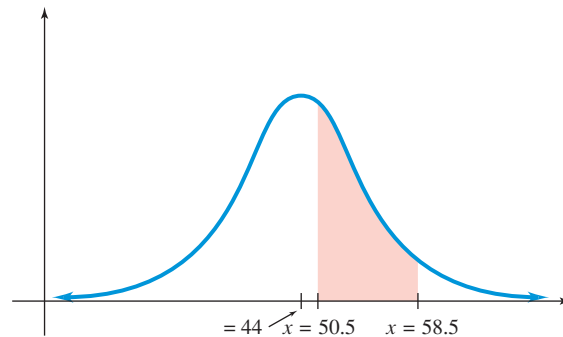


Figure 10.26

Use Table 2 to find that $z = 1.31$ corresponds to an area of .4049 and $z = 2.92$ yields .4983. The final answer is the difference of these numbers:

$$P(1.31 \leq z \leq 2.92) = .4983 - .4049 = .0934.$$

The probability of finding between 51 and 58 vehicles that are vans, pickups, or SUVs is approximately .0934. ✓₃

✓ **Checkpoint 3**

In April 2013, Michigan had an unemployment rate of 8.4%. Find the approximate probability that in a random sample of 200 adults from Michigan during that month, the given numbers of people would be unemployed. (Data from: U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics.)

- (a) Exactly 12
- (b) 15 or fewer
- (c) More than 10

10.5 Exercises

- 1. What must be known to find the mean and standard deviation of a binomial distribution?
- 2. What is the rule of thumb for using the normal distribution to approximate a binomial distribution?

Suppose 16 coins are tossed. Find the probability of getting each of the given results by using (a) the binomial probability formula and (b) the normal-curve approximation. (See Examples 1 and 2.)

- 3. Exactly 8 heads
- 4. Exactly 9 heads
- 5. More than 13 tails
- 6. Fewer than 6 tails

Suppose 1000 coins are tossed. Find the probability of getting each of the given results.

- 7. Exactly 500 heads
- 8. Exactly 510 heads
- 9. 475 or more heads
- 10. Fewer than 460 tails

A die is tossed 120 times. Find the probability of getting each of the given results. (See Example 2.)

- 11. Exactly twenty 5's
- 12. Exactly twenty-four 4's
- 13. More than seventeen 3's
- 14. Fewer than twenty-one 6's
- 15. A reader asked Mr. Statistics (a feature in *Fortune* magazine) about the game of 26 once played in the bars of Chicago.* In

For the remaining exercises in this section, use the normal-curve approximation to the binomial distribution.

*Daniel Seligman and Patty De Llosa, "Ask Mr. Statistics," *Fortune*, May 1, 1995, p. 141.

this game, the player chooses a number between 1 and 6 and then rolls a cup full of 10 dice 13 times. Out of the 130 numbers rolled, if the number chosen appears at least 26 times, the player wins. Calculate the probability of winning.

For Exercises 16–24, see Example 2.

16. **Natural Science** For certain bird species, with appropriate assumptions, the number of nests escaping predation has a binomial distribution.* Suppose the probability of success (that is, a nest's escaping predation) is .3. Find the probability that at least half of 26 nests escape predation.
17. **Natural Science** Let us assume, under certain appropriate assumptions, that the probability of a young animal eating x units of food is binomially distributed, with n equal to the maximum number of food units the animal can acquire and p equal to the probability per time unit that an animal eats a unit of food. Suppose $n = 120$ and $p = .6$.
- (a) Find the probability that an animal consumes 80 units of food.
- (b) Suppose the animal must consume at least 70 units of food to survive. What is the probability that this happens?

Finance For Exercises 18–22, the data are from the report from the National Center for Education Statistics titled “The Condition of Education” (nces.ed.gov/programs/coe/).

18. In 2009–2010, 82% of entering freshman at 4-year colleges and universities received some kind of financial aid. Suppose 50 entering freshman are selected at random.
- (a) Find the probability that at least 35 received financial aid.
- (b) Find the probability that at most 45 received financial aid.
19. In the fall of 2010, 86% of first-time, full-time students received loans at for-profit colleges and universities. If a random sample of 500 students is selected, find the probability that at least 440 students received loans.
20. In the fall of 2010, 63% of first-time, full-time students received loans at private nonprofit colleges and universities. If a random sample of 500 students is selected, find the probability that at least 325 students received loans.
21. In the fall of 2010, 24% of first-time, full-time students received loans at public 2-year colleges. If a random sample of 500 students is selected, find the probability that at most 140 students received loans.
22. In the fall of 2010, 50% of first-time, full-time students received loans at public 4-year colleges or universities. If a random sample of 500 students is selected, find the probability that at most 275 students received loans.
23. **Natural Science** A flu vaccine has a probability of 80% of preventing a person who is inoculated from getting the flu. A county health office inoculates 134 people. Find the probabilities of the given results.
- (a) Exactly 12 of the people inoculated get the flu.
- (b) No more than 12 of the people inoculated get the flu.
- (c) None of the people inoculated get the flu.
24. **Natural Science** The probability that a male will be color blind is .042. Find the probabilities that, in a group of 53 men, the given conditions will be true.
- (a) Exactly 6 are color blind.
- (b) No more than 6 are color blind.
- (c) At least 1 is color blind.

Business In the first quarter of 2013, Verizon held approximately 37% of the U.S. wireless market, while AT&T held 28%. Use this information for Exercises 25–30 and assume that 1000 wireless phone customers are selected at random. (Data from: Kantar Worldpanel ComTech USA's consumer panel, www.kantarworldpanel.com.)

25. What is the expected number of Verizon customers?
26. What is the expected number of AT&T customers?
27. What is the probability that at least 400 will be Verizon customers?
28. What is the probability that at least 300 will be AT&T customers?
29. What is the probability that at most 325 will be Verizon customers?
30. What is the probability that at most 250 will be AT&T customers?
31. **Natural Science** The blood types B– and AB– are the rarest of the eight human blood types, representing 1.5% and .6% of the population, respectively. (Data from: National Center for Statistics and Analysis.)
- (a) If the blood types of a random sample of 1000 blood donors are recorded, what is the probability that 10 or more of the samples are AB–?
- (b) If the blood types of a random sample of 1000 blood donors are recorded, what is the probability that 20 to 40, inclusive, of the samples are B–?
- (c) If a particular city had a blood drive in which 500 people gave blood and 3% of the donations were B–, would we have reason to believe that this town has a higher-than-normal number of donors who are B–? (Hint: Calculate the probability of 15 or more donors being B– for a random sample of 500, and then consider the probability obtained.)
32. In the 1989 U.S. Open, four golfers each made a hole in one on the same par-3 hole on the same day. *Sports Illustrated* writer R. Reilly stated the probability of getting a hole in one for a given golf pro on a given par-3 hole to be $1/3709$.[†]
- (a) For a specific par-3 hole, use the binomial distribution to find the probability that 4 or more of the 156 golf pros in the tournament field shoot a hole in one.[‡]
- (b) For a specific par-3 hole, use the normal approximation to the binomial distribution to find the probability that 4 or more of the 156 golf pros in the tournament field shoot a

*From G. deJong, *American Naturalist*, vol 110.

[†]R. Reilly, “King of the Hill,” *Sports Illustrated*, June 1989, pp. 20–25.

[‡]Bonnie Litwiller and David Duncan, “The Probability of a Hole in One,” *School Science and Mathematics* 91, no. 1 (January 1991): 30.

hole in one. Why must we be very cautious when using this approximation for this application?

- (c) If the probability of a hole in one remains constant and is $1/3709$ for any par-3 hole, find the probability that, in 20,000 attempts by golf pros, there will be 4 or more holes in one. Discuss whether this assumption is reasonable.

✓ Checkpoint Answers

- $\mu = 20; \sigma = 4.08$
- (a) .1985 (b) .0909
- (a) .0472 (b) .3707 (c) .9463

CHAPTER 10 Summary and Review

Key Terms and Symbols

10.1 random sample	10.2 Σ , summation (sigma) notation	σ , population standard deviation	continuous distribution
grouped frequency distribution	\bar{x} , sample mean	range	normal curves
histogram	μ , population mean (arithmetic) mean	deviations from the mean	standard normal curve
frequency polygon	median	variance	z-score
stem-and-leaf-plot	statistic	standard deviation	boxplot
uniform distribution	mode	10.4 μ , mean of a normal distribution	quartile
right-skewed distribution	10.3 s^2 , sample variance	σ , standard deviation of a normal distribution	five-number summary
left-skewed distribution	s , sample standard deviation		10.5 binomial distribution
normal distribution			

Chapter 10 Key Concepts

Frequency Distributions

To organize the data from a sample, we use a **grouped frequency distribution**—a set of intervals with their corresponding frequencies. The same information can be displayed with a **histogram**—a type of bar graph with a bar for each interval. The height of each bar is equal to the frequency of the corresponding interval. A **stem-and-leaf plot** presents the individual data in a similar form, so it can be viewed as a bar graph as well. Another way to display this information is with a **frequency polygon**, which is formed by connecting the midpoints of consecutive bars of the histogram with straight-line segments.

Measures of Center

The **mean** \bar{x} of a frequency distribution is the expected value.

For n numbers x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n ,

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\Sigma x}{n}$$

For a grouped distribution,

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\Sigma(xf)}{n}$$

The **median** is the middle entry (or mean of the two middle entries) in a set of data arranged in either increasing or decreasing order.

The **mode** is the most frequent entry in a set of numbers.

Measures of Variability

The **range** of a distribution is the difference between the largest and smallest numbers in the distribution.

The **sample standard deviation** s is the square root of the sample **variance**.

For n numbers,

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma x^2 - n\bar{x}^2}{n - 1}}$$

For a grouped distribution,

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma fx^2 - n\bar{x}^2}{n - 1}}$$

The Normal Distribution

A **normal distribution** is a continuous distribution with the following properties: The highest frequency is at the mean; the graph is symmetric about a vertical line through the mean; the total area under the curve, above the x -axis, is 1. If a normal distribution has mean μ and standard deviation σ , then the z -score for the number x is $z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma}$. The **area under a normal curve** between $x = a$ and $x = b$ gives the probability that an observed data value will be between a and b .

Boxplots

A **boxplot** organizes a list of data using the minimum and maximum values, the median, and the first and third quartiles to give a visual overview of the distribution.

Normal Approximation to the Binomial Distribution

The **binomial distribution** is a distribution with the following properties: For n independent repeated trials, in which the probability of success in a single trial is p , the probability of x successes is ${}_n C_x p^x (1-p)^{n-x}$. The mean is $\mu = np$, and the standard deviation is

$$\sigma = \sqrt{np(1-p)}$$

For a large number of trials, the normal distribution can be used to approximate binomial probabilities.

Chapter 10 Review Exercises

Business For Exercises 1 and 2, (a) write a frequency distribution; (b) draw a histogram. The data come from a random sample of 40 companies from the S&P 500. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

1. The variable is 2012 revenue (in billions of dollars).

39.9	9.7	9.2	33.3
1.4	10.0	4.0	57.7
5.0	4.4	28.6	10.4
8.1	4.1	3.6	2.6
65.9	1.8	3.9	12.5
3.6	2.9	19.4	11.7
6.7	1.7	15.2	18.1
8.2	10.9	4.2	2.2
24.4	4.4	16.5	16.3
1.6	10.5	9.6	5.2

2. The variable is 2012 earnings per share (dollars).

3.72	1.64	3.04	5.66
1.12	0.65	4.99	3.16
1.43	4.57	0.29	3.75
8.48	2.55	2.81	6.58
1.30	0.98	1.58	2.52
0.87	0.89	6.06	5.06
2.86	2.94	3.15	0.97
5.47	0.35	2.67	3.46
2.67	2.54	3.48	2.60
1.22	3.44	1.58	7.54

3. Draw a stem-and-leaf plot for the data in Exercise 1. (Round to the nearest units place.)
4. Draw a stem-and-leaf plot for the data in Exercise 2. (Round to the nearest tenth.)
5. Eight students participated in a 200-meter race. Their timings (in seconds) were 24, 31, 28, 25, 36, 21, 25, and 34. Find the mean, median, and mode.
6. For a given distribution, if the mode and median are 34 and 33.5, respectively, find the mean.

7. **Business** The following table gives the frequency counts for 40 companies from the S&P 500 and the variable is the net earnings (in millions of dollars). Find the mean and median for these data.

Interval	Frequency	Interval	Frequency
0–499	18	3000–3499	0
500–999	11	3500–3999	0
1000–1499	2	4000–4499	0
1500–1999	2	4500–4999	0
2000–2499	2	5000–5499	1
2500–2999	2	5500–5999	2

8. **Business** The following table gives the frequency counts for 40 companies from the S&P 500 and the variable is the market capitalization (in billions of dollars). Find the mean and median for these data.

Interval	Frequency	Interval	Frequency
0–9.9	16	50–50.9	2
10–19.9	15	60–60.9	0
20–20.9	2	70–70.9	0
30–30.9	2	80–80.9	2
40–40.9	1		

9. Discuss some reasons for organizing data into a grouped frequency distribution.
10. What do the mean, median, and mode of a distribution have in common? How do they differ? Describe each in a sentence or two.

Find the median and the mode (or modes) for each of the given data sets.

11. A student obtained the mean and the variance of 100 observations as 50 and 5, respectively. It was later discovered that he wrongly copied two observations as 50 and 80 instead of 40 and 60, respectively. Calculate the correct mean and standard deviation.
12. **Finance** The daily expenditure of 100 families is given below.

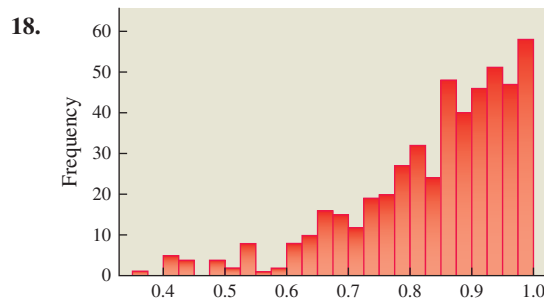
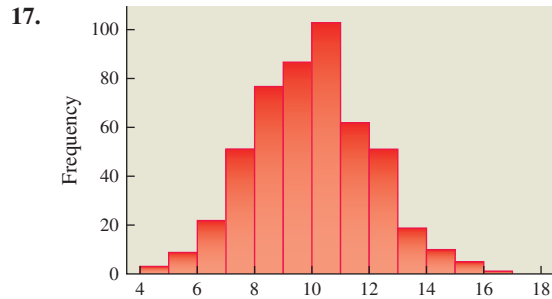
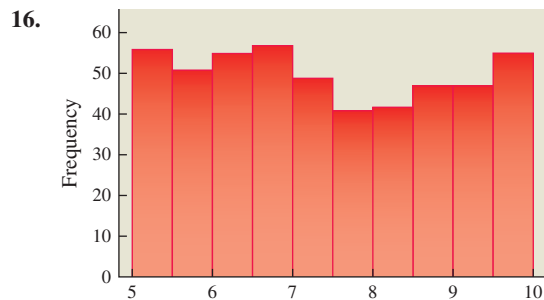
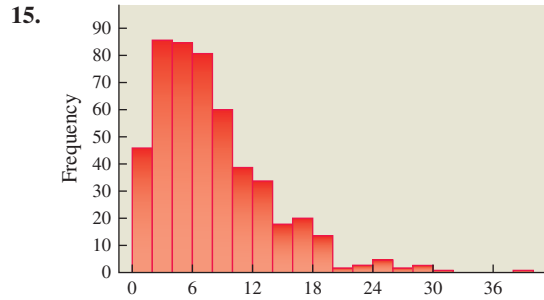
Expenditure (in \$)	0–10	10–20	20–30	30–40	40–50
No. of families	14	X	27	Y	15

The mean for the distribution is \$25.60. Calculate the missing frequencies.

The modal class is the interval containing the most data values. Find the modal class for the distributions of the given data sets.

- 13. The data in Exercise 7
- 14. The data in Exercise 8

For the given histograms, identify the shape of the distribution.



- 19. What is meant by the range of a distribution?
- 20. How are the variance and the standard deviation of a distribution related? What is measured by the standard deviation?

Find the range and the standard deviation for each of the given distributions.

- 21. The data in Exercise 11

- 22. The data in Exercise 12

Find the standard deviation for each of the given distributions.

- 23. The data summarized in the frequency table of Exercise 7
- 24. The data summarized in the frequency table of Exercise 8
- 25. **Finance** The annual dividend yield percentages for Target Corporation are given in the following table. Find the mean and standard deviation of the yields for the 5-year period. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

Year	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012
Dividend Yield %	1.74	1.36	1.40	2.15	2.23

- 26. The following distribution of the number of children per family was obtained in a random sample of a survey of 150 families in a village of Pakistan. Find standard deviation of the distribution.

No. of children	0–2	2–4	4–6	6–8	8–10	10–12
No. of families	52	38	30	15	10	5

- 27. Describe the characteristics of a normal distribution.
- 28. What is meant by a skewed distribution?

Find the given areas under the standard normal curve.

- 29. Between $z = 0$ and $z = 1.35$
- 30. Between $z = -2$ and $z = 2$
- 31. $P(|z| > k) = 0.0046$, find k ?
- 32. Between $z = 1.53$ and $z = 2.82$
- 33. Find a z -score such that 8% of the area under the curve is to the right of z .
- 34. Why is the normal distribution not a good approximation of a binomial distribution that has a value of p close to 0 or 1?

Health For Exercises 35–38, use the fact that according to data from the 2009–2010 National Health and Nutrition Examination Study (NHANES), the mean height of males between ages 21 and 80 was 68.7 inches with a standard deviation of 3.1 inches. The mean height of females (for the same age range) was 63.2 inches with a standard deviation of 2.9 inches. The distribution of height for both sexes is approximately normal. (Data from: www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhanes.htm.)

- 35. Find the probability that a female is taller than 70 inches.
- 36. Find the probability that a male is shorter than 62 inches.
- 37. Find the probability that a female is shorter than 60 inches.
- 38. Find the probability that a male is taller than 72 inches.

Business The table gives the number of vehicles (in thousands) sold within the United States in April 2012 and April 2013 for 12 auto manufacturers. (Data from: Wall Street Journal.)

Auto Manufacturer	April 2012 Sales	April 2013 Sales
General Motors Corp.	214	238
Ford Motor Corp.	180	212
Chrysler LLC	141	157
Toyota Motor Sales USA	178	176
American Honda Motor Co. Inc.	122	131
Nissan North America Inc.	71	88
Hyundai Motor America	62	63
Mazda	22	20
Kia Motors America Inc.	48	48
Subaru of America Inc.	26	33
Mercedes-Benz	24	25
Volkswagen of America Inc.	38	34

39. (a) Find the mean and standard deviation of sales for the April 2012 data.
 (b) Which company is closest to the mean sales for the April 2012 data?
40. (a) Find the mean and standard deviation of sales for the April 2013 data.
 (b) Which company is closest to the mean sales for the April 2013 data?
41. Find the five-number summary for the April 2012 sales.
42. Find the five-number summary for the April 2013 sales.
43. Construct a boxplot for the April 2012 sales data.
44. Construct a boxplot for the April 2013 sales data.
45. **Business** Find the five-number summary and construct a boxplot for the hours worked for the following sample of 10 workers. (Data from: www3.norc.org/gss+website.)
 40, 60, 21, 5, 45, 35, 44, 40, 20, 53
46. **Education** Find the five-number summary and construct a boxplot for the percentage of residents who have earned a high school diploma or higher for the following sample of 10 states. (Data from: U.S. Census Bureau.)
 81, 87, 92, 90, 85, 92, 88, 83, 85, 85
- Business** According to the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), approximately 25% of U.S. residents conduct some or all their financial transactions outside the United States banking system. These residents are sometimes called the “unbanked.” For Exercises 47–50, assume that a random sample of 750 United States residents are selected. Approximate the probability of the given events.
47. More than 200 are unbanked.
48. Less than 150 are unbanked.
49. Less than 190 are unbanked.
50. More than 160 are unbanked.
- Business** A light bulb manufacturer packed 100 bulbs in each box for delivery to retail stores. Past experience says that 10% of the bulbs are broken before they reach retail stores. For Exercises 51–54 assume that 10 boxes are selected at random for a retail store and approximate the probability of the given events.
51. At least 925 light bulbs are safe.
52. At most 910 light bulbs are safe.
53. Between 110 and 130 bulbs will be broken (both inclusive).
54. If you found that 300 bulbs are broken, would you consider it unusual?

Case Study 10 Standard Deviation as a Measure of Risk

When investing, the idea of risk is difficult to define. Some individuals may deem an investment product to be of high risk if it loses all of its value in a short time, others may define a product as risky if it loses some portion of its value in a short time, and still others may define a product as risky if there is even a remote chance of it losing its value over a long period of time.

One way investors try to quantify risk is to examine the volatility of the return for an investment product. Volatility refers to how the return on the investment fluctuates from the average level of return. One simple measure of volatility is to calculate the standard deviation of the annual rate of return.

For example, if a fund has an annual return of 2% each and every year, then the mean is 2% and the standard deviation would be 0 (because there is no variation from the mean). This fund would have very low volatility. What is also interesting is that a fund that *lost* 2% each and every year would also have a standard deviation of 0 (because it too does

not ever vary from its mean of -2%). Nevertheless, the standard deviation can be helpful in assessing the risk and volatility related to an investment fund.

Let us examine two mutual funds—Fund A and Fund B. The following table lists the annual rate of return for these two funds.

Fund A	Fund B
3.2	9.1
6.6	-3.4
3.9	2.1
5.3	11.4
5.2	1.1
5.8	9.7



If we calculate the average rate of return for both funds, we obtain 5%. We can notice, however, even by casual inspection, that there is greater variability in Fund B than in Fund A. If we use the

notation s_A to denote the standard deviation of fund A and s_B to denote the standard deviation of fund B, we can use the methods of Section 10.3 to obtain the following values for the standard deviation.

$$s_A = \sqrt{\frac{(3.2 - 5)^2 + (6.6 - 5)^2 + (3.9 - 5)^2 + (5.3 - 5)^2 + (5.2 - 5)^2 + (5.8 - 5)^2}{5}} \approx 1.25$$

$$s_B = \sqrt{\frac{(9.1 - 5)^2 + (-3.4 - 5)^2 + (2.1 - 5)^2 + (11.4 - 5)^2 + (1.1 - 5)^2 + (9.7 - 5)^2}{5}} \approx 5.90$$

Our calculations confirm that there is greater variability in Fund B. Thus, Fund B is said to carry more risk.

The way that standard deviation is used in the financial products industry is to examine monthly returns. For example, the website morningstar.com explains that it uses a 36-month window of monthly returns. They then calculate the average monthly return and the

standard deviation from those returns. They then report these values (the mean return and the standard deviation) corrected for an annualized return rate. This should be clear in the following example.

To calculate the standard deviation for the TIAA-CREF Equity Index Retail fund (TINRX), we examine the monthly returns for 36 months from May 2013 back to June 2010.

Month	Return	Month	Return	Month	Return
MAY 2013	2.34	MAY 2012	-6.19	MAY 2011	-1.22
APR 2013	1.56	APR 2012	-0.64	APR 2011	3.01
MAR 2013	3.92	MAR 2012	3.03	MAR 2011	0.39
FEB 2013	1.29	FEB 2012	4.14	FEB 2011	3.63
JAN 2013	5.46	JAN 2012	5.07	JAN 2011	2.16
DEC 2012	1.22	DEC 2011	0.72	DEC 2010	6.74
NOV 2012	0.73	NOV 2011	-0.21	NOV 2010	0.55
OCT 2012	-1.79	OCT 2011	11.34	OCT 2010	3.85
SEP 2012	2.57	SEP 2011	-7.72	SEP 2010	9.42
AUG 2012	2.44	AUG 2011	-5.96	AUG 2010	-4.72
JUL 2012	1.04	JUL 2011	-2.33	JUL 2010	6.94
JUN 2012	3.84	JUN 2011	-1.81	JUN 2010	-5.83

Our first step is to calculate the mean return. We find the average monthly rate of return to be 1.3606. We then calculate the standard deviation value and obtain 4.2350. To convert these values from monthly return rates to annual return rates, we multiply the mean by 12 and the standard deviation by $\sqrt{12}$. The annual return rate is $12(1.3606) = 16.3272$ and the annual standard deviation is $\sqrt{12}(4.2350) = 14.6705$. These values are often reported rounded to two decimal places (16.33 and 14.67).

Many financial websites report these values for return rates based on monthly calculations. For example, on the morningstar.com website, clicking on a link for “Ratings and Risk” will display the mean and standard deviation values under a heading of “Volatility Measures.” With this information, it is easier to make direct comparisons to other funds. For the same period, the S&P 500 had a mean return of 16.87 and a standard deviation of 14.02. Thus, we see that the TIAA-CREF fund had a slightly lower average return and a slightly higher level of risk.

An additional way that investors interpret the standard deviation is that they assume future returns will follow an approximate normal distribution. We know from Section 10.4 (and, in particular, Figure 10.20) that 68% of data that is normally distributed will fall within one standard deviation of the mean. With the TIAA-CREF

fund example, we then expect that the probability of a future return being within one standard deviation of the mean of 16.33% is 68%. With the standard deviation value of 14.67, our bounds on this interval are

$$(16.33 - 14.67, 16.33 + 14.67) = (1.66, 31.00).$$

Furthermore, we expect the annual return to fall within 2 standard deviations of the mean approximately 95% of the time:

$$(16.33 - 2*14.67, 16.33 + 2*14.67) = (-13.01, 45.67).$$

The standard deviation is not a perfect measure of risk. It is possible to invest in a fund with a low standard deviation and still lose money. It is, however, a useful way to compare funds in similar categories.

Exercises

For Exercises 1–10, use the following table, which gives the monthly returns for the Janus Growth and Income S Fund, the S&P 500, and the sector returns for large growth funds. (Data from: www.morningstar.com.)

Month	Janus	S&P	Large Growth	Month	Janus	S&P	Large Growth
MAY 2013	1.33	2.34	2.63	NOV 2011	-0.8	-0.22	-1.06
APR 2013	3.01	1.93	1.25	OCT 2011	14.17	10.93	11.78
MAR 2013	4.26	3.75	3.19	SEP 2011	-10.38	-7.03	-8.45
FEB 2013	1.54	1.36	0.65	AUG 2011	-7.94	-5.43	-6.67
JAN 2013	4.8	5.18	4.75	JUL 2011	-2.81	-2.03	-1.27
DEC 2012	1.8	0.91	0.52	JUN 2011	-1.21	-1.67	-1.5
NOV 2012	0.56	0.58	1.95	MAY 2011	-1.07	-1.13	-1.27
OCT 2012	-1.87	-1.85	-3.01	APR 2011	3.67	2.96	2.91
SEP 2012	1.84	2.58	2.3	MAR 2011	-0.24	0.04	0.37
AUG 2012	2.77	2.25	3.27	FEB 2011	4	3.43	3.27
JUL 2012	2.11	1.39	0.47	JAN 2011	2.38	2.37	1.83
JUN 2012	2.8	4.12	2.6	DEC 2010	4.93	6.68	5.54
MAY 2012	-7.19	-6.01	-7.37	NOV 2010	-1.18	0.01	1.08
APR 2012	-0.94	-0.63	-0.7	OCT 2010	3.65	3.8	4.62
MAR 2012	2.32	3.29	3.37	SEP 2010	9.31	8.92	10.81
FEB 2012	5.33	4.32	5.34	AUG 2010	-4.22	-4.51	-4.72
JAN 2012	6.45	4.48	6.31	JUL 2010	6.02	7.01	6.73
DEC 2011	0.43	1.02	-1.14	JUN 2010	-3.92	-5.23	-5.62

1. Find the mean monthly return for the Janus fund. Convert this value to the annual return.
2. Find the mean monthly return for the S&P 500. Convert this value to the annual return.
3. Find the mean monthly return for the Large Growth funds. Convert this value to the annual return.
4. Which fund has the highest annual rate of return?
5. Find the standard deviation of the monthly returns for the Janus fund. Convert this value to the annual return.
6. Find the standard deviation of the monthly returns for the S&P 500. Convert this value to the annual return.
7. Find the standard deviation of the monthly returns for the Large Growth funds. Convert this value to the annual return.
8. Which fund has the highest level of risk?
9. Determine the bounds for 68% of future annual returns for the Janus Fund.
10. Determine the bounds for 95% of future annual returns for the Janus Fund.

Extended Projects

1. Investigate several mutual funds of your choice. Use a financial data website and obtain the monthly returns for the funds of your choice. Calculate the mean return and the standard deviation of the monthly data and convert the values to the annual values. Determine which funds have the highest return values and which have the lowest standard deviation values.
2. Investigate other measures of risk for investment products. Compare these measures with the standard deviation discussed here.

Graphing Calculators

Basics

Instructions on using your graphing calculator are readily available in:

the instruction book for your calculator; and

the web site for this book at www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/Lial/mathstatsresources/.

In addition, a *Graphing Calculator Manual* and an *Excel Spreadsheet Manual* specific for finite mathematics and applied calculus topics are available to you in MyMathLab. These manuals are described in the Student Supplement section of the Preface.

Programs

The following programs are available for TI and most Casio graphing calculators. You can download them from www.pearsonglobaleditions.com/Lial/mathstatsresources/, and use the appropriate USB cable and software to install them in your calculator.

General

1. Fraction Conversion for Casio

Chapter 1: Algebra and Equations

2. Quadratic Formula for TI-83

Chapter 5: Mathematics of Finance

3. Present and Future Value of an Annuity
4. Loan Payment
5. Loan Balance after n Payments
6. Amortization Table for TI

Chapter 6: Systems of Linear Equations and Matrices

7. RREF Program for Casio 9750GA+, 9850, and 9860G

Chapter 7: Linear Programming

8. Simplex Method
9. Two-Stage Method

Chapter 13: Integral Calculus

10. Rectangle Approximation of $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ (using left endpoints)

Programs 1, 2, 6, and 7 are built into most calculators other than those mentioned. Programs 3–5 are part of the TVM Solver on TI and most Casio models, although some students may find the versions here easier to use. Programs 8–10 are not built into any calculator.

Tables

Table 1 Formulas from Geometry

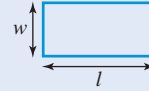
CIRCLE

Area: $A = \pi r^2$
Circumference: $C = 2\pi r$



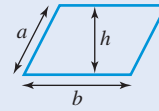
RECTANGLE

Area: $A = lw$
Perimeter: $P = 2l + 2w$



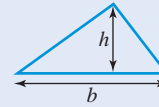
PARALLELOGRAM

Area: $A = bh$
Perimeter: $P = 2a + 2b$



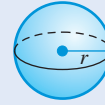
TRIANGLE

Area: $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$



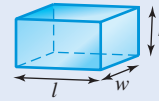
SPHERE

Volume: $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$
Surface area: $A = 4\pi r^2$



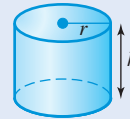
RECTANGULAR BOX

Volume: $V = lwh$
Surface area: $A = 2lh + 2wh + 2lw$



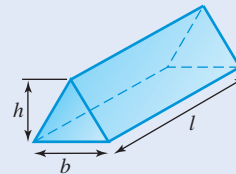
CIRCULAR CYLINDER

Volume: $V = \pi r^2 h$
Surface area: $A = 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh$



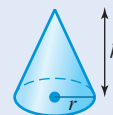
TRIANGULAR CYLINDER

Volume: $V = \frac{1}{2}bhl$



CONE

Volume: $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$



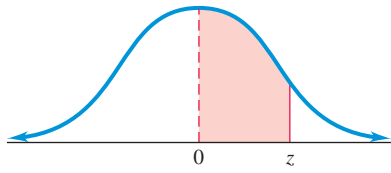


Table 2 Areas under the Normal Curve

The column under A gives the proportion of the area under the entire curve that is between $z = 0$ and a positive value of z .

z	A	z	A	z	A	z	A
.00	.0000	.48	.1844	.96	.3315	1.44	.4251
.01	.0040	.49	.1879	.97	.3340	1.45	.4265
.02	.0080	.50	.1915	.98	.3365	1.46	.4279
.03	.0120	.51	.1950	.99	.3389	1.47	.4292
.04	.0160	.52	.1985	1.00	.3413	1.48	.4306
.05	.0199	.53	.2019	1.01	.3438	1.49	.4319
.06	.0239	.54	.2054	1.02	.3461	1.50	.4332
.07	.0279	.55	.2088	1.03	.3485	1.51	.4345
.08	.0319	.56	.2123	1.04	.3508	1.52	.4357
.09	.0359	.57	.2157	1.05	.3531	1.53	.4370
.10	.0398	.58	.2190	1.06	.3554	1.54	.4382
.11	.0438	.59	.2224	1.07	.3577	1.55	.4394
.12	.0478	.60	.2258	1.08	.3599	1.56	.4406
.13	.0517	.61	.2291	1.09	.3621	1.57	.4418
.14	.0557	.62	.2324	1.10	.3643	1.58	.4430
.15	.0596	.63	.2357	1.11	.3665	1.59	.4441
.16	.0636	.64	.2389	1.12	.3686	1.60	.4452
.17	.0675	.65	.2422	1.13	.3708	1.61	.4463
.18	.0714	.66	.2454	1.14	.3729	1.62	.4474
.19	.0754	.67	.2486	1.15	.3749	1.63	.4485
.20	.0793	.68	.2518	1.16	.3770	1.64	.4495
.21	.0832	.69	.2549	1.17	.3790	1.65	.4505
.22	.0871	.70	.2580	1.18	.3810	1.66	.4515
.23	.0910	.71	.2612	1.19	.3830	1.67	.4525
.24	.0948	.72	.2642	1.20	.3849	1.68	.4535
.25	.0987	.73	.2673	1.21	.3869	1.69	.4545
.26	.1026	.74	.2704	1.22	.3888	1.70	.4554
.27	.1064	.75	.2734	1.23	.3907	1.71	.4564
.28	.1103	.76	.2764	1.24	.3925	1.72	.4573
.29	.1141	.77	.2794	1.25	.3944	1.73	.4582
.30	.1179	.78	.2823	1.26	.3962	1.74	.4591
.31	.1217	.79	.2852	1.27	.3980	1.75	.4599
.32	.1255	.80	.2881	1.28	.3997	1.76	.4608
.33	.1293	.81	.2910	1.29	.4015	1.77	.4616
.34	.1331	.82	.2939	1.30	.4032	1.78	.4625
.35	.1368	.83	.2967	1.31	.4049	1.79	.4633
.36	.1406	.84	.2996	1.32	.4066	1.80	.4641
.37	.1443	.85	.3023	1.33	.4082	1.81	.4649
.38	.1480	.86	.3051	1.34	.4099	1.82	.4656
.39	.1517	.87	.3079	1.35	.4115	1.83	.4664
.40	.1554	.88	.3106	1.36	.4131	1.84	.4671
.41	.1591	.89	.3133	1.37	.4147	1.85	.4678
.42	.1628	.90	.3159	1.38	.4162	1.86	.4686
.43	.1664	.91	.3186	1.39	.4177	1.87	.4693
.44	.1700	.92	.3212	1.40	.4192	1.88	.4700
.45	.1736	.93	.3238	1.41	.4207	1.89	.4706
.46	.1772	.94	.3264	1.42	.4222	1.90	.4713
.47	.1808	.95	.3289	1.43	.4236	1.91	.4719

(continued)

Table 2 (continued)

z	A	z	A	z	A	z	A
1.92	.4726	2.42	.4922	2.92	.4983	3.42	.4997
1.93	.4732	2.43	.4925	2.93	.4983	3.43	.4997
1.94	.4738	2.44	.4927	2.94	.4984	3.44	.4997
1.95	.4744	2.45	.4929	2.95	.4984	3.45	.4997
1.96	.4750	2.46	.4931	2.96	.4985	3.46	.4997
1.97	.4756	2.47	.4932	2.97	.4985	3.47	.4997
1.98	.4762	2.48	.4934	2.98	.4986	3.48	.4998
1.99	.4767	2.49	.4936	2.99	.4986	3.49	.4998
2.00	.4773	2.50	.4938	3.00	.4987	3.50	.4998
2.01	.4778	2.51	.4940	3.01	.4987	3.51	.4998
2.02	.4783	2.52	.4941	3.02	.4987	3.52	.4998
2.03	.4788	2.53	.4943	3.03	.4988	3.53	.4998
2.04	.4793	2.54	.4945	3.04	.4988	3.54	.4998
2.05	.4798	2.55	.4946	3.05	.4989	3.55	.4998
2.06	.4803	2.56	.4948	3.06	.4989	3.56	.4998
2.07	.4808	2.57	.4949	3.07	.4989	3.57	.4998
2.08	.4812	2.58	.4951	3.08	.4990	3.58	.4998
2.09	.4817	2.59	.4952	3.09	.4990	3.59	.4998
2.10	.4821	2.60	.4953	3.10	.4990	3.60	.4998
2.11	.4826	2.61	.4955	3.11	.4991	3.61	.4999
2.12	.4830	2.62	.4956	3.12	.4991	3.62	.4999
2.13	.4834	2.63	.4957	3.13	.4991	3.63	.4999
2.14	.4838	2.64	.4959	3.14	.4992	3.64	.4999
2.15	.4842	2.65	.4960	3.15	.4992	3.65	.4999
2.16	.4846	2.66	.4961	3.16	.4992	3.66	.4999
2.17	.4850	2.67	.4962	3.17	.4992	3.67	.4999
2.18	.4854	2.68	.4963	3.18	.4993	3.68	.4999
2.19	.4857	2.69	.4964	3.19	.4993	3.69	.4999
2.20	.4861	2.70	.4965	3.20	.4993	3.70	.4999
2.21	.4865	2.71	.4966	3.21	.4993	3.71	.4999
2.22	.4868	2.72	.4967	3.22	.4994	3.72	.4999
2.23	.4871	2.73	.4968	3.23	.4994	3.73	.4999
2.24	.4875	2.74	.4969	3.24	.4994	3.74	.4999
2.25	.4878	2.75	.4970	3.25	.4994	3.75	.4999
2.26	.4881	2.76	.4971	3.26	.4994	3.76	.4999
2.27	.4884	2.77	.4972	3.27	.4995	3.77	.4999
2.28	.4887	2.78	.4973	3.28	.4995	3.78	.4999
2.29	.4890	2.79	.4974	3.29	.4995	3.79	.4999
2.30	.4893	2.80	.4974	3.30	.4995	3.80	.4999
2.31	.4896	2.81	.4975	3.31	.4995	3.81	.4999
2.32	.4898	2.82	.4976	3.32	.4996	3.82	.4999
2.33	.4901	2.83	.4977	3.33	.4996	3.83	.4999
2.34	.4904	2.84	.4977	3.34	.4996	3.84	.4999
2.35	.4906	2.85	.4978	3.35	.4996	3.85	.4999
2.36	.4909	2.86	.4979	3.36	.4996	3.86	.4999
2.37	.4911	2.87	.4980	3.37	.4996	3.87	.5000
2.38	.4913	2.88	.4980	3.38	.4996	3.88	.5000
2.39	.4916	2.89	.4981	3.39	.4997	3.89	.5000
2.40	.4918	2.90	.4981	3.40	.4997		
2.41	.4920	2.91	.4982	3.41	.4997		

APPENDIX C

Learning Objectives

After studying these objectives and solving the problems, students will be able to:

Chapter 1 Algebra and Equations

1.1 The Real Numbers

- Identify the properties of real numbers.
- Evaluate algebraic expressions using the proper order of operations.
- Calculate square roots correctly.
- Identify points on a number line.
- Shade inequality regions on a number line and use proper interval notation.
- Evaluate algebraic expressions involving absolute value.

1.2 Polynomials

- Identify the base and the exponent in exponential expressions.
- Evaluate expressions involving multiplication of exponential expressions.
- Calculate exponential expressions raised to a power.
- Understand the zero exponent.
- Add and subtract polynomials by combining like terms.

1.3 Factoring

- Find the greatest common factor in an expression.
- Factor quadratic expressions.
- Factor differences of cubes and sums of cubes.

1.4 Rational Expressions

- Simplify rational expressions.
- Use the multiplication, division, addition, and subtraction rules for rational expressions.
- Simplify complex fractions.

1.5 Exponents and Radicals

- Evaluate expressions involving division of exponential expressions, products to a power, and quotients raised to a power.
- Work with negative exponents.
- Evaluate roots of expressions and radical expressions.
- Rationalize the denominator of a fraction.

1.6 First-Degree Equations

- Solve a first-degree expression for an unknown quantity.
- Set up and solve a first-degree equation from an applied context.

1.7 Quadratic Equations

- Understand the zero factor and square root properties.
- Solve a quadratic equation using the quadratic formula.
- Set up and solve a quadratic equation from an applied context.

Chapter 2 Graphs, Lines, and Inequalities

2.1 Graphs

- Read and interpret graphs of two variables in real world contexts.
- Plot ordered pairs on a two-dimensional grid.
- Find the horizontal and vertical intercepts of a first-order equation.

2.2 Equations of Lines

- Calculate the slope of a line through two ordered pairs.
- Write a first order equation in slope-intercept form.
- Sketch graphs of first-order equations.
- Use the point-slope form of an equation.
- Recognize and graph equations of horizontal and vertical lines.

2.3 Linear Models

- Fit a line to ordered pairs of data given in real world contexts.
- Assess the fit of two linear models for given data in real world contexts.
- Use technology to fit a least squares regression line (optional).
- Use technology to calculate the correlation coefficient and interpret its meaning (optional).

2.4 Linear Inequalities

- Solve linear inequalities and shade solution regions.
- Solve absolute value inequalities and shade solution regions.

2.5 Polynomial and Rational Inequalities

- Solve quadratic inequalities, shade solution regions, and express the solution in interval notation.
- Solve higher order inequalities, shade solution regions, and express the solution in interval notation.
- Solve rational inequalities and express the solution in interval notation.

Chapter 3 Functions and Graphs

3.1 Functions

- Understand the definition of a function.
- Understand the meanings of domain and range of a function.
- Use correct function notation.
- Solve equations involving functions and piecewise functions.

3.2 Graphs of Functions

- Graph linear functions, piecewise linear functions, and absolute value functions.
- Graph a function by plotting points.
- Read and interpret graphs correctly.
- Use the vertical line test.

3.3 Applications of Linear Functions

- Create, graph and solve revenue, cost, and profit equations.
- Understand that rate of depreciation is the slope of the depreciation equation.
- Understand the relationship of slope to marginal cost and marginal revenue.
- Solve for break-even points using revenue and cost equations.
- Graph supply and demand curves.
- Solve supply and demand equations.

3.4 Quadratic Functions and Applications

- Graph quadratic functions.
- Determine the vertex of a quadratic graph.
- Understand the properties of quadratic graphs.
- Determine maximum or minimum profit, revenue, or cost from quadratic graphs.
- Solve for the equilibrium points of quadratic supply and demand curves using graphical and algebraic methods.
- Perform quadratic regression using technology (optional).

3.5 Polynomial Functions

- Understand the properties of graphs of polynomials.
- Graph polynomials using technology.
- Use polynomial models for estimation.

3.6 Rational Functions

- Graph rational functions.
- Solve real world applications using rational functions.

Chapter 4 Exponential and Logarithmic Functions

4.1 Exponential Functions

- Graph exponential functions with various bases.
- Evaluate exponential functions for values within the domain.
- Use technology to find the domain value for a given function value.

4.2 Applications of Exponential Functions

- Define an exponential growth function from given information in real world applications.
- Evaluate exponential functions for values within the domain from real world applications.
- Use technology to find the domain value for a given function value in real world applications.

4.3 Logarithmic Functions

- Evaluate logarithmic expressions of base 10, base e , and an arbitrary base a .
- Recognize that logarithms of negative numbers and 0 are not defined.
- Use the properties of logarithms to evaluate expressions.
- Translate exponential expressions to logarithmic expressions and vice versa.
- Graph logarithmic functions.
- Use technology to solve algebraic equations involving logarithmic expressions.

4.4 Logarithmic and Exponential Equations

- Solve algebraic equations involving logarithmic functions for unknown quantities.
- Solve algebraic equations involving exponential functions for unknown quantities.
- Solve algebraic equations involving logarithmic or exponential functions presented in real world applications.

Chapter 5 Mathematics of Finance

5.1 Simple Interest and Discount

- Determine unknown quantities using the simple interest formula, the future value for simple interest formula, and the present value for simple interest formula.

5.2 Compound Interest

- Determine unknown quantities using the compound interest formula, the future value for compound interest formula, and the present value for compound interest formula.
- Calculate the effective rate.

5.3 Annuities, Future Value, and Sinking Funds

- Determine unknown quantities using the future value of an ordinary annuity or an annuities due product.
- Determine unknown quantities involving a sinking fund.

5.4 Annuities, Present Value, and Amortization

- Determine unknown quantities using the present value of an ordinary annuity or an annuities due product.
- Calculate payment amounts, the remaining balance, and the amortization schedule of loans.

Chapter 6 Systems of Linear Equations and Matrices

6.1 Systems of Two Linear Equations in Two Variables

- Solve a system of linear equations with the substitution and elimination methods.
- Recognize dependent and inconsistent systems.

6.2 Larger Systems of Linear Equations

- Solve larger systems with the elimination method.
- Solve larger systems with the matrix method.
- Use technology to solve systems of linear equations.

6.3 Applications of Systems of Linear Equations

- Set up and solve a system of linear equations from a real world context.

6.4 Basic Matrix Operations

- Add and subtract matrices.
- Multiply a matrix by a scalar.

6.5 Matrix Products and Inverses

- Perform matrix multiplication.
- Recognize an identity matrix.
- Calculate a matrix inverse.

6.6 Applications of Matrices

- Solve a system of equations using the inverse of a matrix.
- Perform input-output analysis.
- Use matrices in coding and routing applications.

Chapter 7 Linear Programming

7.1 Graphing Linear Inequalities in Two Variables

- Graph a linear inequality in two variables and shade the solution region.
- Graph a system of linear inequalities and shade the solution region.
- Set up and solve a system of linear inequalities from a real world context.

7.2 Linear Programming: The Graphical Method

- Find graphically the maximum and minimum values of an objective function subject to linear constraints.

7.3 Applications of Linear Programming

- Solve graphically real world applications to maximization and minimization values of an objective function subject to linear constraints.

7.4 The Simplex Method: Maximization

- Convert a system of linear equations with an objective function to standard maximum form.
- Pivot and solve for the solution from standard maximum form.
- Use technology to perform the simplex method.

7.5 Maximization Applications

- Set up and solve, using the simplex method, real world applications involving maximization.

7.6 The Simplex Method: Duality and Minimization

- Construct the dual matrix to solve a minimization problem.
- Interpret the minimization solution correctly.
- Set up and solve, using the simplex method, real world applications involving minimization.

7.7 The Simplex Method: Nonstandard Problems

- Solve maximization and minimization problems with inequality constraints.
- Solve real world applications of nonstandard problems.

Chapter 8 Sets and Probability

8.1 Sets

- Recognize the elements of a set and set equality.
- Understand the definition of and the notation for a subset.
- Perform the operations of complement, union, and intersection on sets.

8.2 Applications of Venn Diagrams and Contingency Tables

- Draw Venn diagrams to represent sets.
- Shade Venn diagrams appropriately to represent operations on sets.

8.3 Introduction to Probability

- List the elements of a sample space.
- List the elements of an event.
- Perform set operations for events.
- Draw Venn diagrams to represent operations on events.
- Use the basic probability principle to find the probability of an event.
- Recognize disjoint events.
- Calculate the probability of an event from relative frequency.
- Understand the properties of probability.

8.4 Basic Concepts of Probability

- Use the addition and complement rules to calculate probability.
- Calculate the odds of an event.
- Apply probability rules to real world contexts.

8.5 Conditional Probability and Independent Events

- Calculate conditional probability.
- Use the multiplication rule to calculate probability.
- Create and use a tree diagram to illustrate real world applications of conditional contexts.
- Recognize independent events and use the multiplication rule for independent events.

8.6 Bayes' Formula

- Calculate probabilities using Bayes' formula.
- Create appropriate tree diagrams to model real world conditional contexts.

Chapter 9 Counting, Probability Distributions, and Further Topics in Probability

9.1 Probability Distributions and Expected Value

- Recognize a random variable and a probability distribution.
- Calculate the expected value of a probability distribution.

9.2 The Multiplication Principle, Permutations, and Combinations

- Use the multiplicative principle for counting.
- Use factorial notation for counting.
- Use permutations to count how many ways n objects can be taken r at a time if order does matter.
- Use combinations to count how many ways n objects can be taken r at a time if order does not matter.
- Choose the appropriate counting method in a variety of real world applications.

9.3 Applications of Counting

- Choose and use correctly the appropriate counting method in a variety of real world applications.

9.4 Binomial Probability

- Recognize the four conditions of a binomial experiment.
- Use the binomial formula appropriately to calculate the binomial probability distribution.
- Calculate the expected value of a binomial distribution.

9.5 Markov Chains

- Create a transition matrix to model conditional behavior.
- Find the long-range trend for a Markov chain.
- Apply Markov chain modeling for a variety of real world applications.

9.6 Decision Making

- Identify states of nature, strategies, and a payoff matrix to illuminate decision options and expected outcomes in a variety of real world applications.

Chapter 10 Introduction to Statistics

10.1 Frequency Distributions

- Tabulate grouped frequency distributions.
- Create histograms.
- Create stem-and-leaf plots.
- Assess the shape of a distribution.

10.2 Measures of Center

- Calculate mean, median, and mode.
- Calculate mean and median for grouped distributions.

10.3 Measures of Variation

- Calculate range, variance, and standard deviation.
- Calculate variance and standard deviation for grouped distributions.

10.4 Normal Distributions and Boxplots

- Explore properties of normal curves.
- Use the normal probability table for the standard normal distribution.
- Calculate z -scores.
- Use the z -scores and the standard normal probability chart to find probabilities for nonstandard normal distributions.
- Calculate quartiles.
- Create and interpret boxplots.

10.5 Normal Approximation to the Binomial Distribution

- Use the normal distribution to approximate binomial probabilities.

Solutions to Prerequisite Skills Test

1. We must find a common denominator before subtracting. Since 6 can be written as a fraction as $\frac{6}{1}$, then 2 can be the common denominator.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{5}{2} - 6 &= \frac{5}{2} - \frac{6}{1} \\ &= \frac{5}{2} - \frac{6(2)}{2} = \frac{5}{2} - \frac{12}{2} \\ &= \frac{5 - 12}{2} = \frac{-7}{2}.\end{aligned}$$

2. Division of fraction implies that we multiply by the reciprocal. In this case, we multiply $\frac{1}{2}$ by the reciprocal of $\frac{2}{5}$, which is $\frac{5}{2}$. We obtain

$$\frac{1}{2} \div \frac{2}{5} = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{5}{2} = \frac{1 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 2} = \frac{5}{4}.$$

3. We rewrite 3 as a fraction as $\frac{3}{1}$ and then multiply by the reciprocal.

$$\frac{1}{3} \div \frac{3}{1} = \frac{1}{3} \cdot \frac{1}{3} = \frac{1 \cdot 1}{3 \cdot 3} = \frac{1}{9}.$$

4. We perform the operation inside the parenthesis first. We have

$$2 \div 6 = \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3}.$$

Thus,

$$7 + 2 - 3(2 \div 6) = 7 + 2 - 3\left(\frac{1}{3}\right).$$

We then perform the multiplication and see that

$$3\left(\frac{1}{3}\right) = \frac{3}{1} \cdot \frac{1}{3} = \frac{3(1)}{1(3)} = \frac{3}{3} = 1.$$

So we now have

$$7 + 2 - 3\left(\frac{1}{3}\right) = 7 + 2 - 1.$$

Performing addition and subtraction from left to right, we obtain $9 - 1 = 8$.

5. We begin by performing the multiplication on the numerator. We obtain

$$\frac{2 \cdot 3 + 12}{1 + 5} - 1 = \frac{6 + 12}{1 + 5} - 1.$$

Next, we perform addition in the numerator and addition in the denominator.

$$\frac{6 + 12}{1 + 5} - 1 = \frac{18}{6} - 1.$$

Next, we perform the division and realize that $\frac{18}{6} = 3$, to obtain $3 - 1 = 2$.

6. False. We add the numerator values together to obtain

$$\frac{4 + 3}{3} = \frac{7}{3} \neq 5.$$

7. False. We obtain a common denominator of 35 to obtain

$$\frac{5}{7} + \frac{7}{5} = \frac{5(5)}{35} + \frac{7(7)}{35} = \frac{25}{35} + \frac{49}{35} = \frac{25 + 49}{35} = \frac{74}{35} \neq 1.$$

8. False. We write 1 as a fraction with the same denominator as $\frac{3}{5}$, namely $1 = \frac{5}{5}$. Thus, we have

$$\frac{3}{5} + 1 = \frac{3}{5} + \frac{5}{5} = \frac{8}{5} \neq \frac{6}{5}.$$

9. Since n represents the number of shoes that Alicia has, we can add 2 to n to obtain the number of shoes for Manuel. Thus we are looking for the expression $n + 2$ for the number of shoes for Manuel.
10. We can say x represents David's age. Since Selina's age is 6 more than David, Selina's age is $x + 6$. The two ages together then are

$$x + (x + 6) = 42.$$

If we combine like terms, we have

$$2x + 6 = 42.$$

We can solve for x by adding -6 to each side to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} 2x + 6 - 6 &= 42 - 6 \\ 2x &= 36. \end{aligned}$$

We then divide each side by 2 to obtain

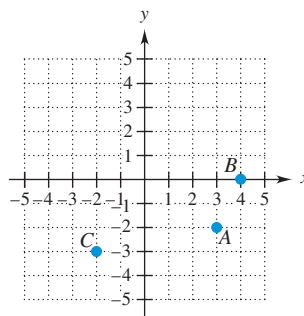
$$x = 18.$$

Thus, David's age is 18 and Selina's age is $18 + 6 = 24$.

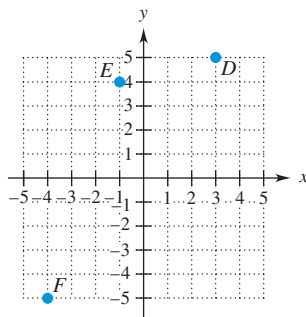
11. If the sweater is reduced by 20%, then its sale price is $100 - 20 = 80\%$ of the original price. To obtain the new price we first convert 80% to a decimal to obtain .80 and then multiply by the price of the sweater to obtain

$$.80(\$72) = \$57.60$$

12. When we plot points, the first coordinate is the value for the x -axis and the second value is for the y -axis. For points A, B, and C, we obtain



13. Similarly, we plot points D, E, and F to obtain

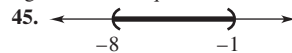
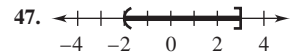
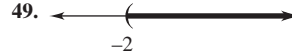


14. (a) 4.27659 has a value of 2 in the tenths place, and the value after that is 7, so we round up to obtain 4.3 to the nearest tenth.
 (b) 245.984 has a 5 in the units place and a 9 in the tenths place, so we round up the units place to obtain 246 to the nearest unit.
15. (a) 16.38572 has an 8 in the hundredths place and a 5 in the thousandths place, so we round up to obtain 16.39 to the nearest hundredth.
 (b) 1,763,304.42 has a 3 in the thousands place and the following digit is also a 3, so we do not round up and obtain 1,763,000 rounded to the nearest thousand.
16. (a) Writing 34 million dollars as a numerical value is $34 \cdot 1,000,000 = \$34,000,000$.
 (b) Writing 2.2 thousand dollars as a numerical value is $2.2 \cdot 1000 = \$2,200$.
17. (a) 17 hundred thousand as a numerical value is $17 \cdot 100,000 = 1,700,000$.
 (b) Three and a quarter billion as a numerical value is $3.25 \cdot 1,000,000,000 = 3,250,000,000$.
18. There is no solution to $\frac{5}{0}$ because a 0 in the denominator indicates the fraction is undefined.
19. Yes, it is. If a car is traveling 60 miles in one hour, it is traveling 60 miles in 60 minutes, which equates to 1 mile per minute.
20. -9 is greater than -900 .

Answers to Selected Exercises

Chapter 1

Section 1.1 (Page 28)

1. True 3. Answers vary with the calculator, but 2,508,429,787/798,458,000 is the best. 5. Distributive property
 7. Identity property of addition 9. Associative property of addition
 11. Answers vary. 13. -39 15. -2 17. 45.6
 19. About .9167 21. -12 23. 0 25. 4 27. -1
 29. $\frac{2040}{523}$, $\frac{189}{37}$, $\sqrt{27}$, $\frac{4587}{691}$, 6.735, $\sqrt{47}$ 31. $12 < 18.5$
 33. $x \geq 5.7$ 35. $z \leq 7.5$ 37. $<$ 39. $<$ 41. a lies to the right of b or is equal to b .
 43. $c < a < b$
 45.  47. 
 49. 
 51. -3 53. -19 55. = 57. = 59. = 61. $>$
 63. $7 - a$ 65. Answers vary. 67. Answers vary. 69. 1
 71. 9 73. 7 75. 49.9 77. 3.8 79. 35.7
 81. 2005, 2006, 2008, 2010, 2011 83. 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011

Section 1.2 (Page 36)

1. 1,973,822.685 3. 289.0991339 5. Answers vary. 7. 4^5
 9. $(-6)^7$ 11. $(5u)^{28}$ 13. Degree 4; coefficients: 6.2, -5, 4, -3, 3.7; constant term 3.7 15. 3 17. $-x^3 + x^2 - 13x$
 19. $-6y^2 + 3y + 6$ 21. $-6x^2 + 4x - 4$ 23. $-18m^3 - 54m^2 + 9m$
 25. $12z^3 + 14z^2 - 7z + 5$ 27. $12k^2 + 16k - 3$
 29. $6y^2 + 13y + 5$ 31. $18k^2 - 7kq - q^2$
 33. $4.34m^2 + 5.68m - 4.42$ 35. $-k + 3$
 37. $R = 5000x$; $C = 200,000 + 1800x$; $P = 3200x - 200,000$
 39. $R = 9750x$; $C = -3x^2 + 3480x + 259,675$;
 $P = 3x^2 + 6270x - 259,675$ 41. (a) \$265 million
 (b) About \$212 million 43. (a) \$948 million
 (b) About \$883 million 45. About \$1712 million
 47. About \$1163 million 49. False 51. True 53. .866
 55. .505 57. (a) Approximately 60,501,067 cu ft
 (b) The shape becomes a rectangular box with a square base, with volume b^2h . (c) Yes 59. (a) 0, 1, 2, 3, or no degree (if one is the negative of the other) (b) 0, 1, 2, 3, or no degree (if they are equal) (c) 6
 61. Between 40,000 and 45,000 calculators

Section 1.3 (Page 43)

1. $12x(x - 2)$ 3. $r(r^2 - 5r + 1)$ 5. $6z(z^2 - 2z + 3)$
 7. $(2y - 1)^2(14y - 4) = 2(2y - 1)^2(7y - 2)$
 9. $(x + 5)^4(x^2 + 10x + 28)$ 11. $(x + 1)(x + 4)$
 13. $(x + 3)(x + 4)$ 15. $(x + 3)(x - 2)$ 17. $(x - 1)(x + 3)$
 19. $(x - 4)(x + 1)$ 21. $(z - 7)(z - 2)$ 23. $(z + 4)(z + 6)$
 25. $(2x - 1)(x - 4)$ 27. $(3p - 4)(5p - 1)$ 29. $(2z - 5)(2z - 3)$
 31. $(2x + 1)(3x - 4)$ 33. $(5y - 2)(2y + 5)$ 35. $(2x - 1)(3x + 4)$
 37. $(3a + 5)(a - 1)$ 39. $(x + 9)(x - 9)$ 41. $(3p - 2)^2$
 43. $(r - 2t)(r + 5t)$ 45. $(m - 4n)^2$ 47. $(2u + 3)^2$
 49. Cannot be factored 51. $(2r + 3v)(2r - 3v)$ 53. $(x + 2y)^2$
 55. $(3a + 5)(a - 6)$ 57. $(7m + 2n)(3m + n)$
 59. $(y - 7z)(y + 3z)$ 61. $(11x + 8)(11x - 8)$
 63. $(a - 4)(a^2 + 4a + 16)$ 65. $(2r - 3s)(4r^2 + 6rs + 9s^2)$
 67. $(4m + 5)(16m^2 - 20m + 25)$ 69. $(10y - z)(100y^2 + 10yz + z^2)$

71. $(x^2 + 3)(x^2 + 2)$ 73. $b^2(b + 1)(b - 1)$
 75. $(x + 2)(x - 2)(x^2 + 3)$ 77. $(4a^2 + 9b^2)(2a + 3b)(2a - 3b)$
 79. $x^2(x^2 + 2)(x^4 - 2x^2 + 4)$ 81. Answers vary.
 83. Answers vary.

Section 1.4 (Page 49)

1. $\frac{x}{7}$ 3. $\frac{5}{7p}$ 5. $\frac{5}{4}$ 7. $\frac{4}{w + 6}$ 9. $\frac{y - 4}{3y^2}$ 11. $\frac{m - 2}{m + 3}$
 13. $\frac{x + 3}{x + 1}$ 15. $\frac{3}{16a}$ 17. $\frac{3y}{x^2}$ 19. $\frac{5}{4c}$ 21. $\frac{3}{4}$ 23. $\frac{3}{10}$
 25. $\frac{2(a + 4)}{a - 3}$ 27. $\frac{k + 2}{k + 3}$ 29. Answers vary. 31. $\frac{3}{35z}$
 33. $\frac{4}{3}$ 35. $\frac{20 + x}{5x}$ 37. $\frac{3m - 2}{m(m - 1)}$ 39. $\frac{37}{5(b + 2)}$
 41. $\frac{33}{20(k - 2)}$ 43. $\frac{7x - 1}{(x - 3)(x - 1)(x + 2)}$
 45. $\frac{y^2}{(y + 4)(y + 3)(y + 2)}$ 47. $\frac{x + 1}{x - 1}$ 49. $\frac{-1}{x(x + h)}$
 51. (a) $\frac{\pi x^2}{4x^2}$ (b) $\frac{\pi}{4}$ 53. (a) $\frac{x^2}{25x^2}$ (b) $\frac{1}{25}$
 55. $\frac{-7.2x^2 + 6995x + 230,000}{1000x}$ 57. About \$2.95 million
 59. No 61. \$3.99 63. \$10,537.68

Section 1.5 (Page 61)

1. 49 3. $16c^2$ 5. $32/x^5$ 7. $108u^{12}$ 9. $1/7$
 11. $-1/7776$ 13. $-1/y^3$ 15. $9/16$ 17. b^3/a 19. 7
 21. About 1.55 23. -16 25. $81/16$ 27. $4^2/5^3$ 29. 4^3
 31. 4^8 33. z^3 35. $\frac{p}{9}$ 37. $\frac{q^5}{r^3}$ 39. $\frac{8}{25p^7}$
 41. $2^{5/6}p^{3/2}$ 43. $2p + 5p^{5/3}$ 45. $\frac{1}{3y^{2/3}}$ 47. $\frac{a^{1/2}}{49b^{5/2}}$
 49. $x^{7/6} - x^{11/6}$ 51. $x - y$ 53. (f) 55. (h) 57. (g)
 59. (c) 61. 5 63. 5 65. 21 67. $\sqrt{77}$ 69. $5\sqrt{3}$
 71. $-\sqrt{2}$ 73. $15\sqrt{5}$ 75. 3 77. $-3 - 3\sqrt{2}$
 79. $4 + \sqrt{3}$ 81. $\frac{7}{11 + 6\sqrt{2}}$ 83. (a) 14 (b) 85 (c) 58.0
 85. About \$10.2 billion 87. About \$10.6 billion 89. About 180.6
 91. About 168.7 93. About 5.8 million 95. About 7.3 million
 97. About 30.4 million 99. About 87.1 million

Section 1.6 (Page 70)

1. 4 3. 7 5. $-10/9$ 7. 4 9. $\frac{40}{7}$ 11. $\frac{26}{3}$ 13. $-\frac{12}{5}$
 15. $-\frac{59}{6}$ 17. $-\frac{9}{4}$ 19. $x = .72$ 21. $r \approx -13.26$
 23. $\frac{b - 5a}{2}$ 25. $x = \frac{3b}{a + 5}$ 27. $V = \frac{k}{p}$ 29. $g = \frac{V - V_0}{t}$
 31. $B = \frac{2A}{h} - b$ or $B = \frac{2A - bh}{h}$ 33. -2, 3 35. -8, 2
 37. $\frac{5}{2} \cdot \frac{7}{2}$ 39. 10 hrs 41. 23° 43. 71.6° 45. 2010

A-2 Answers to Selected Exercises

47. 2015 49. 2010 51. 2016 53. 2012 55. 2016
 57. 4779 thousand 59. 3074 thousand 61. \$205.41
 63. \$21,000 65. \$70,000 for first plot; \$50,000 for the second
 67. About 409,091 per month 69. 25,772,733 71. $\frac{400}{3}L$
 73. About 105 miles 75. 83 mph 77. 2.9 gallons of premium and 12.7 gallons of regular


Section 1.7 (Page 78)

1. -4, 14 3. 0, -6 5. 0, 2 7. -7, -8 9. $\frac{1}{2}, 3$
 11. $-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}$ 13. $\frac{5}{2}, 4$ 15. -5, -2 17. $\frac{4}{3}, -\frac{4}{3}$ 19. 0, 1
 21. $2 \pm \sqrt{7}$ 23. $\frac{1 \pm 2\sqrt{5}}{4}$ 25. $\frac{-7 \pm \sqrt{41}}{4}$; -.1492, -3.3508
 27. $\frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{4}$; .3090, -.8090 29. $\frac{-5 \pm \sqrt{65}}{10}$; .3062, -1.3062
 31. No real-number solutions 33. $-\frac{5}{2}, 1$ 35. No real-number solutions
 37. $-5, \frac{3}{2}$ 39. 1 41. 2 43. $x \approx .4701$ or 1.8240
 45. $x \approx -1.0376$ or .6720 47. (a) 30 mph (b) About 35 mph (c) About 44 mph
 49. (a) 2007 (b) 2009
 51. (a) About \$7.6 trillion (b) 2007 53. About 1.046 ft
 55. (a) $x + 20$ (b) Northbound: $5x$; eastbound: $5(x + 20)$ or $5x + 100$
 (c) $(5x)^2 + (5x + 100)^2 = 300^2$ (d) About 31.23 mph and 51.23 mph
 57. (a) $150 - x$ (b) $x(150 - x) = 5000$ (c) Length 100 m; width 50 m
 59. 9 ft by 12 ft 61. 6.25 sec 63. (a) About 3.54 sec (b) 2.5 sec (c) 144 ft
 65. (a) 2 sec (b) $\frac{3}{4}$ sec or $\frac{13}{4}$ sec (c) It reaches the given height twice: once on the way up and once on the way down.

67. $t = \frac{\sqrt{2Sg}}{g}$ 69. $h = \frac{d^2\sqrt{kL}}{L}$
 71. $R = \frac{-2Pr + E^2 \pm E\sqrt{E^2 - 4Pr}}{2P}$ 73. (a) $x^2 - 2x = 15$
 (b) $x = 5$ or $x = -3$ (c) $z = \pm\sqrt{5}$ 75. $\pm\frac{\sqrt{6}}{2}$
 77. $\pm\sqrt{\frac{3 + \sqrt{13}}{2}}$

Chapter 1 Review Exercises (Page 81)

Refer to Section	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.5	1.6	1.7
For Exercises	1-18, 81-84	19-24, 85-88	25-32	33-38, 89-90	39-60, 91-92	61-68, 93-94	69-80, 95-100

1. 0, 6 3. $-12, -6, -\frac{9}{10}, -\sqrt{4}, 0, \frac{1}{8}, 6$
 5. Commutative property of multiplication 7. Distributive property
 9. $x \geq 9$ 11. $-|3 - (-2)|, |-2|, |6 - 4|, |8 + 1|$ 13. -1
 15. 
 17. $\frac{7}{9}$ 19. $4x^4 - 4x^2 + 11x$ 21. $25k^2 - 4h^2$
 23. $9x^2 + 24xy + 16y^2$ 25. $k(2h^2 - 4h + 5)$
 27. $a^2(5a + 2)(a + 2)$ 29. $(12p + 13q)(12p - 13q)$
 31. $(3y - 1)(9y^2 + 3y + 1)$ 33. $\frac{9x^2}{4}$ 35. 4 37. $\frac{(m - 1)^2}{3(m + 1)}$
 39. $\frac{1}{5^3}$ or $\frac{1}{125}$ 41. -1 43. 4^3 45. $\frac{1}{8}$ 47. $\frac{7}{10}$ 49. $\frac{1}{5^{2/3}}$
 51. $3^{7/2}a^{5/2}$ 53. 3 55. $3pq\sqrt[3]{2q^2}$ 57. $-21\sqrt{3}$
 59. $\sqrt{6} - \sqrt{3}$ 61. $-\frac{1}{3}$ 63. No solution 65. $x = \frac{3}{8a - 2}$

67. -38, 42 69. $-7 \pm \sqrt{5}$ 71. $\frac{1}{2}, -2$ 73. $-\frac{3}{2}, 7$
 75. $\pm\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$ 77. $r = \frac{-Rp \pm E\sqrt{Rp}}{p}$ 79. $R = \left(\sqrt[n]{\frac{A}{P}} - 1\right) \times 100$
 81. 144 feet 83. \$1280 85. (a) 2009 (b) 2012
 87. (a) \$3,92,675 (b) \$58,659
 89. (a) vertically downward (b) $t = 4$ seconds
 91. (a) 17.346 million (b) 2014 93. 11%
 95. 2.004 parts per million 97. 3.2 feet 99. About 7.77 seconds

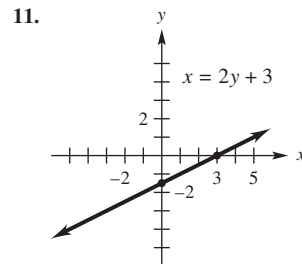
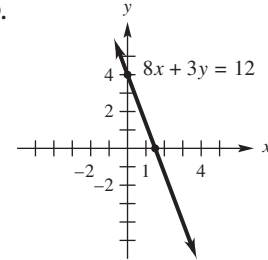
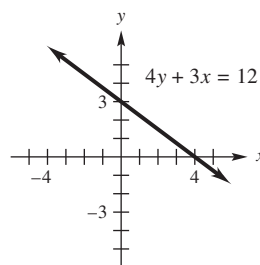
Case Study 1 (Page 84)

1. $218 + 508x$ 3. Electric by \$1880 5. $1529.10 + 50x$
 7. LG by \$29.10

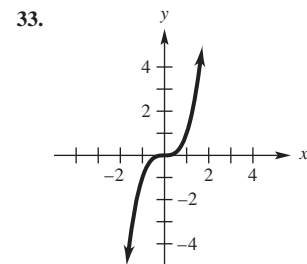
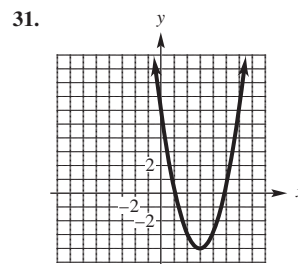
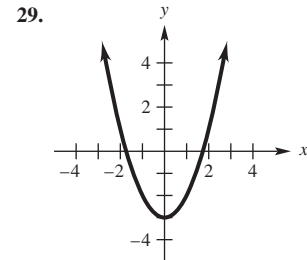
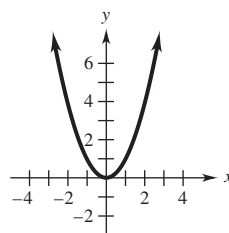
Chapter 2

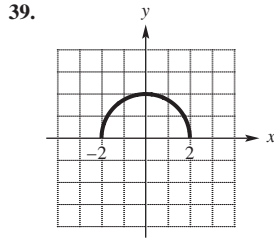
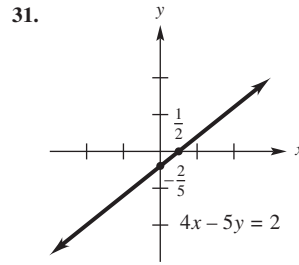
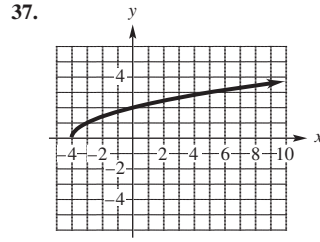
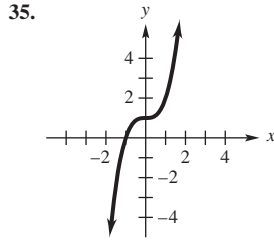
Section 2.1 (Page 92)

1. IV, II, I, III 3. Yes 5. No
 7. 9.

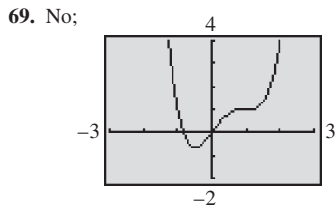
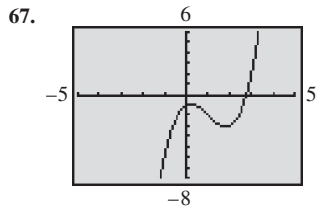
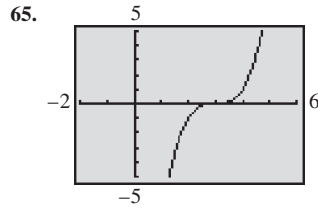
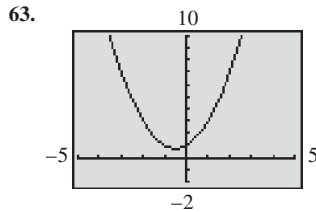


13. x-intercepts -2.5, 3; y-intercept 3 15. x-intercepts -1, 2; y-intercept -2
 17. x-intercept 4; y-intercept 3 19. x-intercept 12; y-intercept -8
 21. x-intercepts 3, -3; y-intercept -9
 23. x-intercepts -5, 4; y-intercept -20
 25. no x-intercept; y-intercept 7
 27.





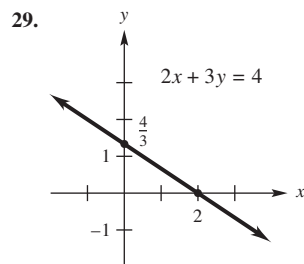
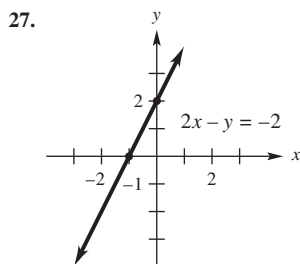
41. 2008; 20 million pounds 43. 2011
 45. (a) About \$1,250,000 (b) About \$1,750,000
 (c) About \$4,250,000 47. (a) About \$500,000
 (b) About \$1,000,000 (c) About \$1,500,000 49. Beef: about 59 pounds; Chicken: about 83 pounds; Pork: about 47.5 pounds
 51. 2001 53. About \$507 billion 55. 2008–2015
 57. \$16.5; \$21 59. \$17.25; Day 14 61. No



71. $x \approx -1.1038$ 73. $x \approx 2.1017$ 75. $x \approx -1.7521$
 77. About \$6.99 trillion 79. About \$45.41 trillion

Section 2.2 (Page 104)

1. $-\frac{3}{2}$ 3. -2 5. $-\frac{5}{2}$ 7. Not defined 9. $y = 4x + 5$
 11. $y = -2.3x + 1.5$ 13. $y = -\frac{3}{4}x + 4$ 15. $m = 2; b = -9$
 17. $m = 3; b = -2$ 19. $m = \frac{2}{3}; b = -\frac{16}{9}$ 21. $m = \frac{2}{3}; b = 0$
 23. $m = 1; b = 5$ 25. (a) C (b) B (c) B (d) D



33. Perpendicular 35. Parallel 37. Neither 39. (a) $\frac{2}{5}, \frac{9}{8}, -\frac{5}{2}$
 (b) Yes 41. $y = -\frac{2}{3}x$ 43. $y = 3x - 3$ 45. $y = 1$
 47. $x = -2$ 49. $y = 2x + 3$ 51. $2y = 7x - 3$ 53. $y = 5x$
 55. $x = 6$ 57. $y = 2x - 2$ 59. $y = x - 6$ 61. $y = -x + 2$
 63. \$1330.42 65. \$6715.23 67. (a) \$202.05 billion
 (b) \$270.5 billion (c) 2015 69. (a) 384.6 thousand
 (b) 366.6 thousand (c) 2019 71. (a) (5, 35.1), (11, 29.7)
 (b) $y = -.9x + 39.6$ (c) \$31.5 billion (d) 2016
 73. (a) $y = .035x + .40$ (b) \$.82 75. (a) $y = -964.5x + 36,845$
 (b) 31,058 77. (a) The average decrease in time over 1 year; times are going down, in general. (b) 12.94 minutes

Section 2.3 (Page 113)

1. (a) $y = \frac{5}{9}(x - 32)$ (b) 10°C and 23.89°C 3. 463.89°C
 5. $y = 4.66x + 173.64; 210.92; 243.54$
 7. $y = .0625x + 6; 6.625$ million 9. 4 ft
 11. (a) 22.2, -23.2, -12.6, 6.0, 7.6; -22.6, -41.4, -4.2, 41.0, 69.2;
 sum = 0 (b) 1283.6; 8712 (c) Model 1 13. Yes
 15. (a) $y = 5.90x + 146.59$ (b) \$235.09 billion
 17. (a) $y = -3.96x + 73.98$ (b) \$10.62 billion
 19. (a) $y = 2.37x - 2.02$ (b) \$26.42 billion; \$31.16 billion
 21. (a) $y = -2.318x + 55.88$ (b) 41.972 thousand (c) early 2012
 (d) $r \approx -.972$

Section 2.4 (Page 120)

1. Answers vary.
 3. $[-4, \infty)$ 5. $(-\infty, 0)$

 7. $(-\infty, \frac{10}{3}]$ 9. $(-\infty, -8]$

 11. $(-\infty, 3)$ 13. $(-1, \infty)$

 15. $(-\infty, 1]$ 17. $(\frac{1}{5}, \infty)$

 19. $(-5, 7)$ 21. $[\frac{7}{3}, 5]$

 23. $[-\frac{11}{2}, \frac{7}{2}]$ 25. $[-\frac{17}{7}, \infty)$

A-4 Answers to Selected Exercises

27. $x \geq 2$ 29. $-3 < x \leq 5$ 31. $x \geq 400$ 33. $x \geq 50$

35. Impossible to break even

37. $(-\infty, -7)$ or $(7, \infty)$



39. $[-5, 5]$



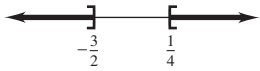
41. All real numbers



43. $\left(-\frac{3}{2}, \frac{5}{2}\right)$



45. $\left(-\infty, -\frac{3}{2}\right]$ or $\left[\frac{1}{4}, \infty\right)$



47. $76 \leq T \leq 90$ 49. $40 \leq T \leq 82$

51. (a) $25.33 \leq R_L \leq 28.17$; $36.58 \leq R_E \leq 40.92$

(b) $5699.25 \leq T_L \leq 6338.25$; $8230.5 \leq T_E \leq 9207$ 53. $35 \leq B \leq 43$

55. $0 < x \leq 8700$; $8700 < x \leq 35,350$; $35,350 < x \leq 85,650$;

$85,650 < x \leq 178,650$; $178,650 < x \leq 388,350$; $x > 388,350$

Section 2.5 (Page 128)

1. $\left[-4, \frac{3}{2}\right]$



3. $(-\infty, -3)$ or $(-1, \infty)$



5. $\left[-2, \frac{1}{4}\right]$



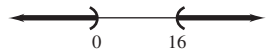
7. $(-\infty, -1)$ or $\left(\frac{1}{4}, \infty\right)$



9. $[-6, 6]$



11. $(-\infty, 0)$ or $(16, \infty)$



13. $[-3, 0]$ or $[3, \infty)$ 15. $[-7, -2]$ or $[2, \infty)$

17. $(-\infty, -5)$ or $(-1, 3)$ 19. $(-\infty, -\frac{1}{2})$ or $(0, \frac{4}{3})$ 21. No.

23. $(-1.1565, 2.5565)$ 25. $[-2.2635, .7556]$ or $[3.5079, \infty)$

27. $(.5, .8393)$ 29. $(-\infty, 1)$ or $[4, \infty)$ 31. $\left(\frac{7}{2}, 5\right)$

33. $(-\infty, 2)$ or $(5, \infty)$ 35. $(-\infty, -1)$ 37. $(-\infty, -2)$ or $(0, 3)$

39. $[-1, 5]$ 41. $(8, \infty)$ 43. $[52, 200]$ 45. 2010 or higher

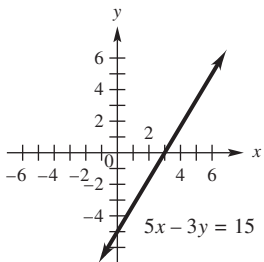
47. [2006, 2011]

Chapter 2 Review Exercises (Page 130)

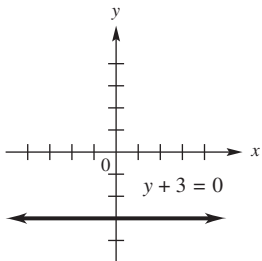
Refer to Section	2.1	2.2	2.3	2.4	2.5
For Exercises	1-10	11-34	35-38	39-54	55-68

1. $(-2, 3)$, $(0, -5)$, $(3, -2)$, $(4, 3)$

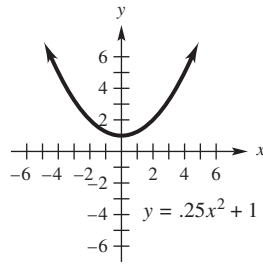
3.



5.



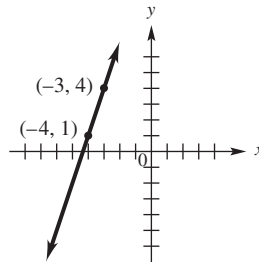
7.



9. (a) About 11:30 AM to about 7:30 PM (b) From midnight until about 5 AM and after about 10:30 PM 11. Answers vary. 13. -3

15. $-\frac{1}{4}$ 17. 3 19. 0 21. -3

23.



25. $3y = 2x - 13$ 27. $3x + 4y = 4$

29. $x = -1$ 31. $3y = 5x + 15$

33. (a) Profit by 400 thousands of dollars (b) 2005, 2006, 2007, and 2008
(c) \$71,493,700

35. (a) $y = 1919x + 47,059$ (b) $y = 1917.38x + 47,051.26$

- (c) \$68,168; \$68,142.44; least-squares regression line is closer;

- (d) \$75,811.96

37. (a) $y = 0.55x + 3.5$ (b) 6.25 (c) $r = 0.904$

39. $\left(\frac{3}{8}, \infty\right)$ 41. $-\frac{4}{5} \leq x \leq \frac{12}{5}$

43. $\left[-\frac{1}{2}, 2\right]$ 45. $[-8, 8]$ 47. $(-\infty, 2]$ or $[5, \infty)$

49. $\left[-\frac{9}{5}, 1\right]$ 51. (d) 53. (a) $y = 75.4x + 1496$ (b) 2013

55. $(-3, 2)$ 57. $[3, \infty)$

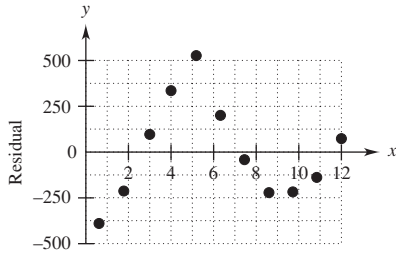
59. $(-\infty, -5]$ or $[-2, 3]$ 61. $(-\infty, 2)$ 63. $\left(-1, \frac{3}{2}\right)$

65. $[-19, -5)$ or $(2, \infty)$ 67. 2006, 2007, 2008

Case Study 2 Exercises (Page 133)

1. $y = -146.1x + 2330$

3. -389.8, -212.7, 96.4, 331.5, 525.6, 195.7, -41.2, -221.1, -217.0, -137.9, 73.2



5. $y = .343x - 20.65$ 7. $\hat{y} = \$-0.07$; Cannot have a negative wage
 9. $y = 0$; answers vary.

Chapter 3

Section 3.1 (Page 141)

1. Function 3. Function 5. Not a function 7. Function
 9. $(-\infty, \infty)$ 11. $(-\infty, \infty)$ 13. $(-\infty, 0]$
 15. All real numbers except 2 17. All real numbers except 2 and -2
 19. All real numbers such that $x > -4$ and $x \neq 3$ 21. $(-\infty, \infty)$
 23. (a) 8 (b) 8 (c) 8 (d) 8 25. (a) 48 (b) 6 (c) 25.38
 (d) 28.42 27. (a) $\sqrt{7}$ (b) 0 (c) $\sqrt{5.7}$ (d) Not defined
 29. (a) 12 (b) 23 (c) 12.91 (d) 49.41 31. (a) $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{15}$
 (b) Not defined (c) $\frac{\sqrt{1.7}}{6.29}$ (d) Not defined 33. (a) 13 (b) 9
 (c) 6.5 (d) 24.01 35. (a) $6 - p$ (b) $6 + r$ (c) $3 - m$
 37. (a) $\sqrt{4 - p}$ ($p \leq 4$) (b) $\sqrt{4 + r}$ ($r \geq -4$) (c) $\sqrt{1 - m}$ ($m \leq 1$)
 39. (a) $p^3 + 1$ (b) $-r^3 + 1$ (c) $m^3 + 9m^2 + 27m + 28$
 41. (a) $\frac{3}{p-1}$ ($p \neq 1$) (b) $\frac{3}{-r-1}$ ($r \neq -1$) (c) $\frac{3}{m+2}$ ($m \neq -2$)
 43. 2 45. $2x + h$

47.

X	Y1
2	414.3125
3	642.51
4	870.72
5	1098.93
6	1327.14
7	1555.35
8	1783.56
9	2011.77
10	2240.0
11	2468.21
12	2696.42
13	2924.63
14	3152.84
15	3381.05
16	3609.26
17	3837.47
18	4065.68
19	4293.89
20	4522.1
21	4750.31
22	4978.52
23	5206.73
24	5434.94
25	5663.15
26	5891.36
27	6119.57
28	6347.78
29	6575.99
30	6804.2
31	7032.41
32	7260.62
33	7488.83
34	7717.04
35	7945.25
36	8173.46
37	8401.67
38	8629.88
39	8858.09
40	9086.3
41	9314.51
42	9542.72
43	9770.93
44	10000
45	10228.21
46	10456.42
47	10684.63
48	10912.84
49	11141.05
50	11369.26
51	11597.47
52	11825.68
53	12053.89
54	12282.1
55	12510.31
56	12738.52
57	12966.73
58	13194.94
59	13423.15
60	13651.36
61	13879.57
62	14107.78
63	14336
64	14564.21
65	14792.42
66	15020.63
67	15248.84
68	15477.05
69	15705.26
70	15933.47
71	16161.68
72	16389.89
73	16618.1
74	16846.31
75	17074.52
76	17302.73
77	17530.94
78	17759.15
79	17987.36
80	18215.57
81	18443.78
82	18671.99
83	18899.2
84	19127.41
85	19355.62
86	19583.83
87	19812.04
88	20040.25
89	20268.46
90	20496.67
91	20724.88
92	20953.09
93	21181.3
94	21409.51
95	21637.72
96	21865.93
97	22094.14
98	22322.35
99	22550.56
100	22778.77

Y1=414.3125

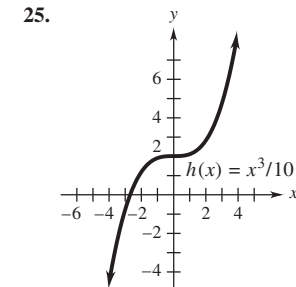
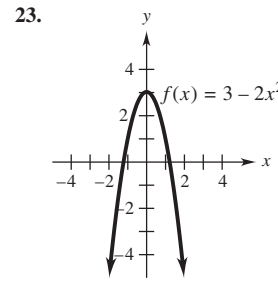
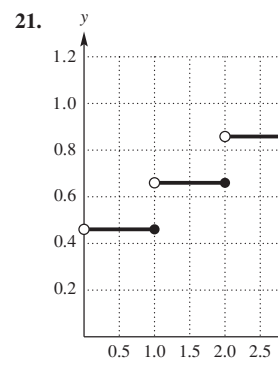
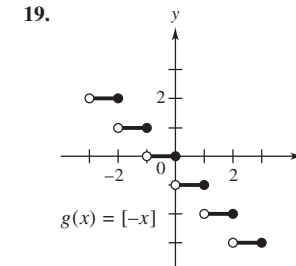
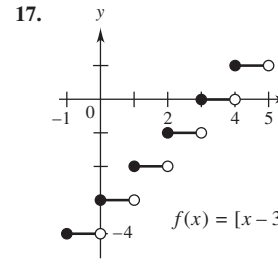
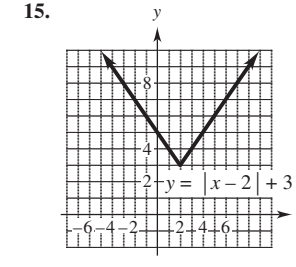
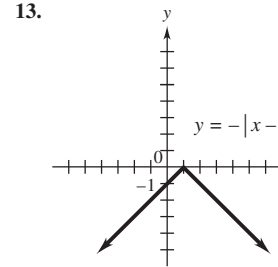
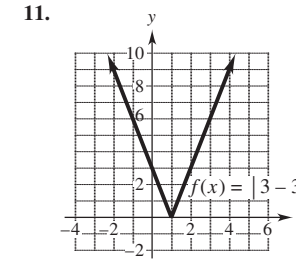
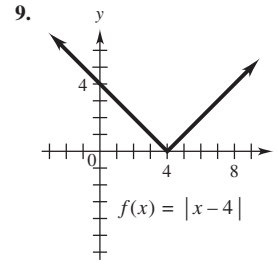
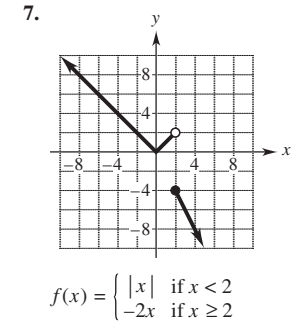
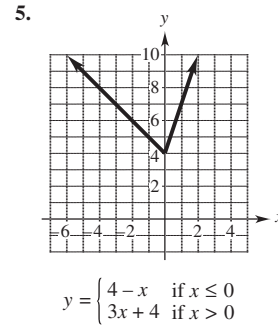
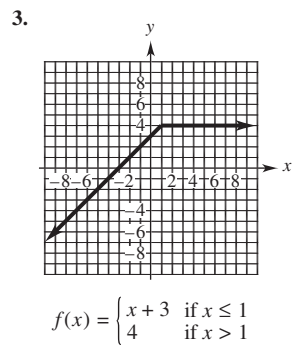
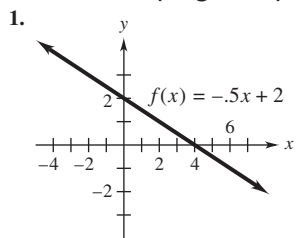
49. (a) \$1070 (b) \$4542.30 (c) \$8420.18 51. (a) \$-6.744 billion (loss) (b) \$14.448 billion 53. (a) \$2347.9 million
 (b) \$2299.9 million 55. $2050 - 500t$ 57. (a) $c(x) = 1800 + .5x$
 (b) $r(x) = 1.2x$ (c) $p(x) = .7x - 1800$

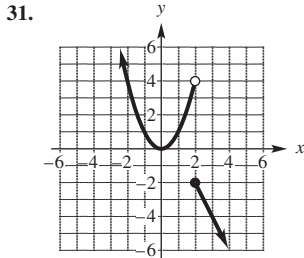
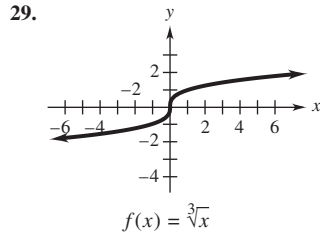
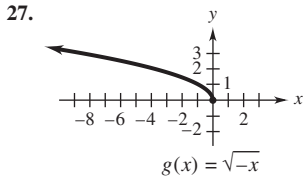
59.

X	Y1
10	4930.3
11	5069.3
12	5208.3
13	5347.3
14	5486.3
15	5625.3
16	5764.3
17	5903.3
18	6042.3
19	6181.3
20	6320.3
21	6459.3
22	6598.3
23	6737.3
24	6876.3
25	7015.3
26	7154.3
27	7293.3
28	7432.3
29	7571.3
30	7710.3
31	7849.3
32	7988.3
33	8127.3
34	8266.3
35	8405.3
36	8544.3
37	8683.3
38	8822.3
39	8961.3
40	9100.3
41	9239.3
42	9378.3
43	9517.3
44	9656.3
45	9795.3
46	9934.3
47	10073.3
48	10212.3
49	10351.3
50	10490.3
51	10629.3
52	10768.3
53	10907.3
54	11046.3
55	11185.3
56	11324.3
57	11463.3
58	11602.3
59	11741.3
60	11880.3
61	12019.3
62	12158.3
63	12297.3
64	12436.3
65	12575.3
66	12714.3
67	12853.3
68	12992.3
69	13131.3
70	13270.3
71	13409.3
72	13548.3
73	13687.3
74	13826.3
75	13965.3
76	14104.3
77	14243.3
78	14382.3
79	14521.3
80	14660.3
81	14799.3
82	14938.3
83	15077.3
84	15216.3
85	15355.3
86	15494.3
87	15633.3
88	15772.3
89	15911.3
90	16050.3
91	16189.3
92	16328.3
93	16467.3
94	16606.3
95	16745.3
96	16884.3
97	17023.3
98	17162.3
99	17301.3
100	17440.3

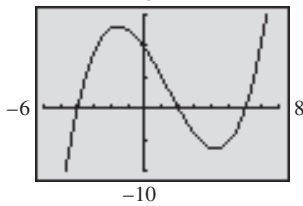
X=

Section 3.2 (Page 151)

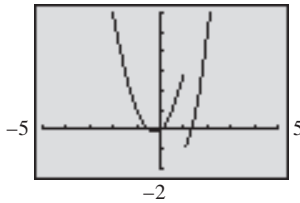




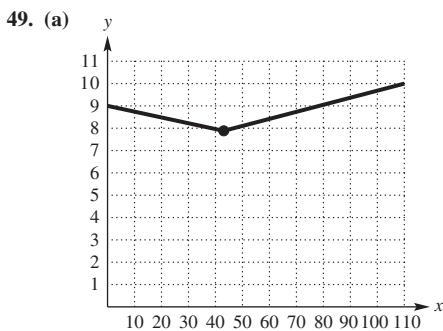
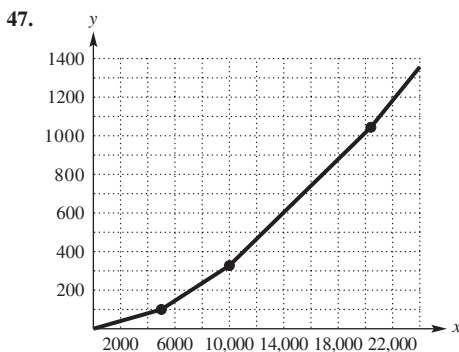
33. Function 35. Not a function 37. Function
39. 15



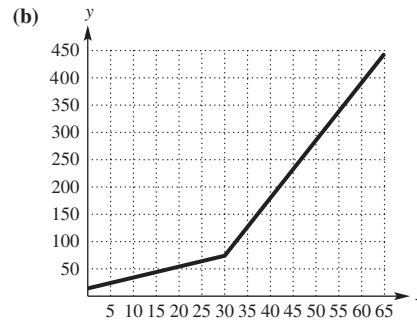
41. (1, -1) is on the graph; (1, 3) is not on the graph
6



43. $x = -4, 2, 6$ 45. Peak at (.5078, .3938); valleys at (-1.9826, -4.2009) and (3.7248, -8.7035)

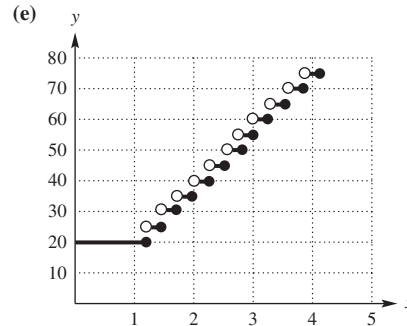


- (b) \$7.879 51. (a) $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x + 15.1 & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 30 \\ 10.5x - 240.1 & \text{if } x > 30 \end{cases}$

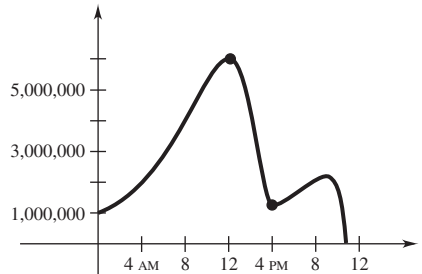


- (c) 326.9 (d) 442.4 53. (a) No (b) 1998, 2002, 2009 (c) 2009
55. (a) Yes (b) The years 1990–2010 (c) [7750, 15400]

57. (a) 33; 44 (b) The figure has vertical line segments, which can't be part of the graph of a function. (Why?) To make the figure into the graph of f , delete the vertical line segments; then, for each horizontal segment of the graph, put a closed dot on the left end and an open circle on the right end (as in Figure 3.7). 59. (a) \$34.99 (b) \$24.99 (c) \$64.99
(d) \$74.99

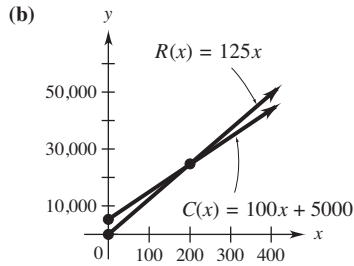


61. There are many correct answers, including

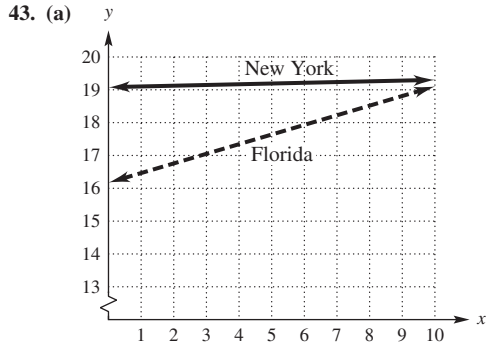


Section 3.3 (Page 162)

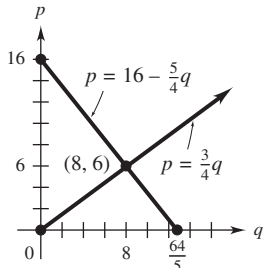
1. Let $C(x)$ be the cost of renting a saw for x hours; $C(x) = 25 + 5x$.
3. Let $C(x)$ be the cost (in dollars) for x half hours; $C(x) = 8 + 2.5x$.
5. $C(x) = 36x + 200$ 7. $C(x) = 120x + 3800$ 9. \$48, \$15.60, \$13.80 11. \$55.50, \$11.40, \$8.46 13. (a) $f(x) = -1916x + 16,615$
(b) 7035 (c) \$1916 per year 15. (a) $f(x) = -11,875x + 120,000$
(b) $[0, 8]$ (c) \$48,750 17. (a) \$80,000 (b) \$42.50 (c) \$122,500;
\$1,440,000 (d) \$122.50; \$45 19. (a) $C(x) = .097x + 1.32$
(b) \$98.32 (c) \$98.42 (d) \$.097, or 9.7¢ (e) \$.097, or 9.7¢
21. $R(x) = 1.77x + 2,310,000$ 23. (a) $C(x) = 10x + 750$
(b) $R(x) = 35x$ (c) $P(x) = 25x - 750$ (d) \$1750
25. (a) $C(x) = 18x + 300$ (b) $R(x) = 28x$ (c) $P(x) = 10x - 300$
(d) \$700 27. (a) $C(x) = 12.50x + 20,000$ (b) $R(x) = 30x$
(c) $P(x) = 17.50x - 20,000$ (d) -\$18,250 (a loss) 29. (3, -1)
31. $\left(-\frac{11}{4}, -\frac{61}{4}\right)$ 33. (a) 200,000 policies ($x = 200$)



(c) Revenue: \$12,500; cost: \$15,000 35. (a) $C(x) = .126x + 1.5$
 (b) \$2.382 million (c) About 17.857 units 37. Break-even point is about 467 units; do not produce the item. 39. Break-even point is about 1037 units; produce the item. 41. The percentage is approximately 53% in 1998.

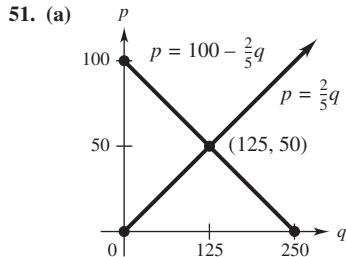


(b) No (c) Yes; Late 2010 45. \$140 47. 10 items
 49. (a) \$16 (b) \$11 (c) \$6 (d) 8 units (e) 4 units (f) 0 units
 (g)



(h) 0 units (i) $\frac{40}{3}$ units (j) $\frac{80}{3}$ units (k) See part (g). (l) 8 units

(m) \$6

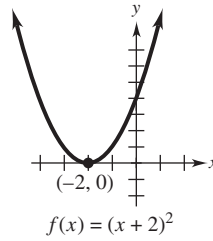


(b) 125 units (c) 50¢ (d) [0, 125) 53. Total cost increases when more items are made (because it includes the cost of all previously made items), so the graph cannot move downward. No; the average cost can decrease as more items are made, so its graph can move downward.

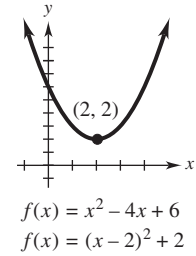
Section 3.4 (Page 174)

1. Upward 3. Downward 5. (5, 7); downward
 7. (-1, -9); upward 9. i 11. k 13. j 15. f
 17. $f(x) = \frac{1}{4}(x - 1)^2 + 2$ 19. $f(x) = (x + 1)^2 - 2$ 21. (-3, 12)
 23. (2, -7) 25. x-intercepts 1, 3; y-intercept 9
 27. x-intercepts -1, -3; y-intercept 6

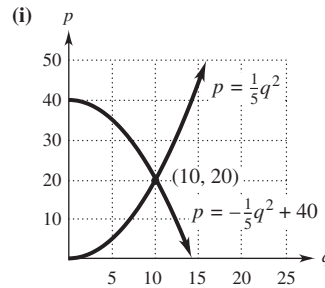
29. (-2, 0), $x = -2$



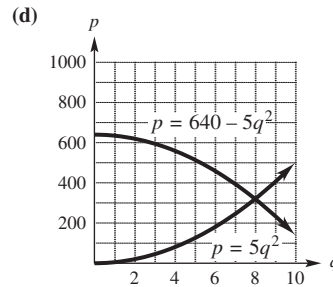
31. (2, 2), $x = 2$



33. 54 35. (a) 10 milliseconds (b) 40 responses per millisecond
 37. (a) 27 cases (b) Answers vary. (c) 15 cases
 39. (a) About 12 books (b) 10 books (c) About 7 books (d) 0 books
 (e) 5 books (f) About 7 books (g) 10 books (h) about 12 books



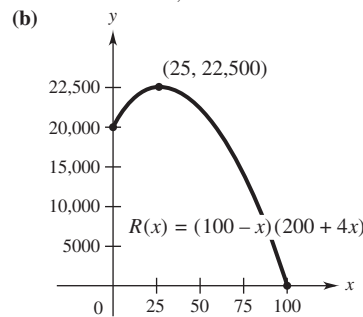
41. (a) \$640 (b) \$515 (c) \$140



(e) 800 units (f) \$320 43. 80; \$3600 45. 30; \$1500

47. 20 49. 10

51. (a) $R(x) = (100 - x)(200 + 4x)$
 $= 20,000 + 200x - 4x^2$

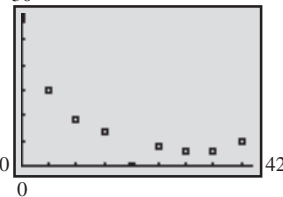


(c) 25 seats (d) \$22,500 53. 13 weeks; \$96.10/hog

55. (a) $.013(x - 20)^2$ (b) About 4

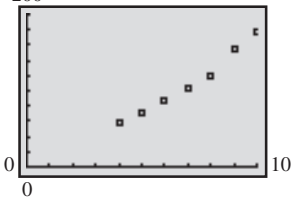
57. (a) $f(x) = 3.9375(x - 4)^2 + 57.8$ (b) About \$309.8 billion

59. 30



$f(x) = .034x^2 - 1.87x + 26.16$;
 about 4

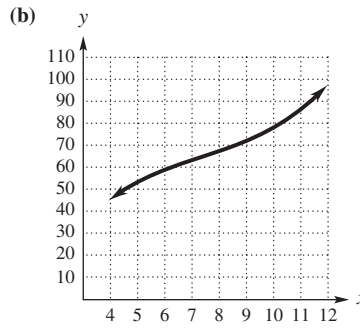
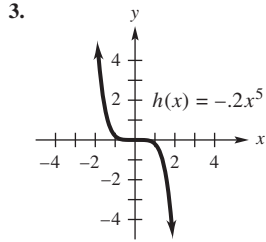
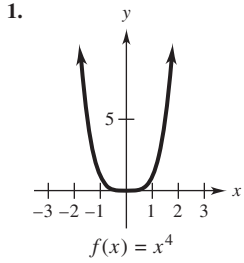
61. 200



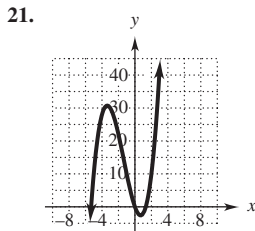
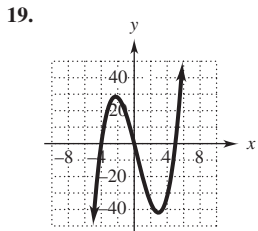
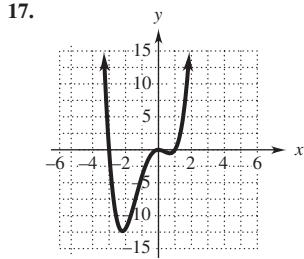
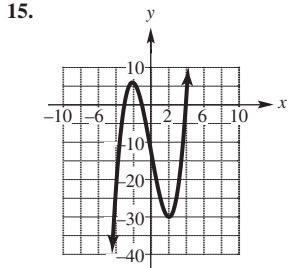
$f(x) = 1.808x^2 - 5.185x + 50.72$;
 about \$248.85 billion

63. (a) 11.3 and 88.7 (b) 50 (c) \$3000 (d) $x < 11.3$ or $x > 88.7$
 (e) $11.3 < x < 88.7$

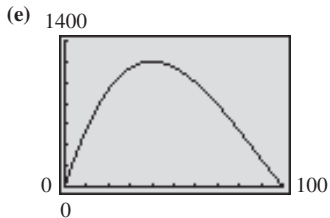
Section 3.5 (Page 185)



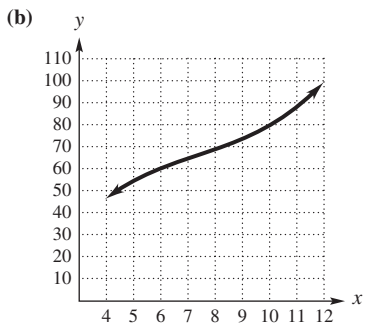
5. (a) Yes (b) No (c) No (d) Yes 7. (a) Yes (b) No
 (c) Yes (d) No 9. d 11. b 13. e



23. $-3 \leq x \leq 5$ and $-20 \leq y \leq 5$ 25. $-3 \leq x \leq 4$ and $-35 \leq y \leq 20$
 27. (a) \$933.33 billion (b) \$1200 billion
 (c) \$1145.8 billion (d) \$787.5 billion

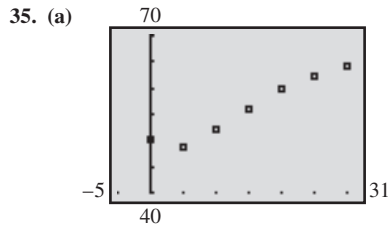


29. (a) \$54.785 million; \$64.843 million; \$99.578 million

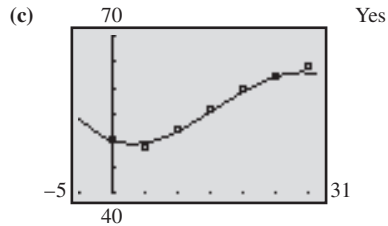


- (c) Yes, because the slope is always positive.
 31. (a) \$53.615 million; \$63.505 million; \$97.33 million

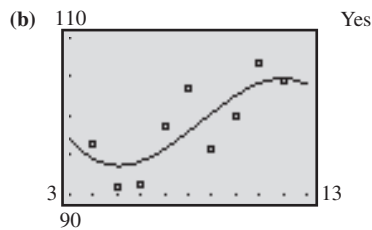
- (c) Yes, the slope is always positive
 33. $P(x) = .006x^3 - .13x^2 + .99x - 1.28$; \$2.248 million



- (b) $g(x) = -.0016x^3 + .0765x^2 - .425x + 50.0$



- (d) 62.9528 million
 37. (a) $R(x) = -.0668x^3 + 1.708x^2 - 12.15x + 120.1$

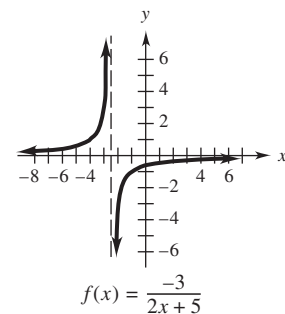
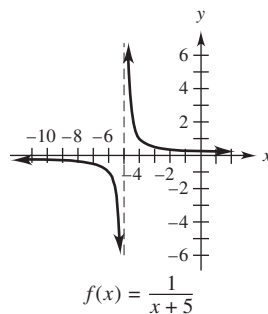


39. $P(x) = -.0313x^3 + .773x^2 - 4.83x + 17.1$

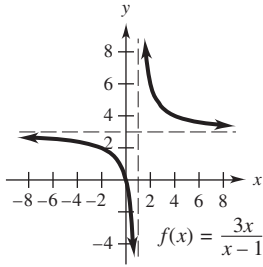
Section 3.6 (Page 195)

1. $x = -5, y = 0$

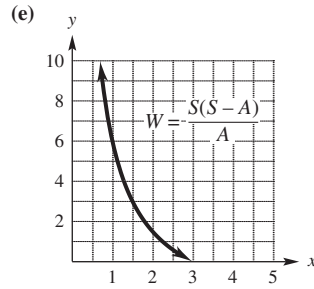
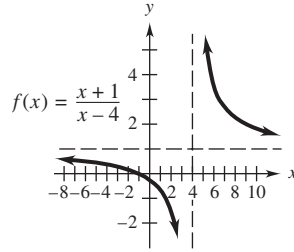
3. $x = -\frac{5}{2}, y = 0$



5. $x = 1, y = 3$

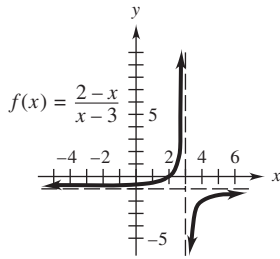


7. $x = 4, y = 1$

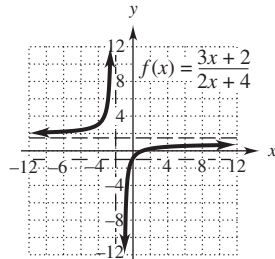


(f) W becomes negative. The waiting time approaches 0 as A approaches 3. The formula does not apply for $A > 3$ because there will be no waiting if people arrive more than 3 min apart.

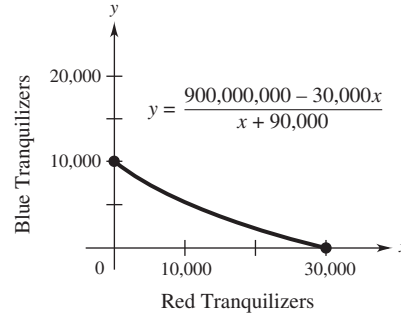
9. $x = 3; y = -1$



11. $x = -2, y = \frac{3}{2}$



27.



30,000 reds; 10,000 blues

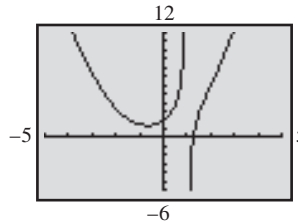
29. (a) $C(x) = 2.6x + 40,000$

(b) $\bar{C}(x) = \frac{2.6x + 40,000}{x} = 2.6 + \frac{40,000}{x}$

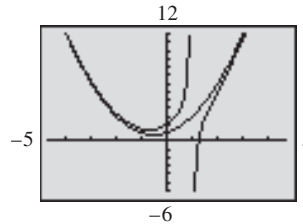
(c) $y = 2.6$; the average cost may get close to, but will never equal, \$2.60.

31. About 73.9

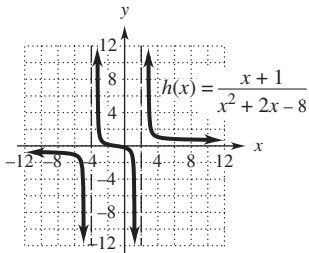
33. (a)



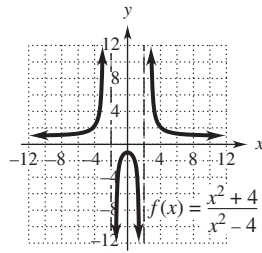
(b) They appear almost identical, because the parabola is an asymptote of the graph.



13. $x = -4, x = 2, y = 0$



15. $x = -2, x = 2, y = 1$



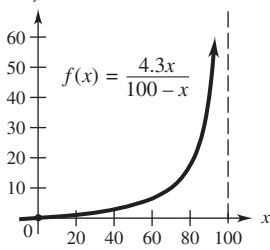
17. $x = -2, x = 1$ 19. $x = -1, x = 5$

21. (a) \$4300 (b) \$10,033.33 (c) \$17,200 (d) \$38,700

(e) \$81,700 (f) \$210,700

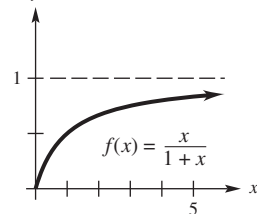
(g) \$425,700 (h) No

(i)

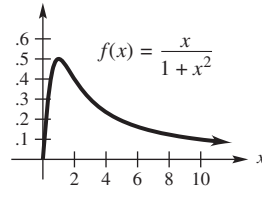


23. (a) $[0, \infty)$

(b)



(c)



(d) Increasing b makes the next generation smaller when this generation is larger. 25. (a) 6 min (b) 1.5 min (c) .6 min (d) $A = 0$

Chapter 3 Review Exercises (Page 197)

Refer to Section	3.1	3.2	3.3	3.4	3.5	3.6
From Exercises	1-12	13-24	25-36	37-60	61-70	71-80

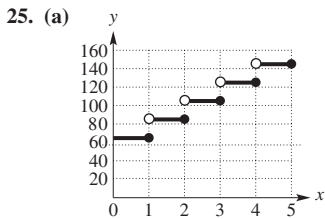
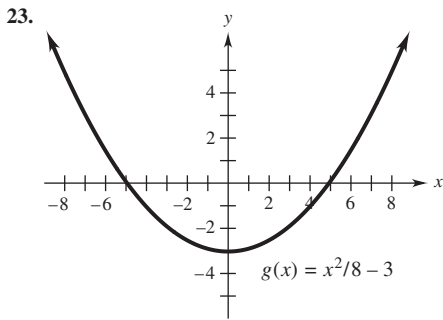
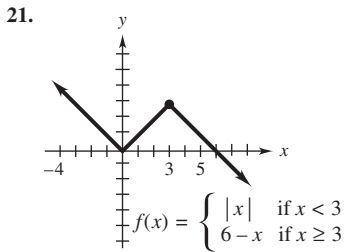
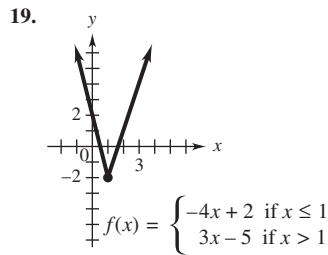
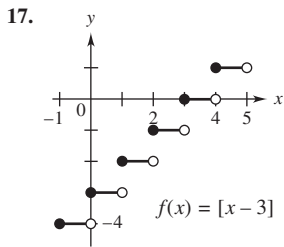
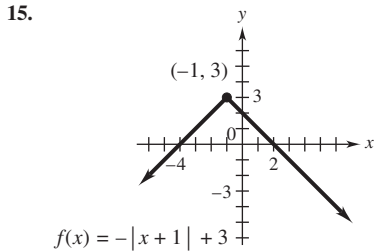
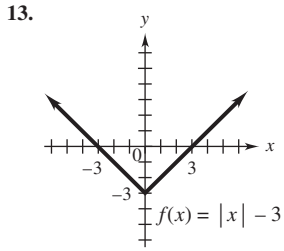
1. Not a function 3. Function 5. Not a function

7. (a) 23 (b) -9 (c) $4p - 1$ (d) $4r + 3$

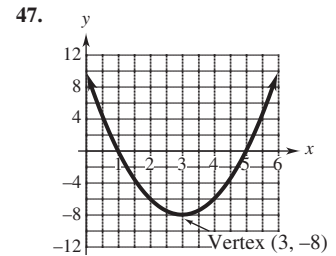
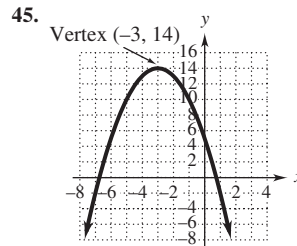
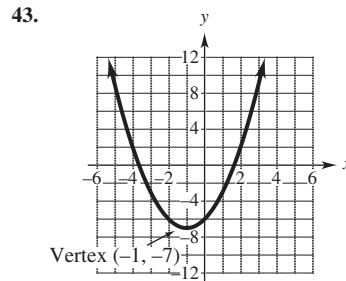
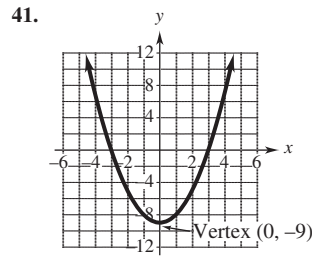
9. (a) -28 (b) -12 (c) $-p^2 + 2p - 4$ (d) $-r^2 - 3$

11. (a) -13 (b) 3 (c) $-k^2 - 4k$ (d) $-9m^2 + 12m$

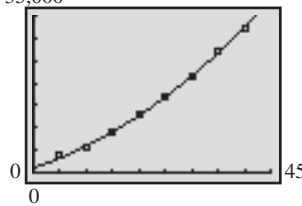
(e) $-k^2 + 14k - 45$ (f) $12 - 5p$



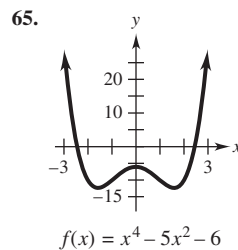
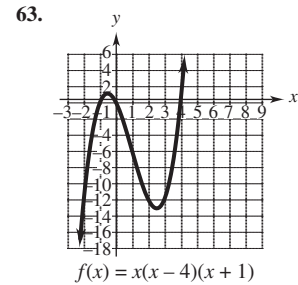
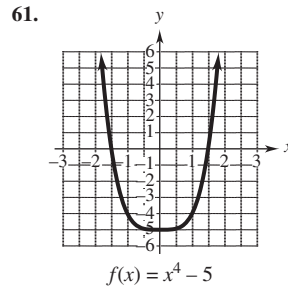
- (b) Domain: $(0, \infty)$ range: $\{65, 85, 105, 125, \dots\}$ (c) 2 days
 27. (a) decreasing; relatively flat (b) $f(x) = -1.4x + 30$ (c) 13.2%
 29. (a) $c(x) = 40x + 25$ (b) \$40 (c) \$40.25
 31. (a) $C(x) = 30x + 85$ (b) \$30 (c) \$30.85
 33. (a) \$18,000 (b) $R(x) = 28x$ (c) 4500 cartridges (d) \$126,000
 35. 20, $X = 10$ 37. Upward; (2, 6) 39. Downward; (-1, 8)



49. Minimum value 4; maximum value 5.33 51. Maximum value; 7
 53. 161 weeks; \$97.16 55. 2027; about 1391 million
 57. (a) $f(x) = 25.82(x - 5)^2 + 3672$ (b) \$44,984
 59. (a) $g(x) = 9.738x^2 + 389x + 1096$
 (b) 35,000



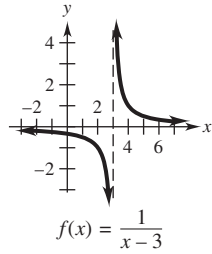
(c) \$38,320.45



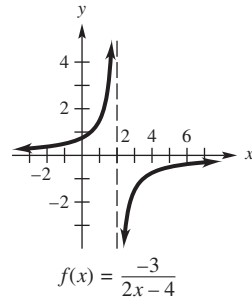
67. About 313,152; about \$690.72 per thousand
 69. (a) \$404,963 million

- (b) \$373,222 million (c) $297x^3 - 6901x^2 + 50,400x - 79,159$
 (d) \$31,741 million; \$45,113 million

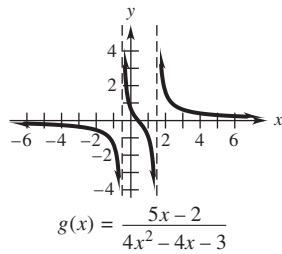
71. $x = 3, y = 0$



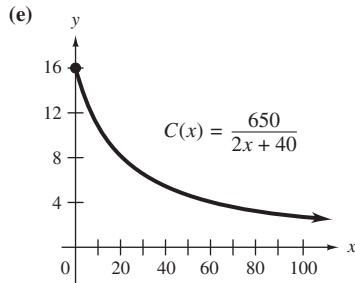
73. $x = 2, y = 0$



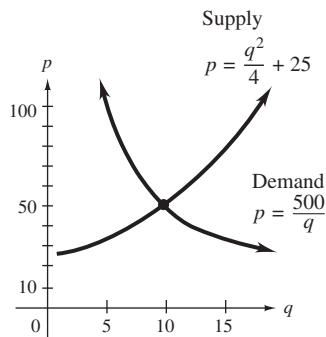
75. $x = -\frac{1}{2}, x = \frac{3}{2}, y = 0$



77. (a) About \$10.83 (b) About \$4.64 (c) About \$3.61
 (d) About \$2.71



79. (a) (10, 50)



- (b) (10, ∞) (c) (0, 10)

Case Study 3 Exercises (Page 202)

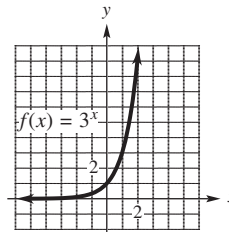
1. $f(x) = \frac{-20}{49}x^2 + 20$
 3. $g(x) = \sqrt{625 - x^2}$; 50 ft
 5. $h(x) = \sqrt{144 - x^2} + 8$; 8 ft 7. It will fit through the semicircular arch and Norman arch; to fit it through the parabolic arch, increase the width to 15 ft.

Chapter 4

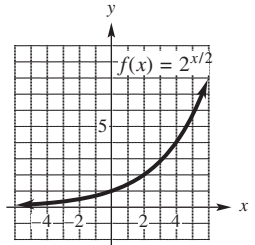
Section 4.1 (Page 209)

1. Exponential 3. Quadratic 5. Exponential
 7. (a) The graph is entirely above the x -axis and falls from left to right, crossing the y -axis at 1 and then getting very close to the x -axis.
 (b) (0, 1), (1, .6) 9. (a) The graph is entirely above the x -axis and rises from left to right, less steeply than the graph of $f(x) = 2^x$.
 (b) (0, 1), (1, 2^{-5}) = (1, $\sqrt{2}$) 11. (a) The graph is entirely above the x -axis and falls from left to right, crossing the y -axis at 1 and then getting very close to the x -axis. (b) (0, 1), (1, e^{-1}) \approx (1, .367879)

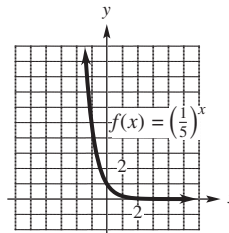
- 13.



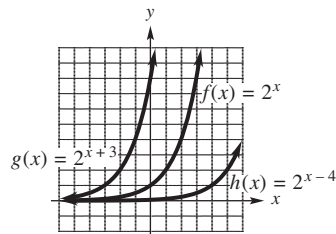
- 15.



- 17.



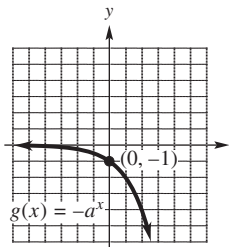
19. (a)–(c)



- (d) Answers vary. 21. 2.3 23. .75 25. .31

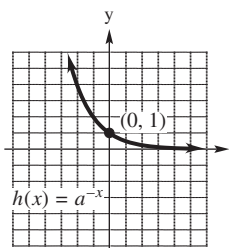
27. (a) $a > 1$ (b) Domain: $(-\infty, \infty)$; range: $(0, \infty)$

- (c)

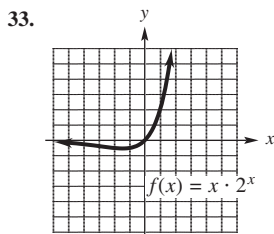
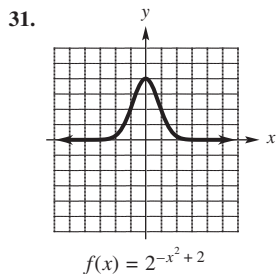


- (d) Domain: $(-\infty, \infty)$; range: $(-\infty, 0)$

- (e)

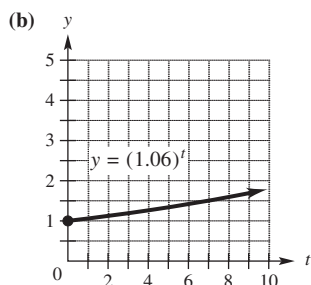


- (f) Domain: $(-\infty, \infty)$; range: $(0, \infty)$ 29. (a) 3 (b) $\frac{1}{3}$ (c) 9 (d) 1



35. (a)

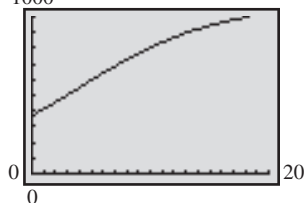
t	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
y	1	1.06	1.12	1.19	1.26	1.34	1.42	1.50	1.59	1.69	1.79



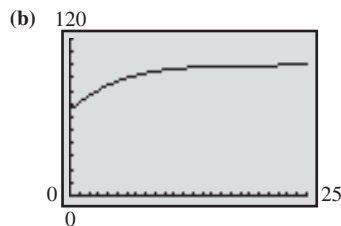
37. (a) About \$141,892 (b) About \$64.10
 39. (a) About 175 million (b) About 321 million
 (c) About 355 million 41. (a) About .97 kg (b) About .75 kg
 (c) About .65 kg (d) About 24,360 years 43. \$34,706.99
 45. (a) About 6.2 billion (b) About 6.5 billion (c) About 8 billion
 (d) Answers vary. 47. (a) China: About \$12.4 trillion; U.S: About \$15.6 trillion (b) China: About \$27.2 trillion; U.S: About \$22.4 trillion
 (c) China: About \$515.3 trillion; U.S: About \$86.3 trillion (d) 2016
 49. (a) About 13.72 million (b) About 28.9 million
 (c) First quarter of 2012 51. (a) About 1.2 billion
 (b) About 2.1 billion (c) Fourth quarter of 2012
 53. (a) About 12.6 mg (b) About 7.9 mg (c) In about 15.1 hours

Section 4.2 (Page 217)

1. (a) \$752.27 (b) \$707.39 (c) \$432.45 (d) \$298.98
 (e) Answers vary. 3. (a) 2540 (b) About 9431 megawatts; about 59,177 megawatts 5. (a) $f(t) = 1000(1.046)^t$ (b) \$3078.17
 (c) 2005 7. (a) $f(t) = 81.1(1.067)^t$ (b) About \$260.6 billion
 (c) About \$410.3 billion 9. (a) Two-point: $f(t) = (.9763)^t$; regression: $f(t) = .998(.976)^t$ (b) Two-point: \$.70; \$.65; regression: \$.69; \$.64 (c) Two-point: 2038; regression: 2037
 11. (a) Two-point: $f(t) = 257.6(.964)^t$; regression: $f(t) = 257.4(.963)^t$
 (b) Two-point: about 165.9; about 143.3; regression: about 163.7; about 140.8 (c) Two-point: 2025; regression: 2025 13. (a) About 6 items
 (b) About 23 items (c) 25 items 15. 2.6° C 17. (a) .13
 (b) .23 (c) About 2 weeks
 19. (a) About \$594.0 billion; about \$802.4 billion
 (b) 1000



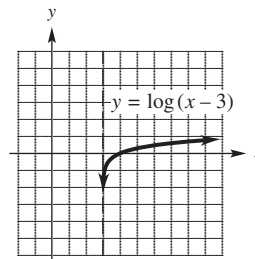
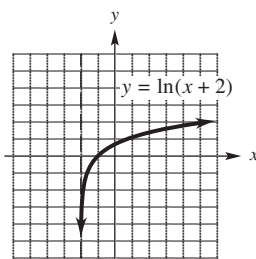
- (c) 2011
 21. (a) About \$91.89 billion; about \$96.86 billion



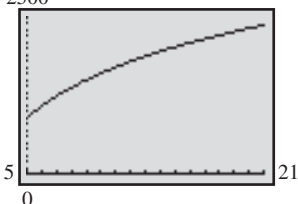
(c) No

Section 4.3 (Page 227)

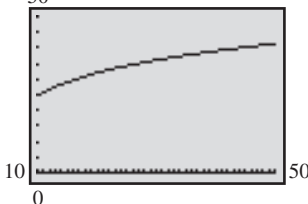
1. a^y 3. It is missing the value that equals b^y . If that value is x , the expression should read $y = \log_b x$ 5. $10^5 = 100,000$ 7. $9^2 = 81$
 9. $\log 96 = 1.9823$ 11. $\log_3\left(\frac{1}{9}\right) = -2$ 13. 3 15. 2
 17. 3 19. -2 21. $\frac{1}{2}$ 23. 8.77 25. 1.724
 27. -4.991 29. Because $a^0 = 1$ for every valid base a .
 31. $\log 24$ 33. $\ln 5$ 35. $\log\left(\frac{u^2 w^3}{v^6}\right)$ 37. $\ln\left(\frac{(x+2)^2}{x+3}\right)$
 39. $\frac{1}{2} \ln 6 + 2 \ln m + \ln n$ 41. $\frac{1}{2} \log x - \frac{5}{2} \log z$ 43. $2u + 5v$
 45. $3u - 2v$ 47. 3.32112 49. 2.429777
 51. Many correct answers, including, $b = 1, c = 2$.
 53. 55.



57. Answers vary. 59. $\ln 2.75 = 1.0116009$; $e^{1.0116009} = 2.75$
 61. (a) 17.67 yr (b) 9.01 yr (c) 4.19 yr (d) 2.25 yr
 63. (a) \$2219.63
 (b) 2500



- (c) Gradually increasing
 65. (a) About 31.99 million; about 37.67 million
 (b) 50



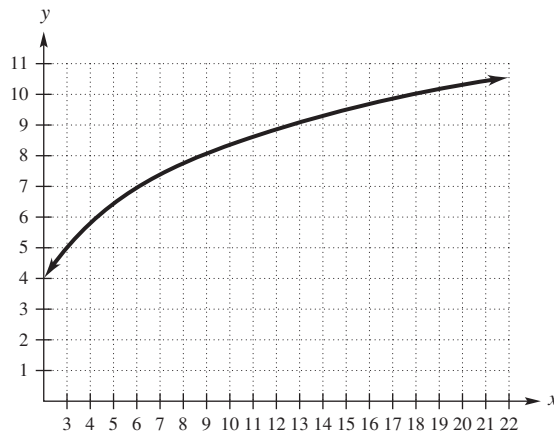
- (c) Gradually increasing 67. 1.5887
 69. (a) About \$441.15 billion; about \$737.74 billion (b) 2027
 71. (a) About 24.8 gallons; about 21.9 (b) 2021

Section 4.4 (Page 236)

1. 8 3. 9 5. 11 7. $\frac{11}{6}$ 9. $\frac{4}{9}$ 11. 10

13. 5.2378 15. 10 17. $\frac{4+b}{4}$ 19. $\frac{10^{2-b} - 5}{6}$
 21. Answers vary. 23. 4 25. $-\frac{5}{6}$ 27. -4 29. -2
 31. 2.3219 33. 2.710 35. -1.825 37. .597253
 39. -.123 41. $\frac{\log d + 3}{4}$ 43. $\frac{\ln b + 1}{2}$ 45. 4
 47. No solution 49. -4, 4 51. 9 53. 1 55. 4, -4
 57. ± 2.0789 59. 1.386 61. Answers vary. 63. (a) 2009
 (b) 2012 65. (a) 1992 ($x \approx 92.1518$) (b) Mid-2007 ($x \approx 107.7364$)
 (c) Mid-2041 ($x \approx 141.6168$) 67. (a) 1995 (b) 2022
 69. (a) 25 g (b) About 4.95 yr 71. About 3689 yr old
 73. (a) Approximately 79,432,823 i_0 (b) Approximately 251,189 i_0
 (c) About 316.23 times stronger 75. (a) 21 (b) 100 (c) 105
 (d) 120 (e) 140 77. (a) 27.5% (b) \$130.14

79. (a)



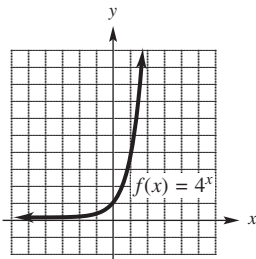
(b) 2002

Chapter 4 Review Exercises (Page 239)

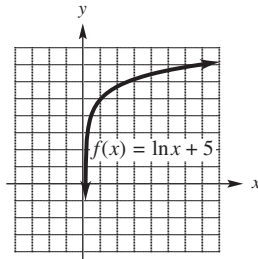
Refer to Section	4.1	4.2	4.3	4.4
For Exercises	1-10	13-14, 55-58, 61-64	11-12, 15-40, 65-66	41-54, 59-60

1. (c) 3. (d) 5. $0 < a < 1$ 7. All positive real numbers

9.



11.

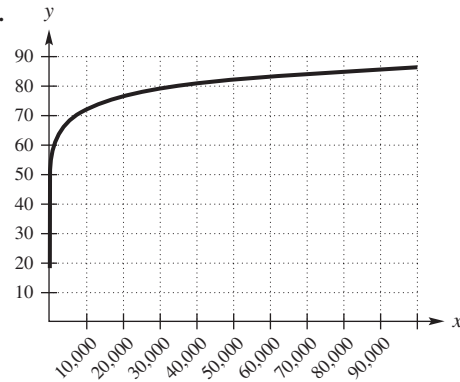


13. (a) 3.83×10^{-4} mg (b) 1.108×10^{-4} mg 15. $\log 340 = 2.53148$
 17. $\ln 45 = 3.8067$ 19. $10^4 = 10,000$ 21. $e^{4.3957} = 81.1$
 23. 5 25. 8.9 27. $\frac{1}{3}$ 29. $\log 20x^6$ 31. $\log\left(\frac{b^3}{c^2}\right)$
 33. 2.297 35. 97 37. 5 39. $a = 9$ 41. -2 43. -2
 45. 1.416 47. $k = 2$ 49. -3.305 51. .747
 53. 28.463 55. (a) C (b) A (c) D (d) B 57. (a) 10 g
 (b) About 140 days (c) About 243 days 59. (a) 10 grams
 (b) 1386.3 seconds (approximately) 61. $K = 0.01488$ per minute
 63. (a) $f(x) = 500(1.067)^x$ (b) $f(x) = 474.8(1.075)^x$
 (c) Two-point: about 896 minutes; regression: about 910 minutes
 (d) Two point and regression: May, 2013.

65. (a) $f(x) = 18 + 21.07 \ln x$ (b) $f(x) = 15.21 + 20.47 \ln x$
 (c) Two point: about 64%; regression: about 60%
 (d) Two point: 2016; regression: 2019

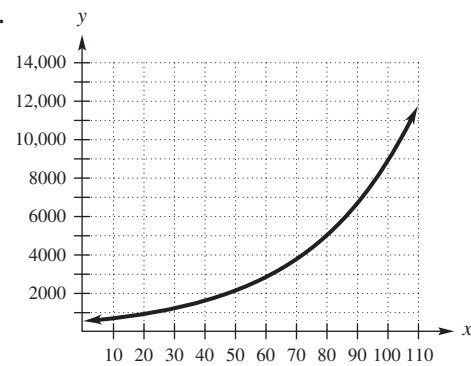
Case Study 4 Exercises (Page 244)

1.



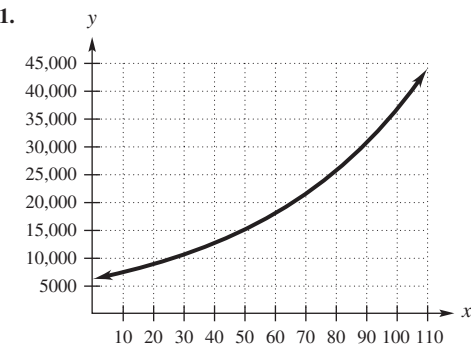
3. 66.6 years 5. About \$1383

7.



9. About \$2131; about \$8899

11.



13. About \$18,168; about \$44,329

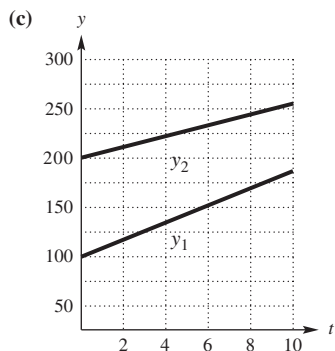
Chapter 5

Section 5.1 (Page 250)

1. Time and interest rate 3. \$133 5. \$217.48 7. \$86.26
 9. \$158.82 11. \$31.25; \$187.50 13. \$234.38; \$4687.50
 15. \$81.25; \$1625 17. \$12,105 19. \$6727.50
 21. Answers vary. 23. \$14,354.07 25. \$15,089.46
 27. \$19,996.25; about .07501% 29. \$15,491.86; about .105087%
 31. \$19,752; about 5.0223% 33. \$15,117.92; about 5.0545%

A-14 Answers to Selected Exercises

35. (a) \$9450 (b) \$19,110 37. \$3056.25 39. 5.0%
 41. 4 months 43. \$1750.04 45. \$5825.24 47. 3.5%
 49. About 11.36% 51. About 102.91%. Ouch! 53. \$13,725; yes
 55. (a) $y_1 = 8t + 100$; $y_2 = 6t + 200$
 (b) The graph of y_1 is a line with slope 8 and y-intercept 100. The graph of y_2 is a line with slope 6 and y-intercept 200.



(d) The y-intercept of each graph indicates the amount invested. The slope of each graph is the annual amount of interest paid.

Section 5.2 (Page 261)

1. Answers vary. 3. Interest rate and number of compounding periods
 5. Answers vary. 7. \$1265.32; \$265.32 9. \$1204.75; \$734.75
 11. \$9297.93; \$2797.93 13. \$10,090.41; \$90.41
 15. \$5081.63; \$81.63 17. \$107,896.09; \$7,896.09 19. 3.75%
 21. 5.25% 23. \$23,824.92; \$3824.92 25. \$31,664.54; \$1664.54
 27. \$10,000 29. \$20,000 31. 4.04% 33. 5.095%
 35. \$8954.58 37. \$11,572.58 39. \$4203.64 41. \$9963.10
 43. \$4606.57 45. \$465.85 47. \$1000 now 49. \$21,570.27
 51. Treasury note 53. \$1000 now 55. 3.59%
 57. Flagstar, 4.45%; Principal, 4.46%; Principal paid a higher APY
 59. About \$2,259,696 61. About \$21,043 63. 23.4 years
 65. 14.2 years 67. About 11.9 years 69. (a) \$16,659.95
 (b) \$21,472.67 71. (a)

Section 5.3 (Page 269)

1. 21.5786 3. \$119,625.61 5. \$23,242.87 7. \$72,482.38
 9. About \$205,490 11. About \$310,831 13. \$797.36
 15. \$4566.33 17. \$152.53 19. 5.19% 21. 5.223%
 23. Answers vary. 25. \$6603.39 27. \$234,295.32
 29. \$26,671.23 31. \$3928.88 33. \$620.46 35. \$265.71
 37. \$280,686.25 39. (a) \$173,497.86 (b) \$144,493.82
 (c) \$29,004.04 41. (a) \$552,539.96 (b) \$854,433.28
 43. \$32,426.46 45. \$284,527.35 47. (a) \$256.08 (b) \$247.81
 49. \$863.68 51. (a) \$1200 (b) \$3511.58 53. 6.5%
 55. (a) Answers vary. (b) \$24,000 (c) \$603,229 (d) \$84,000
 (e) \$460,884

Section 5.4 (Page 281)

1. Answers vary. 3. \$8693.71 5. \$1,566,346.66
 7. \$11,468.10 9. \$38,108.61 11. \$557.68 13. \$6272.14
 15. \$119,379.35 17. \$97,122.49 19. \$48,677.34
 21. \$15,537.76 23. \$9093.14 25. \$446.31 27. \$11,331.18
 29. \$589.31 31. \$979.21 33. \$925.29
 35. \$594.72; \$13,818.25 37. \$947.69; \$151,223.33 39. \$6.80
 41. \$42.04 43. \$30,669,881 45. \$24,761,633
 47. (a) \$1465.42 (b) \$214.58 49. \$2320.83
 51. \$414.18; \$14,701.60 53. (a) \$2717.36 (b) 2
 55. (a) \$969.75 (b) \$185,658.15 (c) \$143,510
 57. About \$8143.79 59. \$406.53 61. \$663.22

Payment Number	Amount of Payment	Interest for Period	Portion to Principal	Principal at End of Period
0	–	–	–	\$4000.00
1	\$1207.68	\$320.00	\$887.68	3112.32
2	1207.68	248.99	958.69	2153.63
3	1207.68	172.29	1035.39	1118.24
4	1207.70	89.46	1118.24	0

Payment Number	Amount of Payment	Interest for Period	Portion to Principal	Principal at End of Period
0	–	–	–	\$7184.00
1	\$189.18	\$71.84	117.34	7066.66
2	189.18	70.67	118.51	6948.15
3	189.18	69.48	119.70	6828.45
4	189.18	68.28	120.90	6707.55

Chapter 5 Review Exercises (Page 285)

Refer to Section	5.1	5.2	5.3	5.4
For Exercises	1–14	15–28, 65–66, 71	32–41, 67–70, 75–76	29–31, 42–64, 72–74, 77–79

1. \$292.08 3. \$62.05 5. \$285; \$3420 7. \$7925.67
 9. Answers vary. 11. \$78,742.54 13. About 4.082%
 15. \$5634.15; \$2834.15 17. \$20,402.98; \$7499.53 19. \$8532.58
 21. \$15,000 23. 5.12% 25. \$18,207.65 27. \$8853.99
 29. \$9706.74 31. Answers vary. 33. \$98,713.03
 35. \$491,638.04 37. Answers vary. 39. \$2619.29 41. \$916.12
 43. \$31,921.91 45. \$14,222.42 47. \$136,340.32
 49. \$1194.02 51. \$38,298.04 53. \$3101.75 semiannually
 55. \$435.66 57. \$85,459.20 59. \$81.98 61. \$50,847,562.6
 63. (a) \$7,233,333.33 (b) \$136,427,623.40
 65. \$2298.58 67. 15.618% 69. \$12,538.59
 71. \$5596.62 73. \$3560.61 75. \$222,221.02 77. (d)

Case Study 5 Exercises (Page 288)

1. (a) \$22,549.94 (b) \$36,442.38 (c) \$66,402.34
 3. (a) \$40,722.37 (b) \$41,090.49 (c) \$41,175.24 (d) \$41,216.62
 (e) \$41,218.03 5. (a) About 4.603% (b) About 5.866%
 (c) About 7.681%

Chapter 6

Section 6.1 (Page 295)

1. Yes 3. $(-1, -4)$ 5. $(\frac{2}{7}, -\frac{11}{7})$ 7. $(\frac{11}{5}, -\frac{7}{5})$
 9. (28, 22) 11. (2, -1) 13. No solution 15. $(4y + 1, y)$
 for any real number y 17. (5, 10) 19. (a) About 51.8 weeks;
 \$959,091 (b) Answers vary. 21. 2025 23. 2058
 25. 145 adults; 55 children 27. Plane: 550 mph; wind: 50 mph
 29. 300 of Boeing; 100 of GE 31. (a) $y = x + 1$
 (b) $y = 3x + 4$ (c) $(-\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{1}{2})$

Section 6.2 (Page 306)

1. $x - 3z = 2$ 3. $3x + z + 2w + 18v = 0$
 $2x - 4y + 5z = 1$ $-4x + y - w - 24v = 0$
 $5x - 8y + 7z = 6$ $7x - y + z + 3w + 42v = 0$
 $3x - 4y + 2z = 3$ $4x + z + 2w + 24v = 0$

5. $x + y + 2z + 3w = 1$ 7. $x + 12y - 3z + 4w = 10$
 $-y - z - 2w = -1$ $2y + 3z + w = 4$
 $3x + y + 4z + 5w = 2$ $-z = -7$
 $6y - 2z - 3w = 0$

9. $(-68, 13, -6, 3)$ 11. $(20, -9, \frac{15}{2}, 3)$ 13. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & | & 3 \\ 3 & -4 & 2 & | & -5 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & | & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

15. $2x + 3y + 8z = 20$
 $x + 4y + 6z = 12$ 17. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & | & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & 7 & | & -4 \\ 6 & 5 & 4 & | & 6 \end{bmatrix}$
 $3y + 5z = 10$

19. $\begin{bmatrix} -4 & -3 & 1 & -1 & | & 2 \\ 0 & -4 & 7 & -2 & | & 10 \\ 0 & -2 & 9 & 4 & | & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ 21. $(\frac{3}{2}, 17, -5, 0)$

23. $(12 - w, -3 - 2w, -5, w)$ for any real number w 25. Dependent

27. Inconsistent 29. Independent 31. $(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{3}{2}, -\frac{3}{2})$

33. $(-8, -1.8, .8)$ 35. $(100, 50, 50)$ 37. $(0, 3.5, 1.5)$

39. $(-3, 4, 0)$ 41. $(1, 0, -1)$ 43. $(-93, -31, 10)$

45. No solution 47. $(192, 125.5, -148.5)$

49. $(\frac{1-z}{2}, \frac{11-z}{2}, z)$ for any real number z 51. No solution

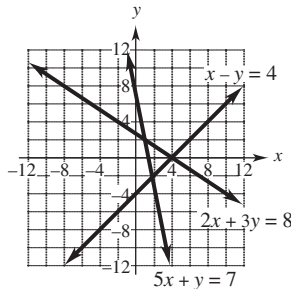
53. $(-7, 5)$ 55. $(-1, 2)$ 57. $(-3, z - 17, z)$ for any real number z

59. $(-11.5, 13.75, -2.25, -5)$ 61. No solution

63. $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}, -\frac{1}{4})$ 65. 2012; 5000 people

67. 220 adults; 150 teenagers; 200 children

69.



There is no point that is on all three lines.

71. $y = .75x^2 + .25x - .5$

Section 6.3 (Page 314)

1. 100 vans, 50 small trucks, 25 large trucks 3. 10 units of corn; 25 units of soybeans; 40 units of cottonseed 5. Shirt \$1.99; slacks \$4.99; sports coat \$6.49 7. 220 adults; 150 teenagers; 200 preteens
9. \$20,000 in AAA; \$10,000 in B; none in A 11. 40 lb pretzels, 20 lb dried fruit, 80 lb nuts 13. Four possible solutions: (i) no cases of A and D; 12 cases of B; 8 cases of C; (ii) 1 of A; 8 of B; 9 of C; 1 of D; (iii) 2 of A; 4 of B; 10 of C; 2 of D; (iv) 3 of A; none of B; 11 of C; 3 of D
15. \$13,750 in the mutual fund, \$27,500 in bonds, and \$28,750 in the franchise 17. (a) $b + c$ (b) .35, .45, .2; A is tumorous, B is bone, and C is healthy.
19. (a) $x_2 + x_3 = 700$
 $x_3 + x_4 = 600$
- (b) $(1000 - x_4, 100 + x_4, 600 - x_4, x_4)$ (c) 600; 0
- (d) x_1 : 1000; 400
 x_2 : 700; 100
 x_3 : 600; 0
- (e) Answers vary. 21. 4 cups of Hearty Chicken Rotini, 5 cups of Hearty Chicken, and 6 cups of Chunky Chicken Noodle; serving size 1.5 cups
23. (a) \$12,000 at 6%, \$7000 at 7%, and \$6000 at 10%
 (b) \$10,000 at 6%, \$15,000 at 7%, and \$5000 at 10%
 (c) \$20,000 at 6%, \$10,000 at 7%, and \$10,000 at 10%
25. (a) $f(x) = -.008x^2 + 1.6x + 140.8$ (b) 169.6 million

27. (a) $y = .01x^2 - .3x + 4.24$ (b) 15 platters; \$1.99
 29. (a) $C = -.0000108S^2 + .034896S + 22.9$ (b) About 864.7 knots

Section 6.4 (Page 323)

1. 2×3 ; $\begin{bmatrix} -7 & 8 & -4 \\ 0 & -13 & -9 \end{bmatrix}$ 3. 3×3 ; square matrix;
 $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & -11 \\ -1 & -\frac{1}{4} & 7 \\ -5 & 3 & -9 \end{bmatrix}$
5. 2×1 ; column matrix; $\begin{bmatrix} -7 \\ -11 \end{bmatrix}$
7. B is a 5×3 zero matrix. 9. $\begin{bmatrix} -7 & 14 & 2 & 4 \\ 6 & -3 & 2 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$
11. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ 13. $\begin{bmatrix} -4 & -7 & 7 \\ 6 & 3 & -8 \end{bmatrix}$
15. Not defined 17. $\begin{bmatrix} -4 & 0 \\ 10 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ 19. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -8 \\ -16 & 24 \end{bmatrix}$
21. $\begin{bmatrix} 8 & 10 \\ 0 & -42 \end{bmatrix}$ 23. $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & -\frac{7}{2} \\ 4 & \frac{21}{2} \end{bmatrix}$
25. $X + T = \begin{bmatrix} x & y \\ z & w \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} r & s \\ t & u \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x+r & y+s \\ z+t & w+u \end{bmatrix}$; a 2×2 matrix
27. $X + (T + P) = \begin{bmatrix} x+(r+m) & y+(s+n) \\ z+(t+p) & w+(u+q) \end{bmatrix}$
 $= \begin{bmatrix} (x+r)+m & (y+s)+n \\ (z+t)+p & (w+u)+q \end{bmatrix} = (X + T) + P$
29. $P + O = \begin{bmatrix} m+0 & n+0 \\ p+0 & q+0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} m & n \\ p & q \end{bmatrix} = P$

31. Several possible correct answers, including

	Basketball	Hockey	Football	Baseball
Percent of no shows	16	16	20	18
Lost revenue per fan (\$)	18.20	18.25	19	15.40
Lost annual revenue (millions \$)	22.7	35.8	51.9	96.3

	2009	2010	2011
Heart	2674	2874	2813
33. Lung	1799	1759	1630
Liver	15,094	15,394	15,330
Kidney	79,397	83,919	86,547

35. (a) I $\begin{bmatrix} 88 & 48 & 16 & 112 \\ 105 & 72 & 21 & 147 \\ 60 & 40 & 0 & 50 \end{bmatrix}$
 II
 III
- (b) $\begin{bmatrix} 110 & 60 & 20 & 140 \\ 140 & 96 & 28 & 196 \\ 66 & 44 & 0 & 55 \end{bmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{bmatrix} 198 & 108 & 36 & 252 \\ 245 & 168 & 49 & 343 \\ 126 & 84 & 0 & 105 \end{bmatrix}$
37. (a) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2.61 & 4.39 & 6.29 & 9.08 \\ 1.63 & 2.77 & 4.61 & 6.92 \\ .92 & .75 & .62 & .54 \end{bmatrix}$
- (b) $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1.38 & 1.72 & 1.94 & 3.31 \\ 1.26 & 1.48 & 2.82 & 2.28 \\ .41 & .33 & .27 & .40 \end{bmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{bmatrix} 1.23 & 2.67 & 4.35 & 5.77 \\ .37 & 1.29 & 1.79 & 4.64 \\ .51 & .42 & .35 & .14 \end{bmatrix}$

Section 6.5 (Page 334)

1. 2×2 ; 2×2 3. 3×3 ; 5×5 5. AB does not exist; 3×2
7. columns; rows 9. $\begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix}$ 11. $\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 4 \\ 0 & -8 \end{bmatrix}$ 13. $\begin{bmatrix} -4 & 1 \\ 2 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

15. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -5 & 7 \\ -2 & 1 & 6 \\ 0 & -3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ 17. $\begin{bmatrix} 16 & 10 \\ 2 & 28 \\ 58 & 46 \end{bmatrix}$

19. $AB = \begin{bmatrix} -30 & -45 \\ 20 & 30 \end{bmatrix}$, but $BA = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

21. $(A + B)(A - B) = \begin{bmatrix} -7 & -24 \\ -28 & -33 \end{bmatrix}$, but $A^2 - B^2 = \begin{bmatrix} -37 & -69 \\ -8 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$.

23. $(PX)T = \begin{bmatrix} (mx + nz)r + (my + nw)t & (mx + nz)s + (my + nw)u \\ (px + qz)r + (py + qw)t & (px + qz)s + (py + qw)u \end{bmatrix}$.

$P(XT)$ is the same, so $(PX)T = P(XT)$.

25. $k(X + T) = k \begin{bmatrix} x + r & y + s \\ z + t & w + u \end{bmatrix}$
 $= \begin{bmatrix} k(x + r) & k(y + s) \\ k(z + t) & k(w + u) \end{bmatrix}$
 $= \begin{bmatrix} kx + kr & ky + ks \\ kz + kt & kw + ku \end{bmatrix}$
 $= \begin{bmatrix} kx & ky \\ kz & kw \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} kr & ks \\ kt & ku \end{bmatrix} = kX + kT$

27. No 29. Yes 31. Yes 33. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ 35. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

37. No inverse 39. $\begin{bmatrix} -4 & -2 & 3 \\ -5 & -2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ 41. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 8 & 2 & -5 \\ -11 & -3 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$

43. No inverse 45. $\begin{bmatrix} 6 & -5 & 8 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$ 47. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & -1 & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 4 & \frac{3}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{4} & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{2} & -2 & -\frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$

49. (a) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3719 & 727 & 521 & 313 \\ 4164 & 738 & 590 & 345 \\ 4566 & 744 & 652 & 374 \end{bmatrix}$

(b) $B = \begin{bmatrix} .019 & .007 \\ .011 & .011 \\ .019 & .006 \\ .024 & .008 \end{bmatrix}$ (c) $AB = \begin{bmatrix} 96 & 40 \\ 107 & 44 \\ 116 & 47 \end{bmatrix}$

(d) The rows represent the years 2000, 2010, 2020. Column 1 gives the total births (in millions) in those years and column 2 the total deaths (in millions) (e) About 107 million; about 47 million

51. (a) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 195 & 143 & 1225 & 1341 \\ 210 & 141 & 1387 & 1388 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $B = \begin{bmatrix} .016 & .006 \\ .011 & .014 \\ .023 & .008 \\ .013 & .007 \end{bmatrix}$

(c) $AB = \begin{bmatrix} 50 & 22 \\ 55 & 24 \end{bmatrix}$ (d) The rows represent the years 2010 and 2020.

Column 1 gives the total births (in millions) in those years and column 2 the total deaths (in millions). (e) About 22 million; about 55 million

53. (a) $\begin{matrix} & A & B \\ \text{Dept. 1} & \begin{bmatrix} 254 & 290 \\ 199 & 240 \\ 170 & 216 \\ 174 & 170 \end{bmatrix} \\ \text{Dept. 2} & \\ \text{Dept. 3} & \\ \text{Dept. 4} & \end{matrix}$ (b) supplier A: \$797; supplier B: \$916; buy from A.

55. (a) $\begin{matrix} & I & II & III \\ \text{Burgers} & \begin{bmatrix} 900 & 1500 & 1150 \\ 600 & 950 & 800 \\ 750 & 900 & 825 \end{bmatrix} \\ \text{Fries} & \\ \text{Drinks} & \end{matrix} = S$

(b) $\begin{bmatrix} 3.00 & 1.80 & 1.20 \end{bmatrix}$
 (c) $PS = [4680 \ 7290 \ 5880]$ (d) \$17,850

Section 6.6 (Page 345)

1. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$ 3. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{3} & 1 \\ \frac{3}{2} & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ 5. $\begin{bmatrix} -7 \\ 15 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$ 7. $(-63, 50, -9)$

9. $(-31, -131, 181)$ 11. $(-48, 8, 12)$ 13. $(1, 0, 2, 1)$ 15. $\begin{bmatrix} -6 \\ -14 \end{bmatrix}$

17. 60 buffets; 600 chairs; 100 tables 19. 2340 of the first species, 10,128 of the second species, 224 of the third species 21. jeans \$34.50; jacket \$72; sweater \$44; shirt \$21.75 23. $\begin{bmatrix} 6.43 \\ 26.12 \end{bmatrix}$ 25. About 1073

metric tons of wheat, about 1431 metric tons of oil 27. Gas \$98 million, electric \$123 million 29. (a) $\frac{7}{4}$ bushels of yams, $\frac{15}{8} \approx 2$ pigs

(b) 167.5 bushels of yams, $153.75 \approx 154$ pigs 31. (a) .40 unit of agriculture, .12 unit of manufacturing, and 3.60 units of households (b) 848 units of agriculture, 516 units of manufacturing, and 2970 units of households (c) About 813 units 33. (a) .017 unit of manufacturing and .216 unit of energy (b) 123,725,000 pounds of agriculture, 14,792,000 pounds of manufacturing, 1,488,000 pounds of energy (c) 195,492,000 pounds of agriculture, 25,933,000 pounds of manufacturing, 13,580,000 pounds of energy 35. \$532 million of natural resources, \$481 million of manufacturing, \$805 million of trade and services, \$1185 million of personal consumption

37. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} 1.67 & .56 & .56 \\ .19 & 1.17 & .06 \\ 3.15 & 3.27 & 4.38 \end{bmatrix}$

(b) These multipliers imply that, if the demand for one community's output increases by \$1, then the output of the other community will increase by the amount in the row and column of that matrix. For example, if the demand for Hermitage's output increases by \$1, then output from Sharon will increase by \$.56, from Farrell by \$.06, and from Hermitage by \$4.38.

39. $\begin{bmatrix} 23 \\ 51 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 13 \\ 30 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 45 \\ 96 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 69 \\ 156 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 87 \\ 194 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 23 \\ 51 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 51 \\ 110 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 45 \\ 102 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 69 \\ 157 \end{bmatrix}$

41. (a) 3 (b) 3 (c) 5 (d) 3

43. (a) $B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 0 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $B^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 13 & 12 & 8 \\ 12 & 20 & 6 \\ 8 & 6 & 25 \end{bmatrix}$ (c) 12 (d) 14

45. (a) $C = \begin{matrix} & \begin{matrix} \text{Dogs} & \text{Rats} & \text{Cats} & \text{Mice} \end{matrix} \\ \begin{matrix} \text{Dogs} \\ \text{Rats} \\ \text{Cats} \\ \text{Mice} \end{matrix} & \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{matrix}$

(b) $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$; C^2 gives the number of food sources once removed from the feeder.

Chapter 6 Review Exercises (Page 350)

Refer to Section	6.1	6.2	6.3	6.4	6.5	6.6
For Exercises	1-10	11-16	17-20, 79-86	21-38	39-66	67-78, 87-94

1. $(9, -14)$ 3. $(2, -2)$ 5. 100 shares of first stock; 300 shares of second stock 7. $x = 5, y = -2, z = 2$ 9. $(-18, 69, 12)$
 11. $x = -6, y = 2, z = 10$ 13. No solution 15. $(4, 3, 2)$
 17. 19 ones; 7 fives; 9 tens 19. 5 blankets; 3 rugs; 8 skirts
 21. 2×2 ; square

23. 1×4 ; row 25. 2×3 27. $\begin{bmatrix} 542.10 & -6.93 & 12,605,900 \\ 52.37 & .53 & 3,616,100 \\ 44.06 & -.21 & 11,227,700 \end{bmatrix}$

29. $\begin{bmatrix} -1 & -2 & 3 \\ -2 & -3 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$ 31. $\begin{bmatrix} 14 & 6 \\ -4 & 4 \\ 13 & 23 \end{bmatrix}$ 33. Not defined

35. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 18 \\ -4 & -12 \\ 7 & 13 \end{bmatrix}$ 37. $\begin{bmatrix} -6.93 & 12,605,900 \\ .53 & 3,616,100 \\ -.21 & 11,227,700 \end{bmatrix}$;

$\begin{bmatrix} -15.1 & 21,226,200 \\ .51 & 3,397,000 \\ .24 & 14,930,400 \end{bmatrix}$; $\begin{bmatrix} -22.03 & 33,832,100 \\ 1.04 & 7,013,100 \\ .03 & 26,158,100 \end{bmatrix}$

39. $\begin{bmatrix} 14 & 56 \\ -6 & -22 \\ 19 & 79 \end{bmatrix}$ 41. Not defined 43. $\begin{bmatrix} 322 & 420 \\ -126 & -166 \\ 455 & 591 \end{bmatrix}$

45. About 20 head and face injuries; about 12 concussions; about 3 neck injuries; about 55 other injuries

47. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} \text{Cost} & \text{Earnings} \\ 61.17 & 1 \\ 60.50 & .84 \\ 96.21 & 1.88 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) [100 500 200]

(c) Total cost \$55,609; total dividend \$896

49. Many correct answers, including $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ 51. $\begin{bmatrix} -.5 & .2 \\ 0 & .2 \end{bmatrix}$

53. $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -6 \\ -4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ 55. $B^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\frac{2}{5} & -\frac{3}{40} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{5} & -\frac{3}{20} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{8} \end{bmatrix}$

57. No inverse 59. $D = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -4 & -3 & 3 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 3 & -3 & -1 & 2 \\ -2 & -2 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ 61. $\begin{bmatrix} -\frac{7}{19} & \frac{2}{19} \\ \frac{6}{19} & \frac{1}{19} \end{bmatrix}$

63. $\begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{12} & -\frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{5}{12} & \frac{1}{4} \end{bmatrix}$ 65. $\begin{bmatrix} -1.2 & 1.1 & -.9 \\ .8 & -.4 & .6 \\ -.2 & .1 & .1 \end{bmatrix}$ 67. $\begin{bmatrix} -5 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$

69. $\begin{bmatrix} -22 \\ -18 \\ 15 \end{bmatrix}$ 71. (-4, 2) 73. (4, 2) 75. (-1, 0, 2)

77. No inverse; no solution for the system 79. 16 liters of the 9%; 24 liters of the 14% 81. 30 liters of 40% solution; 10 liters of 60% solution 83. 80 bowls; 120 plates 85. \$12,750 at 8%; \$27,250 at 8.5%; \$10,000 at 11%

87. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\frac{1}{4} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{8}{7} & \frac{2}{7} \\ \frac{4}{7} & \frac{8}{7} \end{bmatrix}$ (c) $\begin{bmatrix} 2800 \\ 2800 \end{bmatrix}$

89. Agriculture \$140,909; manufacturing \$95,455

91. (a) .4 unit agriculture; .09 unit construction; .4 unit energy; .1 unit manufacturing; .9 unit transportation (b) 2000 units of agriculture; 600 units of construction; 1700 units of energy; 3700 units of manufacturing; 2500 units of transportation (c) 29,049 units of agriculture; 9869 units of construction; 52,362 units of energy; 61,520 units of manufacturing; 90,987 units of transportation

93. $\begin{bmatrix} 54 \\ 32 \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} 134 \\ 89 \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} 172 \\ 113 \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} 118 \\ 74 \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} 208 \\ 131 \end{bmatrix}$

Case Study 6 Exercises (Page 355)

1. All Stampede Air cities except Lubbock may be reached by a two-flight sequence from San Antonio; all Stampede cities may be reached by a three-flight sequence.

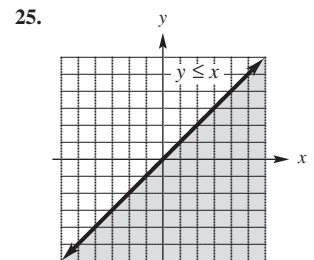
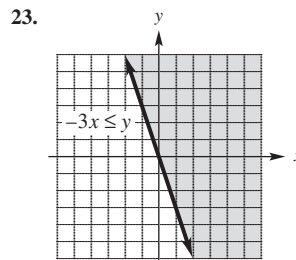
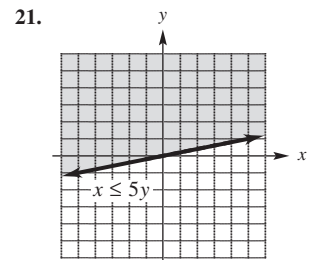
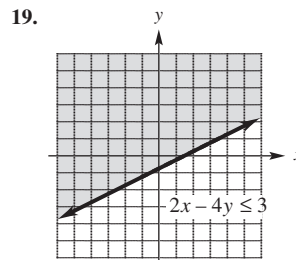
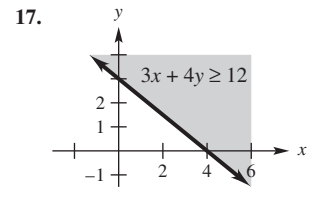
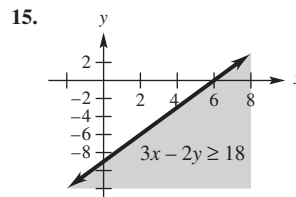
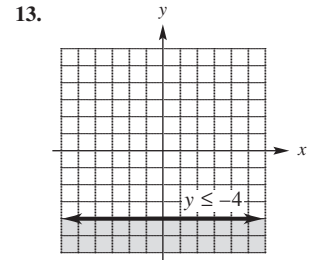
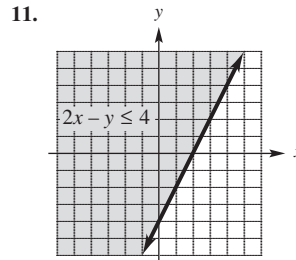
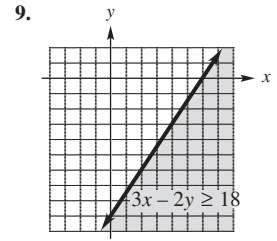
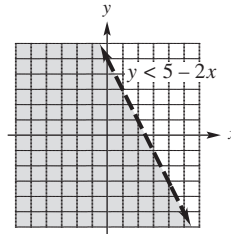
3. The connection between Lubbock and Corpus Christi and the connection between Lubbock and San Antonio take three flights.

5. $B^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$; an entry is nonzero whenever there is a two-step sequence between the cities.

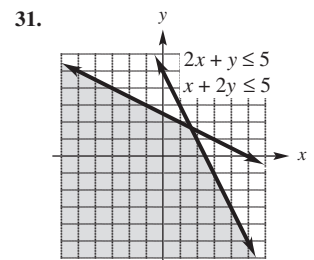
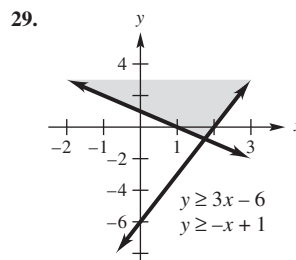
Chapter 7

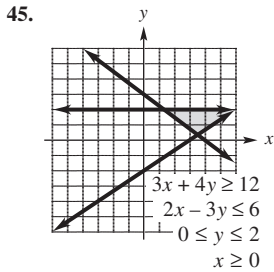
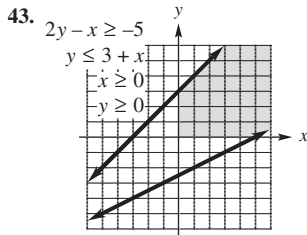
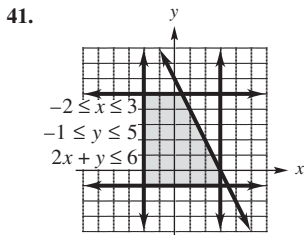
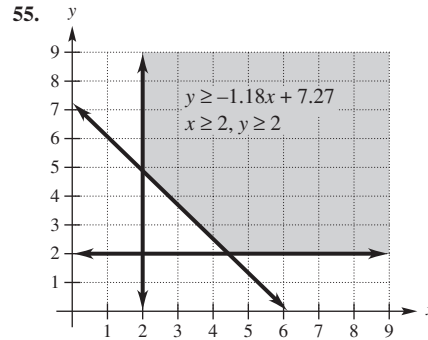
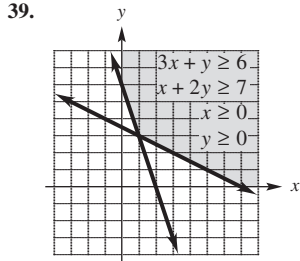
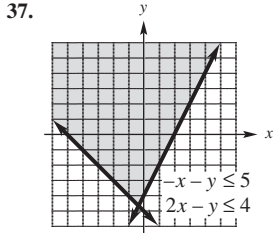
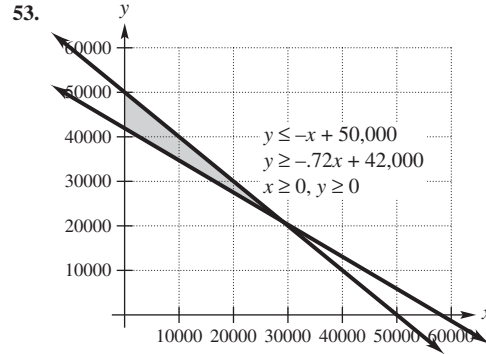
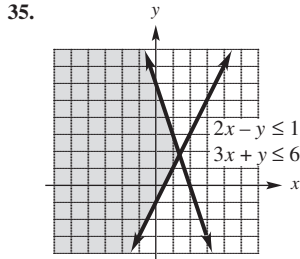
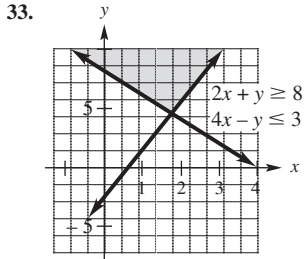
Section 7.1 (Page 363)

1. F 3. A 5. E
7.



27. Answers vary.





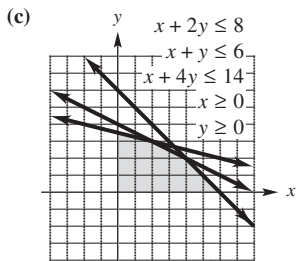
47. $x \geq 0$
 $0 \leq y \leq 4$
 $4x + 3y \leq 24$

49. $2 < x < 7$
 $-1 < y < 3$

51. (a)

Number	Hours Spinning	Hours Dyeing	Hours Weaving
Shawls x	1	1	1
Afghans y	2	1	4
Maximum Number of Hours Available	8	6	14

(b) $x + 2y \leq 8$; $x + y \leq 6$; $x + 4y \leq 14$; $x \geq 0$; $y \geq 0$



Section 7.2 (Page 371)

1. Maximum of 40 at (5, 10); minimum of 7 at (1, 1) 3. Maximum of 6 at (0, 12); minimum of 0 at (0, 0) 5. (a) No maximum; minimum of 12 at (12, 0) (b) No maximum; minimum of 18 at (3, 4)
 (c) No maximum; minimum of 21 at $(\frac{13}{2}, 2)$
 (d) No maximum; minimum of 8 at (0, 8)
 7. Maximum of 8.4 at (1.2, 1.2) 9. Minimum of 13 at (5, 3)
 11. Maximum of 68.75 at $(\frac{105}{8}, \frac{25}{8})$ 13. No maximum; minimum of 9
 15. Maximum of 22; no minimum 17. (a) (18, 2) (b) $(\frac{12}{5}, \frac{39}{5})$
 (c) No maximum 19. Answers vary.

Section 7.3 (Page 376)

1. $8x + 5y \leq 110$, $x \geq 0$, and $y \geq 0$, where x is the number of canoes and y is the number of rowboats 3. $250x + 750y \leq 9500$, $x \geq 0$, and $y \geq 0$, where x is the number of radio spots and y is the number of TV ads
 5. 12 chain saws; no chippers 7. 10 lb deluxe; 40 lb regular
 9. 12 shocks; 6 brakes 11. 8 radio spots; 10 TV ads
 13. 3 Brand X and 2 Brand Z, for a minimum cost of \$1.05
 15. 800 type 1 and 1600 type 2, for a maximum revenue of \$272
 17. From warehouse I, ship 60 boxes to San Jose and 250 boxes to Memphis, and from warehouse II, ship 290 boxes to San Jose and none to Memphis, for a minimum cost of \$136.70 19. \$20 million in bonds and \$24 million in mutual funds, for maximum interest of \$2.24 million
 21. 8 humanities, 12 science 23. About 53 shares of the ClearBridge Fund 25. 100 shares of the Delaware Fund 27. (b) 29. (c)

Section 7.4 (Page 389)

1. (a) 3 (b) s_1, s_2, s_3 (c) $4x_1 + 2x_2 + s_1 = 20$
 $5x_1 + x_2 + s_2 = 50$
 $2x_1 + 3x_2 + s_3 = 25$

3. (a) 3 (b) s_1, s_2, s_3 (c) $3x_1 - x_2 + 4x_3 + s_1 = 95$
 $7x_1 + 6x_2 + 8x_3 + s_2 = 118$
 $4x_1 + 5x_2 + 10x_3 + s_3 = 220$

5.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline 2 & 5 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 6 \\ 4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 6 \\ 5 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 15 \\ \hline -5 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

7.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 10 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 8 \\ 3 & 0 & 4 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 6 \\ \hline -1 & -5 & -10 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

9. 4 in row 2, column 2 11. 6 in row 3, column 1

13.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & z & \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 3 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 16 \\ 1 & 1 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 20 \\ 2 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{3}{2} & 1 & 60 \end{array} \right]$$

15.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & z & \\ \hline -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 10 \\ \frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 50 \\ -\frac{7}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & -\frac{3}{2} & 1 & 0 & 50 \\ \hline 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 100 \end{array} \right]$$

17. (a) Basic: x_3, s_2, z ; nonbasic: x_1, x_2, s_1 (b) $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 16, s_1 = 0, s_2 = 29, z = 11$ (c) Not a maximum
 19. (a) Basic: x_1, x_2, s_2, z ; nonbasic: x_3, s_1, s_3 (b) $x_1 = 6, x_2 = 13, x_3 = 0, s_1 = 0, s_2 = 21, s_3 = 0, z = 18$ (c) Maximum
 21. Maximum is 30 when $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 10, s_1 = 0, s_2 = 0$, and $s_3 = 16$.
 23. Maximum is 8 when $x_1 = 4, x_2 = 0, s_1 = 8, s_2 = 2$, and $s_3 = 0$.
 25. No maximum 27. No maximum 29. Maximum is 34 when $x_1 = 17, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 0, s_1 = 0$, and $s_2 = 14$ or when $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 17, x_3 = 0, s_1 = 0$, and $s_2 = 14$. 31. Maximum is 26,000 when $x_1 = 60, x_2 = 40, x_3 = 0, s_1 = 0, s_2 = 80$, and $s_3 = 0$.
 33. Maximum is 64 when $x_1 = 28, x_2 = 16, x_3 = 0, s_1 = 0, s_2 = 28$, and $s_3 = 0$. 35. Maximum is 250 when $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 0, x_4 = 50, s_1 = 0$, and $s_2 = 50$. 37. (a) Maximum is 24 when $x_1 = 12, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 0, s_1 = 0$, and $s_2 = 6$. (b) Maximum is 24 when $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 12, x_3 = 0, s_1 = 0$, and $s_2 = 18$. (c) The unique maximum value of z is 24, but this occurs at two different basic feasible solutions.

Section 7.5 (Page 395)

1.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & & \\ \hline 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & & 90 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 0 & & 80 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & & 50 \\ \hline -12 & -10 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & 0 \end{array} \right],$$

where x_1 is the number of Siamese cats and x_2 is the number of Persian cats.

3.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & x_4 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 0 & 0 & .375 & .625 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 500 \\ 0 & .75 & .5 & .375 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 600 \\ 1 & .25 & .125 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 300 \\ \hline -90 & -70 & -60 & -50 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right],$$

where x_1 is the number of kilograms of P , x_2 is the number of kilograms of Q , x_3 is the number of kilograms of R , and x_4 is the number of kilograms of S .
 5. (a) Make no 1-speed or 3-speed bicycles; make 2295 10-speed bicycles; maximum profit is \$55,080 (b) 5280 units of aluminum are unused; all the steel is used.

7. (a) 12 minutes to the sports segment, 9 minutes to the news segment, and 6 minutes to the weather segment for a maximum of 1.32 million viewers. (b) $s_1 = 0$ means that all of the 27 available minutes were used; $s_2 = 0$ means that sports had exactly twice as much as the weather; $s_3 = 0$ means that the sports and the weather had a total time exactly twice the time of the news. 9. (a) 300 Japanese maple trees and 300 tri-color beech trees are sold, for a maximum profit of \$255,000. (b) There are 200 unused hours of delivering to the client. 11. 4 radio ads, 6 TV ads, and no newspaper ads, for a maximum exposure of 64,800 people
 13. (a) 22 fund-raising parties, no mailings, and 3 dinner parties, for a maximum of \$6,200,000 (b) Answers vary. 15. 3 hours running, 4 hours biking, and 8 hours walking, for a maximum calorie expenditure of 6313 calories 17. (a) (3) (b) (4) (c) (3) 19. The breeder should raise 40 Siamese and 10 Persian cats, for a maximum gross income of \$580. 21. 163.6 kilograms of food P , none of Q , 1090.9 kilograms of R , 145.5 kilograms of S ; maximum is 87,454.5

Section 7.6 (Page 405)

1.
$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 0 \\ -4 & 10 & 3 \\ 5 & 7 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$
 3.
$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 17 \\ 14 & 8 \\ -5 & -6 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

5. Maximize $z = 4x_1 + 6x_2$
 subject to $3x_1 - x_2 \leq 3$
 $x_1 + 2x_2 \leq 5$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.
 7. Maximize $z = 18x_1 + 15x_2 + 20x_3$
 subject to $x_1 + 4x_2 + 5x_3 \leq 2$
 $7x_1 + x_2 + 3x_3 \leq 8$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$.
 9. Maximize $z = 18x_1 + 20x_2$
 subject to $7x_1 + 4x_2 \leq 5$
 $6x_1 + 5x_2 \leq 1$
 $8x_1 + 10x_2 \leq 3$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$.
 11. Maximize $z = 5x_1 + 4x_2 + 15x_3$
 subject to $x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 \leq 8$
 $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 9$
 $x_1 + 3x_3 \leq 3$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$.
 13. $y_1 = 0, y_2 = 4, y_3 = 0$; minimum is 4. 15. $y_1 = 4, y_2 = 0, y_3 = \frac{7}{3}$; minimum is 39. 17. $y_1 = 0, y_2 = 100, y_3 = 0$; minimum is 100. 19. $y_1 = 0, y_2 = 12, y_3 = 0$; minimum is 12.
 21. $y_1 = 0, y_2 = 0, y_3 = 2$; minimum is 4. 23. $y_1 = 10, y_2 = 10, y_3 = 0$; minimum is 320. 25. $y_1 = 0, y_2 = 0, y_3 = 4$; minimum is 4.
 27. 4 servings of A and 2 servings of B , for a minimum cost of \$1.76
 29. 28 units of regular beer and 14 units of light beer, for a minimum cost of \$1,680,000 31. (a)
 33. (a) Minimize $w = 200y_1 + 600y_2 + 90y_3$
 subject to $y_1 + 4y_2 \geq 1$
 $2y_1 + 3y_2 + y_3 \geq 1.5$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0$.
 (b) $y_1 = .6, y_2 = .1, y_3 = 0, w = 180$ (c) \$186 (d) \$179

Section 7.7 (Page 416)

1. (a) Maximize $z = -5x_1 + 4x_2 - 2x_3$
 subject to $-2x_2 + 5x_3 - s_1 = 8$
 $4x_1 - x_2 + 3x_3 + s_2 = 12$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0, s_1 \geq 0, s_2 \geq 0$.

(b)
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & \\ \hline 0 & -2 & 5 & -1 & 0 & 8 \\ 4 & -1 & 3 & 0 & 1 & 12 \\ 5 & -4 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

3. (a) Maximize $z = 2x_1 - 3x_2 + 4x_3$
 subject to $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + s_1 = 100$
 $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 - s_2 = 75$
 $x_1 + x_2 - s_3 = 27$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0, s_1 \geq 0, s_2 \geq 0, s_3 \geq 0.$

(b)
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 100 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 75 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 27 \\ \hline -2 & 3 & -4 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

5. Maximize $z = -2y_1 - 5y_2 + 3y_3$
 subject to $y_1 + 2y_2 + 3y_3 \geq 115$
 $2y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \leq 200$
 $y_1 + y_3 \geq 50$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|ccc} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 2 & 3 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 115 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 200 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 50 \\ \hline 2 & 5 & -3 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

7. Maximize $z = -10y_1 - 8y_2 - 15y_3$
 subject to $y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \geq 12$
 $5y_1 + 4y_2 + 9y_3 \geq 48$
 $y_1 \geq 0, y_2 \geq 0, y_3 \geq 0.$

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|ccc} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 1 & -1 & 0 & & 12 \\ 5 & 4 & 9 & 0 & -1 & & 48 \\ \hline 10 & 8 & 15 & 0 & 0 & & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

9. Maximum is 480 when $x_1 = 40$ and $x_2 = 0$. 11. Maximum is 114 when $x_1 = 38, x_2 = 0$, and $x_3 = 0$. 13. Maximum is 90 when $x_1 = 12$ and $x_2 = 3$ or when $x_1 = 0$ and $x_2 = 9$. 15. Minimum is 40 when $y_1 = 0$ and $y_2 = 20$. 17. Maximum is $133\frac{1}{3}$ when $x_1 = 33\frac{1}{3}$ and $x_2 = 16\frac{2}{3}$. 19. Minimum is 512 when $y_1 = 6$ and $y_2 = 8$. 21. Maximum is 112 when $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 36$, and $x_3 = 16$. 23. Maximum is 346 when $x_1 = 27, x_2 = 0$, and $x_3 = 73$. 25. Minimum is -600 when $y_1 = 0, y_2 = 0$, and $y_3 = 200$. 27. Minimum is 96 when $y_1 = 0, y_2 = 12$, and $y_3 = 0$.

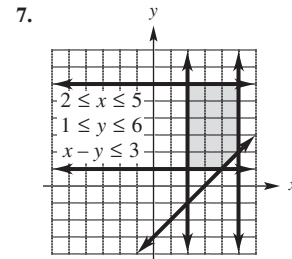
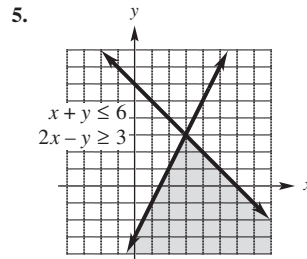
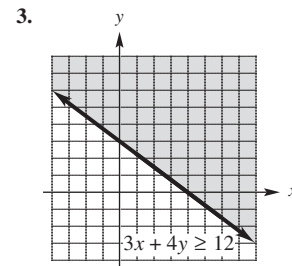
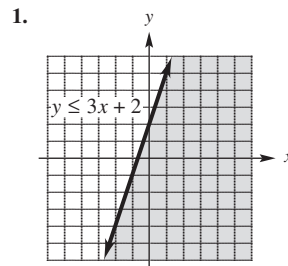
29.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|cccc} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & s_4 & s_5 & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 10 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 15 \\ 1 & -\frac{1}{4} & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline .30 & .09 & .27 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

31.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|cccc|c} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 & y_4 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & s_4 & s_5 & s_6 & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 32 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 32 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 20 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 20 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 25 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 30 \\ \hline 14 & 12 & 22 & 10 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

33. Ship 200 barrels of oil from supplier S_1 to distributor D_1 ; ship 2800 barrels of oil from supplier S_2 to distributor D_1 ; ship 2800 barrels of oil from supplier S_1 to distributor D_2 ; ship 2200 barrels of oil from supplier S_2 to distributor D_2 . Minimum cost is \$180,400. 35. Use 1000 lb of bluegrass, 2400 lb of rye, and 1600 lb of Bermuda, for a minimum cost of \$560. 37. Allot \$3,000,000 in commercial loans and \$22,000,000 in home loans, for a maximum return of \$2,940,000. 39. Make 32 units of regular beer and 10 units of light beer, for a minimum cost of \$1,632,000. 41. $1\frac{2}{3}$ ounces of ingredient I, $6\frac{2}{3}$ ounces of ingredient II, and $1\frac{2}{3}$ ounces of ingredient III produce a minimum cost of \$1.55 per barrel. 43. 22 from W_1 to D_1 , 10 from W_2 to D_1 , none from W_1 to D_2 , and 20 from W_2 to D_2 , for a minimum cost of \$628.

Chapter 7 Review Exercises (Page 420)

Refer to Section	7.1	7.2	7.3	7.4	7.5	7.6	7.7
For Exercises	1-10	11-16	17-18	19-32, 37	33-36, 57-59	38-46, 51-52, 61-62	47-50, 53-56, 63-64



9. Maximize $z = 10x_1 + 6x_2 + 4x_3$
 subject to $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 \leq 200$
 $10x_1 + 4x_2 + 5x_3 \leq 600$
 $2x_1 + 2x_2 + 6x_3 \leq 300$
 $x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$
11. Maximum of 46 at (6, 7); minimum of 10 at (2, 1)
 13. Maximum of 30 when $x = 5$ and $y = 0$ 15. Minimum of 40 when $x = 0$ and $y = 20$ 17. She should complete 3 summary projects and 2.25 inference projects for a maximum profit of \$3187.5.
 19. \$60,000; \$40,000; maximum return will be 18%

21. (a) $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + s_1 = 100$
 $2x_1 + 3x_2 + s_2 = 500$
 $x_1 + 2x_3 + s_3 = 350$

(b)
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 100 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 500 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 350 \\ \hline -5 & -6 & -3 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

23. (a) $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + s_1 = 90$
 $2x_1 + 5x_2 + x_3 + s_2 = 120$
 $x_1 + 3x_2 + s_3 = 80$

(b)
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c} x_1 & x_2 & x_3 & s_1 & s_2 & s_3 & \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 90 \\ 2 & 5 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 120 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 80 \\ \hline -1 & -8 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

25. Maximum is 80 when $x_1 = 16, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 0, s_1 = 12,$ and $s_2 = 0.$

27. Maximum is 35 when $x_1 = 5, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 5, s_1 = 35, s_2 = 0,$ and $s_3 = 0.$

29. Maximum of 600 when $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 100,$ and $x_3 = 0$

31. Maximum of 225 when $x_1 = 0, x_2 = \frac{15}{2},$ and $x_3 = \frac{165}{2}$

33. (a) Let $x_1 =$ number of item A, $x_2 =$ number of item B, and $x_3 =$ number of item C.

(b) $z = 4x_1 + 3x_2 + 3x_3$

(c) $2x_1 + 3x_2 + 6x_3 \leq 1200$

$x_1 + 2x_2 + 2x_3 \leq 800$

$2x_1 + 2x_2 + 4x_3 \leq 500$

$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0, x_3 \geq 0$

35. (a) Let $x_1 =$ number of gallons of Fruity wine and $x_2 =$ number of gallons of Crystal wine.

(b) $z = 12x_1 + 15x_2$

(c) $2x_1 + x_2 \leq 110$

$2x_1 + 3x_2 \leq 125$

$2x_1 + x_2 \leq 90$

$x_1 \geq 0, x_2 \geq 0$

37. When there are more than 2 variables.

39. Any standard minimization problem

41. Minimum of 172 at (5, 7, 3, 0, 0, 0)

43. Minimum of 640 at (7, 2, 0, 0)

45. Minimize $z = 5w_1 + 12w_2 + 4w_3$

subject to $w_1 + 2w_2 + w_3 \leq 10$

$2w_1 - w_2 + 3w_3 = 8$

$w_1 \leq 0, w_2 \leq 0, w_3 \leq 0$

47.
$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 5 & 10 & 1 & 0 & 120 \\ 10 & 15 & 0 & -1 & 200 \\ \hline -20 & -30 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

49.
$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccccc|c} 1 & 1 & 2 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 48 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 12 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 10 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 30 \\ \hline 12 & 20 & -8 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

51. Minimum of 427 at (8, 17, 25, 0, 0, 0)

53. Maximum is 480 when $x_1 = 24$ and $x_2 = 0.$

55. $x_1 = 21/13; x_2 = 10/13;$ Minimum $Z = 31/13$

57. Get 250 of A and none of B or C for maximum profit of \$1000.

59. Make 17.5 gal of Crystal and 36.25 gal of Fruity, for a maximum profit of \$697.50.

61. Produce 660 cases of corn, no beans, and 340 cases of carrots, for a minimum cost of \$15,100.

63. Use 1,060,000 kilograms for whole tomatoes and 80,000 kilograms for sauce, for a minimum cost of \$4,500,000.

Case Study 7 Exercises (Page 424)

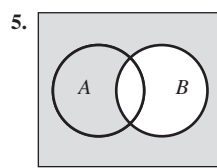
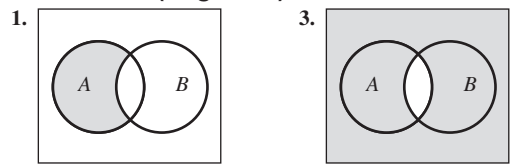
1. The answer in 100-gram units is 0.243037 unit of feta cheese, 2.35749 units of lettuce, 0.3125 unit of salad dressing, and 1.08698 units of tomato. Converting into kitchen units gives approximately $\frac{1}{6}$ cup feta cheese, $4\frac{1}{4}$ cups lettuce, $\frac{1}{8}$ cup salad dressing, and $\frac{1}{8}$ of a tomato.

Chapter 8

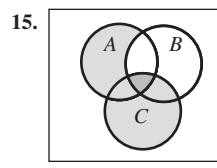
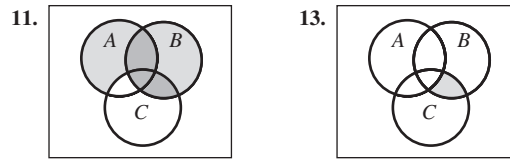
Section 8.1 (Page 432)

- 1. False 3. True 5. True 7. True 9. False
- 11. Answers vary. 13. \subseteq 15. $\not\subseteq$ 17. \subseteq 19. \subseteq
- 21. 8 23. 128 25. $\{x|x \text{ is an integer } \leq 0 \text{ or } \geq 8\}$
- 27. Answers vary. 29. \cap 31. \cap 33. \cup 35. \cup
- 37. $\{b, 1, 3\}$ 39. $\{d, e, f, 4, 5, 6\}$ 41. $\{e, 4, 6\}$ 43. $\{a, b, c, d, 1, 2, 3, 5\}$ 45. All students not taking this course. 47. All students taking both accounting and philosophy.
- 49. C and D, A and E, C and E, D and E 51. $\{\text{Ford, First Solar}\}$ 53. $\{\text{Ford}\}$ 55. $M \cap E$ is the set of all male employed applicants. 57. $M' \cup S'$ is the set of all female or married applicants. 59. $\{\text{Television, Magazines}\}$ 61. \emptyset
- 63. $F = \{\text{Comcast, Direct TV, Dish Network, Time Warner}\}$
- 65. $H = \{\text{Dish Network, Time Warner, Verizon, Cox}\}$
- 67. $F \cup G = \{\text{Comcast, Direct TV, Dish Network, Time Warner}\}$
- 69. $I' = \{\text{Verizon, Cox}\}$ 71. $\{\text{Soybeans, Rice, Cotton}\}$
- 73. $\{\text{Wheat, Corn, Soybeans, Rice, Cotton}\}$

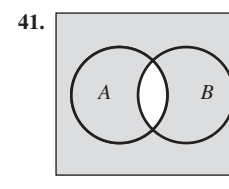
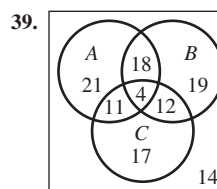
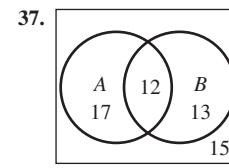
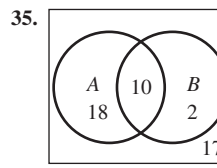
Section 8.2 (Page 439)

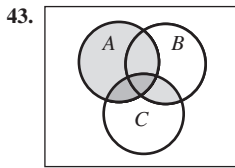


7. \emptyset 9. 8



- 17. 18% 19. (a) 105 (b) 39 (c) 15 (d) 3 21. (a) 227 (b) 182 (c) 27 23. (a) 54 (b) 17 (c) 10 (d) 7 (e) 15 (f) 3 (g) 12 (h) 1 25. (a) 308,000 (b) 227,000 (c) 92,000 (d) 113,000 27. (a) 23,682 thousand (b) 75,161 thousand (c) 14,399 thousand (d) 11,404 thousand 29. Answers vary.
- 31. 9 33. 27





45. The complement of A intersect B equals the union of the complement of A and the complement of B . 47. A union $(B$ intersect $C)$ equals $(A$ union $B)$ intersect $(A$ union $C)$.

Section 8.3 (Page 450)

1. Answers vary. 3. {January, February, March, . . . , December}
 5. $\{0, 1, 2, \dots, 80\}$ 7. {go ahead, cancel} 9. $\{Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, Q_4\}$
 11. Answers vary. 13. No 15. Yes 17. No
 19. $S = \{C\&K, C\&L, C\&J, C\&T, C\&N, K\&L, K\&J, K\&T, K\&N, L\&J, L\&T, L\&N, J\&T, J\&N, T\&N\}$ (a) $\{C\&T, K\&T, L\&T, J\&T, T\&N\}$
 (b) $\{C\&J, C\&N, J\&N\}$ 21. $S = \{\text{forest sage \& rag painting, forest sage \& colorwash, evergreen \& rag painting, evergreen \& colorwash, opaque \& rag painting, opaque \& colorwash}\}$
 (a) $\frac{1}{2}$ (b) $\frac{2}{3}$ 23. $S = \{10' \& \text{beige, } 10' \& \text{forest green, } 10' \& \text{rust, } 12' \& \text{beige, } 12' \& \text{forest green, } 12' \& \text{rust}\}$ (a) $\frac{1}{6}$ (b) $\frac{1}{2}$ (c) $\frac{1}{3}$
 25. $\frac{1}{2}$ 27. $\frac{1}{3}$ 29. $S = \{\text{male beagle, male boxer, male collie, male Labrador, female beagle, female boxer, female collie, female Labrador}\}$
 31. $\frac{1}{2}$ 33. $\frac{1}{8}$ 35. $\frac{3}{4}$ 37. $\frac{646}{4690} \approx .1377$
 39. (a) $\frac{191}{1974} \approx .0968$ (b) $\frac{168}{1974} \approx .0851$ (c) $\frac{603}{1974} \approx .3055$
 41. (a) The person is not overweight. (b) The person has a family history of heart disease and is overweight. (c) The person smokes or is not overweight.
 43. (a) $\frac{4}{2826} \approx .0014$ (b) $\frac{1278}{2826} \approx .4522$ (c) $\frac{1479}{2826} \approx .5234$
 45. Possible 47. Not possible 49. Not possible

Section 8.4 (Page 458)

1. $\frac{20}{38} = \frac{10}{19}$ 3. $\frac{28}{38} = \frac{14}{19}$ 5. $\frac{5}{38}$ 7. $\frac{12}{38} = \frac{6}{19}$ 9. (a) $\frac{5}{36}$
 (b) $\frac{1}{9}$ (c) $\frac{1}{12}$ (d) 0 11. (a) $\frac{5}{18}$ (b) $\frac{5}{12}$ (c) $\frac{1}{3}$ 13. $\frac{1}{3}$
 15. (a) $\frac{1}{2}$ (b) $\frac{2}{5}$ (c) $\frac{3}{10}$ 17. (a) .62 (b) .32 (c) .11 (d) .81
 19. (a) .699 (b) .374 (c) .301 (d) .728 21. (a) .266 (b) .432 (c) .809 23. 1:5 25. 2:1 27. (a) 1:4 (b) 8:7 (c) 4:11
 29. 2:7 31. 21:79 33. 6:94 35. $\frac{43}{50}$ 37. $\frac{6}{25}$
 39. (a) Answers vary, but should be close to .2778 (b) Answers vary, but should be close to .4167 41. (a) Answers vary, but should be close to .0463 (b) Answers vary, but should be close to .2963 43. About .8369 45. About .2269 47. About .7311 49. .12 51. .08 53. .60 55. About .7552 57. About .3462 59. (a) .961 (b) .491 (c) .509 (d) .505 (e) .004 (f) .544

Section 8.5 (Page 470)

1. $\frac{1}{3}$ 3. 1 5. $\frac{1}{6}$ 7. $\frac{4}{17}$ 9. .012 11. Answers vary.
 13. Answers vary. 15. No 17. Yes 19. No, yes
 21. About .537 23. About .256 25. About .6882
 27. About .3424 29. About .0517 31. About .1858 33. .527
 35. .042 37. .857 39. Dependent 41. $P(C) = .0800$, $P(D) = .0050$, $P(C \cap D) = .0004$, $P(C|D) = .08$; yes; independent
 43. .05 45. About .8107 47. About .4111 49. About .0621
 51. About .0352 53. About .5409 55. .4955 57. .999985
 59. (a) 3 backups (b) Answers vary. 61. Dependent or "No"

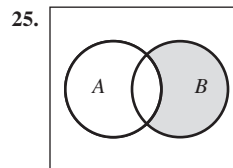
Section 8.6 (Page 477)

1. $\frac{1}{3}$ 3. .0488 5. .5122 7. .4706 9. About .6
 11. About .264 13. About .505 15. About .4874
 17. About .488 19. (c) 21. .519 23. About .418
 25. About .350 27. About .560 29. About .518
 31. About .376 33. About .865

Chapter 8 Review Exercises (Page 479)

Refer to Section	8.1	8.2	8.3	8.4	8.5	8.6
For Exercises	1–23	24–30	31–44	45–55, 63–78	56–62, 63–78	79–83

1. False 3. False 5. True 7. True 9. {New Year's Day, Martin Luther King Jr.'s Birthday, Presidents' Day, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Veterans' Day, Thanksgiving, Christmas} 11. $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ 13. $\{B_1, B_2, B_3, B_6, B_{12}\}$
 15. $\{B_3, B_6, B_{12}\}$ 17. $\{A, B_3, B_6, B_{12}, C, D, E\}$ 19. Female students older than 22 21. Females or students with a GPA > 3.5
 23. Nonfinance majors who are 22 or younger



27. 5 29. 44 31. $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ 33. {(Rock, Rock), (Rock, Pop), (Rock, Alternative), (Pop, Rock), (Pop, Pop), (Pop, Alternative), (Alternative, Rock), (Alternative, Pop), (Alternative, Alternative)}
 35. {(Dell, Epson), (Dell, HP), (Gateway, Epson), (Gateway, HP), (HP, Epson), (HP, HP)} 37. $A \cap B'$ 39. A probability cannot be < 0 41. Answers vary. 43. .2271 45. .0392
 47. About .7504 49. About .0733 51. About .0846
 53. About .8729 55. About .0698 57. About .8692
 59. $\frac{119}{246}$ 61. $\frac{49}{246}$ 63. $\frac{5}{36} \approx .139$ 65. $\frac{5}{18} \approx .278$ 67. $\frac{1}{3}$
 69. .52 71. $\frac{15}{22}$ 73. .7 75. Answers vary.
 77. (a) $\frac{1}{40}$ (b) 471:29 79. 0.995 81. $\frac{19}{29}$ 83. .21
 85. .271 87. .625 89. .690 91. No. Answers vary.
 93. About .2779 95. About .0906 97. About .6194
 99. About .4957

Case Study 8 Exercises (Page 483)

1. .001 3. .331

Chapter 9

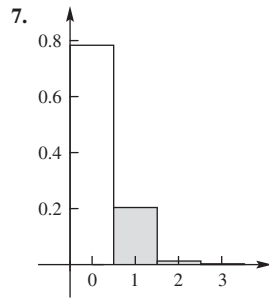
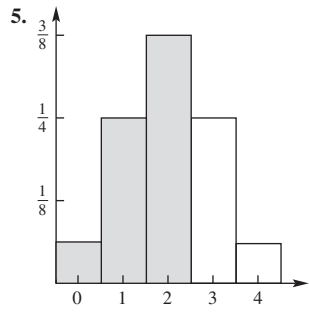
Section 9.1 (Page 491)

1.

Number of boys	0	1	2	3	4
$P(x)$	.063	.25	.375	.25	.063

3.

Number of Queens	0	1	2	3
$P(x)$	.7826	.2042	.0130	.0002



5. $\frac{3}{8}$ 7. 0.8
 9. 4 11. 5.4 13. 2.7 15. 2.5 17. $-\frac{1}{19} \approx -.05$
 19. $-\$.50$ 21. $-\$.97$ 23. $-\$1.67$ 25. 1.1319
 27. Not valid, cannot have a probability < 0.
 29. Valid. 31. .15 33. .25
 35. Many correct answers, including .15, .15.
 37. \$4550 39. .4111
 41.

Account Number	Expected Value	Existing Volume + Expected Value of Potential	Class
3	2000	22,000	C
4	1000	51,000	B
5	25,000	30,000	C
6	60,000	60,000	A
7	16,000	46,000	B

43. (a) Drug A \$217, Drug B \$229 (b) Drug A
 45. (a) £550,000 (b) £618,000

Section 9.2 (Page 504)

1. 12 3. 56 5. 8 7. 24 9. 84 11. 1716
 13. 6,375,600 15. 240,240 17. 8568 19. 40,116,600
 21. $\frac{24}{0}$ is undefined. 23. (a) 8 (b) 64 25. 576
 27. 1 billion in theory; however, some numbers will never be used (such as those beginning with 000); yes. 29. 1 billion 31. 120
 33. (a) 160; 8,000,000 (b) Some, such as 800, 900, etc., are reserved.
 35. 1600 37. Answers vary. 39. 95,040 41. 12,144
 43. 863,040 45. 272 47. (a) 210 (b) 210 49. 330
 51. Answers vary. 53. (a) 9 (b) 6 (c) 3, yes 55. (a) 8568
 (b) 56 (c) 3360 (d) 8512 57. (a) 210 (b) 7980
 59. (a) 1,120,529,256 (b) 806,781,064,320 61. 81
 63. Not possible, 4 initials 65. (a) 10 (b) 0 (c) 1 (d) 10
 (e) 30 (f) 15 (g) 0 67. 3,247,943,160 69. 5.524×10^{26}
 71. (a) 2520 (b) 840 (c) 5040 73. (a) 479,001,600 (b) 6
 (c) 27,720

Section 9.3 (Page 511)

1. .422 3. $\frac{5}{8}$ 5. $\frac{5}{28}$ 7. .00005 9. .0163 11. .5630
 13. 1326 15. .851 17. .765 19. .941 21. Answers vary.
 23. exactly .1396 25. (a) 8.9×10^{-10} (b) 1.2×10^{-12}
 27. 3.26×10^{-17} 29. (a) .0322 (b) .2418 (c) .7582
 31. (a) .0015 (b) .0033 (c) .3576 33. $1 - \frac{365^{100}}{(365)^{100}} \approx 1$
 35. .0031 37. .3083 39. We obtained the following answers—
 yours should be similar: (a) .0399 (b) .5191 (c) .0226

Section 9.4 (Page 517)

1. About .2001 3. About .000006 5. About .999994
 7. About .0011 9. About .000003 11. About .999997
 13. $\frac{1}{32}$ 15. $\frac{13}{16}$ 17. Answers vary. 19. About .0197

21. About .0057 23. About .0039 25. About .1817 27. 270
 29. .247 31. .193 33. .350 35. 3.85 37. About .9093
 39. 33 41. About .2811 43. 23

Section 9.5 (Page 526)

1. Yes 3. Yes 5. No 7. No 9. No 11. No
 13. Not a transition diagram 15. $\begin{bmatrix} .6 & .20 & .20 \\ .9 & .02 & .08 \\ .4 & 0 & .6 \end{bmatrix}$ 17. Yes
 19. Yes 21. No 23. $\begin{bmatrix} 19 & 45 \\ 64 & 64 \end{bmatrix}$ 25. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 8 \\ 11 & 11 \end{bmatrix}$
 27. [.4633, .1683, .3684] 29. [.4872, .2583, .2545]

$$31. A^2 = \begin{bmatrix} .23 & .21 & .24 & .17 & .15 \\ .26 & .18 & .26 & .16 & .14 \\ .23 & .18 & .24 & .19 & .16 \\ .19 & .19 & .27 & .18 & .17 \\ .17 & .2 & .26 & .19 & .18 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A^3 = \begin{bmatrix} .226 & .192 & .249 & .177 & .156 \\ .222 & .196 & .252 & .174 & .156 \\ .219 & .189 & .256 & .177 & .159 \\ .213 & .192 & .252 & .181 & .162 \\ .213 & .189 & .252 & .183 & .163 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A^4 = \begin{bmatrix} .2205 & .1916 & .2523 & .1774 & .1582 \\ .2206 & .1922 & .2512 & .1778 & .1582 \\ .2182 & .1920 & .2525 & .1781 & .1592 \\ .2183 & .1909 & .2526 & .1787 & .1595 \\ .2176 & .1906 & .2533 & .1787 & .1598 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A^5 = \begin{bmatrix} .21932 & .19167 & .25227 & .17795 & .15879 \\ .21956 & .19152 & .25226 & .17794 & .15872 \\ .21905 & .19152 & .25227 & .17818 & .15898 \\ .21880 & .19144 & .25251 & .17817 & .15908 \\ .21857 & .19148 & .25253 & .17824 & .15918 \end{bmatrix}; .17794$$

33. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} .9 & .10 \\ .3 & .70 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) [.51, .49] (c) [.75, .25] 35. [.802, .198]

37. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ 39. (a) [.576, .421, .004] (b) [.473, .526, .002]

41. (a) [42,500 5000 2500] (b) [37,125 8750 4125]
 (c) [33,281 11,513 5206] (d) [.475 .373 .152]

43. (a) About .203 (b) .286

45. (a) $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 2 \\ .4 & .3 & .3 \\ .4 & .3 & .3 \\ 0 & .5 & .5 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 2 \\ .28 & .36 & .36 \\ .28 & .36 & .36 \\ .2 & .4 & .4 \end{bmatrix}$

- (c) .36 47. [0 0 .102273 .897727]

Section 9.6 (Page 531)

1. (a) Coast (b) Highway (c) Highway; \$38,000 (d) Coast
 3. (a) Do not upgrade. (b) Upgrade. (c) Do not upgrade; \$10,060.

- | | | |
|-----------------|--|--|
| | Fails | Doesn't Fail |
| 5. (a) Overhaul | $\begin{bmatrix} -\$8600 \\ -\$6000 \end{bmatrix}$ | $\begin{bmatrix} -\$2600 \\ \$0 \end{bmatrix}$ |
| | Don't Overhaul | |

- (b) Don't overhaul the machine.

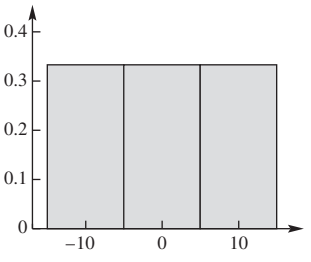
- | | | |
|------------------|--|---|
| | No Rain | Rain |
| 7. (a) Rent tent | $\begin{bmatrix} \$2500 \\ \$3000 \end{bmatrix}$ | $\begin{bmatrix} \$1500 \\ \$0 \end{bmatrix}$ |
| | Do not rent tent | |

- (b) Rent tent because expected value is \$2100. 9. Environment, 15.3

Chapter 9 Review Exercises (Page 534)

Refer to Section	9.1	9.2	9.3	9.4	9.5	9.6
For Exercises	1–12, 46, 47	13–21, 31–32	22–30	33–37, 48	38–43	44–45

1. (a)  (b) 1.1

3. (a)  (b) 0

5. 1.15764 7. (a)

x	0	1	2
$P(x)$	$\frac{7}{15}$	$\frac{7}{15}$	$\frac{1}{15}$

 (b) .6

9. \$1.29 11. 3.62, 2.22 13. 40,320 15. 220
17. 420 19. (a) 28,800 (b) 144,000

21. Answers vary. 23. $\frac{1}{221}$ 25. $\frac{4}{663}$ 27. .018 29. .218

31. (a) $1, n, \frac{n(n-1)}{2}, 1$ (b) ${}_nC_0 + {}_nC_1 + {}_nC_2 + \dots + {}_nC_n$

33.

x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$P(x)$	0.0001	0.0013	0.0115	0.0577	0.1730	0.3115	0.3115	0.1335

$E(x) = 5.25$

35. (a) About .3907 (b) About .2118 (c) About .9997

37. (a)

x	0	1	2	3	4	5
$P(x)$	.0086	.0682	.2168	.3449	.2743	.0873

(b) 3.07 39. No 41. Yes 43. 9.21%, 62.67%, and 28.12% will be in the low-, middle, and high-income groups, respectively.

45. (a) Active learning (b) Active learning (c) Lecture, 17.5 (d) Active learning, 48 47. (c)

Case Study 9 Exercises (Page 538)

1. +.2031

3.

x	$P(x)$
0	.30832
1	.43273
2	.21264
3	.04325
4	.00306

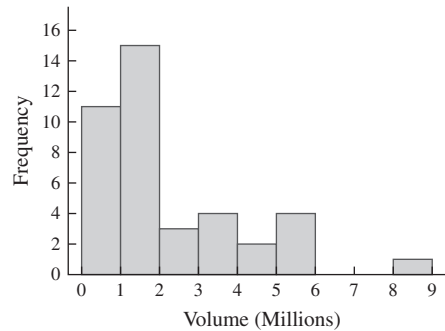
5. \$.19438

Chapter 10

Section 10.1 (Page 544)

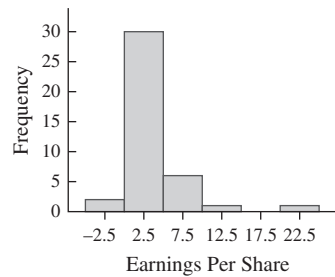
1.

Interval	Frequency
0–.9	11
1.0–1.9	15
2.0–2.9	3
3.0–3.9	4
4.0–4.9	2
5.0–5.9	4
6.0–6.9	0
7.0–7.9	0
8.0–8.9	1



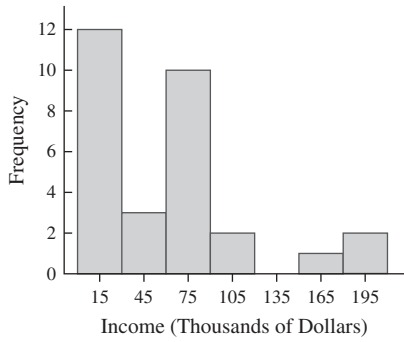
3.

Interval	Frequency
-5.00–(-.01)	2
0–4.99	30
5.00–9.99	6
10.00–14.99	1
15.00–19.99	0
20.00–24.99	1



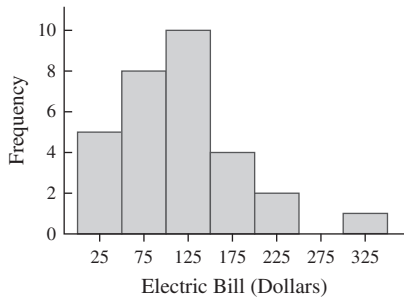
5. Answers vary, but one way to create the intervals appears here.

Interval	Frequency
0–29	12
30–59	3
60–89	10
90–119	2
120–149	0
150–179	1
180–209	2



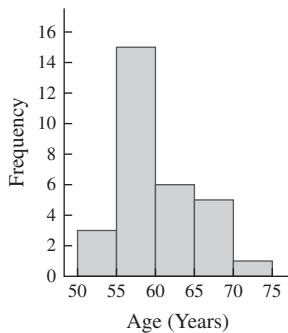
7. Answers vary, but one way to create the intervals appears here.

Interval	Frequency
0-49	5
50-99	8
100-149	10
150-199	4
200-249	2
250-299	0
300-349	1



9. Answers vary, but one way to create the intervals appears here.

Interval	Frequency
50-54	3
55-59	15
60-64	6
65-69	5
70-74	1



11.

Stem	Leaves
0	13444556899
1	122333344777889
2	046
3	0157
4	56
5	4666
6	
7	
8	7

Units: 8|7 = 8.7 million

13.

Stem	Leaves
0	0011111
0	22223
0	444
0	666777
0	8888
1	01
1	
1	5
1	
1	
1	8
2	0

Units: 2|0 = \$200

15.

Stem	Leaves
0	33444
0	55567789
1	001112334
1	55667
2	22
2	
3	2

Units: 3|2 = \$320

17.

Stem	Leaves
5	0
5	23
5	55
5	6677
5	888899999
6	0111
6	3
6	455
6	667
6	
7	
7	2

Units: 7|2 = 72 years

19.	Stem	Leaves
	8	111
	8	222333
	8	4444555
	8	66667777
	8	8888899999
	9	000000001111
	9	2222

Units: 9|2 = 92%

21. Uniform 23. Left skewed 25. (a) Right skewed (b) 8
 (c) 10 27. (a) Right skewed (b) 13 (c) 5
 29. (a) Right skewed (b) 6 (c) 6

Section 10.2 (Page 553)

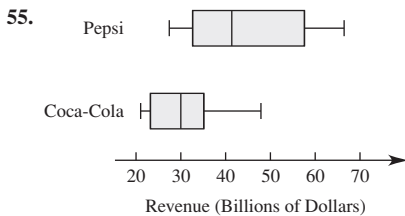
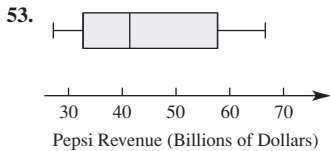
1. \$27,955 3. 4.8 5. 10.3 7. 21.2 9. 14.8
 11. \$33,679 13. 98.5 15. 2 17. 65, 71 19. No mode
 21. Answers vary. 23. $\bar{x} = 19.45$; 10.0–19.9
 25. (a) \$1091.5 million (b) \$852 million 27. (a) \$508.25 million
 (b) \$454.5 million 29. (a) \$8880.25; \$9593.25 (b) 2007
 31. $\bar{x} = 49.6$; median = 48.5 33. Right skewed; median = \$624.5
 35. (a) Right skewed (b) Median = 22.5%

Section 10.3 (Page 562)

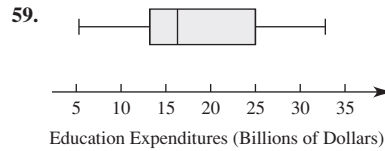
1. Answers vary. 3. 31.5; 12.26 5. 5.0; 1.65 7. 7.9; 2.87
 9. 2.1; .86 11. 45.2 13. $\bar{x} = 75.08825$; $s = 72.425$
 15. $\frac{3}{4}$ 17. $\frac{5}{9}$ 19. 93.75% 21. 11.1%
 23. $\bar{x} \approx 255.2857$; $s \approx 17.3$ 25. $\bar{x} \approx 1785.4286$; $s \approx 311.4$
 27. Cross-training 29. $\bar{x} = 60.5$; $s = 52.1$
 31. (a) $s^2 = 14.8$; $s = 3.8$ (b) 10
 33. (a) $\frac{1}{3}, 2, -\frac{1}{3}, 0, \frac{5}{3}, \frac{7}{3}, 1, \frac{4}{3}, \frac{7}{3}, \frac{2}{3}$
 (b) 2.1, 2.6, 1.5, 2.6, 2.5, .6, 1, 2.1, .6, 1.2 (c) 1.13 (d) 1.68
 (e) -2.15, 4.41; the process is out of control.
 35. $\bar{x} = 80.17$, $s = 12.2$ 37. Answers vary.

Section 10.4 (Page 575)

1. The mean 3. Answers vary. 5. 45.99% 7. 16.64%
 9. 7.7% 11. 47.35% 13. 91.20% 15. 1.64 or 1.65
 17. -1.04 19. .5; .5 21. .889; .997 23. .3821 25. .5762
 27. .3156 29. .2004 31. .4452 33. .9370 35. .0179
 37. .0726 39. 45.2 mph 41. 24.17% 43. Answers vary.
 45. 665 units 47. 190 units 49. 15.87% 51. Minimum = 27.0,
 $Q_1 = 32.6$, $Q_2 = 41.35$, $Q_3 = 57.8$, maximum = 66.5



Pepsi has greater variability among its annual revenue amounts.
 57. Minimum = 5.3, $Q_1 = 13.2$, $Q_2 = 16.3$, $Q_3 = 25.0$, maximum = 32.8



61. Answers vary, but estimates are: Hospital: $Q_1 \approx 2.2$, $Q_2 \approx 3.1$, $Q_3 \approx 4.5$; Highway: $Q_1 \approx 2.4$, $Q_2 \approx 3.3$, $Q_3 \approx 3.9$.
 63. Police protection; The distance from minimum to maximum is greater and the distance from Q_1 to Q_3 also is greater.

Section 10.5 (Page 581)

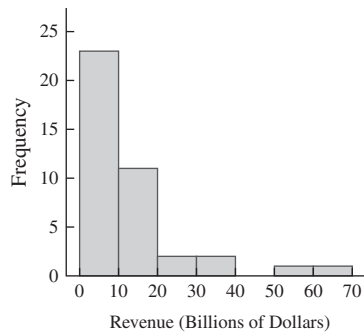
1. The number of trials and the probability of success on each trial
 3. (a) .1964 (b) .1974 5. (a) .0021 (b) .0030
 7. .0240 9. .9463 11. .0956 13. .7291 15. .1841
 17. (a) .0238 (b) .6808 19. .1112 21. .9842
 23. (a) .0005 (b) .001 (c) .0000 25. 370
 27. .0268 29. .0018 31. (a) .0764 (b) .121
 (c) Yes; the probability of such a result is .0049.

Chapter 10 Review Exercises (Page 584)

Refer to Section	10.1	10.2	10.3	10.4	10.6
For Exercises	1–4, 9, 28	5–8, 10–18	19–26, 39–40	27, 29, 30–33, 35–38, 41–50	34, 51–54

1. Answers vary, but one way to create the intervals appears here.

Interval	Frequency
0–9.9	23
10.0–19.9	11
20.0–29.9	2
30.0–39.9	2
40.0–49.9	0
50.0–59.9	1
60.0–69.9	1



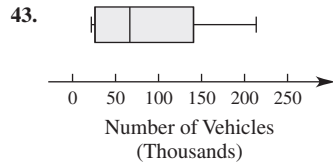
3.

Stem	Leaves
0	122223344444444557889
1	0000112356789
2	49
3	3
4	0
5	8
6	6

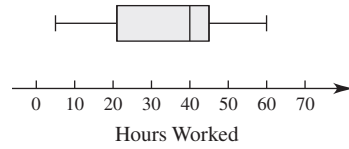
Units: 6|6 = 66 billion dollars

5. 28 second; 26.5 seconds; 25 seconds 7. \$1137 million; \$749.5 million
 9. Answers vary. 11. 49.7; 4.23 13. 0–499
 15. Right skewed 17. Normal 19. Answers vary.

21. Range = 54; $s = 15.8$ 23. $s = 1465.4$
 25. Mean = 1.776, $s = .41$ 27. Answers vary.
 29. .4115 31. 2.83 33. 1.41
 35. .0096 37. .1357
 39. (a) Mean = 93.8, $s = 69.7$ (69.8 depending on rounding)
 (b) Nissan 41. Minimum = 22, $Q_1 = 26$,
 $Q_2 = 66.5$, $Q_3 = 141$, maximum = 214



45. Minimum = 5, $Q_1 = 21$, $Q_2 = 40$, $Q_3 = 45$, maximum = 60



47. .1357 49. .5675 51. .0041 53. .1461

Case Study 10 Exercises (Page 587)

1. 1.2697; 15.24 3. 1.2433; 14.92 5. 4.6841; 16.23
 7. 4.5071; 15.61 9. (-.99, 31.47)

Index of Companies, Products, and Agencies

A

Actavis, 535
Adams Old Fashioned Peanut Butter, 575
Alger Spectra Z Fund, 420
Allied Manufacturing Company, 532
AloStar Bank of Commerce, 261
Alzheimer's Association, 317
Amazon.com Corp., 251
American Airlines, 472
American Century Growth Fund, 481
American Century Mid Cap Fund, 377
American Express, 30, 308
American Honda Motor Corporation, 524, 586
Anheuser-Busch, 352
Apple, Inc., 79, 211–212, 351
AT&T, 582

B

Bankrate.com, 255, 261
Barnes & Noble, Inc., 352
Barrick Gold Corp., 250
Baskin-Robbins, 505
Beauty Works, 36
BlackRock Equity Dividend Fund, 420
Boeing, 296
Boston Red Sox, 554
Business Week magazine, 436–437

C

California First National Bank, 256
Campbell's soup, 575
Cape Air, 354–355
Caroline's Quality Candy Confectionery, 396
Centennial Bank, 261
Center on Philanthropy at Indiana University, 131
Chase Bank, 276
Chicago Bears, 555
Chicago Cubs, 554
Chronicle of Higher Education, 461
Chrysler, 477–478, 524, 586
Classic Coke, 510
ClearBridge Aggressive Growth Fund, 377
Coca-Cola Co., 30, 352, 576
Coffee Holding Co, Inc., 352
Columbia Dividend Income Fund, 420
Columbia Sportswear Company, 352
Costco Wholesale Corporation, 186, 375
CVS Caremark Corporation, 375

D

Dallas Cowboys, 555
Davis New York Venture mutual fund, 287
Delaware Select Growth Fund, 378
Dell Computer, 82, 480
Delta Airlines, 472–473
Diet Coke, 506
Discover Bank, 256
Dixie Office Supplies, 571–572
Dynamic US Growth Fund, 420

E

E*TRADE Bank, 286
E-Bay, 82
Elle magazine, 365
E-LOAN, 261
ExxonMobil Corporation, 30, 200

F

Facebook, 240
Federal Aviation Administration, 78
Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC), 153, 481, 535, 546
First Solar, 431–432
Flagstar Bank, 262
Florida Village Community Development District No. 8 municipal bond fund, 365
Ford Motor Company, 142, 184–185, 431–432, 477–478, 524, 586
Fortune magazine, 436–437
Franklin MicroCap Value ADV Fund, 378
Freddie Mac, 277
Frontenac Bank, 286

G

Gallup, 121, 518
Gapminder.org, 241–243, 244
Gap, 82
Gateway Computer, 480
GE Capital Retail Bank, 255
General Electric, 285, 296, 575
General Motors Corp., 477–478, 524, 586
Goldman Sachs, 251
Good Year Blimps, 202
Green Bay Packers, 555

H

HBO, 296
Hewlett-Packard Corporation, 30, 82, 93–94, 480
HighMark Geneva Small Cap Fund, 378
Home Depot, 495, 573, 574
Hotnews Magazine, 377
Houston Texans, 555
Hyundai Motor America, 586

I

IBM, 30, 187–188, 250, 431–432
Illinois Lottery, 280
Imperial Capital Bank, 258
Intel Corporation, 93, 187
International Monetary Fund, 211

J

Janus Enterprise fund, 270
Janus Health Global Life Sciences Fund, 535
J. C. Penny, 82

John Hancock III Disciplined Value Mid Cap A Fund, 377–378
JP Morgan Chase, 431–432

K

Kelley Blue Book, 156
KENO, 538
KeyCorp, 152
Kia Motors America, Inc., 586
Krag Corp., 477

L

Laclede Gas Company, 163
Lean Cuisine, 507
Levi Strauss and Company, 493
Little Caesars, 506
Los Angeles Angels of Anaheim, 554
Los Angeles Dodgers, 554
Louisiana Superdome, 37
Lowe's, 574

M

Mandan North Dakota municipal bond fund, 365
Marriott International, Inc., 91
Mastercard, 308
Mazda, 586
McDonald's, 30
Mega Millions, 282
Men's Health magazine, 365
Mercedes-Benz, 586
Merck Company, 285
Minibites, 376
Morgan Stanley, 250
Motorola Corporation, 74
Mount Union College, 531

N

NASA, 196
NASDAQ, 478
National Center for Catastrophic Sport Injury Research, 177
National Football League, 265, 555
National Network for Organ Sharing, 241
National Republic Bank of Chicago, 256
Nationwide Bank, 256, 258
Netflix, Inc., 211, 233, 431–432
New England Patriots, 555
New York Giants, 555
New York Jets, 555
New York Mets, 554
New York State Electric and Gas, 157
New York Stock Exchange (NYSE), 478
New York Times Company, 352
New York Yankees, 554
Nike, Inc., 351
Nissan North America, Inc., 586
Nuveen Symphony Optimized Alpha Fund, 378
NY Development Corp municipal bond fund, 365

P

Pandora, 211
Pantene, 504
Pell Grants, 62
Pepsi, 506, 510
Pepsi Co., 576
Philadelphia Eagles, 555
Philadelphia Phillies, 554
Pinterest.com, 71, 211
Powerball, 282, 502, 503, 512
Procter & Gamble, 431

Q

Quaker Oats Company, 564
Quick Draw, 512, 537

R

Rhapsody, 68

S

San Francisco 69ers, 555
San Francisco Giants, 554
Sanilac County, Michigan municipal bond fund, 365
7 UP, 506
SiriusXM, 131
Snack-Packs, 376

Snowmass Ski Area, 113
Spirit Airlines, 355
Sports Illustrated magazine, 365
Spotify, 68
Sprite, 510
St. Louis Cardinals, 554
Standard & Poor's 520 Index, 88, 480
Starbucks Corporation, 36, 132, 352, 555
Stouffer's, 507
Subaru of America, Inc., 586

T

Target Corporation, 187, 585
Texas Rangers, 554
Third Federal Savings and Loan, 261
Toyota Motor Sales USA, 493, 524, 586
T. Rowe Price, 262
T. Rowe Price Equity Income fund, 270
T. Rowe Price Opportunity fund, 270
Tumblr.com, 71

U

United Airlines, 472
U.S. Bank, 259
U.S. Department of Agriculture, 423
U.S. Department of Education, 131
U.S. Department of Justice, 199
U.S. Drug Enforcement Administration, 106
U.S. Internal Revenue Service, 113

U.S. Office of Management and Budget, 82, 152–153
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, 83
U.S. Postal Service, 146, 151, 504
U.S. Treasury bills (T-bills), 250, 251, 377
USAA, 261

V

Vanguard Capital Value Fund, 535
Vanguard Explorer Value fund, 270
Vanguard Information Technology Index Fund, 262
Verizon Communications, Inc., 351, 582
Virtual Bank, 261
Vogue magazine, 365
Volkswagen of America, Inc., 586

W

Wall Street Journal magazine, 436–437
Wal-Mart Stores, Inc., 585
Walt Disney Company, 237
Washington Redskins, 555
Wells Fargo, 251
Wells Fargo Advantage Growth A Fund, 378
Westfield Bank, 262

X

Xerox, 131

Index of Applications

Business

- Accounting, 164
- Accounting majors starting salaries, 575
- Advertising, 51, 393–394, 396, 433
- Aerospace industry, 113–114
- Agricultural production, 143, 315
- Agriculture, manufacturing, and households economy, 347
- Agriculture, manufacturing, and transportation economy, 347
- Agriculture and manufacturing economy, 353
- Airline flights, 349, 354, 472
- Airline on-time performance, 472–473
- Airline passengers, 142
- Airline reservations, 536
- Alcoholic beverage sales, 82
- Animal feed, 311–312, 407
- Animal food nutrition, 406
- Annual percentage rate (APR), 29
- Apartment complexes, 128, 172
- Apparel company, 296, 365
- Apple, Inc. market share, 534
- Apple, Inc. stock price, 211–212
- Appliance repair, 482
- Art production, 395
- Assembly-line operations, 523–524, 527, 575
- Assembly-line workers, 218
- Automobile tires, 532
- Automotive industry, 156, 162, 184–185, 200, 314–315, 477–478, 493, 504, 512, 524–525, 528, 554, 575, 580–581, 586
- Average costs, 199, 200
- Baker, 397
- Band concert attendance, 308, 314
- Bank and financial institution confidence, 471, 518
- Banking, 113, 586
- Baseball game seating, 314
- Basketball ticket sales, 294–295
- Bathroom fixtures, 495
- Bicycle business, 176
- Bicycle manufacturing, 396
- Bonds, 421, 441
- Books, 36
- Bookstore shipping charges, 314
- Box office revenue, 237, 480, 555
- Break-even point, 158, 178
- Brewery, 169–170, 406, 418
- Broadband Internet subscriptions, 517
- Broiler chicken production, 547
- Business borrowing with credit cards, 308
- Business e-mail use, 535
- Business failure, 517
- Business partnerships, 441, 470
- Cable television providers, 433
- Cable television rates, 211
- Cable television subscribers, 114
- Calculators, 35–36, 50
- Candy company, 337, 396–397
- Cannery, 423
- Canoes, 376
- Car dealership, 512
- Car loan payments, 210–211
- Car radiator fluid, 71
- Car rental firm, 71, 131
- Cat food, 395
- Cell phone carriers, 528, 582
- Cell phone manufacturing, 512
- Cell phones, 89, 93, 493, 586
- Cell phone subscribers, 128, 210
- CEO compensation, 457–458, 460, 545
- Chain saw rental company, 153–154
- Chain saws, 376
- Charter flights, 176–177
- Chemical plant, 394–395
- Chemistry, 353, 418
- Chicken industry, 106
- China gross domestic expenditures, 177
- China R&D expenditures, 178
- Chinese economy, 347
- Chippers, 376
- Cigarette consumption, 213–214
- Clothes cleaners, 314
- Clothing stores, 346, 396
- Coffee mixture, 376
- College graduate employment, 518
- College textbook publisher, 415–416
- Cologne, 36
- Commodities market, 128
- Community college tuition, 550, 561–562
- Compensation plans, 106
- Computer failure probability, 472
- Computers, 82, 417–418, 480, 534
- Concert tickets, 531
- Concrete mixing, 83
- Construction, 114, 133, 328–330, 423
- Consumer credit, 218
- Consumer Price Index (CPI), 29–30, 113
- Contests, 492
- Contractor job bidding, 532
- Control markets, 564
- Convenience stores, 324
- Cost function, 157, 162, 163, 187, 196, 200
- Costs, 35, 36, 50, 62, 82, 89, 118, 125, 142, 184–185, 187–188, 194, 196, 199, 376, 418, 423, 518
- Craft fairs, 532
- Credit applicants, 433
- Credit card borrowing by businesses, 308
- Credit union assets, 229
- Data ranges, 557
- Defect probability, 476, 482, 505, 508–509, 511
- Delivery service, 154
- Depreciation, 105, 156
- Digital music streaming, 68–69
- Digital share of recorded music, 241
- Dining room furniture, 345–346
- Drug company revenue, 535
- Drug prescriptions, 106
- Drug production costs, 155
- Dry cleaners, 519–520
- DVD set of *The Sopranos*, 296
- Earnings, 131, 133
- Economic lot size, 62
- Electric and gas economy, 346
- Electric shaver factory, 364
- Electricity generated by natural gas, 211
- Electronics industry, 157, 317
- Employee compensation, 130–131
- Employees and wage by sector, 336
- Employees of female-owned businesses, 462–463
- Employee training program, 529
- Employee work hours, 460–461, 545, 553, 563–564, 584, 586
- Employment applicants, 440
- Employment of college graduates, 518
- Energy company fees, 157
- Energy consumption, 199, 317
- Energy generation, 217
- Equilibrium price and equilibrium quantity, 176
- Equipment depreciation, 105
- Exports, 130
- Facebook visits, 240–241
- Farming, 177, 392–393, 433, 529–530
- Fast food sales, 336–337
- Fatal work injuries, 451
- FDIC insured savings institutions, 546
- Federal debt, 152–153
- Female-owned businesses, 462–463
- Filing cabinets, 372–373
- Finance charge, 71
- Finance industry, 113
- Fishing industry, 130
- Fixed costs, 142, 196
- Flat screen television size, 76
- Flight departures, 83
- Flower beds, 79
- Flower sales, 534
- Food wholesaler, 396
- Football game attendance, 353
- Fruit boxes, 536
- Fruit orchards, 177
- Fundraising, 396
- Furniture, 318, 320, 322, 345–346, 351
- Gallup polls, 518
- Gambling, 236, 490, 492
- Gasoline, 196
- Gasoline additive, 417
- Gasoline and motor oil expenditures, 228
- Gift shop, 421
- GMAT scores, 575
- Goats and cheese economy, 353
- Gold merchant, 353
- Golf facilities, 106
- Greeting cards, 377, 530–531
- Grocery stores, 93
- Gross income, 397
- Healthcare industry, 113
- Healthcare costs, 518
- Home heating-cooling units, 504
- Home improvement store, 492, 495, 574
- Home ownership, 493
- Hospital care, 106
- House construction, 114, 133, 328–330
- Household income, 472
- Housing sales, 148–149
- Ice cream flavors, 505
- Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs), 64
- Input-output analysis, 348, 353
- Insurance industry, 113, 163, 528
- Insured banking institutions, 535
- Internet, 114, 517
- Investment, 64, 71, 350, 353, 421, 441, 532, 535
- Israeli economy, 347
- Job satisfaction study, 515
- Labor force, 107, 111–112, 113
- Lamp manufacturing, 397
- Land developer, 531

- Landscape borders, 76–77, 79
 Lawn care, 106
 Lawn seed mixture, 418
 Legal services spending, 219
 Leontief's simplified economy, 347
 Lightbulbs, 575
 Loans, 71
 Lottery, 502
 Machine scrap value, 211
 Machine shop, 377
 Magazine publishing, 377
 Manufacturing, 83, 143, 158, 176, 318, 352, 364, 376–377, 396, 397–398, 407, 417–418, 469, 476, 482, 504, 508–509, 512, 532
 Manufacturing and agriculture economy, 346–347
 Marginal costs, 196
 Market capitalization, 584
 Marketing, 365
 Market research, 435
 Meat products availability, 93
 Median prices, 148–149
 Miles per gallon of automobiles, 554
 Milk consumed, 229
 Mortgages, 149, 516, 534, 546–547, 556
 Motion picture and recording industry, 106
 Movie revenue, 62
 Music genres, 480
 NASDAQ, 478
 Natural gas, 211, 240
 Nebraska economy, 348
 Neil Simon play opening, 295
 Net earnings, 36–37, 74–75
 Netflix subscribers, 211, 233
 Net income, 79, 91, 131, 584
 Net revenue, 142
 New order value, 143
 New York Stock Exchange, 478
 Newspaper industry, 82, 114, 153
 NFL teams value, 555
 Office supply manufacturer, 352
 Oil and gas industry, 200, 418
 Oil distribution, 69
 Oil leases, 421
 Oil prices, 199
 Oil refineries, 351, 376–377
 Online gambling, 492
 On-line music streaming, 211
 Orange crop, 529–530
 Outstanding consumer credit, 218
 Patents, 83
 Peanut butter jars, 575
 Pet store, 440
 Pharmaceutical industry, 155, 535
 Pharmaceutical salesperson, 504
 Philanthropy, 131
 Pickup trucks in Texas, 518
 Pinterest.com visitors, 211
 Pipe tobacco, 92
 Pizza company, 420
 Poker sets, 396
 Pollutants, 195, 200
 Population, 471
 Postal rates, 146, 151, 153
 Pottery factory, 317, 353
 Pretzels, dried fruits, and nuts, 314
 Prices, 106, 148–149, 176, 199, 240, 431–432
 Product break-even analysis, 120
 Product-exchange function, 193–194, 196
 Product introduction, 536
 Production, 92, 118, 125, 133, 155, 162–163, 196, 199, 200, 317, 337, 351, 394–395, 397–398, 418, 564
 Product ordering, 336
 Profit, 35, 36, 37, 128, 163, 164, 176, 178, 187, 376, 397–398, 407, 421, 548
 Profit function, 158, 163, 188
 Profit-volume graphs, 163
 Promotion, 519–520
 Public opinion interviews, 406–407
 Publishing industry, 415–416
 Quality-control analysis, 508–509
 Queuing chains, 529
 Radio station call letters, 504
 R&D expenditures for China, 178
 Raffles, 488–489
 Razor blade sales, 103
 Real estate loans, 128–129
 Real estate, rentals, or leasing businesses, 470
 Renewable energy, 131
 Rentals, 153–154, 172, 196, 217, 309–310, 314
 Restaurant employees and compensation, 335
 Retail industry, 131, 186–187, 194, 296, 346, 421, 493, 530–531
 Returns, 493
 Revenue, 35, 36, 62, 82, 89, 93, 106, 114, 118, 163, 176–177, 178, 184–185, 186, 187, 200, 236, 237, 406, 471, 480, 535, 555, 574, 576, 584
 Revenue function, 157, 176, 200
 Roulette, 490
 Rug-cleaning machines, 313–314
 Sales, 82, 83, 103, 106, 113–114, 140–141, 215–216, 217, 296, 336–337, 376, 477–478, 534, 535, 563, 575, 586
 Sales force travel distances, 571
 Salespeople account rating, 493
 Sales projections, 140–141
 Satellite radio, 131
 Savings institution deposits, 546, 556
 Scrap value, 211
 Secretarial salaries, 553
 Shampoo and conditioner, 504
 Shipments, 142, 172–174, 314, 320, 322, 418, 477, 511, 532
 Shoe sales, 563
 Simplified economies, 346–348, 353
 Social assistance industry, 113
 Soda manufacturer, 142
 Soft drinks, 417, 505, 576
 Soup sales, 575
 Speeding fines, 71
 Spinning and weaving, 351
 Sporting event attendance, 324
 Starbucks revenue, 555
 Statistical reports, 420
 Steel company, 423
 Stock price, 82, 431–432
 Stocks, 93–94, 211–212, 350, 421, 441, 478, 532, 535
 Storage costs, 194
 Supply and demand, 164, 176, 199, 200
 Tea, 353
 Teaching salaries, 553
 Telephone system, 348–349
 Television news show, 396
 Test markets, 564
 Theater tickets, 296
 Ticket prices, 296, 353
 Ticket sales to basketball game, 294–295
 Tickets for concert in outdoor stadium, 531
 Tickets for raffle, 488–489
 Total cost of producing items, 162
 Total sales for aerospace industry, 113–114
 Toy manufacturing, 407
 Training program, 529
 Tree nursery, 396
 Tree removal service, 196
 Truck rental, 154, 309–310, 314
 Unemployed people in U.S. labor market, 111–112
 Union workers, 106
 University and college president salaries, 462–463, 477
 USB flash drive manufacturing, 469
 Utility companies, 163
 Value of new orders, 143
 Vegetables, 346
 Vehicle depreciation, 156
 Vehicle sales, 82
 Vehicle value, 162
 Video, audio, and computer sales, 217
 Vitamin supplements, 365
 Washington economy, 347–348
 Wheat and oil economy, 346
 Wind power energy generation, 217
 Wine consumption, 208–209
 Wine production, 193–194, 421
 Worker error probability, 474
 Workers, assembly-line, 218
 Workforce, 164, 471
 Yams and pork economy, 347

Economics

- American Housing Survey, 563
 Construction jobs added each month, 239
 Cost function, 165
 Demand, 341–342
 Demand and price, 164–165, 170–171
 Earnings probability, 459, 477
 Educational attainment, 471, 477
 Electricity consumption, 262, 545
 Employment statistics, 438–439
 Equilibrium quantity and equilibrium price, 161–162
 Expenditures on national defense, 219
 Financial aid awards, 131
 Fossil fuels tax, 235
 Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 142, 211
 Health care expenditures, 70–71, 177–178
 Health insurance, 51, 471
 Hospital care expenditures, 178
 Household income, 545
 Housing size, 545
 Income earned by top one percent of earners, 237
 Inflation rate, 260
 Input-output matrix, 340–341
 Labor force characteristics, 477
 Manufacturing, 339–340, 341–342
 Median family income, 229
 Money market fund, 262
 Negative equity residential properties, 546
 Owner-occupied probability, 459
 Poverty line, 37
 Poverty rate, 136
 Production, 339–340, 342–343
 Profit function, 165
 Retail jobs added each month, 239
 Service-providing industry employees, 83
 Supply and demand, 159–161, 165
 Transportation, 339–340, 341–342
 U.S. government research and development spending, 83
 Water and sewage bill, 545
 Wheat and oil, 342–343

Education

- Age of students, 549, 553
 Bachelor degree disciplines, 459
 Bachelor's degrees, 545
 Calculus exam scores, 562
 Community college tuition, 540, 541, 542
 Degree awardees, 481
 Grade point average, 554
 Heights of students, 554
 High school diploma, 556, 586
 High school education, 545

Letter grade assignment, 576
 Math achievement test score, 576
 Quiz scores, 553
 University costs, 104
 University enrollment projections, 112

Finance

Amortization, 277, 281–282, 283
 Annual percentage yield (APY), 258–259
 Auto loan rates, 276
 Benefactor donation, 287
 Bill denominations, 350
 Bond ratings, 314, 316–317
 Bond returns, 365
 Bonds, 67–68, 153, 246, 262, 310–311, 377, 418
 Business borrowing, 262
 Business expansion, 287
 Car payments, 282
 CD rates, 255, 258, 261
 Charitable contributions, 71
 Charity donations, 287
 Commercial loans, 418
 Compound interest, 210, 213, 214, 228, 255–256, 258–259, 261, 262, 282, 283, 286, 287
 Consumer price indexes (CPIs), 153
 Credit cards, 217
 Credit market, 213
 Credit unions, 113
 Death benefit, 287
 Developer borrowing, 262
 Discount rates, 250
 Disposable income, 30
 Dividend yields, 585
 Doubling money, 228
 Earnings per share, 545
 Education expenditures, 576
 Employee retirement benefits, 286–287
 Energy stocks, 535
 Fast-food franchise, 315
 FDIC-insured financial institutions, 153, 481
 Federal income tax, 121
 Forward price to earnings ratio, 545, 554
 Fund raising, 397
 Government securities, 418
 Gross domestic product (GDP), 213
 Gross federal debt, 70
 Home loans, 418
 Hospital and highway spending, 577
 Household assets, 94
 Household debt, 324
 Individual Retirement Accounts (IRAs), 71
 Inflation rate, 261
 Interest paid, 377
 Interest rates, 83, 217, 246, 250, 255, 258–259, 282, 287, 314
 Investment products, 505
 Investment risk, 377–378, 505
 Investments, 67–68, 250, 262, 286, 287, 296, 310–311, 314, 315, 316–317, 365, 375–376, 418, 420, 481, 535, 544–545
 Kitchen remodel, 287
 Laffer curve, 186, 196
 Land speculator, 282
 Life insurance, 490, 493
 Lottery payment options, 280, 286
 Market capitalization amounts, 563, 585
 Median household debt, 324
 Median weekly earnings, 296
 Money losing value, 210
 Mortgage debt, 129
 Mortgage payments, 276, 277, 281–282, 287
 Municipal bonds, 418

Mutual fund industry assets, 94
 Mutual funds, 287, 315, 377, 420, 481, 492, 535
 Newspaper industry, 88–89
 Ordinary annuities, 286
 Partner investment, 262
 Pension funds, 79, 217, 229, 377
 Pension payments, 287
 Police and fire protection spending, 577
 Price and volume of stocks, 351
 Price to book ratio (P/B), 545
 Prize money, 262
 Profit sharing money, 286
 Public welfare expenditures, 576
 Purchasing power, 217–218
 Remaining balance, 282
 Retirement, 71, 286, 287
 Risk, 420
 Standard & Poor's 500 Index, 88–89, 480
 Sector weightings for investments, 481
 State expenditures, 562, 576
 State income tax, 140, 142, 152
 Stock ownership, 492
 Stock price, 30, 82, 152, 351, 352, 375–376, 377, 563
 Stock returns, 296, 310–311, 314, 352, 375–376, 377–378
 Stock types, 535
 Student loans, 282, 286, 324, 582
 Taxable income, 140
 Tax returns, 71, 113
 Treasury bills, 250
 Unbanked households, 492
 Unemployment rate, 324
 U.S. government outlays, 82
 Vehicle purchase, 282
 Volume of shares, 544, 554
 Zero-coupon bonds, 262

Health

Age-adjusted death rates, 62
 Alzheimer's disease, 317
 Animal feed, 314
 Antibiotics, 494
 Assisted living residents, 439–440
 Attention-deficit disorder, 506
 Blood alcohol level and accidents, 237
 Blood antigens, 440
 Bodybuilding supplements, 362–363
 Body temperature, 553
 Brain neurons lost in stroke, 70
 Calories, 316
 Cancer deaths, 296
 Cardiac output measurement, 186
 Cholesterol levels, 572, 575
 Cigarette smoking, 198
 Cold medicine study, 512
 Computer-aided tomography (CAT) scans, 62, 315
 Consumer price index (CPI) for medical care, 152
 Day-care children age, 554
 Deaths from cancer, 296
 Deaths from heart disease, 114, 218, 296
 Dementia, 439–440
 Depression, 440
 Diet supplements, 406
 Drinking water requirements, 121
 Drug cost effectiveness, 494
 Drug effectiveness, 237
 Drug in the bloodstream, 209, 212
 Drug testing, 321
 Exercise regime, 397
 Flu shots, 527
 Flu symptoms, 437
 Flu virus infection, 228

Foot length, 553
 Football-related deaths, 177, 178
 Head and neck injuries, 351–352
 Health care expenditures, 70–71
 Health insurance, 51, 460
 Heart disease, 440
 Heart disease deaths, 114, 218, 296
 Heights, 29, 544, 585
 Hepatitis, 477
 High blood pressure, 439–440
 Hospital admissions, 506
 Hospital food costs, 376
 Infant mortality rates, 214–215, 324
 Insurance companies, 37
 Intensive care unit age, 554
 Kidney transplants, 241
 Laboratory animals food, 373–374
 Life expectancy, 37, 115, 200, 226, 236
 Live births, 324
 Long-term nursing care, 346
 Male height and BMI distributions, 544
 Mean total cholesterol, 572
 Medical experiment, 451
 Medicare expenditures, 217
 Medication testing, 506
 NHANES survey, 451–452
 Nursing home care, 346
 Nursing shifts, 506
 Nutrients, 395
 Nutritional deficiency, 377
 Pain relief from acetaminophen, 554
 Protein, 316
 Resting pulses, 542–543
 Sickle-cell anemia trait, 481
 Snacking, 376
 Sodium, 316
 Soup nutrition facts, 316
 Threshold weight, 62
 Toxemia, 477
 Transplant organ shortage, 324
 Traumatic brain injury-related deaths, 198
 Vitamins, 376, 377, 576
 X-rays, 315–316

Natural Science

Acid solution, 353
 Antigen data, 440
 Bacteria food consumption, 346
 Bacteria growth, 154
 Barn owl prey, 228
 Bird nests, 582
 Birth of twins probability, 518
 Blood types, 582
 Blood type varieties by species, 555, 564
 Carbon dioxide concentrations, 317
 Carbon dioxide emission, 120, 237
 Cobalt in storage, 237
 Color blindness, 460–461, 471–472, 582
 Community diversity, 229
 Dart probability, 50
 Daylight minutes, 152
 Deafness and color blindness, 472
 Diet planning, 346
 Distance traveled by dropped rock, 136
 Earthquake intensity, 240, 528
 Environmental pollution, 192–193
 Fahrenheit to Celsius temperatures, 70
 Fish population, 219, 395–396
 Fishing on Lake Erie, 440
 Flower color effect on cross-pollination, 527–528
 Flu vaccine, 582
 Food web, 349

Forest fire acreage destroyed, 177, 178
 Forest tree composition, 229
 Genetics, 461
 Grazing animals, 351
 Insect species classification, 506
 Ivory radiocarbon loss, 237
 Medicine effectiveness experiment, 473
 Metal cooling, 240
 Michaelis-Menten kinetics, 195
 Mummy, 237
 Nerve impulses, 176
 Newton's law of cooling, 219, 240
 Object thrown upward, 80
 Octane rating, 71
 Pizza thawing, 240
 Plant hardiness, 505
 Plutonium remaining, 211
 Pollutant removal, 195
 Polonium remaining, 240
 Population growth, 195, 240
 Predator protein requirements, 377
 Rocks, 512
 Sample age, 237
 Shannon index, 224–225, 228–229
 Smoking study group selection, 505
 Snapdragon colors, 528
 Solutions, 353
 Space rocket component failure, 473
 Stocking lakes, 395–396
 Table age, 234
 Temperature, 70, 555
 Tiger food, 315
 Vitamins, 418
 Young animal eating, 582
 Zinc ion concentration, 142

Physical Science

Aircraft taxiing speed, 78
 Airplane speed, 296, 317
 Airplane travel distance, 142, 154
 Atmospheric pressure, 218, 241
 Barometric pressure, 228
 Baseball speed and distance, 113
 Boat speed, 353
 BTUs, 114
 Bullet fired upward, 176
 Car stopping distance, 315
 Current speed, 353
 Earthquake intensity, 234–235, 553
 Garden size, 79
 Hurricane storm seeding, 494
 Ladder angle, 79
 Object, dropped, 79–80

Object thrown upward, 83
 Object traveling in straight line, 77
 Olympic times, 106–107
 O-ring failure, 196
 Planet distances from sun, 237–238
 Pole angle, 79
 Race speed, 79
 Rocket, 79, 83
 Rug size, 79
 Seeding storms, 494
 Snowmaking, 113
 Stopping distance, 315
 Temperature, 113, 120
 Traffic congestion, 316
 Traffic flow, 316
 Train speed, 79
 Transportation, 142
 Volume of a pyramid, 37
 Walkie-talkie distance, 79
 Wind speed, 296
 Yard size, 83

Social Science

African-American population, 217
 Alcohol consumers preferring beer, 121
 Army success factors, 295–296
 Automobile accidents, 219, 325, 457
 Bachelor's degrees, 584
 Birth rates, 199, 335–336
 Business students reading study, 436–437
 Candidate position on issues, 536
 Candidate radio spots, 376
 Cell phone conversation length, 559–560
 Children living below poverty line, 199
 China birth rate, 199
 College majors, 529
 Commuting distance, 554
 Commuting times, 482–483
 Confidence in major companies, 459
 County population, 308
 Death rates, 325, 335–336
 Decoding messages, 348
 Driver's license test, 472
 Driving distance to work, 575
 Drug arrests, 106
 Drug seizures, 106
 Educational attainment, 324
 Encoding messages, 348, 354
 Enrollment in higher education, 58, 78
 Enrollment in public schools, 184
 Facts recall, 216
 Faculty at four-year colleges and universities, 108, 109, 110
 Faculty at two-year colleges, 111
 Fatal car accidents, 176, 457
 Female population, 317
 Financial aid, 62
 Gallup polls, 121, 164
 Grade point average, 377
 Home ownership, 528
 Homework, 534
I Ching (Book of Changes), 504
 IQ tests, 121
 Learning strategies, 536
 Left-handed Americans, 518
 Length of cell phone conversations, 559–560
 Life as exciting, routine, or dull, 441
 Living alone, 478
 Male population, 317
 Males and happiness, 477
 Marriage and happiness, 459
 Married women having children, 475–476
 Men and women roles, 451
 Metro population, 308
 Number of bedrooms, 534
 Number of children, 491
 Number of U.S. residents, 228
 Population, 164, 176, 184, 199, 211, 217, 228, 296, 308, 317, 478, 528
 Population projections, 312–313, 335–336
 President Obama's Cabinet, 512
 Reading scores, 564–565
 Recall of facts, 216
 Reelection strategy, 532
 Rumors, 219
 Seat belt compliance, 482
 Senate delegation selection, 505
 Social service agency, 350–351
 Speed limits, 575–576
 Standard of living, 448–449
 Standardized test scores, 575
 State population, 296
 Student majors, 438
 Student selection for class, 505
 Studying for tests, 473
 Teaching strategies, 536
 Telephone numbers, 504–505
 TV viewing hours, 488
Titanic survivors, 482
 Traffic fatalities, 78, 114
 Travel methods, 348
 Typing speed, 218
 Underemployment, 121
 University courses, 377
 Vehicle access, 534
 Violet crimes, 199
 Voting, 527
 Waiting time average, 195
 World leadership approval poll, 164

Subject Index

A

Absolute value, 28
Absolute-value equations, 66–67
Absolute-value function, 145
Absolute-value inequalities, 118–120
Addition
 of matrices, 319–321
 in order of operations, 24
 of polynomials, 33–34
 of rational expressions, 47–49
Addition rule
 for counting, 438
 for disjoint events, 454
 for probability, 452
 for rational expressions, 47
Additive identity, 23
Additive inverse, 23, 323
Adjacency matrix, 354
Amortization
 defined, 276
 loans and, 276–278
 payments, 276
 remaining balance, 278
 schedules, 278–279
Annual percentage yield (APY), 258–259
Annuities
 computations, 264–265
 defined, 264
 future value of, 264, 265
 ordinary, 264–271
 payment period, 264
 present value of, 272–276, 279–280
 term of, 264
Annuities due
 computation for, 268–269
 defined, 267
 future value of, 268
Applications. *See* Index of Applications
Applied problems, solving, 67
APY (annual percentage yield), 258–259
Architectural arches case study, 201–202
Area, under normal curves, 567, 570–571
Arithmetic mean, 548
Associative properties, 22
Augmented matrix, 299
Axis of the parabola, 166

B

Back substitution, 298
Base a logarithms, 221–222
Base e logarithms, 221
Bases
 defined, 31
 exponential equations, 232
 exponential functions, 203
 negative, 56
Basic feasible solutions
 defined, 387, 409
 finding, 409, 410
 from simplex tableau, 387, 388
 Stage I, 409–410
 Stage II, 410
Basic probability principle, 446

Basic solutions, 409
Basic variables, 384, 408–409
Bayes' formula. *See also* Probability
 defined, 474
 generalization of, 474
 special case, 474
 steps for using, 475
Bernoulli trials, 442
Binomial distributions
 defined, 513, 577
 expected value, 516
 mean for, 578
 normal approximation to, 577–581
 standard deviation for, 578
Binomial experiments
 characteristics of, 514
 conditions satisfied by, 513
 defined, 513
 generation of, 514–515
Binomial probability, 513–518
Bonds
 corporate, 246
 coupon rate, 275
 interest rates, 275
 maturity, 246
 as two-part investments, 276
 zero-coupon, 256–257
Boundary lines, 358, 359
Bounded feasibility region, 367
Boxplots
 defined, 573
 first quartile, 573
 five-number summary, 573
 graphing calculators and, 574
 second quartile, 573
 third quartile, 573
 uses of, 574
Break-even analysis, 158–159
Break-even point, 158–159

C

Calculators. *See* Graphing calculators
Cancellation property, 45
Carbon dating, 234
Cartesian coordinate system, 85–86
Case studies
 architectural arches, 201–202
 consumers and math, 83–84
 continuous compounding, 287–288
 cooking with linear programming, 423–424
 extrapolation and interpolation for prediction, 132–133
 gapminder.org, 241–243
 medical diagnosis, 483
 Quick Draw (New York State Lottery), 537–538
 route maps, 354–355
 standard deviation as measure of risk, 586–587
Certain events, 444
Change in x , 95
Change in y , 95
Change-of-base theorem, 224
Code theory, 343–344
Coefficient matrix, 338
Coefficients
 defined, 33
 integer, 38
 leading, 33, 298
 nonzero, 33
 square matrix of, 338
Column matrix, 319
Column vectors, 319
Columns
 defined, 299
 number of, 319
 pivot, 381, 389
 product of, 326
 simplex tableau, 384
Combinations
 choosing, 501–503
 as counting principle, 507
 defined, 499
 formula, 499
 as not ordered, 499
 number of, 499, 500
 permutations versus, 501
Common denominators, 48
Common logarithms, 220–221
Commutative properties, 22
Complement, of sets, 429, 431
Complement rule, 455
Completing the square, 168
Complex fractions, 49
Compound amount, 253
Compounding periods, 255
Compound interest
 compounding periods, 255
 continuous compounding, 256
 defined, 252
 effective rate (APY), 257–259
 formula, 253
 present value, 259–260
 simple interest growth versus, 252
 summary, 260
 zero-coupon bonds, 256–257
Conditional probability
 defined, 462
 of events, 461–473
 finding by reducing sample space, 462
 product rule, 464–468
 Venn diagrams and, 463
Confusion of the inverse, 464
Constant polynomials, 33
Constant term, 33
Constraints
 adding slack variables to, 380
 converting, 379
 defined, 366
 equation, 413–414
 maximization with, 408–411
 minimization problems, 398, 400
 mixed, 398, 414
Consumers and math case study, 83–84
Contingency tables, 438
Continuous compounding
 case study, 287–288
 compound amount from, 288
 defined, 256
 formula, 256
Continuous distributions, 566

Cooking case study, 423–424
 Corner points, 367, 368
 Corner point theorem, 368
 Corporate bonds, 246
 Correlation coefficients, 111
 Cost
 linear function, 157
 marginal, 156
 shadow, 405
 Cost analysis, 155
 Cost-benefit equation, 235
 Cost-benefit functions, 192–193
 Counting
 addition rule for, 438
 applications of, 507–513
 numbers, 21, 58, 59
 principles, 507
 problems, 503
 Coupon rate, 275
 Cross tabulation. *See* Contingency tables
 Cube roots, 54
 Cubes, difference and sum of, 42
 Cubics, 33

D

Decimal approximations, 22
 Decimals, terminating, 56
 Decimal window, 192
 Decision making, 529–533
 Defects, 448
 Degree, of polynomial, 33
 Degrees of freedom, 558
 Demand matrix, 341
 Denominators
 common, 48–49
 rational expressions, 45
 of rational functions, 191, 192
 rationalizing, 60–61
 Dependent events, 468, 469, 507
 Dependent systems, 294, 303
 Depreciation, linear, 156
 Deviations from the mean, 557
 Difference of cubes, 42
 Difference of matrices, 321
 Difference of squares, 40
 Difference quotient, 140
 Discount
 defined, 250
 simple loans, 249–250
 Discriminants, 75
 Disjoint events
 addition rule for, 454
 defined, 444
 independent events versus, 469
 Disjoint sets, 430
 Distributive property
 defined, 23
 example, 24
 in multiplication of polynomials, 34–35
 Division
 with exponents, 51
 in order of operations, 24
 of rational expressions, 45–47
 Division rule, for rational expressions, 46
 Domains
 agreement on, 137
 defined, 136
 polynomial function, 181
 Downward lines, 98
 Duality, theorem of, 401
 Duals
 defined, 399
 in minimization problems, 399, 400

solving problems with, 402
 uses of, 404–405
 in value of objective function, 404

E

Effective rate (APY), 257–259
 Elementary operations, 297
 Elements
 array, 299
 members, 426
 permutation of set of, 497
 Elimination method, systems of linear equations, 292–293, 298–299
 Empirical probability, 448
 Empty sets, 426
 Equal sets, 426
 Equality, properties of, 63, 65
 Equation constraints, 413–414
 Equations
 absolute-value, 66–67
 cost-benefit, 235
 define y as function of x , 137
 defined, 63
 exponential, 231–233
 first-degree, 63
 graphs and, 86–88
 intercepts and, 88
 logarithmic, 229–231
 multiplying both sides of, 65
 quadratic, 72–80
 solutions of, 63, 86
 Equations of lines
 linear equations, 103
 point–slope form, 101–102
 slope, 95–96
 slope–intercept form, 96–99
 slopes of parallel and perpendicular lines, 99–100
 vertical lines, 102–103
 Equilibrium point, 161
 Equilibrium price, 161
 Equilibrium vectors, 522
 Equivalent systems, 297
 Estimated probability, 459
 Events
 certain, 444
 complement rule, 455
 conditional probability of, 461–473
 defined, 443
 dependent, 468, 469, 507
 disjoint, 445, 454
 impossible, 444
 independent, 468–470
 odds favoring, 455–456
 probability of, 446
 set operations for, 445
 Excel Spreadsheet tips. *See* Technology Tips
 Expected value. *See also* Probability distributions
 alternative computation method, 489
 as balance point, 488
 of binomial distributions, 516
 in decision making, 490
 defined, 488
 fair game, 490
 of probability distribution, 487–491
 of random variables, 488
 Experiments. *See* Binomial experiments; Random experiments
 Exponential decay, 205
 Exponential equations
 applications of, 233–235
 caution, 232
 defined, 231

different bases, 232
 solution methods, 231–233
 solving on graphing calculator, 233
 Exponential functions. *See also* Functions
 applications of, 212–220
 base, 203
 decay, 205
 defined, 203
 forgetting curve, 216
 graphs of, 204–207
 growth, 204, 212–215
 logarithmic functions versus, 226
 logistic, 216
 models of, 214, 215–216
 number e , 207–209
 rule form, 203
 variable, 203
 Exponential growth, 204
 Exponential growth function
 defined, 212
 form, 213
 from small data amount, 214
 Exponents
 caution, 31
 defined, 31
 division with, 51
 fractional, evaluation of, 55
 integer, 51–53
 multiplication with, 32
 negative, 53–54, 56
 properties of, 56
 rational, 54–58
 zero, 32, 56
 Extraneous solutions, 65
 Extrapolation, 132–133

F

Factorial notation, 496–497
 Factoring
 defined, 38
 higher degree polynomials, 42–43
 out, 38
 patterns, 40–42
 quadratics, 39–40
 Factors
 defined, 38
 greatest common, 38, 42
 negative, 40
 positive, 40
 Fair game, 490
 Feasible region
 bounded, 367
 corner points, 367, 368
 defined, 361
 unbounded, 367
 Final simplex tableau, 383
 Finance math
 annuities, 263–266, 267–269
 compound interest, 252
 discount, 249–250
 future value, 247–248
 loans and amortization, 276–280
 present value, 248–249, 272–276
 simple interest, 245–252
 sinking funds, 266–267
 First-degree equations
 absolute-value, 66–67
 applications of, 67–69
 defined, 63, 290
 extraneous solutions, 65
 fractions, 64–66
 properties of equality, 63
 solutions, 64, 290

First, Outside, Inside, Last (FOIL), 35, 39
 First quartile, boxplots, 573
 Five-number summary, 573
 FOIL (First, Outside, Inside, Last), 35, 39
 Forgetting curve, 216
 Fourth roots, 54
 Fractions
 common denominators, 48–49
 complex, 49
 eliminating, 65
 graphing calculator display, 54
 Frequency distributions
 frequency polygons, 541
 graphing calculators and, 541–542
 grouped, 541, 550
 histograms, 541–543
 left skewed, 543
 mean, 549–550
 picture data, 541–543
 right skewed, 543
 shape assessment, 543–544
 skewed, 543
 stem-and-leaf plots, 542–543
 uniform shape, 543
 Frequency polygons, 541
 Functional notation, 138–140
 Functions
 absolute-value, 145
 agreement on domains, 137
 applications of, 140–141, 154–165, 192–194, 212–220, 226
 cost-benefit, 192–193
 defined, 136
 difference quotient, 140
 domain, 136, 137–138
 exponential, 203–220
 functional notation, 138–140
 graphs of, 143–154
 greatest-integer, 145–147
 inputs, 136, 137
 inverse, 225
 linear, 154–165
 logarithmic, 220–229
 logistic, 216
 outputs, 136, 137
 piecewise-defined, 140
 piecewise-linear, 143–145
 polynomial, 178–188
 product-exchange, 193–194
 quadratic, 165–178
 range, 136
 rational, 178–196
 step, 145–147
 vertical-line test, 150
 Future value
 of annuities, 264
 of annuities due, 268
 for compound interest, 253
 defined, 247
 formula, 247
 of ordinary annuities, 265
 for simple interest, 247–248

G

Gapminder.org case study, 241–243
 Gauss-Jordan method, 301
 Graphical method (linear programming)
 bounded feasibility region, 367
 constraints and, 366
 steps for solving, 368
 unbounded feasibility region, 367
 Graphical root finder, 91

Graphing
 linear equations, 99
 linear inequalities in two variables, 358–365
 normal distributions, 567
 polynomial functions, 182–183
 Graphing calculators. *See also* Technology Tips
 amortization schedules, 279
 annuities, 265
 binomial probabilities, 515, 517
 boundary lines, 359
 boxplots, 574
 break-even point, 159
 combinations, 500
 decimal window, 192
 equilibrium point, 162
 exponential equations, 233
 FRAC program, 54
 frequency distributions, 541–542
 graphical root finder, 91
 greatest-integer function, 147
 histograms, 487
 identity matrices, 330
 inverse matrices, 333–334
 logarithmic equations, 233
 logarithms, 221
 matrix subtraction, 322
 matrix sums, 320
 maximum/minimum finder, 91, 170
 median, 552
 negative of a matrix, 323
 normal curve tables, 568
 one-variable statistics, 559
 permutations, 498
 perpendicular lines, 100
 piecewise linear functions, 145
 powers of e , 208
 present value of annuities, 277
 quadratic equations, 75
 rational functions, 190
 simplex method with, 385
 in solving polynomial inequalities, 125
 standard window, 94
 system solvers, 303, 305
 trace key, 90–91
 transpose of a matrix, 398
 TVM solver, 269, 277
 viewing window, 89, 90

Graphs
 Cartesian coordinate system, 85–86
 continuous distribution, 565
 defined, 86
 of exponential functions, 204–207
 horizontal asymptotes of, 189
 of inequalities, 358
 of logarithmic functions, 225–226
 origin, 85
 of parabolas, 169
 polynomial, 179–180
 quadrants, 86
 of quadratic functions, 166, 167
 reading, 88–89, 148–149
 route maps, 354
 shading areas above/below, 359
 systems of inequalities, 360
 technology and, 89–90
 vertical asymptotes of, 189
 x -axis, 85
 x -coordinate, 85
 x -intercept, 87
 y -axis, 85
 y -coordinate, 85
 y -intercept, 87
 Graphs of functions
 defined, 143
 graph reading, 148–149

greatest-integer function, 145–147
 piecewise-linear functions, 143–145
 by plotting points, 147
 step functions, 145–147
 vertical-line test, 150
 Greatest common factor, 38, 42
 Greatest-integer function, 145–147
 Grouped frequency distributions. *See also* Frequency distributions
 defined, 541
 mean, 550
 standard deviation for, 560–561

H

Half-life, 234
 Half-plane solution, 359
 Higher degree polynomials, 42–43
 Histograms
 defined, 486
 frequency distributions, 541
 graphing calculators, 487
 illustrated, 486
 Horizontal asymptotes
 coefficients of x -terms and, 191
 defined, 189
 finding, 192
 of graph, 189
 as x -axis, 190
 Horizontal lines, 97, 98, 103

I

Identity matrices, 330
 Identity properties, 23
 Impossible events, 444
 Inconsistent systems, 294, 303
 Independent events
 caution, 469
 defined, 468, 469
 disjoint events versus, 469
 product rule for, 469
 Independent systems, 293, 303
 Index of a radical, 58
 Indicators, 380, 382
 Inequalities
 absolute-value, 118–120
 defined, 115
 graphs of, 358
 linear, 115–121, 357–365
 polynomial, 121–125
 properties of, 115
 rational, 125–127
 solving of, 115
 symbols, 116
 systems of, 360–363
 Input-output analysis. *See also* Matrix(ces)
 defined, 339
 demand matrix, 341
 input, 339–340
 output, 339
 production matrix, 340–341
 technology matrix, 341
 Input-output matrix, 339
 Inputs
 function, 137
 input-output analysis, 339–340
 set of, 136
 Integer exponents, 51–53
 Integers, 22, 38
 Interest
 compound, 252–263
 defined, 245

- Interest (*Continued*)
 rate of, 246, 275
 simple, 245–252
 time, 246
 variables, 260
 zero-coupon bonds, 256–257
- Interpolation, 132–133
- Intersection, of sets, 430, 431
- Interval notation, 27
- Intervals, 27
- Inverse
 additive, 23, 323
 confusion of, 464
- Inverse matrices. *See also* Matrix(ces)
 caution, 331
 defined, 331
 on graphing calculator, 333–334
 obtaining, 332
- Inverse properties, 23
- Inverses, 225
- Inversion property, 54, 56
- Irrational numbers, 22, 25
- L**
- Larger systems of linear equations. *See also* Systems of linear equations
 back substitution, 298
 calculator method, 304–305
 dependent, 303
 elimination method, 298–299
 Gauss-Jordan method, 301
 inconsistent, 303
 independent, 303
 leading variable, 298
 manual method, 303–304
 matrix methods, 299–301
 technology and, 302–303
- Leading coefficients, 33, 298
- Leading variables, 298
- Least-squares regression line, 110
- Left skewed distribution, 543
- Like terms, 33
- Linear depreciation, 156
- Linear equations
 defined, 103, 290
 forms, 103
 solutions, 290
 systems of, 290–318
 in three variables, 290
 in two variables, 290
- Linear functions. *See also* Functions
 applications of, 154–165
 break-even analysis, 158–159
 cost, 157
 cost analysis, 155
 piecewise, 143–145
 rates of change, 156–157
 rational, 188–191
 revenue, 157
 supply and demand, 159–162
- Linear inequalities
 absolute-value, 118–120
 alternative solution technique, 359
 caution, 116
 defined, 115, 357
 graphs of, 358
 half-plane solution, 359
 properties of, 115
 systems of, 360–363
 in two variables, 358–365
- Linear models
 construction of, 107–109
 correlation, 111–112
- regression, 109–111
 residuals, 108
- Linear polynomials, 33
- Linear programming
 applications of, 372–378, 414–416
 case study, 423–424
 corner point theorem, 368
 defined, 357
 equation constraints, 413–414
 graphical method, 366–372
 objective function, 366
 simplex method, 379–391
 solving graphically, 368
 standard maximum form, 379
- Linear regression, 109–111
- Line of best fit, 110
- Lines
 boundary, 358, 359
 downward, 98
 equations of, 95–107
 fitting data points, 108
 horizontal, 97, 98, 103
 parallel, 99
 perpendicular, 99, 100
 slope, 95–102
 upward, 98
 vertical, 98, 102–103
- $\ln x$, 221
- Loans
 amortization and, 276–278
 simple discount, 249
- Logarithmic equations
 applications of, 233–235
 constants and logarithmic terms, 230
 defined, 229–230
 solution methods, 230–231
 solving on graphing calculator, 233
- Logarithmic functions
 applications of, 226
 defined, 225
 exponential functions versus, 226
 graphs of, 225–226
 natural, 225
- Logarithms
 base a , 221–222
 caution, 224
 change-of-base theorem and, 224
 common, 220–221
 natural, 221
 of negative numbers, 220
 power property, 223
 product property, 223
 properties of, 222–225
 quotient property, 223
- Logistic functions
 defined, 216
 forgetting curve, 216
- $\log x$, 220
- M**
- Marginal cost, 156
- Marginal revenue, 157
- Markov chains
 defined, 518
 equilibrium vector, 522
 probability vector, 520–521
 regular, 521–526
 transition diagram, 519
 transition matrices, 519, 521–526
- Matrix methods
 defined, 301
 row echelon form, 301
 row operations, 299–300
- Matrix multiplication
 caution, 327
 defined, 326
 multiplication of numbers versus, 328
 as not commutative, 328
- Matrix(ces)
 addition, 319–321
 additive inverse of, 323
 adjacency, 354
 applications of, 337–349
 augmented, 299
 code theory, 343–344
 coefficient, 338
 column, 319
 defined, 299
 demand, 341
 difference of, 321
 elements, 319
 equations, 338
 identity, 330
 input-output, 339
 input-output analysis, 339–343
 inverse, 330–334
 negative of, 323
 one column, 319
 one row, 319
 operations, 318–325, 354–355
 payoff, 530
 product, 326–330
 production, 340–341
 product of row and column of, 326
 reduced row echelon form, 301
 routing, 344–345
 row, 319
 row echelon form, 301
 row operations, 299–300
 same number of rows and columns, 319
 scalar multiplication, 322–323
 singular, 331
 size, 318
 solving systems with, 337
 square, 319
 subtraction, 321–322
 sum of, 320
 technological, 339
 transition, 519, 521–526
 transpose of, 398
 zero, 323
- Maturity, bond, 246
- Maturity value. *See* Future value
- Maximization
 applications, 391–398
 with constraints, 408–411
 dual problem, 402
 pivoting, 381–383
 pivot selection, 380–381
 problem setup, 379–380
 reading the solution, 383–385
 standard form, 379
- Maximum/minimum finder, 91, 170
- Mean. *See also* Measures of center
 advantages, 553
 arithmetic, 548
 for binomial distribution, 578
 computation of, 548
 defined, 548
 deviations from the, 557
 frequency distributions,
 549–550
 grouped data, 549
 grouped frequency distribution, 550
 median and, 551
 normal distributions, 567
 population, 551
 sample, 550

standard deviation and, 559
 as statistic, 552

Measures of center
 defined, 547
 mean, 548–551
 median, 551–552
 mode, 552–553

Measures of variation, 557–562

Median. *See also* Measures of center
 caution, 552
 computation of, 553
 for data with extreme values, 552
 defined, 551
 as statistic, 552

Medical diagnosis case study, 483

Michaelis-Menten Kinetics, 195

Minimization problems
 conditions, 399
 constraints, 398, 400
 defined, 398
 duals, 399, 402
 geometric solution methods, 401
 objective function, 399
 simplex tableau, 401
 solving, 402
 solving with objective function, 411
 variables, 399, 411

Mixed constraints, 398, 414

Mode. *See also* Measures of center
 advantages, 553
 defined, 552

Models
 exponential function, 215–216
 linear, 107–109
 polynomial, 183–185
 quadratic, 172–174

Multiplication
 with exponents, 32
 matrix, 322–323, 326–330
 in order of operations, 24
 of polynomials, 34–35
 radical expressions, 60
 of rational expressions, 45–47
 scalar, 322–323

Multiplication principle, 495, 496

Multiplication rule, for rational expressions, 46

Multiplicative identity, 23

Multiplicative inverse, 23

Mutually exclusive events, 445

N

Natural (counting) numbers, 21, 58, 59

Natural logarithmic functions, 225

Natural logarithms, 221

Negative exponents, 53–54, 56

Negative numbers
 logarithms of, 220
 negative of, 28

Negative of a matrix, 323

N -factorial, 496

Nodes, 354

Nominal (stated) rate, 258

Nonbasic variables, 384

Nonnegative numbers, square roots of, 25

Nonstandard problems (simplex method), 407–419

Normal approximation
 caution, 580
 defined, 577–581
 use requirement, 578–580

Normal curves
 area under, 567, 570–571
 calculating area under, 567
 defined, 566

properties of, 566–567
 standard, 567
 tables, 568

Normal distributions
 caution, 572
 defined, 543, 566
 graphing, 567
 illustrated, 544, 566
 mean, 567
 standard deviation, 566, 567

Notation
 factorial, 496–497
 functional, 138–140
 interval, 27
 set-builder, 426
 sigma, 548
 summation, 496–497

n th roots, 54, 55

Number e , 207–209

Number line, 26–27

Numbers
 integers, 22
 irrational, 22, 25
 natural (counting), 21, 58, 59
 negative, 28, 220
 nonnegative, 25
 rational, 22
 real, 21–30
 sum of, notation, 548
 whole, 21

Numerators
 of rational functions, 191, 192
 rationalizing, 60–61

O

Objective function
 duals and, 404
 linear programming, 366
 maximizing, 374
 maximum value, 388
 minimization problems, 399
 solving minimization problems with, 411
 variable representation, 392

Odds
 defined, 455
 in favor, 455–456
 probability and, 455–456

Ordered pairs, 85–86

Order of operations, 24–26

Ordinary annuities. *See also* Annuities
 defined, 264
 future value of, 265
 present value of, 272–274

Outcomes
 defined, 442
 equally likely, 446
 event, 443–445
 probability for, 442
 sample space, 442

Outputs
 function, 137
 input-output analysis, 339
 set of, 136

P

Parabolas
 axis of, 166
 defined, 166
 graphs of, 169
 symmetric about the axis, 166
 vertex, 166, 169, 170

Parallel lines, 99

Parameters, 305

Parentheses
 in interval notation, 27
 in order of operations, 24
 rules for eliminating, 34

Patterns
 difference of squares, 40
 factoring, 40–42
 perfect squares, 41

Payment period, annuities, 264

Payoff matrices, 530

Payoffs, 530

Perfect squares, 41

Permutations
 choosing, 501–503
 combinations versus, 501
 as counting principle, 507
 defined, 497
 formula, 498
 of n things taken r at a time, 498
 number of, 497

Perpendicular lines, 99, 100

Piecewise-defined functions, 140

Piecewise-linear functions, 143–145

Pivoting
 caution, 382
 defined, 381
 explanation of, 388–389
 simplex method, 381–383
 solutions resulting from, 389
 as systematic way of moving, 388

Pivots
 column, 381, 389
 defined, 380
 row, 381
 rules for selecting, 388
 selecting, 380–381

Plotting points, graphing functions by, 147

Point-slope form, 101–102, 103

Polynomial functions. *See also* Functions
 defined, 178
 of degree n , 178
 domains, 181
 graph curve, 181
 graphing techniques, 182–183
 graph peaks and valleys, 180–181
 graphs, 179–180
 higher-order, 181
 models, 183–185
 properties of, 180–182
 x -axis, 183

Polynomial inequalities. *See also* Inequalities
 graphing calculators in solving, 125
 steps for solving, 122
 working with, 121–125

Polynomials
 addition of, 33–34
 coefficients of, 33
 constant, 33
 cubic, 33
 defined, 31, 33
 degree of, 33
 factoring of, 38–44
 higher degree, 42–43
 leading coefficient of, 33
 linear, 33
 multiplication of, 34–35
 quadratic, 33
 subtraction of, 33–34
 terms, 33
 variable, 33
 zero, 33

Population mean, 551

Populations, 539

I-12 SUBJECT INDEX

- Population standard deviation, 559
Power property, of logarithms, 223
Powers
 power of, 32, 56
 product to, 52, 56
 quotient to, 52, 56
Prediction case study, 132–133
Present value
 for compound interest, 259–260
 defined, 248
 formula, 249
 of future amount, 259
 for simple interest, 248–249
Present value of annuities. *See also* Annuities
 accumulating funds, 275–276
 annuities due, 279–280
 caution, 274
 defined, 272
 formula, 274
 graphing calculators, 277
 ordinary annuities, 272–274
 procedure, 274
Principal, 246
Probability
 addition rule for, 452
 applications, 457–458
 basic principle of, 446
 Bayes' formula and, 473–477
 binomial, 513–518
 concepts, 452–461
 conditional, 461–473
 of defect, 448
 empirical, 448
 estimated, 459
 of events, 446
 introduction to, 442–452
 long-run estimate of, 448
 odds, 455–456
 for outcomes, 442
 product rule, 464–468
 properties of, 449
 random experiments and, 442–445
 relative frequency, 448–449
 sum, in probability distribution, 486
 of union of sets, 452
Probability distributions
 defined, 449, 486
 expected value of, 485, 487–491
 histograms, 486
 random variables, 485–487
 sum of probabilities, 486
Probability tree, 465
Probability vectors, 520–521
Product matrix(ces), 326
Product property
 of exponents, 56
 of logarithms, 223
Product rule. *See also* Probability
 defined, 464
 formulas, 464
 for independent events, 469
 of probability, 464–468
 in stochastic processes, 467
 stochastic processes and, 467
Product-exchange functions, 193–194
Production matrix, 340–341
Products. *See also* Multiplication
 of matrices, 322, 326–330
 multiplication principle, 496
 to powers, 52, 56
Proper subsets, 427
Properties. *See also specific properties*
 of equality, 63, 65
 of exponents, 56, 59
 of inequality, 115
 of normal curves, 566–567
 of polynomial graphs, 180–182
 of probability, 449
 of real numbers, 63
 of regular Markov chains, 526
Pythagorean theorem, 76
- ### Q
- Quadrants, 86
Quadratic equations
 approximating solutions for, 75
 defined, 72
 discriminant, 75
 real solutions, 72
 solutions for, 73
 square root property, 73
 zero-factor property, 72
Quadratic formula
 defined, 73
 solutions, 74
 use caution, 74
Quadratic functions. *See also* Functions
 algebraic method, 171, 172
 brute force method, 172
 caution, 169
 completing the square, 168
 defined, 165
 graphical method, 171
 graphs of, 166, 167
 models, 172–174
 regression, 174
 rule form, 165, 168
 supply and demand, 170–171
 vertex, 169
Quadratics
 defined, 33
 factoring, 39–40
 squares and, 41
Quick Draw (New York State Lottery) case study, 537–538
Quotient property
 of exponents, 56
 of logarithms, 223
Quotients. *See also* Division
 difference, 140
 to powers, 52, 56
- ### R
- Radicals
 components of, 58
 defined, 58
 multiplying, 60
 properties of exponents with, 59
 symbol, 58
Radicand, 58
Random experiments
 defined, 442
 events, 443–445
 outcomes, 442
 sample space, 442
 trials, 442
Random samples, 540, 550
Random variables
 defined, 486
 expected value of, 488
Range, 557
Ranges, 136
Rate, interest, 246
Rates of change, of linear functions, 156–157
Rational exponents, 54–58
Rational expressions
 addition of, 47–49
 complex fractions, 49
 defined, 44
 division of, 45–47
 multiplication of, 45–47
 simplifying, 45
 subtraction of, 47–49
Rational functions. *See also* Functions
 applications of, 192–194
 for cost-benefit functions, 192–193
 defined, 188
 denominators, 191, 192
 horizontal asymptote, 189
 linear, 188–191
 numerators, 191, 192
 product-exchange functions, 193–194
 rule form, 188
 vertical asymptote, 189
Rational inequalities. *See also* Inequalities
 caution, 126, 127
 defined, 125
 solving graphically, 127
 steps for solving, 125
 working with, 125–127
Rationalizing denominators and numerators, 60–61
Rational numbers, 22
Real numbers
 absolute value of, 27–28
 decimal form, 22
 number line and, 26–27
 ordered pairs of, 85–86
 order of operations, 24–25
 properties of, 22
 square roots, 25–26
 types of, 21–22
Real solutions, 72
Reduced row echelon form, 301
Region of feasible solutions. *See* Feasible region
Regression
 for cubic and quartic polynomial models, 183–185
 linear, 109–111
 quadratic, 174
Regular Markov chains. *See also* Markov chains
 defined, 521
 equilibrium vector, 522, 525
 properties of, 526
Regular transition matrices, 521–526
Relative frequency probability, 448–449
Remaining balance, amortization, 278
Residuals, 108
Revenue
 linear function, 157
 marginal, 157
Richter scale, 234–235
Right skewed distribution, 543, 544
Roots
 cube, 54
 fourth, 54
 graphical finder, 91
 n th, 54, 55
 square, 25–26, 558
Route maps case study, 354–355
Routing, 344–345
Row echelon form, 301
Row matrix, 319
Row operations, 299–300
Rows
 defined, 299
 number of, 319
 pivot, 381
 product, 326
Row vectors, 319

S

- Sample mean, 550
- Samples
 - aim of, 540
 - data organization, 540
 - defined, 539
 - random, 540
- Sample space, 442
- Sample standard deviation, 558–559
- Scalar multiplication, 322–323
- Second quartile, boxplots, 573
- Sensitivity, test, 483
- Set braces, 426
- Set-builder notation, 426
- Sets
 - caution, 426
 - complement of, 429, 431
 - defined, 425
 - disjoint, 430
 - elements (members), 426
 - empty, 426
 - equal, 426
 - infinitely many elements, 429
 - intersection of, 430, 431
 - not equal, 426
 - operations for events, 445
 - operations on, 429–432
 - permutation of elements, 497
 - proper subsets, 427
 - relationships, 429
 - subsets, 427, 429
 - symbols, 426
 - union of, 430, 431
 - universal, 427
 - Venn diagrams, 429, 434–435
- Shadow costs, 405
- Shannon index, 224
- Shape, distribution, 543
- Sigma notation, 548
- Simple discount loans, 249–250
- Simple interest. *See also* Interest
 - compound interest growth versus, 252
 - defined, 245
 - formula, 246
 - future value, 247–248
 - present value, 248–249
 - summary, 260
- Simplex method. *See also* Linear programming
 - applications of, 391–398
 - defined, 379
 - duality and, 398–407
 - geometric interpretation of, 386–388
 - with graphing calculators, 385
 - maximization, 379–398
 - maximization with constraints, 408–411
 - mechanics of, 379
 - minimization problems, 398–407, 411–412
 - pivoting, 381–383
 - pivot selection, 380–381
 - problem setup, 379–380
 - reading the solution, 383–385
 - with spreadsheets, 385
 - standard maximum form, 379
 - steps for, 384–385
 - symbols, 379
 - technology and, 385–386
- Simplex tableau
 - basic feasible solution from, 387, 388
 - basic variables, 384, 408–409
 - caution, 381, 384
 - columns, 384
 - final, 383
 - indicators, 380, 382
 - initial, 380
 - minimization problems, 401
 - with no negative numbers, 382
 - nonbasic variables, 384
- Simplifying, rational expressions, 45
- Singular matrix, 331
- Sinking funds, 266–267
- Skewed distributions, 543
- Slack variables
 - adding to constraints, 380
 - defined, 379
 - nonnegative, 408
- Slope
 - caution, 96
 - change in x , 95
 - change in y , 95
 - defined, 95
 - of horizontal lines, 96
 - negative, 98
 - of parallel lines, 99–100
 - of perpendicular lines, 99–100
 - positive, 98
 - steepness, 95
 - undefined, 98
 - of vertical lines, 96
 - zero, 98
- Slope–intercept form, 96–99, 103
- Solutions
 - basic, 409
 - basic feasible, 387–388, 409–411
 - checking, 65
 - defined, 63
 - of equations, 86
 - extraneous, 65
 - first-degree equations, 64, 65, 290
 - half-plane, 359
 - linear equations, 290
 - quadratic equations, 73, 75
 - quadratic formula, 74
 - real, 72
 - region of feasible, 361
 - simplex method, 383–385
 - in two variables, 86
- Solving applied problems, 67
- Solving for specified variables, 66
- Specificity, test, 483
- Spreadsheets. *See also* Technology Tips
 - for financial calculations, 254
 - simplex method with, 385
 - variance and standard deviation, 560
- Square brackets
 - in interval notation, 27
 - in order of operations, 24
- Square matrix, 319
- Square root of variance, 558
- Square root property, 73
- Square roots, 25–26
- Squares
 - completing, 168
 - difference of, 40
 - perfect, 41
 - quadratics and, 41
 - sum of, 109
- Stage I, basic feasible solution, 409–410
- Stage II, basic feasible solution, 410
- Standard deviation
 - as approximation of average deviation, 562
 - for binomial distribution, 578
 - case study, 586–587
 - caution, 560, 561
 - defined, 374, 559
 - finding with calculators, 562
 - for grouped distributions, 560–561
 - interpretation of, 560, 562
 - of normal distributions, 566, 567
 - population, 559
 - sample, 558–559
 - size of, 559
 - for stocks, 374–375
 - z -scores as, 572
- Standard maximum form, 379
- Standard normal curves, 567
- States, 518–519
- States of nature, 530
- Statistics
 - defined, 539
 - frequency distributions, 539–547
 - introduction to, 539–588
 - mean, 548–551
 - measures of center, 547–557
 - measures of variation, 557–565
 - median, 552–553
 - mode, 552–553
 - normal approximation to the binomial distribution, 577–583
 - normal distributions, 565–577
 - range, 557
- Stem-and-leaf plots, 542–543
- Step functions, 145–147
- Stochastic processes, 467, 518
- Strategies, 530
- Subsets. *See also* Sets
 - combinations, 499–501
 - defined, 427
 - number of, 429
 - proper, 427
 - tree diagrams for finding, 428
 - Venn diagrams, 429
- Substitution method, systems of linear equations, 291–292
- Subtraction
 - matrix, 321–322
 - in order of operations, 24
 - of polynomials, 33–34
 - of rational expressions, 47–49
- Subtraction rule, for rational expressions, 47
- Summation notation, 548
- Sum of cubes, 42
- Sum of matrices, 320
- Supply and demand curves, 159
 - equilibrium point, 161
 - equilibrium price, 161
 - equilibrium quantity, 161
 - quadratic function, 170–171
- Supply and demand curves, 159
- Surplus variables, 408
- Symbols
 - inequality, 116
 - real number comparisons, 26
 - set, 426
 - simplex method, 379
 - symbols in size comparison, 26
- Systems of inequalities
 - defined, 360
 - feasible region, 361
 - graph of, 360
- Systems of linear equations
 - applications of, 294–295, 309–318
 - back substitution, 298
 - calculator method, 304–305, 310, 311, 312
 - defined, 290
 - dependent, 294, 303
 - elementary operations, 297
 - elimination method, 292–293, 298–299
 - equivalent, 297
 - finding, 294
 - Gauss-Jordan method, 301
 - inconsistent, 294, 303
 - independent, 293, 303
 - interchange of equations, 297

Systems of linear equations (*Continued*)
 larger, 297–309
 leading variable, 298
 manual method, 303–304, 310, 311, 312
 matrix methods, 299–301
 matrix operations, 318–325
 matrix products and inverses, 325–337
 multiplying equations in, 297
 replacing equations in, 297
 with same number of equations, 338
 solutions, 291
 solving with matrices, 337–339
 substitution method, 291–292
 technology and, 302–303
 two equations in two variables, 291–297

System solvers, 303, 305

T

T-bills, 250

Technology
 graphs and, 89–90
 simplex method and, 385
 systems of linear equations and, 302–303

Technology matrix, 339

Technology Tips
 amortization schedules, 279
 annuities, 265
 annuities due, 269, 280
 approximating solutions for quadratic equations, 75
 binomial probabilities, 515, 517
 boxplots, 574
 break-even point, 159
 combinations, 500
 effective rate (APY), 259
 exponential equations, 233
 FRAC program, 54
 frequency distributions, 541–542
 graphing linear equations, 99
 graphing piecewise-linear functions, 145
 greatest-integer function, 147
 histograms, 487
 identity matrices, 330
 inequality symbol on calculators, 26
 input-output analysis, 343
 inverse matrix display, 334
 logarithmic equations, 233
 matrix subtraction, 322
 matrix sums, 320
 maximum/minimum finder and vertex of a parabola, 170
 mean, 548
 median, 552
 negative numbers on calculators, 23
 negative of a matrix, 323
 normal curve tables, 568
 normal distributions, 567
 number e , 208
 one-variable statistics, 559
 permutations, 498
 perpendicular lines, 100
 present value of annuities, 277
 rational functions, 190
 shading areas above/below graphs, 359
 solving rational inequalities graphically, 127

spreadsheets, 254
 square root symbol on calculators, 25
 standard deviation, 560
 system solvers, 303, 305
 systems of two equations in two variables, 292
 transpose of a matrix, 398
 TVM solver, 256
 variance, 560
 vertical asymptotes, 192

Terms
 of annuities, 264
 constant, 33
 defined, 33
 like, 33
 unlike, 33

Theorem of duality, 401

Third quartile, boxplots, 573

Tick marks, 90

Time, interest, 246

Trace key, 90–91

Transition diagrams, 519

Transition matrices
 defined, 519
 features, 519
 regular, 521–526
 states, 518–519
 zero entries, 522

Transpose of a matrix, 398

Tree diagrams, 428

Trials
 Bernoulli, 513
 defined, 442
 outcomes, 442

TVM solver, 256, 269, 277

Two variables
 linear inequalities in, 358–365
 systems of two linear equations in, 291–297

U

Unbounded feasibility region, 367

Uniform distribution, 543

Union, of sets
 defined, 430, 431
 probability of, 452
 Venn diagram, 430, 431

Universal sets, 427

Unlike terms, 33

Upward lines, 98

V

Variables
 basic, 384, 408
 defined, 33, 539
 exponential function, 203
 frequency distribution of, 438
 leading, 298
 minimization problems, 399, 411
 nonbasic, 384
 parameter, 305
 random, 486–487, 488
 simple and compound interest, 260

slack, 379–380, 408
 solving for specified, 66
 surplus, 408

Variance
 population, 558
 sample, 558
 square root of, 558

Vectors
 column, 319
 equilibrium, 522
 probability, 520–521
 row, 319

Venn diagrams
 applications of, 434–442
 complement of sets, 429
 in conditional probability, 463
 defined, 429
 disjoint of sets, 430
 illustrated, 434
 intersection of sets, 430
 sets, 434–435
 subsets, 429
 in surveying groups of people, 435
 union of sets, 430

Vertical asymptotes
 defined, 189
 of graph, 189
 as root of denominator, 191

Vertical lines, 98, 102–103

Vertical line test, 150

Vertices
 defined, 354
 parabola, 166, 169
 quadratic function, 169

W

Whole numbers, 21

X

X-axis, 85, 183, 190
 X-coordinates, 85
 X-intercepts, 87

Y

Y-axis, 85
 Y-coordinates, 85
 Y-intercepts, 87

Z

Zero exponents, 32, 56
 Zero-factor property, 72
 Zero matrix, 323
 Zero polynomials, 32

Z-scores
 in area under a normal curve, 570
 converting to, 571
 defined, 570
 as standard deviations, 572

Photo Credits

Page 21 Sahani Photography/Shutterstock **page 83** Newscom **page 85** Chad McDermott/Shutterstock **page 111** Tom McNemar/Shutterstock **page 135** Shutterstock **page 163** iStockphoto **page 303** Thinkstock **page 207** Pearson Education, Inc. **page 210** Stephen Coburn/Shutterstock **page 228** National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) **page 238** iStockphoto **page 245** Barry Austin Photography/Getty Images **page 282** iStockphoto **page 290** Thinkstock **page 295** Lebrecht Music and Arts Photo Library/Alamy **page 324** iStockphoto **page 337** Jupiterimages/Thinkstock **page 357** Ben Cawthra/Sipa USA/Newscom **page 396** Pinosub/Shutterstock **page 423** Monika Wisniewska/Shutterstock **page 425** Bikeriderlondon/Shutterstock **page 443** TeddyandMia/Shutterstock **page 483** Alexander Raths/Shutterstock **page 453** Photos.com **page 485** Alexander Raths/Shutterstock **page 494** iStockphoto **page 512** Ronfromyork/Shutterstock **page 537** Pejo/Shutterstock **page 539** Gib Martinez/Alamy **page 551** Jimak/iStockphoto **page 575** Vartanov Anatoly/Shutterstock **page 586** Bloomua/Shutterstock

COMPOUND AMOUNT

If P dollars is deposited for n time periods at a compound interest rate i per period, the **compound amount** A is

$$A = P(1 + i)^n.$$

Consider an ordinary annuity of n payments of R dollars each at the end of consecutive interest periods with interest compounded at a rate of i per period. The **future value** S of the annuity is:

$$S = R \left[\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i} \right].$$

The **present value** P of the annuity is:

$$P = R \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-n}}{i} \right].$$

The **matrix** version of the elimination method uses the following **matrix row operations** to obtain the augmented matrix of an equivalent system. They correspond to using elementary row operations on a system of equations.

1. Interchange any two rows.
2. Multiply each element of a row by a nonzero constant.
3. Replace a row by the sum of itself and a constant multiple of another row in the matrix.

UNION RULE

For any events E and F from a sample space S .

$$P(E \cup F) = P(E) + P(F) - P(E \cap F).$$

PROPERTIES OF PROBABILITY

Let S be a sample space consisting of n distinct outcomes s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n . An acceptable probability assignment consists of assigning to each outcome s_1 a number p_1 (the probability of s_1) according to these rules.

1. The probability of each outcome is a number between 0 and 1.

$$0 \leq p_1 \leq 1, \quad 0 \leq p_2 \leq 1, \quad \dots, \quad 0 \leq p_n \leq 1.$$

2. The sum of the probabilities of all possible outcomes is 1.

$$p_1 + p_2 + p_3 + \dots + p_n = 1.$$

BAYES' FORMULA

For any events E and F_1, F_2, \dots, F_n , from a sample space S , where $F_1 \cup F_2 \dots \cup F_n = S$,

$$P(F_i|E) = \frac{P(F_i) \cdot P(E|F_i)}{P(F_1) \cdot P(E|F_1) + \dots + P(F_n) \cdot P(E|F_n)}.$$

PERMUTATIONS

The number of permutations of n elements taken r at a time, where $r \leq n$, is

$${}_n P_r = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}$$

COMBINATIONS

The number of combinations of n elements taken r at a time, where $r \leq n$, is

$${}_n C_r = \binom{n}{r} = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!r!}$$

BINOMIAL PROBABILITY

If p is the probability of success in a single trial of a binomial experiment, the probability of x successes and $n - x$ failures in n independent repeated trials of the experiment is

$${}_n C_r p^x (1-p)^{n-x}$$

MEAN

The mean of the n numbers, $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$, is

$$\bar{x} = \frac{x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n}{n} = \frac{\Sigma(x)}{n}$$

SAMPLE STANDARD DEVIATION

The standard deviation of a sample of n numbers, $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$, with mean \bar{x} , is

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma(x - \bar{x})^2}{n - 1}}$$

BINOMIAL DISTRIBUTION

Suppose an experiment is a series of n independent repeated trials, where the probability of a success in a single trial is always p . Let x be the number of successes in the n trials. Then the probability that exactly x successes will occur in n trials is given by

$${}_n C_r p^x (1-p)^{n-x}$$

The mean μ and variance σ^2 of a binomial distribution are, respectively,

$$\mu = np \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma^2 = np(1-p)$$

The standard deviation is

$$\sigma = \sqrt{np(1-p)}$$